WHITE BOOK

COACH UP IAS

YOUR SELECTION Is OUR BUSINESS

LET US DEMYSTIFY

NCERT HISTORY

FOR CIVIL SERVICES EXAMINATION



IAS COACH ASHUTOSH SRIVASTAVA



IAS COACH MANISH SHUKLA







8318600261 / 9305953426

WALL OF FAME



UTKARSHA NISHAD
UPSC RANK - 18



SURABHI DWIVEDI
UPSC RANK - 55



SATEESH PATEL
UPSC RANK - 163



SATWIK SRIVASTAVA
SDM RANK-3



DEEPAK SINGH
SDM RANK-20



ALOK MISHRA
DEPUTY JAILOR RANK-11



SHIPRA SAXENA
GIC PRINCIPAL (PCS-2021)



SALTANAT PARWEEN
SDM (PCS-2022)



KM. NEHA
SUB REGISTRAR (PCS-2021)



SUNIL KUMAR
MAGISTRATE (PCS-2021)



ROSHANI SINGH
DIET (PCS-2020)



AVISHANK S. CHAUHAN
ASST. COMMISSIONER
SUGARCANE (PCS-2018)



SANDEEP K. SATYARTHI
CTD (PCS-2018)



MANISH KUMAR
DIET (PCS-2018)



AFTAB ALAM
PCS OFFICER



ASHUTOSH TIWARI
SDM (PCS-2022)



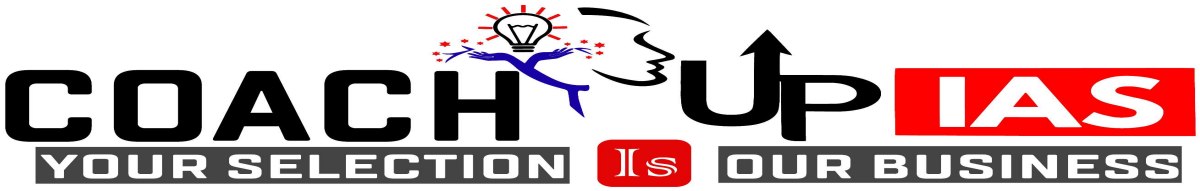
CHANDAN SHARMA
Magistrate
Roll no. 301349



YOU CAN BE THE NEXT....

8009803231 / 8354021661

D 22&23, PURNIYA CHAURAHA, NEAR MAHALAXMI SWEET HOUSE, SECTOR H, SECTOR E, ALIGANJ, LUCKNOW, UTTAR PRADESH 226024



COACH UP IAS YOUR SELECTION Is OUR BUSINESS — LIVE CLASSES

CSAT

FOUNDATION COURSE

KEY FEATURES

- 60 Interactive Teaching Hours
- Comprehensive coverage of entire Syllabus
- Well-structured and planned topic sequence.
- Personalized Mentorship
- Regular Quizzes and practice sets
- Well-designed Study Material

COACH UP IAS - YOUR SELECTION IS OUR BUSINESS

COACH UP IAS YOUR SELECTION Is OUR BUSINESS — LIVE CLASSES

SAMARPAN

12 MONTHS WEEKEND BATCH FOR PRELIMS & MAINS

KEY FEATURES

- NCERT + Complete GS (Pre + Mains)
- CSAT
- Test Series

COACH UP IAS - YOUR SELECTION IS OUR BUSINESS

COACH UP IAS YOUR SELECTION Is OUR BUSINESS — LIVE CLASSES

AARAMBH

3 YEARS INTEGRATED IAS/PCS FOUNDATION COURSE

KEY FEATURES

- NCERT + Complete GS (Pre + Mains)
- Optional
- CSAT
- Test Series + Mock Interview

COACH UP IAS - YOUR SELECTION IS OUR BUSINESS

COACH UP IAS YOUR SELECTION Is OUR BUSINESS — LIVE CLASSES

AAVEG

14 MONTHS REGULAR FOUNDATION COURSE FOR IAS/PCS

KEY FEATURES

- Complete G S (Pre + Mains)
- Optional
- Essay Writing
- Interview

COACH UP IAS - YOUR SELECTION IS OUR BUSINESS

COACH UP IAS YOUR SELECTION Is OUR BUSINESS — LIVE CLASSES

AAROHAN

20 MONTHS REGULAR FOUNDATION COURSE FOR IAS/PCS

KEY FEATURES

- NCERT + Complete GS (Pre + Mains)
- Optional
- CSAT
- Test Series + Mock Interview

COACH UP IAS - YOUR SELECTION IS OUR BUSINESS

COACH UP IAS YOUR SELECTION Is OUR BUSINESS — LIVE CLASSES

PCS-J

FOUNDATION

FOR 15 MONTHS (PCS-J, HJS, APO)

KEY FEATURES

- LAW
- G K

COACH UP IAS - YOUR SELECTION IS OUR BUSINESS

Saarthi

THE COACH

1 : 1 MENTORSHIP BEYOND THE CLASSES

- **Diagnosis** of candidates based on background, level of preparation and task completed.
- **Customized solution** based on Diagnosis.
- One to One **Mentorship.**
- Personalized schedule **planning.**
- Regular **Progress tracking.**
- **One to One classes** for Needed subjects along with online access of all the subjects.
- Topic wise **Notes Making sessions**.
- One Pager **(1 Topic 1 page)** Notes session.
- **PYQ** (Previous year questions) Drafting session.
- **Thematic charts** Making session.
- **Answer-writing** Guidance Program.
- **MOCK Test** with comprehensive & swift assessment & feedback.



Ashutosh Srivastava
(B.E. , MBA, Gold Medalist)
Mentored 250+ Successful Aspirants over a period of 12+ years for Civil Services & Judicial Services Exams at both the Centre and state levels.



Manish Shukla
Mentored 100+ Successful Aspirants over a period of 9+ years for Civil Services Exams at both the Centre and state levels.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CLASS-VI		
Sr No.	**CHAPTER**	**CHAPTER NAME**
1.	CHAPTER-I	What, Where, How and When**?**
2.	CHAPTER-II	From Hunting-Gathering to Growing Food
3.	CHAPTER-III	In the Earliest Cities
4.	CHAPTER-IV	What Books and Burials Tell Us
5.	CHAPTER-V	Kingdoms, Kings and an Early Republic
6.	CHAPTER-VI	New Questions and Ideas
7.	CHAPTER-VII	Ashoka, the Emperor who Gave up War
8.	CHAPTER-VIII	Vital Villages, Thriving Towns
9.	CHAPTER-IX	Traders, Kings and Pilgrims
10.	CHAPTER-X	New Empires and Kingdoms
11.	CHAPTER-XI	Buildings, Paintings and Books
CLASS-VII		
Sr. No.	**CHAPTER**	**CHAPTER NAME**
1.	CHAPTER-I	Tracing Changes Through a Thousand Years
2.	CHAPTER-II	New Kings and Kingdoms
3.	CHAPTER-III	The Delhi Sultans
4.	CHAPTER-IV	The Mughal Empire
5.	CHAPTER-V	Rulers and Buildings
6.	CHAPTER-VI	Towns, Traders and Craftspersons
7.	CHAPTER-VII	Tribes, Nomads and Settled Communities
8.	CHAPTER-VIII	Devotional Paths to the Divine
9.	CHAPTER-IX	The Making of Regional Cultures
10.	CHAPTER-X	Eighteenth-Century Political Formations

CLASS-VIII		
Sr. No.	**CHAPTER**	**CHAPTER NAME**
1.	CHAPTER-I	How, When and Where
2.	CHAPTER-II	From Trade to Territory: Establishment of Company Power
3.	CHAPTER-III	Ruling the Countryside
4.	CHAPTER-IV	Tribals, Dikus and the Vision of a Golden Age
5.	CHAPTER-V	When People Rebel: 1857 and After
6.	CHAPTER-VI	Weavers, Iron Smelters and Factory Owners
7.	CHAPTER-VII	Civilizing the "Native", Educating the Nation
8.	CHAPTER-VIII	Women, Caste and Reform
9.	CHAPTER-IX	The Making of the National Movement: 1870'S-1947
10.	CHAPTER-X	India After Independence
CLASS-IX		
Sr. No.	**CHAPTER**	**CHAPTER NAME**
1.	CHAPTER-I	The French Revolution
2.	CHAPTER-II	Socialism in Europe and the Russian Revolution
3.	CHAPTER-III	Nazism and the Rise of Hitler
4.	CHAPTER-IV	Forest Society and Colonialism
5.	CHAPTER-V	Pastoralists in the Modern World
CLASS-X		
Sr No.	**CHAPTER**	**CHAPTER NAME**
1.	CHAPTER-I	The Rise of Nationalism in Europe
2.	CHAPTER-II	Nationalism in India
3.	CHAPTER-III	The Making of a Global World
4.	CHAPTER-IV	The Age of Industrialization
5.	CHAPTER-V	Print Culture and the Modern World
CLASS-XI		
Sr No.	**CHAPTER**	**CHAPTER NAME**
1.	CHAPTER-I	From the Beginning of Time

2.	CHAPTER-II	Writing and City Life
3.	CHAPTER-III	An Empire Across Three Continents – The Roman Empire
4.	CHAPTER-IV	The Central Islamic Lands
5.	CHAPTER-V	Nomadic Empires
6.	CHAPTER-VI	Changing Traditions: The Three Orders
7.	CHAPTER-VII	Changing Cultural Traditions
8.	CHAPTER-VIII	Confrontation of Cultures
9.	CHAPTER-IX	The Industrial Revolution
10.	CHAPTER-X	Displacing Indigenous People
11.	CHAPTER-XI	Paths to Modernization
CLASS-XII		
Sr No.	**CHAPTER**	**CHAPTER NAME**
1.	CHAPTER-I	Bricks, Beads and Bones
2.	CHAPTER-II	Kings, Farmers and Towns
3.	CHAPTER-III	Kinship, Caste and Class
4.	CHAPTER-IV	Thinkers, Belief and Buildings
5.	CHAPTER-V	Through the Eyes of Travelers
6.	CHAPTER-VI	Bhakti-Sufi Traditions
7.	CHAPTER-VII	An Imperial Capital: Vijayanagara
8.	CHAPTER-VIII	Peasants, Zamindars and the State
9.	CHAPTER-IX	Kings and Chronicles: The Mughal Courts
10.	CHAPTER-X	Colonialism and The Countryside
11.	CHAPTER-XI	Rebels and the Raj (Revolt of 1857 and its Presentations)
12.	CHAPTER-XII	Colonial Cities (Urbanization, Planning, and Architecture)
13.	CHAPTER-XIII	Mahatma Gandhi and the Nationalist Movement
14.	CHAPTER-XIV	Understanding Partition
15.	CHAPTER-XV	Framing the Constitution

HISTORY CLASS-VI

1 WHAT, WHERE, HOW AND WHEN?

Through History

- We can learn about the standard and ways of living of people, their eating habits, clothing and types of houses they used to live in.
- We can learn about the lives of people such as hunters, farmers, rulers, merchants, artisans, musicians, scientists etc.

Where did people live in the past?

- People used to live along the bank of the Narmada River, they were known as skilled gatherers. They were skilled Gatherers and used to gather food. They knew about the vast wealth of plants in the surrounding forests. They also hunted animals.
- Around 8000 years ago people of Sulaiman and Kirthar hills in the northwest started growing crops such as wheat and barley. There was a significant development of agriculture in the Garo Hills also.
- Rice was first grown by the people of the northern part of Vindhyas.
- Apart from agriculture they also started domesticating animals like sheep, cattle and started living in the villages.
- Around 2500 years ago, various cities were formed around the river Ganga its tributaries and along the sea coasts.
- The southern part of river Ganga was known as Magadha, presently the city is within the state of Bihar. The rulers of Magadha were very powerful. They established a huge kingdom.

How did people use to travel in the past?

- Men and women used to travel from one part to another through hills and high mountains in search of livelihood and to escape from natural disasters such as floods or droughts.
- Merchants travelled with ships and caravans with their valuable goods.
- Many religious teachers used to wander from one place to another to propagate their religious messages.
- Natural frontiers such as hills, mountains and seas were very difficult to cross still it did not become a barrier for the people and many people came and settled in the subcontinent.

Names of the land

- Our country is known by two names – India and Bharat.
- India: India originates from the word Indus, called Sindhu in Sanskrit. It was called Indos or Hindus by the Greeks when they arrived northwest of our country 2500 years ago.
- Bharat: The name Bharata was used for a group of people who lived in the northwest and who are mentioned in the Rigveda, the earliest composition in Sanskrit. Later it was used for the country.

Finding out about the Past

- Manuscripts: Manuscripts comes from the Latin word "Manu", means hand. Manuscripts are books, written by hand on palm leaves in Sanskrit, Prakrit (language used by ordinary people) and Tamil languages. These books provide information about religious practices, medicines, science, etc.
- Over the years, many Manuscripts were eaten away by insects, some were destroyed, but many have survived, often preserved in temples and monasteries.
- Inscriptions: Inscriptions are writings on relatively hard surfaces such as stone or metal. Kings got their orders inscribed so that people could see, read and obey them.
- Archaeology: The study of human history and prehistory through the excavation of sites and the analysis of artefacts and other physical remains.
- The inscriptions and manuscripts are studied by archaeologists. Archaeologists study and explore the remains of buildings made of stones and bricks, paintings and sculptures.
- So there are three sources to know about the past – Manuscripts, Inscriptions and Archaeology.

Different People with Different Pasts

- The past of farmers is different than the past of kings and queens, the lives of merchants and craftsmen were very different.
- Kings used to keep records of their battles and victories whereas, not many records were kept by the hunters, fishing folk, gatherers, farmers or herders. So, the maximum portion of the lives of these people remains unknown.

Ashoka's Inscription in Kandahar

- The Kandahar rock inscription is about 2250 years old, found in Kandahar, present-day Afghanistan.
- It was inscribed on the orders of a ruler named Ashoka. This inscription was inscribed in Greek and Aramaic languages.

What is Decipherment?

- Inscriptions contain scripts and languages. There was a continuous transformation of languages and scripts from time to time.
- Decipherment is the technique of identifying the languages and scripts inscribed on the inscriptions.

What do you mean by dates?

- We count dates, years from the birth of Jesus Christ. You must have heard about the BC and AD.
- All the dates before the birth of Christ counted backward and usually have the letters BC (Before Christ). The years after the birth of Jesus Christ are often suffixed with the letters AD (Anno Domini) which means 'in the year of the Lord (Christ)'.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. The earliest people lived on the bank of which river?
   (a) Tapi **(b)** Bhagirathi
   (c) Narmada **(d)** Yamuna
2. The way, in which a language is written, is known as
   (a) History **(b)** Script
   (c) Edicts **(d)** Archaeology
3. On which river's bank, the cities were developed about 2500 years ago?
   (a) Saraswati **(b)** Yamuna
   (c) Indus **(d)** None of the above
4. Iranian and the Greeks come from _____ around 2500 years ago.
   (a) North West **(b)** South West
   (c) South East **(d)** North East
5. Which of the following language is not used for writing manuscripts?
   (a) Prakrit **(b)** Hindi
   (c) Tamil **(d)** Sanskrit
6. Consider the following statements:
   1. In ancient times, women were not allowed to grow crops.
   2. Crops such as wheat and barley were only confined to the southern part of India.
   Which of the statements given above is /are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
7. When did agriculture start in India?
   (a) 4700 years ago **(b)** 2500 years ago
   (c) 8000 years ago **(d)** 5500 years ago
8. Which city was established on the banks of Ganga?
   (a) Kosala **(b)** Magadha
   (c) Khushinagar **(d)** Anga
9. Son is the tributary of which river?
   (a) Narmada **(b)** Indus
   (c) Ganga **(d)** None of the above
10. People travelled from one place to another in search of
    (a) Food
    (b) Livelihood
    (c) To escape from disasters
    (d) All of the above
11. What helps us ' to find out the records of hunters, fishing folk etc. ?
    (a) Archaeology **(b)** Astrology
    (c) Biology **(d)** All of these
12. Manuscripts were made on the leaves of which tree?
    (a) Neem **(b)** Peepal
    (c) Birch **(d)** Palm

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. In Ancient times, with respect to the Ganga, which area is known as Magadha?
   (a) West of the Ganges
   (b) East of the Ganges
   (c) South of the Ganges
   (d) North-West of the Ganges
2. With respect to the ancient people, consider the following statements:
   1. Skilled gatherers were also known as hunter gatherers as they used to hunt and gather their own food.
   2. Rice was first grown by the people in the southern part of Narmada.
   Which of the statements given above is /are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
3. In the context of the names 'Bharat and India', consider the following statements:
   1. The Iranians and the Greeks who came through the northwest about 2500 years ago called it the Hindos or the Indos and the land to the east of the river was called India.
   2. The name Bharata was used for a group of people who lived in the northwest and were also mentioned in the Rigveda.
   3. The word India originates from the Indus, alternatively known as Sindhu in Sanskrit.
   Which of the statements given above is /are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
4. Regarding the River Narmada, consider the following statements:
   1. People have lived along the banks of Narmada for several hundred thousand years.
   2. People who used to live here were known as skilled gatherers.
   3. They were not aware of the importance of surrounding forests and the vast wealth of plants.
   Which of the statements given above is /are not correct?
   (a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 2 only
5. Consider the following statements regarding the Manuscripts and choose which of the following statement is not correct:
   (a) Books written in the past were called manuscripts.
   (b) These are called manuscripts because they were written by hand (this comes from the Latin word 'manu', meaning hand).
   (c) These were usually written on palm leaves, or on the specially prepared bark of a tree known as the birch, which grows in the Himalayas.
   (d) Manuscripts, written in Sanskrit and Hindi language, were often preserved in temples and monasteries.
6. In ancient times, which language was used by ordinary people?
   (a) Prakrit **(b)** Indo-Aryan
   (c) Greek **(d)** Hindi
7. Consider the following statements, regarding the Archaeologists:
   1. In the present day, the inscriptions and manuscripts are studied by archaeologists.
   2. Archaeology is the scientific study of humanity, concerned with human history, human biology, culture and societies in both the present and past.

3. To find out the eating habits of the people in the past, the bones of animals, birds and fish were also examined by the archaeologists.

Which of the statements given above is /are correct?

(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3 only

8. Ashoka's inscription, founded in Kandahar, was written in which of the following scripts and languages?

(a) Aramaic and Brahmi **(b)** Greek and Brahmi
(c) Devanagari and Tamil **(d)** Greek and Aramaic

9. Consider the following assertion with the given reason:

Assertion: All dates before the birth of Jesus Christ are followed by 'BC' (Before Christ).

Reason: Jesus Christ was the founder of Christianity.

Use the code given below to select the correct answer:

(a) Both assertion and reason are correct and the reason is the correct explanation of the assertion.
(b) Both assertion and reason are correct, but the reason is not the correct explanation of the assertion
(c) Assertion is correct but the reason is not correct.
(d) Assertion is not correct but the reason is correct.

10. Garo hills to the north-east and the Vindhyas in central India, were some of the other areas where _____ developed.

(a) Commercial Markets **(b)** Fishing
(c) Agriculture **(d)** Industry

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Who among the following rulers advised his subjects through this inscription? **[UPSC]**

"Whosoever praises his religious sect or blames other sects out of excessive devotion to his own sect, with the view of glorifying his own sect, rather injures his own sect very severely."

(a) Ashoka **(b)** Samudragupta
(c) Harshavardhana **(a)** Krishnadeva Raya

2. The word 'Hindu' as reference to the people of Hind (India) was first used by: **[UPSC]**

(a) The Arabs **(b)** The Chinese
(c) The Romans **(d)** The Greeks

3. The language used to write source materials in ancient time was: **[SSC]**

(a) Sanskrit **(b)** Pali
(c) Brahmi **(d)** Kharosthi

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In the past, People lived on the banks of the river Narmada and they were skilled gatherers.

2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The script is any particular system of writing or the written means of human communication. Script originated as simply a means of communicating spoken language over long distances as necessitated by trade.
Devanagari, Brahmi, Gurumukhi, Latin script are some examples of scripts used all over the world.

3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Around 2500 years ago, various civilizations were formed on the banks of the river Ganga and its tributaries and along the sea coasts.
The Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro, two famous cities of the Indus valley civilization flourished on the traces of the river Indus and its tributaries 4700 years ago.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Our country was called Hindos or the Indos and the land to the east of the Indus River was termed India by the Iranians and the Greeks around 2500 years ago. They reached here through the northwestern part of the subcontinent.

5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Manuscripts are records written by hand. These were usually written on palm leaves, or on the specially prepared bark of a tree known as the birch. The main language used in writing those books was Sanskrit. Apart from Sanskrit, Prakrit and Tamil were also used.

6. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The areas where women and men first began to grow crops such as wheat and barley about 8000 years ago are the Sulaiman and Kirthar hills to the northwest.
Garo hills to the north-east and the Vindhyas in central India were some of the other areas where agriculture developed. The places where rice was first grown are to the north of the Vindhyas.
It is nowhere mentioned that crops such as wheat and barley were only confined to southern India.

7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Men and women started practicing agriculture around 8000 years ago in the north western region of India.

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Magadha was located on the banks of the river Ganga with its capital at Rajagriha. Among the sixteen mahajanapadas, Magadha became one of the most powerful ones.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Son River, It is also spelled Sone, is principal southern tributary of the Ganges (Ganga) River and it rises in Madhya Pradesh, a state in central India. It flows north past Manpur and then turns northeast.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: People travelled from one part of the subcontinent to another. The hills and high mountains including the Himalayas, deserts, rivers and seas made journeys dangerous at times, but never impossible. So, men and women moved in search of livelihood, food as also to escape from natural disasters like floods or droughts.

11. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The study of human history and prehistory through the excavation of sites and the analysis of artefacts and other physical remains.

12. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Manuscripts are books written by hand on palm leaves in Sanskrit, Prakrit and Tamil languages.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In ancient times the area along these rivers to the south of the Ganga was known as Magadha. Presently, the city is within the state of Bihar. The rulers of Magadha were very powerful; a huge kingdom was established by its rulers. Different kingdoms were set up in various parts of the country.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: People who lived in the subcontinent about two million years ago and who hunted wild animals, caught fish and birds, gathered food to eat, were the Hunter-gatherers, also known as skilled gatherers. Hence, statement 1 is correct.
Rice was first grown by the people in the northern part of Vindhyas. Hence, statement 2 is not correct.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Our country is known by two names– India and Bharat. The word India originates from the Indus, alternatively known as Sindhu in Sanskrit. Hence, statement 3 is correct.
The land was called Hindos or the Indos and the land to the east of the Indus River was termed India by the Iranians and the Greeks around 2500 years ago. They reached here through the northwestern part of the subcontinent. Hence, statement 1 is correct.
The people of the North-West portion of India called the same piece of land as Bharat. Hence, statement 2 is correct.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: People have lived along the banks of river Narmada for several hundred thousand years. Hence, statement 1 is correct.
Some of the earliest people who lived here were skilled gatherers, — that is, people who gathered their food. Hence, statement 2 is correct.
They knew about the vast wealth of plants in the surrounding forests and collected roots, fruits and other forest produce for their food. They also hunted animals. Hence, statement 3 is not correct.
5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Manuscripts: There are several ways of finding out about the past. One is to search for and read books that were written long ago. These are called manuscripts because they were written by hand (this comes from the Latin word 'manu', meaning hand).
These were usually written on palm leaf, or on the specially prepared bark of a tree known as the birch, which grows in the Himalayas.
Many of these were written in Sanskrit, others were in Prakrit (languages used by ordinary people) and Tamil. Hence only the statement 'd' is not correct.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Prakrit is the language used by ordinary people in ancient India. Prakrits were considered the regional spoken (informal) languages of people and Sanskrit was considered the standardized (formal) language used for literary, official and religious purposes across Indian kingdoms of the subcontinent.
Prakrit languages are a group of vernacular Middle Indo-Aryan languages that were used in the Indian subcontinent from around the 3rd century BCE to the 8th century CE. The term Prakrit is usually applied to the middle period of Middle Indo-Aryan languages.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Archeology is the study of human history and prehistory through the excavation of sites and the analysis of artefacts and other physical remains. The Inscriptions, Manuscripts are studied by archaeologists. Hence, statement 1 is correct but statement 2 is not correct. Given statement 2 is the definition of Anthropology, not Archeology.
Archaeologists study the remains of buildings made of stone and brick, paintings and sculptures. They also look for bones — of animals, birds and fish — to find out what people ate in the past. Hence, statement 3 is correct.
8. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Ashoka's Inscription in Kandahar: The Kandhar rock inscription is about 2250 years old, found in Kandahar, present-day Afghanistan.
It was inscribed on the orders of a ruler named Ashoka. This inscription was inscribed in Greek and Aramaic languages.
9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Both assertion and reason are correct, but the reason is not the correct explanation of the assertion.
In the present day, each of the months, days and years are counted based on the birth of Jesus Christ. He was the founder of Christianity.
The dates before the birth of Christ are calculated in the backward direction and are suffixed with the letters BC 'Before Christ'.
The years after the birth of Jesus Christ are often suffixed with the letters AD 'Anno Domini'.
10. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Garo hills to the north-east and the Vindhyas in central India. These were some of the other areas where Agriculture developed. The places where rice was first grown are to the north of the Vindhyas.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Ashoka has been credited with the propagation of the tenets of the Buddhist sect. Ashoka's edicts and inscriptions contained instructions on religious matters especially Buddhism and rules for the conduct of Bhikshuks.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Arabs were the first to use the word 'Hindu'. Megasthenes' 'Indica' said the name for India and Indians around the 4th Century B.C.E. This word was misunderstood by Arabs. They used the word Hindu.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Pali is a Middle Indo-Aryan language (of Prakrit group) of the Indian subcontinent. It is best known as the language of many of the earliest extant Buddhist scriptures, as collected in the Pali Canon or Tipitaka and as the liturgical language of Theravada Buddhism.

HISTORY CLASS-VI

2 FROM HUNTING-GATHERING TO GROWING FOOD

The Earliest People and Why did they use to travel from one place to another?

- In the early period, people used to gather food by hunting and gathering. These were known as Hunter-Gatherers. They hunted animals, caught fish and gathered plants to fulfil their food requirement.
- If they had stayed at one place for a long time, they would have eaten up all the available plant and animal resources.
- Animals move from place to place so these people had to follow their movements to hunt them.
- Plant and trees are dependent on seasons, so people had to move season to season in search of different kinds of plants.
- People used to travel in search of water, because water was very important for plants, people and animals to survive.

How do we know about the earliest people?

- Archaeologists have found some of the things hunter-gatherers made and used.
- They made various tools used for hunting and gathering from stones, woods and bones.
- Some of the stone tools were used to cut down wood. Wood was used to light a fire, create huts.

Choosing a place to live in

- They lived near to the sources of water, such as rivers, lakes and streams.
- They tried to find places where sufficient availability of stones, wood and food was present.

Bhimbhetka Caves

- The Bhimbetka rock shelters are an archaeological site in MP that spans the prehistoric Palaeolithic and Mesolithic periods.
- Palaeolithic comes from two greek words 'Palaeo' means 'Old' and 'Lithos' means 'Stone'. Hence, this period is also called the Old Stone Age.
- The period when we find environmental changes, beginning about 12,000 years ago till about 10,000 years ago is called the Mesolithic (middle stone). Stone tools found during this period are generally tiny and are called microliths.
- It exhibits the earliest traces of human life in India.
- It is a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
- The Bhimbetka rock shelters were discovered by V S Wakankar in 1957.

Rock Paintings

- Earliest people used to draw images and symbols on rock surfaces. The first prehistoric paintings were uncovered in Madhya Pradesh's Bhimbetka caves.
- Many of the caves in which these early people lived have paintings on the walls.
- Some of the best examples are from Madhya Pradesh and southern Uttar Pradesh.

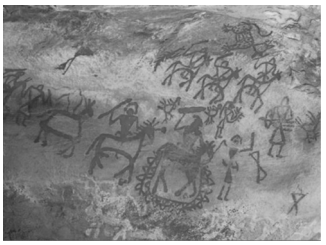


Figure: Bhimbhetka Rock Paintings

Finding out about the fire

- Traces of ash show that the people at that time have invented the fire. It could have been used for many things:
- 1. A source of light, 2. To roast meat and 3. To scare away animals

> **Note:** Herding is the act of bringing individual animals together into a group (herd), maintaining the group and moving the group from place to place—or any combination of those.

Beginning of Farming and Herding

- Around 12,000 years ago, there were major changes in the climate of the world, which led to the development of grasslands in many areas. The number of animals like deer, goat, sheep and cattle increased due to the increase in grasslands.
- People start thinking about herding and rearing these animals themselves. Fishing also became important.
- After the development of grasslands, people came to know about growing wheat, rice and barley.
- People also have started taming animals and the first animal to be tamed was the wild ancestor of the dog. Later they started domestication of sheep, goats and cattle as well. In this way, men started herding.

Beginning of a New Era

- People started living in the same place for a longer period of time to look after the plants – till the grains ripened. They used to store grains in large clay pots, wove baskets or dug pits into the ground for food and seeds.
- Animals were nurtured better now because they were the source of milk, meat, etc. as per the requirement. In other words, animals that are reared can be used as a 'store' of food.
- Earliest farmers and herders were found all over the subcontinent, the most important sites were found in the north-west, in present-day Kashmir and in east and south India.

Names and Dates

Period	Time Period
The Palaeolithic Period	2 million years ago to 12,000 years ago
The Mesolithic Period	12,000 years ago till about 10,000 years ago
The Neolithic Period	10,000 years ago till 4500 years ago

A settled life

- Traces of huts, houses were also found by archaeologists in different parts of the subcontinent. People built pit houses in Kashmir.
- Stone tools have been found from many sites. The stone tools belonging to the Neolithic age were different from that of tools of the Palaeolithic age.
- The tools of the Neolithic age were polished and given an accurate cutting edge. Some tools were made of bones that belonged to the Palaeolithic age.
- Many kinds of earthen pots have also been found. People used to store things, cook food in these pots.
- People also began weaving cloth, using different kinds of materials. For example cotton.

Living and dying in Mehrgarh

- Mehrgarh is a Neolithic archaeological site situated in Balochistan, Pakistan. It is located near the Bolan Pass, which is one of the most important routes for Iran.
- Mehrgarh was one of the places where people learned to grow barley and wheat and rear sheep and goats for the first time in this area. In this village, many animal bones were found.
- When people die, he/she was buried with goats, which were probably meant to serve as food in the next world. So we can say that they used to believe that there is some form of life after death.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. _____ is the name given to the process in which people grow plants and look after animals.
(a) Plantation **(b)** Rearing
(c) Herding **(d)** Domestication

2. The art of making Pot is called
(a) Poetries **(b)** Potteries
(c) Pottery **(d)** Artefacts

3. Earliest people began using pots for:
(a) Making Food **(b)** Storing Food
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

4. Which animal was first domesticated by the earliest people?
(a) Dog **(b)** Sheep
(c) Goat **(d)** Elephant

5. Bhimbetka caves & rock shelters are close to which river valley?
(a) Ganga River Valley
(b) Narmada River Valley
(c) Indus River Valley
(d) Son River Valley

6. Consider the following statements regarding rock paintings:
1. Remnants of rock paintings have been found on the walls of the caves.
2. Earliest people use to draw on rock surfaces that depict their social and economic life.
Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

7. Why did hunter-gatherers move from place to place?
(a) In search of food **(b)** In search of shelters
(c) Both (a) and (b) **(d)** None of these

8. Mesolithic period falls under which period?
(a) 2 million years to 12000 years ago
(b) 12,000 years ago to 10,000 years ago
(c) From about 10,000 years ago
(d) None of these

9. Why did people store grains?
(a) For Food **(b)** To use as Seeds
(c) Both (a) and (b) **(d)** None of these

10. Where is the evidence of wheat, barley, sheep, goat and cattle found?
(a) Koldihwa (UP)
(b) Gufkral (Kashmir)
(c) Hallur (Andhra Pradesh)
(d) Mehrgarh (Pakistan)

11. Where is Mehrgarh, a Neolithic archaeological site situated?
(a) Pakistan **(c)** Tajikistan
(c) Afghanistan **(d)** Taliban

12. Which of the following is not associated with the development of grasslands?
(a) Rice **(b)** Wheat
(c) Barely **(d)** Apple

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements regarding Hunter-Gatherers:
1. They used to move from one place to another to fight other tribes and occupy their lands.
2. They had to follow the movements of animals to hunt them.
3. They moved from season to season in search of different kinds of plants.
4. Hunter-gatherers chose to live in caves and rock shelters because they provided them protection from the rain, heat and wind.
Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3 only
(c) 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4

2. The middle stone period is also known as _____.
(a) Mesolithic **(b)** Neolithic
(c) Palaeolithic **(d)** Microliths

3. Which among the following period of the Stone Age first witnessed the domestication of animals?
   (a) Paleolithic Age **(b)** Chalcolithic Age
   (c) Neolithic Age **(d)** Mesolithic Age
4. Traces of ash has been found in which of the following archaeological sites?
   (a) Caves of Bhimbetka **(b)** Kurnool Cave
   (c) Koldihwa **(d)** Hunsgi
5. Consider the following statements regarding the stone ages?
   1. The Palaeolithic period extends from 50,000 years ago to about 12,000 years ago.
   2. The Palaeolithic period can be divided into lower, middle and upper Paleolithic age.
   3. In Palaeolithic, "Palaeo" means Age and "Lithos" means Stone.
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
   (c) 2 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only
6. In the context of the new changes that came from climatic change in the Middle Ages, consider the following statements:
   1. In many areas, increasing temperature led to the development of grasslands.
   2. Fishing also became important.
   3. Grains like wheat, barley and rice grew naturally.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3 only
7. In the context of Bhimbhetka Caves, consider the following statements:
   1. The Bhimbhetka caves are located in the Sindhudurg District of Maharashtra.
   2. The Bhimbhetka Cave is a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
   3. The Bhimbetka rock shelters were discovered by V S Wakankar in 1957.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3 only
8. Consider the following statements regarding Mehrgarh:
   1. Mehrgarh was one of the places where people learned to grow barley and wheat.
   2. The shape of the houses at Mehrgarh was square or rectangular.
   3. Mehrgarh people used to believe that there is a life after death.
   4. In Mehrgarh, the dead person was buried with the dog.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 1, 3 and 4 only
   (c) 2 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 4 only

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Consider the following statements regarding the earliest Palaeolithic tools: **[UPSC]**
   1. The beginning of the use of tools by humans has been a unique phenomenon and may be said to have laid the foundation of the science of the use of tools and machines for the aid of humans in their various endeavours.
   2. The regular use of tools, beginning 2.6 m.y. ago in East Africa is well attested and accompanies many earlier and later hominid fossils.
   3. In India, no human fossils have been found associated with Stone Age tools but we do have some idea of the antiquity of tools from the geological datings.
   Which of the following statement(s) is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** All of the above
2. Which of the following pairs is correctly matched? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Lower Palaeolithic - Tools made on flakes and blades
   (b) Middle Palaeolithic - Tools made on flakes
   (c) Upper Palaeolithic - Handaxe and cleaver industries
   (d) All of the above
3. Which of the following sites belongs to the Lower Palaeolithic cultures? **[UPSC CDS]**
   (a) Pahalgam **(b)** Belan valley
   (c) Bhimbetka **(d)** All of the above
4. Which of the following archaeological sites has evidence of pit-dwellings? **[SSC]**
   (a) Burzahom **(b)** Mehrgarh
   (c) Rana Ghundai **(d)** Palavoy
5. The rock paintings found at Bhimbetka generally belong to which of the following periods? **[SSC]**
   (a) Paleolithic **(b)** Mesolithic
   (c) Microlithic **(d)** Neolithic

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Domestification is the adaptation of an animal from a wild or natural state (as by selective breeding) to life in close association with humans.
   It is the process of adapting wild plants and animals for human use. Domestic species are raised for food, work, clothing, medicine and many other uses. Domesticated plants and animals must be raised and cared by humans. Domesticated species are not wild.
2. **Option (c) is correct**
   Explanation: Pottery is the process and the products of forming vessels and other objects with clay and other ceramic materials, which are fired at high temperatures to give them a hard and durable form. Major types include earthenware, stoneware and porcelain.

3. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: People began using pots for cooking and storing food, especially grains like rice, wheat and lentils that now became an important part of the diet.

4. Option (a) is correct

Explanation: People started taming animals by leaving food for them near their shelters. The first animal to be tamed was the wild ancestor of the dog. Animals such as sheep, goat, cattle and also the pig lived in herds and most of them ate grass.

5. Option (b) is correct

Explanation: Bhimbetka is an old site with caves and rock shelters. People chose these natural caves because they provided shelter from the rain, heat and wind. These rock shelters are close to the Narmada valley.

6. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: Earliest people used to draw images and symbols on rock surfaces. Many of the caves in which these early people lived have paintings on the walls.

In India, remnants of rock paintings have been found on the walls of caves situated in several districts of Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh andhra Pradesh, Telangana, Karnataka, Kerala, Bihar and Uttarakhand.

7. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: Hunter-gatherers travelled from place to place to find food, shelters, water etc.

If they stayed at one place for a long time, they would have eaten up all the available plant and animal resources. Therefore, they went to another place for more food.

In search of water, people travelled from place to place. Water is necessary for survival.

8. Option (b) is correct

Explanation: The period when we find environmental changes, beginning about 12,000 years ago till about 10,000 years ago is called the Mesolithic Age (middle stone). Stone tools found during this period are generally tiny and are called microliths.

9. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: People had to stay in the same place for a long time looking after the plants, watering, weeding, driving away animals and birds – till the grain ripened. Then they start thinking of storing the grain for food and seeds. They began making large clay pots, wove baskets or dug pits into the ground.

10. Option (d) is correct

Explanation: Mehrgarh is a Neolithic archaeological site situated in Balochistan, Pakistan. It is located near the Bolan Pass, which is one of the most important routes for Iran.

Mehrgarh was one of the places where people learned to grow barley and wheat and rear sheep and goats for the first time in this area.

11. Option (a) is correct

Explanation: *Mehrgarh* is a Neolithic archaeological site situated in *Balochistan*, Pakistan. It is located near the Bolan Pass, which is one of the most important routes into Iran.

12. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: Apple is not associated with development of grassland. After the development of grasslands, people came to know about growing wheat, rice and barley.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Earliest people known as Hunter-Gatherers used to move from place to place to find food, shelter, water etc. Hence, statement 1 is not correct.

Animals move from place to place so these people had to follow their movements for hunting purposes. People may have moved from season to season in search of different kinds of plants. Hence, statement 2 & 3 are correct.

Hunter-gatherers used to live in caves and rock shelters because they provided them protection from the rain, heat and wind. Hence, statement 4 is correct.

2. Option (a) is correct

Explanation: Mesolithic, also called Middle Stone Age, ancient cultural stage that existed between the Paleolithic (Old Stone Age), with its chipped stone tools and the Neolithic (New Stone Age), with its polished stone tools.

The period when we find environmental changes, beginning about 12,000 years ago till about 10,000 years ago is called the Mesolithic Age (middle stone).

3. Option (d) is correct

Explanation: Mesolithic Age falls roughly from 9000 B.C. to 4000 B.C. It was the transitional phase between the Paleolithic Age and Neolithic Age.

Although Mesolithic men were still dependent largely on hunting, now they began taming the animals like dog, sheep, goat, cow-ox, buffalo, wild horse, etc.

The earliest evidence of the taming of animals was found from Adamgarh of Madhya Pradesh and Baghore of Rajasthan. They are Mesolithic sites. Hence, Option 4 is correct.

4. Option (b) is correct

Explanation: Traces of ash have been found in the Kurnool caves. This suggests that people in the past used fire. This suggests that people were familiar with the use of fire. Fire could have been used for many things: as a source of light, to roast meat and to scare away animals.

5. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: The Palaeolithic period extends from 2 million years ago to about 12,000 years ago. Hence, statement 1 is not correct.

This long stretch of time is divided into the Lower, Middle and Upper Palaeolithic. Hence, statement 2 is correct.

The Palaeolithic comes from two Greek words, 'palaeo', meaning old and 'lithos', meaning stone. Hence, statement 3 is not correct.

6. Option (d) is correct

Explanation: All the above three statements are correct:

Around 12,000 years ago, there were major changes in the climate of the world, with a shift to relatively warm conditions. In many areas, this led to the development of grasslands.

This in turn led to an increase in the number of deer, antelope, goat, sheep and cattle, i.e. animals that survived on grass. Fishing also became important.

This was also a time when several grain bearing grasses, including wheat, barley and rice grew naturally in different parts of the subcontinent.

Men, women and children probably collected these grains as food and learnt where they grew and when they ripened.

7. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: The Bhimbetka rock shelters are an archaeological site in central India that spans the Paleolithic and Mesolithic periods, as well as the historic period.

It is located in the Raisen District in the Indian state of Madhya Pradesh about 45 kilometres (28 mi) south-east of Bhopal. Hence, statement 1 is not correct.

It is a UNESCO World Heritage Site that consists of seven hills and over 750 rock shelters distributed over 10 km (6.2 mi). Hence, statement 2 is correct.

These caves were discovered in 1957 by Dr. V. S. Wakankar, a well-known archaeologist. Hence, statement 3 is correct.

8. Option (a) is correct

Explanation: Mehrgarh was one of the places where people learnt to grow barley and wheat and rear sheep and goats for the first time in this area. Hence, statement 1 is correct.

At this village, many animal bones were found. Other finds at Mehrgarh include remains of square or rectangular houses. Hence, statement 2 is correct.

When people die, their relatives and friends pay respect to them. The dead person was buried with goats, which were probably meant to serve as food in the next world. Hence, statement 3 is correct but statement 4 is not correct.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The beginning of the use of tools by the humans has been a unique phenomenon and may be said to have laid the foundation of science of use of tools and machines for the aid of humans in their various endeavour.

The regular use of tools, beginning 2.6 m.y. ago in east Africa is well attested and accompanies many earlier and later hominid fossils. In case of Indonesia several hominid remains have recently been dated between 1.8 and 1.6 m.y.

In China the early stone tools are associated with human fossils dated between 1.7 and 1.9 m.y. In India, unfortunately, no human fossils have been found associated with Stone Age tools but we do have some idea of the antiquity of tools from the geological datings.

2. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: The Palaeolithic Age in India is divided into three phases, based on tool technology. These phases are:

1. Lower Palaeolithic- Handaxe and cleaver industries
2. Middle Palaeolithic- Tools made on flakes
3. Upper Palaeolithic- Tools made on flakes and blades

3. Option (d) is correct

Explanation: Some of the important sites of Lower Palaeolithic cultures are Pahalgam in Kashmir, Belan valley in Allahabad district (Uttar Pradesh) Bhimbetka and Adamgarh in Hoshangabad district, (Madhya Pradesh), Singi Talav in Nagaur district (Rajasthan), Nevasa in Ahmadnagar district (Maharashtra), Hunsgi in Gulburga district (in Kanlataka) and the famous site of Attirampakkam (Tamil Nadu).

4. Option (a) is correct

Explanation: Burzahom archaeological sites have evidence of pit-dwellings. It is located in the Kashmir Valley of the Indian state Jammu and Kashmir.

As per the archeological excavations, there were four phases of cultural significance between 3000 BC to 1000 B.C.

The Burzahom site revealed the transition from the subterranean and ground-level housing features of the Neolithic people to the mudbrick structures of the Megalithic people.

5. Option (b) is correct

Explanation: The Rock paintings found at Bhimbetka (near Bhopal) belonging generally to the Mesolithic period indicate the artistic taste of the people.

HISTORY CLASS-VI

3 IN THE EARLIEST CITIES

The Story of Harappa

- Harappa was one of the oldest cities and the first city to be discovered in the subcontinent.
- Harappa was a modern city located in what is now Pakistan. In 1856, the famous East India Company accidentally discovered Harappa while building a railway.
- At first, the workers thought it was the ruins of an ordinary broken city and began to use bricks for construction projects.
- About eighty years ago, the archaeologists realized that it was not one of the ordinary ruins and realised that this was one of the oldest cities in the subcontinent. These cities developed about 4700 years ago.

Harappa -The Earliest Civilization

- The most striking feature of the Harappan cities is their town planning. The Harappan city was divided into 2 parts:
  1. **Citadel:** Citadel was placed in the west of the city, which was smaller in size but higher than the lower town.
  2. **Lower Town:** Lower town was placed on the east and was larger in size than the citadel.
- Baked bricks were used to build walls and the bricks were laid in an interlocking pattern that made the walls strong.
- The famous Great Bath was found in Mohenjo-Daro, one of the earliest cities of Harappan civilization.
  1. Important people took a dip in this tank on special occasions.
  2. There were steps leading down to it from two sides, there were rooms on all sides.
  3. Water was probably brought in from a well and drained out after use.
- Kalibangan and Lothal had fire altars, where sacrifices may have been performed. Mohenjo-Daro, Harappa and Lothal had elaborate store houses.
- Many of these cities had covered drains. Smaller drains were connected to bigger drains.
- Houses were either one or two storeys high with a separate bathing area and some had wells to supply water.
- All three — houses, drains and streets — were probably planned and built at the same time.

Life in Harappa

- Rulers*:* They were the leaders of the place and they sent people to faraway lands to get precious stones, metals and other important things.
- Scribes: They were the ones who knew writings and helped to prepare the seals.

New Crafts in the city

- There were men and women, crafts persons who used to make all kinds of things.
- Many terracotta toys have been found in Harappan cities, which show that children must have played with these.
- Most of the objects that were made and found in Harappan cities were of stone, shell and metal, including copper, bronze, gold and silver.
- Copper and bronze were used to make tools, weapons, ornaments and vessels.
- Gold and silver were used to make ornaments and vessels.
- The Harappan people made seals by using stones of rectangular shapes that had pictures of animals on them.
- The Harappan people made seals by using stones of rectangular shapes that had pictures of animals on them.



Figure: Terracotta Toys



Figure: Indus Valley Seals

Raw Materials

- Raw materials are substances that are either found naturally or produced by farmers or herders. Raw materials are processed to produce finished goods.
- The Harappans probably got copper from present-day Rajasthan and from Oman in West Asia.
- Tin, which was mixed with copper to produce bronze, had been brought from present-day Afghanistan and Iran.
- Gold had been brought from present-day Karnataka and precious stones from present-day Gujarat, Iran and Afghanistan.

Food habits of the people

- Harappans grew wheat, barley, pulses, peas, rice, sesame, linseed and mustard.
- The plough was used to dig the earth for turning the soil and planting seeds.
- The water was stored and supplied to the fields when the plants were growing.
- The Harappans reared cattle, sheep, goat and buffalo.
- Harappan people also grew various fruits like berries and fishing as well as they hunted for wild animals like antelopes.

- Harappans grew wheat, barley, pulses, peas, rice, sesame, linseed and mustard. They also developed some new tools known as plough and was used to dig earth for planting the seeds and turning the soil.

A Closer look at the Harappan Sites – Dholavira and Lothal

Dholavira

- The city of Dholavira was excavated in 1990 by RS Bisht and his team.
- This city had fresh water and fertile soil.
- There was also a large open area in the settlement, where public ceremonies were held.
- Dholavira was divided into three parts and each part was surrounded by massive stone walls, with entrances through gateways.
- Large letters of the Harappan script were carved out of white stone and inlaid in wood.

Lothal

- The city of Lothal stood beside a tributary of the Sabarmati, in Gujarat, close to the Gulf of Khambat.
- The raw materials such as semi-precious stones were easily available in the city.
- Lothal is the only site that has an old brick dockyard. The dockyard is surrounded by brick walls to protect them from heavy floods.
- Lothal was the city where the first tidal port was found.

The mystery behind the end of earliest civilization

- Around 3900 years ago we find the beginning of a major change.
- People stopped living in many of the cities. Writings, seals and weights were no longer used.
- Raw materials brought from long distances became rare.
- In Mohenjo-Daro, we found that garbage was piled up on the streets, the drainage system broke down and new, less impressive houses were built, even over the streets.
- The cause for the breakdown of the Indus Valley Civilization is not yet known by anyone. Many scholars came up with different reasons for the breakdown.
- Some scholars suggest that the rivers dried up. Others suggest that there was deforestation. In some areas there were floods. But none of these reasons can explain the end of all the cities.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. When did Harappan cities develop?
(a) About 4,700 years ago
(b) About 3,700 years ago
(c) About 2,700 years ago
(d) About 1,700 years ago

2. A place where surplus grain was stored was known as:
(a) Storage **(b)** Warehouse
(c) Basket **(d)** Granaries

3. Which of the following was the first city to be discovered in the Indian subcontinent?
(a) Harappa **(b)** Mohenjo-daro
(c) Lothal **(d)** Sotka Koh

4. What was the color of the Faience?
(a) Red **(b)** Blue or Sea Green
(c) Yellow **(d)** Black

5. How many storeys of houses were generally found in Harappan cities?
(a) One or two storeys **(b)** Four to five storeys
(c) Multi storeys **(d)** None of these

6. Great bath have been found at which site of Harappan Civilization?
(a) Harappa **(b)** Dholavira
(c) Lothal **(d)** Mohenjo-Daro

7. In the context of the characteristics of the cities of Harappa civilization, which of the following statements is not correct?
(a) Many of these cities were divided into two or more parts.
(b) The walls of raw bricks were built around each part.
(c) Archaeologists called the lower part of the city as the lower-town and the higher part as citadel.
(d) Usually, the western was smaller but higher and the eastern was larger but lower.

8. Who supplied food to craft persons, scribes and rulers in the cities?
(a) Local citizens **(b)** Farmers and herders
(c) Post men **(d)** All of these

9. What was used to dig the earth for turning the soil and planting seeds?
(a) Digger **(b)** Axe
(c) Plough **(d)** Plaster

10. A Dockyard was found in which of the following Harappan sites?
(a) Lothal **(b)** Harappa
(c) Chanhudado **(d)** Mohenjo-Daro

11. Where is Mehrgarh located today?
(a) Uttar Pradesh **(b)** Andhra Pradesh
(c) Pakistan **(d)** China

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Match the following:

I.	Mohenjo-Daro	Great Bath
II.	Kalibangan	Port Town
III.	Lothal	Fire Altars
IV.	Dholavira	City divided into three parts

Choose the incorrect pair as given above:
(a) I only **(b)** II only
(c) III & IV only **(d)** None of the above

2. Consider the following statements:
1. Harappa was the first city to be discovered in the subcontinent.

2. Harappa was one of the oldest cities in the subcontinent, which archaeologists found 80 years ago.
3. The part to the east, which was bigger and higher, was called the citadel.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

3. Harappan cities were found in which of the following given states?
   1. Sind (Pakistan) 2. Gujarat (India)
   3. Rajasthan (India) 4. Haryana (India)
   5. Punjab (India)

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

(a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 3 and 4 only
(c) 1, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5

4. In the context of beads and stone weights, consider the following statements:
   1. Carnelian stones were used in the construction of beads.
   2. Limestone was commonly used to make weights.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

5. Which among the following is the most unique feature of Dholavira site of the Indus Valley Civilization?
   (a) Its cities were horizontally divided in multiple parts
   (b) Its cities were unevenly divided
   (c) Its cities were divided into 3 parts
   (d) None of these
6. Consider the following statements:
   1. Copper and bronze were only used to make tools and weapons.
   2. Gold and silver were used to make ornaments and vessels.
   3. The Harappans also made pots with beautiful black designs.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

7. In the context of the imported raw materials in the Harappan civilization; match List 1 with the List 2.

List 1 (Raw Material)		List 2 (Location)	
A.	Copper	**1.**	Gujarat
B.	Tin	**2.**	Afghanistan
C.	Gold	**3.**	Rajasthan
D.	Precious Stone	**4.**	Karnataka

Choose the correct code:

(a) A-3, B-2, C-4, D-1 **(b)** A-2, B-3, C-4, D-1
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1, D-4 **(d)** A-2, B-3, C-1, D -4

8. In the context of the villages of Harappan period, which of the following statements is not correct?
   (a) Farmers and herders lived in villages.
   (b) The Harappans grew wheat, barley, pulses, peas, rice, sesame, linseed and mustard.
   (c) Using the plough for tilling the fields was a new thing of the time.
   (d) All Harappan cities received sufficient water for irrigation.
9. Which of the following was/were the cause/s of decline of Harappan civilization?
   1. River drying up 2. Deforestation
   3. Rulers losing control

Choose the correct answer from the code given below:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

10. With respect to the town planning in Indus Valley Civilization, consider the following statements:
    1. Harappans cities were famous for their remarkable town planning and an excellent system of drainage and sanitation.
    2. All the Harappan Cities had Citadel and a lower town.
    3. The houses in the cities were made up by burnt bricks and they followed the grid system.
    4. The drainage system of Mohenjo-Daro was very impressive.

Choose the correct answer from the code given below:

(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3 only
(c) 1, 3 and 4 only **(d)** All of the above

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Which one of the following ancient towns is well known for its elaborate system of water harvesting and management by building a series of dams and channelising water into connected reservoirs? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Dholavira **(b)** Kalibangan
   (c) Rakhigarhi **(d)** Ropar
2. Which one of the following is not a Harappan site? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Chanhudaro **(b)** KotDiji
   (c) Sohgaura **(d)** Desalpur
3. Which of the following characterizes/characterize the people of the Indus Valley Civilization? **[UPSC]**
   1. They possessed great palaces and temples
   2. They worshipped both male and female deities
   3. They employed horse-drawn chariots

Select the correct statement/statements using the codes given below:

(a) 1 and 2 only
(b) 2 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3
(d) None of the statements given above is correct

4. Regarding the Indus Valley Civilization, consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**

1. It was predominantly a secular civilization and the religious element, though present, did not dominate the scene.
2. During this period, cotton was used for manufacturing textiles in India.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

5. Indus valley civilization flourished in which period? **[SSC]**

(a) 2600 – 1900 B.C. **(b)** 1000 – 750 B.C.
(c) 3500 – 2500 B.C. **(d)** 1600 – 1000 B.C.

6. Which ancient city of Indus-Valley Civilization was famous for its dock yard? **[SSC]**

(a) Dholavira **(b)** Lothal
(c) Chanhudaro **(d)** Mohenjo-daro

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: As this was the first city to be discovered, all other sites from where similar buildings (and other things) were found were described as Harappan. These cities developed about 4700 years ago. Very often, old buildings are pulled down to make way for new construction.

2. Option (d) is correct
Explanation: Granaries are often built above the ground to keep the stored food away from mice and other animals. Granaries were found at several sites such as Harappa, Lothal and Mohenjo-daro.

3. Option (a) is correct
Explanation: About eighty years ago, archaeologists found the site of Harappa and realized that this was one of the oldest cities in the subcontinent. As this was the first city to be discovered, all other sites from where similar buildings (and other things) were found were described as Harappan. These cities developed about 4700 years ago.

4. Option (b) is correct
Explanation: Faience is a material that is artificially produced. It is a gum which is used to shape sand or powdered quartz into an object. It is used to make beads, bangles, earrings and tiny vessels. The colours of the glaze were usually blue or sea green.

5. Option (a) is correct
Explanation: In Harappan cities, the houses were either one or two storeys high, with rooms built around a courtyard. Most houses had a separate bathing area and some had wells to supply water.

6. Option (d) is correct
Explanation: In Mohenjo-Daro, a very special tank, which archaeologists call the Great Bath, was built in this area. This was lined with bricks, coated with plaster and made water-tight with a layer of natural tar. Important people took a dip in this tank on special occasions.

7. Option (b) is correct
Explanation: Statement (a) (c) (d) are correct, but the statement (b) is not correct.
The bricks were so well made that they have lasted for thousands of years.
The bricks were laid in an interlocking pattern and that made the walls strong.

8. Option (b) is correct
Explanation: While many people lived in the cities, others living in the countryside grew crops and reared animals. These farmers and herders supplied food to craftspersons, scribes and rulers in the cities.

9. Option (c) is correct
Explanation: A new tool, the plough, was used to dig the earth for turning the soil and planting seeds. While real ploughs, which were probably made of wood, have not survived, toy models have been found.

10. Option (a) is correct
Explanation: Lothal is believed to be at least 5,000 years old and was the only port-town of the Indus Valley Civilization. Lothal's dock connected the city to the Sabarmati River which was an important trade route between Harappan cities in Sindh (now in Pakistan) and the peninsula of Saurashtra.

11. Option (c) is correct
Explanation: Mehrgarh is a Neolithic archaeological site situated on the Kacchi Plain of Balochistan in Pakistan.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Pair 1, 3 and 4 is correct but Pair 2 is not correct.
The Great Bath is part of a large citadel complex that was found in the 1920s during excavations of Mohenjo-daro, one of the main centres of the Indus civilization.
The excavated site of Lothal is the only port-town of the Indus Valley Civilisation. Lothal is famous for the discovery of several ruins of the Indus Valley Civilization. Lothal is located between the Sabarmati River and its tributary Bhogavo.
At Kalibangan, fire altars have been discovered; similar to those found at Lothal which S.R. Rao thinks could have served no other purpose than a ritualistic one.
Dholavira city itself is divided into three parts — the Citadel, the Middletown and the Lower town.

2. Option (c) is correct
Explanation: About eighty years ago, archaeologists found the site and realised that this was one of the oldest cities in the subcontinent. As this was the

first city to be discovered, all other sites from where similar buildings (and other things) were found were described as Harappan. Hence, statement 1 and 2 are correct.

Many of Harappan cities were divided into two or more parts. Usually, the part to the west was smaller but higher. Archaeologists describe this as the citadel. Hence, statement 3 is not correct.

3. Option (d) is correct

Explanation: Harappan Civilization was found in Punjab and Sind in Pakistan and in Gujarat, Rajasthan, Haryana and Punjab in India. Archaeologists have found a set of unique objects in almost all these cities: red pottery painted with designs in black, stone weights, seals, special beads, copper tools and long stone blades.

4. Option (a) is correct

Explanation: A large variety of material was used to make beads. It included red colour stone like carnelian, jasper, crystal, quartz etc.

Stone weights were made of chert, a kind of stone. These were probably used to weigh precious stones or metals.

5. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: Dholavira, the Harappan City in the Rann of Kutch, Gujarat has become the 40th site from India to get the UNESCO's World Heritage tag. The archaeological site of a Harappan-era city, was added to the heritage site list on July 27th 2021. Archaeologist Jagat Pati Joshi discovered Dholavira in 1968.

The town of Dholavira was divided into three parts: the Citadel, the Middletown and the Lower town.

6. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: Most of the things that have been found by archaeologists are made of stone, shell and *metal*, including copper, bronze, gold and silver.

Copper and bronze were used to make tools, weapons, ornaments and vessels. Gold and silver were used to make ornaments and vessels. Hence statement 1 is not correct but statement 2 is correct.

Gold and silver were used to make ornaments and vessels. Harappans also made stone seals. They made pots with beautiful black designs. Hence, statement 3 is correct.

7. Option (a) is correct

Explanation:

- The Harappans probably got copper from present-day Rajasthan and even from Oman in West Asia.
- Tin, which was mixed with copper to produce bronze, may have been brought from present-day Afghanistan and Iran.
- Gold could have come all the way from present-day Karnataka.
- Precious stones come from present-day Gujarat, Iran and Afghanistan

8. Option (d) is correct

Explanation: Statement (a) is correct. While many people lived in the cities, others living in the countryside grew crops and reared animals. These farmers and herders supplied food to crafts persons, scribes and rulers in the cities.

Statement (b) is correct. People from Harappa used to grow wheat, barley, pulses, peas, rice, sesame and mustard.

Statement (c) is correct. A new tool, the plough, was used to dig the earth for turning the soil and planting seeds. While real ploughs, which were probably made of wood, have not survived, toy models have been found.

Statement (d) is not correct. As this region does not receive heavy rainfall, some form of irrigation may have been used. This means that water was stored and supplied to the fields when the plants were growing.

9. Option (d) is correct

Explanation: Some scholars suggest that the rivers dried up. Others suggest that there was deforestation. This could have happened because fuel was required for baking bricks and for smelting copper ores.

Besides, grazing by large herds of cattle, sheep and goat may have destroyed the green cover. In some areas there were floods.

But none of these reasons can explain the end of all the cities.

Flooding, or a river drying up would have had an effect in only some areas.

It appears as if the rulers lost control.

10. Option (c) is correct

Explanation:

- The Harappan culture was distinguished by its system of town planning. Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro each had its own citadel or acropolis, which was possibly occupied by members of the ruling class.
- Chanhudaro is an archaeological site belonging to the post-urban Jhukar phase of Indus valley civilization. It was the only Indus city without a citadel. Hence, statement 2 is not correct.
- Below the citadel in each city, lay a lower town containing brick houses, which were inhabited by the common people.
- The remarkable thing about the arrangement of the houses in the cities is that they followed the grid system.
- The use of burnt bricks in the Harappan cities is remarkable, because in the contemporary buildings of Egypt mainly dried bricks were used.
- The drainage system of Mohenjo-Daro was very impressive. Hence, statement 1, 3 and 4 are correct.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The correct answer is Dholavira.

The site was in news quite recently and it is expected that you know this. Dholavira is located on Kadir Island in the Rann of Kutch in Gujarat.

The city had an impressive and unique water harvesting and management system. It can be noted that this area receives less than 160 cm of rain every year and is very prone to droughts.

A sophisticated water management system demonstrates the ingenuity of the Dholavira people in their struggle to survive and thrive in a harsh environment.

2. Option (c) is correct

Explanation: The correct answer is Sohgaura. Sohgaura - It is not a Harappan site. It is an Ashokan era copper plate inscription written in Prakrit in the Brahmi script.

3. Option (b) is correct

Explanation: No building has been discovered at any Harappan site that can be positively identified as a temple, but the Great Bath at Mohenjo-Daro may have been used for ritual purposes. Hence statement 1 is not correct.

Clay figures of the Mother Goddess, worshipped by the people as a symbol of fertility, have been found. A seated figure of a male god, carved on a small stone seal, has also been found. The scene immediately brings to mind the traditional image of Pasupati Mahadeva. Hence, statement 2 is correct.

On the basis of the Indus seals, it can be said that a large number of animals including goats, buffaloes, oxen, elephants, dogs and camels were domesticated. Hence statement 3 is not correct.

4. Option (c) is correct

Explanation:

- The Harappan civilization belongs to the Bronze Age civilization and Harappans knew how to make copper bronze tools.
- People of Indus valley Civilisation worshipped trees and animals such as bull, buffalo and tiger. Since religion did not dominate the scene, statement 1 is correct.
- In 1929, archaeologists recovered fragments of cotton textiles at Mohenjo-Daro. Cottonseeds founds at nearby Mehrgarh have been dated to 5000 BCE. Hence, statement 2 is correct.

5. Option (a) is correct

Explanation: The Indus Valley Civilization was a Bronze Age civilization. It started around 3300 BCE. It matured and flourished between 2600 to 1900 BCE. By 1800 BCE, the civilisation began to decline.

6. Option (b) is correct

Explanation: According to the ASI, Lothal had the world›s earliest known dock, which connected the city to an ancient course of the Sabarmati River on the trade route between Harappan cities in Sindh and the peninsula of Saurashtra when the surrounding Kutch desert of today was a part of the Arabian Sea.

HISTORY CLASS-VI

4 WHAT BOOKS AND BURIALS TELL US

Oldest Books in the World

- The Vedas are a large body of religious texts originating in ancient India. Composed in Vedic Sanskrit, the texts constitute the oldest layer of Sanskrit literature and the oldest scriptures of Hinduism.
- There are four types of Vedas are the Rigveda, the Samaveda, the Yajurveda and the Atharvaveda.

The Rigveda

- Rigveda is the oldest Veda, composed around 3500 years ago. It includes more than thousand hymns, called suktas. Hymns were composed by sages (rishis). These hymns are in praise of various gods and goddesses. They are:
  1. The Agni, the god of fire.
  2. Indra, a warrior god.
  3. Soma, a plant from which a special drink was prepared.
- Most of these hymns were taught, composed and learned by the men. Women composed a few of them too.
- This is a type of literature which is taught by priests to students and was made to recite and memorize them.
- The Rigveda is in Vedic or old Sanskrit. It was recited by the people and not just read. Written scripts were printed less than 100 years ago.

How do Historians Study Rigveda?

- Some of the hymns were found in the form of dialogue. In one such hymn, there was a conversation between Vishvamitra and two rivers (Sutlej and Beas) that were worshipped as goddesses.
- This is a page from a manuscript of the Rigveda which was found in Kashmir.
- It is now preserved in a library in Pune, Maharashtra.

Cattle, Horses and Chariots

- There are many prayers in the Rigveda for cattle, children (especially sons) and horses.
- Horses were used in battles. Battles were fought for water, land and to capture land and people.
- There was no regular army, but there were assemblies where people met and discussed matters of war and peace. Most men took part in wars and also chose leaders.
- Wealth was kept by the leaders, some were given to the priests and the rest was distributed amongst the people.

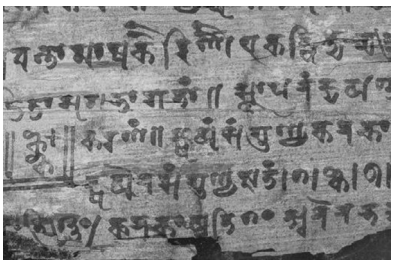


Figure: Manuscript founded in Kashmir

People of Rigveda

- There are two groups of people mentioned in Rigveda:
- The Priest: Also called the Brahmins. They performed all the rituals of Hinduism.
- Rajas: Unlike the later kings, they did not have a palace, capital or army. They also do not levy taxes on the people of the state.
- Two words describe the people of Rigveda - Jana and Vish. (The word vaishya comes from vish.)
- The people who composed the hymns described themselves as Aryas and used to speak different languages.
- They called their opponents Dasas or Dasyus. Later, the term dasa (and the feminine dasi) came to mean slave. Slaves were women and men who were often captured in war.

The story of the Megaliths

- The Megaliths is a large stone found in the Rigveda period and people placed it to mark the cemetery.
- This practice began more than 3000 years ago. It was influential throughout the southern part of India, the Deccan plateau and Kashmir.
- They all had a standard feature. The dead people were buried by using special pots that were called Red and Black Ware.

Was iron used in the Harappan cities?

- A different variety of metals such as copper, gold, silver was extensively used by the Harappan metal workers. Most of the things that have been found by archaeologists are made of stone, shell and metal, including copper, bronze, gold and silver. Iron was not used in the Harappan cities. They also used gold and silver in the form ornaments and coins.

Social Differences

- Rich people were buried with more gold beads, stone beads, copper bangles etc. Whereas poor people were buried with only a few pots.

Importance of Burial Spots

- People who belonged to the same family were found buried in the same place. Significant spots were to recognize the burial spot of the family members. Boulders placed or stone circles helped to serve as the signpost.

Inamgaon

- Occupation of the People of Inamgaon: Archaeologists have found various types of crops in the fields of Inamgaon. Some of them are sesame, peas, millets, pulses, rice, barley and wheat.
- Animals were also a source of food for the people as cuts on bones were found.
- Several fruits were consumed by the people of Inamgaon, namely dates, jamun, amla and ber.
- A special burial at Inamgaon: It is a site on the river Ghod, a tributary of the Bhima. Here, adults were buried in the ground. They were laid out straight with the head towards the north. Vessels that probably contained food and water were placed with the dead person.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which of the following is the oldest Veda?
(a) Samaveda **(b)** Yajurveda
(c) Rigveda **(d)** Atharvaveda

2. Who is the 'god of fire' according to Rigveda?
(a) Agni **(b)** Indra
(c) Soma **(d)** None of these

3. In the Vedic age, Indra was God of:
(a) Wind
(b) Eternity
(c) Rain and Thunder (warrior god)
(d) Fire

4. In which language is 'The Rigveda' written?
(a) Vedic Sanskrit **(b)** Vedic Hindi
(c) Vedic Tamil **(d)** None of these

5. In the Rigveda the term Dasas and Dasyus refers to _____.
(a) Robbers **(b)** Tribals
(c) Non-Aryans **(d)** Menials

6. Consider the following statements about Rigveda:
1. The oldest Veda is the Rigveda, composed about 3500 years ago.
2. The Rigveda includes more than a thousand hymns, called suktas or well said lines. These hymns are in praise of various Raja and Kings.
Which of the above statement is /are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

7. Inamgaon is situated on which of the following river?
(a) Son **(b)** Narmada
(c) Bhima **(d)** Ghod

8. Who among the following was an expert in Medicine?
(a) Banabhatta **(b)** Ashvaghosha
(c) Charaka **(d)** Satakarni

9. Agriculture and _____ were the main occupations of Aryans.
(a) Jewellery making **(b)** Cattle-rearing
(c) Metal-work **(d)** Pottery making

10. On which barks was the Rig-Veda written?
(a) Neem Bark **(b)** Cinkona Bark
(c) Tulsi Bark **(d)** Birch Bark

11. The evidence of which fruits were found in Inamgaon
(a) Ber, Amla, Jamun **(b)** Mango
(c) Apple **(d)** All of these

12. When the dead body was buried with gold beads it means that the dead man was _____
(a) rich man **(b)** poor man
(c) chief **(d)** follower

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Match the columns:

List 1		List 2	
A	Sukta	**1**	Stone Boulder
B	Chariots	**2**	Sacrifice
C	Yajna	**3**	Well Said lines
D	Dasa	**4**	Used in Battles
E	Megalith	**5**	Slave

	A	B	C	D	E
(a)	2	5	4	1	3
(b)	3	4	2	5	1
(c)	4	3	1	5	2
(d)	2	4	1	2	3

2. In the context of Rig Veda, consider the following statements:
1. All the Suktas in Rig Veda were composed by men.
2. The language of Rig Veda is called Sanskrit or Vedic Sanskrit
3. The Rigveda was recited and heard rather than read.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

3. What did the Aryas call their opponents?
(a) Shatru **(b)** Dushman
(c) Ari **(d)** Dasyus

4. Which of the following evidence indicates underground megalithic burials?
1. Circle of stone boulders
2. Single large stone
3. Large pops of stones
Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

5. Consider the following statements:
1. Battles were fought for land, water and to capture people and cattle.

2. Horses were used in battles.
3. Rigvedic people used a large permanent standing army to fight battles.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

6. All the burials have some common features. Generally the dead were buried in which of the following distinctive pots?
(a) Green and Blue ware
(b) Golden ware
(c) Black and Red ware
(d) Brown ware

7. In the context of the megaliths, which of the following statements is/are not correct?
(a) The finds suggest that there was some difference in status amongst the people who were buried.
(b) Many megaliths contain more than one skeleton indicating that they belong to the same family.
(c) Stone circles or boulders placed on the surface probably served as signposts to find the burial site, so that people could return to the same place whenever they wanted to.
(d) The bodies of those who died later were brought into the grave through the death holes.

8. Which of the following subjects does The 'Charaka Samhita' deal with?
(a) Astrology **(b)** Grammar
(c) Medicine **(d)** Mathematics

9. With respect to Inamgaon, consider the following statements:
1. Inamgaon is situated on the river Ghod, a tributary of the Bhima.
2. The adults were generally buried in the ground, laid out straight, with the head towards the north.
3. Vessels that probably contained food and water were placed with the dead.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

10. There was groups in terms of work in Rigvedic society, among these groups, which group used to perform rituals?
(a) Raja **(b)** Priest
(c) Jana **(d)** Vaishya

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. With reference to the difference between the culture of Rigvedic Aryans and Indus Valley people, which of the following statements is/are correct? **[UPSC]**
1. Rigvedic Aryans used the coat of mail and helmet in warfare whereas the people of Indus Valley Civilization did not leave any evidence of using them.
2. Rigvedic Aryans knew gold, silver and copper whereas Indus Valley people knew only copper and iron.
3. Rigvedic Aryans had domesticated the horse whereas there is no evidence of Indus Valley people having been aware of this animal.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

2. The chief opponents of the Aryans were the indigenous people of non-Aryan origin known as Panis and Dasas or Dasyus. The factor which enabled the Aryans to emerge victorious in the struggle against the indigenous tribes was: **[UPSC]**
(a) Lack of unity among the indigenous tribes
(b) Better organization among the Aryans
(c) Superior military equipment of the Aryans
(d) Cultural superiority

3. Which of the following Rivers is not mentioned in Rig Veda? **[SSC]**
(a) Ganga **(b)** Yamuna
(c) Saraswati **(d)** Narmada

4. Which of the following statements is NOT correct about the Rigveda? **[SI]**
(a) Rigveda mentions Varna
(b) Slavery was not mentioned in Rigveda
(c) Sabha the assembly was mentioned in Rigveda
(d) Rajan occurs many times in Rigveda

5. The crop which was not known to Vedic people was: **[SSC]**
(a) Barley **(b)** Wheat
(c) Rice **(d)** Tobacco

6. Which of the following Vedas provides information about the civilization of the Early Vedic Age? **[SSC]**
(a) Rigveda **(b)** Yajurveda
(c) Atharvaveda **(d)** Samaveda

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The oldest Veda is Rigveda, composed about 3500 years ago. The Rigveda includes more than a thousand hymns, called suktas or "well-said lines". These hymns are in praise of various gods and goddesses.

2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Agni, the God of Fire, is one of the most prominent of the deities of the Vedas. Fire is central to all Vedic rituals. All the offerings in the Vedic sacrifices are invariably offered to Agni and through him to other gods. Agni is thus the primary recipient of all Vedic sacrifices.

3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The time period of Vedic age is 1500BC-1100BC. During this age, Indra was the God of Rain and Thunder (warrior god). Indra was the most important god in the Vedic religion and he later became a major figure in Hindu Dharma and an important deity in Buddhism Cham and Chinese tradition.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Rig Veda is the earliest of the four Vedas and one of the most important texts of the Hindu tradition. It is a large collection of hymns in praise of the gods, which are chanted in various

rituals. They were composed in an archaic language named Vedic that gradually evolved into classical Sanskrit.

5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Rigveda contains accounts of conflicts between the Aryas and the Dasas and Dasyus. It describes Dasas and Dasyus as people who do not perform sacrifices (akratu) or obey the commandments of gods (avrata).
Dasas and Dasyus were early Indo-Aryan immigrants who arrived into the subcontinent before the Vedic Aryans.

6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: There are four Vedas: the Rig Veda, the Sama Veda, the Yajur Veda and the Atharva Veda. Of these, the Rig Veda is the oldest and was composed about 3500 years ago.
The Rigveda includes more than a thousand hymns, called suktas or "well-said lines". These hymns are in praise of various gods and goddesses. Three gods are especially important: Agni, the god of fire; Indra, a warrior god; and Soma, a plant from which a special drink was prepared. Hence, statement 2 is not correct.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Inamgaon is a post-Harappan agrarian village and archaeological site located in Maharashtra, western India. Situated along the right bank of the Ghod River. It is considered to be the regional center' of the Bhima Valley.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Charak was one of the principal contributors to the ancient art and science of Ayurveda, a system of medicine and lifestyle developed in Ancient India. Charaka has been identified as a native of Kashmir. He is well known as the "father of medicine".

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Aryans were essentially pastoral people. Their main occupation was cattle rearing.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: One manuscript was written on birch bark in ancient *Sharada* script while the remaining 29 manuscripts were written in *Devanagari* script. The oldest manuscript was dated back to 1464 A D and the manuscripts had several unique features in terms of scripts, accentuation marks and support material use. Birch bark is the bark of Paper Birch Tree and was used as a writing material from prehistoric times.

11. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Several fruits were consumed by the people of Inamgaon, namely dates, Jamun amla and ber.

12. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Rich people were buried with more gold beads, stone beads, copper bangles etc. Whereas poor people were buried with only a few pots

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:

List 1		List 2	
A.	Suktas	**3.**	Well Said lines
B.	Chariots	**4.**	Used in Battles
B.	Yajna	**2.**	Sacrifice
C.	Dasa	**5.**	Slave
D.	Megalith	**1.**	Stone Boulder

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:
Statement 1 is not correct because these hymns were composed by sages (Rishis). Priests taught students to recite and memorize each syllable, word and sentence, bit by bit, with great care.
Most of the hymns were composed, taught and learned by men. A few were composed by women.
The Rigveda is in old or Vedic Sanskrit, which is different from the Sanskrit you learn in school these days. The books we use are written and printed. The Rigveda was recited and heard rather than read.
It was written down several centuries after it was first composed and printed less than 200 years ago.

3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Sometimes, the people who composed the hymns described themselves as Aryas and called their opponents Dasas or Dasyus. These were people who did not perform sacrifices and probably spoke different languages. Later, the term dasa (and the feminine dasi) came to known as slave.

4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Sometimes, archaeologists find a circle of stone boulders or a single large stone standing on the ground. These are the only indications that there are burials beneath.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: There are many prayers in the Rig-Veda for cattle, children (especially sons) and horses.
- Horses were used in battles.
- Battles were fought for land, water and to capture people and cattle. There was no regular army, but there were assemblies where people met and discussed matters of war and peace. Most men took part in wars and also choose leaders.
- Wealth was kept by the leaders, some were given to the priests and the rest was distributed amongst the people.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: All these burials have some common features. Generally, the dead were buried with distinctive pots, which are called Black and Red Ware. Also, tools and weapons of iron and sometimes, skeletons of horses, horse equipment and ornaments of stone and gold are found with the burials.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation:
Statement (a) is correct because those finds suggest that there was some difference in status amongst

the people who were buried. Some were rich, others poor, some chiefs, others followers.

Statement (b) is correct because sometimes, megaliths contain more than one skeleton. These indicate that people, perhaps belonging to the same family, were buried in the same place though not at the same time.

Statement (c) is correct because stone circles or boulders placed on the surface probably served as signposts to find the burial site, so that people could return to the same place whenever they wanted to.

Statement (d) is not correct because the bodies of those who died later were brought into the grave through the portholes.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: About 2000 years ago, there was a famous physician named Charaka who wrote a book on medicine known as the *Charaka Samhita*.

There he states that the human body has 360 bones. This is a much larger number than the 206 bones that are recognised in modern anatomy. Charaka arrived at this figure by counting the teeth, joints and cartilage.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Inamgaon is a site situated on the river Ghod, a tributary of the Bhima. It was occupied between 3600 and 2700 years ago.

Here, adults were generally buried in the ground, laid out straight, with the head towards the north. Sometimes burials were within the houses.

Vessels that probably contained food and water were placed with the dead.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: There are two groups who are described in terms of their work — the priests, sometimes called Brahmins, who performed various rituals and the rajas.

These rajas were not like the ones you will be learning about later. They did not have capital cities, palaces or armies nor did they collect taxes.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

Rig Vedic Aryans used the cost of mail and helmet in warfare whereas the people of Indus Valley Civilization did not leave any evidence of using them. There is also evidence of swords, arrows, bows used during Rig Vedic Aryans. Hence statement 1 is correct.

Rig Vedic Aryans know gold, silver, copper, iron whereas Indus valley people knew gold, copper, bronze but they did not know iron. Hence statement 2 is not correct.

Rig Vedic Aryans had domesticated the horse whereas there is no evidence of Indus Valley people having been aware of this animal. Hence statement 3 is correct.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The chief opponents of the Aryans were the indigenous people of non-Aryan origin known as Panis and Dasas or Dasyus. Superior military equipment helped the Aryans to emerge victorious in the struggle against the indigenous tribes.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Narmada River is not mentioned in Rigveda.

Rivers mentioned in Rig Veda are Indus, Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Beas, Satluj, Gomati, Kurram, Ghaggar and Swat.

Rigveda is an ancient Indian text which is a collection 1,028 Vedic Sanskrit hymns and 10,600 verses dedicated to deities.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Rigveda is the oldest religious text in the world. It is the collection of hymns, composed around 1700 BC, contains 1,028 hymns and is divided into 10 mandalas.

The 10th Mandala of Rigveda contains the Purushasukta hymn which tells about the origin of the caste system. The Rigvedic society comprised four varnas, namely Brahmana, Kshatriya, Vaishya and Shudra.

Slavery was mentioned in Rigveda. It was mentioned in the term Dasa. Three to four verses of Rigveda mention Dasas. Hence, statement (b) is not correct.

Sabha the assembly was mentioned in Rigveda. The term Sabha means both the assembly and the assembly hall.

Rajan word was used for Kings (Raja). It occurs many times in Rigveda.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Tobacco was not known by the people of the Vedic period. During this period, economic activity was dominated by agriculture. Agriculture was mainly done along the Ganges valley. The crops cultivated during this period were Wheat, Rice and Barley, Beans and Sesame.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Rig Veda is a collection of Vedic Sanskrit hymns counted among the four Hindu religious texts known as the Vedas. The Rig Veda was likely composed between roughly 1700–1100 BCE, making it one of the oldest texts of any Indo-Iranian language, one of the world's oldest religious texts.

❑❑❑

HISTORY CLASS-VI

5 KINGDOMS, KINGS AND AN EARLY REPUBLIC

How do some men become rulers?

- Usually, Rajas were chosen by Jana, the people. But before 3000 years ago, some Rajas or Rulers were chosen by performing immense sacrifices such as Ashvamedha.
- In Ashvamedha, a horse was let loose to wander freely and it was guarded by the raja's men.
- If the horse wandered into the kingdoms of other rajas and they stopped it, they had to fight. If they allowed the horse to pass, it meant that they accepted that the raja who wanted to perform the sacrifice was stronger than them.
- These rajas were then invited to the sacrifice, which was performed by specially trained priests, who were rewarded with gifts.
- The raja who organised the sacrifice was recognised as being very powerful and all the kings who attended it, brought gifts for him.
- Priests performed the rituals including the sprinkling of sacred water on the king.
- The raja was a central figure in these rituals. He often a special seat, a throne or tiger skin.
- The ordinary people, the vish or vaishya, also brought gifts. However, some people, such as those who were regarded as Shudras by the priests, were excluded from many rituals.
- The Samaveda, Yajurveda and Atharvaveda belong to the later Vedic period because they were composed after the **Rigveda**. These were composed by priests and described how rituals were to be performed.
- The priests divided people into four groups, called Varnas:
  1. **First Varna**: Brahmins, they were expected to study (and teach) the Vedas, perform sacrifices and receive gifts.
  2. **Second Varna**: Kshatriyas, they were expected to fight battles and protect people.
  3. **Third Varna**: Vaishyas, they were expected to be farmers, herders and traders.
  4. **Fourth Varna**: Shudras, who had to serve the other three groups and could not perform any rituals.

Note:
- Both the kshatriyas and the vaishyas could perform sacrifices.
- Both women and shudras were not allowed to study the Vedas.
- The priests also said that these groups were decided on the basis of birth. For example, if one's father and mother were Brahmins one would automatically become a Brahmin and so on.

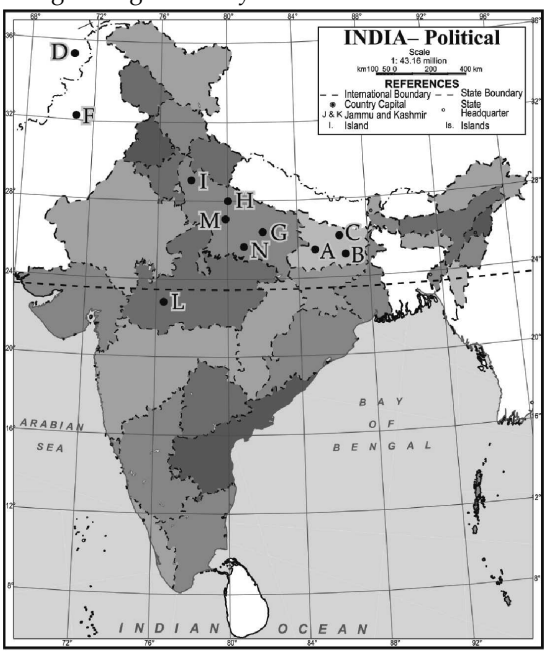
Janapadas

- The rajas who performed big sacrifices were then recognised as being rajas of janapadas rather than Janas. The word janapada means the land where the Jana set its foot and settled down.
- Archaeologists have excavated several settlements in these Janapadas. Those settlements include the Purana Qila in Delhi, Hastinapur located near Meerut and Atranjikhera near Etah in Uttar Pradesh.
- People used to live in huts, kept cattle and other animals; they also grew a variety of crops such as rice, wheat, barley, pulses, sugarcane, sesame and mustard.
- The people also made earthen pots of grey and red color with simple geometric patterns and lines designed on them.

Mahajanapadas

- About 2500 years ago, some Janapadas became more important than others and were known as Mahajanapada.
- Most Mahajanapadas had a capital city, many of these were fortified which means that huge walls of wood, brick or stone were built around them.
- Forts were probably built because:
  1. People were afraid of attacks from other kings and needed protection.
  2. Some rulers wanted to show how rich and powerful they were by building large, tall and impressive walls around their cities.
  3. The land and the people living inside the fortified area could be controlled more easily by the king.
  4. Building such huge walls required a great deal of planning.
- Buildings were required a great deal of planning for its completion and involved the labour of thousands of men, women and children.

- The new rajas started maintaining armies. Soldiers were paid regular salaries and maintained by the king throughout the year.



A - Magadh	E -Gandhara	K - Matsya	O - Chedi
B - Anga	F -Kashi	L - Avanti	P - Asmaka
C - Vajji	G-Panchala	M - Sursena	
D - Kamboja	H-Kuru	N - Vatsa	

Figure: Mahajanapadas

Taxes in Mahajanapadas

- The rulers of the Mahajanapadas started collecting regular taxes to maintain their forts and big armies.
  1. Tariffs on crops were the most important since most people were farmers.
  2. 1/6th of the produced crops was the tax and was called the Bhaga or share.
  3. The Labour of crafts persons was also considered a form of taxation.
  4. Herders used to pay animals and animal products as taxes.
  5. Traded goods were also taxed.
  6. Hunters and Gatherers paid taxes to the Raja in the form of forest produce.

Changes in Agriculture

- There were two significant changes in agriculture:
  1. Growing usage of Ploughshares: A wooden ploughshare was used to turn over heavy, clayey soil easily. More grains could be produced through this.
  2. People began transplanting Paddy: Saplings were grown and planted in fields through this method. Paddy transplantation led to increased production. The slave men and women (dasas and dasis) used to do these works.

A Closer Look

Magadha

- Magadha became the most important Mahajanapada and many rivers such as the Ganga and Son flowed through Magadha.
- The rivers were important for transportation, water supplies and agriculture.
- Some parts of Magadha were also forested. Forest provided Wood for building Houses, Elephants for the army.
- Iron ore mines were also present in the area, which were used to extract iron. Iron was used to make strong tools and weapons by tapping in Magadha.
- Bimbisara and Ajatashatru were the most powerful rulers of Magadha and they used all possible ways to conquer other Janapadas.
- Rajagriha (present-day Rajgir) in Bihar was the capital of Magadha for several years. Later the capital was shifted to Pataliputra (present-day Patna).

Vajji

- Vajji, with its capital at Vaishali (Bihar), was under a different form of government, known as gana or sangha. In a gana there were many rulers. Each one was known as a raja.
- These rajas performed rituals together. They also met in assemblies and decided what had to be done and how, through discussion and debate.
- Gana is used for a group that has many members. Sangha means organisation or association.
- However, women, dasas or kammakaras were not allowed in the assemblies.
- Both Gautama Buddha and Mahavira belonged to these ganas or sanghas. Buddhist books contain the most vivid descriptions of life in the sanghas.
- The sanghas were tried to be conquered by the rajas of powerful kingdoms in the Indian subcontinent.
- Despite that, the sanghas lasted for a long time till about 1500 years ago.

Ajatashatru and the Vajjis

- Ajatashatru wanted to attack the Vajjis. He sent his minister named Vassakara to the Buddha to get his advice on the matter.
- The Buddha asked whether the Vajjis met frequently, in full assemblies. When he heard that they did, he replied that the Vajjis would continue to prosper as long as:
  1. They held full and frequent public assemblies.
  2. They met and acted together.
  3. They respected, supported and listened to elders.
  4. Vajji women were not held by force or captured.
  5. Chaityas (local shrines) were maintained in both towns and villages.
  6. Wise saints who followed different beliefs were respected and allowed to enter and leave the country freely.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. How much of the produce was collected as a tax?
(a) One-Third Part **(b)** One-Fifth Part
(c) One-Sixth Part **(d)** Half Part

2. Magadha and _____ are examples of monarchical mahajanapadas:
(a) Shakyas **(b)** Lichchhavis
(c) Vajji **(d)** Vatsa

3. How did men become rulers around 3,000 years ago?
(a) By choosing rulers by voting
(b) By Ashvamedha yajna
(c) None of these
(d) Both (a) and (b)

4. The farmers gave one-sixth of their produce to the king which was called _____.
(a) Bhaga **(b)** Part
(c) Hissa **(d)** Bhora

5. Who worked as farmers in the agriculture field?
(a) King, Purohit, Women
(b) Dass, Landless people, Women
(c) Dass, Shudras, Vaishyas
(d) Dass, Brahmins, Kshatriyas

6. Who were the people who study the Vedas, performed sacrifices and received gifts?
(a) Brahmins **(b)** King
(c) Janas **(d)** Merchant

7. They allowed passing the 'horse' in Ashwamedha Yajna. What did it mean?
(a) They accepted that the raja was weaker
(b) They accepted that the raja was stronger
(c) Both (a) and (b)
(d) None of these

8. Where is Hastinapur located?
(a) Near Delhi **(b)** Near Mumbai
(c) Near Meerut **(d)** Near Agra

9. Why did the rulers collect regular taxes?
(a) For building huge forts
(b) For maintaining big armies
(c) Both (a) and (b)
(d) None of these

10. Why was the river Ganga important for people?
(a) For transport
(b) For water supply
(c) For making land fertile
(d) All of these

11. Where is Purana Qila situated?
(a) Delhi **(b)** Agra
(c) Kolkata **(d)** None of these

12. In what mode were the payments made?
(a) Punch marked coins **(b)** Paper notes
(c) Gold coins **(d)** Silver coins

13. Who can not participate in horse sacrifice rituals?
(a) Shudra **(b)** Vaishyas
(c) Kshatriyas **(d)** Brahmins

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Match List-I with List-II and choose the correct answer from the code given below:

List-I (Varnas)		List-II (Functions)	
A.	Brahmins	**1.**	Served
B.	Vaishyas	**2.**	Performed Sacrifices
C.	Kshatriyas	**3.**	Traders
D.	Shudra	**4.**	Fought Battles

(a) A-2, B-1, C-4, D-3 **(b)** A-2, B-3, C-4, D-1
(c) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4 **(d)** A-3, B-1, C-4, D-2

2. In which of the following Janapadas did the archaeologists had excavated a number of settlements?
1. Purana Qila in Delhi
2. Hastinapur near Meerut
3. Atranjikhera, near Etah
Which of the places given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

3. Mathura was the capital of which of these Mahajanapadas?
(a) Anga **(b)** Vajji
(c) Sursena **(d)** Chedi

4. Consider the following statements regarding the Tax system in Mahajanapadas:
1. The rulers of Mahajanapadas started collecting taxes to build forts and maintain huge armies.
2. Taxes on crops were collected from people because most people were farmers.
3. The tax was fixed at $2/6^{th}$ of what was produced.
Which of the places given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

5. Consider the following assertion with the given reason:
Assertion: In the Vedic period, women were also grouped with the Shudras.
Reason: In the Vedic period, women and Shudras were not allowed to study the Vedas.
Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) Both assertion and reason are correct and the reason is the correct explanation of the assertion.
(b) Both assertion and reason are correct but the reason is not the correct explanation of the assertion.
(c) Assertion is correct but the reason is not correct.
(d) Assertion is not correct but the reason is correct.

6. In the context of the Vedic period, consider the following statements:
   1. Both the Kshatriyas and the Vaishyas could perform sacrifices.
   2. Shudras were considered to be untouchable.
   3. All the groups were decided on the basis of birth.

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only
7. Consider the following statements:
   1. Herders were also expected to pay taxes in the form of animals and animal products.
   2. There were also taxes on goods that were bought and sold through trade.
   3. Hunters and gatherers were completely exempted from tax.

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3 only
8. Kaushambi was located in which of the following places?
   (a) Meerut (Uttar Pradesh)
   (b) Ghaziabad (Uttar Pradesh)
   (c) Allahabad (Uttar Pradesh)
   (d) Varanasi (Uttar Pradesh)
9. With respect to the major changes in agricultural sector in the Mahajanapada time, consider the following questions:
   1. The use of iron ploughshares grew.
   2. People began transplanting paddy.

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
10. Who among the following was not the ruler of Magadha?
    (a) Bimbisara **(b)** Prasenjeet
    (c) Ajatashatru **(d)** Mahapadma Nanda

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Which of the following kingdoms were associated with the life of the Buddha? **[UPSC]**
   1. Avanti 2. Gandhara
   3. Kosala 4. Magadha

   Select the correct answer using the codes given below:
   (a) 1, 2 and 3 **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1, 3 and 4 **(d)** 3 and 4 only
2. Which city was known as 'Avantika' in ancient times? **[MP Patwari]**
   (a) Ujjain **(b)** Gwalior
   (c) Jhansi **(d)** Bhopal
3. Ajatashatru wanted to attack the Vajjis. Which of the following ministers, did he send, to the Buddha to get his advice on the matter? **[CTET]**
   (a) Sunidha **(b)** Chetak
   (c) Vassakara **(d)** Jivak
4. Which of the following rulers had conquered ganas or sanghas? **[CTET]**
   (a) Maurya **(b)** Gupta
   (c) Kushana **(d)** Satvahana
5. Ajatashatru, a ruler of the Haryanka Dynasty, was the son of _____. **[SSC]**
   (a) Bimbisara **(b)** Naga-Dasak
   (c) Anurudha **(d)** Udayin

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Taxes on crops were collected from people because most people were farmers. Usually, the tax was fixed at $1/6^{th}$ of what was produced. This was known as bhaga or a share.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Mahajanapadas were either monarchical or republican in character. Examples of monarchical mahajanapadas are;
   Magadha: Between Anga and Vatsa there lay the kingdom of Magadha, corresponding to modern Patna and Gaya districts, bounded on the north and west by the rivers Ganga and Son, on the south by the Vindhya outcrop and on the east by the river Champa.
   Vatsa: The Vatsa country had a monarchical form of government. Its capital was Kaushambi (identified with the village of Kosam, 38 miles from Allahabad). Kaushambi, a very prosperous city was the most important entre pot of goods and passengers from the south and the west.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Around 3000 years ago, we found some changes had taken place in the ways in which rajas were chosen. Some men were then recognised as rajas by performing very big sacrifices. Ashvamedha or horse sacrifice was one such ritual in which a horse was let loose to wander freely and it was guarded by the raja's men.
4. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Taxes on crops were collected from peoples because most people were farmers. Usually, the tax was fixed at $1/6^{th}$ of what was produced. This was known as bhaga or a share.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Dass, Landless and women were considered the lowest class in the Varna system, who were to serve all the upper 3 classes and worked as Agriculturalists in the Later Vedic era.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Brahmins were expected to study (and teach) the Vedas, perform sacrifices and receive gifts.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Ashvamedha or horse sacrifice was one such ritual in which a horse was let loose to wander

freely and it was guarded by the raja's men. If the horse wandered into the kingdoms of other rajas and they stopped it, they had to fight. If they allowed the horse to pass, it meant that they accepted that the raja who wanted to perform the sacrifice was stronger than them.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Archaeologists have excavated a number of settlements in these janapadas such as Purana Qila in Delhi, Hastinapura near Meerut and Atranjikhera near Etah.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The rulers of the mahajanapadas were building huge forts and maintaining big armies so they needed more resources. To meet their requirement they started collecting regular taxes.

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Magadha became the most important mahajanapada in about 200 years. Many rivers such as the Ganga and Son flowed through Magadha which play an important role for:

- Transport
- Water supplies
- Making the land fertile

11. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Purana Qila is a fort situated in Delhi.

12. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: These earliest coins are known as the famous 'punch-marked' coins. The punch-marked coins were mainly made of silver. There were copper punch-marked coins.

13. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Shudras can not participate in horse sacrifice.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

List 1 (Varnas)		List 2 (Functions)
A.	Brahmins	Performed Sacrifices
B.	Vaishyas	Traders
C.	Kshatriyas	Fought Battles
D.	Shudra	Served

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Archaeologists have excavated a number of settlements in these janapadas, such as Purana Qila in Delhi, Hastinapur near Meerut and Atranjikhera, near Etah (the last two are in Uttar Pradesh).

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Mathura was the capital of the Sursena Mahajanapada. The kingdom was located on the junction of Dakshinpatha and Uttarpatha around present-day Mathura.

Mahajanapada	Capital
Anga	Champa
Vajji	Vaishali
Sursena	Mathura
Chedi	Shuktimata

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The rulers of the mahajanapadas were building huge forts and maintaining big armies so they needed more resources. To meet their requirement they started collecting regular taxes.

Taxes on crops were collected from peoples because most people were farmers. Usually, the tax was fixed at $1/6^{th}$ of what was produced. This was known as bhaga or a share.

There were taxes on crafts persons as well. These could have been in the form of labour.

Herders were also expected to pay taxes in the form of animals and animal produce.

There were also taxes on goods that were bought and sold through the trade.

Hunters and gatherers also had to provide forest produce to the raja as tax.

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Often, women were also grouped with the shudras. Both women and shudras were not allowed to study the Vedas. Here, reason is not the correct explanation of the assertion.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Statement 1 is correct. In Vedic times both Kshatriya and Vaishya had the right to sacrifice.

Statement 2 is not correct. The concept of untouchables came after the Vedic period. Until the Vedic period, the Shudras were not considered untouchable. Later, some crafts persons, hunters and gatherers, as well as people who helped perform burials and cremations were considered untouchable.

Statement 3 is correct. By the end of the Vedic period the priests also said that these groups were decided on the basis of birth. For example, if one's father and mother were Brahmins, one would automatically become a Brahmin and so on.

7. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Herders were also expected to pay taxes in the form of animals and animal produce. The tax was imposed on goods that were bought and sold through the trade. Hence, statement 1 and 2 are correct.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Kaushambi was found near present-day Allahabad (Uttar Pradesh). A part of it was probably built about 2500 years ago. It had a fortification wall.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Both the statements are correct.

There were two major changes in agriculture around this time.

One was the growing use of iron ploughshares. This meant that heavy, clayey soil could be turned over better than with a wooden ploughshare, so that more grain could be produced.

Second, people began transplanting paddy. This meant that instead of scattering seed on the ground, from which plants would sprout, seedlings were grown and then planted in the fields. This led to increased production, as many more plants survived.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Magadha had two very powerful rulers, Bimbisara and Ajatashatru, who used all possible means to conquer other janapadas. Mahapadma Nanda was another important ruler. He extended his control up to the northwest part of the subcontinent.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The correct answer is 3 and 4 only.

Buddha travelled through the towns and villages in the kingdoms of Kosala and Magadha teaching his philosophy.

Other regions where he wandered were Vaishali, Vajji, etc.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Ujjain is a city in Madhya Pradesh state. Ujjain was known as 'Avantika' in ancient times. Ujjayini was the capital of the Avanti kingdom. Ujjain was the seat of the emperor Ashoka during the 2nd century BCE.

Ujjain is one of the sites of the famous Hindu festival Kumbh Mela.

The famous ancient writer Kalidasa was born in Ujjain.

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Ajatashatru wanted to attack the Vajjis. He sent his minister named Vassakara to the Buddha to get his advice on the matter.

The Buddha asked whether the Vajjis met frequently, in full assemblies. When he heard that they did, he replied that the Vajjis would continue to prosper.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Rajas of powerful kingdoms tried to conquer the sanghas. Nevertheless, these lasted for a very long time, till about 1500 years ago, when the last of the ganas or sanghas were conquered by the Gupta rulers.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Bimbisara was the founder of the Haryanka Dynasty. He was a contemporary of Buddha. He started the policy of annexation and expansion. He was succeeded by his son Ajatashatru.

HISTORY CLASS-VI

6 NEW QUESTIONS AND IDEAS

The Story of the Buddha

- Siddhartha Gautam, the founder of Buddhism, was born about 2500 years ago. He was a Kshatriya by birth and belonged to a 'Sakya' Gana.
- He left his home at a young age in search of knowledge, he wandered for several years, when he met and held discussions with other thinkers.
- He meditated for days under a peepal tree at Bodh Gaya in Bihar, where he attained enlightenment. Afterwards, he became enlightened and was named the Buddha or "Wise Man."
- He then went to Sarnath, near Varanasi, where he gave his first sermon (satsang). He spent the rest of his life travelling on foot, going from place to place, teaching people, till he passed away at Kushinagar.

Buddha's Teaching

- Life is full of Suffering and Unhappiness; Desires and Cravings are the root cause of all sorrows.
- Sometimes, even if we get what we want, we are not satisfied and want even more (or want other things). The Buddha described this as thirst or trishna. He taught that this constant craving could be removed by following moderation in everything.
- He also taught people to be kind and to respect the lives of others, including animals. He believed that the results of our actions (called karma), whether good or bad, affect us both in this life and the next.
- The Buddha taught in the language of the ordinary people, Prakrit, so that everybody could understand his message.

Upanishads

- Most thinkers believe that there must be eternal souls after death. This particular phenomenon is called atman or individual soul and Brahman or universe soul. They firmly believe that Atman and Brahman are similar.
- The thoughts of those thinkers are recorded in Upanishads. These are part of the Vedic texts that followed.
- Upanishad means 'approaching and sitting near'. The texts contained in the Upanishad were the conversations between teachers and students.
  1. Most Upanishadic thinkers were men, especially Brahmins and Rajas.
  2. There is mention of women thinkers, such as Gargi, who was famous for her learning and participated in debates held in royal courts.
  3. Many of the ideas of the Upanishads were later developed by the famous thinker Shankaracharya.

Six Schools of Indian Philosophy

- The six schools of Indian Philosophy are mentioned in the given table.

Nyaya	Vaisheshika	Mimamsa	Vedanta	Samkhya	Yoga
Logic & analytic philosophy	Few atomic building blocks & consciousness	Critical interpretation of the Vedas	The "essence" of the Vedas	Consciousness & Matter	Meditation, Contemplation

Panini, the Grammarian

- Panini was one of the most famous scholars of that time; he prepared Sanskrit grammar.
- He arranged the vowels and the consonants in a special order and then used these to create formulae like those found in Algebra. He used these to write down the rules of the language in short formulae (around 3000 of them).

Jainism

- Vardhamana Mahavira was the last and 24th tirthankara of the Jainas; he was a Kshatriya prince of the Lichchhavis that was part of the Vajji sangha.
- He left his home at the age of 30 and went to live in the forest, for twelve years he led a hard and lonely life, at the end of which he attained enlightenment.
- He said you have to follow the rules of ahinsa to know the truth. He used Prakrit language to preach his teaching, so ordinary people could understand his words.
- There were several forms of Prakrit, used in different parts of the country. For example, the Prakrit spoken in Magadha was known as Magadhi.
- The followers of Mahavira are called Jains and they used to live a simple life. They were very honest and used to collect food by begging.
- It was very difficult for most men and women to follow these strict rules. Nevertheless, thousands left their homes to learn and teach this new way of life.
- Jainism was supported mainly by traders. Farmers, who had to kill insects to protect their crops, found it more difficult to follow the rules.
- Over hundreds of years, Jainism spread to different parts of north India and to Gujarat, Tamil Nadu and Karnataka. Jainism teachings are presently available at a place called Valabhi, in Gujarat.

Sangha

- Sangha was an association of those people who left their homes. The rules made for the Buddhist sangha were written down in a book called the Vinaya Pitaka.
- There were separate branches for men and women. All men could join the sangha. However, children had to take the permission of their parents and Women had to take their husband's permission.
- Men and women who joined the sangha were known as bhikkhus and bhikkhunis (beggars) because they meditate most of the time and went to cities and villages to beg for food.
- Those who joined the sangha included brahmins, Kshatriyas, merchants, labourers, barbers, courtesans and slaves.

Monasteries

- Both Jaina and Buddhist monks went from place to place throughout the year, teaching people. The only time they stayed in one place was during the rainy season, when it was very difficult to travel.
- The monastery is the place of practice for Buddhist and Jain monks and nuns. It is a permanent shelter for monks and nuns.
- Monasteries were known as viharas. The earliest viharas were made of wood and then brick. Some were even in caves that were dug out in hills, especially in western India.

The System of Ashramas

- Around the time when Jainism and Buddhism were becoming popular, brahmins developed the system of ashramas.
- Four ashramas were recognised: Brahmacharya, Grihastha, Vanaprastha and Samnyasa.
  1. **Brahmacharya:** Brahmin, Kshatriya and Vaishya men were expected to lead simple lives and study the Vedas during the early years of their life.
  2. **Grihastha:** They had to marry and live as householders.
  3. **Vanaprastha:** They had to live in the forest and meditate.
  4. **Samnyasa:** They had to give up everything and become samnyasins.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. When was Gautam Buddha born?
(a) About 3,000 years ago
(b) About 2,500 years ago
(c) About 1,500 years ago
(d) About 1,000 years ago

2. What was the early name of Gautam Buddha?
(a) Siddhartha **(b)** Ashoka
(c) Mahavira **(d)** Parsvanatha

3. Where did Buddha decide to find his own path to realisation?
(a) Ghaziabad in UP
(b) Bodh Gaya in Bihar
(c) Kurukshetra in Haryana
(d) None of these

4. Where did Buddha give his first sermon or teaching?
(a) Ringas **(b)** Sikar
(c) Sarnath **(d)** All of these

5. Who thought that people should be kind and respect others?
(a) Gautam Buddha **(b)** Mahavira
(c) Panini **(d)** Barhama

6. What does Upanishad literally mean?
(a) Approaching and sitting near
(b) Go far away
(c) Both (a) and (b)
(d) None of these

7. The word Jainas comes from which term?
(a) Jana **(b)** Jinaya
(c) Jina **(d)** Jain

8. Where is Kushinagar at present?
(a) Uttar Pradesh **(b)** Bihar
(c) Gujarat **(d)** Haryana

9. How many paths have been suggested by Buddha?
(a) Two-fold path **(b)** Four-fold path
(c) Eight-fold path **(d)** Three-fold path

10. Where had Buddha attained enlightenment (Nirvana)?
(a) Sarnath **(b)** Kushinagar
(c) Bodh Gaya **(d)** Lumbini

11. What did bhikkhus mean?
(a) Beggar **(b)** Achiever
(c) Gainer **(d)** Loser

12. Which among the following is not capital of big cities of that period?
(a) Pawa **(b)** Champa
(c) Rajgriha **(d)** Anga

13. The word Monasteries is associated with _____.
(a) Triratna **(b)** Viharas
(b) Tripitaka **(d)** None of the above.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Regarding the Jainas doctrine, consider the following statements.
1. Everyone should follow the path of ahimsa.
2. We should not hurt or kill any animal/living being.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

2. Consider the following assertion with the given reason:
Assertion: Ordinary people can understand the teachings of Buddha and his followers.
Reason: The Buddha taught in the Prakrit language.

Use the code given below to select the correct answer:

(a) Both assertion and reason are correct and the reason is the correct explanation of the assertion.

(b) Both assertion and reason are correct but the reason is not the correct explanation of the assertion.

(c) Assertion is correct but the reason is not correct.

(d) Assertion is not correct but the reason is correct.

3. In the context of the Buddhist Sangha, which of the following statements is/are not correct?

(a) There were separate branches for men and women.

(b) All men could join the sangha.

(c) Children had to take the permission of their parents.

(d) Married women had to take permission from their parents to enter the sangha.

4. In the context of Vihara, consider the following statements:

1. Viharas were the permanent shelters of Buddhist monks.

2. The land on which the vihara was built was donated by a rich merchant or a landowner or the king.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only

(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

5. Match List-I with List-II and choose the correct answer from the code given below:

List-I		List-II	
A.	Brahmacharya	**1.**	Marriage and living as householders
B.	Grihastha	**2.**	Living in the forest and doing meditation
C.	Vanaprastha	**3.**	Giving up everything and becoming sannyasins.
D.	Samnyasa	**4.**	Studying the Vedas by leading a simple life

(a) A-4, B-1, C-3, D-2 **(b)** A-4, B-1, C-2, D-3

(c) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4 **(d)** A-4, B-3, C-2, D-1

6. Consider the following assertion with the given reason.

Assertion: Women were not allowed to study the Vedas in the system of ashramas.

Reason: They had to follow the ashramas chosen by their husbands.

Use the code given below to select the correct answer:

(a) Both assertion and reason are correct and the reason is the correct explanation of the assertion.

(b) Both assertion and reason are correct but the reason is not the correct explanation of the assertion.

(c) Assertion is correct but the reason is not correct.

(d) Assertion is not correct but the reason is correct.

7. In the era of Buddha and Jain, some other scholars were at work. One of the most famous scholars, Panini made an important composition. This composition of the Sanskrit language was related to which of the following topics?

(a) Geography **(b)** Astronomy

(c) Ayurveda **(d)** Grammar

8. In the context of the Mahaveer's followers, who came to be known as Jainas, consider the following statements:

1. They used to live a very luxurious life and enjoy all the facilities.

2. They had to be absolutely honest and were especially asked not to steal.

3. They had to observe celibacy and men had to give up everything, including their clothes.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only

(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

9. Which of the following statements is/are not correct?

(a) Jainism was supported mainly by traders.

(b) Farmers, who had to kill insects to protect their crops, found it more difficult to follow the rules.

(c) Over hundreds of years, Jainism spread to different parts of north India and to Gujarat, Tamil Nadu and Karnataka.

(d) They were written down in the form in which they are presently available at a place called Kushinagar, in Uttar Pradesh.

10. What does "Triratna" mean in Buddhism?

(a) Tripitaka

(b) Buddha, Dhamma (dharma), Sangha

(c) Satya, Ahimsa, Karuna

(d) Sheel, Samadhi, Sangha

11. Around the time that the Buddha was preaching and even little earlier, other thinkers also tried to find answers to difficult questions. Many of their ideas were recorded in the Upanishads. In the context of these Upanishads, consider the following statements:

1. These were part of the later Vedic texts.

2. Upanishad literally means 'approaching and sitting near'.

3. The texts contain conversations between teachers and students.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only

(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

12. The departure of Siddhartha in "search of truth" is known as:

(a) Dharmachakrapravartan

(b) Mahabhinishkraman

(c) Nirvan

(d) Parinirvana

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. With reference to the history of ancient India, Bhavabhuti, Hastimalla and Kshemeshvara were famous: **[UPSC]**

(a) Jain monks **(b)** Playwrights

(c) Temple architects **(d)** Philosophers

2. With reference to Indian history, who among the following is a future Buddha, yet to come to save the world? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Avalokiteshvara **(b)** Lokesvara
   (c) Maitreya **(d)** Padmapani
3. Which of the following kingdoms were associated with the life of the Buddha? **[UPSC]**
   1. Avanti **2.** Gandhara
   3. Kosala **4.** Magadha
   Select the correct answer using the codes given below:
   (a) 1, 2 and 3 **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1, 3 and 4 **(d)** 3 and 4 only
4. Many of the Greeks, Kushanas and Shakas embraced Buddhism rather than Hinduism because _____. **[UPSC]**
   (a) Buddhism was in the ascendant at that time
   (b) They had renounced the policy of war and violence
   (c) Caste-ridden-Hinduism did not attract them
   (d) Buddhism provided easier access to Indian society
5. Anekantavada is a core theory and philosophy of which one of the following? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Buddhism **(b)** Jainism
   (c) Sikhism **(d)** Vaishnavism
6. Which one of the following describes best the concept of Nirvana in Buddhism? **[UPSC]**
   (a) The extinction of the flame of desire
   (b) The complete annihilation of self
   (c) A state of bliss and rest
   (d) A mental stage beyond all comprehension
7. Who among the following was not a contemporary of the other three? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Bimbisara **(b)** Gautama Buddha
   (c) Milinda **(d)** Prasenji

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The original name of Gautama Buddha was Siddhartha. Siddhartha was born about 2500 years ago at Lumbini in Kapilvastu which is in modern day Nepal. He was a kshatriya and belonged to the Sakya gana.

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The original name of the Buddha was Siddhartha Gautama. Gautama Buddha, popularly known as the Buddha (also known as Siddhartha Gotama or Siddhartha Gautama or Shakyamuni), was an ascetic, a religious leader and teacher who lived in ancient India (c. 6^{th} to 5^{th} century BCE or c. 5^{th} to 4^{th} century BCE).

3. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Bodh Gaya links Buddhists with their founder. They think that it is important because the Buddha chose to become enlightened here and they feel as if they are in his presence. It also gives Buddhists an opportunity to congregate with Buddhists from all over the world and remember the foundation of their religion.

4. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Buddha gave his first sermon in the village of Sarnath, near the city of Benares in UP. This event is known as Dharma-Chakra-Pravartana (turning of the wheel of law).

5. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Buddha said that life is full of suffering and unhappiness. He said that its cause lies in our unfulfilled desires and dissatisfaction. He suggested moderation in everything as a solution. He told people to be kind and to respect each and every life.

6. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Sanskrit term Upaniṣad (from upa "by" and ni-ṣad "sit down") translates to "sitting down near", referring to the student sitting down near the teacher while receiving spiritual knowledge. (Gurumukh) Other dictionary meanings include "esoteric doctrine" and "secret doctrine".

7. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The term "Jain" is derived from the Sanskrit word "Jina" which means conqueror of senses. It shows the victory of a person from the cycle of birth and death.

8. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Kushinagar is a town in the Kushinagar district in Uttar Pradesh, India. It is an important Buddhist pilgrimage site, where Buddhists believe Gautam Buddha attained Mahaparinirvana after his death. It is an international Buddhist pilgrimage centre.

9. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The idea of the Eightfold Path appears to be what is regarded as the first sermon of the founder of Buddhism, Siddhartha Gautama, known as the Buddha, which he delivered after his enlightenment. There he sets forth a middle way, the Eightfold Path, between the extremes of asceticism and sensual indulgence.
The Eightfold Path consists of eight practices: right view, right resolve, right speech, right conduct, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness and right samadhi ('meditative absorption or union').

10. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: He finally decided to find his own path to realisation and meditated for days under a peepal tree at Bodh Gaya in Bihar, where he attained

enlightenment. After that, he was known as the Buddha or the Wise One.

11. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Bhikkhu literally means "beggar" or "one who lives by alms". The historical Buddha, Prince Siddhartha, having abandoned a life of pleasure and status, lived as an alms mendicant as part of his sramana lifestyle.

12. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Anga, rest of the city was a big city or a capital of that time.

13. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Monasteries were known as *viharas*. The earliest viharas were made of wood and then brick. Some were even in caves that were dug out in hills, especially in western India.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Both the above statements are correct.

The word Jaina comes from the term Jina, meaning conqueror.

"All beings", said Mahavira "long to live. To all things, life is dear."

Mahavir was a Kshatriya prince of the Lichchhavis, a group that was a part of the Vajji sangha.

At the age of thirty, he left home and went to live in a forest. For twelve years, he led a hard and lonely life, at the end of which he attained enlightenment.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Buddha taught in the language of the ordinary people, Prakrit, so that everybody could understand his message.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The rules made for the Buddhist sangha were written down in a book called the *Vinaya Pitaka*. From this we know that there were separate branches for men and women. All men could join the sangha.

However, children had to take the permission of their parents and slaves that of their masters. Those who worked for the king had to take his permission and debtors that of creditors.

Statement (d) is not correct because women had to take their husband's permission.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Both the above statements are correct.

As time went on, many supporters of the monks and nuns and they themselves, felt the need for more permanent shelters and so monasteries were built. These were known as viharas.

The earliest viharas were made of wood and then of brick. Some were even in caves that were dug out in hills, especially in western India.

Very often, the land on which the vihara was built was donated by a rich merchant or a landowner or the king.

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Four *ashramas* were recognised: *Brahmacharya, Grihastha, Vanaprastha* and *Samnyasa*.

Brahmin, Kshatriya and vaishya men were expected to lead simple lives and study the Vedas during the early years of their life (brahmacharya).

Then they had to marry and live as householders (grihastha).

Then they had to live in the forest and meditate (vanaprastha).

Finally, they had to give up everything and become sannyasins.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Both assertion and reason are correct but reason is not the correct explanation of the assertion.

The Puranas were written in simple Sanskrit verse and were meant to be heard by everybody, including women and shudras, who were not allowed to study Vedas. They were probably recited in temples by priests and people came to listen to them.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: In the era of Buddha and Jain, other scholars were also at work. One of the most famous was Panini, who prepared a grammar for Sanskrit. He arranged the vowels and the consonants in a special order and then used these to create formulae like those found in Algebra. He used these to write down the rules of the language in short formulae.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The followers of Mahavira are called Jains and they used to live simple life. They were very honest and used to collect food by begging. Hence, statement 1 is not correct.

It was very difficult for most men and women to follow these strict rules. Nevertheless, thousands left their homes to learn and teach this new way of life.

Jainism was supported mainly by traders. Farmers, who had to kill insects to protect their crops, found it more difficult to follow the rules.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Statements (a), (b) and (c) are correct.

Statement (d) is not correct. They were written down in the form in which they are presently available at a place called Valabhi, in Gujarat, about 1500 years ago.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Triratna in Sanskrit means 'Three Jewels'

1. The Buddha
2. Dhamma (dharma): His teaching
3. Sangha: The community of all those who follow his teachings.

11. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Upanishads are philosophical books. They contain the teachings of many great religious teachers and saints. They are believed to be 108 in total, out of which 11 are considered to be the main Upanishads. The Upanishads give importance to the worship of one God.

The Upanishads are part of a large collection of sacred books of Hindu people, called the Vedas. They

are placed at the end of the Vedas and they primarily deal with knowledge or wisdom.

Upanishad literally means 'approaching and sitting near' and the texts contain conversations between teachers and students. Hence, all the statements are correct.

12. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

Mahabhinishkraman refers to the departure of Siddhartha from his home at the age of 29.

Dharmachakrapravartana refers to Siddhartha's first religious sermon at Sarnath.

Nirvana refers to the attainment of knowledge by Buddha at Bodh Gaya.

Parinirvana refers to the death of Siddhartha at Kushinagar.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Bhavabhuti was a very famous 8th-century scholar of India known for his plays and poetry, written in Sanskrit. His plays are considered equal to that of the works of Kalidasa

Hastimalla was a Jain Poet and Kannada writer in Hoysala Empire of present Karnataka region; he wrote 8 plays including Vikrant Kaurava, Subhadra Harana and Purvapurana.

Kshemeshvara was an author of famous Dasavatara-charitam which is written in Sanskrit. It mentions the 10 incarnations of Lord Vishnu. Kshemendra was an 11^{th}-century Sanskrit poet who belonged to Kashmir in India

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Maitreya: According to Buddhist tradition, it is the future Buddha. He is a bodhisattva and presently residing in the Tushita heaven. He will come to the earth to preach a new the dharma ("law") when the teachings of Gautama Buddha have completely decayed. He is also known as **Ajita Boddhisattva**.

The name Avalokiteshvara means "Lord who looks down with compassion". He is a Bodhisattva who embodies the compassion of all Buddhas. According to Buddhism, Avalokiteshvara protects against shipwreck, fire, assassins, robbers and wild beasts. He is the creator of the fourth world, which is the actual universe.

Bodhisattva as the lotus-bearer Padmapani was a favored form of Avalokiteshvara, the embodiment of Buddhist compassion. His identifiers are the lotus (padma) held in his left hand and the small figure of the Buddha Amitabha atop his head.

Lokesvara is referred to as the "Lord of the World". Avalokitesvara is popularly worshiped in Myanmar, where he is called Lokanat or lokabyuharnat and Thailand, where he is called Lokesvara. The bodhisattva goes by many other names.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Buddha travelled through the towns and villages in the kingdoms of Kosala and Magadha teaching his philosophy. Other regions where he wandered were Vaishali, Vajji, etc.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Greek, Kushanas and Shakas came from central Asia and entered India through northwestern part of the Indian subcontinent. Their aim was to established their rule or kingdom in India and for that they needed the support of local people.

To avoid the conflicts with Brahmans and strict rules of Hinduism, they choose Buddhism. Buddhism provided easiest entry in comparison to Hinduism which had strict birth related caste structure. So these rulers followed Buddhism in order to strengthen their dominance over the local people.

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Anekantavada is the Jain doctrine about metaphysical truths that emerged in ancient India. It states that the ultimate truth and reality is complex and has multiple aspects. According to Jainism, no single, specific statement can describe the nature of existence and the absolute truth.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The right answer is "The extinction of the flame of desire".

The ultimate aim of the Buddha's teachings is the attainment of Nirvana. Nirvana means departure from cravings and lust. It signifies dying out or extinction of desire, greed, hatred, ignorance, attachment and the sense of ego.

It refers to the extinction of greed, ill will and delusion in the mind, the three poisons that perpetuate suffering. Nirvana is what the Buddha achieved on the night of his enlightenment: he became completely free from the three poisons. Everything he taught for the rest of his life was aimed at helping others to arrive at that same freedom.

7. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Milinda was not a contemporary of Bimbisara, Gautam Buddha and Prasenjit. Menander I Soter was a Greco-Bactrian and later Indo-Greek King who administered a large territory in the Northwestern regions of the Indian Subcontinent from his capital at Sagala.

Menander is noted for having become a patron and convert to Greco-Buddhism and he is widely regarded as the greatest of the Indo-Greek kings.

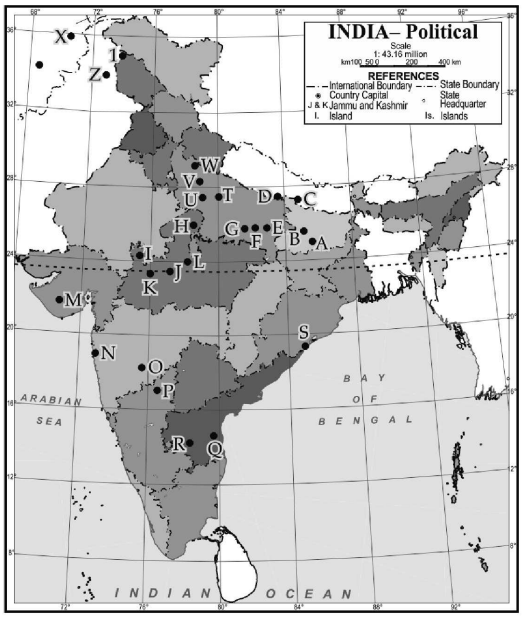
Person	Time Period
Bimbisara	558 BC – 491 BC
Gautam Buddha	563 BC – 483 BC
Milinda	180 BC – 130 BC
Prasenjit	6^{th} Century BC

HISTORY CLASS-VI

7 ASHOKA, THE EMPEROR WHO GAVE UP WAR

The Empire of Ashoka

- Maurya Empire was founded by Chandragupta Maurya with the help of Chanakya, more than 2300 years ago. Chandragupta Maurya was the grandfather of Ashoka.
- Chanakya's ideas and teachings were written down in the famous book called, **Arthashastra**.
- There were several cities in the empire which included the capital Pataliputra, Ujjain as well as Taxila, a gateway to the northwest, including Central Asia. Ujjain lay on the route from north to south India. Merchants, officials and crafts persons probably lived in these cities.
- Many forests were located in Central India, where people used to go in search of food. It was a vast empire and people spoke different languages, lived a different lifestyle, ate various kinds of food and wore clothes of other patterns.



A - Patliputra	H - Gujarra	O - Sannathi	V - Topra
B - Lauraya Araraj	I - Ujjain	P - Maski	W - Kalsi
C - Rampurwa	J - Sanchi	Q - Yerragudi	X - Lampaka
D - Lumbini	K - Panguraria	R - Brahmagiri	Y - Kandhar
E - Samath	L - Rupnath	S - Jaugada	Z - Taxila
F - Kaushambi	M - Garnar	T - Meerut	1 - Mansehar
G - Allahabad	N - Sopara	U - Bahapur	

Figure : The Mauryan Empire: Showing the principal cities and some of the places where inscriptions where found.

Difference between Empires and Kingdoms

- Emperors need more resources than kings because empires are larger than kingdoms and need to be protected by armies. Emperors also need a larger number of officials who collect taxes.
- Because the empire is so large, different regions have different ways of ruling. The area around Pataliputra was under the direct control of the emperor. Officials were appointed to collect taxes from farmers, herders, craftsperson's and traders, who lived in villages and towns in the area.
- Officials also punished those who disobeyed the ruler's orders and many of these officials were given salaries.
- There were messengers, spies in the empire and the emperor supervised them all, with the help of members of the royal family and senior ministers.
- There were various provinces and each of these was ruled by provincial capital such as Taxila or Ujjain.
- There were vast areas between the provincial centers, here the Maurya's tried to control roads and rivers, which were important for transport and to collect whatever resources were available as tax and tribute.
- People living in forests were usually independent but they used to provide elephants, timber, honey and wax to Mauryan officials.

Megasthenes: A Greek Ambassador

- Megasthenes was an ambassador who was sent to the court of Chandragupta by the Greek ruler of West Asia named Seleucus Nicator.
- Megasthenes wrote an account of what he saw. Here is a part of his description:
  1. The occasions on which the emperor appears in public are celebrated with grand royal processions. He is carried in a golden palanquin. His guards ride elephants decorated with gold and silver.
  2. The king is normally surrounded by armed women. The king has special servants to taste the food before he eats. He never sleeps in the same bedroom for two nights.
  3. Pataliputra is a large and beautiful city. It is surrounded by a massive wall. It has 570 towers and 64 gates. The houses, of two and three storeys, are built of wood and mud brick. The king's palace is also of wood and decorated with stone carvings. It is surrounded by gardens and rds.'

ASHOKA-A UNIQUE RULER

- Ashoka was the most famous Mauryan ruler. He was the first ruler who tried to take his message to

the people through inscriptions. Most of Ashoka's inscriptions were in Prakrit and were written in the Brahmi script.

- In ancient times, coastal Orissa was known as Kalinga. Ashoka fought a war so that he could conquer the great Kalinga, but remained horrified when he found out the results of the war.
- He was terrified to see all the bloodshed and the massive loss of lives in both the kingdom. Ashoka is the only king in the history of the world who gave up conquest after winning a war.

Ashoka's Dhamma

- Ashoka was inspired by the teachings of the Buddha and he felt that just as a father tries to teach his children, he had a duty to instruct his subjects.
- There were lot of problems troubling him like people from different religions were fighting with each other; Slaves and servants were ill-treated etc. Ashoka felt it was his duty to solve these problems.
- Therefore, Ashoka appointed several officials known as dhamma mahamatta who went from place to place teaching people about dhamma. Ashoka got his messages inscribed on rocks and pillars, instructing his officials to read his message to those who could not read it themselves.
- He also sent messengers to spread ideas about dhamma to other lands, such as Syria, Egypt, Greece and Sri Lanka. He built roads, dug wells, rest houses and he also arranged for medical treatment for both human beings and animals.

Rampurva: The Bull Capital

- The archaeological site is called Rampurva and is located in the West Champaran district of the Indian state of Bihar, situated very close to the border with Nepal.
- The lion capital is now in the Indian Museum in Kolkata, while the bull capital is located at the center of the porch of the Rashtrapati Bhavan, the Indian Presidential Palace.
- Rampurva Bull was part of a Mauryan pillar found in Rampurva, Bihar and has now been placed in Rashtrapati Bhavan. It is an example of the skill of the sculptors of the time.

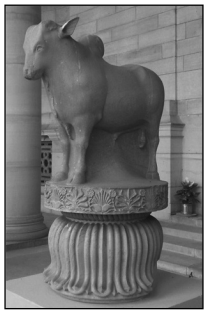


Figure: Rampurva Bull

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. What was name of grandfather of Ashoka?
- **(a)** Krishna
- **(b)** Mahavira
- **(c)** Siddhartha
- **(d)** Chandragupta Maurya

2. What was the capital of the Mauryan Empire?
- **(a)** Pataliputra **(b)** Vaishali
- **(c)** Indraprastha **(d)** Kushinagar

3. Chandragupta Maurya established the Mauryan Empire by defeating the:
- **(a)** Nandas **(b)** Chalukyas
- **(c)** Pallavas **(d)** Shunga

4. From whom, Maurya's used to collect taxes?
- **(a)** Hunters **(b)** Farmers
- **(c)** Craftsman **(d)** All of these

5. Which are the animals shown in our national Emblem?
- **(a)** Goats **(b)** Lions
- **(c)** Dog **(d)** None of these

6. When members of same family become rulers one after another, the family is called a:
- **(a)** Empire **(b)** Government
- **(c)** Dynasty **(d)** None of these

7. Chandragupta Maurya was an ardent follower of _____.
- **(a)** Sikhism **(b)** Jainism
- **(c)** Buddhism **(d)** Hinduism

8. Kautilya's Arthashastra deals with the aspects of:
- **(a)** Economic life **(b)** Religious life
- **(c)** Social life **(d)** Political policies

9. The duty of Dhamma Mahamatta was _____.
- **(a)** To people about dhamma, by visiting different places.
- **(b)** To collect the taxes.
- **(c)** To punish the people who violated rules.
- **(d)** To award the people who are gentle.

10. A sculpture of polished stone bull which was found in Rampurva (Bihar) is now placed:
- **(a)** In Parliament House
- **(b)** In front of the Share market office at Mumbai
- **(c)** In Rashtrapati Bhawan
- **(d)** In PMO office

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Who was the founder of the Maurya Empire around 2300 years ago?
- **(a)** Bindusara **(b)** Bimbisara
- **(c)** Ashoka
- **(d)** Chandragupta Maurya

2. Which of the following is the correct order of the Mauryan dynasty with three important rulers?
   (a) Chandragupta, Ashoka, Bindusara
   (b) Ashoka, Bindusara, Chandragupta
   (c) Chandragupta, Bindusara, Ashoka
   (d) Bindusara, Chandragupta, Ashoka
3. Consider the following statements:
   1. Chandragupta Maurya was helped by a wise man named Chanakya. His ideas and teachings were written down in the famous book named, Arthashastra.
   2. The realm that Ashoka administered was established by his grandfather, Chandragupta Maurya, over 1500 years prior.
   3. Emperors need more resources than kings because empires are larger than kingdoms.

   Select the correct answer with the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
4. In which of the following places were the inscriptions of Ashoka found?
   1. Kandahar **2.** Brahmagiri
   3. Jaugada **4.** Girnar
   5. Lumbini

   Select the correct answer with the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 5 only
   (c) 1, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5
5. Consider the following statements regarding Ashoka - A unique ruler:
   1. He was the most famous Mauryan ruler and was the first ruler who tried to take his message to the people through inscriptions.
   2. Most of Ashoka's inscriptions were written in Sanskrit and Pali languages.

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
6. In the context of the Mauryan Administration, consider the following statements:
   1. Royal princes were often sent as governors in the provinces.
   2. In the area under the direct control of the emperor, the officials were appointed to collect taxes.

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
7. What was the name of the ambassador, sent to the court of Chandragupta by the Greek ruler of West Asia, Seleucus Nicator?
   (a) Megasthenes **(b)** Damascus
   (c) Fa Hien **(d)** Hsuan Tsang
8. In the context of the Mauryan Empire, consider the following statements:
   1. Ujjain lay en route from north to west India.
   2. Areas of modern Pakistan and Afghanistan areas were included under the Mauryan Empire.
   3. Many of Chandragupta's ideas were compiled in a book called the Arthashastra.

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 1 and 2 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
9. Horrified by the loss of life, violence and bloodshed in the Kalinga war, Ashoka decided to observe 'Dhamma' and to teach others about it as well. In the context of Dhamma, consider the following statements:
   1. Ashoka believed that winning people over through dhamma is much better than conquering them through force.
   2. He wanted his sons and grandson to not indulge in wars after him. Instead, he wanted them to contribute in spreading Dhamma.

   Which of the above statements is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
10. Megasthenes wrote an account on the basis of what he saw. In the context of the description of the emperor, consider the following statements:
    1. The occasions on which the emperor appears in public was celebrated with grand royal processions.
    2. His guards rode elephants decorated with gold and silver. Some of the guards carried trees.
    3. The king was normally surrounded by armed women.

    Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) 1 and 2 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Who among the following rulers advised his subjects through this inscription?
   "Whosoever praises his religious sect or blames other sects out of excessive devotion to his own sect, with the view of glorifying his own sect, rather injures his own sect very severely." **[UPSC]**
   (a) Ashoka **(b)** Samudragupta
   (c) Harshavardhana **(a)** Krishnadeva Raya
2. The last battle fought and won by king Ashoka was_____. **[Allahabad High Court RO]**
   (a) Battle of Panipat **(b)** Kalinga war
   (c) Pannar war **(d)** Buxar war
3. Megasthenes was the ambassador of: **[BPSC]**
   (a) Seleucus **(b)** Alexander
   (c) Darius **(d)** The Greeks
4. Who dethroned the Mauryan dynasty? **[RRB]**
   (a) Pulkeshin 2 **(b)** Jai Singh
   (c) Vikramaditya **(d)** Pushyamitra Sunga
5. Consider the following statements regarding the inscription of Ashokan period and choose the correct options from the alternatives given below: **[UPSC]**

1. The inscription was constructed to convey message directly to the people.
2. The inscription was installed on the highways of that time.
3. The inscription used only Prakrit language so that common people can understand the royal message.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

6. Who was the first European scholar to decipher the Ashokan inscriptions of the Mauryan period? **[UPSC]**

(a) James Prinsep **(b)** Max Mueller
(c) Rousseau **(d)** William Jones

7. Which of the following sources indicate that the last Mauryan ruler Brihadrath was assassinated by Pusyamitra? **[OPSC]**

(a) Inscriptions **(b)** Gargi Samhita
(c) Puranas **(d)** Harshacharita

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The empire that Ashoka ruled was founded by his grandfather, Chandragupta Maurya, more than 2300 years ago. Chandragupta was supported by a wise man named Chanakya or Kautilya. Many of Chanakya's ideas were written down in a book called, Arthashastra.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Pataliputra was the capital of the Mauryan Empire. The monarch ruled the empire from the capital.

3. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Chandragupta Maurya established the Mauryan Empire by defeating the Nandas.

Chandragupta Maurya ascended the throne at the age of 25. Chandragupta Maurya established the Mauryan Empire by defeating the Nandas.

He defeated the last Nanda ruler Dhanananda and occupied Pataliputra in 322 BC. Chandragupta Maurya was supported by a wise man named Chanakya/Kautilya.

4. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: As the Mauryan Empire was so large, different parts were ruled differently. The area around Pataliputra was under the direct control of the emperor. This meant that officials were appointed to collect taxes from farmers, herders, craftspersons and traders, who lived in villages and towns in the area.

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The state emblem is an adaptation from the Sarnath Lion Capital of Ashoka. In the original, there are four lions, standing back to back, mounted on an abacus with a frieze carrying sculptures in high relief of an elephant, a galloping horse, a bull and a lion separated by intervening wheels over a bell-shaped lotus.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: When members of the same family become rulers one after another, the family is often called a dynasty. The Mauryas were a dynasty with three important rulers — Chandragupta, his son Bindusara and Bindusara's son, Ashoka.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Chandragupta Maurya was the founder of Mauryan dynasty. He defeated the mighty Magadha emperor Dhanānand of Nand Dynasty. After retiring from the throne, he became a Jain monk. Acharya Bhadrabahu, the most influential Jain ascetic of that time, was Chandragupta's spiritual teacher. In the last days of their life, Acharya Badrabahu and Chandragupta Maurya, both adopted Sallekhana, a Jain way of death by starvation.

8. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Kautilya's Arthashastra is the most important work on public Administration in ancient India. It deals with different aspects of management which include strategic management, financial management, accounting human resource management, corporate governance, social responsibility, etc.

9. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Dhamma Mahamattas were special officers appointed by Emperor Ashoka in order to spread and enforce the principles of dhamma.

Dhamma is a Prakrit word, which is derived from the Sanskrit word 'dharma' meaning religious duty. Dhamma did not involve worship of Gods or the performance of sacrifices. Instead, Dhamma was a code of conduct and morals such as charity, kindness, benevolence and tolerance, to be followed.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Original bull capital of Rampurva, one of the Pillars of Ashoka, is now located in the Presidential Palace of Rashtrapati Bhavan, New Delhi.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Chandragupta Maurya was the founder of the Maurya Empire, more than 2300 years ago. Chandragupta was supported by a wise man called Chanakya or Kautilya.

Chandragupta's origins are shrouded in mystery. The Greek sources mention him to be of non-warrior

lineage. The Hindu sources also say he was a student of Kautilya of humble birth (probably born to a Shudra woman). Most Buddhist sources say he was a Kshatriya.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Mauryas were a dynasty with three important rulers — Chandragupta, his son Bindusara and Bindusara's son, Ashoka.

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Ashoka was one of the greatest rulers of history. The Mauryan-empire founded by his grandfather, Chandragupta Maurya over 2300 years ago. He was supported by a wise man named Chanakya or Kautilya. Chanakya's ideas were written down in the Arthashastra. **Hence, statement 1 is correct but statement 2 is not correct.**

Emperors need more resources than kings as they are larger than kingdoms. They need to be protected by big armies and they also need a larger number of officials who collect taxes. **Hence, statement 3 is correct.**

4. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Ashokan inscriptions have been found in Kandahar, Lampaka, Mansehra, Shahbazgarhi, Kalsi, Topra, Meerut, Bahapur (Delhi), Lumbini, Rampurwa, Lauriya Araraj, Gujara, Sarnath, Kaushambi, Rupnath, Sanchi, Panguraria, Girnar, Jaugada (Kalinga), Sopara, Sannathi, Maski, Yerragudi and Brahmagiri.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The most famous Mauryan ruler was Ashoka. He was the first ruler who tried to take his message to the people through inscriptions. Most of Ashoka's inscriptions were in Prakrit and were written in the Brahmi script.

Hence, statement 1 is correct but statement 2 is not correct.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

Although there was some amount of control from Pataliputra and royal princes were often sent as governors, local customs and rules were probably followed.

The area around Pataliputra was under the direct control of the emperor. This meant that officials were appointed to collect taxes from farmers, herders, craftspersons and traders, who lived in villages and towns in the area. Officials also punished those who disobeyed the ruler's orders. Many of these officials were given salaries.

7. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Megasthenes was an ambassador who was sent to the court of Chandragupta by the Greek ruler of West Asia named Seleucus Nicator.

Megasthenes was an ancient Greek historian, diplomat and Indian ethnographer and explorer in the Hellenistic period. He described India in his book Indica, which is now lost, but has been partially reconstructed from literary fragments found in later authors that quoted his work.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Statement 1 is incorrect because Ujjain lay en route from north to south India.

Statement 3 is incorrect because many of Chanakya's ideas were written down in a book called the Arthashastra. Chanakya was a supporter of Chandragupta.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Both of these above statements are correct.

The Kalinga war brought about a change in Ashoka's attitude towards war.

One of his inscriptions says. "I believe that winning people over through dhamma is much better than conquering them through force. I am inscribing this message for the future, so that my son and grandson after me should not think about war. Instead, they should try to think about how to spread dhamma"

'Dhamma' is the Prakrit word for the Sanskrit term 'Dharma'.

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: All the above statements are correct.

Megasthenes wrote an account about what he saw. Here is a part of his description:

"The occasions on which the emperor appears in public are celebrated with grand royal processions. He is carried in a golden palanquin. His guards ride elephants decorated with gold and silver. Some of the guards carry trees on which live birds, including a flock of trained parrots, circle about the head of the emperor. The king is normally surrounded by armed women. He is afraid that someone may try to kill him."

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

Ashoka has been credited with the propagation of the tenets of the Buddhist sect.

Ashoka's dhamma (way of life) did not involve any worship to God or sacrifices and he thought that his duty towards his subjects was like that of a father towards his son.

Ashoka's edicts and inscriptions contained instructions on religious matters especially Buddhism and rules for the conduct of Bhikshuks.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

The last battle fought and won by king Ashoka was the Kalinga war.

The Kalinga War was fought in ancient India between the Maurya Empire under Ashoka and the state of Kalinga, an independent feudal kingdom located on the east coast, in the present-day state of Odisha and northern parts of Andhra Pradesh.

It is presumed that the battle was fought on Dhauli hills in Dhauli which is situated on the banks of the Daya River.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation:

Megasthenes was the ambassador of Seleucus Nikator.

Megasthenese wrote extensively in a book called Indica. The fragments of Indica provide valuable information on Maurya Administration, social classes and economic activities.

Megasthenes states that Indian society was divided into 7 classes. The famous city of Pataliputra was described in detail by Megasthenese, references of which are found in the writings of Strabo, Arian and other Greek writers.

4. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Pushyamitra Shunga was the founder and first ruler of the Shunga Empire which he established against the Maurya Empire. Pushyamitra is recorded to have performed numerous Ashvamedha campaigns to legitimize his right to rule.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation:

The history of Ashoka on can be reconstructed on the basis of his inscriptions. They are found not only in the Indian subcontinent but also in Kandhar in Afghanistan. Hence, statement 2 is correct.

They throw light on the career of Ashoka, his external and domestic policies and the extent of his empire. He is the first Indian king to speak directly to the people through his inscriptions. Hence, statement 1 is correct.

The inscriptions were composed in Prakrit language and written in the Brahmi script throughout the greater part of the empire. But in the north-western part they appear in Kharosthi script and in Kandhar in Afghanistan they were written even in Aramaic, in Greek script and Greek language. Hence, statement 3 is not correct.

6. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: During the colonial period, many English scholars were interested in Indian inscriptions to explore the cultural heritage of India. James Prinsep was one of them; he was the first European scholar to decipher the Ashokan inscriptions of the Mauryan period.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation:

Harshacharita indicates that the last Mauryan ruler Brihadrath was assassinated by Pusyamitra.

Brihadrath He was the last ruler of the Mauryan Empire. He was killed in 185 BC and by his General-Pushyamitra Shunga.

Pushyamitra Shunga took over the throne and established the Shunga Empire.

HISTORY CLASS-VI

8 VITAL VILLAGES, THRIVING TOWNS

Iron tools and Agriculture

- The use of iron began in the subcontinent around 3000 years ago. Some of the largest collections of iron tools and weapons were found in the megalithic burials.
- Around 2500 years ago, there is evidence of the growing use of iron tools. These included axes for clearing forests and the iron ploughshare.
- The existence of the kings and kingdoms was possible because of flourishing ancient villages. Irrigation was also used, Irrigation works built during this time included canals, wells, tanks and artificial lakes.

Who lived in the villages?

- Three different kinds of people used to live in Indian villages in the southern and northern parts of the subcontinent.
- In the Tamil region, large landowners were known as vellalar, ordinary ploughmen were known as uzhavar and landless labourers, including slaves, were known as kadaisiyar and adimai.
- In the northern part of the country, the village headman was known as the grama bhojaka.
- The grama bhojaka was often the largest landowner. Generally, he had slaves and hired workers to cultivate the land. He was a powerful person; the king often used him to collect taxes from the village. He also functioned as a judge and sometimes as a policeman.
- There were men and women such as the dasa karmakara, who did not own land and had to earn a living working on the fields owned by others.
- In most villages, there were also some crafts persons such as the blacksmith, potter, carpenter and weaver.
- Some of the earliest works in Tamil, known as Sangam literature, were composed around 2300 years ago. These texts were called Sangam because they were supposed to have been composed and compiled in assemblies (known as sangams) of poets that were held in the city of Madurai.

Finding Out about Cities

- Jatakas were the stories probably composed by ordinary people and then written down and preserved by Buddhist monks.
- Another piece of evidence to know about life in early cities was Sculptor. They were used to depict the daily lives of people during those years. Statues depicted people's lives in towns, villages and forests.
- Many of these sculptures were used to decorate railings, pillars and gateways of buildings that were visited by people.
- Another way of finding out about early cities is from the accounts of sailors and travellers who visited them.
- Many of the cities developed 2500 years ago were capitals of the Mahajanapadas and were surrounded by fortification walls.
- **Ring Wells:** In many cities, archaeologists have found rows of pots or ceramic rings arranged one on top of the other. These are known as ring wells. These seem to have been used as toilets in some cases and as drains and garbage dumps. These ring wells are usually found in individual houses.



Figure: Ring Wells from Mohenjo-Daro

Coins

- Wealth is measured in terms of coins and archaeologists found several thousands of coins belonging to this period.
- The earliest coins were in use for about 500 years with punch-marked coins that are generally rectangular or sometimes square or round in shape, either cut out of metal sheets or made out of flattened metal globules.
- Punch-marked coins were found over most parts of the subcontinent and remained in circulation till the early centuries CE.

Cities with Many Functions

- Mathura is an important settlement for more than 2500 years because it was located at the crossroads of two major routes of travel and trade - from the northwest to the east and from north to south.
- Mathura became the centre of extremely fine sculpture and it was also an important religious centre for Buddhist, Jainas and Krishna devotees.
- We have found short inscriptions from Mathura mentioning goldsmiths, blacksmiths, weavers, basket makers, garland makers and perfumers.

Crafts and Crafts Persons

- Northern Black Polished Ware was one of the famous potteries found in ancient Indian subcontinent. The pottery is commonly found in the northern part of the Indian subcontinent.

- NBPW is a hard, wheel made, metallic looking ware with a shiny black surface. The potter used to expose the earthenware to very high temperature in his kiln which resulted in the blackening of its outer surface. A fine black slip was also applied on this, which gave the pottery a mirror-like shine.
- Varanasi and Madurai were the famous cloth manufacturing centres. Both men and women worked in these centres.
- Shrenis were the associations of crafts persons and merchants. These shrenis of crafts persons provided training, procured raw material and distributed the finished product.
- Shrenis also served as banks, where rich men and women deposited money. This was invested and part of the interest was returned or used to support religious institutions such as monasteries.

Rules for Spinning and Weaving

- The rules describe how spinning and weaving could be done in workshops under the supervision of a special official.
- Widows, young women who are differently-abled, nuns, mothers of courtesans, retired women servants of the king, women who have retired from service in temples, may be used for processing wool, bark, cotton, hemp and flax.
- They should be paid according to the quality and quantity of work.
- Women who are not permitted to leave their homes can send maidservants to bring the raw material from the superintendent and take the finished work back to him.
- Women who can visit the workshop should go at dawn to give their work and receive their wages.
- If a woman does not complete her work, she will have to pay a fine and her thumbs can be cut off."

A closer look: Arikamedu

- There was a coastal settlement in Pondicherry which existed between 2200 and 1900 years ago known as Arkimedu. It was a coastal settlement where ships unloaded goods in warehouses from distant lands.
- Other objects found at Arikamedu were pottery from the Mediterranean region, such as amphorae and stamped red-glazed pottery, known as Arretine Ware, which was named after a city in Italy.
- Roman lamps, glassware, cloth dyeing tanks have also been found at the site. There is plenty of evidence for the making of beads from semi-precious stones and glass.

Rome

- Rome is one of the oldest cities in Europe and developed around the same time as the cities in the Ganga valley.
- Rome was the capital of one of the largest empires — one that spread across Europe, North Africa and West Asia.
- Augustus, one of the most important emperors, who ruled about 2000 years ago, said that he found Rome a city of brick and made it into a city of marble. He and later rulers, built temples and palaces.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. How many years ago the use of iron began in the subcontinent?
(a) Around 3,000 years ago
(b) Around 6,000 years ago
(c) Around 9,000 years ago
(d) Around 12,000 years ago

2. Among the following, what was the method of irrigation during the ancient time?
(a) Canals **(b)** Wells
(c) Tanks **(d)** All of these

3. Who was known as grama bhojaka in the northern part of ancient India?
(a) Village head men
(b) Ordinary people of village
(c) Educated persons
(d) Illiterate persons

4. Among the following, some of the largest collections of iron tools and weapons were found in the:
(a) Sanchi stupas **(b)** Mehrgarh
(c) Megalithic burials **(d)** Ring wells

5. Some people did not have any land of their own and worked for others were known as:
(a) Independent farmers
(b) Dasa Karamakaras
(c) Herders
(d) Grihapatis

6. Ring wells were found in:
(a) Kolkata **(b)** Mumbai
(c) Delhi **(d)** Chandigarh

7. Around 2000 years ago, Mathura became the second capital of:
(a) Mauryas **(b)** Kushanas
(c) Pallavas **(d)** Guptas

8. Why was Mathura famous for?
(a) Religious centre **(b)** Forested area
(c) Port **(d)** All of these

9. Rules of spinning and weaving are mentioned in which chapter of Arthashastra?
(a) Chapter 7 **(b)** Chapter 6
(c) Chapter 10 **(d)** Chapter 11

10. Northern Black Polished Ware was known for its:
(a) Farmers association **(b)** Agriculture
(c) Fine pottery **(d)** Kings Palace

11. Potter, Blacksmith, Carpenter and Weaver came under the category of _____ .
(a) Farmers **(b)** Kings
(c) Craftsmen **(d)** Herders

12. Where were the sculptures used by the ancient cities?
(a) To decorate railings, pillars etc.
(b) To decorate cities
(c) None of these
(d) Both (a) and (b)

13. Who described all the ports he visited?
(a) Megasthenes
(b) An unknown Greek sailor
(c) An Italian sailor
(d) None of the above

14. What was the period of existing Arkimedu?
(a) Between 2200 and 1900 years ago
(b) Between 1200 and 1500 years ago
(c) Between 5000 and 6000 years ago
(d) None of the above

15. Shrenis were associations of:
(a) rulers **(b)** crafts persons
(c) farmers **(d)** herders

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. In the context of Mathura, consider the following statements:
1. Mathura has been an important settlement for more than 2500 years.
2. It was located at the cross roads of two major routes of travel and trade.
3. There were fortifications around the city and several shrines.
Which among the following statements are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** All of the above

2. Around 2500 years ago, significant developments took place in agriculture. Which of the following are included in such developments?
1. Use of iron ploughshare
2. Planting of paddy
3. Irrigation Measures
Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

3. Match List- I with List- II and choose the correct answer, using the code given below.

Villages (List 1)		Name (List 2)	
A.	Large Landowners	**1.**	Adimai
B.	Ordinary Ploughman	**2.**	Kadaisiyar
C.	Landless Labourers	**3.**	Uzhavar
D.	Slaves	**4.**	Vellalar

(a) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4 **(b)** A-2, B-1, C-4, D-3
(c) A-4, B-3, C-2, D-1 **(d)** A-3, B-4, C-2, D-1

4. Consider the following statements:
1. Rules for spinning and weaving are written in the Arthashastra, mentioned in Chapter 11.
2. They describe how spinning and weaving could be done in workshops under the supervision of a special official.
3. Women who are not permitted to leave their homes can send maidservants to bring the raw material from the superintendent and take the finished work back to him.
Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

5. In the context of the villages in the northern part of the country, consider the following statements:
1. The village headman was known as the Grama Bhojaka.
2. Independent farmers and small landowners living in villages were called 'Bhupati'.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

6. Sangam literature was written in which of the following languages?
(a) Sanskrit **(b)** Tamil
(c) Telugu **(d)** Kannada

7. In the context of the means of exchange, consider the following statements:
1. The punch marked coins were the earliest coins, which were made of tin.
2. Items were also used as the means of exchange in the Sangam period.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

8. Consider the following assertion with the given reason:
Assertion: Mathura has been an important settlement for more than 2500 years.
Reason: Mathura was located at the crossroads of two major routes of travel and trade.
Select the correct answer using the code given below to:
(a) Both assertion and reason are correct and reason is the correct explanation of the assertion.
(b) Both assertion and reason are correct but reason is not the correct explanation of the assertion.
(c) Assertion is correct but the reason is not correct.
(d) Assertion is not correct but the reason is correct.

9. In the context of the Arikamedu, consider the following statements:
1. Arikamedu was a coastal settlement where ships unloaded goods from distant lands.
2. Arikamedu was developed between 2200 and 1900 years ago.
3. There was a warehouse to store goods.
Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

10. Which of the following script was used for the Tamil language in the beginning?
(a) Brahmi **(b)** Greek
(c) Sanskrit **(d)** Malayalam

11. Consider the following statements regarding Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW):
1. NBPW is a hard, wheel made, metallic looking ware with a shiny black surface.
2. A fine black slip was also applied on this, which gave the pottery a mirror-like shine.
3. NBPW generally found in north eastern and central India.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

12. In the context of the Rome, consider the following statements:
1. Rome developed as the same time as the cities in the Ganga valley.
2. Augustus ruled in Rome around 2000 years ago.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Consider the following statements, with reference to Jatakas: **[UPSC]**
1. Jatakas are the compilation of the stories from the previous birth of Buddha.
2. These are also associated with the stories Bodhisattva or future Buddha.
3. Jatakas are Canonical Literature, which is a part of Buddhist Literature.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

2. Tolkappiyam in Sangam age is the greatest work of _____ literature. **[SSC]**
(a) Tamil **(b)** Telugu
(c) Sanskrit **(d)** Kannada

3. In the history of Indian coinage, Punch - Marked Coins (PMC) have a special place. Which of the following statements are true with reference to PMC? **[Karnataka PCS]**
1. They are the earliest coinage in India.
2. They were not in circulation in South India.
3. We can notice symbols on one or both sides of these coins.
4. These coins are made of silver.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 and 4 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 1, 2, 3 and 4 **(d)** 1, 3 and 4

4. In the context of early Indian history, the term 'NBPW' refers to a: **[SSC]**
(a) Dating technique
(b) Pottery type
(c) Settlement pattern
(d) Neolithic tool-making technique

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The use of iron began in the subcontinent around 3000 years ago. Some of the largest collections of iron tools and weapons were found in the megalithic burials. Around 2500 years ago, there is evidence for the growing use of iron tools.

2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The kings and kingdoms you have been reading about could not have existed without the support of flourishing villages. While new tools and the system of transplantation (Chapter 5) increased production, irrigation was also used. Irrigation works that were built during this time included canals, wells, tanks and artificial lakes.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In the northern part of the country, the village headman was known as the grama bhojaka. Usually, men from the same family held the position for generations. In other words, the post was hereditary. The grama bhojaka was often the largest landowner.

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The use of iron began in the subcontinent around 3000 years ago. Some of the largest collections of iron tools and weapons were found in the megalithic burial

5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Apart from the gramabhojaka, there were other independent farmers, known as grihapatis, most of whom were smaller landowners. And then there were men and women such as the dasa karmakara, who did not own land and had to earn a living working on the fields owned by others.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Ring wells were usually found in Delhi. In many cities, archaeologists have found rows of pots, or ceramic rings arranged one on top of the other. These are known as ring wells. These seem to have been used as toilets in some cases and as drains and garbage dumps. These ring wells are usually found in individual houses.

7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Mathura has been an important settlement for more than 2500 years. Around 2000 years ago, Mathura became the second capital of the Kushanas.

8. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Mathura was also a religious centre — there were Buddhist monasteries, Jaina shrines and it was an important centre for the worship of Krishna.

9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Rules for spinning and weaving were the rules are from the Arthashastra, mentioned in

Chapter 7. They describe how spinning and weaving could be done in workshops under the supervision of a special official.

10. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW) is a hard, wheel made, metallic looking ware with a shiny black surface. The potter used to expose the earthenware to very high temperature in his kiln which resulted in the blackening of its outer surface. A fine black slip was also applied on this, which gave the pottery a mirror-like shine.

11. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: In most villages there were also some crafts persons such as the blacksmith, potter, carpenter and weaver.

12. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Sculptors carved scenes depicting peoples' lives in towns and villages, as well as in the forest. Many of these sculptures were used to decorate railings, pillars and gateways of buildings that were visited by people.

13. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Another way of finding out about early cities is from the accounts of sailors and travellers who visited them. One of the most detailed accounts that has been found was by an unknown Greek sailor.

14. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: There was a coastal settlement in Pondicherry which existed between 2200 and 1900 years ago known as Arkimedu. It was a coastal settlement where ships unloaded goods in warehouses from distant lands.

15. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: *Shrenis* were the associations of crafts persons and merchants. These shrenis of crafts persons provided training, procured raw material and distributed the finished product.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Mathura has been an important settlement for more than 2500 years. It was important because it was located at the cross roads of two major routes of travel and trade — from the northwest to the east and from north to south. **Hence, statement 1 and 2 are correct.**
There were fortifications around the city and several shrines. **Hence, statement 3 is correct.**

2. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Around 2500 years ago, there is evidence for the growing use of iron tools. These included axes for clearing forests and the iron ploughshare, which was useful for increasing agricultural production.
While new tools and the system of transplantation increased production, irrigation was also used. Irrigation works that were built during this time included canals, wells, tanks and artificial lakes.

3. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: There were at least three different kinds of people living in most villages in the southern and northern parts of the subcontinent. In the Tamil region, large landowners were known as Vellalar, ordinary ploughmen were known as Uzhavar and landless labourers, including slaves, were known as Kadaisiyar and Adimai.

4. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Rules for spinning and weaving
These rules are from the Arthashastra, mentioned in Chapter 7. They describe how spinning and weaving could be done in workshops under the supervision of a special official. Hence, statement 1 is not correct.
"Widows, young women who are differently abled, nuns, mothers of courtesans, retired women servants of the king, women who have retired from service in temples, may be used for processing wool, bark, cotton, hemp and flax.
They should be paid according to the quality and quantity of work. Women who are not permitted to leave their homes can send maidservants to bring the raw material from the superintendent and take the finished work back to him. Hence, statement 2 and 3 is correct.

5. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Statement 1 is correct. In the northern part of the country, the village headman was known as the Grama Bhojaka. The Grama Bhojaka was often the largest landowner. Generally, he had slaves and hired workers to cultivate the land. Besides, as he was powerful, the king often used him to collect taxes from the village. He also functioned as a judge and sometimes as a policeman.
Statement 2 is incorrect. Apart from the gramabhojaka, there were other independent farmers, known as grihapatis, most of whom were smaller landowners.

6. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Some of the earliest works in Tamil, known as Sangam literature, were composed around 2300 years ago. These texts were called Sangam because they were supposed to have been composed and compiled in assemblies (known as Sangamas) of poets that were held in the city of Madurai.

7. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Statement 1 is incorrect. The earliest coins which were in use for about 500 years were punch marked coins. They have been given this name because the designs were punched on to the metal — silver or copper.
Statement 2 is correct. There were other means of exchange as well used in the Sangam period. For instance, read these two lines from a short poem from the Sangam collection: As they carry the white paddy of their land to exchange it for the salt of another

8. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Mathura has been an important settlement for more than 2500 years.

It was important because it was located at the crossroads of two major routes of travel and trade — from the northwest to the east and from north to south.

There were fortifications around the city and several shrines. Mathura was also a centre where some extremely fine sculpture was produced.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Between 2200 and 1900 years ago, Arikamedu was a coastal settlement where ships unloaded goods from distant lands. **Hence, statement 1 and 2 are correct.**

A massive brick structure, which may have been a warehouse, was found at the site. **Hence, statement 3 is correct.**

Other finds include pottery from the Mediterranean region, such as amphorae (tall double-handled jars that contained liquids such as wine or oil) and stamped red-glazed pottery, known as Arretine Ware, which was named after a city in Italy.

10. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Tamil-Brahmi script has been paleographically and stratigraphically dated between the third century BCE and the first century CE and it constitutes the earliest known writing system evidenced in many parts of Tamil Nadu, Kerala andhra Pradesh and Sri Lanka.

11. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: NBPW is a hard, wheel made, metallic looking ware with a shiny black sur face. The potter used to expose the earthenware to very high temperature in his kiln which resulted in the blackening of its outer surface. A fine black slip was also applied on this, which gave the pottery a mirror-like shine. **Hence, statement 1 and 2 are correct.**

We also have archaeological evidence for crafts. These include extremely fine pottery, known as the Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW). It gets its name from the fact that it is generally found in the northern part of the subcontinent. **Hence statement 3 is incorrect.**

12. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Both statements are correct.

Statement 1 : Rome is one of the oldest cities in Europe and developed around the same time as the cities in the Ganga valley.

Statement 2 : Augustus, one of the most important emperors, who ruled about 2000 years ago, said that he found Rome a city of brick and made it into a city of marble. He and later rulers, built temples and palaces.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Statement 3 is incorrect. The Jatakas are the best example of Buddhist non-canonical literature. These are a compilation of stories from the previous births of Buddha.

The Jataka tales are a voluminous body of literature native to India concerning the previous births of Gautama Buddha. These are the stories that tell about the previous lives of the Buddha, in both human and animal form. Jataka tales were written in layman language and everybody could relate to them.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Tolkappiyam is the most ancient extant Tamil grammar text and the oldest extant long work of Tamil literature. The surviving manuscripts of the Tolkappiyam consist of three books, each with nine chapters, with a cumulative total of 1,610 sutras in the nurpa meter.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Punch-marked coins, also known as Aahat coins, are a kind of early Indian coinage dating from the 6^{th} to 2^{nd} centuries BC. It had an amorphous form. The first coins were cast and die-struck on only one side.

In South India punch-marked coins are the earliest. It is noteworthy that a silver punch-marked coin was found at Banavasi in Karnataka and this is perhaps the earliest coin of Karnataka. **Hence, statement 2 is not correct.**

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Northern Black Polished Ware culture (abbreviated NBPW or NBP) is an urban Iron Age Indian culture of the Indian Subcontinent, lasting c. 700–200 BCE (proto NBPW between 1200 and 700 BCE), succeeding the Painted Grey Ware culture and Black and red ware culture. It developed beginning around 700 BCE, in the late Vedic period and peaked from 500–300 BCE, coinciding with the emergence of 16 great states or mahajanapadas in Northern India and the subsequent rise of the Mauryan Empire.

HISTORY CLASS-VI

9 TRADERS, KINGS AND PILGRIMS

About Trade and Traders

- Traders travel from place to place and carry goods such as pottery, gold, pepper, etc. with them to trade. Traders used to carry these goods to Rome in ships, across the sea and by land in caravans.
- Pepper was particularly valued in the Roman Empire, it was known as black gold in Rome. There must have been quite a lot of trade as many Roman gold coins have been found in south India.
- Traders explored several sea routes, some of them in the Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal, where sailors took advantage of the monsoon winds to cross the seas more quickly.

New kingdoms along the coasts

- The southern half of the subcontinent is marked by a long coastline and with hills, plateaus and river valleys. Amongst the river valleys, that of the Kaveri is the most fertile.
- Chiefs and kings who controlled the river valleys and the coasts became rich and powerful.
- In Sangam poems "muvendar", means three chiefs, used for the heads of three ruling families, the Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas, who became powerful in south India around 2300 years ago.
- Each of the three chiefs had two centres of power: one inland and one on the coast. Kaveripattinam, the port of the Cholas and Madurai, the capital of the Pandyas were the most important centres.
- The chiefs received gifts from the people in the form of taxes and went on military expeditions. The chief's wealth was distributed among his family, followers, poets and soldiers.
- 200 years later Satavahanas dynasty became powerful in western India, Gautamiputra Shri Satakarni was the most powerful ruler of Satavahanas. He took this name after his mother, Gautmi Balashri and it is through her writings that we come to know of him from.
- Dakshinapatha: The Satavahanas were known as the lords of Dakshinapatha. The term Dakshinapatha literally means 'route leading to the south'.

The story of the Silk Route

- Silk is a rich, glossy, smooth and highly valued fabric. Raw silk has to be extracted from the cocoons of silkworms, spun into thread and then woven into cloth.
- Techniques of making silk were first invented in China around 7000 years ago. Traders from China travel from a distant place to sell silk. The paths they followed came to be known as the Silk Route.
- Chinese rulers used to send gifts of silk to rulers in Iran and West Asia and from there, the knowledge of silk spread further west. Around 2000 years ago, wearing silk became the fashion in rich people.
- Silk route was controlled by some kings, they collected taxes from traders and in return protected them from the robbers.
- Kushanas ruled over central Asia and northwest India around 2000 years ago. They were best known who controlling the Silk Route.
- Their two major centres of power were Peshawar and Mathura. Taxila was also included in their kingdom. They extended the Silk Route from Central Asia down to the seaports at the mouth of the river Indus, from where silk was shipped westwards to the Roman Empire.
- The Kushanas were amongst the earliest rulers of the subcontinent to issue gold coins. These were used by traders along the Silk Route.

The spread of Buddhism

- The most famous Kushana ruler was Kanishka, who ruled around 1900 years ago. He organised a Buddhist council, where scholars met and discussed important matters.
- The Buddhacharita, a biography of Buddha, was written by Ashvaghosha, he was a court poet of Kanishka. Ashvaghosha and other Buddhist scholars now began writing in Sanskrit.
- **Mahayana Buddhism:** A new form of Buddhism, developed, which had two distinct features. Earlier, the Buddha's presence was shown in sculpture by using certain signs. For instance, his attainment of enlightenment was shown by sculptures of the peepal tree. Later, statues of the Buddha were made in Mathura and in Taxila.
- **Boddhisatva**: They were supposed to be persons who had attained enlightenment and after attaining enlightenment, they could live in complete isolation and meditate in peace. But they remained in the world to teach and help other people. The worship of Bodhisattvas became very popular and spread throughout Central Asia, China and later to Korea and Japan.
- Buddhism also spread to western and southern India, where dozens of caves were hollowed out of hills for monks to live in. Some of these caves were made on the orders of kings and queens and were often located near passes through the Western Ghats.

- **Theravada Buddhism**: Buddhism also spread south-eastwards, to Sri Lanka, Myanmar, Thailand and other parts of Southeast Asia including Indonesia. The older form of Buddhism, known as Theravada Buddhism was more popular in these areas.
- The main difference between Mahayana and Theravada is that Mahayana refers to various Buddhist traditions, texts, practices and philosophies while Theravada refers to the oldest existing school of Buddhism.

The Quest of the Pilgrims

- Pilgrims are the men and women who travel to the holy places to offer worship to their deities. They usually travel with traders.
- Various pilgrims came to the subcontinent from China such as Fa Xian, Xuan Zang and I-Qing, they came to visit places associated with the life of the Buddha.
- Pilgrims left behind a narrative of their journey that included dangers, adventures and stories about the countries and monasteries they visited.
- Xuan Zang took the land route back to China carried back with him statues of the Buddha made of gold, silver and sandalwood and over 600 manuscripts loaded on the backs of 20 horses. He spent the rest of his life translating the remaining manuscripts from Sanskrit into Chinese.

Nalanda – A unique centre of Buddhist learning

- Nalanda was the most famous Buddhist monastery of that period. It is located in Rajgir in the state of Bihar, India. Xuan Zang and other pilgrims spent time studying in Nalanda.

The Beginning of Bhakti

- Bhakti means a person's devotion to his or her chosen deity. During that time, the worship of certain deities Siva, Vishnu and goddesses such as Durga, gained importance in Hinduism. Anybody, whether rich or poor, belonging to the so-called 'high' or 'low' castes, man or woman, could follow the path of Bhakti.
- The idea of Bhakti is present in the Bhagavad Gita. In this Krishna the God, asked Arjuna, his devotee and friend, to abandon all dharmas and take refuge in him, as only he can set Arjuna free from every evil. This form of worship widely spread to different parts of the country.
- According to this system of belief, if a devotee worships the chosen deity with a pure heart, the deity will appear in the form in which he or she may desire. It could be thought of as a human being, lion, tree or any other form.
- Hindu: The word 'Hindu', like the term 'India' is derived from the river Indus. It was used by Arabs and Iranians to refer to people who lived to the east of the river and to their cultural practices, including religious beliefs.
- Jesus Christ: About 2000 years ago, Christianity emerged in West Asia. Jesus Christ was born in Bethlehem, which was then part of the Roman Empire. He was the Saviour of the world. He also taught people to treat others with love and trust others, just as they themselves wanted to be treated.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. During Ancient India, South India was famous for:
(a) Gold **(b)** Spices
(c) Stones **(d)** All of these

2. Which river valley was the most fertile?
(a) Kaveri River Valley
(b) Yamuna River Valley
(c) Brahmaputra River Valley
(d) None of these

3. What was the meaning of muvendar?
(a) Three chiefs
(b) Three kings
(c) Three groups of people
(d) None of these

4. In which period did Chola, Cheras and Pandyas become powerful in South India?
(a) About 1700 years ago
(b) About 6300 years ago
(c) About 3300 years ago
(d) About 2300 years ago

5. Who was the most powerful ruler of Satavahanas?
(a) Gautamiputra Sri Satakarni
(b) Krishna
(c) Siddhartha
(d) All of these

6. Who was known as the lord of Dakshanipath?
(a) Chandragupta
(b) Raja Ram Mohan Rai
(c) Gautamiputra Sri Satakarni
(d) None of these

7. Men and women who undertook a journey to the holy places in order to offer worship are known as:
(a) Traders **(b)** Pilgrims
(c) Buddhism **(d)** Theravada

8. Chinese Traveller Xuanzang visited India in the reign of:
(a) Ramagupta **(b)** Harshavardhana
(c) Samudragupta **(d)** Chandragupta II

9. Traders carried their goods in ancient times, through:
(a) Road by Bullock-cart **(b)** Air route
(c) Sea route **(d)** All of these

10. Who was the poet in the Samudragupta court?
(a) Harshsena **(b)** Banbhatt
(c) Harishena **(d)** Harshagupta

11. Bhagavad Gita, a sacred book of the _____.
(a) Sikhs **(b)** Muslims
(c) Hindus **(d)** Jain

12. Which is known as Black Gold in Roman Empire?
(a) Black Pepper **(b)** Black Silk
(c) Black Stone **(d)** Black Coal

13. The idea of Bhakti became very popular, which Hindu deities were worshipped through Bhakti?

(a) Shiva (b) Vishnu
(c) Durga (d) All of the above

14. The word 'Hindu' derived from the word _____.
(a) Hindustan (b) Hindi
(c) Hind (d) Indus

15. Which tree was shown in the sculptures?
(a) Neem (b) Tulsi
(c) Peepal (d) Mango

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements regarding the contemporary trade, which of the following statements is not correct?
(a) South India was famous for gold, spices, especially black pepper and precious stones.
(b) Pepper was particularly valued in the Roman Empire, so much so that it was known as black gold.
(c) Traders used only sea routes to carry these goods.
(d) Many Roman gold coins have been found in south India as proof of trade from Rome.

2. With respect to Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas rulers, consider the following statements:
1. Puhar and Madurai were among their important centres of power.
2. They demanded and received gifts from people instead of collecting taxes.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

3. Where were the techniques of making silk, invented first?
(a) India (b) Greece
(c) Europe (d) China

4. Consider the following assertion with the given reason:
Assertion: Some kings tried to control large portions of the route.
Reason: The traders travelling along the silk route brought taxes, tributes and gifts to the kings of that area. Use the code given below to select the correct answer:
(a) Both assertion and reason are correct and the reason is the correct explanation of the assertion.
(b) Both assertion and reason are correct but the reason is not the correct explanation of the assertion.
(c) Assertion is correct but the reason is not correct.
(d) Assertion is not correct but the reason is correct.

5. In the context of Kushanas, which of the following statements is not correct?
(a) The best-known of the rulers who controlled the Silk Route were the Kushanas.
(b) Their two major centres of power were Peshawar and Mathura.
(c) During their rule, a branch of the Silk Route extended from Central Asia down to the seaports at the mouth of the river Nile.
(d) The Kushanas were amongst the earliest rulers of the subcontinent to issue gold coins.

6. Who was the author of 'Buddha Charita'?
(a) Asvaghosha
(b) Nagasena
(c) Nagarjuna
(d) Vasumitra

7. Consider the following statements, regarding the Mahayana Buddhism:
1. Mahayana means the Greater Vehicle.
2. The school is more liberal, believing in Buddha's heavenly nature and the Bodhisattvas who embody Buddha Nature.
3. Maitreya is the Buddha of the future, who will be born to teach enlightenment in the next age.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3

8. Tripitaka' texts are related with which religion?
(a) Hinduism (b) Buddhism
(c) Jainism (d) Shaivism

9. In the context of the spreading of Buddhism, consider the following statements:
1. Buddhism also spread south eastwards, to Sri Lanka, Myanmar, Thailand and other parts of Southeast Asia including Indonesia.
2. The older form of Buddhism, known as Theravada Buddhism was more popular in these areas.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

10. In the context of the idea of Bhakti, which of the following statements is not correct?
(a) The idea of Bhakti became popular in the post-Mauryan period.
(b) The idea of Bhakti is present in the Bhagavad Gita.
(c) Those who followed the system of Bhakti emphasised the performance of elaborate sacrifices.
(d) A devotee believed that, the deity could be a human being, lion, tree or any other form.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Many of the Greeks, Kushanas and Shakas embraced Buddhism rather than Hinduism because: **[UPSC]**
(a) Buddhism was in the ascendant at that time
(b) They had renounced the policy of war and violence
(c) Caste-ridden Hinduism did not attract them
(d) Buddhism provided easier access to Indian society

2. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
1. The Chola dynasty reached its zenith during the reign Rajendra Chola I.
2. The Pandyas reigned over the Southern region of modern-day Tamil Nadu.
3. The Greek Authors including Megasthenes, Pliny etc. mentioned the trade contacts between South India and the West.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

3. In whose reign did Hiuen Tsang came to India? **[UPTET]**

(a) Samudragupta
(b) Chandragupta Vikramaditya
(c) Harshavardhana
(d) Skandagupta

4. Which city of India was known as avantika in ancient times? **[MPPSC]**

(a) Avadh **(b)** Ruhelkhand
(c) Bumdelkhand **(d)** Matwa

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: South India was famous for gold, pepper and precious stones. In the Roman Empire, pepper was valued so much that it was known as black gold. So, traders carried many of these goods to Rome in ships, across the sea and by land in caravans.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The southern half of the subcontinent was marked by a long coastline and with hills, plateaus and river valleys. Kaveri was the most fertile amongst the river valleys. Chiefs and kings become rich and powerful who controlled the river valleys and the coasts.

3. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Chiefs and kings become rich and powerful who controlled the river valleys and the coasts. Sangam poems mention the muvendar, a Tamil word meaning three chiefs, used for the heads of three ruling families, the Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas, who became powerful in south India around 2300 years ago.

4. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Sangam poems mention the muvendar, a Tamil word meaning three chiefs, used for the heads of three ruling families, the Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas, who became powerful in south India around 2300 years ago.

Each of the three chiefs had two centres of power: one inland and one on the coast. Among the six cities, two were important: Puhar or Kaveripattinam, the port of the Cholas and Madurai, the capital of the Pandyas.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Around 200 years later a dynasty known as the Satavahanas became powerful in western India. The most important ruler of the Satavahanas was Gautamiputra Shri Satakarni. He and other Satavahana rulers were known as lords of the dakshinapatha, literally the route leading to the south, which was also used as a name for the entire southern region.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Around 200 years later a dynasty known as the Satavahanas became powerful in western India. The most important ruler of the Satavahanas was Gautamiputra Shri Satakarni. He and other Satavahana rulers were known as lords of the dakshinapatha, literally the route leading to the south, which was also used as a name for the entire southern region.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Pilgrims are the men and women who travel to the holy places to offer worship to their deities. Fa Xian and Xuan Zang were Chinese Buddhist pilgrims who came to the subcontinent about 1600 and 1400 years ago, respectively.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Chinese traveller Xuan Zang visited Thanesar during the rule of Harshavardhana.

Xuan Zang also known as Hiuen Tsang, was a 7th-century Chinese Buddhist monk, scholar, traveller and translator. He is known for his epoch-making contributions to Chinese Buddhism, the travelogue of his journey to India in 629–645 CE. His efforts to bring over 657 Indian texts to China and his translations of some of these texts.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: South India was famous for gold, pepper and precious stones. In the Roman Empire, pepper was valued so much that it was known as black gold. So, traders carried many of these goods to Rome in ships, across the sea and by land in caravans.

Several sea routes were explored by traders and some of these followed the coasts. There were others across the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal, where sailors took advantage of the monsoon winds to cross the seas more quickly.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Harisena, also called Harishena or Hirisena, was a 4^{th}-century Sanskrit poet, panegyrist and government minister. He was an important figure in the court of Gupta emperor, Samudragupta. His most famous poem, written c. 345 C.E., describes the bravery of Samudragupta and is inscribed on the Allahabad Pillar.

11. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In the sacred book of Hindus, the Bhagavad Gita, the idea of Bhakti is present, which is included in the Mahabharata. In this Krishna the God, asked Arjuna, his devotee and friend, to abandon all dharmas and take refuge in him, as only he can set Arjuna free from every evil. This form of worship widely spread to different parts of the country.

12. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In the Roman Empire, pepper was valued so much that it was known as black gold. So, traders carried many of these goods to Rome in ships, across the sea and by land in caravans.

13. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: During that time, the worship of certain deities Siva, Vishnu and goddesses such as Durga, gained importance in Hinduism. These deities were

worshipped through Bhakti, an idea that became very popular. Bhakti means a person's devotion to his or her chosen deity.

In the sacred book of Hindus, the Bhagavad Gita, the idea of Bhakti is present, which is included in the Mahabharata. In this Krishna the God, asked Arjuna, his devotee and friend, to abandon all dharmas and take refuge in him, as only he can set Arjuna free from every evil. This form of worship widely spread to different parts of the country.

14. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The word 'Hindu', like the term 'India' is derived from the river *Indus*. It was used by Arabs and Iranians to refer to people who lived to the east of the river and to their cultural practices, including religious beliefs.

15. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Buddha's attainment of enlightenment was shown by sculptures of the peepal tree.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Statements (a), (b) and (d) are correct but (c) is not correct, because the traders used both the sea and land routes to carry these goods to Rome.

Traders carried many of these goods to Rome in ships, across the sea and by land in caravans. Traders explored several sea routes.

There were others across the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal, where sailors took advantage of the monsoon winds to cross the seas more quickly. So, if they wanted to reach the western coast of the subcontinent from East Africa or Arabia, they chose to sail with the southwest monsoon. And sturdy ships had to be built for these long journeys.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Both the above statements are correct.

Each of the three chiefs; the Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas; had two centres of power: one inland and one on the coast. Of these six cities, two were very important: Puhar or Kaveripattinam, the port of the Cholas and Madurai, the capital of the Pandyas.

The chiefs did not collect regular taxes. Instead, they demanded and received gifts from the people. They also went on military expeditions and collected tribute from neighbouring areas. They kept some of the wealth and distributed the rest amongst their supporters, including members of their family, soldiers and poets.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Techniques of making silk were first invented in China around 7000 years ago. Some people from China who went to distant lands on foot, horseback and on camels, carried silk with them.

The paths they followed came to be known as the Silk Route. Sometimes, Chinese rulers sent gifts of silk to rulers in Iran and west Asia and from there, the knowledge of silk spread further west.

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Some kings tried to control large portions of the Silk route, because they could benefit from taxes, tributes and gifts that were brought by traders travelling along the route. In return, they protected the traders who passed through their kingdoms from attacks by robbers.

Chinese rulers sometimes sent gifts of silk to rulers in Iran and West Asia, due to which the knowledge of silk spread further west. Amongst the rulers and rich people in Rome, wearing silk became the fashion about 2000 years ago.

Hence, both assertion and reason are correct and reason is the correct explanation of the assertion.

5. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The best-known of the rulers who controlled the Silk Route were the Kushanas, who ruled over central Asia and north-west India around 2000 years ago. Hence, statement (a) is correct.

Their two major centres of power were Peshawar and Mathura. Taxila was also included in their kingdom. Hence, statement (b) is correct.

During their rule, a branch of the Silk Route extended from Central Asia down to the seaports at the mouth of the river Indus, from where silk was shipped westwards to the Roman Empire. Hence, statement (c) is incorrect.

The Kushanas were amongst the earliest rulers of the subcontinent to issue gold coins. These were used by traders along the Silk Route. Hence, statement (d) is correct.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Kanishka was the most famous Kushana ruler, who ruled around 1900 years ago. He organised a Buddhist council, where scholars met and discussed important matters. Ashvaghosha, a poet who composed a biography of the Buddha, the Buddhacharita, lived in his court.

Buddhacharita is an epic poem in the Sanskrit mahakavya style on the life of Gautama Buddha by Asvaghosa of Saketa, composed in the early second century CE.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Mahayana came to think of itself as "great" both in its interpretations of the Buddha's teaching and in its openness to a broader group of people, especially lay people. The word yana means vehicle or raft, which evokes the image of Buddhist teaching as a raft or vehicle that can help one cross over the river of suffering to the "other shore." The Mahayana is, thus, the "Great Vehicle."

Maitreya is the Buddha of the future, who will be born to teach enlightenment in the next age. According to Mahayana teachings, a Buddha is firstborn as a bodhisattva and then after many lifetimes, progresses on to Buddhahood.

The historical Buddha was himself referred to as a bodhisattva before becoming the Buddha.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Tripitaka or Three Baskets is a traditional term used for various Buddhist scriptures. It is known as Pali Canon in English. The three pitakas are Sutta Pitaka, Vinaya Pitaka and Abhidhamma Pitaka.

These books are believed to be compiled by various Buddishit Councils held.

In Vinayapitaka, thoughts related to the conduct of Buddhist monks are found. Sutapitaka contains a

collection of sermons by Mahatma Buddha, while Abhidhamma Pitaka discusses Buddhist Philosophy.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Buddhism also spread south-eastwards, to Sri Lanka, Myanmar, Thailand and other parts of Southeast Asia including Indonesia.

The older form of Buddhism, known as Theravada Buddhism was more popular in these areas.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Those who followed the system of Bhakti emphasized devotion and individual worship of a single god or goddess, rather than the performance of elaborate sacrifices. Deities who were worshipped through Bhakti included Shiva, Vishnu and goddesses such as Durga. This form of worship became an important feature of Hinduism.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Greek, Kushanas and Shakas entered India through North Western frontier and established their rule or kingdom.

In 180 BC the Indo-Greek or the Graeco-Indian Kingdom was established, when the Graeco-Bactrian king Demetrius invaded the Indian subcontinent. The greek kings understood Indian culture and became political entities with a mix of Indian culture and greek culture.

Buddhism provided easiest entry in comparison to Hinduism which had strict birth related caste structure. So these rulers embraced Buddhism in order to strengthen their dominance over the local people.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Rajendra Cola is considered one of the greatest rulers and military generals of south India. He continued his father's policy of aggressive conquests and expansion. Apart from reaching northwards to river Ganga and moving overseas to the Maldives and Sri Lanka, he also invaded the Southeast Asian territories. He conquered the whole of Ceylon or Sri Lanka.

One of the three main lineages from the southern part of the country, the Pandya dynasty was an ancient Tamil state in South India that developed during the Sangam Age. Many early Tamil inscriptions of Pandyas have been found in Madurai and its surroundings

The Greek Authors including Megasthenes, Pliny etc. mentioned the trade contacts between South India and the West. Hence, statement 3 is correct.

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: During the reign of Emperor Harsha, the Chinese traveller Hiuen Tsang (Xuanzang) visited India. He returned to China and wrote a detailed account of India during Harsha's reign in his book "Si-yu-ki," or "Record of the Western Countries."

Harshavardhana was an Indian emperor who ruled northern India from 606 to 647 CE. He was a member of the Vardhana dynasty; and was the son of Prabhakaravardhana who defeated the Alchon Huna invaders and the younger brother of Rajyavardhana, a king of Thanesar, present-day Haryana.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The city of Ujjain, located on the banks of the Kshipra River in Madhya Pradesh, is one of the most ancient Indian cities. It is also known by the names Ujjaini, Avanti, Avantika and Avantikapuri.

Ujjain is regarded as one of the seven holiest cities in India, making it one of the most popular Hindu pilgrimage destinations. Ujjain is particularly associated with Lord Shiva in the fierce form of Lord Mahakal, the destroyer of all elements, who protects the city.

HISTORY CLASS-VI

10 NEW EMPIRES AND KINGDOMS

Samudragupta

- Samudragupta was a very famous ruler of Gupta dynasty. We know about Samudragupta from a long inscription, inscribed on the Ashokan pillar at Allahabad.
- Harishena inscribed a long poem on Samudragupta on the Ashokan pillar at Allahabad. He was the court poet of Samudragupta. This inscription is of a special kind known as a prashasti, a Sanskrit word, meaning 'in praise of'.
- Harishena praised the king in glowing terms — as a warrior, as a king, who was learned. He is also described him as equal to the gods.
- Harishena described four different kinds of rulers and told us about Samudragupta's policies towards them:
  1. Aryavarta, where nine rulers were uprooted and their kingdoms were made a part of Samudragupta's empire.
  2. Dakshinapatha where twelve rulers surrendered to Samudragupta after being defeated and later he allowed them to rule again.
  3. The Inner circle of neighbouring states, including Assam, coastal Bengal, Nepal and a number of gana sanghas in the northwest. They brought tribute, followed his orders and attended his court.
  4. The Rulers of the outlying areas, perhaps the descendants of the Kushanas and Shakas and the ruler of Sri Lanka submitted to him and offered daughters in marriage



Figure: King Samudragupta playing Veena

Genealogies: A Line of Descent

- Chandragupta was the father of Samudragupta. Samudragupta's mother, Kumara Devi, belonged to the Lichchhavi gana.
- Chandragupta was the first ruler of the Gupta dynasty to adopt the grand title of maharaj-adhiraja, a title that Samudragupta also used. Samudragupta too used that title. His great grandfather and grandfather are mentioned simply as maharajas.
- Chandragupta II was the son of Samudragupta, we know about him from inscriptions and coins. He led an expedition to western India, where he overcame the last of the Shakas.
- Vikram Samvat is the era beginning in 58 BCE. It marks the victory of Chandragupta II over the Shakas.

Harshavardhana and the Harshacharita

- Banabhatta, wrote Harshacharita, biography of Harshavardhana. He became king of Thanesar after the death of his father and elder brother.
- After the death of his brother-in-law, he took over the kingdom of Kanauj and then led an army against the ruler of Bengal.
- After conquering the Magadha and Bengal, he tried to cross the Narmada to march into the Deccan, but was stopped by Pulakeshin II, Chalukya ruler.
- Xuan Zang spent a lot of time at Harsha's court and left a detailed account of what he saw.

The Pallavas, Chalukyas and Pulakeshin's Prashasti

- The Pallavas and Chalukyas were the most important ruling dynasties in south India during this period.
- The kingdom of the Pallavas spread from the region around their capital, Kanchipuram, to the Kaveri delta, while that of the Chalukyas was centred around the Raichur Doab, between the rivers Krishna and Tungabhadra.
- Aihole, the capital of the Chalukyas, was an important trading centre. It developed as a religious centre, with a number of temples.
- Pulakeshin II was the best-known Chalukya ruler. His prashasti was composed by his court poet Ravikirti, which talks about his ancestors, who are traced back through four generations from father to son.

How were these kingdoms administered?

- Land revenue remained important for these rulers and the village remained the basic unit of administration.
- The latest development witnessed in the process of administration was the adoption of new methods by the king to gain the support of the rich and powerful in terms of economic, social, political conditions:
  1. Some administrative posts were hereditary like; Harishena was the maha-danda-nayaka (chief judicial officer) like his father.
  2. Sometimes, one person held many offices. For instance, besides being a maha-danda-nayaka, Harishena was a kumar-amatya (important minister).
  3. Besides, important men probably had a say in local administration. These included nagarashreshthi (chief banker), sarthavaha (leader of the merchant caravans), prathama-kulika (chief craftsman) etc.

A new kind of army

- Kings maintained a well-organised army, with elephants, chariots, cavalry and foot soldiers.
- Military leaders provided kings with troops whenever he needed them but they were not paid regular salaries.
- Instead, of salary, some of them received grants of land. They collected revenue from the land and used this to maintain soldiers and horses and provide equipment for warfare. These men were known as samantas.

Assemblies in the southern kingdoms

- The inscriptions of the Pallavas mentioned a number of local assemblies:
  1. The Sabha: An assembly of Brahmin landowners. This assembly functioned through subcommittees, which looked after irrigation, agricultural operations, making roads, local temples, etc.
  2. The Ur: It was a village assembly found in areas where the landowners were not Brahmins.
  3. The Nagaram: It was an organisation of merchants, were controlled by rich and powerful landowners and merchants.
- Ordinary people in the kingdoms:
- Very little information has been gathered concerning the existence of normal individuals. Different records of history give a brief look at their lives through plays.
- Kalidasa was known for his plays depicting life in the king's court. Interesting features about these plays were:
  1. The king and most Brahmins are shown as speaking Sanskrit
  2. Women and men other than the king and Brahmins use Prakrit.
- Abhijnana Shakuntalam is the story of the love between a king named Dushyanta and a young woman named Shakuntala.
- The Chinese pilgrim Fa Xian noticed the plight of those who were treated as untouchables by the high and mighty. They were expected to live on the outskirts of the city.

The king's army

- The king travelled with an enormous amount of equipment. Apart from weapons, there were things of daily use such as pots, pans, furniture, food, animals, vegetables, spices, carried on carts or loaded on to pack animals such as camels and elephants.
- This huge army was accompanied by musicians beating drums and others playing horns and trumpets. Villagers had to provide hospitality along the way.
- They came with gifts of curds, gur and flowers and provided fodder for the animals. They also tried to meet the king and place their complaints and petitions before him.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Who was the famous ruler of a dynasty known as Guptas?
(a) Harshavardhana **(b)** Samudragupta
(c) Ashoka **(d)** Mahavir

2. Which ruler stopped the Harshvardhana when he tried to cross the Narmada to march into the Deccan?
(a) Pulakeshin-II **(b)** Ravikirti
(c) Samudragupta **(d)** None

3. To which language does the term 'Prashasti' belong?
(a) English **(b)** Hindi
(c) Sanskrit **(d)** Tamil

4. What was the meaning of Kumar-amatya?
(a) Minister **(b)** Chief banker
(c) Scribe **(d)** Judicial officer

5. Who was the father of Samudragupta?
(a) Hareshena **(b)** Banabhatta
(c) Ramagupta **(d)** Chandragupta I

6. What was the name of the assembly of Brahmin land owners?
(a) Sera **(b)** Samiti
(c) Sabha **(d)** Sudha

7. Xuan Zang visited India during the period of which the Indian emperor?
(a) Ramagupta **(b)** Harshavardhana
(c) Samudragupta **(d)** Chandragupta II

8. Who wrote the biography of Harshavardhana?
(a) Ashvaghosha **(b)** Amir Khusro
(c) Banbhatta **(d)** None of these

9. A famous poetry book Abhijana Shakuntalam was authored by:
(a) Brahmagupta **(b)** Bhavabhuti
(c) Kalhana **(d)** Kalidasa

10. The language used by Brahmins was:
(a) Prakrit **(b)** Sanskrit
(c) Tamil **(d)** Brahmin

11. The famous poet Kalidasa lived in the court of _____.
(a) Chandragupta II **(b)** Chandragupta
(c) Samudragupta **(d)** Kumaragupta

12. Which of the following the capital of the Chalukyas?
(a) Aihole **(b)** Sri Lanka
(c) Kanauj **(c)** Madurai

13. Abhijnana Shakuntalam is the love story of _____ .
(a) Dushyanta and Shakuntala
(b) Banabhatta and Shakuntala
(c) Chandragupta - I and Shakuntala
(d) Kumargupta and Shakuntala

14. What was the Chief judicial officer called?
(a) Maha-danda-nayaka
(b) Maha-hukum-nayaka
(c) Maha-raja-nayaka
(d) Maha-niyam-nayaka

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. The inscription on the Ashokan pillar at Allahabad provide information about which of the following rulers?
   (a) Chandragupta Maurya
   (b) Chandragupta I
   (c) Chandragupta II
   (d) Samudragupta
2. Consider the following statements, in the context of the description provided by Harishena about Samudragupta and four different kinds of rulers:
   1. Samudragupta uprooted nine rulers of Aryavarta and merged their kingdoms into his empire.
   2. He defeated all the 12 rulers of Dakshinapatha and made their kingdoms, a part of his empire.
   3. The inner circle of neighbouring states brought tribute, followed his orders and attended his court.
   4. The rulers of the outlying areas submitted to him and offered daughters in marriage.
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4
3. Which of the following rulers adopted the title of Maharajadhiraja?
   1. Chandragupta I **2.** Samudragupta
   3. Chandragupta II **4.** Kumar Gupta
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 2 and 4 only
4. Consider the following statements:
   1. The Pallavas and Chalukyas frequently raided one another's lands.
   2. Both the Pallavas and the Chalukyas gave way to new rulers belonging to the Rashtrakuta and Chola dynasties.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
5. In the context of the earlier administration of the kingdoms, consider the following statements:
   1. Some important administrative posts were now hereditary.
   2. The city was the basic unit of administration.
   3. Sometimes, one person held many offices.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 1 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only
6. Match List-I with List-II and select the correct answer:

List-I		List-II	
A.	Nagara-shreshthi	**1.**	Leader of the merchant caravans
B.	Sarthavaha	**2.**	Head of the scribes
C.	Prathama-kulika	**3.**	Chief banker or merchant of the city
D.	Kayasthas	**4.**	Chief craftsman

   (a) A-2, B-1, C-3, D-4 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4
   (c) A-3, B-1, C-4, D-2 **(d)** A-1, B-3, C-4, D-2
7. In the context of the Samantas, consider the following statements:
   1. There were military leaders who provided the king with troops whenever he needed them.
   2. They were not paid regular salaries.
   3. Whenever the ruler was weak, samantas tried to become independent.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
8. In the context of the assemblies in the southern kingdoms, consider the following pairs:
   1. Sabha: Assembly of Brahmin land owners
   2. Ur: Village assembly
   3. Nagaram: Organization of craftsmen
   Which of the pair given above is not correctly matched?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 3 only
   (c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** None of the above
9. In the context of the features of Kalidasa's plays, consider the following statements:
   1. Kalidasa is known for his plays depicting life in the king's court.
   2. An interesting feature about these plays is that the king and most Brahmins use Prakrit, while women and men other than the king and Brahmins are shown as speaking Sanskrit.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Who among the following is known for his work on medicine during the Gupta period? **[BPSC]**
   (a) Sushruta **(b)** Saumilla
   (c) Shudraka **(d)** Shaunaka
2. Who is the author of Allahabad Pillar Inscription? **[WBCS]**
   (a) Rudradaman **(b)** Harisena
   (c) Samudragupta **(d)** Banabhatta
3. From the decline of Guptas until the rise of Harshavardhana in the early seventh century, which of the following kingdoms were holding power in Northern India? **[UPSC]**
   (1) The Guptas of Magadha
   (2) The Paramaras of Malwa
   (3) The Pushyabhutis of Thanesar
   (4) The Maukharis of Kanauj
   (5) The Yadavas of Devagiri
   (6) The Maitrakas of Valabhi
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1, 2 and 5 **(b)** 1, 3, 4 and 6
   (c) 2, 3 and 4 **(d)** 5 and 6
4. Which of the following phrases defines the nature of the 'Hundi' generally referred to in the sources of the post-Harsha period? **[UPSC]**
   (a) An advisory issued by the king to his subordinates
   (b) A diary to be maintained for daily accounts
   (c) A bill of exchange
   (d) An order from the feudal lord to his subordinates

5. With reference to the period of the Gupta dynasty in ancient India, the towns Ghantasala, Kadura and Chaul were well known as: **[UPSC]**
   (a) Ports handling foreign trade
   (b) Capitals of powerful kingdoms
   (c) Places of exquisite stone art and architecture
   (d) Important Buddhist pilgrimage centres
6. With reference to forced labour (Vishti) in India during the Gupta period, which one of the following statements is correct? **[UPSC]**
   (a) It was considered a source of income for the State, a sort of tax paid by the people.
   (b) It was totally absent in the Madhya Pradesh and Kathiawar regions of the Gupta Empire.
   (c) The forced labourer was entitled to weekly wages.
   (d) The eldest son of the labourer was sent as the forced labourer.
7. Who wrote Samudragupta's prashasti (a eulogy written in the form of poetry or prose, usually by court poets) at Allahabad? **[SSC]**
   (a) Kalidasa **(b)** Vagabhatta
   (c) Harishena **(d)** Amarsimha
8. Who is known as 'Napoleon of India'? **[UKPCS]**
   (a) Akbar
   (b) Malik Ambar
   (c) Chandragupta Maurya
   (d) Samudragupta
9. Who among the following ancient Indian kings was praised in glowing terms in the Prayaga Prashasti? **[CDS]**
   (a) Ashoka
   (b) Harshavardhana
   (c) Samudragupta
   (d) Bindusara

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Samudragupta was the first significant ruler of the Gupta Dynasty. Having come to the throne, he decided to extend the boundaries of his empire to cover the multiple kingdoms and republics that existed outside its pale. Known as the '**Napoleon of India**' for his conquests, he was also a man of many talents and laid a firm foundation for the empire.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Harsha took over the kingdom of Kanauj and then led an army against the ruler of Bengal. Although he was successful in the east and conquered Magadha and probably Bengal also, he was not as successful elsewhere. He tried cross the Narmada to march into the Deccan, but was stopped by a ruler belonging to the Chalukya dynasty, Pulakeshin II.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Prashastis is a special kind of inscription meaning "in praise of". They were composed in praise of the rulers. An important example is a prashasti of Samudragupta. It is a poem in Sanskrit, composed by his court poet Harisena, nearly 1700 years ago.
4. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The monarchs relied heavily on land revenue and a village served as the fundamental administrative unit. Government positions were inherited. Harisena, for example, was a maha-danda-nayaka, or Chief Judicial Officer.
   Many times, one person held many positions. The poet Harisena, for example, was also a Kumar-Amartya (important minister) and a sangha-vigrahika (Minister of War and Peace).
5. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Samudragupta was a son of the Gupta king Chandragupta I and queen Kumaradevi, who came from a Licchavi family. His fragmentary Eran stone inscription states that his father selected him as the successor because of his "devotion, righteous conduct and valour".
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The inscriptions of the Pallavas mention a number of local assemblies. These included the sabha, which was an assembly of Brahmin land owners. This assembly functioned through subcommittees, which looked after irrigation, agricultural operations, making roads, local temples, etc.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Harshavardhana, who ruled nearly 1400 years ago, was one such ruler. His court poet, Banabhatta, wrote his biography, the Harshacharita, in Sanskrit. This gives us the genealogy of Harsha and ends with his becoming king.
   Xuan Zang also spent a lot of time at Harsha's court and left a detailed account of what he saw.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Harshavardhana's biography Harshacharita ("Deeds of Harsha") written by Sanskrit poet Banabhatta, describes his association with Thanesar, besides mentioning the defence wall, a moat and the palace with a two-storied Dhavalagriha (white mansion).
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Abhijnanashakuntala, drama by Kalidasa composed about the 5th century ce that is generally considered to be the greatest Indian literary work of any period.
   Kalidasa was a Classical Sanskrit author who is often considered ancient India's greatest poet and playwright. His plays and poetry are primarily based on the Vedas, the Ramayana, the Mahabharata and the Puranas.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
    Explanation: Kalidasa is known for his plays depicting life in the king's court. An interesting feature about these plays is that the king and most Brahmins are shown as speaking Sanskrit, while women and men other than the king and Brahmins use Prakrit.
11. **Option (a) is correct.**
    Explanation: Kalidasa was a court poet of a king named Vikramaditya (Chandragupta-II). Chandragupta

II, also known by his title Vikramaditya, was one of the most powerful emperors of the Gupta Empire in northern India.

Kalidasa was a Classical Sanskrit author who is often considered ancient India's greatest poet and playwright. His plays and poetry are primarily based on the Vedas, the Ramayana, the Mahabharata and the Puranas.

12. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Aihole, the capital of the chalukyas, was an important trading centre. It developed as a religious centre, with a number of temples.

13. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Abhijnana Shakuntalam is the story of the love between a king named Dushyanta and a young woman named Shakuntala.

14. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: He was called maha-danda-nayaka. Harishena was the maha-danda-nayaka (chief judicial officer) like his father.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Samudragupta was a ruler of the Gupta Empire of Ancient India. As a son of the Gupta emperor Chandragupta I and the Lichchhavi princess Kumaradevi, he greatly expanded his dynasty's political power.

We know about Samudragupta from a long inscription, inscribed on the Ashokan pillar at Allahabad. It was composed as a Kavya by Harishena, who was a poet and a minister at the court of Samudragupta.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The nine rulers of Aryavarta were uprooted and their kingdoms were made a part of Samudragupta's empire. Hence, Statement 1 is correct.

The twelve rulers of Dakshinapatha surrendered to Samudragupta after being defeated and he then allowed them to rule again. Hence, Statement 2 is incorrect.

The inner circle of neighbouring states, including Assam, coastal Bengal, Nepal and a number of gana sanghas in the northwest, brought tribute, followed his orders and attended his court. Hence, Statement 3 is correct.

The rulers of the outlying areas, perhaps the descendants of the Kushanas and Shakas and the ruler of Sri Lanka, submitted to him and offered daughters in marriage. Hence, Statement 4 is correct.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Chandragupta was the first ruler of the Gupta dynasty to adopt the grand title of Maharajadhiraja, a title that Samudragupta also used. His great grandfather and grandfather are mentioned simply as maharajas.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Both the above statements are correct.

The Pallavas and Chalukyas frequently raided one another's lands, especially attacking the capital cities, which were prosperous towns.

The Chalukya victory was short-lived. Ultimately, both the Pallavas and the Chalukyas gave way to new rulers belonging to the Rashtrakuta and Chola dynasties.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Some important administrative posts were now hereditary. This means that sons succeeded fathers to these posts. For example, the poet Harishena was a maha-dandanayaka, or chief judicial officer, like his father. **Hence, Statement 1 is correct.**

The village remained the basic unit of administration. **Hence, Statement 2 is incorrect.**

Sometimes, one person held many offices. For instance, besides being a maha-danda-nayaka, Harishena was a kumar-amatya, meaning an important minister and a sandhi-vigraha, meaning a minister of war and peace. **Hence, Statement 3 is correct.**

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Important men probably had a say in local administration. These included the

- Nagara-shreshthi or chief banker or merchant of the city
- The Sarthavaha or leader of the merchant caravans
- The Prathamakulika or the chief craftsman
- The head or the Kayasthas

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: All the statements given above are correct.

- Like earlier rulers, some of these kings maintained a well-organised army, with elephants, chariots, cavalry and foot soldiers.
- Besides, there were military leaders who provided the king with troops whenever he needed them.
- They were not paid regular salaries. Instead, some of them received grants of land. They collected revenue from the land and used this to maintain soldiers and horses and provide equipment for warfare.
- These men were known as Samantas. Whenever the ruler was weak, samantas tried to become independent.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The inscriptions of the Pallavas mention a number of local assemblies.

The Sabha: An assembly of Brahmin land owners.

The Ur: It was a village assembly found in areas where the land owners were not Brahmins.

The Nagaram: an organisation of Merchants. It is likely that these assemblies were controlled by rich and powerful landowners and merchants.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Kalidasa is known for his plays depicting life in the king's court. **Hence, statement 1 is correct.**

An interesting feature about these plays is that the king and most Brahmins are shown as speaking Sanskrit, while women and men other than the king and Brahmins use Prakrit. **Hence, statement 2 is not correct.**

His most famous play, Abhijnana Shakuntalam, is the story of the love between a king named Dushyanta and a young woman named Shakuntala.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Sushruta or Susruta was an ancient Indian physician and surgeon known today as India's "Father of Surgery" and "Father of Plastic Surgery" or "father of brain surgery" for inventing and developing surgical procedures.

Sushruta is known for his work on medicine during the Gupta period. The Gupta Era (320 AD- 550 AD) considered to be the golden era of India in terms of Art, Literature, Astronomy, Medical science etc.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Samudragupta court poet and minister Harisena composed the Allahabad pillar Inscription or Prayag Prasasti. The Pillar was an Asokan Pillar erected by Asoka six century before him. This Inscription is a eulogy of Samudragupta and mentions about the conquests of Samudragupta and boundaries of the Gupta Empire.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: From the decline of Guptas until the rise of Harshvardhanas, new ruling dynasties emerged in different part of Northern India. The most prominent ones were- The Pushyabhutis of Thaneshwar, Maukharies of Kannauj, Maitrakas of Vallabhi, etc.

The Paramara was a Rajput dynasty that ruled Malwa and surrounding areas in west-central India between 9^{th} and 14^{th} centuries. **Hence statement 2 is not correct.**

The Yadavas initially ruled as feudatories of the Western Chalukyas. Around the middle of the 12th century, as the Chalukya power waned, the Yadava king Bhillama V declared independence. Hence statement 5 is not correct.

Hence, except statement 2 and 5 all the given statements are correct.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Hundi - is a note recording a deposit made by a person. The amount deposited can be claimed in another place by presenting the record of the deposit.

Technically, a Hundi is an unconditional order in writing made by a person directing another to pay a certain sum of money to a person named in the order. Hundi is a financial instrument that was developed in Medieval India for use in trade and credit transactions. They were used as:

- Remittance instruments (to transfer funds from one place to another)
- Credit instruments (to borrow money)
- Trade transactions (as bills of exchange)

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In the Andhra region, the ports were Kadura and Ghantasala, Kaveripattanam (Puhar) and Tondail were the ports of the Pandya region. Hence the correct answer is ports handling foreign trade.

During the Gupta period, there was a flourishing external and internal trade. The trades were carried both by land and rivers. During this period the wealth of the Roman Empire reached India through the ports of Kalyan, Chaul, Broach and Cambay in Western India.

Tamralipti was an important port in Bengal. It carried on trade with China, Lanka, Java and Sumatra. In the Andhra region, the ports were Kadura and Ghantasala, Kaveripattanam (Puhar) and Tondail were the ports of the Pandya region. The ports of Kottayam and Muziris were on the Malabar coast.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In the Gupta Era, the term Vishti referred to forced labor. The empire obtained their percentage of the material surplus through the power of arms in the kind of taxes like Shulka, Bali and Kar etc., forced labor like Balutam and Vishti and other perquisites.

Vishti was famous during the ancient time in Southern India. Vishti was used as a form of tax by the king that the peasants had to do.

7. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: An important example is a prashasti of Samudragupta. It is a poem in Sanskrit, composed by his court poet Harisena, nearly 1700 years ago. It is inscribed on the Ashokan pillar at Allahabad. The poet has praised the king in glowing terms.

8. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Samudragupta (335-375 AD) of the Gupta dynasty is known as the Napoleon of India. Historian A V Smith called him so because of his great military conquests known from the 'Prayag Prashati' written by his courtier and poet Harisena, who also describes him as the hero of a hundred battles.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Allahabad pillar is a Stambha, containing one of the Pillar edicts of Ashoka, possibly erected by Ashoka, Emperor of the Maurya dynasty.

Prayag Prashasti is the name given to the Allahabad Pillar. It is an Ashokan Stambh but has 4 different inscriptions:

- The usual Ashokan inscriptions in Brahmi script as is in all pillars.
- The Queen's edict regaling the charitable deeds of Ashoka's wife Karuvaki.
- Samudragupta's (335AD – 375 AD) inscriptions written by Harisena in Sanskrit language and Brahmi script.
- Jahangir's inscriptions in Persi.

HISTORY CLASS-VI

11 BUILDINGS, PAINTINGS AND BOOKS

The Iron Pillar

- The iron pillar at Mehrauli, Delhi was made about 1500 years ago, showing the outstanding skill of Indian crafts persons. It is made of iron, 7.2 meter high and weighs over 3 tonnes.
- The date has been inscribed on the pillar mentioning a ruler named Chandra, who probably belonged to the Gupta dynasty. One interesting fact of the pillar is that it has not rusted in all these years.
- Ancient Indian metallurgists made major contributions to the metallurgical history of the world. Archaeological excavations have shown that the Harappans were master craftsmen and had knowledge of copper metallurgy. They even manufactured bronze by mixing copper and tin. While the Harappans belonged to the Bronze Age, their successors belonged to the Iron Age. India produced highly advanced types of iron-forged iron, wrought iron and cast iron.

Buildings in brick and stone

Stupas

- A stupa is a mound-like or hemispherical structure containing relics that is used as a place of meditation. Stupas can be of different kinds round and tall, big and small, which will have certain common features.
- At the centre of the stupa, a small box will be placed, which contained bodily remains (such as teeth, bone or ashes) of the Buddha or his followers, or things they used, as well as precious stones and coins.
- The box was known as a relic casket and covered with a layer of brick and then, the dome-like structure was sometimes covered with carved stone slabs.
- Stupas were the places of worship and there was a path around the stupa, known as the pradakshina patha. Devotees walked around the stupa, in a clockwise direction, as a mark of devotion.
- Sanchi Stupa: Sanchi Stupa is a UNESCO world heritage site since 1989. Sanchi is in Madhya Pradesh. It is considered one of the most spectacular monuments of its time.
- During this period, some of the earliest Hindu temples were also built. Deities such as Vishnu, Shiva and Durga were worshipped in these shrines.
- The most important part of the temple was the room known as the garbhagriha, where the image of the chief deity was placed. It was here that priests performed religious rituals and devotees offered worship to the deity.
- Bhitargaon, a tower, known as the shikhara, was built on top of the garbhagriha, to mark this out as a sacred place. Most temples also had a space known as the mandapa a hall where people could assemble.
- An early temple at Bhitargaon, Uttar Pradesh
- This was built about 1500 years ago and was made of baked brick and stone.
- This was carved out of a huge, single piece of stone (that is why they are known as monoliths).
- While brick structures are built up by adding layers of bricks from the bottom upwards, in this case the stone cutters had to work from top downwards.

How were Stupas and Temples Built?

- There were several stages in building a stupa or a temple. Usually, kings or queens decided to build these as it was an expensive affair.
- To start building these sculptures, the good quality stone had to be found and transported to the place chosen for the new building. Here, these rough blocks of stone had to be shaped and carved into pillars and panels for walls, floors and ceilings. After these, it had to be placed in precisely the right position.
- Kings and queens spent the money, besides, local people such as merchants, farmers, smith, etc. paid for the decoration. Besides, when devotees came to visit the temple or the stupa, they often brought gifts, which were used to decorate the buildings.

Paintings

Ajanta

- Ajanta is a place where several caves were hollowed out of the hills over centuries. Most of these were monasteries for Buddhist monks and some of them were decorated with paintings.
- The Ajanta Caves are approximately 30 rock-cut Buddhist cave monuments dating from the 2nd century BCE to about 480 CE in the Aurangabad district of Maharashtra state in India.
- The walls of the Ajanta caves are decorated with Ajanta paintings, depicting the pomp and splendour of the royal courts, the romance of love, singing and dancing. Some of them depict the world of nature—vegetation and flowers, animals and birds.

- Many themes depicted are from the Buddha's life and Jataka stories. The colours, which are vivid even after 1500 years, were made of plants and minerals. The artists who created these splendid works of art remain unknown.

The world of books

- Some of the best–known epics were written during this period. Epics are grand, long compositions, about heroic men and women and include stories about gods.
- The Silappadikaram and The Manimekalai were the famous Tamil epics of that time. These compositions were lost to scholars for many centuries, till their manuscripts were rediscovered, about a hundred years ago.
- Another famous epic was Meghadoot written by Kalidas. It is a lyric poem, considered to be one of the greatest Sanskrit poets. It describes how a yaksa, who had been banished by his master to a remote region for a year, asked a cloud to take a message of love to his wife.

Recording and Preserving Old Stories

- A number of Hindu religious stories were written down around the same time. These include the Puranas, meaning old. The Puranas contain stories about gods and goddesses, such as Vishnu, Shiva, Durga or Parvati. They also contain details on how they were to be worshipped.
- The Puranas were written in simple Sanskrit verses and were meant to be heard by everybody, including women and Shudras, who were not allowed to study the Vedas. They were probably recited in temples by priests and people came to listen to them.
- Two Sanskrit epics, the Mahabharata and Ramayana had been popular for a very long time. The Mahabharata is about a war fought between the Kauravas and Pandavas, who were cousins. The Ramayana is about Rama, a prince of Kosala, who was sent into exile. His wife Sita was abducted by the king of Lanka, named Ravana and Rama had to fight a battle to get her back. Valmiki is the author of the Sanskrit Ramayana.

Stories told by Ordinary People

- Ordinary people also told stories, composed poems and songs, sang, danced and performed plays.
- Some of these are preserved in collections of stories such as the Jatakas and the Panchatantra, which were written down around this time.
- Stories from the Jatakas were often shown on the railings of stupas and in paintings in places such as Ajanta.

Writing Books on Science

- Aryabhata, a mathematician and astronomer, wrote a book in Sanskrit known as the Aryabhatiyam.
  1. He stated that day and night were caused by the rotation of the earth on its axis, even though it seems as if the sun is rising and setting every day.
  2. He developed a scientific explanation for eclipses as well.
  3. He also found a way of calculating the circumference of a circle, which is nearly as accurate as the formula we use today.
- Varahamihira, Brahmagupta and Bhaskaracharya were some other mathematicians and astronomers who made several discoveries.
- Ayurveda: Ayurveda is a well-known system of health science that was developed in ancient India. The two famous practitioners of Ayurveda in ancient India were Charaka (1^{st}-2^{nd} centuries CE) and Sushruta (c. 4^{th}-century CE) Charak Samhita, written by Charak is a remarkable book on medicine. In his treatise, Susruta Samhita, Sushruta speaks about elaborate surgical procedures.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. In which city is the iron pillar of Mehrauli located?
(a) Bihar **(b)** Mathura
(c) Delhi **(d)** Chandigarh

2. What do you mean by the word stupa?
(a) Mound **(b)** Round
(c) Tall **(d)** Short

3. Who are the God and Goddess whose statues are worshipped in Temples?
(a) Shiva, Vishnu and Durga
(b) Indira and Agni
(c) All of these
(d) None of these

4. Who was the composer or author of Silappadikaram?
(a) Guru Ram Das **(b)** Banbhatta
(c) Kalidasa **(d)** Ilango

5. The poem "Meghaduta" was written by
(a) Tulsidas **(b)** Kalidasa
(c) Bhavabhuti **(d)** Harsha

6. In which language were the Puranas written?
(a) Hindi **(b)** Tamil
(c) Sanskrit **(d)** English

7. Mahabharata war was fought during:
(a) 900 BC **(b)** 800 BC
(c) 700 BC **(d)** 600 BC

8. Which was the capital of Kosala?
(a) Hastinapur **(b)** Ayodhya
(c) Kamal **(d)** Delhi

9. The famous monolithic temples of Mahabalipuram are called _____.
(a) Pancha Rathas **(b)** Dargahs
(c) Cave temples **(d)** Shore temple

10. In which of the following temples, the pyramidal roof can be found?
(a) Dasavatar Temple
(b) Shiva Temple of Bhumara
(c) Bhitargaon temple
(d) Shiva Temple of Koh

11. Name the hall where people could assemble.
(a) Mandapa **(b)** Shikharas
(c) Garbhagriha **(d)** None of these

12. Devotees walked around the stupa, in a _____.
(a) Straight direction
(b) Semi clockwise direction
(c) Clockwise direction
(d) Anti clockwise direction

13. Who was Aryabhatta?
(a) Mathematician **(b)** Zoologist
(c) Archaeologist **(d)** None of these

14. In which language Aryabhata, wrote the book Aryabhatiyam?
(a) Hindi **(b)** Sanskrit
(c) Pali **(d)** Tamil

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. In the context of stupas, which of the following statements is not correct?
(a) The word 'Stupa' means a mound.
(b) A small box placed at the centre or heart of the stupa was known as Metal Casket.
(c) Often, a path, known as the Pradakshina Patha, was laid around the stupa.
(d) The Pradakshina Patha was surrounded with railings, known as 'Vedika'.

2. In the context of pre-medieval early Hindu temples, consider the following statements:
1. The most important part of the temple was Mandapa.
2. Most temples also had a space known as the Garbhagriha. It was a hall where people could assemble.
3. Often, a tower, known as the Shikhara, was built on top of the temple.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

3. In the context of Puranas, which of the following statements is not correct?
(a) The Puranas were recited in temples by priests.
(b) They contain stories about the creation of the world and kings along with prayer rituals.
(c) The Puranas were written in simple Sanskrit verse and were meant to be heard by everybody.
(d) Women and Shudras who were not allowed to study the Vedas, they could not even listen to the puranas.

4. Which of the following is not concerned with the compilation of Puranas?
(a) Vyasa **(b)** Mankhak
(c) Lomharsh **(d)** Ugrasrava

5. The author of Aryabhatiyam, Aryabhata was belonged to which of the following subjects:
1. Astrology **2.** Astronomy
3. Mathematics
Select the correct answer with the help given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

6. In the context of zero, consider the following statements:
1. Indian mathematicians invented a special symbol for zero.
2. This system of counting was first adapted by Europeans and then spread to the whole of Arabia.
3. The Romans used a system of counting without using zero.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3 only

7. Watch List-I with List-II and select the correct answer using the code given below:

List 1		List 2	
A.	Silappadikaram	**1.**	Valmiki
B.	Manimekalai	**2.**	Sattanar
C.	Meghaduta	**3.**	Kalidasa
D.	Ramayana	**4.**	Ilango

(a) A-2, B-4, C-3, D-1 **(b)** A-4, B-3, C-1, D-2
(c) A-4, B-2, C-3, D-1 **(d)** A-2, B-1, C-3, D-4

8. Some of the earliest Hindu temples had a hall where people could assemble. This place was known as:
(a) Pradakshina patha **(b)** Mandapa
(c) Gramabhojaka **(d)** Garbhagriha

9. **Assertion(A):** Ancient Indian metallurgy list made major contributions to the metallurgical history of the world.
Reason(R): Archaeological excavations have shown that Harappans were master Craftsmen and had knowledge of copper metallurgy.
(a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
(b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(c) A is true but R is false.
(d) A is false but R is true

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Which one of the following statements is correct? **[UPSC]**
(a) Ajanta Caves lie in the gorge of the Waghora River.
(b) Sanchi Stupa lies in the gorge of the Chambal River.

(c) Pandu – Lena cave shrines lie in the gorge of the Narmada River.
(d) Amaravati Stupa lies in the gorge of the Godavari River.

2. Building 'Kalyana Mandapas' was a notable feature in the temple construction in the kingdom of: **[UPSC]**
(a) Chalukya **(b)** Chandela
(c) Rashtrakuta **(d)** Vijayanagara

3. What is/are common to the two historical places known as Ajanta and Mahabalipuram? **[UPSC]**
1. Both were built in the same period.
2. Both belong to the same religious denomination.
3. Both have rock-cut monuments.
Select the correct answer using the code given below.
(a) 1 and 2 only
(b) 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only
(d) None of the statements given above is correct

4. With reference to the art and archaeological history of India, which one among the following was made earliest? **[UPSC]**
(a) Lingaraja Temple at Bhubaneswar
(b) Rock-cut Elephant at Dhauli
(c) Rock-cut Monuments at Mahabalipuram
(d) Varaha Image at Udayagiri

5. Kalamkari painting refers to **[BARC UDC]**
(a) A hand-painted cotton textile in South India
(b) A handmade drawing on bamboo handicrafts in North-East India.
(c) A block-painted woollen cloth in the Western Himalayan region of India
(d) A hand-painted decorative silk cloth in North-Western India

6. Consider the following historical places: **[UPSC]**
1. Ajanta Caves
2. Lepakshi Temple
3. Sanchi Stupa
Which of the above places is/are known for mural paintings?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** None

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The iron pillar of Delhi is a structure 23 feet 8 inches high with a 16-inch diameter that was constructed by Chandragupta II and now stands in the Qutb complex at Mehrauli in Delhi, India. It is famous for the rust-resistant composition of the metals used in its construction.

2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The word Stupa means a mound. It is a Buddhist religious building containing the relics of Buddha and his disciples.
A stupa is a mound-like or hemispherical structure containing relics that is used as a place of meditation. A related architectural term is a chaitya, which is a prayer hall or temple containing a stupa.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: During this period, some of the earliest Hindu temples were also built. Deities such as Vishnu, Shiva and Durga were worshipped in these shrines. The most important part of the temple was the room known as the garbhagriha, where the image of the chief deity was placed.

4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: A famous Tamil epic, the Silappadikaram, was composed by a poet named Ilango, around 1800 years ago. It is the story of a merchant named Kovalan, who lived in Puhar and fell in love with a courtesan named Madhavi, neglecting his wife Kannagi.

5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Meghaduta is a lyrical poem written by Kalidasa (c. 4^{th}–5^{th} century CE), considered to be one of the greatest Sanskrit poets. Kalidasa was a Classical Sanskrit author who is often considered ancient India's greatest poet and playwright. His plays and poetry are primarily based on the Vedas, the Ramayana, the Mahabharata and the Puranas.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Puranas are known for the intricate layers of symbolism depicted within their stories. Composed originally in Sanskrit but in other Indian languages, several of these texts are named after major Hindu deities such as Vishnu, Shiva, Brahma and Shakti.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Mahabharata war was fought during 900 BC. The Kurukshetra War, also called the Mahabharata War, is a war described in the Indian epic poem The Mahabharata. The conflict arose from a dynastic succession struggle between two groups of cousins, the Kauravas and the Pandavas, for the throne of Hastinapura.

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Ramayana is about Rama, a prince of Kosala, who was sent into exile. His wife Sita was abducted by the king of Lanka, named Ravana and Rama had to fight a battle to get her back. Valmiki is the author of the Sanskrit Ramayana.

9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Pancha Rathas is a monument complex at Mahabalipuram on the Coromandel Coast of the Bay of Bengal, in the Kancheepuram district of the state of Tamil Nadu, India. Pancha Rathas is an example of monolithic Indian rock-cut architecture.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The temple at Bhitargaon in Kanpur (Uttar Pradesh) is one of the earliest surviving brick temples of India.

- It was built in the 5th century A.D. during the Gupta Empire.
- It is the oldest remaining terracotta Hindu shrine with a roof and a high Shikhara (spire) which paved the way for elaborate Nagara style of temple architecture in North India.

11. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Mandapa: Place in temples where people could assemble.

Mandapa (also spelled mantapa or mandapam) in Indian architecture, especially Hindu temple architecture, is a pillared hall or pavilion for public rituals.

Mandapas are described as "open" or "closed" depending on whether they have walls. In temples, one or more mandapas very often lie between the sanctuary and the temple entrance, on the same axis. In a large temple other mandapas may be placed to the sides or detached within the temple compound.

12. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: A path, known as the pradakshina patha, was laid around the stupa surrounded with railings. The entrance of the path was through gateways. Devotees walked around the stupa, in a clockwise direction, as a mark of devotion. Both railings and gateways were often decorated with sculpture.

13. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Aryabhatta was a mathematician and astronomers

14. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Aryabhata, a mathematician and astronomer, wrote a book in Sanskrit known as the Aryabhatiyam.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- The word 'Stupa' means a mound. Generally, there is a small box placed at the centre or heart of the stupa.
- This may contain bodily remains (such as teeth, bone or ashes) of the Buddha or his followers or things they used, as well as precious stones and coins.
- This box, known as a Relic Casket, was covered with earth. Later, a layer of mud brick or baked brick was added on top. And then, the dome like structure was sometimes covered with carved stone slabs.
- Often, a path, known as the Pradakshina Patha, was laid around the stupa. This was surrounded with railings. Entrance to the path was through gateways.
- Devotees walked around the stupa, in a clockwise direction, as a mark of devotion. Both railings and gateways were often decorated with sculpture.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The most important part of the temple was the room known as the garbhagriha, where the image of the chief deity was placed. It was here that priests performed religious rituals and devotees offered worship to the deity. **Hence, statement 1 and 2 are not correct.**

Most temples also had a space known as the mandapa. It was a hall where people could assemble.

Often, as at Bhitargaon, a tower, known as the shikhara, was built on top of the garbhagriha, to mark this out as a sacred place. Building shikharas required careful planning. **Hence, statement 3 is correct.**

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The statements (a), (b) and (c) are correct but (d) is not correct because the Puranas were written in simple Sanskrit verse and were meant to be heard by everybody, including women and shudras, who were not allowed to study the Vedas.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- The total number of Puranas is 18 but earlier,according to Matsya Purana; there was only one Purana and all other forms had originated from it.
- According to Brahmin Purana, the Puranas are supposed to have been compiled by Vyasa.
- Vishnu Purana shows that Vyasa gave his Puran Samhita to his disciple Lomharsh.
- Ugrasrava was Lomharsh's son. He was also associated with the compilation of Puranas.
- Mankhak was a Sanskrit great poet of Kashmir. His famous compositions are 'Shree Kantha charit mahakavya' and 'Mankhakosh'.
- Mahabharata was compiled by 'Vyasa', one of the compilators of Puranas. The writing work of Mahabharata was done 1500 years ago

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- Aryabhata, a mathematician and astronomer, wrote a book in Sanskrit known as the **Aryabhatiyam**.
- He stated that day and night were caused by the rotation of the earth on its axis, even though it seems as if the sun is rising and setting everyday.
- He developed a scientific explanation for eclipses as well. He also found a way of calculating the circumference of a circle, which is nearly as accurate as the formula we use today.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Statements 1 and 3 are correct but 2 is not correct because this system of counting was adapted by the Arabs and then spread to Europe. It continues to be in use throughout the world.

7. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Epics are grand, long compositions, about heroic men and women and include stories about gods.

- A famous Tamil epic, the Silappadikaram, was composed by a poet named Ilango, around 1800 years ago. It is the story of a merchant named Kovalan, who lived in Puhar and fell in love with a courtesan named Madhavi, neglecting his wife Kannagi.

- Another Tamil epic, the Manimekalai was composed by Sattanar around 1400 years ago. This describes the story of the daughter of Kovalan and Madhavi.
- Meghaduta is one of Kalidasa's best-known poems; in which a monsoon cloud is imagined to be a messenger between lovers who are separated from one another.
- Valmiki is recognised as the author of the Sanskrit Ramayana. The Ramayana is about Rama, a prince of Kosala, who was sent into exile.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Bhitargaon, a tower, known as the shikhara, was built on top of the garbhagriha, to mark this out as a sacred place. Most temples also had a space known as the mandapa a hall where people could assemble.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Ancient Indian metallurgists made major contributions to the metallurgical history of the world. Archaeological excavations have shown that the Harappans were master craftsmen and had knowledge of copper metallurgy. They even manufactured bronze by mixing copper and tin. While the Harappans belonged to the Bronze Age, their successors belonged to the Iron Age. India produced highly advanced types of iron-forged iron, wrought iron and cast iron.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Ajanta Caves lie in the gorge of Waghora River.

Ajanta groups of caves, a World Heritage Site which over looks a narrow sinuous gorge, through which flows the stream of Waghora. The river is descended from the head of the Cave 28 from a waterfall of seven leaps. Waghore means Tiger River in Marathi.

Located at Aurangabad in the Indian State of Maharashtra, the thirty excavted rock cut temples at Ajanta are famous for Buddhist monuments and paintings. The caves at Ajanta are excavated in the semi-circular scarp of a steep rock about 76 m high.

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Kalyana Mandapam – dedicated to ritual marriage celebration of the Lord with Goddess

- Vijayanagara or "city of victory" was the name of both a city and an empire.
- The empire was founded in the fourteenth century (1336 AD) by Harihara and Bukka of the Sangama dynasty.
- They made Hampi the capital city. In 1986, Hampi was declared a World Heritage site by UNESCO.
- It stretched from the river Krishna in the north to the extreme south of the peninsula.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Both are rock-cut monuments because cave cut Chaityas, Viharas and Stupas are found in Ajanta. Hence statement 3 is correct.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The correct answer is Rock-cut Elephant at Dhauli.

- Rock-cut Elephant at Dhauli was created during Ashoka's reign (272-231 BC).
- The Lingaraja Temple was built by King Jajati Keshari in the 10^{th} Century and completed by King Lalatendu Keshari in the 11^{th} Century.
- The Group of Monuments at Mahabalipuram is a collection of 7^{th}- and 8^{th}-century CE religious monuments in the coastal resort town of Mahabalipuram, Tamil Nadu.
- Probable image of Chandragupta II, paying homage to Varaha, avatar of Vishnu, in Udayagiri Caves (Cave 5), circa 400 CE.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- Kalamkari is a type of hand-painted or block-printed cotton textile produced in Isfahan, Iran and in the Indian state of Andhra Pradesh.
- Only natural dyes are used in Kalamkari, which involves twenty-three steps.
- To create design contours, artists use a bamboo or date palm stickpointed at one end with a bundle of fine hair attached to this pointed end to serve as the brush or pen.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Mural, a painting applied to and made integral with the surface of a wall or ceiling. The term may properly include painting on fired tiles but ordinarily does not refer to mosaic decoration unless the mosaic forms part of the overall scheme of the painting.

Lepakshi paintings are the mural paintings which is located in the Anantapur district of Andhra Pradesh.

Indian Mural Paintings are paintings made on walls of caves and palaces. These pieces of art are symbolic of the life, culture and traditions of the people of the contemporaneous periods. The paintings on the caves of Ajanta, Ellora, Elephanta and also on the Bagh caves and Sittanvasal are vivid reminders of great art that flourished centuries ago.

Ajanta paintings at Aurangabad are extremely renowned for its Buddhist paintings. The paintings have large typological variate, clear lines, rhythmic movements and merging designs. Paintings of Vajrapani, Avalokiteshwara, apsara are famous.

HISTORY CLASS-VII

1 TRACING CHANGES THROUGH A THOUSAND YEARS

Introduction

- The terms and meaning of words change over time. For example, "Hindustan", today means "India", a country whereas in the thirteenth century, Minhaj-i-Siraj, a chronicler who wrote in Persian, used the term to refer to the areas of Punjab, Haryana and the lands between the Ganga and Yamuna.

Historians and their Sources

- Historians rely on coins, inscriptions, architecture and textual records for historical information, but the significance of texual records have increased during this period (700 - 1750).
- People used paper to write holy texts, chronicles of rulers, letters and teachings of saints, petitions and judicial records and for registers of accounts and taxes.
- Manuscripts were collected by wealthy people, rulers, monasteries and temples. They were placed in libraries and archives. These manuscripts and documents provide a lot of detailed information to historians but they are also difficult to use.
- There were no printing presses and the texts were copied by hands which led to slight changes in them over time. It is very difficult to find the original manuscript of the author today. We are totally dependent upon the copies made by later scribes.
- Ziyauddin Barani was a 14^{th} century chronicler, he wrote his chronicle first in 1356 and another two years later.

New Social and Political Groups

- The study of the 1000 years spanning 700 and 1750 is a challenge. The scales and variety of developments that occurred over the period are huge. At different moments in this period, new technologies made their appearances – like the Persian wheel in irrigation, the spinning wheel in weaving and firearms in combat.
- New foods and beverages arrived in the subcontinent – potatoes, corn, chillies, tea and coffee. All these new technologies and crops came along with people, who brought other ideas with them as well, thus resulting in a period of economic, political, social and cultural changes.
- Rajputs name derived from "Rajaputra", the son of a ruler, became quite popular during this period. The term Rajputs between eighth and fourteen centuries was applied generally for a group of warriors known as Kshatriya, including not just rulers and chieftains but also soldiers and commanders who served in the armies of different monarchs all over the subcontinent. Other groups were Marathas, Sikhs, Jats, Ahoms and Kayasthas.
- Many forest-dwellers migrated during this period due to change in habitat. There was a gradual clearing of forests and the extension of agriculture, faster and more complete in some areas than in others.
- Peasants were required to pay taxes and offer goods and services to local lords such as Zamindar etc. As a result, significant economic and social differences emerged amongst peasants.

Caste and Jati System

- As society became more differentiated, people were grouped into jatis or sub-castes and ranked on the basis of their backgrounds and their occupations.
- Ranks were not fixed permanently and varied according to the power, influence and resources controlled by members of the jati. The status of the same jati could vary from area to area.
- Jatis framed their own rules and regulations to manage the conduct of their members. These regulations were enforced by an assembly of elders, described in some areas as the jati panchayat.
- Jatis were also required to follow the rules of their villages. Several villages were governed by a chieftain. Together they were only one small unit of a state.

Region and Empires

- Around 700, many regions already possessed distinct geographical dimensions and their own language and cultural characteristics.
- There was considerable conflict between these states and occasionally, dynasties like the Cholas, Khaljis, Tughlaqs and Mughals were able to build an empire that was pan-regional but not all these empires were equally stable or successful.
- A Sanskrit prashasti praising the Delhi Sultan Ghiyasuddin Balban (1266-1287) states-he ruled over a vast empire stretching from Bengal (Gauda) in the east to Ghazni (Gajjana) in Afghanistan in the west and included all of south India (Dravida).
- Through the thousand years between 700 and 1750, the character of the different regions did not grow in isolation. These regions felt the impact of larger pan-regional forces of integration without ever quite losing their distinctiveness.

Old and New Religions

- It was during this period that important changes occurred in what we call Hinduism today. These included the worship of new deities, the construction of temples by royalty and the growing importance of Brahmanas, the priests, as dominant groups in society.
- One of the major developments of this period was the emergence of the idea of bhakti – of a loving,

personal deity that devotees could reach without the aid of priests or elaborate rituals.

- There were two beliefs in Muslims, one of Shia and other is Sunni. Shia believed that the Prophet Muhammad's son-in-law, Ali, was the legitimate leader of the Muslim community. Sunni Muslims who accepted the authority of the early leaders (Khalifas) of the community and the succeeding Khalifas.
- There were other important differences between the various schools of law (Hanafi and Shafi's mainly in India) and in theology and mystic traditions.

Thinking about Time and Historical Periods

- As per historians, time is not just a passing of hours, days or years - as a clock or a calendar; it also reflects changes in social and economic organisation, in the persistence and transformation of ideas and beliefs.
- In the middle of nineteenth century, British historians divided the history of India into three periods:
  1. Hindu
  2. Muslim
  3. British
- The idea of division was based on the Religion only and ignored the rich diversity of the continent.
- 1000 years of Indian History witnessed a considerable change. Hence, describing the entire period as one historical unit has its issues. The medieval period is often contrasted with the modern period.
- Modernity carries with it a sense of material progress and intellectual advancement, suggesting that the medieval period probably lacks any change whatsoever.
- During these thousand years the societies of the subcontinent were transformed often and economies in several regions reached a level of prosperity that attracted the interest of European trading companies.

Language and region

- In 1318 the poet Amir Khusrau noted that there was a different language in every region of this land:
  1. Southern Karnataka - Sindhi, Lahori, Kashmiri, Dvarsamudri
  2. Andhra Pradesh - Telangani
  3. Gujarat - Gujari
  4. Tamil Nadu - Ma'bari
  5. Bengal - Gauri
  6. Eastern Uttar Pradesh – Awadhi
  7. Delhi – Hindawi
- Amir Khusrau went on to explain that in contrast to these languages there was Sanskrit which did not belong to any region. It was an old language and "common people do not know it, only the Brahmanas do".

Important Keywords:

- Archive: A place where documents and manuscripts are stored. Today all national and state governments have archives where they keep all their old official records and transactions.
- Manuscript: Manuscripts can be defined as a handwritten record of information. These are useful sources of information about the past which could be in the form of a letter, on leaves and barks of trees or scrolls.
- Jati: Jati or caste established a social hierarchy. Ranking of a person in the society was determined by the caste to which he/she belonged.
- Periodization: Periodization is the process or study of categorizing the past into discrete, quantified named blocks of time. This is usually done in order to facilitate the study and analysis of history, understanding current and historical processes and causality that might have linked those events.
- Foreigner: According to the medieval period, any stranger who did not belong to a certain society or culture and was not a part of that particular village was regarded as a foreigner.
- Chronicler: A person who writes the accounts of historical events, in order of their occurrence is called a chronicler.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Cartographer is a person who makes:
(a) Cartoons **(b)** Caricatures
(c) Maps **(d)** None of these

2. Why do historians today have to be careful about the terms in the past?
(a) Because they do not know the meaning of terms.
(b) Because the terms may have more than one meaning.
(c) Because the terms meant different in the past.
(d) None of the above

3. The number and variety of textual records increase dramatically during the period of:
(a) 600 to 700 **(b)** 700 to 800
(c) 800 to 1000 **(d)** 700 to 1750

4. Who used to collect Manuscripts?
(a) Poor people **(b)** Wealthy people
(c) Local people **(d)** None of these

5. Ziyauddin Barani wrote his chronicle first in:
(a) 13^{th} century **(b)** 12^{th} century
(c) 14^{th} century **(d)** 15^{th} century

6. When did Arab geographer Al-Idrisi make the map of the world?
(a) 1177 CE **(b)** 1154 CE
(c) 1274 CE **(d)** 1264 CE

7. In which century Babur used Hindustan to describe geography of subcontinent?
(a) 17^{th} century **(b)** 18^{th} century
(c) 16^{th} century **(d)** None of these

8. Which language was spoken during 14^{th} century in present Andhra Pradesh region?
(a) Awadhi **(b)** Gauri
(c) Telangani **(d)** Lahori

9. Which of the following is the holy book of Muslims?
(a) Geeta **(b)** Ramayan
(c) Guru granth sahib **(d)** Quran

10. Which of the following is not the source of the ancient history of India?
    (a) Epidemiology **(b)** Literary Sources
    (c) Epigraphy **(d)** Palaeography

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Areas of Punjab, Haryana and the lands between the Ganga and Yamuna – these lands came under _____.
    (a) Turks **(b)** Delhi Sultan
    (c) Sultan of Mysore **(d)** Moghuls
2. Between 700 and 1750, one group of people who became important in this period was the _____.
    (a) Marathas **(b)** Rajputs
    (c) Mughals **(d)** British
3. For whom was the term "foreigner" used in the medieval period?
    1. Any person coming to the village who was a stranger.
    2. People of different religions used this term for each other in the same village.
    Which of the above statements is/are true?
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) Both 1 and 2
    (d) Neither 1 nor 2
4. Consider the following statements:
    1. When Minhaj-i-Siraj used the word 'Hindustan' for the first time, he meant it for the areas located in undivided India.
    2. Babur used the term 'Hindustan' to describe the geography, the fauna and the culture of the inhabitants of the subcontinent.
    Which of the above statements is/are true?
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
5. Consider the following statements:
    1. In early 16^{th} century, Babur used Hindustan to describe the geography, the fauna and the culture of the inhabitants of the subcontinent.
    2. In 14^{th} century poet Amir Khusrau used the word "Hind".
    3. Before the 14^{th} century, the idea of geographical and cultural entity like "Hindustan" did not exist.
    Which of the above statements is/are true?
    (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
    (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
6. In the medieval period a new class emerged in the society called 'Rajputs'. Which of the following groups was/were included in this class?
    (a) Chieftains, Commanders and Soldiers
    (b) Chieftain, Soldiers and Priest
    (c) Chieftains and Commanders
    (d) Commanders and Priest
7. In the context of Historians and their Resources, consider the following statements:
    1. Historians rely on coins, inscriptions, architecture and textual records for historical information.
    2. The significance of texual records have decreased during the medieval period.
    3. Paper was used to write holy texts, chronicles of rulers, letters and teachings of saints.
    Which of the above statements is/are true?
    (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
    (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
8. In the medieval period, what purpose did the "Persian Wheel" serve?
    (a) Irrigation
    (b) Spinning yarn
    (c) Making ammunition weapons
    (d) Making earthen items
9. Match the following:

	Language		Region
A.	Telangani	**1.**	Delhi
B.	Gauri	**2.**	Andhra
C.	Hindawi	**3.**	Karnataka
D.	Dvarsamudri	**4.**	Bengal

    Choose the correct code:
    (a) A-2, B-3, C-1, D-4 **(b)** A-2, B-4, C-1, D-3
    (c) A-2, B-3, C-4, D-1 **(d)** A-1, B-3, C-2, D-4
10. Consider the following statements:
    1. Many forest-dwellers migrated between the 8th and 14^{th} century due to change in habitat.
    2. There was a gradual clearing of forests and the extension of agriculture, faster and more complete in some areas than in others.
    Which of the above statements is/are true?
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Consider the following statements with regard to the Brahmans and choose the wrong statement: **[UPPSC]**
    (a) Brahmanas earned respect in the society for their knowledge of Sanskrit texts.
    (b) Temples were constructed by royalty and the importance of Brahmans was increased.
    (c) Another major development of this period was the emergence of the idea of bhakti.
    (d) The royal patrons did not follow Bharmans; they have their own religious leaders.
2. In the 19^{th} century, British historians divided the history of India into three periods, namely: **[HPSC]**
    (a) Old Age, Middle Age and New Age
    (b) Hindus, Muslims and British
    (c) Hindus, Muslims and Christians
    (d) Ancient, Medieval and Modern
3. Minhaj-i-Siraj, a chronicler used the term "Hindustan" to represent the areas of _____. **[SSC]**
    (a) Afghanistan, Iran and India
    (b) Punjab, Haryana and lands between Ganga and Yamuna
    (c) Central India and Deccan
    (d) Punjab and Sindh

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: A cartographer is a person who creates maps, whether they're of the world, the local bus routes, or buried pirate treasure.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Historians today have to be careful about the terms they use because they meant different things in the past. Take, for example, a simple term like "foreigner". It is used today to mean someone who is not an Indian. In the medieval period a "foreigner" was any stranger who appeared say in a given village, someone who was not a part of that society or culture.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The number and variety of textual records increased dramatically during the period of 700 to 1750, slowly displacing other types of available information.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Manuscripts were collected by wealthy people, rulers, monasteries and temples. They were placed in libraries and archives.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The fourteenth-century chronicler Ziyauddin Barani wrote his chronicle first in 1356 and another version two years later. The two differ from each other but historians did not know about the existence of the first version until the 1960s.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The correct answer is 1154 CE. Arab geographer Al-Idrisi drew a section of world map in the 12^{th} century showing the Indian subcontinent from land to sea.
7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In the early sixteenth century, Babur used Hindustan to describe the geography, the fauna and the culture of the inhabitants of the subcontinent.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1318 the poet Amir Khusrau noted that there was a different language in every region of this land: Sindhi, Lahori, Kashmiri, Dvarsamudri (in southern Karnataka), Telangani (in Andhra Pradesh), etc.
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Merchants and migrants first brought the teachings of the holy Quran to India in the seventh century. Muslims regard the Quran as their holy book and accept the sovereignty of the one God, Allah.
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Epidemiology is the study and analysis of the distribution, patterns and determinants of health and disease conditions in defined population.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In the thirteenth century the term "Hindustan" meant the areas of Punjab, Haryana and the lands between the Ganga and Yamuna. The term was used in the political sense for lands that were a part of the dominions of the Delhi Sultan.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Rajputs name derived from "Rajaputra, the son of a ruler became quite popular during the period. Between the 8^{th} and 14^{th} centuries, the term was given for a group of warriors, claiming Kshatriya caste status, including not just rulers and chieftains but also soldiers and commanders who served in the armies of different monarchs all over the subcontinent.
3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In the medieval period, any unknown person who came to a village and was not a part of that society or culture was called a 'foreigner'. Such a person is called a 'Videshi' in Hindi and 'Ajnabi' in Persian, but two farmers living in the same village were not foreigners for each other, even if they belonged to different religions or castes.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: 'Hindustan' was used in the thirteenth century by Minhaj-i-Siraj, a chronicler who wrote in Persian, he meant the areas of Punjab, Haryana and the lands between the Ganga and Yamuna.
He used the term in a political sense for lands that were a part of the dominion of Delhi Sultanate.
The areas included in the term 'Hindustan' shifted with the extent of the Sultanate, but the term never included south India. By contrast, in the early sixteenth century Babur used 'Hindustan' to describe the geography, the fauna and the culture of the inhabitants of the subcontinent.
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In early 16^{th} century, Babur used Hindustan to describe the geography, the fauna and the culture of the inhabitants of the subcontinent. In the 14^{th}-century, poet Amir Khusrau used the word "Hind". **Hence, statement 1 and 2 are correct**.
Even if the idea of a geographical and cultural entity like "India" did exist, the term "Hindustan" did not carry the political and national meanings associated with it today. **Hence, statement 3 is not correct**.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In the medieval period, the 'Rajputs' were among the main communities whose importance increased; it is derived from the word 'Rajputra', i.e., the son of a ruler.
The term included not just rulers and chieftains, but also soldiers and commanders, who served

in the armies of different monarchs all over the subcontinent.

7. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Historians rely on coins, inscriptions, architecture and textual records for historical information, but the significance of texual records have increased during this period. **Hence, statement 1 is correct, but statement 2 is not correct**.

People used paper to write holy texts, chronicles of rulers, letters and teachings of saints, petitions and judicial records and for registers of accounts and taxes. **Hence, statement 3 is correct**.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The study of the 1000 years spanning 700 and 1750 is a challenge. The scales and variety of developments that occurred over the period are huge. At different moments in this period, new technologies made their appearances – like the Persian wheel in irrigation.

9. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

Language		Region	
A.	Telangani	**1.**	Andhra
B.	Gauri	**2.**	Bengal
C.	Hindawi	**3.**	Delhi
D.	Dvarsamudri	**4.**	Karnataka

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Between 8^{th} and 14^{th} centuries, many forest-dwellers migrated due to change in habitat. There was a gradual clearing of forests and the extension of agriculture, faster and more complete in some areas than in others. Hence both the statements are correct.

Those who remained started to till their lands and became peasants, who were later influenced by regional markets, chieftains, priests, monasteries and temples.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: During 8^{th} to 18^{th} century important changes have occurred in Hinduism including the worship of new deities, the construction of temples by royalty and the growing importance of Brahmanas, the priests, as dominant groups in society.

Brahmanas earned respect in the society for their knowledge of Sanskrit texts and their dominant position was consolidated by the support of their patrons– new rulers searching for prestige. **Hence, statement (d) is not correct**.

Another major development of this period was the emergence of the idea of bhakti – of a loving, personal deity that devotees could reach without the aid of priests or elaborate rituals.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: In the middle of nineteenth century British historians divided the history of India into three periods (based on religion):

1. Hindu
2. Muslim
3. British

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Term "Hindustan" is known as "India," the modern nation-state today.

The term was first used in the 13^{th} century by Minhaj-i-Siraj, a chronicler who wrote in Persian and contains the areas of Punjab, Haryana and the lands between the Ganga and Yamuna.

The term was used in a political sense for lands that were a part of the dominions of the Delhi Sultan.

HISTORY CLASS-VII

2 NEW KINGS AND KINGDOMS

The Emergence of New Dynasties

- By the seventh century, there were big landlords and warrior chiefs, also known as samantas and they used to bring gifts for kings and had to be present at their courts and provide military support.
- After gaining power and wealth they declared themselves as maha-samanta, maha-mandaleshvara (the great lord of a "circle" or region) and so on. At times, they even asserted their independence from their overlords.
- In the Deccan, Rashtrakutas were the subordinates to the Chalukyas of Karnataka and in the mid of 8th century, Dantidurga, a famous Rashtrakuta chief, declared himself independent and performed a ritual called hiranya-garbha (literally, the golden womb) with the help of Brahmanas. It was thought to lead to the "rebirth" of the sacrificer as a Kshatriya, even if he was not one by birth.
- In other cases, men from enterprising families used their military skills to carve out kingdoms like the Kadamba Mayurasharman and the Gurjara Pratihara Harichandra. They were Brahmanas who gave up their traditional professions and took to arms, successfully establishing kingdoms in Karnataka and Rajasthan respectively.

Administration in the Kingdoms

- New kings took up high-sounding titles such as maharaja-adhiraja (great king, overlord of kings), tribhuvana-chakravartin (lord of the three worlds) and so on. They shared power with their samantas as well as with associations of peasants, traders and Brahmanas.
- Producers (peasants, cattle-keepers, artisans and so on) used to surrender part of what they produced, sometimes, claimed as "rent" due to a lord who asserted that he owned the land.
- Revenue was also collected from traders. These resources were used to finance the king's establishment and for the construction of temples and forts.
- They were also used to fight wars, which were in turn expected to lead to the acquisition of wealth in the form of plunder and access to land as well as trade routes.
- People from influential families, close relatives of the king often held the position of revenue collector and positions in the army as well.

Prashastis and Land Grants

- Prashastis (manuscript) were composed by learned Brahmanas, they helped in the administration, contain details that may not be literally true but will tell us how rulers wanted to depict themselves.
- Kings often rewarded Brahmanas by grants of land. These were recorded on copper plates, which were given to those who received the land.
- Authors, such as Kalhana had used variety of sources, including inscriptions, documents, eyewitness accounts and earlier histories, to write their accounts.

Warfare for Wealth

- Tripartile Struggle: To acquire the city of Kanauj in Ganga Valley, the Gurjara-Pratihara, Rashtrakuta and Pala dynasties fought for centuries. Historians describe that long drawn conflict as "Tripartile Struggle".
- Rulers had constructed large temples to demonstrate their power and resources. Hence, when they attacked one another's kingdoms, they often chose to target temples, which were sometimes extremely rich.
- Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni, a ruler of Afghanistan who ruled from 997 to 1030 raided the subcontinent almost every year – his targets being wealthy temples, including that of Somnath, Gujarat. He used looted wealth to construct a splendid capital city at Ghazni.
- Al Biruni, entrusted scholar of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni wrote about the subcontinent in his Arabic work, known as the Kitab ul-Hind, after consulting various Sanskrit scholars.
- Other kings who engaged in warfare included the Chahamanas, later known as the Chauhans, who ruled over the region around Delhi and Ajmer. They attempted to expand their control to the west and the east, where they were opposed by the Chalukyas of Gujarat and the Gahadavalas of western Uttar Pradesh.
- Prithviraj Chauhan (1168-1192) was the most famous ruler of Chauhans, he fought with an Afghan ruler named Sultan Muhammad Ghori and defeated him in 1191, but lost to him the very next year, in 1192.

The Cholas: From Uraiyur to Thanjavur

- In the middle of the 9th century, Vijayalaya Chola belonged to Cholas from Uraiyur, captured the Kaveri delta from Muttaraiyar. Muttaraiyar was the subordinate to the Pallava kings of Kanchipuram and held power in the Kaveri delta.
- Vijayalaya built the town of Thanjavur and a temple for goddess Nishumbhasudini there. The successors of Vijayalaya conquered neighbouring regions and the kingdom grew in size and power going on to include the Pandyan and the Pallava territories to the south and north.
- Rajaraja I, one of the most powerful Chola rulers, became king in 985 AD, expanded control over most

of these areas and also reorganised the administration of the empire. Rajaraja's son Rajendra I continued the expansion policies of his father and raided the Ganga valley, Sri Lanka and countries of Southeast Asia. He also developed a navy for these expeditions.



Figure: Gangaikonda Cholapuram Temple



Figure: A Chola bronze sculpture

Splendid Temples and Bronze Sculpture

- Chola temples of Thanjavur and Gangaikondacholapuram (built by Rajaraja and Rajendra) became the centre of people settlements, which grew around them and were centres of craft production.
- Temples were not only the places of worship but also the hub of economic, social and cultural life. Amongst the crafts associated with temples, the making of bronze images was the most distinctive. Chola bronze images are considered amongst the finest in the world.

Agriculture and Irrigation

- Most of the achievements of the Cholas were possible via the new developments in agriculture.
- Before emptying in Bay of Bengal, the Kaveri River branched off into several small channels and the channels deposited fertile soils on their banks. Water from the channels also provides the necessary moisture for agriculture, particularly the cultivation of rice.
- Forests had to be cleared in some regions, while the land had to be levelled in other areas. In the delta region embankments had to be built to prevent flooding and canals had to be constructed to carry water to the fields.
- A variety of methods were used for irrigation. In some areas, wells were dug. In other places, huge tanks were constructed to collect rainwater.
- Most of the new rulers, as well as people living in villages, took an active interest in these activities.

The Administration of the Empire

- Settlements of peasants, known as ur, groups of such villages were called nadu. The village council and the nadu performed several administrative functions including dispensing justice and collecting taxes.
- Rich peasants of the Vellala caste exercised considerable control over the affairs of the nadu under the supervision of the central Chola government.
- The Chola kings gave some rich landowners titles like muvendavelan (a velan or peasant serving three kings), araiyar (chief), etc. as markers of respect and entrusted them with important offices of the state at the centre.
- Brahmanas often received land grants or brahmadeya. Each brahmadeya was looked after by an assembly or sabha of prominent Brahmana landholders.
- Associations of traders known as nagarams also occasionally performed administrative functions in towns.
- Uttaramerur inscription in Chingleput district, Tamil Nadu, provide details of the way in which the sabha was organised. The sabha had separate committees to look after irrigation works, gardens, temples, etc.

Types of land

- Chola inscriptions mention several categories of land:
  1. **Vellanvagai:** Land of non-Brahmana peasant proprietors
  2. **Brahmadeya:** Land gifted to Brahmanas
  3. **Shalabhoga:** Land for the maintenance of a school
  4. **Devadana, tirunamattukkani:** Land gifted to temples
  5. **Pallichchhandam:** Land donated to Jaina institutions

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. _____, a new dynasty was developed in eastern part of the country.
(a) Cholas **(b)** Palas
(c) Chahamanas **(d)** Rashtrakutas

2. Who were expected to bring gifts for their kings in 7th century?
(a) Samantas
(b) Overlords
(c) Maha-samantas
(d) Maha-mandaleshvara

3. When was Samantas declared Maha-samantas?
(a) When they bring gifts for their kings
(b) When they provide kings with military support
(c) When they gain power and wealth
(d) None of the above

4. What is the literal meaning of hiranya-garbha?
(a) Rashtrakutas **(b)** Dantidurga
(c) Golden womb **(d)** Golden deer

5. What is Vetti?
(a) Rent **(b)** Tax
(c) Revenue **(d)** None of these

6. The money collected from taxes was used in:
(a) To finance the kings' establishment
(b) Construction of temples and forts
(c) To fight wars
(d) All of these

7. The officers to collect the revenue were recruited from:
(a) Influential families **(b)** Peasants
(c) artisans **(d)** traders

8. In which language was the prashasti found in Gwalior written?
   (a) Hindi **(b)** English
   (c) Sanskrit **(d)** Urdu
9. Brahmanas were rewarded by grants of land, it recorded on which plate?
   (a) Copper plate **(b)** Iron plate
   (c) Silver plate **(d)** None of these
10. What is the meaning of Tribhuvana-chakravartin?
   (a) Great king
   (b) Lord of the three worlds
   (c) The creator
   (d) The protector

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements regarding the Samanthas:
   1. They bring gifts for their kings and overloads and had to be present at their courts.
   2. They also provide military support to their kings.
   3. These samantas declared themselves as maha-samanta, as they gained power and wealth.
   Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
2. Match the following:

	Title		Meaning
A.	Maharaja-adhiraja	**1.**	The golden womb
B.	Tribhuvana-chakravartin	**2.**	Great king, overlord of kings
C.	Hiranya-garbha	**3.**	Lord of the three worlds

   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) A-3, B-2, C-1 **(b)** A-2, B-3, C-1
   (c) A-1, B-2, C-3 **(d)** A-3, B-2, C-1
3. Deccan's "Rashtrakutas" were samantas of which one of the following?
   (a) The Chalukyas of Karnataka
   (b) The Cholas
   (c) The Cheras: Rulers of Kerala
   (d) The Chalukyas of Vengi
4. The long battle between the rulers of Gurjara-Pratihara, Rashtrakuta and Pala dynasty is often described as a "tripartite struggle". What was the reason behind this battle that lasted for centuries?
   (a) Control over Kalinga
   (b) Control over Kannauj
   (c) Control over areas around Godavari river
   (d) Control over Delta area of Kaveri river
5. Consider the following features of the Chola period:
   1. Temple, during Chola period was the center of economic, social and cultural life.
   2. The most famous craft associated with the temple was the making of bronze statues.
   3. Chola bronze statue is counted among the most beautiful statues of the world.
   Which of the above statements is/are true?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
6. What was the meaning of the term 'Vetti' during the Chola period?
   (a) Taxes - collected in the form of cash.
   (b) Taxes - levied in the form of forced labour.
   (c) Taxes - taken as a part of the production.
   (d) Taxes - voluntarily offered to the King by the people.
7. With respect to the administration in Chola Empire, consider the following statements:
   1. Nadu, settlements of peasants, became prosperous with the spread of irrigation agriculture.
   2. Groups of such villages formed larger units called Ur.
   Which of the above statements is/are true?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
8. In the wall relief of Ellora-cave 15, Lord Vishnu is shown as Narasimha Avatar, i.e., in the form of man and lion. Which period does this creation belong to?
   (a) Rashtrakuta period
   (b) Pallava period
   (c) Chola period
   (d) Buddhist era
9. Which prashasti describe the exploits of Nagabhata, a Pratihara king?
   (a) Hathigumpha Prashasti of Kharavela
   (b) Allahabad prashasti
   (c) Madhya Pradesh Prashasti
   (d) Prayag Prashasti
10. Which of the following pairs is/are not correctly matched?
   1. Vellanvagai – Land of Non Brahmana Peasant proprietors
   2. Brahmadeya – Land gifted to Brahmanas
   3. Shalabhoga – Land for maintenance of a school
   4. Pallichchhandam – Land gifted to temples
   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 1 and 3 **(d)** None

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Who founded the Chola Empire? **[HPSSSB]**
   (a) Vijayalaya **(b)** Rajendra-I
   (c) Raja Raj **(d)** Vijayendra
2. The reign of which dynasty is regarded as the 'golden age' of south India? **[BSF RM]**
   (a) Pandyas **(b)** Pallavas
   (c) Cholas **(d)** Vijayanagar

3. The rock-cut cave temples at Ellora and Elephanta in modern-day Maharashtra are a legacy of which of the following ruler? **[SSC]**
   (a) Pratiharas **(b)** Cholas
   (c) Rashtrakutas **(d)** Palas
4. Among which of the three dynasties was the 'Tripartite struggle', the long-drawn-out conflict over Kanauj, fought? **[CTET]**
   (a) Gurjara-Pratihara, Pala and Chola
   (b) Rashtrakuta, Chola and Pala
   (c) Gurjara-Pratihara, Rashtrakuta and Chola
   (d) Pala, Rashtrakuta and Gurjara-Pratihara
5. Who is known as the Napoleon of South India? **[AFCAT]**
   (a) Rajendra Chola **(b)** Rajadhiraj
   (c) Aditya Chola **(d)** Rajendra II

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Pala Empire (r. 750-1161 CE) was an imperial power during the post-classical period in the Indian subcontinent, which originated in the region of Bengal.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: By the 7^{th} century, the subordinates or samantas had to bring gifts for their kings and overloads and had to be present at their courts and provide military support.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: After gaining power and wealth Samanthas declared themselves as maha-samanta, maha-mandaleshvara (the great lord of a "circle" or region) and so on. At times, they even asserted their independence from their overlords.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Dantidurga, a Rashtrakuta chief, overthrew his Chalukya overlord and performed a ritual called hiranya-garbha (literally, the golden womb), in the mid 8^{th} century.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Vetti means forced labour (a kind of tax). It was taken in the form of forced labour not in cash.
6. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Revenue collected from taxes was used to finance the king's establishment and for the construction of temples and forts. They were also used to fight wars.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: For collecting revenue, the functionaries/officers were generally recruited from influential families and positions were often hereditary.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: A Sanskrit Prashasti found in Gwalior, Madhya Pradesh. It describes the exploits of the Nagabhata (a Pratihara king). He won over the king of Kanauj, Chakrayudha and defeated the king of Vanga, which is a part of Bengal.
9. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Kings often rewarded Brahmanas by grants of land. It was recorded on copper plates. These plates were given to those who received the land.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
    Explanation: Many of the new rulers chose titles that gave them a strong sense of authority and influence. These included:
    Tribhuvana-chakravartin, which refers to "Lord of the Three Worlds,"
    Despite having such lofty titles, they frequently shared their authority. They distributed their power to samantas and groups of farmers, Brahmans and tradesmen.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: By the 7^{th} century different regions of the subcontinent had big landlords and warrior chiefs, who were acknowledged as the subordinates or samantas by the existing kings.
   They had to bring gifts for their kings and overloads and had to be present at their courts and provide military support.
   However, as these samantas gained power and wealth they declared themselves as maha-samanta, maha-mandaleshvara (the great lord of a "circle" or region) and so on. At times, they even asserted their independence from their overlords.
   Hence, statement 1, 2 and 3 are correct.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation:

Title	Meaning
Maharaja-adhiraja	Great king, overlord of kings
Tribhuvana-chakravartin	Lord of the three worlds
Hiranya-garbha	The golden womb

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The "Rashtrakutas" of the Deccan were Samantas under the Chalukyas of Karnataka. Dantidurga, a Rashtrakuta chief, overthrew his Chalukya overlord and performed a ritual called hiranya-garbha (literally, the golden womb), in the mid-eighth century.

4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: To get control over the city of Kannauj, rulers belonging to the Gurjara-Pratihara, Rashtrakuta and Pala dynasties fought for centuries. Because of the involvement of three "parties" in this long drawn conflict, historians described it as "tripartite struggle".

5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Chola temples often became the nuclei of settlements.
Temples were not only the places of worship but also the hub of economic, social and cultural life.
The making of bronze images was the most distinctive. amongst the crafts associated with temples Chola bronze images are considered amongst the finest in the world. **Hence statement 1, 2 and 3 are correct.**

6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Vetti tax is the most frequently mentioned tax in the inscription of Cholas who ruled in Tamil Nadu. Vetti was a form of forced labour tax. It was levied from common people. These people were forced to work (without any wages) for the king or their village landlords.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Ur, known as the settlements of peasants, became prosperous with the spread of irrigation agriculture. Groups of such villages formed larger units called nadu. The nadu and village council performed several administrative functions, which includes dispensing justice and collecting taxes.
Hence, both the statements are not correct.

8. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Ellora wall relief from Cave 15 is showing Vishnu as Narasimha, the man-lion. It is a work of the Rashtrakuta period.
Cave 15, also known as Dashavatara Cave, belongs to the period of, Dantidurga.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: One prashasti which is written in Sanskrit is found in Gwalior, Madhya Pradesh. It describes the exploits of Nagabhata, a Pratihara king.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: All the given pairs are correct.
Chola inscriptions mention several categories of land:
- Vellanvagai - Land of non-Brahmana peasant proprietors.
- Brahmadeya - Land gifted to Brahmanas.
- Shalabhoga - Land for the maintenance of a school.
- Tirunamattukkani - Land gifted to temples
- Pallichchhandam - land donated to Jaina institutions.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Vijayalaya Chola (848-871 AD):
- He was the founder of the Chola Empire.
- He ruled over the region to the north of the river Kaveri.
- He built a temple of Goddess Nishumbhasudini (Durga).

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: South India in the 10^{th} and 11^{th} century AD, under the imperial Chola Dynasty, has been called Golden Age. The period saw extensive achievements in architecture, literature, sculpture and bronze working, maritime conquests with extensive trade and quasi-democratic reforms.

3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The caves of Ellora Elephanta were built by the Rashtrakuta rulers.
Ellora (UNESCO World Heritage Site) is located in the Aurangabad district of Maharashtra, India. It is one of the largest rock-cut Hindu temple cave complexes in the world, dating from the period 600–1000 CE.
The Elephanta Caves are a collection of cave temples. These caves are predominantly dedicated to the Hindu god Shiva. These are located on Elephanta Island, or Gharapuri, in Mumbai Harbour in the Indian state of Maharashtra.

4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Tripartite Struggle took place in the ninth century, among the Pratihara Empire, the Pala Empire and the Rashtrakuta Empire. It is also known as The Kannauj Triangle Wars for control of northern India.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Rajendra Chola I (971 CE – 1044 CE) is known as the Napolean of South India.
He is often described as Rajendra the Great, also known as Gangaikonda Chola "the bringer of the Ganges".

HISTORY CLASS-VII

3 THE DELHI SULTANS

Introduction

- Delhi became the important commercial centre under the Tomaras and Chauhans. Many rich Jaina merchants lived in the city and constructed several temples. Coins minted here, called dehliwal, had a wide circulation.
- At the beginning of 13th century Delhi became the capital of Delhi Sultanate. The Delhi sultans built many areas around the city that we now know as Delhi.
- Persian was the language of administration under the Delhi Sultanate that provides lot of information about the sultanate. It was written by learned men-secretaries, administrators, poets etc.
- Tawarikh or Tarikh are valuable chronicles written in Persian language to provide the historical information about the Indian subcontinent.
- Following details to keep in mind:
  1. The authors of tawarikh lived in cities (mainly Delhi) and hardly ever in villages.
  2. They often wrote their histories for Sultans in the hope of rich rewards.
  3. These authors advised rulers on the need to preserve an "ideal" social order based on birth-right and gender distinctions.
- In 1236, Sultan Iltutmish's daughter, Raziya, became the sultan of Delhi.
- Minhaj-i-Siraj stated that she was more able and qualified than all her brothers. But he was not comfortable at having a queen as ruler. Nor were the nobles happy at her attempts to rule independently.
- Minhaj-i Siraj thought that the queen's rule went against the ideal social order created by God, in which women were supposed to be subordinate to men. He therefore asked: "In the register of God's creation, since her account did not fall under the column of men, how did she gain from all of her excellent qualities?"

The circle of justice

- Fakhr-i Mudabbir wrote in the thirteenth century: A king cannot survive without soldiers. And soldiers cannot live without salaries. Salaries come from the revenue collected from peasants. But peasants can pay revenue only when they are prosperous and happy. This happens when the king promotes justice and honest governance.

The Expansion of the Delhi Sultanate

- In the early thirteenth century the control of the Delhi Sultans rarely went beyond heavily fortified towns occupied by garrisons. The Sultans seldom controlled the hinterland of the cities and were therefore dependent upon trade, tribute or plunder for supplies.
- **Hinterland:** The lands adjacent to a city or port that supply it with goods and services.
- **Garrison town:** A fortified settlement, with soldiers.
- Delhi sultans were often challenged by Mongol invasions from Afghanistan and local governors.
- The first set of campaigns along the "internal frontier" of the Sultanate aimed at consolidating the hinterlands of the garrison towns. During these campaigns forests were cleared in the Ganga-Yamuna doab and huntergatherers and pastoralists expelled from their habitat.
- The second expansion occurred along the "external frontier" of the Sultanate. Military expeditions into southern India started during the reign of Alauddin Khalji and culminated with Muhammad Tughluq.

The Masjid

- A mosque is called a masjid in Arabic, literally a place where a Muslim prostrates in reverence to Allah. In simple words, is a place of worship for Muslims, it is a place where Muslims gather for prayers (namaz), to study and to celebrate festivals.
- Muslim people choose the most respected, learned male as their leader (imam) for the rituals of prayer. He also delivers the sermon (khutba) during the Friday prayer.
- During prayer, Muslims stand facing Mecca. In India this is to the west. This is called the qibla.
- The Delhi Sultans built several mosques in cities all over the subcontinent. These demonstrated their claims to be protectors of Islam and Muslims.

Administration and Consolidation under the Khaljis and Tughluqs

- A big kingdom like Delhi Sultanate needs reliable governors and administrators to handle the administration of the sultanate.
- They purchased special slaves for military services, called as bandagan (in Persian); they were carefully trained to man some of the most important political offices in the kingdom.
- The Khaljis and Tughluqs continued to use bandagan and also raised people of humble birth, who were often their clients, to high political positions. They were appointed as generals and governors. However, this also introduced an element of political instability.

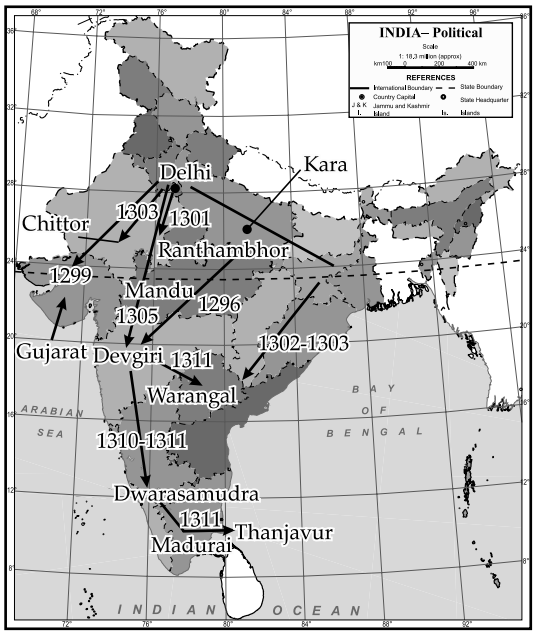


Figure : Alauddin Khalji's campaign into south India

Iqta System

- Like the earlier Sultans, the Khalji and Tughluq monarchs appointed military commanders as governors of territories of varying sizes. These lands were called iqta and their holder was called iqtadar or muqti.
- The duty of the muqtis was to lead military campaigns and maintain law and order in their iqtas. In exchange for their military services, the muqtis collected the revenues of their assignments as salary.
- Accountants were appointed by the state to check the amount of revenue collected by the muqtis. Care was taken that the muqti collected only the taxes prescribed by the state and that he kept the required number of soldiers.
- Under Alauddin Khalji the state brought the assessment and collection of land revenue under its own control. The rights of the local chieftains to levy taxes were cancelled and they were also forced to pay taxes.
- There were three types of taxes:
  1. On cultivation called kharaj and amounting to about 50 per cent of the peasant's produce
  2. On cattle
  3. On houses
- Local chieftains established their rule in distant provinces like Bengal. Sometimes rulers like Alauddin Khalji and Muhammad Tughluq could force their control in these areas but only for a short duration.
- To fight with Mongols under Genghis Khan, Delhi sultanate under Alauddin khilji and Muhammad Tughluq mobilised a large standing army in Delhi.
- Let us see how the two Sultans dealt with the Mongols:

Alauddin Khalji	Muhammad Tughluq
Delhi was attacked twice, in 1299/1300 and 1302-1303. As a defensive measure. Alauddin Khalji raised a large standing army.	The Sultanate was attacked in the early years of Muhammad Tughluq's reign. The Mongol army was defeated. Muhammad Tughluq was confident about the strength of his army and his resources to plan an attack on Tranoxiana. He therefore raised a large standing army.
Alauddin constructed a new garrison town named Siri for his soldiers.	Rather than constructing a new garrison town, the oldest of the four cities of Delhi (Delhi-1 Kuhana) was emptied of its residents and the soldiers garrisoned there. The residents of the old city were sent to the new capital of Daulatabad in the south.
The soldiers had to be fed. This was done through the produce collected as tax from lands between the Ganga and Yamuna. Tax was fixed at 50 per cent of the peasant's yield.	Produce from the same area was collected as tax to feed the army. But to meet the expense of maintaining such a large number of soldiers the Sultan levied additional taxes. This coincided with famine in the area.
The soldiers had to be paid. Alauddin chose to pay his soldiers salaries in cash rather than iqices. the soldiers would buy there supplies from merchants in Delhi and it was thus feared that merchants would raise their prices. To stop this, Alauddin controlled the prices of goods in Delhi. Prices were carefully surveyed by officers and merchants who did not sell at the prescribed raise were punished.	Muhammad Tughluq also paid his soldiers cash salaries. But instead of controlling prices, he used a "token" currency, somewhat like present-day paper currency, but made out to of cheap metals, not gold and silver. People in the fourteenth century did not trust these coins. They were very smart: they saved their gold and silver coins and paid all their taxes to the state with this token currency. This cheap currency could also be counterfeited easily.

Alauddin's administrative measures were quite successful and chroniclers praised his region for its cheap prices and efficient supplies of goods in the market. He successfully withstood the threat of Mongol invasions.	Muhammad Tughluq's administrative measures were a failure. His campaign into Kashmir was a disaster. He than gave up his plans to invade Transoxiana and disbanded his large army. Meanwhile, his administrative measures created complications. The shifting of people to Daulatabad was resented. The raising of taxes and famine in the Ganga-Yamuna belt led to widespread rebellion. And finally, the "token" currency had to be recalled.

The Sultanate in the Fifteenth and Sixteenth Centuries

- After the Tughluqs, the Sayyid and Lodi dynasties ruled from Delhi and Agra until 1526. By then, Jaunpur, Bengal, Malwa, Gujarat, Rajasthan and the entire south India had independent rulers who established flourishing states and prosperous capitals. This was also the period which saw the emergence of new ruling groups like the Afghans and the Rajputs.

Sher Shah Sur (1540-1545)

- He started his career as the manager of a small territory for his uncle in Bihar and eventually challenged and defeated the Mughal emperor Humayun.
- Sher Shah captured Delhi and established his own dynasty. Although the Sur dynasty ruled for only fifteen years (1540-1555), it introduced an administration that borrowed elements from Alauddin Khalji and made them more efficient.
- Sher Shah's administration became the model followed by the great emperor Akbar when he consolidated the Mughal Empire.

Ibn Battuta

- Ibn Battuta, who was considered as the greatest traveller of the medieval period, travelled to India from Morocco, Africa.
- He visited India during the reign of Muhammad bin Tughluq and is known for his account of his journeys called the "Rihla" (voyage). He travelled for almost 30 years and covered most of the Islamic world.

The "Three Orders", the "Peace of God"

- The idea of the "Three Orders" was first formulated in France in the early eleventh century. It divided society into three classes: those who prayed, those who fought and those who tilled the land.
- The Church patronised this group and used them to propagate their idea of "Peace of God". The attempt was to direct warriors away from conflict amongst themselves and sends them instead on a campaign against the Muslims who had captured the city of Jerusalem.
- This division of society into "Three Orders" was supported by the Church to consolidate its dominant role in society. This helped the emergence of a new warrior group called Knights.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which ruler first established his capital at Delhi?
(a) Chauhans ruler **(b)** Tomara Rajput ruler
(c) Turkish ruler **(d)** Khalji dynasty

2. Who was the first slave king of the Delhi Sultanate?
(a) Qutbuddin Aibak **(b)** Iltutmish
(c) Raziyya Sultan **(d)** Alauddin Khalji

3. Who was successor of Muhammad-bin Tughluq?
(a) Ghiyasuddin Tughluq
(b) Firuz Shah Tughluq
(c) Ibn Battuta
(d) None of these

4. Which of the following was the language of administration under the Delhi Sultans?
(a) Urdu **(b)** Persian
(c) Hindi **(d)** English

5. The position of standing facing Mecca during namaj is known as:
(a) Khutba **(b)** Sijdah
(c) Qibla **(d)** Kharaj

6. A fortified settlement with soldiers was:
(a) Hinterland
(b) Garrison Town
(c) Jagir
(d) None of these

7. Which was not a tax during Delhi Sultanate?
(a) Kharaj **(b)** Tax on cattles
(c) Tax on houses **(d)** Bandagans

8. What was Kharaj during the Delhi Sultanate?
(a) Land Tax **(b)** House Tax
(c) Agriculture Tax **(d)** Pilgrimage Tax

9. Which Mughal emperor followed Sher Shah Suri's idea of administration?
(a) Humayun **(b)** Akbar
(c) Babur **(d)** Aurangzeb

10. Which dynasty ruled Delhi before the Tughluqs?
(a) Khilji **(b)** Mughals
(c) Lodi **(d)** Mumluk

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following languages was used to write Tarikh or Tawarikh?
   (a) Sanskrit **(b)** Persian
   (c) Latin **(d)** Turkish
2. From which country did Ibn Battuta came to India?
   (a) Turkey **(b)** Afghanistan
   (c) Iran **(d)** Morocco
3. Match Column A with Column B:

Column A		Column B	
A.	Dehliwal	**1.**	Traveller from Morocco
B.	Shamsuddin Iltutmish	**2.**	Coins minted in Delhi
C.	Ibn Battuta	**3.**	Mongol invader
D.	Genghis Khan	**4.**	Early Turkish Ruler

   Select the right code:
   (a) A-3, B-1, C- 4, D-2 **(b)** A-3, B-2, C- 4, D-1
   (c) A-2, B-4, C- 1, D-3 **(d)** A-2, B-1, C- 4, D-3
4. In the context of Sher Shah Suri, consider the following statements:
   1. Sher Shah Sur (1540-1545) started his career as the manager of a small territory for his uncle in Bihar.
   2. Sher Shah Suri strengthened his empire by adopting the methods of Alauddin Khilji in the administration.
   Which of the above statements is/are true?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
5. In which of the following battles did Sher Shah defeat Humayun?
   1. Battle of Chausa
   2. Battle of Bilgram or Kannauj
   3. Battle of Dehriya
   Choose the right code:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1 and 2 only
6. Arrange the following rulers in chronological order as per the period of their rule.
   1. Qutbuddin Aibak **2.** Ghiyasuddin Balban
   3. Shamsuddin Iltutmish **4.** Razia Sultana
   Choose the right code:
   (a) 1, 4, 3, 2 **(b)** 2, 3, 4, 1
   (c) 4, 2, 3, 1 **(d)** 1, 3, 4, 2
7. Consider the following statements regarding the Masjid:
   1. A mosque or masjid (in Arabic) is a place where a Muslim prostrates in reverence to Allah.
   2. During prayer, Muslims stand facing Mecca. In India this is to the east. This is called the qibla.
   3. Several mosques in cities all over the subcontinent were built by Delhi Sultans that demonstrated their claims to be protectors of Islam and Muslims.
   Which of the following statements is/are true?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
8. Arrange the following dynasties in ascending time period of rule:
   1. Turkish Ruler **2.** Khilji Dynasty
   3. Tughluq Dynasty **4.** Sayyid Dynasty
   Choose the right code:
   (a) 1 - 2 - 3 - 4 **(b)** 2 - 3 - 4 - 1
   (c) 3 - 1 - 2 - 4 **(d)** 4 - 1 - 3 - 2
9. In the context of the Delhi Sultanate, consider the following statements:
   1. Muhammad Tughluq used to pay cash to his soldiers but instead of controlling prices he introduced "token"currency.
   2. The token currency was made of metal but not of gold and silver rather a cheap metal.
   Which of the above statements is/are true?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
10. Which of the following rulers of Delhi Sultanate abolished the Iqta taxation?
    (a) Firozshah Tughluq **(b)** Iltutmish
    (c) Alauddin Khilji **(d)** Razia Sultana

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
   1. It was during the reign of Iltumish that Chengiz Khan reached the Indus in pursuit of the fugitive Khwarezm prince.
   2. It was during the reign of Muhammad bin Tughluq that Taimur occupied Multan and crossed the Indus.
   3. It was during the reign of Deva Raya II of Vijayanagara Empire that Vasco da Gama reached the coast of Kerala.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 2 and 3
2. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
   1. In the revenue administration of Delhi Sultanate, the in-charge of revenue collection was known as 'Amil'.
   2. The Iqta system of Sultans of Delhi was an ancient indigenous institution.
   3. The office of 'Mir Bakshi' came into existence during the reign of Khalji Sultans of Delhi.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
3. Which dynasty of Delhi Sultanate ruled for the shortest time? **[MPPCS]**
   (a) Khilji **(b)** Tughluq
   (c) Sayyid **(d)** Lodi

4. Who introduced Market Control Policy? **[WBPCS]**
   (a) Firoz Shah Tughluq
   (b) Muhammad bin Tughluq
   (c) Alauddin Khilji
   (d) Sikandar Lodi

5. During whose reign did the Moroccan traveller Ibn Battuta visit India in the 14th century? **[SSC]**
   (a) Mohammad Bin Tughluq
   (b) Alauddin Khalji
   (c) Jalaluddin Khalji
   (d) Feroz Shah Tughluq

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Delhi was the capital of a kingdom under the Tomara Rajputs. They were defeated in the middle of the 12th century by the Chauhans.

2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Qutbuddin Aibak was the first ruler of the Delhi Sultanate and also the founder of the Slave dynasty.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The correct answer is Firuz Shah Tughluq (succeeded his cousin Muhammad bin Tughluq).
Sultan Firuz Shah Tughluq was a Muslim ruler of Turkic origin of the Tughluq dynasty, who reigned over the Sultanate of Delhi from 1351 to 1388.

4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Persian was the language of administration under the Delhi Sultanate. The Delhi Sultanate literature began with the rise of Persian speaking people to the throne of the Sultanate of Delhi, naturally resulted in the spread of the Persian language in India.

5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The qibla is the direction towards the Kaba in the Sacred Mosque in Mecca, which is used by Muslims in various religious contexts, particularly the direction of prayer for the salah.
During prayer, Muslims stand facing Mecca. In India this is to the west. This is called the qibla.

6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Garrison towns were fortified settlements with soldiers.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Special slaves purchased for military service by the early sultans especially Iltutmish were known as the Bandagans.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Kharaj was a tax on agricultural land, which was one-third to half of the produce.

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Sur dynasty ruled for fifteen years (1540-1555), they introduced an administration that borrowed elements from Alauddin Khalji and made them more efficient. It became the administration model for emperor Akbar (1556-1605).

10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Khalji or Khilji dynasty was a Turco-Afghan dynasty which ruled between 1290 and 1320.
The Tughluq dynasty, also referred to as Tughluq or Tughluq dynasty, ruled over the Delhi sultanate in medieval India between 1320 and 1413.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Tarikh/Tawarikh are important histories written in Persian language which provides a lot of details. The authors of Tawarikh were learned men, administrators, secretaries, courtiers and poets.

2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Ibn Battuta or Ibn Battutah came to India from Tangier, Morocco. He was one of the greatest medieval Muslim travellers and the author of one of the most famous travel books, the Rihlah (Travels).

3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:

Column A		Column B	
A.	Dehliwal	1.	Coins minted in Delhi
B.	Shamsuddin Iltutmish	2.	Early Turkish Ruler
C.	Ibn Battuta	3.	Traveller from Morocco
D.	Genghis Khan	4.	Mongol invader

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Sher Shah Sur started his career as the manager of a small territory for his uncle in Bihar. Later, challenged and defeated the Mughal emperor Humayun (1530-1540, 1555-1556). **Hence, statement 1 is correct.**
He captured Delhi and established his own dynasty-Sur dynasty ruled for fifteen years (1540-1555) and he introduced an administration that borrowed elements from Alauddin Khalji and made them more efficient. **Hence, statement 2 is correct.**

5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Sher Khan defeated Humayun in the battle of Chausa in 1539 and declared himself Sultan and assumed the title of 'Sher Shah'.
He soon took control of Bengal, destroyed the power of the Mughals in the east and reached Kannauj. In the Battle of Kannauj or Bilgram (1540) Humayun was decisively defeated by Sher Shah.

6. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

Qutb ud-Din Aibak – 1206 to 1210

Shamsuddin Iltutmish – 1211 to 1236

Razia Sultana – 1236 to 1240

Ghiyasuddin Balban – 1265 to 1287

7. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: A mosque called a masjid in Arabic, is a place where a Muslim prostrates in reverence to Allah. In a "congregational mosque" (masjid-i-jami or jama masjid) Muslims read their prayers (namaz) together. Hence, Statement 1 is correct.

During prayer, Muslims stand facing Mecca. In India this is to the west. This is called the qibla. Hence, Statement 2 is not correct.

Delhi Sultans built several mosques in cities all over the subcontinent and it demonstrated their claims to be protectors of Islam and Muslims. Hence, Statement 3 is correct.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

Turkish Ruler – 1206-1290

Khilji Dynasty – 1290-1320

Tughluq Dynasty – 1320-1414

Syed Dynasty – 1414-1451

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The invasions of Mongols increased on Delhi during the reign of Muhammad Tughluq. This forced Tughluq to keep a huge permanent army. For the management of this army, the token currency was introduced in place of price control, which was somewhat like today's paper currency.

In 1330, after his failed expedition to Deogiri, he issued token currency; that is coins of brass and copper were minted whose value was equal to that of gold and silver coins.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Alauddin Khilji abolished the Iqta system and salaries were paid to soldiers in cash.

He suddenly abolished the system of small Iqtas and brought them under the central Government. It was regarded as one of the most important agrarian reforms of Alauddin Khilji.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Chenghiz Khan defeated Jalal al-Din near the banks of Indus during the rule of Iltutmish. Hence, statement 1 is correct.

Timur started his journey from Samarkand and on September 30, 1398, he invaded the north Indian subcontinent (present day Pakistan and North India) by crossing the Indus River. His forces first sacked Tulamba and then Multan by October 1398. Muhammad Bin Tughluq was the sultan of Delhi from 1325 to 1351 AD. Hence, statement 2 is not correct.

Vasco Da Gama reached the coast of Kerala in 1498. Deva Raya II) was an emperor of the Vijayanagara Empire during r. 1422–1446 CE. Hence statement 3 is not correct.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Amil was the officers who collected land revenue and other taxes. Hence, statement one is correct.

Iqta was a land distribution and administrative system evolved during the reign of Iltutmish. Hence, statement 2 is not correct.

Mir Bakshi was in charge of military pay and accounts office during Mughal Era. Hence, statement 3 is not correct.

3. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The correct answer is Khilji Dynasty. Their total time period was 30 years (1290 to 1320).

Dynasty	Time Period	Years
Slave Dynasty	1206 - 1290	84 Years
Khilji Dynasty	1290 - 1320	30 years
Tughluq Dynasty	1320 - 1414	94 Years
Sayyid Dynasty	1414 - 1450	36 Years

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Alauddin introduced price controls on all agriculture produce, goods, livestocks and slaves in kingdom, as well as controls on where, how and by whom these could be sold.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Muhammad Ibn Battuta was a Moroccan traveller who visited India in the 14^{th} century during the reign of Mohammad Bin Tughluq. During his 30 years of travelling exploration, he visited around 44 countries, including India.

HISTORY CLASS-VII

4 THE MUGHAL EMPIRE

Introduction

- It is difficult for any ruler to handle such a large Indian territory with such a diversity of people and cultures.
- The Mughals created an empire and accomplished what had before seemed possible for only short periods of time. From the latter half of the 16th century, they expanded their kingdom from Agra and Delhi, going on to control nearly the entire subcontinent in the 17th century.

Who were the Mughals?

- Mughals were the descendents of two great lineages of rulers, from mother's side they were the descendent of Genghis Khan (died 1227), the Mongol ruler and from the father's side they belonged to the successors of Timur (died 1404), the ruler of Iran, Iraq and modern-day Turkey.
- However, the Mughals did not like to be called Mughal or Mongol. This was because Genghis Khan's memory was associated with the massacre of innumerable people.

Mughal Military Campaigns

- Babur was the first Mughal emperor (1526-1530), succeeded to the throne of Ferghana in 1494 when he was only 12 years old. He was forced to leave his ancestral throne due to the invasion of another Mongol group, the Uzbegs.
- After years of wandering he seized Kabul in 1504. In 1526 he defeated the Sultan of Delhi, Ibrahim Lodi, at Panipat and captured Delhi and Agra.
- Gun powder technology was brought to India by Babur for warfare in the 14th century. They used fire arms for the first time in regions such as Gujarat, Malwa and Deccan in early 16th century.

Mughal Emperors: Major Campaigns and Events

Babur 1526-1530

- 1526 – Defeated Ibrahim Lodi and his Afghan supporters at Panipat.
- 1527 – Defeated Rana Sanga, Rajput rulers and allies at Khanua.
- 1528 – Defeated the Rajputs at Chanderi; Established control over Agra and Delhi before his death.

Humayun 1530-1540 and 1555-1556

- Humayun divided his inheritance according to the will of his father. The ambitions of his brother Mirza Kamran weakened Humayun's cause against Afghan competitors.
- Sher Khan defeated Humayun at Chausa (1539) and Kanauj (1540), forcing him to flee to Iran.
- In Iran, Humayun received help from the Safavid Shah. He recaptured Delhi in 1555 but died the next year after an accident in this building.

Akbar 1556-1605

- Akbar was 13 years old when he became emperor. His reign can be divided into three periods.
  1. 1556-1570- Akbar became independent of the regent Bairam Khan and other members of his domestic staff. Military campaigns were launched against the Suris and other Afghans, against the neighbouring kingdoms of Malwa and Gondwana and to suppress the revolt of his half-brother Mirza Hakim and the Uzbegs. In 1568, the Sisodiya capital of Chittor was seized and in 1569, Ranthambhor.
  2. 1570-1585 – military campaigns in Gujarat were followed by campaigns in the east in Bihar, Bengal and Orissa. These campaigns were complicated by the 1579-1580 revolt in support of Mirza Hakim.
  3. 1585-1605 – expansion of Akbar's empire. Campaigns were launched in the north-west. Qandahar was seized from the Safavids, Kashmir was annexed, as also Kabul, after the death of Mirza Hakim. Campaigns in the Deccan started and Berar, Khandesh and parts of Ahmadnagar were annexed. In the last years of his reign Akbar was distracted by the rebellion of Prince Salim, the future Emperor Jahangir.

Jahangir 1605-1627

- Military campaigns started by Akbar continued. The Sisodiya ruler of Mewar, Amar Singh, accepted Mughal service.
- Prince Khurram, the future Emperor Shah Jahan, rebelled in the last years of his reign. The efforts of Nur Jahan, Jahangir's wife, to marginalise him were unsuccessful.

Shah Jahan 1627-1658

- Mughal campaigns continued in the Deccan under Shah Jahan. The Afghan noble Khan Jahan Lodi rebelled and was defeated. Campaigns were launched against Ahmadnagar and the Bundelas were defeated.
- In 1657-1658, there was conflict over succession amongst Shah Jahan's sons. Aurangzeb was victorious and his three brothers, including Dara Shukoh, were killed. Shah Jahan was imprisoned for the rest of his life in Agra.

Aurangzeb 1658-1707

- In the north-east, the Ahoms were defeated in 1663, but rebelled again in the 1680s. Campaigns in the north-west against the Yusufzai and the Sikhs were temporarily successful.
- Mughal intervention in the succession and internal politics of the Rathor Rajputs of Marwar led to their rebellion.

- Campaigns against the Maratha chieftain Shivaji were initially successful. But Aurangzeb insulted Shivaji who escaped from Agra, declared himself an independent king and resumed his campaigns against the Mughals.
- Bijapur was annexed in 1685 and Golconda in 1687. From 1698 Aurangzeb personally managed campaigns in the Deccan against the Marathas who started guerrilla warfare.
- Aurangzeb also had to face the rebellion in north India of the Sikhs, Jats and Satnamis, in the north-east of the Ahoms and in the Deccan of the Marathas. His death was followed by a succession conflict amongst his sons.

Mughal Traditions of Succession

- The Mughals did not believe in the rule of primogeniture, where the eldest son inherited his father's estate. Instead they followed the Mughal and Timurid custom of coparcenary inheritance, or a division of the inheritance amongst all the sons.

Mughal Relations with Other Rulers

- The Mughal rulers campaigned constantly against rulers who refused to accept their authority. But as the Mughals became powerful many other rulers also joined them voluntarily.
- The Rajputs are a good example of this. Many of them married their daughters into Mughal families and received high positions. But many resisted as well.
- The Sisodiya Rajputs of Mewar refused to accept Mughal authority for a long time. Once defeated, however, they were honourably treated by the Mughals, given their lands (watan) back as assignments (watan jagir).
- The careful balance between defeating but not humiliating their opponents enabled the Mughals to extend their influence over many kings and chieftains.

Mansabdars and Jagirdars

- The term mansabdar refers to an individual who holds a mansab, meaning a position or rank. It was a grading system used by the Mughals to fix (1) rank, (2) salary and (3) military responsibilities.
- Rank and salary were determined by a numerical value called zat. The higher the zat, the more prestigious was the noble's position in court and the larger his salary.
- The mansabdar's military responsibilities required him to maintain a specified number of sawar or cavalrymen. The mansabdar brought his cavalrymen for review, got them registered, their horses branded and then received money to pay them as salary.
- Mansabdars received their salaries as revenue assignments called jagirs which were somewhat like iqtas. But unlike muqtis, most mansabdars did not actually reside in or administer their jagirs.
- In Akbar's reign these jagirs were carefully assessed so that their revenues were roughly equal to the salary of the mansabdar.
- By Aurangzeb's reign this was no longer the case and the actual revenue collected was often less than the granted sum. There was also a huge increase in the number of mansabdars, which meant a long wait before they received a jagir.

Zabt and Zamindars

- The main source of income available to Mughal rulers was tax on the produce of the peasantry. Peasants paid taxes through the rural elites, that is, the headman or the local chieftain, known as Zamindars.
- Todar Mal was the Akbar's revenue minister; he carried out a careful survey of crop yields, prices and areas cultivated for a 10-year period, 1570- 1580. On the basis of this data, tax was fixed on each crop in cash.
- Each province was divided into revenue circles with its own schedule of revenue rates for individual crops. This revenue system was known as Zabt.
- In some areas the zamindars exercised a great deal of power. The exploitation by Mughal administrators could drive them to rebellion. Sometimes zamindars and peasants of the same caste allied in rebelling against Mughal authority. These peasant revolts challenged the stability of the Mughal Empire from the end of the seventeenth century.

A Closer Look: Akbar's Policies

- The empire was divided into provinces called Subas, governed by a Subadar who carried out both political and military functions.
- Each province also had a financial officer or Diwan. For the maintenance of peace and order in his province, the subadar was supported by other officers such as the military paymaster (bakhshi), the minister in charge of religious and charitable patronage (sadr), military commanders (faujdars) and the town police commander (kotwal).
- Akbar's nobles commanded large armies and had access to large amounts of revenue. They were loyal to the empire but by the end of 17^{th} century many nobles had built independent networks of their own.
- While Akbar was at Fatehpur Sikri during the 1570s he started discussions on religion at ibadat khana with the Ulama, Brahmanas, Jesuit priests who were Roman Catholics and Zoroastrians.
- Akbar's interaction with people of different faiths made him realise that religious scholars who emphasised ritual and dogma were often bigots. Their teachings created divisions and disharmony amongst his subjects.
- Abul Fazl helped Akbar in framing a vision of governance around this idea of sulh-i kul. This principle of governance was followed by Jahangir and Shah Jahan as well.

Akbar Nama and Ain-i Akbari

- Abul Fazl wrote a three-volume history of Akbar's reign, titled Akbar Nama. The first volume dealt with Akbar's ancestors and the second volume recorded the events of Akbar's reign. The third volume is the Ain-i Akbari. It deals with Akbar's administration, household, army, the revenues and the geography of his empire.

The Mughal Empire in the Seventeenth Century and After

- The administrative and military efficiency of the Mughal Empire led to great economic and commercial prosperity. International travellers described it as the fabled land of wealth but state of poverty also existed side by side with greatest opulence.

- Twenty years of Shah Jahan's reign inform us that the highest-ranking mansabdars were only 445 in number out of a total of 8,000 - a mere 5.6 per cent of the total number of mansabdars, they received 61.5 per cent of the total estimated revenue of the empire as salaries for themselves and their troopers.
- The Mughal emperors and their mansabdars spent a great deal of their income on salaries and goods. But the scale of revenue collection left very little for investment in the hands of the primary producers – the peasant and the artisan.
- Poorest people lived from hand to mouth (just enough money to spend on basic needs such as food and nothing else). The wealthier peasantry and artisanal groups, the merchants and bankers profited in this economic world.
- The enormous wealth and resources commanded by the Mughal elite made them an extremely powerful group of people in the late seventeenth century. As the authority of the Mughal emperor slowly declined, his servants emerged as powerful centres of power in the regions.
- They constituted new dynasties and held command of provinces like Hyderabad and Awadh. Although they continued to recognise the Mughal emperor in Delhi as their master, by the eighteenth century the provinces of the empire had consolidated their independent political identities.

Kings and Queens

- There were several great monarchs – all near-contemporaries – in different parts of the world in the sixteenth century.
- These included the ruler of Ottoman Turkey, Sultan Suleyman 1520-1566. During his rule the Ottoman state expanded into Europe, seizing Hungary and besieging Austria. His armies also seized Baghdad and Iraq.
- Suleyman also reconstructed the Ottoman navy. Its domination over the eastern Mediterranean brought the navy into competition with Spain. In the Arabian Sea it challenged the Portuguese.
- The monarch was given the title of "al-Qanuni" (the "lawgiver") because of the large number of regulations (qanun) passed during his reign.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. The residence of Mughal Emperors in Delhi was:
(a) The Red Fort **(b)** The Old Fort
(c) The Siri Fort **(d)** none of these

2. Genghis Khan was the ruler of which dynasty:
(a) Turkish **(b)** Mongols
(c) Huns **(d)** None of these

3. Which among the following Mughal Emperor was defeated by Sher Shah Suri?
(a) Babur **(b)** Humayun
(c) Akbar **(d)** Jahangir

4. Which Sikh Guru's Martyrdom took place during Jahangir's reign?
(a) Guru Nanak Devji
(b) Guru Gobind Singhji
(c) Guru Arjun Devji
(d) Guru Tegh Bahadurji

5. What was the capital of Mirza Hakim, Akbar's half brother?
(a) Kabul **(b)** Afghan
(c) Morocco **(d)** Sind

6. Which ruler was insulted by Aurangzeb?
(a) Man Singh **(b)** Rana Pratap
(c) Shivaji **(d)** All of these

7. Who was Akbar's Revenue minister?
(a) Todar Mal **(b)** Birbal
(c) Abul Fazl **(d)** Tansen

8. The minister-in-charge of religious and charitable patronage was known as:
(a) Zamindar **(b)** Bakhshi
(c) Sadr **(d)** Bigot

9. The battle between Babur and Rana Sanga was fought at:
(a) Panipat **(b)** Chunar
(c) Khanwa **(d)** Jaunpur

10. First battle of Panipat was fought between
(a) Prithviraj Chauhan and Mohd Gauri
(b) Ibrahim Lodhi and Babur
(c) Babur and Rana Sanga
(d) Akbar and Hemu

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following statements is/are true?
1. The bureaucrats who served the Mughals were called 'Mansabdar'.
2. These mansabdars were appointed only on the basis of merit.
3. Mansabdars used to get their salary in form of land from which revenue was collected.
Select the correct code:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

2. Consider the following statements:
1. Babur won the first battle of panipat.
2. He was the first to introduce the use of cannons in India.
Which of the statements given above is/are true?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

3. Who among the following helped Akbar in framing a vision of governance around the idea of Akbar's sulh-i-kul?
(a) Abul Fazl **(b)** Faizi
(c) Harivijay Suri **(d)** Badayunni

4. In which city Akbar constructed "Ibadat Khana"?
   (a) Fatehpur Sikri **(b)** Agra
   (c) Delhi **(d)** Ajmer
5. In relation to various departments and office-bearers related to the Mughal period, match the List I with List II.

List-I		List-II	
A.	Administrators of the provinces	**1.**	Sadr
B.	Financial Officer of provinces	**2.**	Faujdars
C.	Minister of Religious and Charitable Work	**3.**	Subadar
D.	Army Head	**4.**	Diwan

   Code:
   (a) A-4, B-3, C-1, D-2 **(b)** A-3, B-4, C-1, D-2
   (c) A-1, B-3, C-4, D-2 **(d)** A-3, B-1, C-4, D-2
6. Consider the following statements:
   1. Abul Fazl wrote the 'Akbarnama'.
   2. The Ain-i-Akbari (the third volume of the Akbarnama) contains information regarding Akbar's reign.
   Which of the above statements is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
7. What does the word "zabt" in the Mughal period mean?
   (a) System of collecting revenue
   (b) Grabbing the resources of another state
   (c) Goods looted in a war
   (d) None of these
8. Consider the following assertion and reason:
   Assertion: In the reign of Aurangzeb, the revenues received from the jagirs were lower than a Mansabdar's salary.
   Reason: During the reign of Aurangzeb, production was decreased in various areas and revenue received was also declined.
   Choose the correct answer:
   (a) Both assertion and reason are correct and the reason is the correct explanation of the statement.
   (b) Both assertion and reasons are correct, but the reason is not the correct explanation of the statement.
   (c) The statement is correct, the reason is incorrect.
   (d) The statement is incorrect, the reason is correct.
9. In terms of Mansabdari arrangements, consider the following statements:
   1. Mansabdar used to get their salary in the form of revenues assignments called "jagir".
   2. Mansabdar, like the Iqtadars, used to actively administer and depend on their jagirs.
   Which of the above statements is/are true?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 1 and 2 both **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
10. Which Mughal ruler has a mosque on his name in Fatehabad?
    (a) Akbar **(b)** Babur
    (c) Humayun **(d)** Jahangir

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. With reference to Mughal India, what is/are the difference/differences between Jagirdar and Zamindar? **[UPSC]**
   1. Jagirdars were holders of land assignments in lieu of judicial and police duties, whereas Zamindars were holders of revenue rights without obligation to perform any duty other than revenue collection.
   2. Land assignments to Jagirdars were hereditary and revenue rights of Zamindars were not hereditary.
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
2. Who among the following Mughal Emperors shifted emphasis from illustrated manuscripts to the album and individual portrait? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Humayun **(b)** Akbar
   (c) Jahangir **(d)** Shah Jahan
3. Consider the following: **[UPSC]**
   The arrival of Babur into India led to the:
   1. Introduction of gunpowder in the subcontinent.
   2. Introduction of the arch and dome in the region's architecture.
   3. Establishment of Timurid dynasty in the region.
   Select the correct answer using the code given below.
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 3 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
4. Ibadat Khana at Fatehpur Sikri was: **[UPSC]**
   (a) The mosque for the use of Royal Family.
   (b) Akbar's private chamber prayer.
   (c) The hall in which Akbar held discussions with scholars of various religions.
   (d) The room in which the nobles belonging to different religions gathered to discuss religious affairs.
5. Akbarnama was completed by Abul Fazl in: **[UPPSC]**
   (a) Seven years **(b)** Eight years
   (c) Nine years **(d)** Ten years

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Red Fort was the residence of the Mughal emperors of India.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Genghis Khan (1162-1227) of Mongol Dynasty rose from humble beginnings to establish the largest land empire in history.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: At the Battle of Chausa on June 26, 1539, Sher Shah defeated the Mughal

emperor Humayun and assumed the royal title of Farid al-Din Sher Shah. He again defeated Humayun in May 1540 at Kannauj.

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: On 16 June 1606, the Mughal Emperor Jahangir ordered the death sentence after the Guru Arjun Devji had refused to stop preaching his message of God as started by Guru Nanak Dev Ji.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Mirza Hakim, was the second son of the Mughal Emperor Humayun. He ruled Kabul in Afghanistan, often in conflict with his eldest brother, Emperor Akbar.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Shivaji was insulted by Aurangzeb, later he escaped from Agra and declared himself an independent king.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Raja Todar Mal, during Emperor Akbar's reign, was the Finance Minister of the Mughal empire. He was also the Vakil-us-Sultanat and Joint Wazir. He was one of the premier nobles in the Mughal Empire and one of the Navaratnas in Akbar's court.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Sadr was the head of religious donations and contributions. He also looked after education and imperial alms. Sadr acted as the Chief Qazi before Shah Jahan and Aurangzeb divided these two offices and allotted two separate persons for these posts.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Battle of Khanwa was fought between the first Mughal Emperor Babur and the Rajput forces led by Rana Sanga of Mewar. It was near the village of Khanwa, in Bharatpur District of Rajasthan, on March 16, 1527.

10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: First battle of Panipat was fought between Ibrahim Lodhi and Babur in 1526 AD, Babur won this battle.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The bureaucrats who served the Mughals were called 'Mansabdar'. The term refers to an individual who holds a mansab, meaning a position or rank. The appointment of Mansabdar was not only on the basis of merit, it was the emperor's special right to impart mansab. He could give mansab to anyone.

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The First Battle of Panipat was fought between Babur and Ibrahim Lodhi on April 21, 1526. Babur won the first battle.
In 1526, the First Battle of Panipat saw the introduction of massed artillery tactics (cannons) to Indian warfare.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Abul Fazl, one of the Akbar's navratnas, helped Akbar in framing a vision of governance around this idea of sulh-i kul. This was followed by Jahangir and Shah Jahan as well.
Sulh-i kul is an Arabic term which means "peace with all," "universal peace," or "absolute peace," drawn from a Sufi mystic principle.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In his eagerness to learn about different religions, Akbar built call of prayer at Fatehpur sikri in 1575 known as the Ibadat Khana. At this place, he invited selected mystics, intellectuals and theologians and held discussions on religious and spiritual themes.

5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:

	List 1		List 2
A.	Administrators of the provinces	1.	Subadar
B.	Financial Officer of provinces	2.	Diwan
C.	Minister of Religious and Charitable Work	3.	Sadr
D.	Army Head	4.	Faujdars

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Akbarnama, which translates to Book of Akbar, the official chronicle of the reign of Akbar, the third Mughal Emperor, commissioned by Akbar himself and written by his court historian and biographer, Abu'l-Fazl ibn Mubarak.
The Ain-i-Akbari is the third volume of the Akbarnama containing information regarding Akbar's reign.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In Akbar's reign, each province was divided into revenue circles with its own schedule of revenue rates for individual crops. This system of revenue was known as zabt.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: By Aurangzeb's reign the actual revenue collected was often less than the granted sum, i.e., the revenue received from the jagirs was lower than the Mansabdar's salary.

9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The first statement is true, Mansabdars received their salaries as revenue assignments called jagirs.
Statement 2 is false, the Mansabdar did not depend on their jagirs like the iqtadars and most mansabdars did not actually reside in or administer their jagirs.

10. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The correct answer is Humayun. Nasir-ud-Din Muhammad, also known as Humayun, was the second emperor of the Mughal Empire. He ruled

over territory in what is now Eastern Afghanistan, Pakistan, Northern India and Bangladesh from 1530 to 1540 and again from 1555 to 1556.

Humayun's mosque was built by the Mughal emperor Humayun (1529-1556 AD) at a place where the Lat erected by the Delhi Sultan Firoz Shah Tughluq was already standing.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: In Mughal India, Jagirdars under Mansabdari system were assigned land in lieu of assigned duties towards the empire such as police, judicial, military; Zamindars too apart from revenue collecting duties had to render military duties and perform Khidmat such as rendering soldiers to fill the ranks of royal army at times of need and offer gifts at the royal court.

Jagirdars were frequently transferred as promotion and demotion was a regular part of empire as loyalties towards Emperor were largely dependent on the rank of jagir/mansab held by a Noble; on the other hand, Zamindars had hereditary rights over revenue as their sway over rural society was overarching in all aspects which rested on paternal and patronage application of rituals.

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Emperor Jahangir inherited from his father a great love for painting. Like Akbar he collected illuminated Persian manuscripts and albums of paintings, special agents being sent to Persia and other countries to acquire manu- scripts and works of art. He also collected European paintings.

He shifted emphasis from illustrated manuscripts to the album and individual portraits. The Mughal School of painting originated in the reign of Akbar in 1560 A.D. Mughal Paintings revolved around the themes of battles, hunting scenes, wildlife, portraits, etc.

5. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Battle of Panipat was started on 21st April 1526, in a small village called Panipat, which is now known as Haryana State in North India. This war was known for the beginning of the Mughal Empire and also one of the earliest battles in which gunpowder, firearms and field artillery were used for the first time in India. **Hence, statement 1 is correct.**

Alai Darwaja in the Qutub Complex is the first instance of the real arch and real dome. It was constructed in 1311 AD by Ala-ud-din Khilji and the oldest remaining example of Indian subcontinent Ghurid architecture. **Hence, statement 2 is not correct.**

Timurid Empire in Central Asia becomes extinct under the Khanate of Bukhara of the Uzbeks. However, Timurid dynasty moves on to conquer India under the leadership of Zahir-ud-din Muhammad Babur in 1526 CE and established the Timurid dynasty of India. **Hence, statement 3 is correct.**

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Ibadat Khana (House of Worship) was a meeting house built in 1575 by the Mughal Emperor Akbar at Fatehpur Sikri. The purpose of the Ibadat Khana was to gather spiritual leaders of different religions to conduct discussions with Akbar on the teachings of the respective religions.

7. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Akbarnama was completed by Abul Fazl in seven years.

HISTORY CLASS-VII

5 RULERS AND BUILDINGS

Introduction

- The Qutb Minar is five storeys high with a band of inscriptions in Arabic under its first balcony. The first floor was constructed by Qutb ud-Din Aibak in 1199 and the rest by Iltutmish around 1229. Over the years it was damaged by lightning and earthquakes and repaired by Alauddin Khalji, Muhammad Tughluq, Firuz Shah Tughluq and Ibrahim Lodi.

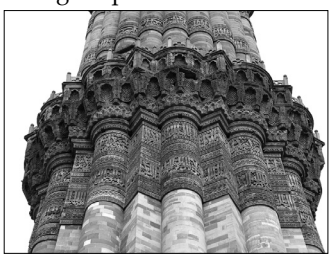


Figure: The Qutb Minar

- The Temple of Govind Deva in Vrindavan was constructed out of red sandstone. This style of architecture is from north-east Iran (Khurasan) and was used in Fatehpur Sikri.
- Between the 8th and 18th Centuries- two kinds of structures built by kings and officers:
  1. Forts, Palaces, Garden Residences and Tombs.
  2. Temple, Mosques, Tanks, Wells, Caravanserais and Bazaars.
- Kings were expected to care for subjects and hence by building structures for their use and comfort, they wanted to get praise from the people. Construction was mostly carried out by others including merchants, they built temples, mosques and wells. However, domestic architecture like large mansions (havelis) of merchants – has survived only from the eighteenth century.

Engineering Skills and Construction

- Monuments give insight into the technologies used for construction. Roof, for example, is manufactured by placing wooden beams or a slab of stone across four walls.
- However, to make a large room with elaborate superstructure requires more sophisticated skills. Between the 7th and 10th centuries, architects added more rooms, doors and windows to buildings. A style of architecture called "trabeate" or "corbelled", which was used in constructing temples, mosques, tombs and in buildings attached to large stepped-wells (baolis) between 8th and 13th centuries.

Temple Construction in the Early Eleventh Century

- The Kandariya Mahadeva temple dedicated to Shiva was constructed in 999 by the king Dhangadeva of the Chandela dynasty. An ornamented gateway led to an entrance and the main hall (mahamandapa) where dances were performed. The image of the chief deity was kept in the main shrine (garbhagriha). This was the place for ritual worship where only the king, his immediate family and priests gathered.
- The Rajarajeshvara temple at Thanjavur had the tallest shikhara amongst temples of its time. There were no cranes that time that is why the architects built an inclined path to the top of the temple, placed the boulder on rollers and rolled it all the way to the top. The path was dismantled after the temple was constructed but even now a village near the temple is called Charupallam, the "Village of the Incline".

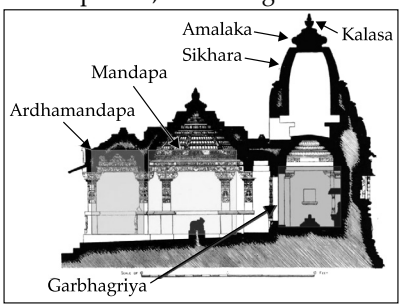


Figure: Architecture of a Hindu temple (Nagara style)

- Two noticeable technological and stylistic developments from the 12th century:
  1. Architectural form called "arcuate" the weight of the superstructure above the doors and windows were sometimes carried by arches.
  2. High-quality limestone cement- mixed with stone chips, hardened into concrete-increasingly used in construction- helped make the construction of large structures easier and faster.

Building Temples, Mosques and Tanks

- Temples and mosques were beautifully constructed because they were places of worship. They were also meant to demonstrate the power, wealth and devotion of the patron.
- Rajarajeshwara temple was built by King Rajarajadeva for the worship of his god, Rajarajeshvaram. The king took the god's name because it was auspicious and he wanted to appear like a god. The temple was a miniature model of the world ruled by the king and his allies. As they worshipped their deities together in the royal temples, it seemed as if they brought the just rule of the gods on earth.
- Muslim Sultans did not claim to be incarnations of god but Persian court chronicles described the Sultan as the "Shadow of God". An inscription in the

Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque explained that God chose Alauddin as a king because he had the qualities of Moses and Solomon, the great lawgivers of the past. Constructing places of worship provided rulers with the chance to proclaim their close relationship with God, especially important in an age of rapid political change.

- Sultan Iltutmish won universal respect for constructing a large reservoir just outside Delhi-i-Kuhna. It was called the Hauz-i-Sultani or the "King's Reservoir". Rulers often constructed tanks and reservoirs – big and small – for use by ordinary people. Sometimes these tanks and reservoirs were part of a temple, mosque (note the small tank in the Jami Masjid) or a gurdwara (a place of worship and congregation for Sikhs).

Destruction of Temples

- The Kings built temples to demonstrate their devotion to God and their power and wealth; it is not surprising that when they attacked one another's kingdoms they often targeted these buildings.
- Pandyan king Shrimara Shrivallabha invaded Sri Lanka in early 9th century and defeated the king Sena I (831-851). He removed all the valuables from the temples, such as the statue of the Buddha made entirely of gold and the golden images in the various monasteries.
- Later, Sena II, ordered his general to invade Madurai, the capital of the Pandyas. The Buddhist chronicler noted that the expedition made a special effort to find and restore the gold statue of the Buddha. Similarly in the early eleventh century, when the Chola king Rajendra I built a Shiva temple in his capital he filled it with prized statues seized from defeated rulers.
- Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni was a contemporary of Rajendra I. During his campaigns in the subcontinent he attacked the temples of defeated kings and looted their wealth and idols.
- But by destroying temples – especially the one at Somnath – he tried to win credit as a great hero of Islam.

Gardens, Tombs and Forts

- Babur, Humayun, Akbar, Jahangir and especially Shah Jahan were personally interested in literature, art and architecture. In his autobiography, Babur described his interest in planning and laying out formal gardens. He divided the garden into four quarters by artificial channels. These gardens were called chahar bagh, four gardens, because of their symmetrical division into quarters.
- Beginning with Akbar, some of the most beautiful chahar baghs were constructed by Jahangir and Shah Jahan in Kashmir, Agra and Delhi. The central towering dome and the tall gateway (pishtaq) became important aspects of Mughal architecture, first visible in Humayun's tomb. It was constructed between 1562 and 1571.
- The tomb was placed in the centre of a huge formal chahar bagh and built in the tradition known as "eight paradises" or hasht bihisht – a central hall surrounded by eight rooms. The building was constructed with red sandstone, edged with white marble. It was during Shah Jahan's reign that the different elements of Mughal architecture were fused together in a grand harmonious synthesis. His reign witnessed a huge amount of construction activity especially in Agra and Delhi.
- Shah Jahan's audience halls were specially constructed to resemble a mosque. The pedestal on which his throne was placed was frequently described as the qibla, the direction faced by Muslims at prayer. Everybody faced that direction when court was in session. The idea of the king as a representative of God on earth was suggested by these architectural features.
- The connection between royal justice and the imperial court was emphasised by Shah Jahan in his newly constructed court in the Red Fort at Delhi. Behind the emperor's throne were a series of "pietra dura" inlays that depicted the legendary Greek god Orpheus playing the lute. The construction of Shah Jahan's audience hall aimed to communicate that the king's justice would treat the high and the low as equals creating a world where all could live together in harmony.
- In the early years of his reign, Shah Jahan's capital was at Agra, a city where the nobility had constructed their homes on the banks of the river Yamuna. These were set in the midst of formal gardens constructed in the chahar bagh format. The chahar bagh garden also had a variation that historians describe as the "riverfront garden".
- Shah Jahan adapted the river-front garden in the layout of the Taj Mahal, the grandest architectural accomplishment of his reign. Here the white marble mausoleum was placed on a terrace by the edge of the river and the garden was to its south. He constructed the city of Shahjahanabad that he constructed in Delhi, the imperial palace commanded the river-front.
- Only specially favoured nobles, like his eldest son Dara Shukoh were given access to the river. All others had to construct their homes in the city away from the River Yamuna.

Region and Empire

- The construction activity was increased between the 8th and 18th century, there was also a considerable sharing of ideas across regions. In Vijayanagara the elephant stables of the rulers were strongly influenced by the style of architecture found in the adjoining Sultanates of Bijapur and Golconda.
- In Vrindavan, near Mathura, temples were constructed in architectural styles that were very similar to the Mughal palaces in Fatehpur Sikri. Mughal rulers were particularly skilled in adapting regional architectural styles in the construction of their own buildings. In Bengal, for example, the local rulers had developed a roof that was designed to resemble a thatched hut.
- The Mughals liked the "Bangla dome" so much that they used it in their architecture. The impact of other regions was also evident. In Akbar's capital at Fatehpur Sikri many of the buildings show the influence of the architectural styles of Gujarat and Malwa.
- Even though the authority of the Mughal rulers waned in the eighteenth century, the architectural styles developed under their patronage were constantly used and adapted by other rulers whenever they tried to establish their own kingdoms.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Large stepped-wells were called:
   (a) Ponds **(b)** Superstructures
   (c) Quiblas **(d)** Baolis
2. The surface of the Qutb Minar is:
   (a) Triangular **(b)** Rectangular
   (c) Circular **(d)** Curved and Angular
3. What is Shikhara?
   (a) The main shrine of the temple
   (b) An ornamented hall of the temple
   (c) The topmost pointed portion of a temple
   (d) None of the above
4. The Dhangadeva was the king of:
   (a) Pandayan dynasty **(b)** Rajput dynasty
   (c) Khalji dynasty **(d)** Chandela dynasty
5. The temples and mosques were beautifully constructed because
   (a) They were the place of worship.
   (b) They meant to demonstrate power and wealth.
   (c) They meant to demonstrate devotion of kings.
   (d) All of the above
6. Which Pandayan king invaded Sri Lanka?
   (a) King Sena – I
   (b) Shrimara Shrivallabha
   (c) King Rajendra
   (d) None of these
7. What does the term 'chihil sutun' refer with respect to Mughal architecture?
   (a) Forty-pillared halls
   (b) The throne of the king
   (c) Abode of the divine
   (d) Sanctum sanctorum
8. Buland Darwaza was built by _____.
   (a) Humayun **(b)** Akbar
   (c) Babur **(d)** Aurangzeb
9. The architecture of Fatehpur Sikri was influenced by the style of which region?
   (a) Bengal **(b)** Vijaynagara
   (c) Gujarat **(d)** Bijapur
10. Kandariya Mahadeva temple dedicated to Shiva was constructed by:
    (a) The Cholas **(b)** The Pandyas
    (c) The Chandelas **(d)** The Cheras

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. The Qutb Minar was built by which two rulers?
   (a) Qutb ud-Din Aibak and Alauddin Khilji
   (b) Qutb ud-Din Aibak and Iltutmish
   (c) Iltutmish and Alauddin Khilji
   (d) Qutb ud-Din Aibak and Muhammad Tughluq Correct
2. The two bands of inscriptions under the balcony of Qutub Minar are written in which language?
   (a) Arabic **(b)** Persian
   (c) Sanskrit **(d)** Turkish
3. Which one of the following scholars of Akbar's court translated Bhaskaracharya's Lilavati into Persian?
   (a) Abul Fazl **(b)** Faizi
   (c) Fathullah Shirazi **(d)** Ataullah Rashidi
4. Carefully analyse the statement and reason given below.
   Statement: Construction of large structures (temple, mosque and building) around the 12^{th} century began to be easier and faster.
   Reasons: In the 12^{th} century limestone cement was increasingly used in construction. This limestone cement was of very high quality, which hardened into concrete when mixed with stone chips.
   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) Both statement and reason are correct and the reason is the correct interpretation of the statement.
   (b) Both statement and reason are correct and the reason does not explain the statement correctly.
   (c) The statement is correct and the reason is wrong.
   (d) The statement is wrong while the reason is correct.
5. Which ruler won universal respect for constructing a large reservoir just outside Delhi-i-kuhna?
   (a) Akbar **(b)** Alauddin Khilji
   (c) Balban **(d)** Iltutmish
6. Under the Mughal architecture; consider the following statements in the context of chahar bagh style:
   1. The tradition of making chahar bagh began with Humayun.
   2. These were named chahar bagh, four gardens, because of their symmetrical division into quarters.
   3. Shalimar Bagh located in Kashmir is a beautiful example of a terraced chahar bagh.
   Which of the above statements is/are incorrect?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 only **(d)** All of the above
7. Consider the following statements:
   1. Shah Jahan adapted the river-front garden in the layout of the Taj Mahal.
   2. In the river-front garden layout, the dwelling was not located in the middle of the garden but at its edge, close to the bank of the river.
   Which of the above statements is/are true?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

8. 'Bangla dome' style was used by the Mughals to develop a roof that was designed to resemble a thatched hut. This regional architectural style belonged to which area?
   (a) Iran **(b)** Arabia
   (c) Bengal **(d)** Deccan
9. How is 'Pietra-dura' related to Mughal architecture?
   (a) Endorsing techniques of marble or sandstone
   (b) Mosque building techniques
   (c) Tomb building techniques
   (d) Technique to increase length of a fort
10. Which Mughal emperor built the city called 'Maksudabad', later popularly known as Murshidabad?
    (a) Bahadur Shah Zafar **(b)** Shah Jahan
    (c) Humayun **(d)** Akbar

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. With reference to the cultural history of India, consider the following statements. **[UPSC]**
   1. White marble was used in making Buland Darwaza and Khankah at Fatehpur Sikri.
   2. Red sandstone and marble were used in making Bara Imambara and Rumi Darwaza at Lucknow.

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
2. Consider the following statements about Kandariya Mahadeva temple: **[UPSC]**
   1. This temple is dedicated to Vishnu.
   2. Temple was constructed by the king Dhangadeva of the Chandela dynasty.

   Which of the above statements is/are true?
   (a) 1 only
   (b) 2 only
   (c) 1 and 2 both
   (d) Neither 1 nor 2
3. The Mughal emperor _____ took Bijapur and Golconda under him. **[Delhi Police Constable]**
   (a) Akbar **(b)** Shah Jahan
   (c) Jahangir **(d)** Aurangzeb
4. Sikandra in Agra houses the mausoleum of: **[SSC]**
   (a) Akbar **(b)** Humayun
   (c) Aurangzeb **(d)** Jahangir

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Baolis are stepwells, which are wells or ponds in which people reach the water by going down a set of steps.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Qutub Minar's base is octagonal in shape similar to the Minar of Jam in Afghanistan. It is basically curved and angular at the bottom.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Shikhara is a Sanskrit word means "mountain peak". It refers to the rising tower in the Hindu temple architecture of North India. It is often used in Jain temples as well.
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Dhanga, also known as Dhangadeva, was a king of the Chandela dynasty of India. He controlled the Jejakabhukti region (present-day Bundelkhand in Madhya Pradesh).
5. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Temples and mosques were beautifully constructed because they were places of worship and also meant to demonstrate the power, wealth and devotion of the patron.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Pandyan King Shrimara Shrivallabha invaded Sri Lanka and defeated the King Sena I , in the early 9th century.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Chihil Sutun means "Forty Columns" in Persian language. It was also known as forty-pillared hall.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Buland Darwaza, or the "Door of Victory", was built in 1601 A.D. by Mughal emperor Akbar to commemorate his victory over Gujarat.
9. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: In Akbar's capital at Fatehpur Sikri, the architecture was influenced by the architectural styles of Gujarat and Malwa.
10. **Option (c) is correct.**
    Explanation: The Kandariya Mahadeva temple was constructed in 999 by the king Dhangadeva of the Chandela dynasty. The temple was dedicated to Shiva.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Qutub Minar is a five-storey building, named after the famous Sufi Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki. The first balcony of this building was built by Qutb ud-Din Aibak around 1199 and the remaining was constructed by Iltutmish.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: There were two bands of inscriptions found under the balcony of Qutab minar. These are written in Arabic language.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Lilavati of Bhaskaracarya (a Sanskrit mathematical text) was translated into Persian by Akbar's Poet Faizi.
He was the elder brother of Akbar's historian Abul Fazl.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Limestone cement was increasingly used in construction. This limestone cement was of very high-quality, which, when mixed with stone chips hardened into concrete. This made construction of large structures (temple, mosque and building) easier and faster.

5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Sultan Iltutmish won universal respect because he constructed a large reservoir just outside Delhi-i-Kuhna in 1230 CE. It was called the hauz-i-Sultani or the "King's Reservoir".

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The first statement is false because the tradition of making chahar bagh began with Akbar and some of the most beautiful chahar baghs were constructed by Jahangir and Shah Jahan in Kashmir, Agra and Delhi.
It is a Persian and Indo-Persian quadrilateral garden layout. It is based on the four gardens of Paradise mentioned in the Quran. These gardens were called chahar bagh, four gardens, because of their symmetrical division into quarters.
Shalimar Bagh is a Mughal architecture, located in Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India.

7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In the early years of his reign, Shah Jahan's capital was at Agra, a city where nobility had constructed their homes on the banks of the river Yamuna.
These gardens also had a variation that historians describe as the "riverfront garden" and the dwelling was not located in the middle of the chahar bagh but at its edge, close to the bank of the river.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Mughal rulers adapted regional architectural styles in the construction of their own buildings.
For example, in Bengal the local rulers developed a roof that was designed to resemble a thatched hut. The Mughals liked this "Bangla dome" and used it in their architecture.

9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Pietra dura or pietre dure, also known as parchin kari or parchinkari in the Indian Subcontinent, is a term for the inlay technique of using cut and fitted, highly polished colored stones to create images.
Behind the Mughal emperor's throne, there were a series of pietra-dura inlays that depicted the legendary Greek god Orpheus playing the lute.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Makhsudabad was reputedly founded by the Mughal emperor Akbar in the 16th century. In 1704 the nawab (ruler) Murshid Quli Khan (following Aurangzeb's orders) transferred the capital there from Dacca (now Dhaka, Bangladesh) and renamed the town Murshidabad.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Buland Darwaza, also known as Gate of Victory, was built to mark Akbar conquest of Gujarat in 1572 AD. It is known as 'Gate of Victory' built in 1572 AD. It is the main entrance to the palace at Fatehpur Sikri which is 43 km from Agra. It is constructed out of red sandstone and is attractively carved. Hence, statement 1 is not correct.
Rumi Darwaza was built in the 1780s by Nawaz Asaf-ud-Daula, an Awadhi nawab. It is made of bricks coated in lime, allowing for more detailed sculpting, which would be near impossible on stone. Hence, statement 2 is not correct.

2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Kandariya Mahadeva temple dedicated to Shiva was constructed in 999 by the king Dhangadeva of the Chandela dynasty.

3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Bijapur Sultanate was taken by Aurangzeb into the Mughal Empire on 12 September 1686.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Sikandra in Agra is known for the tombs of Mughal Emperor Akbar and his wife, Mariam. The 17th-century Tomb of Akbar the Great is an ornate sandstone building inlaid with white marble at the heart of a sprawling, Charbagh-style garden. Mariam's Tomb was once a 1400s pleasure pavilion and it retains traces of its original paintings.

HISTORY CLASS-VII

6 TOWNS, TRADERS AND CRAFTSPERSONS

Introduction

- A traveller during his travels through a medieval town might find different types of centres. It could be an administrative centre or a port town or a commercial town. Most of these towns tend to have so many different types of plots such as temples and so much more.

Administrative Centres

- Thousand years ago, Thanjavur was one of the administrative centres and it was the capital of the Cholas. The perennial river Kaveri flows near this beautiful town.
- The Rajarajeshvara temple of Shiva was built by King Rajaraja Chola. It was praised by everyone. Besides the temple, there are palaces with mandapas or pavilions. Kings hold court in these mandapas, issuing orders to their subordinates. There are also barracks for the army.
- The town is bustling with markets selling grain, spices, cloth and jewellery. Water supply for the town comes from wells and tanks. The Saliya weavers of Thanjavur and the nearby town of Uraiyur are busy producing cloth for flags to be used in the temple festival, fine cottons for the king and nobility and coarse cotton for the masses. Some distance away at Svamimalai, the sthapatis or sculptors are making exquisite bronze idols and tall, ornamental bell metal lamps.

Temple Towns and Pilgrimage Centres

- Thanjavur is also an example of a temple town. Temple towns represent a very important pattern of urbanisation, the process by which cities develop. Temples were often central to the economy and society. Rulers built temples to demonstrate their devotion to various deities.
- Temple authorities used their wealth to finance trade and banking. Gradually a large number of priests, workers, artisans, traders, etc. settled near the temple to cater to its needs and those of the pilgrims. Thus grew temple towns.
- Towns emerged around temples such as those of Bhillasvamin (Bhilsa or Vidisha in Madhya Pradesh) and Somnath in Gujarat. Other important temple towns included Kanchipuram and Madurai in Tamil Nadu and Tirupati in Andhra Pradesh.
- Pilgrimage centres also slowly developed into townships. Vrindavan (Uttar Pradesh) and Tiruvannamalai (Tamil Nadu) are examples of two such towns.

A Network of Small Towns

- Small towns probably emerged from large villages. They usually had a mandapika (or mandi of later times) to which nearby villagers brought their produce to sell. They also had market streets called hatta (haat of later times) lined with shops.
- There were streets for different kinds of artisans such as potters, oil pressers, sugar makers, toddy makers, smiths, stonemasons, etc.
- Some traders lived in the town, others travelled from town to town. Many came from far and near to these towns to buy local articles and sell products of distant places like horses, salt, camphor, saffron, betel nut and spices like pepper.
- Usually a samanta or, in later times, a zamindar built a fortified palace in or near these towns. They levied taxes on traders, artisans and articles of trade and sometimes "donated" the "right" to collect these taxes to local temples, which had been built by themselves or by rich merchants. These "rights" were recorded in inscriptions that have survived to this day.

Taxes on markets

- There were taxes in kind on: Sugar and jaggery, dyes, thread and cotton, on coconuts, salt, areca nuts, butter and sesame oil.
- Besides, there were taxes on traders, on those who sold metal goods, on distillers, on oil, on cattle fodder and on loads of grain.
- Some of these taxes were collected in kind, while others were collected in cash.

Traders Big and Small

- Several traders, especially horse traders, formed associations, with headmen who negotiated on their behalf with warriors who bought horses. Since traders had to pass through many kingdoms and forests, they usually travelled in caravans and formed guilds to protect their interests.
- The most famous guilds were the Manigramam and Nanadesi. These guilds traded extensively both within the peninsula and with Southeast Asia and China.
- There were other traders also such as Chettiars, Marwari, Gujarati, Baniyas and Muslim Bohras. They used to trade with the ports of the Red Sea, Persian Gulf, East Africa, Southeast Asia and China. They sold textiles and spices in these ports and, in exchange, brought gold and ivory from Africa; and spices, tin, Chinese blue pottery and silver from Southeast Asia and China.
- Indian spices and cloth sold in the Red Sea ports were purchased by Italian traders and eventually reached European markets, fetching very high profits.
- Spices grown in tropical climates (pepper, cinnamon, nutmeg, dried ginger, etc.) became an important part of European cooking and cotton cloth was very attractive. This eventually drew European traders to India.

Crafts in Towns

- The craftspersons of Bidar were so famed for their inlay work in copper and silver that it came to be called Bidri. The Panchalas or Vishwakarma community, consisting of goldsmiths, bronzesmiths, blacksmiths, masons and carpenters, were essential to the building of temples. They also played an important role in the construction of palaces, big buildings, tanks and reservoirs.

The changing fortunes of towns

- Some towns like Ahmedabad (Gujarat) went on to become major commercial cities, but others like Thanjavur and Murshidabad shrank in size and importance over the centuries and declined in the course of the century as the weavers faced competition from cheap mill-made cloth from England.

A Closer Look: Hampi, Masulipatnam and Surat

- Hampi is located in the Krishna-Tungabhadra basin, which formed the nucleus of the Vijayanagara Empire, founded in 1336. No mortar or cementing agent was used in the construction of these walls and the technique followed was to wedge them together by interlocking.
- The architecture of Hampi was distinctive. The buildings in the royal complex had splendid arches, domes and pillared halls with niches for holding sculptures. They also had well-planned orchards and pleasure gardens with sculptural motifs such as the lotus and corbels.
- Temples were the hub of cultural activities and devadasis (temple dancers) performed before the deity, royalty and masses in the many-pillared halls in the Virupaksha (a form of Shiva) temple. The Mahanavami festival, known today as Navaratri in the south, was one of the most important festivals celebrated at Hampi.
- During their rule, the Vijaynagara rulers took keen interest in building tanks and canals. The Anantraj Sagar Tank was built with a 1.37 km long earthern dam across the Maldevi river. Krishnadeva Raya built a huge stone embankment between two hills to create a massive lake near Vijayanagara, from which water was carried through aqueducts and channels to irrigate fields and gardens.
- Hampi fell into ruin following the defeat of Vijayanagara in 1565 by the Deccani Sultans – the rulers of Golconda, Bijapur, Ahmadnagar, Berar and Bidar.

A Gateway to the West: Surat

- Surat in Gujarat was the emporium of western trade during the Mughal period along with Cambay (present day Khambat) and somewhat later, Ahmedabad. Surat was the gateway for trade with West Asia via the Gulf of Ormuz. Surat has also been called the gate to Mecca because many pilgrim ships set sail from here.
- The city was cosmopolitan and people of all castes and creeds lived there. In the seventeenth century the Portuguese, Dutch and English had their factories and warehouses at Surat. According to the English chronicler Ovington who wrote an account of the port in 1689, on average a hundred ships of different countries could be found anchored at the port at any given time.
- The textiles of Surat were famous for their gold lace borders (zari) and had a market in West Asia, Africa and Europe. The state built numerous rest-houses to take care of the needs of people from all over the world who came to the city.
- The Kathiawad seths or mahajans (moneychangers) had huge banking houses at Surat. It is noteworthy that the Surat hundis were honoured in the far-off markets of Cairo in Egypt, Basra in Iraq and Antwerp in Belgium.
- Surat began to decline towards the end of the seventeenth century. This was because of many factors: the loss of markets and productivity because of the decline of the Mughal Empire, control of the sea routes by the Portuguese and competition from Bombay (present-day Mumbai) where the English East India Company shifted its headquarters in 1668.

Fishing in Troubled Waters: Masulipatnam

- The town of Masulipatnam or Machlipatnam (literally, fish port town) lay on the delta of the Krishna river. In the seventeenth century it was a centre of intense activity.
- Both the Dutch and English East India Companies attempted to control Masulipatnam as it became the most important port on the Andhra coast. The fort at Masulipatnam was built by the Dutch.
- Fierce competition among various trading groups – the Golconda nobles, Persian merchants, Telugu Komati Chettis and European traders – made the city populous and prosperous.
- As the Mughals began to extend their power to Golconda their representative, the governor Mir Jumla who was also a merchant, began to play off the Dutch and the English against each other. In 1686-1687 Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb annexed Golconda.
- Then the Company traders moved to Bombay, Calcutta (present-day Kolkata) and Madras (present-day Chennai), Masulipatnam lost both its merchants and prosperity and declined in the course of the eighteenth century, being today nothing more than a dilapidated little town.

New Towns and Traders

- The English, Dutch and French formed East India Companies in order to expand their commercial activities in the east. Initially great Indian traders like Mulla Abdul Ghafur and Virji Vora who owned a large number of ships competed with them.
- However, the European Companies used their naval power to gain control of the sea trade and forced Indian traders to work as their agents. Ultimately, the English emerged as the most successful commercial and political power in the subcontinent.
- The eighteenth century saw the rise of Bombay, Calcutta and Madras, which are nodal cities today. Crafts and commerce underwent major changes as merchants and artisans (such as weavers) were moved into the Black Towns established by the European companies within these new cities.
- The "blacks" or native traders and craftspersons were confined here while the "white" rulers occupied the superior residencies of Fort St. George in Madras or Fort St. William in Calcutta.

Vasco da Gama and Christopher Columbus

- Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese sailor, sailed down the African Coast, went round the Cape of Good Hope and crossed over to the Indian Ocean. His first journey took more than a year; he reached Calicut in 1498 and returned to Lisbon, the capital of Portugal, the following year.

- He lost two of his four ships and of the 170 men at the start of the journey, only 54 survived. In spite of the obvious hazards, the routes that were opened up proved to be extremely profitable – and he was followed by English, Dutch and French sailors.
- The search for sea routes to India had another, unexpected fallout. On the assumption that the earth was round, Christopher Columbus, an Italian, decided to sail westwards across the Atlantic Ocean to find a route to India.
- He landed in the West Indies (which got their name because of this confusion) in 1492. He was followed by sailors and conquerors from Spain and Portugal, who occupied large parts of Central and South America, often destroying earlier settlements in the area.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Towns existed during Medieval period were:
(a) Port **(b)** Administrative
(c) Temple **(d)** All of these

2. Tanjavur is situated on the river:
(a) Kaveri **(b)** Krishna
(c) Mahanadi **(d)** Godavari

3. The Rajarajeshwara temple was constructed in:
(a) Ajmer **(b)** Bijapur
(c) Vijayanagara **(d)** Thanjavur

4. Which of the following was a pilgrim centre?
(a) Bombay **(b)** Pushkar
(c) Surat **(d)** Meerut

5. Which was not a kind of traders?
(a) The Banjaras **(b)** The Marwari Oswal
(c) Nanadesi **(d)** Gujarati Baniyas

6. Hampi was the capital of which Empire?
(a) Vijayanagara **(b)** Mughal
(c) Mewar **(d)** None of these

7. The people from distant land visited Surat because
(a) It was the Gateway to West Asia
(b) It was a beautiful place
(c) It was the pilgrim centre
(d) None of the above

8. Masulipatnam was famous for:
(a) Elephant trade
(b) Temples
(c) Crafts production of copper and silver
(d) Trading port

9. The part of the town where artisans and merchants of Indian origin used to live was called
(a) Administrative town
(b) black town
(c) commercial town
(d) port town

10. _____ in Rajasthan was the capital of Chauhans.
(a) Ajmer **(b)** Delhi
(c) Udaipur **(d)** Jodhpur

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. What are the 'mandapas' related to?
(a) Temple
(b) Rajmahal
(c) Dharmshala
(d) Both (a) and (b) are correct

2. What was manufactured in the Chola era using the "Lost wax" technique?
(a) Household utensils **(b)** Bronze statues
(c) Weapons **(d)** Toiletries

3. Which of the following statements is/are true with reference to Ajmer (Rajasthan)?
1. It was the capital of the Chauhan kings (in the twelfth century).
2. It became the suba headquarters under the Mughals.
3. Sufi saint, Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti settled here in the 12^{th} century.
Choose the correct code:
(a) 1 and 2 both **(b)** 2 and 3 both
(c) 1 and 3 both **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

4. What do the words 'Manigramam' and 'Nanadesi' represent?
(a) Trader guilds of North India
(b) Trader guilds of South India
(c) Farmer unions of North India
(d) Brahmin unions of South India

5. To which one of the following classes did Muslim Bohra community belong?
(a) Traders **(b)** Warriors
(c) Craftspersons **(d)** Farmers

6. Consider the following statements given in the context of Bidri Crafts:
1. Bidri craft was named after the local rulers.
2. Inlay work is done in silver and copper in the Bidri craft.
Which of the above statements is/are true?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 1 and 2 both **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

7. Which of the following groups was not included in the Panchalas or Vishwakarma community in the medieval period?
(a) Blacksmith **(b)** Carpenter
(c) Goldsmith **(d)** Weavers

8. In the context of 16^{th} century, consider the following statements:
1. In the 16^{th} century, Kabul and Qandahar were linked to the celebrated Silk Route.
2. Kabul was the main centre for elephants' trade.
Which of the above statements is/are true?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

9. Which of the following city of Vijayanagara Empire is located in the valley of rivers Krishna and Tungabhadra?
   (a) Hampi **(b)** Bijapur
   (c) Golkonda **(d)** Ahmednagar
10. For whom the word 'moors' was used in the markets of Hampi under the Vijayanagara empire?
   (a) For Portuguese merchants
   (b) For English merchants
   (c) For Muslim merchants
   (d) For Chinese merchants

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Consider the following pairs: **[UPSC]**

	Famous Places	River
1.	Pandharpur	Chandrabhanga
2.	Tiruchirappalli	Cauvery
3.	Hampi	Malaprabha

Which of the pairs given above are correctly matched?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

2. Military commanders who were given territories to govern in Vijayanagara were called: **[AWES PGT]**
   (a) Rayas **(b)** Amirs
   (c) Amara- Nayakas **(d)** None of the above
3. Which city was the capital of the Vijayanagara kingdom? **[Police Constable]**
   (a) Mysore **(b)** Tanjore
   (c) Hampi **(d)** Belur
4. According to Portuguese writer Nuniz, the women in the Vijayanagara empire were expert in which of the following areas? **[UPSC]**
   1. Wrestling **2.** Astrology
   3. Accounting **4.** Soothsaying
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 1, 3 and 4 only
   (c) 2 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4
5. Regarding the taxation system of Krishna Deva, the ruler of Vijayanagar, consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
   1. The tax rate on land was fixed depending on the quality of the land.
   2. Private owners of workshops paid an industry tax.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Temple towns, administrative towns, commercial or port towns were existed during medieval period in India.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Thanjavur, earlier known as Tanjore, is a city of eastern Tamil Nadu. It lies in the Kaveri (Cauvery) River delta.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Brihadishvara Temple, also known as Rajarajeshwara Temple and locally known as Thanjai Periya Kovil is a Hindu Dravidian styled temple dedicated to the god Shiva. It is located in South bank of Cauvery river in Thanjavur, Tamil Nadu, India.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Pushkar is a pilgrim center for both Hindus and Sikhs. It is located in the district of Ajmer in Rajasthan.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Nanadesis were not a kind of traders but were a guild of traders. They organized themselves into one of the biggest trading associations at the time of the Hoysala Empire.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Hampi or Hampe was the capital of the Vijayanagara Empire in the 14^{th} century. It is also referred to as the Group of Monuments at Hampi. It is a UNESCO World Heritage Site located in east-central Karnataka, India.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Surat, a city in Gujarat, was the emporium of western trade during the Mughal period. With Cambay (now Khambut) and somewhat later, Ahmedabad. It was the gateway for trade with West Asia via the Gulf of Ormuz.
8. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Masulipatnam, located on the mouth of River Krishna in the Bay of Bengal, was a famous sea trading port.
9. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The part of the town where artisans and merchants of Indian origin used to live was called black town.
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
    Explanation: In the early 12^{th} century, Ajayaraja II moved the kingdom's capital to Ajayameru (modern Ajmer).

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: The mandapas were built in the Rajmahal (palace) itself. Kings hold court in these pavilions or mandapas.
   The mandapa is a porch-like structure, in the Hindu temple, through the (ornate gateway) and leading to the temple.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Bronze statues were made by using "lost wax" technique in Chola era.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: All the three statements regarding Ajmer (Rajasthan) are true.

Ajmer was the capital of the Chauhan Kings in the twelfth century. Later, it became the suba headquarters under the Mughals. It provides an excellent example of religious co-existence. A Sufi saint, Khwaja Moinuddin Chisti, settled down in Ajmer.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Since traders had to pass through many kingdoms and forests, they usually travelled in caravans and formed guilds to protect their interests. From the eighth century onwards, there were several such guilds in south India – the most famous were the Manigramam and Nanadesi. These guilds traded extensively both within the peninsula and with Southeast Asia and China.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Hindu Baniyas and Muslim Bohra communities were involved among the traders of Gujarat. They traded extensively with the ports of the Red Sea, Persian Gulf, East Africa, Southeast Asia and China.

Dawoodi Bohras are Shia Muslims of the Ismaili Mustaaliam sect who believe that their 21st imam went into seclusion in Yemen in the 12th century and appointed a deputy, called a dai-e-mutlaq, to lead the community.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Bidri Craft is a unique craft of Bidar, Karnataka. The local craftspersons were so famed for their inlay work (in copper and silver) that it came to be called Bidri craft. Hence, the name of the Bidri craft is named after the place of its production.

The Bidri art form is a kind of damascene work known as "koftagiri" - a system of ornamentation consisting of encrusting gold or silver on iron objects. In 'Bidri' or 'Bidari', the metals silver, gold or brass are overlaid or inlaid in the designs to decorate objects made out of an alloy of zinc and copper.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Panchalas or Vishwakarma community, in the medieval period consisting of goldsmiths, bronze smiths, blacksmiths, masons and carpenters, were important to the building of temples, palaces, big buildings, tanks and reservoirs.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Kabul, with its rugged, mountainous landscape, became politically and commercially important from the sixteenth century onwards. Both, Kabul and Qandahar were linked to the celebrated Silk Route. Trade in horses was carried on through this route.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Hampi is located in the Krishna-Tungabhadra basin, which formed the nucleus of the Vijayanagar Empire, founded in 1336. The magnificent ruins at Hampi reveal a well-fortified city.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In the fifteenth - sixteenth centuries, Hampi bustled with commercial and cultural activities. Moors (a name used collectively for Muslim merchants), Chettis and agents of European traders such as the Portuguese, thronged the markets of Hampi.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

	Famous Places	River
1.	Pandharpur	Chandrabhanga
2.	Tiruchirappalli	Cauvery
3.	Hampi	Tungabhadra River

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The amara-nayakas were military commanders who were given territories to govern by the raya of Vijaynagara kingdom. They collected taxes and other dues from peasants, craftspersons and traders in the area. They retained a part of the revenue for personal use and for maintaining a stipulated contingent of horses and elephants.

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Vijaynagar Empire is named after its capital city called Vijaynagar. The ruins of the empire surround the present-day Hampi. It was chosen as the capital because of its strategic location.

4. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Women in general occupied a high position in Vijayanagara society and they took part in the political, social and literary life of the country besides they trained in wrestling, handling swords and shields, music and other fine arts.

Women of Vijaynagar were also involved in wrestling, astrology and soothsayers.

5. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Both the statements are correct.

The main source of income of Vijayanagar Empire was land revenue and its administration was under a department called Athavane. Land was divided into three parts for purposes of assessment : wet land, dry land, orchards and woods.

There were taxes on shopkeepers, workmen, shoemakers, posters etc.

HISTORY CLASS-VII

7 TRIBES, NOMADS AND SETTLED COMMUNITIES

Introduction

- Over the centuries important political, social and economic developments had taken place. But social change was not the same everywhere, because different kinds of societies evolved differently. It is important to understand how and why, this happened.
- In large parts of the subcontinent, society was already divided according to the rules of Varna. These rules, as prescribed by the Brahmanas, were accepted by the rulers of large kingdoms.

Beyond Big Cities: Tribal Societies

- Many societies in the subcontinent did not follow the social rules and rituals prescribed by the Brahmanas. Nor were they divided into numerous unequal classes. Such societies are often called tribes.
- Members of each tribe were united by kinship bonds. Many tribes obtained their livelihood from agriculture. Others were hunter-gatherers or herders. Some tribes were nomadic and moved from one place to another. A tribal group controlled land and pastures jointly and divided these amongst households according to its own rules.
- They usually lived in forests, hills, deserts and places difficult to reach. Sometimes they clashed with the more powerful caste-based societies. In various ways, the tribes retained their freedom and preserved their separate culture.

Who were Tribal People?

- Tribal people were found in almost every region of the subcontinent. The area and influence of a tribe varied at different points of time. Some powerful tribes controlled large territories.
- Khokhar tribe: They were very influential in Punjab during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.
- Gakkhars Tribe: Their chief, Kamal Khan Gakkhar, was made a noble (mansabdar) by Emperor Akbar.
- The Langahs and Arghuns: Tribes of Multan and Sind; they dominated extensive regions before they were subdued by the Mughals.
- The Balochis: They were another large and powerful tribe in the north-west.
  They were divided into many smaller clans under different chiefs. In the western Himalaya lived the shepherd tribe of Gaddis. The distant north-eastern part of the subcontinent too was entirely dominated by tribes – the Nagas, Ahoms and many others.
- Chero Tribe of Bihar and Jharkhand: Chero chiefdoms had emerged by the twelfth century. Raja Man Singh, Akbar's famous general, attacked and defeated the Cheros in 1591. A large amount of booty was taken from them, but they were not entirely subdued.
- The Mundas and Santals: They were among the other important tribes that lived in this region and also in Orissa and Bengal.
- The Kolis: Maharashtra and Gujarat
- The Bhils: Western and Central India
- The Gonds: Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra and Andhra Pradesh

How Nomads and Mobile People Lived

- Nomadic pastoralists moved over long distances with their animals. They lived on milk and other pastoral products. They also exchanged wool, ghee, etc., with settled agriculturists for grain, cloth, utensils and other products. They bought and sold these goods as they moved from one place to another, transporting them on their animals.

Who were Banjaras?

- The Banjaras were the most important trader-nomads. Their caravan was called tanda. Sultan Alauddin Khilji used the Banjaras to transport grain to the city markets.
- Emperor Jahangir wrote in his memoirs that the Banjaras carried grain on their bullocks from different areas and sold it in towns.
- They transported food grain for the Mughal army during military campaigns. With a large army there could be 100,000 bullocks carrying grain.

Nomads and Itinerant groups

- Nomads are wandering people. Many of them are pastoralists who roam from one pasture to another with their flocks and herds. Similarly, itinerant groups, such as craftspersons, pedlars and entertainers travel from place to place practising their different occupations. Both nomads and itinerant groups often visit the same places every year.

Changing Society: New Castes and Hierarchies

- As the economy and the needs of society grew, people with new skills were required. Smaller castes, or jatis, emerged within varnas. For example, new castes appeared amongst the Brahmanas.
- Specialised artisans – smiths, carpenters and masons – were also recognised as separate jatis by the Brahmanas. Jatis, rather than Varna, became the basis for organising society.
- Among the Kshatriyas, new Rajput clans became powerful by the eleventh and twelfth centuries. They belonged to different lineages, such as Hunas, Chandelas, Chalukyas and others. They gradually replaced the older rulers, especially in agricultural areas. Here a developed society was emerging and rulers used their wealth to create powerful states.
- On the other hand, many dominant tribes of Punjab, Sind and the North-West Frontier had adopted Islam

quite early. They continued to reject the caste system. The unequal social order, prescribed by orthodox Hinduism, was not widely accepted in these areas. The emergence of states is closely related to social change amongst tribal people. Two examples of this important part of our history are described below.

A Closer Look

The Gonds

- The Gonds lived in a vast forested region called Gondwana – or "country inhabited by Gonds". They practised shifting cultivation.
- The large Gond tribe was further divided into many smaller clans. Each clan had its own raja or rai.
- The Akbar Nama, a history of Akbar's reign, mentions the Gond kingdom of Garha Katanga that had 70,000 villages.
- The administrative system of these kingdoms was becoming centralised. The kingdom was divided into garhs. Each garh was controlled by a particular Gond clan.
- This was further divided into units of 84 villages called chaurasi. The chaurasi was subdivided into barhots which were made up of 12 villages each.
- The Gond chiefs now wished to be recognised as Rajputs. So, Aman Das, the Gond raja of Garha Katanga, assumed the title of Sangram Shah. His son, Dalpat, married princess Durgawati, the daughter of Salbahan, the Chandel Rajput raja of Mahoba.
- Dalpat, however, died early. Rani Durgawati was very capable and started ruling on behalf of her five-year-old son, Bir Narain.
- Under her, the kingdom became even more extensive. In 1565, the Mughal forces under Asaf Khan attacked Garha Katanga. A strong resistance was put up by Rani Durgawati. She was defeated and preferred to die rather than surrender. Her son, too, died fighting soon after.

The Ahoms

- The Ahoms migrated to the Brahmaputra valley from present-day Myanmar in the thirteenth century. They created a new state by suppressing the older political system of the bhuiyans (landlords).
- During the sixteenth century, they annexed the kingdoms of the Chhutiyas (1523) and of Koch-Hajo (1581) and subjugated many other tribes. The Ahoms built a large state and for this they used firearms as early as the 1530s. By the 1660s they could even make high quality gunpowder and cannons.
- The Mughals under Mir Jumla attacked the Ahom kingdom. Despite their brave defence, the Ahoms were defeated. But direct Mughal control over the region could not last long.
- A census of the population was taken. Each village had to send a number of paiks by rotation. People from heavily populated areas were shifted to less populated places.
- Almost all adult males served in the army during war. At other times, they were engaged in building dams, irrigation systems and other public works. The Ahoms also introduced new methods of rice cultivation.
- Ahom society was divided into clans or khels. A khel often controlled several villages. The peasant was given land by his village community. Even the king could not take it away without the community's consent.
- The Ahoms worshipped their own tribal gods. During the first half of the seventeenth century, however, the influence of Brahmanas increased. Temples and Brahmanas were granted land by the king. In the reign of Sib Singh (1714-1744), Hinduism became the predominant religion. But the Ahom kings did not completely give up their traditional beliefs after adopting Hinduism.
- Ahom society was very sophisticated. Poets and scholars were given land grants. Theatre was encouraged. Important works of Sanskrit were translated into the local language. Historical works, known as buranjis, were also written – first in the Ahom language and then in Assamese.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Who prescribed the 'Varna' rules?
(a) Rulers **(b)** Jatis
(c) Brahmanas **(d)** None

2. Tribals obtained their livelihood from:
(a) Hunting **(b)** Agriculture
(c) Herding **(d)** All of these

3. Which among the following tribes was influential in Punjab in 13^{th} and 14^{th} centuries?
(a) Khokhar **(b)** Ahoms
(c) Gonds **(d)** Baiyaras

4. Which of the following tribal groups established a powerful kingdom in Assam?
(a) Khokhar **(b)** Ahoms
(c) Gonds **(d)** Banjaras

5. The important tribe of Bihar is _____.
(a) Mundas **(b)** Ahoms
(c) Khokhar **(d)** Gonds

6. Who used the services of Banjaras in trading?
(a) Alauddin Khilji **(b)** Jahangir
(c) Both of these **(d)** None

7. Who were known as the rathakaras?
(a) Chariot makers **(b)** Soldiers
(c) Brahmanas **(d)** Carpenters

8. Chaurasi was made of how many unites of villages?
(a) 80 **(b)** 84
(c) 14 **(d)** 24

9. A division of Gond kingdoms controlled by a particular clan was termed as
(a) Tanda **(b)** Clan
(c) Garh **(d)** Khel

10. The main occupation of Gond tribes was
    (a) Trade (b) Agriculture
    (c) Goldsmith (d) Blacksmith
11. Who was Bir Narain?
    (a) Ruler of Sind
    (b) Ruler of Punjab
    (c) Son of Rani Durgawati
    (d) None of these
12. The Ahom tribes migrated from
    (a) Iran (b) Arab
    (c) Myanmar (Burma) (d) China
13. Paik are _____.
    (a) The landlords
    (b) The forced labourers
    (c) People wandering from one place to another
    (d) Clan in the Ahom society

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements:
   1. There were less written records about the Tribal people.
   2. Historians of present day use such oral traditions to write tribal histories.
   3. They found in almost every region of the subcontinent-area.

   Which of the above statements is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 1 and 3 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3 only
2. The tribal people obtained their livelihood from:
   (a) Hunter-Gathering (b) Agriculture
   (c) Both (a) and (b) (d) Neither (a) nor (b)
3. Consider the following statements regarding Tribal Societies:
   1. A tribal group controlled land and pastures jointly. It divided these amongst households according to its own rules.
   2. Tribal groups usually lived in forests, hills, deserts and places difficult to reach.
   3. Tribal societies did not follow the social rules and rituals prescribed by the Brahmanas.

   Which of the above statements is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 3 only (b) 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 2 only (d) 1, 2 and 3 only
4. Match the following pairs:

	Tribe	Location
1	Khokar Tribe	Punjab
2	Langahs and Arghuns	Western Himalaya
3	Balochis	North West
4	Chero Tribe	Jharkhand

   Choose the correct pairs:
   (a) 1, 2 and 3 only (b) 1, 3 and 4 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 4 only
5. Consider the following statements regarding the Banjaras and select the wrong statement:
   1. The Banjaras were the most important trader nomads. Their caravan was called Randa.
   2. Banjaras were used by Sultan Alauddin Khilji to transport grain to the city markets.
   3. The Banjaras did transportation of food grain for the Mughal army during military campaigns.

   Choose the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 only
   (c) 1 only (d) 1 and 3 only
6. Gawari, Hathimana and Gair dance are performed by which tribe of Rajasthan?
   (a) Garasia (b) Bhil
   (c) Kanjar (d) Damor
7. Ahom kingdom belonged to which North-Indian states?
   (a) Arunachal Pradesh (b) Manipur
   (c) Mizoram (d) Assam
8. Consider the following statements regarding the Ahoms:
   1. The Ahoms migrated from present-day Myanmar to the Brahmaputra valley in the thirteenth century.
   2. The Ahoms migrated to the Ganga region from present-day Myanmar in the thirteenth century.
   3. The Mughals attacked the Ahom kingdom under Alauddin Khilji. Despite their brave defence, the Ahoms were defeated.

   Which of the above statements is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 3 only (b) 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 2 only (d) 1, 2 and 3 only

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. With reference to India, the terms 'Halbi, Ho and Kui' pertain to **[UPSC]**
   (a) Dance forms of Northwest India
   (b) Musical instruments
   (c) Pre-Historic cave paintings
   (d) Tribal languages

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: In the subcontinent, society was divided according to the rules of varna (prescribed by the Brahmanas).
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Many tribes obtained their livelihood from agriculture. Others were hunter-gatherers or herders. Most often they combined these activities to make full use of the natural resources of the area in which they lived.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Powerful tribes controlled large territories. The Khokhar tribe were very influential in Punjab during the 13th and 14th centuries.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Ahoms tribal group established a powerful kingdom in Assam.
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Santhal, Oraon, Munda, Ho, Kharwar, Kharia and Bhumij tribes constitute about 86% of the total tribal population of the Bihar state.
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Alauddin Khilji and Jahangir used the services of banjaras as trading nomads.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Chariot makers were known as Rathakaras.
In Riga Veda, the Rathakaras are associated with the Brahmana family.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Gond kingdom was divided into garhs. Each garh was controlled by a particular Gond clan. It was further divided into units of 84 villages called chaurasi.
9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Division of Gond kingdoms controlled by a particular clan- Garh.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Their (Gonds) main occupation was agriculture or agricultural labourer. They are also in fishing and hunting for supplementing their income.
11. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Bir Narain was the son of Rani Durgavati and King Dalpat.
12. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: They originated in the Chinese province of Yunnan and began migrating into Indo-China and northern Myanmar (Burma).
13. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Paiks are clan in the Ahom society,
In the Ahom Kingdom, every male was referred to the Paiks who was not a noble, priest, high caste or slave.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: There is very scanty information about given by the contemporary historians and travellers. Tribes-tribal people did not keep written records. Tribal [people preserved rich customs and oral traditions and these were passed down to each new generation. Present day historians use these oral traditions to write tribal histories. They are found in almost every region of the subcontinent-area.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Many societies of the subcontinent did not follow the rituals and social rules prescribed by the Brahmanas. Nor were they divided into numerous unequal classes. Such societies are often called tribes.
Many tribes obtained their livelihood from agriculture. Others were hunter-gatherers or herders.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Many societies in the subcontinent did not follow the rituals and social rules prescribed by the Brahmanas. Nor were they divided into numerous unequal classes. Such societies are often called tribes.
Each tribal member was united by kinship bonds. Many tribes obtained their livelihood from agriculture. Others were hunter-gatherers or herders. Some tribes were nomadic and moved from one place to another. A tribal group controlled land and pastures jointly and divided these amongst households according to its own rules.
They usually lived in forests, hills, deserts and places difficult to reach.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Khokhar tribe – Punjab
The Langahs and Arghuns – Multan and Sind
The Balochis – North-west
Chero Tribe – Bihar and Jharkhand
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Banjaras were the most important trader-nomads. Their caravan was called tanda. Sultan Alauddin Khalji used the Banjaras to transport grain to the city markets. Hence, Statement 1 is not correct.
Emperor Jahangir wrote in his memoirs that the Banjaras carried grain on their bullocks from different areas and sold it in towns.
They transported food grain for the Mughal army during military campaigns.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Bhil tribes of Rajasthan performs Gawari, Hathimana and Gair dances.
Bhils or Bheels are a tribal ethnic group in West India. They speak the Bhil languages, a subgroup of the Western Zone of the Indo-Aryan languages.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Ahom Kingdom, a late medieval kingdom, was established in 1228 in the Brahmaputra Valley in Assam.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Ahoms migrated from present-day Myanmar to the Brahmaputra valley in the thirteenth century. They created a new state by suppressing the older political system of the bhuiyans (landlords).
They annexed the kingdoms of the Chhutiyas (1523) and of Koch-Hajo (1581) and subjugated many other tribes during the sixteenth century.
The Mughals under Mir Jumla attacked the Ahom kingdom. Despite their brave defence, the Ahoms were defeated.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation:
Halbi: Language of the central part of India.
Ho: It is the mother tongue of nearly 10 lakh tribal people living in Odisha and Jharkhand.
Kui: South-Eastern Dravidian language spoken by the Kandhas.

HISTORY CLASS-VII

8 DEVOTIONAL PATHS TO THE DIVINE

The Idea of a Supreme God

- Prior to the emergence of large kingdoms, different groups of people worshipped their own gods and goddesses. With the growth of towns, trade and empires, people were brought together and new ideas began to develop.
- The idea that every living thing passes through countless cycles of birth and rebirth performing good and bad deeds was widely accepted.
- Many learned texts focussed on the belief that social privileges come from birth in a "noble" family or a "high" caste. Uneasy with these ideas, many people turned to the teachings of Buddha or the Jainas, which stressed on the possibility to overcome social differences and break the cycle of rebirth via personal effort.
- Some were also attracted to the idea of a Supreme God, who could deliver humans from such bondage if approached with devotion or bhakti, an idea advocated in the Bhagavad Gita. It grew more popular in the early centuries of the Common Era.
- Supreme deities to be worshipped using elaborate rituals include Shiva, Vishnu and Durga. Also, the gods and goddesses worshipped in various areas came to be identified with Shiva, Vishnu or Durga.
- Local myths and legends became a part of the puranic stories. Methods of worship recommended in the Puranas were introduced into the local cults. Puranas also laid down the possibility for devotees to receive the grace of God regardless of their caste status.

A New Kind of Bhakti in South India – Nayanars and Alvars

- 7^{th} to 9^{th} centuries saw the emergence of new religious movements, led by the Nayanars (saints devoted to Shiva) and Alvars (saints devoted to Vishnu) who came from all castes including "untouchable" like the Pulaiyar and the Panars.
- They drew upon the ideals of love and heroism as found in the Sangam literature (the earliest example of Tamil literature, composed during the early centuries of the Common Era) and blended them with the values of bhakti
- Nayanars and Alvars went from place to place composing exquisite poems in praise of the deities enshrined in the villages they visited and set them to music.
- Between the 10^{th} and 12^{th} centuries, the Chola and Pandya kings built elaborate temples around many of the shrines visited by the saint-poets, strengthening the links between the bhakti tradition and temple worship
- There were 63 Nayanars, who belonged to different caste backgrounds such as potters, "untouchable" workers, peasants, hunters, soldiers, brahmanas and chiefs. The best known among them were Appar, Sambandar, Sundarar and Manikkavasagar. Their songs were compiled in two sets - Tevaram and Tiruvacakam.
- There were 12 Alvars, who came from equally divergent backgrounds, the best known being Periyalvar, his daughter Andal, Tondaradippodi Alvar and Nammalvar. Their songs were compiled in the Divya Prabandham.

Philosophy and Bhakti

- Shankara was one of the most influential philosophers of India; he was born in Kerala in the eighth century. He was an advocate of Advaita or the doctrine of the oneness of the individual soul and the Supreme God which is the Ultimate Reality.
- He considered the world around us to be an illusion or maya and preached renunciation of the world and adoption of the path of knowledge to understand the true nature of Brahman and attain salvation.
- Ramanuja, born in Tamil Nadu in the eleventh century, was deeply influenced by the Alvars. According to him the best means of attaining salvation was through intense devotion to Vishnu. Ramanuja's doctrine greatly inspired the new strand of bhakti which developed in north India subsequently.

Basavanna's Virashaivism

- The Virashaiva movement was initiated by Basavanna and his companions like Allama Prabhu and Akkamahadevi. This movement began in Karnataka in the mid-twelfth century. The Virashaivas argued strongly for the equality of all human beings and against Brahmanical ideas about caste and the treatment of women. They were also against all forms of ritual and idol worship.

The Saints of Maharashtra

- From the thirteenth to the seventeenth centuries Maharashtra saw a great number of saint-poets, whose songs in simple Marathi continue to inspire people.
- The most important among them were Dnyaneshwar (Gyaneshwar), Namdev, Eknath and Tukaram as well as women like Sakhubai and the family of Chokhamela, who belonged to the "untouchable" Mahar caste.
- These saint poets rejected the idea of renunciation and preferred to live with their families, earning their livelihood like any other person, while humbly serving fellow human beings in need. As the famous

Gujarati saint Narsi Mehta said, "They are Vaishnavas who understand the pain of others".

Nathpanthis, Siddhas and Yogis

- Nathpanthis, Siddhacharas and Yogis used to criticise the ritual and other aspects of conventional religion and the social order, using simple and logical arguments.
- They advocated renunciation of the world. To them the path to salvation lay in yogasans, breathing exercises and meditation on the formless ultimate reality and the realisation of oneness with it. Their criticism of conventional religion created the ground for devotional religion to become a popular force in northern India.

Islam and Sufism

- Sufis were Muslim mystics. They rejected outward religiosity and emphasised love and devotion to God and compassion towards all fellow human beings.
- Islam propagated strict monotheism or submission to one God. In the eighth and ninth centuries, religious scholars developed different aspects of the Holy Law (Shariat) and theology of Islam, like the saint-poets, the Sufis too composed poems expressing their feelings and a rich literature in prose, including anecdotes and fables, developed around them. Among the great Sufis of Central Asia were Ghazzali, Rumi and Sadi.
- The Nathpanthis, Siddhas and Yogis and the Sufis too believed that the heart can be trained to look at the world in a different way. They developed elaborate methods of training using zikr (chanting of a name or sacred formula), contemplation, sama (singing), raqs (dancing), discussion of parables, breath control, etc. under the guidance of a master or pir.
- Thus emerged the silsilas, a spiritual genealogy of Sufi teachers, each following a slightly different method (tariqa) of instruction and ritual practice
- In Kashmir the Rishi order of Sufism flourished in the 15^{th} and 16^{th} centuries. This order was established by Sheikh Noor-ud-Din Wali also known as Nund Rishi and had a deep impact on the life of the people in Kashmir. A number of shrines dedicated to Rishi saints can be found in many parts of Kashmir.
- A large number of Sufis from Central Asia settled in Hindustan from the eleventh century onwards. This process was strengthened with the establishment of the Delhi Sultanate, when several major Sufi centres developed all over the subcontinent. The Chishti silsila was among the most influential orders.
- It had a long line of teachers like Khwaja Moinuddin Chishti of Ajmer, Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki of Delhi, Baba Farid of Punjab, Khwaja Nizamuddin Auliya of Delhi and Bandanawaz Gisudaraz of Gulbarga.
- The Sufi masters held their assemblies in their khanqahs or hospices. They discussed spiritual matters, sought the blessings of the saints in solving their worldly problems, or simply attended the music and dance sessions.
- Often people attributed Sufi masters with miraculous powers that could relieve others of their illnesses and troubles. The tomb or dargah of a Sufi saint became a place of pilgrimage to which thousands of people of all faiths thronged.

New Religious Developments in North India

- The period after the thirteenth century saw a new wave of the bhakti movement in north India. This was an age when Islam, Brahmanical Hinduism, Sufism, various strands of bhakti and the Nathpanths, Siddhas and Yogis influenced one another.
- Some of them like Kabir and Baba Guru Nanak rejected all orthodox religions. Others like Tulsidas and Surdas accepted existing beliefs and practices but wanted to make these accessible to all. Tulsidas conceived of God in the form of Rama.
- Tulsidas's composition, the Ramacharitamanas, written in Awadhi (a language used in eastern Uttar Pradesh), is important both as an expression of his devotion and as a literary work. Surdas was an ardent devotee of Krishna. His compositions, compiled in the Sursagara, Surasaravali and Sahitya Lahari, express his devotion.
- Also contemporary was Shankaradeva of Assam (late fifteenth century) who emphasised devotion to Vishnu and composed poems and plays in Assamese. He began the practice of setting up namghars or houses of recitation and prayer, a practice that continues to date.
- This tradition also included saints like Dadu Dayal, Ravidas and Mirabai. Mirabai was a Rajput princess married into the royal family of Mewar in the sixteenth century. She was devoted to Krishna and composed innumerable bhajans expressing her intense devotion. Her songs also openly challenged the norms of the "upper" castes and became popular with the masses in Rajasthan and Gujarat.
- A unique feature of most of the saints is that their works were composed in regional languages and could be sung. They became immensely popular and were handed down orally from generation to generation. Usually the poorest, most deprived communities and women transmitted these songs, often adding their own experiences.

A Closer Look: Kabir

- Kabir, who probably lived in the fifteenth-sixteenth centuries, was one of the most influential saints. He was brought up in a family of Muslim julahas or weavers settled in or near the city of Benares (Varanasi).
- We get to know of his ideas from a vast collection of verses called sakhis and pads said to have been composed by him and sung by wandering bhajan singers. Some of these were later collected and preserved in the Guru Granth Sahib, Panch Vani and Bijak.
- His teachings openly ridiculed all forms of external worship of both Brahmanical Hinduism and Islam, the pre-eminence of the priestly classes and the caste system. The language of his poetry was a form of spoken Hindi widely understood by ordinary people. He also sometimes used cryptic language, which is difficult to follow.
- Kabir believed in a formless Supreme God and preached that the only path to salvation was through bhakti or devotion. Kabir drew his followers from among both Hindus and Muslims.

A Closer Look: Baba Guru Nanak

- Baba Guru Nanak born at Talwandi (Nankana Sahib in Pakistan); he travelled widely before establishing a centre at Kartarpur (Dera Baba Nanak on the river Ravi). Irrespective of their former creed, caste or gender, his followers ate together in the common kitchen (langar). The sacred space thus created by Baba Guru Nanak was known as dharmsal. It is now known as Gurdwara.
- Before his death in 1539, Baba Guru Nanak appointed one of his followers as his successor. His name was Lehna but he came to be known as Guru Angad, signifying that he was a part of Baba Guru Nanak himself.
- Guru Angad compiled the compositions of Baba Guru Nanak, to which he added his own in a new script known as Gurmukhi. The three successors of Guru Angad also wrote under the name of "Nanak" and all of their compositions were compiled by Guru Arjan in 1604.
- To this compilation were added the writings of other figures like Shaikh Farid, Sant Kabir, Bhagat Namdev and Guru Tegh Bahadur. In 1706, this compilation was authenticated by Guru Tegh Bahadur's son and successor, Guru Gobind Singh. It is now known as Guru Granth Sahib, the holy scripture of the Sikhs.
- The number of Baba Guru Nanak's followers increased through the sixteenth century under his successors. They belonged to a number of castes, but traders, agriculturists, artisans and craftsmen predominated.
- By the beginning of the seventeenth century the town of Ramdaspur (Amritsar) had developed around the central Gurdwara called Harmandar Sahib (Golden Temple). It was virtually self-governing and modern historians refer to the early-seventeenth-century Sikh community as 'a state within the state'.
- The Mughal emperor Jahangir looked upon them as a potential threat and he ordered the execution of Guru Arjan in 1606. The Sikh movement began to get politicised in the seventeenth century, a development which culminated in the institution of the Khalsa by Guru Gobind Singh in 1699. The community of the Sikhs, called the Khalsa Panth, became a political entity.
- Baba Guru Nanak's teachings are now remembered as nam-japna, kirt-karna and vand-chhakna, which also underline the importance of right belief and worship, honest living and helping others.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which devotional path evolved since the 8^{th} century?
(a) Bhakti **(b)** Sufism
(c) None of these **(d)** Both of these

2. Which was NOT the supreme deity of Hindu worshipped during Bhakti movement?
(a) Shiva **(b)** Vishnu
(c) Ganesha **(d)** Durga

3. Religious biographies are called _____
(a) Autobiography **(b)** Geography
(c) Photography **(d)** Hagiography

4. Ramanuja was born in which state of India?
(a) Kerala **(b)** Tamil Nadu
(c) Andhra Pradesh **(d)** None of these

5. Allama Prabhu was the companion of:
(a) Ramanuja **(b)** Basavanna
(c) Shankara **(d)** Kabir

6. Vitthala is a form of _____
(a) Shiva **(b)** Vishnu
(c) Krishna **(d)** Ganesha

7. Who rewrote the Gita in Marathi?
(a) Saint Janeshwara **(b)** Chaitanya
(c) Basavanna **(d)** Virashaiva

8. Nathpanthis, Siddas and Yogis made devotional religion popular in:
(a) North **(b)** South
(c) East **(d)** West

9. Sufis were _____ mystics.
(a) Hindu **(b)** Boddh
(c) Muslim **(d)** Christian

10. The Sufi master held their assemblies in which of the following?
(a) Temple **(b)** Courtyards
(c) Khanqahs **(d)** None of these

11. House of rest for travellers kept by a religious order is
(a) Fable **(b)** Sama
(c) Raqas **(d)** Hospice

12. As per Islam, the day of judgement before the Allah is called _____
(a) Quran **(b)** Haz
(c) Qayamat **(d)** Jannat

13. The disciples in Sufi system were called _____
(a) Shishya **(b)** Nayanars
(c) Alvars **(d)** Murids

14. Shariat is:
(a) Single minded devotion to one God
(b) Month of fasting for Muslims
(c) The disciples in Sufi system
(d) Holy law made by Muslim scholars

15. The Ramacharitamanas is written in which language?
(a) Urdu **(b)** Hindi
(c) Awadhi **(d)** Brij

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. The teachings of Buddha and Jains were stressed on:
1. Possibility to overcome social differences.
2. Break the cycle of rebirth via personal effort.
Which of the statements is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

2. Select the incorrect statement/s:
1. Nayanars saints were devoted to Vishnu
2. Alvar saints were devoted to Shiva
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

3. Consider the following statements:
1. Shankara was born in Assam in the eighth century and he was one of the most influential philosophers of India.
2. He was an advocate of Advaita philosophy or the doctrine of the oneness of the individual soul and the Supreme God which is the Ultimate Reality.
3. The world around us, according to Shankara, is to be an illusion or maya and he preached renunciation of the world.
Which of the give statement (s) are true?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

4. Which of the given saint (s) not belonged to Maharashtra?
1. Dnyaneshwar **2.** Namdev
3. Eknath **4.** Ramanuja
Choose the correct answer:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 4 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 3 and 4 only

5. Consider the following statements regarding Nathpanthis, Siddhacharas and Yogis:
1. Nathpanthis, Siddhacharas and Yogis used to advocate the traditional ritual and other aspects of conventional religion.
2. The path to salvation, according to them, lay in yogasans, breathing exercises and meditation on the formless ultimate reality and the realisation of oneness with it.
Select the correct option:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

6. With respect to Islam and Sufism, consider the following statements:
1. They rejected outward religiosity and emphasised love and devotion to God and compassion towards all fellow human beings.
2. Islam propagated strict monotheism or submission to one God.
3. Among the great Sufis of Central Asia were Ghazzali, Rumi and Sadi.
Which of the given statement is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

7. Consider the following and choose the correct pair(s):

	Sufi	Place
1.	Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti	Ajmer
2.	Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki	Delhi
3.	Khwaja Nizamuddin Auliya	Punjab
4.	Baba Farid	Delhi

(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 4 only
(c) 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2 , 3 and 4

8. Consider the following statements:
1. All orthodox religions were rejected by Kabir and Baba Guru Nanak.
2. Surdas was an ardent devotee of Rama.
3. Shankaradeva of Assam who emphasised devotion to Vishnu and composed poems and plays in Assamese.
Which of the given statement/s are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. With reference to the religious history of medieval India, the Sufi mystics were known to pursue which of the following practices? **[UPSC]**
1. Meditation and control of breath
2. Severe ascetic exercises in a lonely place
3. Recitation of holy songs to arouse a state of ecstasy in their audience
Select the correct answer using the codes given below:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

2. Consider the following Bhakti Saints: **[UPSC]**
1. Dadu Dayal **2.** Guru Nanak
3. Tyagaraja
Who among the above was/were preaching when the Lodi dynasty fell and Babur took over?
(a) 1 and 3 **(b)** 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 **(d)** 1 and 2

3. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
1. 'Bijak' is a composition of the teachings of Saint Dadu Dayal.
2. The Philosophy of Pushti Marg was propounded by Madhvacharya.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

4. Ibadat Khana at Fatehpur Sikri was: **[UPSC]**
(a) The mosque for the use of Royal Family
(b) Akbar's private chamber prayer
(c) The hall in which Akbar held discussions with scholars of various religions.
(d) The room in which the nobles belonging to different religions gathered to discuss religious affairs.

5. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
1. Saint Nimbarka was a contemporary of Akbar.
2. Saint Kabir was greatly influenced by Shaikh Ahmad Sirhindi.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The devotional paths evolved since the 8th century were Bhakti and Sufism.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: During the bhakti movement, Ganesha was not the supreme deity of Hindu worship.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Religious biographies are called hagiographies.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Ramanuja was born in a village called Sriperumbudur (present-day Tamil Nadu) under the Chola Empire.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Allamaprabhu was a contemporary of the other famous Lingayat devotee-poets (sharanas), Basavanna and Akka Mahadevi.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: "Vitthala" was considered as a form of lord. "Vitthala" is a form of god Vishnu.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The best & the most accurate Marathi version of Bhagavad Gita is the Jnaneshwari by Saint Janeshwara. He was born in 1275 and wrote the Jnaneshwari in 1290 at about 16 years of age.
8. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Devotional religion was popularised in North by Nathpanthis, Siddas and Yogis.
9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Sufis were Muslim mystics.
Sufis are related to Islam. Sufism was formed to find the truth and knowledge of God.
10. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Khanqahs are hospices were the Sufi masters held their assemblies.
11. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Hospice was a house of shelter or rest for pilgrims, strangers, etc., especially one kept by a religious order.
12. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In Islam, the of judgement before the Allah is called Qayamat.
13. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The disciples in Sufi system were called murids.
14. **Option (d is correct.**
Explanation: Sharia is Islam's legal system, derived from the Quran, Islam's holy book, as well as the Sunnah and Hadith - the deeds and sayings of the Prophet Muhammad.
15. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Ramacharitamanas was written in the Awadhi language.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Uneasy with these ideas, that social privileges come from birth in a "noble" family or a "high" caste many people turned to the teachings of Buddha or the Jainas, which stressed on the possibility to overcome social differences and break the cycle of rebirth via personal effort.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The emergence of new religious movements, in the 7th to 9th centuries, was led by the Nayanars (saints devoted to Shiva) and Alvars (saints devoted to Vishnu). These saints came from all castes including "untouchable" like the Pulaiyar and the Panars.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Shankara, born in Kerala in the eighth century was one of the most influential philosophers of India. Hence, statement one is not correct.
He was an advocate of Advaita or the doctrine of the oneness of the individual soul and the Supreme God which is the Ultimate Reality.
According to him, the world around us to be an illusion or maya and he preached renunciation of the world and adoption of the path of knowledge to understand the true nature of Brahman and attain salvation.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Ramanuja was born in Tamil Nadu in the eleventh century. He was deeply influenced by the Alvars.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The ritual and other aspects of conventional religion and the social order were criticised by Nathpanthis, Siddhacharas and Yogis, using simple, logical arguments. Hence, statement one is correct.
They advocated renunciation of the world. To them the path to salvation lay in yogasans, breathing exercises and meditation on the formless ultimate reality and the realisation of oneness with it.
6. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Sufis were Muslim mystics. They rejected outward religiosity and emphasised love and devotion to God and compassion towards all fellow human beings.
Islam propagated strict monotheism or submission to one God. In the eighth and ninth centuries religious scholars developed different aspects of the Holy Law (Shariat) and theology of Islam, like the saint-

poets, the Sufis too composed poems expressing their feelings and a rich literature in prose, including anecdotes and fables, developed around them.

Among the great Sufis of Central Asia were Ghazzali, Rumi and Sadi.

7. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: From the eleventh century onwards, large number of Sufis from Central Asia settled in Hindustan.

These were Khwaja Moinuddin Chishti of Ajmer, Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki of Delhi, Baba Farid of Punjab, Khwaja Nizamuddin Auliya of Delhi and Bandanawaz Gisudaraz of Gulbarga.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Kabir and Baba Guru Nanak rejected all orthodox religions. Others like Tulsidas and Surdas accepted existing beliefs and practices but wanted to make these accessible to all.

Surdas was an ardent devotee of Krishna. His compositions, compiled in the Sursagara, Surasaravali and Sahitya Lahari, express his devotion. Hence, statement 2 is not correct.

Shankaradeva of Assam who emphasised devotion to Vishnu and composed poems and plays in Assamese.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Sufism is also known as Tasawwuf. It is a mystic body of religious practice within Islam. It is characterized by a focus on Islamic spirituality, ritualism, asceticism and esotericism.

The Sufi practices include:

1. Emphasis on love and devotion towards God.
2. Music and dance devotee expressions.
3. Meditation and control of breath practices.
4. The practice of Sama - a musical recital to induce a mystical state of ecstasy in their audience.
5. Practising spiritual exercises in a lonely place.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Dadu Dayal Ji, a poet-sant from Gujarat, India, spoke against formalism and priestcraft.

Guru Nanak, also referred to as Baba Nanak, was the founder of Sikhism and is the first of the ten Sikh Gurus.

Tyagaraja, or Tyagayya was a composer and vocalist of Carnatic music.

Nanak was travelling to different parts of India and preaching Sikhism when Babur took over and established the Mughal dynasty.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Bijak (a text in modern Hindi) is the best known of the compilations of the compositions of Kabir and as such is the holy scripture for followers of the Kabirpanthi religion. The term Bijak is derived from Bijak, meaning a document containing sacred texts. Hence, statement one is not correct.

Pushtimarg is a sub tradition of Rudra Sampradaya (Vaishnavism). It is also known as Pushtimarg sampradaya or Vallabha sampradaya. It was founded by Vallabhacharya (1479–1531) in the early 16^{th} century and it is focused on Krishna. Hence, statement two is not correct.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Ibadat Khana, built in 1575 CE by the Mughal Emperor Akbar at Fatehpur Sikri, was a meeting house to gather spiritual leaders of different religious grounds so as to conduct a discussion on the teachings of the respective religious leaders.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Nimbarkacharya, was a Hindu philosopher, theologian and the chief proponent of the theology of Dvaitadvaita or dualistic–non-dualistic. He is also known as Nimbarka, Nimbaditya or Niyamananda. He belongs to the 13^{th} or 14^{th} century while Akbar was in the 16^{th} century. He was not a contemporary of Akbar.

HISTORY CLASS-VII

9 THE MAKING OF REGIONAL CULTURES

Introduction

- When we refer to a person as a Tamil or an Oriya, this usually means that he or she speaks Tamil or Oriya and lives in Tamil Nadu or Orissa. We also tend to associate each region with distinctive kinds of food, clothes, poetry, dance, music and painting. Sometimes we take these identities for granted and assume that they have existed from time immemorial. However, the frontiers separating regions have evolved over time (and in fact are still changing).

The Cheras and the Development of Malayalam

- The Chera kingdom of Mahodayapuram was established in the ninth century in the south-western part of the peninsula, part of present-day Kerala. It is likely that Malayalam was spoken in this area. The rulers introduced the Malayalam language and script in their inscriptions.
- The Cheras also drew upon Sanskritic traditions. The temple theatre of Kerala, which is traced to this period, borrowed stories from the Sanskrit epics. The first literary works in Malayalam, dated to about the twelfth century, are directly indebted to Sanskrit.
- Interestingly enough, a fourteenth-century text, the Lilatilakam, dealing with grammar and poetics, was composed in Manipravalam – literally, "diamonds and corals" referring to the two languages, Sanskrit and the regional language.

Rulers and Religious Traditions: The Jagannatha Cult

- In the twelfth century, one of the most important rulers of the Ganga dynasty, Anantavarman, decided to erect a temple for Purushottama Jagannatha at Puri. As the temple gained in importance as a centre of pilgrimage, its authority in social and political matters also increased.
- All of those who conquered Orissa, such as the Mughals, the Marathas and the English East India Company, attempted to gain control over the temple. They felt that this would make their rule acceptable to the local people.

The Rajputs and Traditions of Heroism

- In the nineteenth century, the region that constitutes most of present-day Rajasthan was called Rajputana by the British. The Rajputs are often recognised as contributing to the distinctive culture of Rajasthan.
- These cultural traditions were closely linked with the ideals and aspirations of rulers. From about the eighth century, most of the present-day state of Rajasthan was ruled by various Rajput families. Prithviraj was one such ruler. These rulers cherished the ideal of the hero who fought valiantly, often choosing death on the battlefield rather than face defeat.
- Ordinary people were attracted by the stories of Rajputs – which often depicted dramatic situations and a range of strong emotions – loyalty, friendship, love, valour, anger, etc.
- Sometimes women were mentioned in these stories as the "cause" for conflicts, as men fought with one another to either "win" or "protect" women. Women are also depicted as following their heroic husbands in both life and death – there are stories about the practice of sati or the immolation of widows on the funeral pyre of their husbands.

Beyond Regional Frontiers: The Story of Kathak

- Kathak, now associated with several parts of north India. The term kathak is derived from katha, a word used in Sanskrit and other languages for story. The kathaks were originally a caste of story-tellers in temples of north India, who embellished their performances with gestures and songs.
- Kathak began evolving into a distinct mode of dance in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries with the spread of the bhakti movement. The legends of Radha-Krishna were enacted in folk plays called rasa lila, which combined folk dance with the basic gestures of the kathak story-tellers.
- Under the Mughal emperors and their nobles, Kathak was performed in the court, where it acquired its present features and developed into a form of dance with a distinctive style. Under the patronage of Wajid Ali Shah, the last Nawab of Awadh, it grew into a major art form.

Painting for Patrons: The Tradition of Miniatures

- Miniatures (as their very name suggests) are small-sized paintings, generally done in water colour on cloth or paper. The earliest miniatures were on palm leaves or wood. Some of the most beautiful of these, found in western India, were used to illustrate Jaina texts.
- The Mughal emperors Akbar, Jahangir and Shah Jahan patronised highly skilled painters who primarily illustrated manuscripts containing historical accounts and poetry. These were generally painted in brilliant colours and portrayed court scenes, scenes of battle or hunting and other aspects of social life.
- Another region that attracted miniature paintings was the Himalayan foothills around the modern-day state of Himachal Pradesh. By the late seventeenth century this region had developed a bold and intense style of miniature painting called Basohli. The most popular text to be painted here was Bhanudatta's Rasamanjari.
- By the mid-eighteenth century the Kangra artists developed a style which breathed a new spirit into miniature painting. The source of inspiration was the Vaishnavite traditions. Soft colours including cool blues and greens and a lyrical treatment of themes distinguished Kangra painting.

- Remember that ordinary women and men painted as well – on pots, walls, floors, cloth – works of art that have occasionally survived, unlike the miniatures that were carefully preserved in palaces for centuries.

A Closer Look: Bengal

- The people in Bengal always spoke Bengali. However, what is interesting is that while Bengali is now recognised as a language derived from Sanskrit, early Sanskrit texts suggest that the people of Bengal did not speak Sanskritic languages.
- During the fourth century the Gupta rulers established political control over north Bengal and began to settle Brahmanas in this area. Thus, the linguistic and cultural influence from the mid-Ganga valley became stronger. In the seventh century, the Chinese traveller Xuan Zang observed that languages related to Sanskrit were in use all over Bengal.
- From the eighth century, Bengal became the centre of a regional kingdom under the Palas. Between the fourteenth and sixteenth centuries, Bengal was ruled by Sultans who were independent of the rulers in Delhi. In 1586, when Akbar conquered Bengal, it formed the nucleus of the Bengal suba. While Persian was the language of administration, Bengali developed as a regional language.
- In fact by the fifteenth century the Bengali group of dialects came to be united by a common literary language based on the spoken language of the western part of the region, now known as West Bengal.
- Early Bengali literature may be divided into two categories – One indebted to Sanskrit and the other independent of it.
  1. The first includes translations of the Sanskrit epics, the Mangalakavyas (literally auspicious poems, dealing with local deities) and bhakti literature such as the biographies of Chaitanyadeva, the leader of the Vaishnava bhakti movement.
  2. The second includes Nath literature such as the songs of Maynamati and Gopichandra, stories concerning the worship of Dharma Thakur and fairy tales, folk tales and ballads.

Pirs and Temples

- From the sixteenth century, people began to migrate in large numbers from the less fertile western Bengal to the forested and marshy areas of south-eastern Bengal. As they moved eastwards, they cleared forests and brought the land under rice cultivation. Gradually, local communities of fisherfolk and shifting cultivators, often tribals, merged with the new communities of peasants.
- This coincided with the establishment of Mughal control over Bengal with their capital in the heart of the eastern delta at Dhaka. Officials and functionaries received land and often set up mosques that served as centres for religious transformation in these areas.
- The community leaders who also functioned as teachers and adjudicators and were sometimes ascribed with supernatural powers. People referred to them with affection and respect as pirs.
- This term included saints or sufis and other religious personalities, daring colonisers and deified soldiers, various Hindu and Buddhist deities and even animistic spirits. The cult of pirs became very popular and their shrines can be found everywhere in Bengal.

Fish as Food

- Traditional food habits are generally based on locally available items of food. Bengal is a riverine plain which produces plenty of rice and fish. Understandably, these two items figure prominently in the menu of even poor Bengalis. Fishing has always been an important occupation and Bengali literature contains several references to fish.
- Brahmanas were not allowed to eat non vegetarian food, but the popularity of fish in the local diet made the Brahmanical authorities relax this prohibition for the Bengal Brahmanas. The Brihaddharma Purana, a thirteenth-century Sanskrit text from Bengal, permitted the local Brahmanas to eat certain varieties of fish.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. With what do we associate each region?
(a) Food **(b)** Language
(c) Clothing **(d)** All of these

2. Which of the following language spoken in the Chera kingdom of Mahodayapuram?
(a) Sanskrit **(b)** Urdu
(c) Malayalam **(d)** Persian

3. Which fourteenth-century text of Sanskrit deal with grammar and poetry?
(a) Lilatilakam **(b)** Miniature
(c) Basohil **(d)** Dialect

4. Chera kingdom was established in _____
(a) 9^{th} century **(b)** 10^{th} century
(c) 11^{th} century **(d)** 12^{th} century

5. The temple of Jagannatha at Puri was tried to be controlled by conquerors because
(a) They were very devoted to God Jagannatha.
(b) The temple was very beautiful.
(c) The temple had huge wealth.
(d) None of the above

6. Who proclaimed himself as deputy of God?
(a) Shankara
(b) Ramanuja
(c) King Anangabhima
(d) Ruler of Mahodayapuram

7. The word Rajputana meant _____
(a) The Rajput tradition
(b) The region of present day Rajasthan
(c) Group of Rajputs
(d) None of the above

8. Which type of emotions were there in Rajputs?
(a) Bravery **(b)** Valour
(c) Loyalty **(d)** All of these

9. The major patrons of Kathak were
(a) Mongols **(b)** Pandayan
(c) Mughals **(d)** Rajput

10. Basohli was a:
(a) Small sized paintings.
(b) Bold and intense style of miniature paintings.

(c) Old and very distinctive.
(d) Traditions.

11. Bengali language was derived from _____
(a) Hindi (b) Sanskrit
(c) Persian (d) Urdu

12. Which of the following is the language of 13th century Brihaddharma Purana of Bengal?
(a) Persian (b) Hindi
(c) Urdu (d) Sanskrit

13. What type of traveller was Xuan Zang?
(a) Japanese (b) Nepali
(c) Chinese (d) Burmese

14. The capital of Bengal under the Mughal control was _____
(a) Dhaka (b) Murshidabad
(c) Calcutta (d) Awadh

15. Which caste was permitted to eat certain variety of fish by Brihaddharma Purana?
(a) Kshatriyas (b) Brahamanas
(c) Both (a) and (b) (d) None of these

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following clans of Rajputs is associated with the Khajuraho temple?
(a) Parmara (b) Chandela
(c) Baghel (d) Tomar

2. The Kamakhya Temple is located in _____.
(a) Agartala (b) Guwahati
(c) Kohima (d) Imphal

3. Consider the following statements:
1. The Chera kingdom of Mahodayapuram, in the ninth century, was established in the south-western part of the peninsula, part of present-day Kerala.
2. The first literary works in Malayalam are directly indebted to Sanskrit.

Which among the statement is/are correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

4. Jagannath Rath Yatra festival is dedicated to:
(a) Lord Krishna (b) Goddess Subhadra
(c) Lord Balabhadra (d) All the above

5. Consider the following statements regarding the Rajputs:
1. The present-day Rajasthan was called Rajputana by the British. They often contributed to the distinctive culture of Rajasthan.
2. Most of the present-day state of Rajasthan was ruled by various Rajput families.
3. Rajput rulers cherished the ideal of the hero who fought valiantly, often choosing death over defeat on the battlefield.

Which among the statement(s) is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) All of the above

6. Which is a popular dance form of North India?
(a) Kathak (b) Kuchipudi
(c) Koli (d) Kolka

7. Mughal miniature painting reached its peak during the rule of _____.
(a) Jahangir (b) Aurangzeb
(c) Shah Jahan (d) Akbar

8. Find the incorrect statement on the Mughal school of painting?
(a) It reached its zenith during the reign of Jahangir.
(b) The two most celebrated works accomplished during the times of Akbar was Tuti-Nama and Hamza Nama.
(c) The Mughal school of painting declined during the reign of Akbar.
(d) None of the above

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Kalamkari painting refers to: **[UPSC]**
(a) A hand-painted cotton textile in South India.
(b) A handmade drawing on bamboo handicrafts in North-east India.
(c) A block-painted woollen cloth in the Western Himalayan region of India.
(d) A hand-painted decorative silk cloth in North-Western India.

2. Which one of the following dance forms is Rukmini Devi Arundale associated with? **[SSC]**
(a) Bharatnatyam (b) Kuchipudi
(c) Kathak (d) Kathakali

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: We associate each region with distinctive kinds of food, clothes, poetry, dance, music and painting.

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Chera kingdom of Mahodayapuram was established in the ninth century in the south-western part of the peninsula. Malayalam language and script were introduced by the rulers in their inscriptions.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Lilatilakam is a 14th century Sanskrit-language treatise on the grammar and poetics of the Manipravalam language (a precursor of the modern Malayalam).

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Chera kingdom of Mahodayapuram was established in the ninth century.

5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The temple of Jagannatha at Puri gained importance and it was tried to be controlled by conquerors because they felt that this would make their rule acceptable to the local people.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Anangabhima III proclaimed himself as the deputy of God.
He was a devotee of Lord Jagannatha.
He ruled Odisha from 1211 AD to 1238 AD.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The meaning of Rajputana is "Land of the Rajputs". It was a region in India that included mainly the present-day Indian state of Rajasthan. It also included parts of Madhya Pradesh and Gujarat and some adjoining areas of Sindh in modern-day southern Pakistan as well.
8. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Rajputs had emotions including loyalty, friendship, love, valour and anger.
9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The mughals were the major patrons of Kathak.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Basholi was a bold and intense style of miniature paintings.
11. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Bengali language was derived from the Sanskrit language. It is of the Indo-Aryan family. It is similar to the Prakrit language.
12. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Sanskrit, was the language of the Brihaddharma Purana. It is thirteenth-century Sanskrit text from Bengal.
13. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Xuan Zang, who travelled to India in the seventh century, was a Buddhist monk, scholar, traveller and translator belonging to China.
14. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Dhaka, from 1610, served as the Mughal capital of Bengal for 75 years.
15. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Brihaddharma Purana, a thirteenth-century Sanskrit text from Bengal, permitted the local Brahmanas to eat certain varieties of fish.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Chandela dynasty built temples at Khajuraho between 950 and 1050. They are of two different religions – Hinduism and Jainism and strike a perfect balance between architecture and sculpture.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Kamakhya Temple, dedicated to the mother goddess Kamakhya, is a Hindu temple at Nilachal hills in Guwahati, Assam.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Chera kingdom of Mahodayapuram was established in the ninth century in the south-western part of the peninsula, part of present-day Kerala.
The first literary works in Malayalam, dated to about the twelfth century, are directly indebted to Sanskrit.
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Jagannath Rath Yatra festival is dedicated to three gods - Lord Jagannath (Lord Krishna), Goddess Subhadra (his sister) and Lord Balabhadra or Balaram (his elder brother).
5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: In the nineteenth century, most of present-day Rajasthan was called Rajputana by the British. The Rajputs often contributed to the distinctive culture of Rajasthan.
Most of the present-day state of Rajasthan was ruled by various Rajput families. These rulers cherished the ideal of the hero who fought valiantly, often choosing death over defeat.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Kathak is associated with several parts of north India. The term kathak is derived from a Sanskrit word katha means story. The kathaks were originally a caste of story-tellers in temples of north India, who embellished their performances with gestures and songs.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Miniatures are small-sized paintings, generally done in water colour on cloth or paper. Akbar, Jahangir and Shah Jahan patronised highly skilled painters.
It reached its peak during the rule of Jahangir.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Mughal school of painting declined during the reign of Aurangzeb.
Aurangzeb found them unreligious, so he ordered the white-wash of paintings.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Kalamkari is a type of hand-painted or block-printed cotton textile. It is produced in Isfahan, Iran and in the Indian state of Andhra Pradesh. Only natural dyes are used in Kalamkari, which involves twenty-three steps.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Rukmini Devi Arundale was associated with the classical dance form of Bharatnatyam. She was the first woman in Indian history to be nominated as a member to the Rajya Sabha, the upper house of the Parliament of India.

HISTORY CLASS-VII

10 EIGHTEENTH-CENTURY POLITICAL FORMATIONS

Introduction

- By 1765, notice how another power, the British, had successfully grabbed major chunks of territory in eastern India. The political conditions in eighteenth-century India changed quite dramatically and within a relatively short span of time.

The Crisis of the Empire and the Later Mughals

- Emperor Aurangzeb had depleted the military and financial resources of his empire by fighting a long war in the Deccan. Under his successors, the efficiency of the imperial administration broke down. It became increasingly difficult for the later Mughal emperors to keep a check on their powerful mansabdars.
- Noble appointed governors (subadars) often controlled the offices of revenue and military administration (diwani and faujdari) as well. This gave them extraordinary political, economic and military powers over vast regions of the Mughal Empire. As the governors consolidated their control over the provinces, the periodic remission of revenue to the capital declined.
- Peasant and zamindari rebellions in many parts of northern and western India added to these problems. These revolts were sometimes caused by the pressures of mounting taxes.
- The Mughal emperors after Aurangzeb were unable to arrest the gradual shifting of political and economic authority into the hands of provincial governors, local chieftains and other groups.
- In the midst of this economic and political crisis, the ruler of Iran, Nadir Shah, sacked and plundered the city of Delhi in 1739 and took away immense amounts of wealth. This invasion was followed by a series of plundering raids by the Afghan ruler Ahmad Shah Abdali, who invaded north India five times between 1748 and 1761.
- There were, two major groups or factions, the Iranis and Turanis (nobles of Turkish descent), for a long time, the later Mughal emperors were puppets in the hands of either one or the other of these two powerful groups.

Emergence of New States

- With the decline in the authority of the Mughal emperors, the governors of large provinces, subadars and the great zamindars consolidated their authority in different parts of the subcontinent. Through the eighteenth century, the Mughal Empire gradually fragmented into a number of independent, regional states.
- Broadly speaking the states of the eighteenth century can be divided into three overlapping groups:
  1. States that were old Mughal provinces: Awadh, Bengal and Hyderabad.
  2. States that had enjoyed considerable independence under the Mughals as watan jagirs.
  3. The last group included states under the control of Marathas, Sikhs and others like the Jats.

The Old Mughal Provinces

- Awadh, Bengal and Hyderabad, all three states were founded by members of the high Mughal nobility who had been governors of large provinces – Saadat Khan (Awadh), Murshid Quli Khan (Bengal) and Asaf Jah (Hyderabad). All three had occupied high mansabdari positions and enjoyed the trust and confidence of the emperors.

Hyderabad

- Nizam-ul-Mulk, Asaf Jah, the founder of Hyderabad state (1724-1748), was one of the most powerful members at the court of the Mughal Emperor Farrukhsiyar. He was entrusted first with the governorship of Awadh and later given charge of the Deccan.
- Asaf Jah brought skilled soldiers and administrators from northern India who welcomed the new opportunities in the south. He appointed mansabdars and granted jagirs. Although he was still a servant of the Mughal emperor, he ruled quite independently without seeking any direction from Delhi or facing any interference.
- The state of Hyderabad was constantly engaged in a struggle against the Marathas to the west and with independent Telugu warrior chiefs (nayakas) of the plateau. The ambitions of the Nizam-ul-Mulk, Asaf Jah to control the rich textile-producing areas of the Coromandel coast in the east were checked by the British who were becoming increasingly powerful in that region.

Awadh

- Burhan-ul-Mulk Saadat Khan was appointed subadar of Awadh in 1722 and founded a state which was one

of the most important to emerge out of the break-up of the Mughal Empire. Awadh was a prosperous region, controlling the rich alluvial Ganga plain and the main trade route between north India and Bengal.

- Burhan-ul-Mulk tried to decrease Mughal influence in the Awadh region by reducing the number of office holders (jagirdars) appointed by the Mughals. He reduced the size of jagirs and appointed his own loyal servants to vacant positions. He seized a number of Rajput zamindaris and the agriculturally fertile lands of the Afghans of Rohilkhand.

Bengal

- Bengal gradually broke away from Mughal control under Murshid Quli Khan who was appointed as the naib, deputy to the governor of the province. Although never a formal subadar, Murshid Quli Khan very quickly seized all the power that went with that office. In an effort to reduce Mughal influence in Bengal he transferred all Mughal jagirdars to Orissa and ordered a major reassessment of the revenues of Bengal.
- Revenue was collected in cash with great strictness from all zamindars. As a result, many zamindars had to borrow money from bankers and moneylenders. Those unable to pay were forced to sell their lands to larger zamindars.
- If we take a bird's eye view, we can detect three common features amongst these states:
- First, though many of the larger states were established by erstwhile Mughal nobles, they were highly suspicious of some of the administrative systems that they had inherited, in particular the jagirdari system.
- Second, their method of tax collection differed. Rather than relying upon the officers of the state, all three regimes contracted with revenue-farmers for the collection of revenue.
- The third common feature in all these regional states was their emerging relationship with rich bankers and merchants. These people lent money to revenue farmers, received land as security and collected taxes from these lands through their own agents.
- Many Rajput rulers had accepted the suzerainty of the Mughals but Mewar was the only Rajput state which defied Mughal authority. Rana Pratap ascended the throne at Mewar in 1572, with Udaipur and large part of Mewar under his control. A series of envoys were sent to the Rana to persuade him to accept Mughal suzerainty, but he stood his ground.

The Watan Jagirs of the Rajputs

- Many Rajput kings, particularly those belonging to Amber and Jodhpur, had served under the Mughals with distinction. In exchange, they were permitted to enjoy considerable autonomy in their watan jagirs.
- These influential Rajput families claimed the subadari of the rich provinces of Gujarat and Malwa. Raja Ajit Singh of Jodhpur held the governorship of Gujarat and Sawai Raja Jai Singh of Amber was governor of Malwa. These offices were renewed by Emperor Jahandar Shah in 1713.
- Nagaur was conquered and annexed to the house of Jodhpur, while Amber seized large portions of Bundi. Sawai Raja Jai Singh founded his new capital at Jaipur and was given the subadari of Agra in 1722. Maratha campaigns into Rajasthan from the 1740s put severe pressure on these principalities and checked their further expansion.
- Sawai Jai Singh, the ruler of Amber constructed five astronomical observatories, one each in Delhi, Jaipur, Ujjain, Mathura and Varanasi, commonly known as Jantar Mantar, these observatories had various instruments to study heavenly bodies.
- Raja Jai Singh was at the height of his power. He was the governor of Agra for 12 years and of Malwa for 5 or 6 years. He possessed a large army, artillery and great wealth. His sway extended from Delhi to the banks of the Narmada

Seizing Independence

The Sikhs

- The organisation of the Sikhs into a political community during the seventeenth century helped in regional state-building in the Punjab. Several battles were fought by Guru Gobind Singh against the Rajput and Mughal rulers, both before and after the institution of the Khalsa in 1699. After his death in 1708, the Khalsa rose in revolt against the Mughal authority under Banda Bahadur's leadership, declared their sovereign rule by striking coins in the name of Guru Nanak and Guru Gobind Singh and established their own administration between the Sutlej and the Jamuna.
- Under a number of able leaders in the eighteenth century, the Sikhs organized themselves into a number of bands called jathas and later on misls. Their combined forces were known as the grand army (dal khalsa). The entire body used to meet at Amritsar at the time of Baisakhi and Diwali to take collective decisions known as "resolutions of the Guru (gurmatas)".
- Guru Gobind Singh had inspired the Khalsa with the belief that their destiny was to rule (raj karega khalsa). Their well-knit organization enabled them to put up a successful resistance to the Mughal governors first and then to Ahmad Shah Abdali who had seized the rich province of the Punjab and the Sarkar of Sirhind from the Mughals.
- The Sikh territories in the late eighteenth century extended from the Indus to the Jamuna but they were divided under different rulers. One of them, Maharaja Ranjit Singh, reunited these groups and established his capital at Lahore in 1799.

The Marathas

- The Maratha kingdom was another powerful regional kingdom to arise out of a sustained opposition to Mughal rule. Shivaji (1627-1680) carved out a stable kingdom with the support of powerful warrior families (deshmukhs).
- Shivaji used these forces to challenge the Mughals

in the peninsula. After Shivaji's death, effective power in the Maratha state was wielded by a family of Chitpavan Brahmanas who served Shivaji's successors as Peshwa (or principal minister). Poona became the capital of the Maratha kingdom.

- Towards the end of the 17th century a powerful state started emerging in the Deccan under the leadership of Shivaji which finally led to the establishment of the Maratha state. Shivaji was born to Shahji and Jija Bai at Shivneri in 1630.
- Under the guidance of his mother and his guardian Dada Konddev, Shivaji embarked on a career of conquest at a young age. The occupation of Javli made him the undisputed leader of the Mavala highlands which paved the way for further expansion.
- His exploits against the forces of Bijapur and the Mughals made him a legendary figure. He often resorted to guerrilla warfare against his opponents. By introducing an efficient administrative system supported by a revenue collection method based on chauth and sardeshmukhi he laid the foundations of a strong Maratha state.
- Between 1720 and 1761, the Maratha Empire expanded. It gradually chipped away at the authority of the Mughal Empire. Malwa and Gujarat were seized from the Mughals by the 1720s. By the 1730s, the Maratha king was recognised as the overlord of the entire Deccan peninsula. He possessed the right to levy chauth and sardeshmukhi in the entire region.
- Baji Rao I, also known as Baji Rao Ballal was the son of Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath. He was a great Maratha general who is credited to have expanded the Maratha kingdom beyond the Vindhyas and is known for his military campaigns against Malwa, Bundelkhand, Gujarat and the Portugese.
- Chauth 25 per cent of the land revenue claimed by zamindars, In the Deccan this was collected by the Marathas.
- Sardeshmukhi 9-10 per cent of the land revenue paid to the head revenue collector in the Deccan.

The Jats

- The Jats consolidated their power during the late seventeenth and eighteenth-centuries. Under their leader, Churaman, they acquired control over territories situated to the west of the city of Delhi and by the 1680s they had begun dominating the region between the two imperial cities of Delhi and Agra.
- The Jats were prosperous agriculturists and towns like Panipat and Ballabhgarh became important trading centres in the areas dominated by them. Under Suraj Mal the kingdom of Bharatpur emerged as a strong state.
- When Nadir Shah sacked Delhi in 1739, many of the city's notables took refuge there. His son Jawahir Shah had 30,000 troops of his own and hired another 20,000 Maratha and 15,000 Sikh troops to fight the Mughals.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. When did the British East India Company established its power?
(a) 1757 **(b)** 1761
(c) 1768 **(d)** 1771

2. Aurangzeb depleted his military and financial resources by fighting a long war in the:
(a) East India **(b)** North India
(c) Deccan **(d)** None of these

3. Aurangzeb died in the year _____
(a) 1700 **(b)** 1710
(c) 1725 **(d)** 1707

4. Ahmad Shah Abdali was the ruler of _____
(a) Afghan **(b)** Iran
(c) Iraq **(d)** None of these

5. How many times did Ahmad Shah Abdali invade North India between 1748 and 1761?
(a) 3 **(b)** 4
(c) 5 **(d)** 6

6. During which century the Mughal Empire declined?
(a) 18^{th} **(b)** 16^{th}
(c) 19^{th} **(d)** 21^{st}

7. Who enjoyed the zat rank of 7000?
(a) Asaf Jah **(b)** Murshid Quli Khan
(c) Both of these **(d)** None of these

8. Who were the Telugu warrior chiefs'?
(a) Nayakas **(b)** Jathas
(c) Misl **(d)** All of these

9. Who was the powerful governor of Bengal?
(a) Sa'adat Khan **(b)** Murshid Quli Khan
(c) Asaf Jah **(d)** Alivardi Khan

10. What was the new capital of Sawai Jai Singh?
(a) Malwa **(b)** Amber
(c) Jodhpur **(d)** Jaipur

11. Dal khalsa was set up in 1699 by _____
(a) Guru Nanak Singh **(b)** Guru Tegh Bahadur
(c) Guru Gobind Singh **(d)** Guru Har Kishan

12. Small political groups of the Sikhs were called _____
(a) Khalsa **(b)** Misls
(c) Dalkhalsa **(d)** None of these

13. Chauth was the _____ of the land revenue.
(a) 10% **(b)** 20%
(c) 25% **(d)** 30%

14. Who was the founder of Maratha empire?
(a) Shivaji **(b)** Tipu Sultan
(c) Raja Jai Singh **(d)** None of these

15. Shivaji adopted the title of Chhatrapati in _____
(a) 1601 **(b)** 1660
(c) 1652 **(d)** 1674

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements regarding later Mughals:
   1. It became increasingly difficult for the later Mughal emperors to keep a check on their powerful mansabdars.
   2. They were unable to arrest the gradual shifting of political and economic authority into the hands of provincial governors, local chieftains and other groups.

   Which of the given statement(s) is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
2. Which of the following was built to commemorate the end of the plague in the city?
   (a) Charminar **(b)** Buland Darwaza
   (c) India Gate **(d)** India Gate
3. Match the following and choose the correct pair(s):

Pair No.	Leaders	Location
1.	Burhan-ul-Mulk Sa'adat Khan	Jodhpur
2.	Nizam-ul-Mulk Asaf Jah	Hyderabad
3.	Murshid Quli Khan	Bengal
4.	Raja Ajit Singh	Awadh

   Code:
   (a) 1 and 3 **(b)** 2 and 3
   (c) 3 and 4 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
4. Consider the following statements regarding Awadh region:
   1. Burhan-ul-Mulk Sa'adat Khan was appointed the subadar of Awadh in 1722. He founded a state which was one of the most important to emerge out of the break-up of the Mughal Empire.
   2. He tried to increase Mughal influence in the Awadh region and he increased the number of office holders (jagirdars) appointed by the Mughals.

   Which of the given statement(s) is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
5. Murshid Quli Khan, Alivardi Khan and Sirajuddaullah were the all nawabs of
   (a) Hyderabad **(b)** Awadh
   (c) Bengal **(d)** Delhi
6. Consider the following statements regarding Rajputs:
   1. Many Rajput king served under the Mughals with distinction.
   2. Raja Ajit Singh was the governor of Gujarat and Sawai Raja Jai Singh was the governor of Malwa.
   3. Sawai Raja Jai Singh founded his new capital at Jaipur and he was given the subadari of Agra in 1722.

   Which of the given statement(s) is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** All of the above
7. Choose the wrong statement among the following:
   (a) Guru Gobind Singh fought several battles against the Rajput and Mughal rulers.
   (b) Guru Gobind Singh ji died in 1798.
   (c) After the death of Guru Gobind Singh ji, the Khalsa rose in revolt against the Mughal authority under Banda Bahadur's leadership.
   (d) The Sikhs, under a number of able leaders in the eighteenth century, organized themselves into a number of bands called jathas and later on misls.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Arrange in a chronological sequence the following Mughal rulers who ruled after Aurangzeb's death: **[UPSC]**
   1. Bahadur Shah I **2.** Farrukh Siyar
   3. Rafi-ud Darajat **4.** Jahandar Shah
   Choose the correct answer from the code given below:
   (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 **(b)** 1, 3, 4, 2
   (c) 1, 4, 2, 3 **(d)** 1, 3, 2, 4
2. Who were the founder of Charbagh (Four garden) style in India? **[CDS]**
   (a) Lodhis **(b)** Khiljis
   (c) Mughals **(d)** Tughlaqs
3. Humayun's Tomb, built in 1570, is a fine specimen of great _____ architecture. **[UKPCS]**
   (a) British **(b)** Chola
   (c) Mughal **(d)** Magadh

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The effective rule of Company in India began in 1757 after the Battle of Plassey and lasted until 1858.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Aurangzeb depleted the military and financial resources of his empire by fighting a long war in the Deccan.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Aurangzeb was born on November 3, 1618 and died on March 3, 1707).
4. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Ahmad Shah Abdali was the founder of the modern state of Afghanistan first emperor of the Durrani Empire.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Ahmad Shah Abdali invaded India five times between 1748 and 1761.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Mughal Empire began to decline in the 18th century, during the reign of Muhammad Shah (1719–48).
7. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Asaf and Murshid enjoyed the Zat rank of 7000.

8. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Telugu warrior nayaks (chiefs) were the ruling class over much of South India (including ethnic Tamil and Kannada areas).
9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The powerful governor of Bengal was Murshid Quli Khan.
10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Jai Singh, also known as Maharaja Sawai Jai Singh, founded the fortified city of Jaipur and made it his capital. He was the 29th Kachwaha Rajput ruler of the Kingdom of Amber.
11. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Guru Gobind Singh was a Sikh religious leader. Among his notable contributions to Sikhism is - founding the Sikh warrior community called Dal Khalsa in 1699.
12. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Misls were the small political groups of the Sikhs.
They were divided into 12 sovereign states called misls.
13. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Chauth (from Sanskrit meaning one-fourth) was an annual tax nominally levied at 25% on revenue or produce, hence the name. It was a regular tax or tribute imposed, from early 18th century, by the Maratha Empire in the Indian subcontinent.
14. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Shivaji was the founder of the Maratha Empire.
15. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1674, Shivaji declared himself an independent ruler of Maharashtra and assumed the title of Chhatrapati.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Emperor Aurangzeb depleted the military and financial resources of his empire by fighting a long war in the Deccan. The efficiency of the imperial administration broke down under his successors. It became increasingly difficult for the later Mughal emperors to keep a check on their powerful mansabdars.
The Mughal emperors after Aurangzeb were unable to arrest the gradual shifting of political and economic authority into the hands of provincial governors, local chieftains and other groups.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In 16th century, Sultan Mohammed Quli Qutb Shah constructed the Charminar to mark the end of a plague.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:

Pair No.	Leaders	Location
1	Burhan-ul-Mulk Sa'adat Khan	Awadh
2	Nizam-ul-Mulk Asaf Jah	Hyderabad
3	Murshid Quli Khan	Bengal
4	Raja Ajit Singh	Jodhpur

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Burhan-ul-Mulk Sa'adat Khan was appointed the subadar of Awadh in 1722. He founded a state which was one of the most important to emerge out of the break-up of the Mughal Empire. Awadh was a prosperous region because it was controlling the rich alluvial Ganga plain and the trade route between north India and Bengal.
Burhan-ul-Mulk, by reducing the number of office holders (jagirdars) appointed by the Mughals, tried to decrease Mughal influence in the Awadh region. Hence, statement 2 is not correct.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Murshid Quli Khan (1717–1727), Alivardi Khan (1740-1756) and Siraj ud-Daulah (April 1756 – 2 June, 1757) were all nawabs of Bengal. Siraj ud-Daulah was the last independent Nawab of Bengal. The end of his reign marked the start of British East India Company rule over Bengal and later almost all of South Asia.
6. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Many Rajput kings, particularly from Amber and Jodhpur, had served under the Mughals with distinction.
Sawai Raja Jai Singh of Amber was governor of Malwa and Raja Ajit Singh of Jodhpur held the governorship of Gujarat.
Sawai Raja Jai Singh founded his new capital at Jaipur and was given the subadari of Agra in 1722.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Statement 2 is not correct. Guru Gobind Singh died of wounds inflicted when an assassin stabbed him on 7 October 1708. He was the last Sikh Guru.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:
Bahadur Shah I (1707-1712 AD)
Jahandar Shah (1712-1713 AD)
Farrukh Siyar (1713-1719 AD)
Rafi-ud Darajat (1719 AD)
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Charbagh style was brought to India by Mughals. The most famous examples of this style are Humayun's tomb and Taj Mahal in India.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Humayun's tomb is located in Delhi, India. The tomb was commissioned by Humayun's chief consort, Empress Bega Begum, in 1558 and designed by Mirak Mirza Ghiyas and his son, Sayyid Muhammad, Persian architects chosen by her.

HISTORY CLASS-VIII

1 HOW, WHEN AND WHERE

How Important are the Dates?

- Historians were enthralled by the dates. History is about observing changes across time and determining how things were in the past and how they have changed. Battles and major events were chronicled in history.
- It had something to do with rulers and their policies. Historians recorded the year a monarch was crowned, married, had a child, fought a specific war, died and the year the following ruler succeeded to the throne. Specific dates can be chosen for events like this.

Which dates?

- The dates we choose and use to construct our past tale are not important on their own. They become crucial because we consider a specific collection of events to be essential.
- The major chapters of British India's history were distinguished by the chronology of distinct characters' live. It's to bring some coherence to each chapter. It's telling a tale in a way that makes sense and is easy to follow.

How do we Periodise?

- James Mill, a Scottish political philosopher and economist, published, '**A History of British India**', a three-volume masterpiece, in 1817. He classified Indian history into three periods in his book: Hindu, Muslim and British.
- All Asian societies, according to Mill, were at a lesser degree of civilisation than European societies. Before the British arrived in India, Hindu and Muslim despots dominated the country, according to his version of history.
- Social life was governed by religious intolerance, caste taboos and superstitious customs. British dominion, he believed, had the potential to civilise India.
- British dominance symbolised all the forces of progress and civilisation in this vision of history. Apart from the British classification, historians have classified Indian history into three periods: "ancient," "medieval," and "modern."

What is colonial?

- By reading this text you will understand how the British came to conquer the country and established their rule, subjugating local nawabs and rajas. How they established control over the economy and society, collected revenue to meet all their expenses, bought the goods they wanted at low prices, produced crops they needed for export and you will understand the changes that came about as a consequence.
- You'll study the changes in values, preferences, habits and practises that British rule brought about. Colonisation occurs when one country is subjugated by another, resulting in these types of political, economic, social and cultural changes.

How do We Know?

- Let us learn about the sources that historians used in writing about the last 250 years of Indian history.

Administration produces records

- The British had a strong belief in the act of writing, which resulted in a culture of memoranda, notations and reports. The important documents and correspondence were also carefully preserved.
- In all administrative institutions, the important records are kept. These documents were painstakingly copied out and elegantly written by calligraphists — individuals who specialised in the art of beautiful writing – in the early nineteenth century.
- Multiple copies of these documents were printed as proceedings of each government agency by the middle of the nineteenth century, thanks to the spread of printing.

Surveys become important

- The practice of surveying grew popular during the colonial government. By the early nineteenth century, extensive surveys to map the entire country had been completed.
- The revenue surveys were done in the communities to learn about the terrain, soil quality, vegetation, animals, local histories and the cropping patterns. Every ten years beginning at the end of the nineteenth century, Census operations were performed to compile detailed records of the number of people in all India's provinces, including information on castes, religions and occupations.
- The botanical surveys, zoological surveys, archaeological surveys, anthropological surveys and forest surveys were among the many others.

What official records do not tell?

- The official documents will not assist us in comprehending how other citizens of the country felt or what motivated their conduct. Other than official records, people's diaries, pilgrims' and travellers' tales, autobiographies of notable figures and popular pamphlets can be found.
- The printing was invented, newspapers were created and public debates were held. Poets and novelists wrote to convey their feelings, while leaders and reformers wrote to propagate their beliefs.
- However, the history, how the tribals and peasants, mine workers and the destitute on the streets lived their lives, cannot be explained using these sources.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Surveys were vital to the British for
   (a) Writing history
   (b) Effective judgment
   (c) Successful administration
   (d) None of these
2. Which of the following sources the historians utilised while writing about India's recent 250 years?
   (a) Official French administrative records
   (b) Official British administrative records
   (c) Official Church administrative records
   (d) None of the above
3. Which of the following is not the period of James Mill's division of Indian history?
   (a) Hindus **(b)** Muslims
   (c) Britishers **(d)** Sikhs
4. Which of the following is not a reliable source for historical information?
   (a) Diaries of people
   (b) Conversation between two people
   (c) Accounts of pilgrims and travellers
   (d) Autobiographies of important personalities
5. The National Archives of India came up in
   (a) 1920s **(b)** 1910s
   (c) 1930s **(d)** None of them
6. Historians frequently compared the past to the present and they constantly used the terms of_____, or Before and After.
   (a) The event **(b)** The time
   (c) The period **(d)** The phase
7. The following is a timeline of historical events. Choose the one that allows you to set a specific date.
   (a) The Mughal Rule in India begins
   (b) British Rule in India begins
   (c) The assassination of Mahatma Gandhi
   (d) The Non-Cooperation Movement begins
8. How did many historians refer British period in India as?
   (a) Medieval **(b)** Colonial
   (c) Modern **(d)** Dark Age
9. What do historians not write at the present time?
   (a) How people made a living
   (b) What was produced
   (c) How marketplaces were established
   (d) Kings and fights

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. What do you mean by Colonisation?
   (a) Conquest of one country by another.
   (b) Subjugation of economy of a country by another country.
   (c) Subjugation of one country by another
   (d) None of these
2. What did James Mill think about India? Choose the correct statement among the following:
   1. All Asian societies were at a lower level of civilisation than Europe.
   2. Before the British came to India, Hindu and Muslim despots ruled the country.
   3. Religious intolerance, caste taboos and superstitious practices dominated social life.

   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) only 1
   (b) 1 & 3 only
   (c) 2 & 3 only
   (d) All the given statements are correct.
3. Who was Warren Hastings?
   (a) The most recent Governor General
   (b) The first Governor General of India
   (c) The first Indian Governor General
   (d) None of these are true.
4. Those who are experts in the art of beautiful writing include:
   (a) Novelists **(b)** Calligraphists
   (c) Artists **(d)** Literate
5. In what ways did official records help the British government?
   (a) It helped to track the activities of British Officials.
   (b) It helped to punish Indian rulers.
   (c) It helped historians to trace every important development.
   (d) None of these
6. Which of the following statement/s is/are correct about the problems related to the classification of Indian History by Indian Historians?
   1. This classification is borrowed from the West.
   2. The Medieval period of India was portrayed as the dark age of India.

   Select the correct answer:
   (a) Only 1 is correct. **(b)** Only 2 is correct.
   (c) Both 1 & 2 are wrong. **(d)** Both 1 & 2 are correct.
7. What exactly do you mean when you say "survey"?
   (a) An examination or study of essential facts
   (b) An investigation or study of animals
   (c) A bird research project
   (d) None of the preceding
8. What is Renaissance?
   (a) Re-marriage **(b)** Re-birth
   (c) Re-appointment **(d)** None of these
9. Who among the following was the first Surveyor General of the Archaeological Survey of India?
   (a) James Burgess
   (b) Alexander Cunningham
   (c) James Prinsep
   (d) James Fergusson
10. Which of the following is not a branch of the work of the East India Company?
    (a) Public **(b)** Political
    (c) Military **(d)** None of these

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The practice of surveying became common under the colonial administration. The British believed that a country had to be properly known before it could be effectively administered.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: One important source that the historians utilised is the official records of the British administration.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1817, James Mill published a massive three-volume work, A History of British India. In this he divided Indian history into three periods – Hindu, Muslim and Britishers.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The reliable source for historical information were diaries of people, accounts of pilgrims and travellers and autobiographies of important personalities but not the conversation between two people.
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The National Archives of India came up in the 1920s. When New Delhi was built, the National Museum and the National Archives were both located close to the Viceregal Palace.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: History is certainly about changes that occur over time. It is about finding out how things were in the past and how things have changed. As soon as we compare the past with the present, we refer to time, we talk of "before" and "after".
7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi was assassinated on 30 January 1948, Birla House, New Delhi. Rest of the options has no fixed date to start.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The time is referred and described as "colonial" by many historians. They took control of the economy and society, collected enough money to cover all of their expenses and purchased the items they desired at inexpensive rates.
9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Historians study how people made a living, what they produced and ate, how cities grew how kingdoms were founded and new ideas disseminated kings and fights and how cultures and societies evolved.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: When the subjugation of one country by another leads to these kinds of political, economic, social and cultural changes, we refer to the process as colonisation.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Mill thought that all Asian societies were at a lower level of civilisation than Europe. According to his telling of history, before the British came to India, Hindu and Muslim despots ruled the country. Religious intolerance, caste taboos and superstitious practices dominated social life. British rule, Mill felt, could civilise India. To do this it was necessary to introduce European manners, arts, institutions and laws in India.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Warren Hasting was the country's first Governor General (in 1773).
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In the early years of the nineteenth century documents were carefully copied out and beautifully written by calligraphists – by those who specialised in the art of beautiful writing.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Official records aid historians in tracing every significant change step by step, as well as following decision-making processes and policy-makers' psyche.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Moving away from British classification, historians have usually divided Indian history into 'ancient', 'medieval' and 'modern'. This division too has its problems. It is a periodisation that is borrowed from the West where the modern period was associated with the growth of all the forces of modernity – science, reason, democracy, liberty and equality. Medieval was a term used to describe a society where these features of modern society did not exist. But that is not true about the Medieval period of India which witnessed a significant growth in every aspect of life.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: A survey is a study or research of key facts and data about a subject, topic, or country in order to gather new and specific information for further study or investigation.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Renaissance means 'Re-birth'. It refers to the period in European history from the 14^{th} through the 16^{th} centuries when art, learning and culture were revived.
9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: James Prinsep was the first Surveyor General of the Archaeological Survey of India.
10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The work of the East India Company was distributed among various branches- public or general, revenue, political, military, secret, commercial, judicial, education, etc., and a separate set of records was kept for each of these branches or departments.

HISTORY CLASS-VIII

2 FROM TRADE TO TERRITORY : ESTABLISHMENT OF COMPANY POWER

Introduction

- Aurangzeb was the last of the powerful Mughal rulers. He established control over a very large part of the territory that is now known as India. After his death in 1707, many Mughal Governors (Subadars) and big zamindars began asserting their authority and establishing regional kingdoms.
- As powerful regional kingdoms emerged in various parts of India, Delhi could no longer function as an effective center. By the second half of the eighteenth century, however, a new power was emerging on the political horizon – the British. In this chapter, you will see how this came about.

East India Company Comes East

- The East India Company received a charter from England's ruler, Queen Elizabeth I, in 1600, granting it exclusive rights to trade with the East. According to the charter, the Company might go across oceans in search of new locations where it could buy things at a lower cost and transport them back to Europe to sell at a greater cost.
- The Portuguese established their presence before the East India Company on India's western coast, Goa as their base.
- Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese explorer, discovered the sea route to India in 1498. The Dutch began exploring the potential of trade in the Indian Ocean by the early seventeenth century and the French arrived soon after.
- All the companies are interested in buying the same things. The fine qualities of cotton, silk, pepper, cloves, cardamom and cinnamon were in great demand. The urge to secure markets led to fierce battles between the trading companies. Trade was carried on with arms and trading posts were protected through fortification.

East India Company begins to trade in Bengal

- The first English factory was established in 1651. It served as the headquarters for the Company's dealers, known as "factors." Goods for export were stored at the factory's warehouse.
- The Company, by 1696, began building a fort around the settlement. It also got the right to trade duty free, a farman (a royal order) from Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb, but private traders needed to pay duty. The Company continuously tried to press for more concessions and manipulated existing privileges.

How trade lead to battles?

- Private traders refused to pay duties, this led to loss of revenue for Bengal. The conflict between the Company and the Nawabs of Bengal intensified. The Bengal Nawabs (Murshid Quli Khan, followed by Alivardi Khan and then Sirajuddaulah) refused to grant the Company concessions, demanded large tributes for the Company's right to trade, denied it any right to mint coins and stopped it from extending its fortifications.
- They also claimed that the Company was depriving the Bengal Government of huge amounts of revenue and undermining the authority of the Nawab. The conflicts led to confrontations and finally culminated in the famous Battle of Plassey.

The Battle of Plassey

- Alivardi Khan died in 1756 and Sirajuddaulah became Bengal's Nawab. The Company attempted to assist one of Sirajuddaulah's opponents in his bid to become Nawab.
- When Sirajuddaulah learned of the Company's plan, he told them to stop interfering in their political matters, stop fortification and pay the revenues. The Company's army was led by Robert Clive against Sirajuddaulah at Plassey in 1757.
- The key cause for the defeat was that Mir Jafar's forces (one of the commanders of Sirajuddaulah) never engaged in battle, because it was the Company's first important victory in India, the Battle of Plassey became famous. Mir Jafar became the nawab after the battle, but the company was still not willing to take over the responsibility of administration.
- The prime objective of the Company was the expansion of trade. If it can be done without conquest, through the help of local rulers, then territories need not be taken over directly, but, very soon the Company discovered that this was rather difficult. The Company installed Mir Qasim as the nawab after the protest of Mir Jafar. Later, Mir Qasim complained and he got defeat by the company in the battle of Buxar in 1764. Mir Jafar was reinstalled by the company.
- After the death of Jafar, the company thought to rule by itself.
- In 1765, the Mughal emperor appointed the Company as the Diwan of the provinces of Bengal. It allowed the Company to use the vast revenue resources of Bengal. From the early eighteenth century, the Company's trade with India had expanded. Goods from India had to be brought with gold and silver imported from Britain.

Company officials become "nabobs"

- After the Battle of Plassey, the actual Nawabs of Bengal were forced to give land and vast sums of money as personal gifts to Company officials. Robert Clive himself amassed a fortune in India.

- He had come to Madras (now Chennai) from England in 1743 at the age of 18. When in 1767 he left India, his Indian fortune was worth £401,102. Interestingly, when he was appointed Governor of Bengal in 1764, he was asked to remove corruption in Company administration, but he was himself cross-examined in 1772 by the British Parliament which was suspicious of his vast wealth. Although he was acquitted, he committed suicide in 1774.
- Many Company officers died young in India as a result of disease and war. Some of the officials hailed from low-income families and their ambition was to make enough money in India to return to Britain and live well. Those who returned wealthy were known as "Nabobs," which is an anglicised version of the Indian word nawab.

Company Rule Expands

- Certain major characteristics arose when examining the East India Company's takeover of Indian territories from 1757 to 1857.
- A direct military strike on an unfamiliar country was rare for the Company. Before annexing an Indian state, it utilised a number of political, economic and diplomatic strategies to expand its power. The Company appointed Residents in Indian states after the Battle of Buxar. They were political or commercial representatives whose job was to serve and promote the Company's interests.
- The company began interfering in the internal matters of Indian states and forced the states into a 'subsidiary alliance'. Subsidiary alliance means the Indian rulers were not allowed to have their independent armed forces. They were to be protected by the Company, but had to pay for the "subsidiary forces" that the Company was supposed to maintain for the purpose of this protection. If the Indian rulers failed to make the payment, then part of their territory was taken away as a penalty.

Tipu Sultan – The "Tiger of Mysore"

- The Company resorted to direct military confrontation when it saw a threat to its political or economic interests. This can be illustrated with the case of the southern Indian State of Mysore.
- Mysore had grown in strength under the leadership of powerful rulers like Haidar Ali (ruled from 1761 to 1782) and his famous son Tipu Sultan (ruled from 1782 to 1799).
- Mysore controlled the profitable trade of the Malabar coast where the Company purchased pepper and cardamom. In 1785, Tipu Sultan stopped the export of sandalwood, pepper and cardamom through the ports of his kingdom and disallowed local merchants from trading with the Company.
- The British were furious. They saw Haidar and Tipu as ambitious, arrogant and dangerous – rulers who had to be controlled and crushed. Four wars were fought with Mysore (1767-69, 1780-84, 1790-92 and 1799). Only in the last – the Battle of Seringapatam – did the Company ultimately win the victory. Tipu Sultan was killed defending his capital Seringapatam, Mysore was placed under the former ruling dynasty of the Wodeyars and a subsidiary alliance was imposed on the state.

War with the Marathas

- The Company, from the late eighteenth century, was planning to destroy Maratha power. In the Third Battle of Panipat in 1761, the Marathas were defeated and their dream of ruling from Delhi was shattered.
- They were divided into many states under different chiefs (sardars) belonging to dynasties such as Sindhia, Holkar, Gaikwad and Bhonsle. These chiefs were held together under a Peshwa (Principal Minister) who became its effective military and administrative head based in Pune.
- The Marathas were involved in numerous conflicts. There was no obvious victory in the first war, which ended in 1782 with the Treaty of Salbai. The British won Orissa and the areas in north of the Yamuna river, including Agra and Delhi, in the Second Anglo-Maratha War (1803-05), which was fought on several fronts. Finally, the Third Anglo-Maratha War, which lasted from 1817 to 1819, shattered Maratha supremacy.

The claim to paramountcy

- 'Paramountcy' (supreme authority) was a new policy initiated under Lord Hastings (Governor General from 1813 to 1823). The Company argued that it had more power than the Indian states. The East India Company became concerned about Russia in the late 1830s.
- It was envisioned that Russia would spread over Asia and invade India from the north-west. Between 1838 and 1842, the Company fought a long war with Afghanistan and established indirect Company administration there. After two lengthy wars, Punjab was annexed in 1849.

The Doctrine of Lapse

- The final wave of annexations occurred under Lord Dalhousie who was the Governor-General from 1848 to 1856. He devised a policy that came to be known as the Doctrine of Lapse.
- The doctrine declared that if an Indian ruler died without a male heir, his kingdom would "lapse", that is, become part of Company's territory. One kingdom after another was annexed simply by applying this doctrine: Satara (1848), Sambalpur (1850), Udaipur (1852), Nagpur (1853) and Jhansi (1854).
- In 1856, the Company took over Awadh. Enraged by the humiliating way in which the Nawab was deposed, the people of Awadh joined the great revolt that broke out in 1857.

Setting up a New Administration

- Warren Hastings (Governor-General from 1773 to 1785) played a significant role in the expansion of Company power. During his time, the Company had acquired power in Bengal, Bombay and Madras. British territories were broadly divided into administrative units called Presidencies.
- There were three Presidencies: Bengal, Madras and Bombay. Each was ruled by a Governor. From 1772, a new system of justice was established. According to the new system, each district needed to have two courts – a Criminal Court (faujdari adalat) and a Civil Court (diwani adalat).
- Based on different schools of the dharmashastra, Brahman pandits have varied interpretations of local

laws. In 1775, eleven pandits were commissioned to create a compilation of Hindu rules in order to bring uniformity.

- By 1778, a system of Muslim laws had been prepared for European judges' use. The Regulating Act of 1773 established a new Supreme Court, as well as a court of appeal - the Sadar Nizamat Adalat – in Calcutta. In an Indian district, the Collector was the most powerful authority.
- With the support of judges, police officers and darogas, the Collector was responsible for collecting money and taxes as well as maintaining law and order in his territory.

The Company army

- In India, colonial rule brought some new ideas of administration and reform. The Mughal army composed of cavalry (sawars: trained soldiers on horseback) and infantry, i.e., paidal (foot) soldiers.
- The army of the Mughal was dominated by cavalry. In the eighteenth century, changes occurred when Mughal successor states like Awadh and Benaras started recruiting peasants into their armies and training them as professional soldiers.
- The East India Company used a similar strategy, which was known as the sepoy army (from the Indian word sipahi, meaning soldier). The British began to build a consistent military culture in the early nineteenth century.
- Soldiers were exposed to European-style training, drill and discipline, which significantly restricted their lives.

Conclusion

- Thus, the East India Company was transformed from a trading company to a territorial colonial power. The arrival of new steam technology in the early nineteenth century also aided this process.
- By 1857, the Company came to exercise direct rule over about 63 % of the territory and 78 % of the population of the Indian subcontinent. Combined with its indirect influence on the remaining territory and population of the country, the East India Company had virtually taken the whole of India under its control.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Tipu Sultan stopped export through his kingdom in
(a) 1773 **(b)** 1779
(c) 1785 **(d)** 1792

2. The first English factory was set up in the year
(a) 1655 **(b)** 1651
(c) 1600 **(d)** 1665

3. In which year, did Robert Clive commit suicide?
(a) 1770 **(b)** 1743
(c) 1767 **(d)** 1774

4. What do you call a company that earns money mostly through trading, buying items for a low price and selling them for a higher price?
(a) Exchange **(b)** Noncommercial
(c) Mercantile **(d)** Barter

5. Which foreign power, from the given list, was the last European power to enter India?
(a) British **(b)** Dutch
(c) French **(d)** Portuguese

6. What were the most essential spices in high demand on the European market?
(a) Pepper, Cloves, Cardamom, Cinnamon
(b) Cumin, Aniseed, Red sandal
(c) Coriander, Fenugreek
(d) Garlic, Ginger, poppy seeds

7. Why is it thought that following Aurangzeb's death, Delhi could no longer serve as an effective centre?
(a) Many powerful regional kingdoms arose in various regions of the country, exerting their dominance.
(b) Delhi was not thought to be a symbolically lucky city for the kings.
(c) Delhi only represented the northern half of India, leaving the southern half unrepresented.
(d) Trading activities could not be conducted from Delhi.

8. The British established three presidencies, each with its own Governor General. Choose three presidential candidates from a list of possibilities.
(a) Madras, Bengal, Delhi
(b) Madras, Bombay, Bengal
(c) Madras, Pondicherry, Bengal
(d) Madras, Bombay, Delhi

9. A Farman is best described as a King's order. Robert Clive received a Farman from Aurangzeb allowing the East India Company
(a) the right to build factories along rivers
(b) the right to construct settlements
(c) the right to trade duty-free
(d) the right to fight battles with other European countries.

10. Name the location that the British King Charles-II got as a dowry for marrying a Portuguese princess and which eventually grew into a major trading centre.
(a) Bombay Island **(b)** Kuchch Island
(c) Goa Island **(d)** Pondicherry Island

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. With the reference of new justice system of Warren Hastings, which of the following statements is/are incorrect?
1. It was established in 1772.
2. Each district was to have two courts – a Criminal Court (faujdari adalat) and a Civil Court (diwani adalat).
3. It was independent by religious clerics.
Select the correct option using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 2 only **(d)** 3 only

2. Consider the following pairs with the reference of annexation under Doctrine of Lapse of Lord Dalhousie:

	Kingdoms	Year
1.	Satara	1848
2.	Jhansi	1853
3.	Nagpur	1854
4.	Udaipur	1852

Which of the above pairs is/are incorrectly matched?

(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 and 3
(c) 2 and 3 **(d)** 2, 3 and 4

3. Consider the following pairs:

	Compilation	Year
1.	Digest of Hindu laws	1775
2.	Code of Muslim law	1778
3.	Regulating Act	1775

Which of the above pairs is/are correctly matched?

(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 and 3
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1 and 3 only

4. The tendency for increased litigation was visible after the introduction of the land settlement system of Lord Cornwallis in 1793. The reason for this is normally traced to which of the following provisions?
   (a) Making Zamindar's position stronger vis-a-vis the ryot
   (b) Making East India Company an overlord of Zamindars
   (c) Making the judicial system more efficient
   (d) None of the above

5. Which of the following are the essential characteristics of the feudal system in Indian history?
   1. A powerful centralised political authority with a weak provincial or local political authority.
   2. The establishment of an administrative frame-work based on land ownership and control.
   3. Creation of the lord-vassal relationship between the feudal lord and his overlord
   Select the correct answer using the code given below.
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

6. With reference to the Battle of Plassey, which of the following statement is incorrect?
   (a) The Battle of Plassey became famous because it was the first major victory of the Company in India.
   (b) In 1757, Robert Clive led the Company's army against Sirajuddaulah at Plassey.
   (c) The Company was not worried about Sirajuddaulah power.
   (d) Mir Jafar, one of Sirajuddaulah's commanders, never fought the battle.

7. Which of the following statement is correct about factories of East India Company?
   1. The first English factory was set up on the banks of the river Hugli in 1654.
   2. The factory had a warehouse where goods for export were stored.
   Choose the correct option:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

8. Where in India did the British build Fort William, a fortified factory?
   (a) Delhi **(b)** Bombay
   (c) Calcutta **(d)** Madras

9. In which battle, EIC won over the Mysore?
   (a) Battle of Buxar
   (b) Battle of Masulipatnam
   (c) Battle of Manglore
   (d) None of these

10. On account of Marathas and their power in India, choose the correct statement among the following.
    1. With their win in the Third Battle of Panipat in 1761, the Marathas' dream of ruling from Delhi was completed.
    2. Marathas were divided into many states under different chiefs (sardars) belonging to dynasties such as Sindhia, Holkar, Gaikwad and Bhonsle.
    Select the correct answer:
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Mysore controlled the profitable trade of the Malabar coast where the Company purchased pepper and cardamom. In 1785 Tipu Sultan stopped the export of sandalwood, pepper and cardamom through the ports of his kingdom.

2. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: In 1651, the first English factory was set up on the banks of river Hugli.

3. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: After battle of Plassey, Robert Clive himself amassed a fortune in India. When in 1767 he left India, his Indian fortune was worth £401,102. Interestingly, when he was appointed Governor of Bengal in 1764, he was asked to remove corruption in Company administration but he was himself cross-examined in 1772 by the British Parliament which was suspicious of his vast wealth. Although he was acquitted, he committed suicide in 1774.

4. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: A business enterprise that makes profit primarily through trade, buying goods cheap and selling them of higher prices.

5. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The French were the latest Europeans to arrive in India. During King Louis XIV's reign, the French East India Company was founded in 1664 to trade with India.

6. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Pepper, cloves, cardamom and cinnamon were in great demand in European markets.

7. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Aurangzeb was the last of the powerful Mughal rulers. He established control over a very

large part of the territory that is now known as India. After his death in 1707, many Mughal Governors (Subadars) and big zamindars began asserting their authority and establishing regional kingdoms. As powerful regional kingdoms emerged in various parts of India, Delhi could no longer function as an effective centre.

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: British territories were broadly divided into administrative units called Presidencies. There were three Presidencies: Bengal, Madras and Bombay.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Mughal emperor, Aurangzeb, to issued a farman granting the Company the right to trade duty free.

10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The marriage treaty between Charles II of England and Catherine of Braganza, daughter of King John IV of Portugal, was signed on May 11, 1661 and Bombay became part of Catherine's dowry to Charles.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Warren Hastings, the first Governor-General, introduced several administrative reforms, notably in the sphere of justice. From 1772 a new system of justice was established. Each district was to have two courts – a criminal court (faujdari adalat) and a civil court (diwani adalat). Maulvis and Hindu pandits interpreted Indian laws for the European district collectors who presided over Civil Courts. The Criminal Courts were still under a qazi and a mufti but under the supervision of the Collectors.

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The final wave of annexations occurred under Lord Dalhousie who was the Governor-General from 1848 to 1856. He devised a policy that came to be known as the **Doctrine of Lapse**. The doctrine declared that if an Indian ruler died without a male heir his kingdom would "lapse", that is, become part of Company territory. One kingdom after another was annexed simply by applying this doctrine: Satara (1848), Sambalpur (1850), Udaipur (1852), Nagpur (1853) and Jhansi (1854).

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1775 eleven pandits were asked to compile a digest of Hindu laws. N.B. Halhed translated this digest into English. By 1778 a code of Muslim laws was also compiled for the benefit of European judges. Under the Regulating Act of 1773, a new Supreme Court was established, while a court of appeal – the Sadar Nizamat Adalat – was also set up at Calcutta.

4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Reforms of Cornwallis:
   - After the establishment of the land settlement system, Cornwallis' reforms boosted litigation and the main reason for this was the abolition of the Court Fee, which meant that anyone could now bring anyone to the courts.
   - One of the reasons was the expansion of the right of appeal.

Zamindari System:
   - The Zamindars were given ownership of the land on which they had previously worked as revenue collectors.
   - The settlement is known as the Zamindari Settlement since it was reached by the zamindars.
   - The demand for land revenue was set and the corporation received $10/11^{th}$ of the controlled revenue.
   - The business also inserted a sunset provision for zamindars.
   - Lord Cornwallis introduced it through the Permanent Settlement Act in 1793.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The essential characteristics of the feudal system in Indian history are a powerful centralised political authority with a weak provincial or local political authority and the establishment of an administrative framework based on land ownership and control. Since, there was no Lord at the time of British acquired the power in India, so creation of the lord-vassal relationship between the feudal lord and his overlord was not there.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: When Alivardi Khan died in 1756, Sirajuddaulah became the nawab of Bengal. The Company was worried about his power and keen on a puppet ruler who would willingly give trade concessions and other privileges.

7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The first English factory was set up on the banks of the river Hugli in 1651. This was the base from which the Company's traders, known at that time as "factors", operated. The factory had a warehouse where goods for export were stored and it had offices where Company officials sat.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Based on the East India Company trading policy shift, from voyage to factory and to establishment of fortresses, the construction of the old fort commenced at Sutanuti (Calcutta) in 1698 and was completed in 1706. It was named Fort William in honour of the King of England.

9. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The British were furious. They saw Haidar and Tipu as ambitious, arrogant and dangerous – rulers who had to be controlled and crushed. Four wars were fought with Mysore (1767-69, 1780-84, 1790-92 and 1799). Only in the last – the Battle of Seringapatam – did the Company ultimately got a victory. Tipu Sultan was killed defending his capital Seringapatam.

10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: From the late eighteenth century, the Company also sought to curb and eventually destroy Maratha power. With their defeat in the Third Battle of Panipat in 1761, the Marathas' dream of ruling from Delhi was shattered. They were divided into many states under different chiefs (sardars) belonging to dynasties such as Sindhia, Holkar, Gaikwad and Bhonsle. These chiefs were held together in a confederacy under a Peshwa (Principal Minister) who became its effective military and administrative head based in Pune.

3 RULING THE COUNTRYSIDE

The Company Becomes the Diwan

- On 12 August 1765, the Mughal emperor appointed the East India Company as the Diwan of Bengal. The actual event most probably took place in Robert Clive's tent, with a few Englishmen and Indians as witnesses.
- As Diwan, the Company became the chief financial administrator of the territory under its control. Now, it had to think of administering the land and organising its revenue resources.
- This had to be done in a way that could yield enough revenue to meet the growing expenses of the company. A trading company had also to ensure that it could buy the products it needed and sell what it wanted.
- Over the years the Company also learnt that it had to move with some caution. Being an alien power, it needed to pacify those who in the past had ruled the countryside and enjoyed authority and prestige.

Revenue for the Company

- The company's goal was to raise revenue so that it could purchase beautiful cotton and silk cloth at a low cost. The value of commodities purchased by the Company in Bengal doubled in five years.
- The Company, before 1865, purchased goods in India by importing gold and silver from Britain. Now it was financed by the revenue collected in Bengal. Artisanal production was in decline and agricultural cultivation showed signs of collapse. Then in 1770, a terrible famine killed ten million people in Bengal.

The need to improve agriculture

- The Permanent Settlement was introduced by the Company in 1793. The rajas and taluqdars were recognised as zamindars under the terms of the agreement and were required to collect rent from the peasants and send revenue to the Company.
- The amount to be paid was set in stone. This agreement would assure a steady flow of revenue into the Company's coffers while also encouraging the zamindars to invest in the land's improvement.

The Problem

- The Permanent Settlement, however, created problems. Company's officials soon discovered that the zamindars were in fact not investing in the improvement of land. The revenue that had been fixed was so high that the zamindars found it difficult to pay. Anyone who failed to pay the revenue lost his zamindari. Numerous zamindaris were sold off at auctions organised by the Company.
- The situation had changed by the first decade of the nineteenth century. Market prices increased and agriculture gradually extended. The zamindars were not interested in improving the land.
- The cultivator in the villages felt the system to be terribly burdensome. They got a loan from a moneylender because the rent they paid to the zamindar was too high and when they failed to pay the rent, they were evicted off the land.

A new system

- Officials from the company decided to restructure the revenue system. The new system, which went into force in 1822, was designed by Holt Mackenzie in the North Western Provinces of the Bengal (most of the area is now in Uttar Pradesh). Collectors travelled from village to village, checking the land, measuring the fields and recording the customs and rights of various groups, all under his orders.
- To compute the income that each village (mahal) had to pay, the expected revenue of each plot within a village was totaled up. The desire was to be reviewed on a regular basis rather than being set in stone.
- The village headman, not the zamindar, was in responsibility of collecting the revenue and paying it to the Company. The mahalwari settlement was the name given to this system.

The Munro system

- In the British territories in the south, a new system was devised known as the ryotwar (or ryotwari). This system was gradually extended all over south India (started by Captain Alexander Reed and developed by Thomas Munro). The settlement had to be made directly with the cultivators (ryots) who had tilled the land for generations.
- Their fields had to be carefully and separately surveyed before the revenue assessment was made.
- In order to increase the income from land, revenue officials fixed high revenue demand. Peasants who were unable to pay ryots fled the countryside and villages became deserted in many regions. Optimistic officials had imagined that the new systems would transform the peasants into rich enterprising farmers. But this did not happen.

Crops for Europe

- The Company attempted to develop opium and indigo cultivation in the late eighteenth century. In other parts of India, the Company pushed cultivators to grow other crops: jute in Bengal, tea in Assam, sugarcane in the United Provinces (now Uttar Pradesh), wheat in Punjab, cotton in Maharashtra and Punjab and rice in Madras.

Does colour have a history?

- The rich blue colour was produced from a plant called indigo. The blue dye used in the Morris prints, in nineteenth-century Britain, manufactured from

indigo plants cultivated in India. India was the biggest supplier of indigo in the world at that time.

Why the demand for Indian indigo?

- The indigo plant grows primarily in the tropics. By the thirteenth century, Indian indigo was being used by cloth manufacturers in Italy, France and Britain to dye cloth. However, only small amounts of Indian indigo reached the European market and its price was very high. European cloth manufacturers therefore had to depend on another plant called woad to make violet and blue dyes.
- Indigo produced a rich blue colour, whereas the dye from woad was pale and dull. By the end of the eighteenth century, the demand for Indian indigo grew further. While the demand for indigo increased, its existing supplies from the West Indies and America collapsed for a variety of reasons. Between 1783 and 1789, the production of indigo in the world fell by half.

Britain turns to India

- Faced with the rising demand for indigo in Europe, the Company in India looked for ways to expand the area under indigo cultivation. Gradually, the indigo trade grew, so commercial agents and officials of the Company began investing in indigo production. The Company officials were attracted by the prospect of high profits and came to India to become indigo planters.

How was indigo cultivated?

- There were two main systems of indigo cultivation – nij and ryoti. Within the system of nij cultivation, the planter produced indigo in lands that cultivator directly controlled. He either bought the land or rented it from other zamindars and produced indigo by directly employing hired labourers.

The problem with nij cultivation

- Planters found it difficult to expand the area under nij cultivation. Indigo could only be grown on fertile ground. Planters wanted to lease land near the indigo factory in order to remove the peasants.
- Nij farming on a huge scale also necessitated a large number of ploughs and bullocks. Planters were hesitant to expand the area under nij cultivation until the late nineteenth century.

Indigo on the land of ryots

- The planters were compelled to sign a contract, or agreement, under the ryoti system (satta). Those who accepted the contract received low-interest monetary advances from the planters in order to produce indigo.
- A new loan was approved when the harvested crop was delivered to the planter and the cycle began all over again. Peasants quickly realised how inefficient the lending system was. The soil could not be seeded with rice after an indigo harvest.

The "Blue Rebellion" and After

- In March 1859, thousands of ryots in Bengal refused to grow indigo. As the rebellion spread, ryots refused to pay rents to the planters and attacked indigo factories armed with swords and spears, bows and arrows.
- Women turned up to fight with pots, pans and kitchen implements. Those who worked for the planters were socially boycotted and the gomasthas – agents of planters – who came to collect rent were beaten up.
- Ryots swore they would no longer take advances to sow indigo nor be bullied by the planters' lathiyals – the lathi-wielding strongmen maintained by the planters.
- In many villages, headmen who had been forced to sign indigo contracts, mobilised the indigo peasants and fought pitched battles with the lathiyals. In other places even the zamindars went around villages urging the ryots to resist the planters. These zamindars were unhappy with the increasing power of the planters and angry at being forced by the planters to give them land on long leases.
- After the Revolt of 1857, the British Government was worried about the possibility of another popular rebellion. As the rebellion spread, intellectuals from Calcutta rushed to the indigo districts. The government set up the Indigo Commission to enquire into the system of indigo production. The Commission asked the ryots to fulfil their existing contracts but also told them that they could refuse to produce indigo in future.
- Indigo production collapsed in Bengal, after the revolt and planters now shifted to Bihar.
- When Mahatma Gandhi returned from South Africa, a peasant from Bihar persuaded him to visit Champaran and see the plight of the indigo cultivators. In 1917, he visited Bihar which marked the beginning of the Champaran Movement against the indigo planters.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. The Champaran Movement was in opposition to
- **(a)** Peasants
- **(b)** The East India Company
- **(c)** The indigo planters
- **(d)** None of the above

2. Who started the new system of revenue called Mahalwari?
- **(a)** Lord Wellesley **(b)** Holt Mackenzie
- **(c)** Queen Victoria **(d)** Lord Cornwallis

3. Woad growers in Europe considered which crop as a threat to their profits?
- **(a)** Tea **(b)** Coffee
- **(c)** Cotton **(d)** Indigo

4. To improve land revenue, the company attempted a number of different approaches. What was the name of the settlement system that was implemented during the Madras and Bombay presidencies?
- **(a)** Permanent Settlement System
- **(b)** British Settlement System
- **(c)** Ryotwari Settlement System
- **(d)** Mahalwari Settlement System

5. Why was Indian indigo so popular in Italy, France and the United Kingdom?
   (a) India was the world's largest producer of indigo, with no other country producing the dye
   (b) Indigo imports were prohibited in other countries
   (c) Indigo imports were tax-free
   (d) Indigo was used to colour textiles, with a tremendous demand
6. There are a few observations about the Bengal economy after the Company became the Diwan. Choose the one that has no bearing on the Bengal economy.
   (a) The Bengal economy prospered and advanced.
   (b) There were evidence that artisanal production and agricultural cultivation were collapsing.
   (c) As a result of being obliged to sell their items to the Company at cheap prices, artisans began to abandon localities.
   (d) Peasants were unable to pay the dues that were being demanded from them
7. Which year did the British introduce the Permanent Settlement in Bengal?
   (a) 1793 (b) 1800
   (c) 1815 (d) 1780
8. What exactly do you mean when you mention nij and ryoti?
   (a) The two main indigo trading centres
   (b) The two main places in India where indigo was cultivated
   (c) The two important systems of indigo cultivation
   (d) The two main sets of zamindars
9. Who are called the ryots?
   (a) The landowners
   (b) The indigo plant carriers
   (c) The farmers or peasants who actually worked on the property
   (d) The village headmen who governed the local land
10. The following are some considerations for indigo planting in Nij. Choose the option that has nothing to do with nij cultivation.
   (a) The planters cultivated indigo on the fields he owned.
   (b) Planters planted indigo on land they purchased or rented from other zamindars, employing hired labourers directly.
   (c) Planters needed huge areas in compact blocks to cultivate indigo.
   (d) Planters were forced to sign a contract, an agreement with the government (satta).

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Why did so many Scots and Englishmen come to India to work as planters?
   (a) Many wealthy landowners had lost interest in agriculture, therefore Scots and Englishmen became planters to pique their interest.
   (b) Because the British relaxed the rules for private land ownership for Scots and Englishmen, they believed they could make huge profits by producing crops.
   (c) Attracted by the potential of great earnings from indigo production, they invested money and became planters.
   (d) Many Indian farmers auctioned their land because they couldn't afford to pay the taxes, so the Scots and English assumed they could become planters and grow any crop they wanted.
2. Which of the following event was not a part of Indigo rebellion of Bengal?
   1. Thousands of ryots in Bengal refused to grow indigo.
   2. Ryots attacked indigo factories armed with traditional weapons.
   3. Women did not take part actively in Indigo rebellion.

   Choose the correct option:
   (a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3 only
   (c) 3 only (d) None of these
3. What was the Company's main benefit when it was named Diwan of Bengal?
   (a) The Company became the territory's principal financial administrator, allowing them to raise revenue.
   (b) agricultural productivity in Bengal increased.
   (c) The Company assisted artisans in selling their wares at better rates.
   (d) The Company could trade with any country they pleased.
4. Which of the following statements about the Ryotwari settlement is correct?
   1. The Zamindar was responsible for paying the state land revenue.
   2. To keep track of land earnings, a patta was established.
   3. Land revenue was determined by the soil's condition and the type of crop cultivated.

   Codes:
   (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 only (d) All of these
5. In the context of Blue Rebellion, consider the following statement:
   1. Local zamindars backed the ryots in their revolt.
   2. Zamindars were irritated by the planters' growing influence.

   Which among them is/are not correct?
   (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
   (c) All of these (d) None of these
6. Consider the following statements:
   1. Mahatma Gandhi launched the first Civil Disobedience Movement in India.
   2. It was a demonstration against the inequity meted out to tenant farmers in Bihar's Champaran area.

   Which of the above statement(s) is/are correct about Champaran Satyagraha?
   (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
7. The system of "tinkathiya" is referred to as_____.
   (a) The law required a. Champaran's renter to plant three out of every twenty portions of their land.
   (b) Every tenant in Champaran was required by law to grow three trees on their land.

(c) Champaran's renter was required by law to plant three Katthas on their land.
(d) Champaran's renter was required by law to plant three crops on all of their property.

8. Apart form India, in which country people revolted against the production of Indigo?
(a) China (b) Caribbean Islands
(c) Indonesia (d) Egypt

9. Consider the following propositions:
1. The Indigo insurrection of 1859-60 was one of the most violent and extensive peasant uprisings of the early nationalist period.
2. The Bengali intelligentsia supported the uprising.
3. The Hindu and Muslim peasants were completely united.
Which of the statements above is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) All 1, 2 and 3

10. Take into account the following:
1. Bombay and Madras were the first to introduce it. It was recommended by Munro and Charles Reed for introduction in 1820.
2. It was based on Ricardo's scientific rent hypothesis.
Which of the following statement(s) has/have something to do with the Permanent Settlement?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: When Mahatma Gandhi returned from South Africa, a Bihar farmer convinced him to go to Champaran and examine the condition of the indigo cultivators. The presence of Mahatma Gandhi in 1917 signalled the commencement of the Champaran struggle against indigo planters.

2. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: An Englishman named Holt Mackenzie designed the new system (Mahalwari), which went into operation in 1822, in the North Western Provinces of the Bengal Presidency (the majority of this territory is now in Uttar Pradesh).

3. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Small quantities of Indian indigo reached the European market, but the price was exorbitant. As a result, European fabric makers had to rely on another plant known as woad to produce violet and blue dyes. Woad was more commonly available in Europe because it is a temperate zone plant. It was grown in northern Italy, southern France, as well as areas of Germany and the United Kingdom. Worried about indigo competition, European woad producers lobbied their governments to prohibit indigo imports.

4. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: To raise revenue, the Madras and Bombay presidencies implemented the Ryotwari Settlement System. Captain Alexander Read and Sir Thomas Munro believed that there were no traditional zamindars in the south. They contended that the settlement should be made directly with the farmers (ryots) who had tilled the land for centuries.

5. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: By the thirteenth century, Indian indigo was being used to colour textiles in Italy, France and Britain. However, only a little amount of Indian indigo made it to the European market.

6. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Bengal economy grew and got advanced, as determined by the corporation after acquiring Bengal's Diwani rights.

7. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: In 1793, the Company established the Permanent Settlement. The rajas and taluqdars were recognised as zamindars under the conditions of the agreement.

8. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: There were two primary indigo growing systems: nij and ryoti.

9. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The cultivators and peasants who toiled on the soil.

10. Option (d) is correct.
The planters compelled the ryots to sign a contract, an agreement, under the ryoti system (satta). They may put pressure on the village chiefs to sign the contract on behalf of the ryots. Those who accepted the contract received low-interest monetary advances from the planters in order to produce indigo.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: As the indigo trade expanded, the Company's commercial agents and officials began investing in indigo manufacturing. Many Company leaders have quit their employment throughout the years to focus on their personal company. Many Scots and Englishmen migrated to India to become planters, drawn by the potential of large profits.

2. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Thousands of ryots in Bengal refused to plant indigo in March 1859. As the insurrection developed, ryots refused to pay planters' rents and assaulted indigo manufacturers armed with swords, spears and bows and arrows. Women showed up to fight with pots, pans and cooking tools. Planters' employees were socially ostracised and gomasthas

(planters' representatives) who came to collect rent were beaten up. Ryots said they would never longer accept overtures to sow indigo or be harassed by the planters' lathiyals — the planters' lathi-wielding strongmen.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: As Diwan, the Company assumed responsibility for the land under its control. It now had to consider how to govern the property and organise its revenue resources. This had to be done in a way that would generate enough money to cover the company's rising expenditures.

4. **Option (b) is correct.**

Explanation: The Ryotwari village was heavily influenced by the peasants. The land income of the Ryots was directly seized (peasants). To keep track of land earnings, a patta was established. Land revenue was determined by the soil's condition and the type of crop cultivated. Under the Ryotwari system, the land revenue was paid by the farmers directly to the state.

5. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Headmen who had been compelled to sign indigo contracts gathered the indigo peasants and assaulted the lathiyals in various villages, resulting in deadly clashes. Even the zamindars went around urging the ryots to fight the planters in neighbouring villages. These zamindars were incensed by the planters' rising power and being obliged to hand them land on long leases.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: The Champaran Satyagraha was India's first Civil Disobedience campaign, launched by Mahatma Gandhi in reaction to abuses meted out to tenant farmers in Bihar's Champaran district.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: Tinkathia was a plan in Champaran (Bihar) that forced local peasants to produce three kathaa Indigo for every 20 kathaa (Bigha) of land. A Bigha is a common land holding in Bihar that is slightly less than an acre in size.

8. **Option (b) is correct.**

Explanation: In the eighteenth century, French settlers in the Caribbean island of St. Domingue produced indigo and sugar. In 1791, the African slaves who worked on the estates revolted, torching the farms and murdering their wealthy owners. Slavery was abolished in France's colonies in 1792. These events contributed to the demise of indigo crops on the Caribbean islands.

9. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: The statements in this question are all correct. Here are some important aspects to note about this uprising:

- The Indigo insurrection occurred in Bengal's eastern area between 1859 and 1860.
- The Hindu and Muslim peasants were completely united. This was a militant and violent movement that originated from the Indigo Planters' concerns, which included such problems.
  - Indigo planters, mostly Europeans, coerced peasants to cultivate indigo and paid them a pittance in advance.
  - The price paid for indigo plants was always less than what the market would bear.
  - The planters employed force through their armed Lathials in the form of kidnapping, unlawful imprisonment, attacks on women and children, looting, home demolition and crop devastation.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: The Permanent Settlement, also known as the Permanent Settlement of Bengal, was a land tax arrangement between the East India Company and Bengali landlords. It had far-reaching consequences for agricultural practises and output across the British Empire, as well as the political reality of the Indian countryside. It was finished in 1793 by the Company administration, commanded by Charles, Earl Cornwallis, also known as Lord Cornwallis.

HISTORY CLASS-VIII

4 TRIBALS, DIKUS AND THE VISION OF A GOLDEN AGE

Introduction

- Today, we all live in cities with all the amenities available to us, but did you know that there are still some people who live in forests, known as tribal people? In this chapter, we will look at some of our country's tribes and their fight against the dikus, or outsiders, as they were known to the tribals.
- Most tribes' customs and rites differed significantly from those established by Brahmans. Caste divisions were not present in these communities. Those who belonged to the same tribe considered themselves to have common kinship links. Within tribes, however, there were social and economic inequalities.

How Did Tribal Groups Live?

- The tribal people of India were involved in a variety of activities by the nineteenth century.

Some Were Jhum Cultivators

- Jhum cultivation or shifting cultivation, was used by some indigenous groups. The planters trimmed down the treetops to allow sunlight to reach the ground and burned the foliage to clear the soil for agriculture on small plots of land.
- They were moved to another field once the produce was ready to be harvested. In the hilly and forested areas of north-east and central India, shifting cultivators were discovered because these indigenous people were able to travel freely throughout the woodlands, they practised shifting farming.

Some were hunters and gatherers

- In many areas, tribal people subsisted by hunting animals and harvesting forest vegetables. The Khonds (of Orissa) were a nomadic people that hunted in groups and divided the meat among themselves.
- This tribe ate fruits and roots and cooked using oil made from the seeds of the sal and mahua trees. Forest shrubs and herbs were employed for therapeutic purposes, in order to be able to obtain commodities that were not produced locally.
- In exchange for their precious forest output, these forest dwellers swapped commodities with the things they needed. When the forest's bounty dwindled, indigenous people were forced to seek work as labourers.
- Tribal groups relied on traders and moneylenders since they frequently needed money to buy and sell in order to obtain products that were not produced locally. However, the interest rates on the loans were quite expensive.

Some herded animals

- Many tribal groups lived by herding and rearing animals. They were pastoralists who moved with their herds of cattle or sheep according to the seasons. When the grass in one place was exhausted, they moved to another area.
- The Van Gujjars of the Punjab hills and the Labadis of Andhra Pradesh were cattle herders, the Gaddis of Kulu were shepherds and the Bankarwals of Kashmir reared goats.

Some took to settled cultivation

- Even before the nineteenth century, tribal groups began to settle down. The Mundas of Chottanagpur had land that belonged to the entire clan.
- The clan's members were all considered to be descendants of the early settlers who had cleared the area. Hunter-gatherers and moving cultivators were seen as less civilised by British officials than permanent tribal groupings.
- British officials saw settled tribal groups like the Gonds and Santhals as more civilised than hunter-gatherers or shifting cultivators. Those who lived in the forests were considered to be wild and savage: they needed to be settled and civilised.

How Did Colonial Rule Affect Tribal Lives?

- The lives of tribal groups changed during British rule. Let us see what these changes were.

What happened to tribal chiefs?

- Tribal chiefs were powerful people before the British arrived. They had economic power and the authority to administer and rule their domains.
- However, under British administration, their functions and abilities were altered. They were stripped of their administrative rights and obliged to obey British laws enacted in India.

What happened to the shifting cultivators?

- The British wanted tribal groupings to settle down because settled peasants were simpler to manage and administrate. Land settlements were implemented by the British to provide a steady stream of revenue for the state.
- The British measured the land, determined the rights of each individual to that area and set the revenue requirement for the state through land settlement. The British attempt to settle jhum cultivators failed miserably.
- Faced with widespread opposition, the British were forced to grant them the authority to continue shifting agriculture in some areas of the forest.

Forest laws and their impact

- The changes in forest rules had a direct impact on tribal lives. Because they produced timber that the

British desired, some forests were designated as Reserved Forests.

- The British were able to prevent the indigenous people from entering the woodlands, but they had difficulty finding labour. As a result, colonial officials devised a remedy.
- The colonial officials decided to give jhum cultivators small patches of land in the forests and allow them to cultivate. In return, those who lived in the villages had to provide labour to the Forest Department.
- Many tribal groups disobeyed the new rules, continued with practices that were declared illegal and at times rose in open rebellion.

The problem with trade

- Traders and moneylenders began to visit the woodland more frequently in the nineteenth century. They wanted to buy forest products, so they gave monetary loans and demanded that tribes work for long periods of time. Indian silk was in high demand in European marketplaces in the seventeenth century.
- The East India Company pushed silk production as the silk market grew. The Santhals of Hazaribagh raised cocoons and silk traders provided loans to the tribals in exchange for the cocoons. The intermediaries made a lot of money.

The search for work

- The plight of the tribals who had to go far away from their homes in search of work was even worse. From the late nineteenth century, tea plantations started coming up and mining became an important industry.
- Tribals were recruited in large numbers to work at tea plantations of Assam and the coal mines of Jharkhand. They were recruited through contractors who paid them miserably low wages and prevented them from returning home.

A Closer Look

- Tribal groups from all around the country rose up in protest of the new laws, limits on their practises, new taxes they had to pay and exploitation by traders and moneylenders.

Birsa Munda

- The Birsa was born in the mid-1870s and as an adolescent, he heard tales of the Munda uprisings of the past and saw the sirdars (leaders) of the community urging the people to revolt. In the local missionary school, he heard that it was possible for the Mundas to attain the Kingdom of Heaven and regain their lost rights.
- Birsa also spent some time in the company of a prominent Vaishnav preacher. Birsa started a movement and it aimed at reforming tribal society. He urged the Mundas to give up drinking liquor, clean their village and stop believing in witchcraft and sorcery.
- Birsa pushed his followers to reclaim their golden past in 1895. He spoke about a glorious age in the past, a satyug (age of truth), when Mundas lived happily, built embankments, accessed natural springs, planted trees and orchards and earned their living via cultivation.
- The Birsa movement's political goal was to drive away missionaries, moneylenders, landlords and the government and replace them with a Munda Raj led by Birsa. Because the movement was so widespread, The British officials decided to intervene.
- Birsa began touring the villages, pushing people to kill "Ravana" {dikus (outsiders) and the Europeans} and form a kingdom under his rule, using traditional symbols and language to excite people.
- In 1900, Birsa died of cholera and the movement faded out. But, the movement was significant in at least two ways. First – it forced the colonial government to introduce laws so that the land of the tribals could not be easily taken over by dikus. Second – it showed once again that the tribal people had the capacity to protest against injustice and express their anger against colonial rule.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Who was Baigas from central India?
- **(a)** They were hesitant to work for others
- **(b)** They saw themselves as woodland people
- **(c)** It was beneath their dignity to work as labour
- **(d)** All of the above

2. What were the Santhals of Hazaribagh?
- **(a)** Small plots of land cultivated
- **(b)** Silkworm reared
- **(c)** Village herders
- **(d)** None of the above

3. For Kusum and Palash flowers, the local weavers and leather craftsmen resorted to:
- **(a)** Santhals **(b)** Mundas
- **(c)** Khonds **(d)** Labadis

4. The Bastar Rebellion broke out in central India in
- **(a)** 1925 **(b)** 1910
- **(c)** 1920 **(d)** 1935

5. The Khonds lived in the states of:
- **(a)** Karnataka **(b)** Madhya Pradesh
- **(c)** Maharashtra **(d)** Odisha

6. Most tribal like Khonds of Orissa used to do
- **(a)** Shifting cultivation
- **(b)** Subsistence farming
- **(c)** Forest product collection and sale
- **(d)** All of the above

7. In Maharashtra in 1940, which revolt was popular?
- **(a)** The Warli **(b)** The Bastar
- **(c)** The Kols **(d)** Birsa movement

8. In Madhya Pradesh, what is the meaning of bewar?
- **(a)** Shepherds **(b)** Cattle herders
- **(c)** Shifting cultivation
- **(d)** Traders and money lenders

9. Who was the Ulgulan movement's leader?
   (a) Tirot Singh **(b)** Birsa Munda
   (c) Tilka Manjhi **(d)** None of these
10. The tribal extracts oil to cook from the seeds of Sal and Mahua. What exactly is Mahua?
   (a) A tree's root
   (b) A flower consumed or used to create alcohol
   (c) A tree's stem
   (d) A tree's leaves

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. What were the changes brought by Britishers by their Forest laws?
   1. The British extended their control over all forests and declared that forests were State property.
   2. In Reserved forests people were not allowed to move freely, practise jhum cultivation, collect fruits or hunt animals.

   Choose the correct option:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 & 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
2. Consider the following pairs:

	Rebellion	Year
1.	Kols Rebellion	1831-32
2.	Santhals Rebellion	1855
3.	Bastar Rebellion	1910
4.	Warli Revolt	1940

   Which of the above pairs is/are correctly matched?
   (a) 1, 3 and 4 **(b)** 1, 2 and 3
   (c) 1 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4
3. Why did the British think that Chhota Nagpur belt was so important?
   (a) This region possessed abundant minerals as well as dense teak and sal forests.
   (b) This region was a major market for British produce.
   (c) This region had a large number of Adivasis who might labour for the British.
   (d) This region had a lot of large structures.
4. Name the British Act of 1865 that gave them the authority to proclaim any forest land as government land.
   (a) Forest Ruling Act
   (b) Forest Regulation Act
   (c) Forest Bye-Laws
   (d) Forest Directive Act
5. In which region did the Munda Uprising/Rebellion take place?
   (a) Assam
   (b) Chhotangapur region (Ranchi)
   (c) Andhra Pradesh
   (d) Maharashtra
6. Consider the statements given below.
   1. The Songram Sangma tribal insurrection occurred in Nagaland in 1906.
   2 The insurrection was sparked by the British's new forest law, which declared forests to be state property and prohibited hunting and cultivation in reserve forest regions.

   Which of these is the correct answer?
   (a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 only
   (c) 2 only **(d)** None of the above
7. Kol Mutiny took place in the year:
   (a) 1836 **(b)** 1832
   (c) 1835 **(d)** None of these
8. Who led the Santhal uprising?
   (a) Sidhu and Kanhu **(b)** Birsa Munda
   (c) Tana Bhagat **(d)** None of these
9. Which of the following is incorrectly matched in relation to tribal revolts and their locations?
   (a) Kol Uprising: Chhotanagpur
   (b) Munda Uprising: Singhbhum
   (c) Santhal Rebellion: Rajmahal Hills
   (d) Khonda Dora Campaign: Ghumsur
10. Which revolt's leader was Gomdhar Kanwar?
   (a) Bastar uprising **(b)** Bhill uprising
   (c) Ahom uprising **(d)** Rampa uprising

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: In many regions tribal groups lived by hunting animals and gathering forest produce. Some of them did odd jobs in the villages, carrying loads or building roads, while others laboured in the fields of peasants and farmers. When supplies of forest produce shrank, tribal people had to increasingly wander around in search of work as labourers. But many of them – like the Baigas of central India – were reluctant to do work for others. The Baigas saw themselves as people of the forest, who could only live on the produce of the forest. It was below the dignity of a Baiga to become a labourer.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Hazaribagh, in present-day Jharkhand, was an area where the Santhals reared cocoons.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The local weavers and leather workers turned to the Khonds when they needed supplies of kusum and palash flowers to colour their clothes and leather.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Bastar Rebellion in central India broke out in 1910.
5. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Khonds were such a community living in the forests of Orissa/Odisha.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Khonds were such a community living in the forests of Orissa. They regularly went out on collective hunts and then divided the meat amongst themselves. They ate fruits and roots collected from the forest and cooked food with the oil they extracted from the seeds of the sal and mahua. They used many forest shrubs and herbs for medicinal purposes and sold forest produce in the local markets.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Warli Revolt was brokeout in Maharashtra in 1940.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Bewar is a term used in Madhya Pradesh for shifting cultivation.
9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Birsa Munda was the leader of the Ulgulan movement.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Mahua is a flower that is eaten or used to make alcohol.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The life of tribal groups was directly connected to the forest. So, changes in forest laws had a considerable effect on tribal lives. The British extended their control over all forests and declared that forests were State property. Some forests were classified as Reserved Forests for they produced timber which the British wanted. In these forests people were not allowed to move freely, practise jhum cultivation, collect fruits or hunt animals.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Through the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, tribal groups in different parts of the country rebelled against the changes in laws, the restrictions on their practices, the new taxes they had to pay and the exploitation by traders and moneylenders. The Kols rebelled in 1831-32, Santhals rose in revolt in 1855, the Bastar Rebellion in central India broke out in 1910 and the Warli Revolt in Maharashtra in 1940.
3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: British considered the Chhota Nagpur belt vital because this region had rich minerals and also dense teak and sal forests.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Forest Regulation Act of 1865 gave them the authority to proclaim any forest land as government land.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Munda Uprising/Rebellion take place in Chhotangapur region (Ranchi).
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Many tribal groups reacted against the colonial forest laws. They disobeyed the new rules, continued with practices that were declared illegal and at times rose in open rebellion. Such was the revolt of Songram Sangma in 1906 in Assam and the forest satyagraha of the 1930s in the Central Provinces.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Kol uprising, also known in British records as the Kol mutiny, was a revolt by the adivasi Kol people of Chhota Nagpur between 1829 and 1839 in response to economic exploitation brought on by the East India Company's land tenure and administrative systems.
8. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Santhal insurrection (also known as the Sonthal rebellion or the Santhal Hool) was a revolt by the Santhal against the British East India Company and the zamindari system in present-day Jharkhand, India. It started on June 30, 1855 and on November 10, 1855. The East India Company proclaimed martial law, which lasted until January 3, 1856, when martial law was lifted and the insurgency was put down by Presidency forces. The insurrection was led by the four Murmu Brothers: Sidhu, Kanhu, Chand and Bhairav.
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Khond Uprising took place in Orissa in 1846 and 1855.
The Khond people were led by Chakra Bisoi. The Khonds in Orissa played a vital role in preparing the revolt of 1857 against the British Government.
The Ho and Munda Uprisings were organized by the Raja of Parahat. He organized his Ho tribals to revolt against Singhbhum's occupation (now in Jharkhand). The rebellion lasted until 1827 when the Ho tribes were compelled to succumb. Later that year, in 1831, they organized another insurrection, this time with the help of the Mundas of Chotanagpur.
Santhal Rebellion was carried by agricultural people (Santhals) in 1855 in Rajmahal Hills (Bihar).
Khonda Dora Campaign by Khonda Doras led by Korra Mallaya(1900; Dabur region in Vishakapatnam)
10. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Following the First Anglo-Burmese War, the Ahom Revolt erupted in Assam. In 1828, the insurgency erupted in response to the British Empire's seizure of territory. The movement's leader was Gomdhar Konvar.

HISTORY CLASS-VIII

5 WHEN PEOPLE REBEL: 1857 AND AFTER

Policies and the People

- The policies of the East India Company affected different people like kings, queens, peasants, landlords, tribals and soldiers in different ways.

Nawabs lose their power

- Since the mid-eighteenth century, nawabs and rajas have lost their authority and power. Many governing families attempted to bargain with the Company in order to defend their interests.
- After the death of Gangadhar Rao, his queen, Rani Lakshmibai of Jhansi wanted the Company to recognise her adopted son as the heir to the kingdom. The Company, however, rejected down the requests.
- One of the final territories to be acquired was Awadh. A subsidiary alliance was forced on Awadh in 1801 and it was taken over in 1856. The Company intended to put an end to the Mughal dynasty.
- Governor-General Dalhousie declared in 1849 that after Bahadur Shah Zafar's death, his family would be moved out of the Red Fort and given a new home in Delhi. None of Bahadur Shah Zafar's progeny would be recognised as kings after him; instead, they would be referred to as princes.

The peasants and the sepoys

- The high taxes and stringent revenue collection tactics irritated peasants and zamindars in the countryside. Many people lost their lands as a result of their failure to repay moneylenders.
- Employees of the Company who were Indian sepoys were dissatisfied with their pay, allowances and working conditions. When sepoys were told they would have to go to Burma to fight for the Company by water, they rejected, but consented to go via land.
- In 1856, the Company approved a law requiring every new person hired into the Company's army to agree to serve overseas if necessary.

Responses to reforms

- The British transformed Indian society by enacting laws prohibiting the practise of Sati and encouraging widows to remarry. The promotion of English education was widespread.
- Christian missionaries were allowed to operate freely in the country after 1830 and they were allowed to hold land and property. In 1850, a new law was passed to make it simpler to convert to Christianity. The statute gave Indian Christians the right to inherit their forefathers' property.

A Mutiny Becomes a Popular Rebellion

- A big number of people believed that they were fighting the same enemy and fought back at the same time. People must have been organised, communicated, taken initiative and demonstrated confidence in order for a situation like this to flourish.
- In May 1857, the English East India Company was confronted with a major uprising. Beginning in Meerut, sepoys mutinied in other locations and a significant number of civilians from various social classes rose up in revolt. It is regarded as the nineteenth century's largest armed resistance to colonialism.

From Meerut to Delhi

- Mangal Pandey was executed on March 29, 1857, for attacking officers in Barrackpore. Some sepoys in the Meerut Regiment refused to undertake army practise with the new cartridges, which were suspected of being covered in cow and pig fat.
- For disobeying their officers, eighty-five sepoys were removed from service and sentenced to ten years in prison on May 9, 1857.
- On May 10, the army released the sepoys who had been imprisoned in the Meerut Prison. The soldiers were adamant about ending their reign over the country.
- The sepoys galloped all night on May 10th and arrived in Delhi early the next morning. Soldiers arrived at the Red Fort, triumphant, demanding to meet Badshah.
- Bahadur Shah Zafar agreed to the proposal and sent letters to all of the country's chiefs and rulers, urging them to unite and form a confederacy of Indian nations to fight the British.
- The Mughal dynasty ruled over a sizable portion of India. The rise of British rule put small kings and chieftains in charge of various provinces under pressure.
- The British expected the uproar sparked by the cartridges' distribution to subside. The situation, however, was drastically altered by Bahadur Shah Zafar's choice.

The rebellion spreads

- The British were driven out of Delhi and there was no rebellion for nearly a week. Regiments revolted and forces converged on nodes such as Delhi, Kanpur and Lucknow.
- Nana Saheb, the late Peshwa Baji Rao's adopted son, declared himself Peshwa, collected military men and ousted the British army from the city. Birjis Qadr was proclaimed the new Nawab in Lucknow.
- Rani Lakshmibai joined the rebel sepoys at Jhansi and fought the British alongside Tantia Tope, Nana Saheb's general. Rani Avantibai Lodhi of Ramgarh

raised and led an army against the British who had taken over the governance of her state in the Mandla district of Madhya Pradesh.

- In a number of conflicts, the British were beaten. In the Awadh region, in particular, a situation of widespread popular insurrection evolved. Many new leaders have emerged. Ahmadullah Shah from Faizabad, Bakht Khan from Delhi and Kunwar Singh from Bihar are just a few examples.
- The British were greatly outnumbered by the rebel forces. They were defeated in a number of battles. This convinced the people that the rule of the British had collapsed for good and gave them the confidence to take the plunge and join the rebellion.

The Company Fights Back

- The Company brought reinforcements from England, passed new laws to easily convict the rebels. In September 1857, Delhi was recaptured and the last Mughal emperor, Bahadur Shah Zafar was sentenced to life imprisonment.
- In March 1858, Lucknow was taken and Rani Lakshmibai was defeated and killed in June 1858. Rani Avantibai chose to embrace death when surrounded by the British on all sides. Tantia Tope was captured and killed in April 1859.
- Desertion was encouraged by the loss of insurgent forces. The British promised awards for loyal landholders, who would continue to enjoy traditional rights over their lands, in order to earn people's loyalty.
- If anyone who rebelled against the British surrendered and did not kill any white people, they would be secure and their claims to land and rights would not be ignored.

Aftermath

- By the end of 1859, the British had regained control of the country. Some of the important changes that were introduced by the British are mentioned below:
  1. In 1858, a new Act was passed that transferred the East India Company's powers to the British Crown, allowing for better supervision of Indian affairs. A member of the British Cabinet was named Secretary of State for India, with responsibility for all aspects of India's governance. He was granted the Indian Council as a council to advise him. The Governor-General of India was given the title of Viceroy. The British Government accepted direct responsibility for the rule of India as a result of these policies.
  2. All ruling chiefs were assured that their territory would never be annexed in future. They were allowed to pass on their kingdoms to their heirs, including adopted sons. The Indian rulers were to hold their kingdoms as subordinates of the British Crown.
  3. In the army, the proportion of Indian soldiers was lowered while the number of European soldiers increased.
  4. Land and property belonging to Muslims were taken in enormous quantities and they were treated with mistrust and hostility.
  5. The British opted to respect the people of India's traditional religious and social customs.
  6. Landlords and zamindars were protected by policies that guaranteed their rights to their lands.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. What role did Tantia Tope play in the 1857 mutiny?
   (a) He led Nana Saheb's army as its commander-in-chief.
   (b) He organized Bhils of Panchamahal region against the British
   (c) Both (a) and (b)
   (d) Neither (a) nor (b)
2. During the 1857 Revolt in Lucknow, who was the most renowned leader?
   (a) Begum Hazrat Mahal
   (b) Rani Laxmi Bai
   (c) Kunwar Singh
   (d) Bahadur Shah Zafar
3. Who was hailed by Sir Hugh Rose as the "best and bravest military leader of the rebels"?
   (a) Begum Hazrat Mahal
   (b) Rani Laxmi Bai
   (c) Kuwar Singh
   (d) Bahadur Shah Zafar
4. The sepoys were angered by the British because of
   (a) Their divide-and-rule policy
   (b) The cartridge episode
   (c) Their intolerable behaviour
   (d) None of these.
5. Consider the following claims about the 1857 revolt's cause and choose the correct one.
   (a) The salaries of Indian and European soldiers were vastly different.
   (b) The European officers regarded the Indian sepoys with contempt.
   (c) The sepoys were sent to far-flung corners of the empire without receiving any additional pay.
   (d) All of the above
6. One of the socioeconomic causes of the 1857 revolution was which of the following?
   (a) The English were unable to form any kind of social bond with the Indians.
   (b) The British's racial arrogance created a chasm between rulers and ruled.
   (c) Both A and B are true.
   (d) The company's business practises harmed Indian handicrafts.
7. Who was bestowed with the position of Viceroy?
   (a) Chief Commissioner
   (b) Governor General

(c) Forest Manager
(d) None of these are true

8. After the death of King Bahadur Shah Zafar, what did Lord Dalhousie say?
(a) The British set fire to the royal palace, killing the entire royal family.
(b) The king's family would be relocated from the Red Fort and granted a new residence.
(c) The company imprisoned the family members and annexed the state of Delhi.
(d) His family can remain in Red Fort and his son will be crowned the next king.

9. Who assisted Colin Campbell in rescuing the British who were locked up in the Lucknow residency?
(a) Kunwar Singh (b) Nana Saheb
(c) Bahadur Shah Zafar (d) None of these

10. When the sepoys were ordered to proceed to Burma by sea to fight for the Company in 1824, they refused to obey the order. Why?
(a) They were popularly considered to lose their faith and caste if they crossed the sea.
(b) It was thought that if the sepoys went to Burma, they would not be paid.
(c) It was widely assumed that Burma was a hostile country that did not welcome foreign visitors.
(d) It was widely assumed that they had been kidnapped and would be imprisoned there.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. The Revolt of 1857 took place under whose Governor-Generalship?
(a) Lord Canning (b) Lord Irwin
(c) Lord Lytton (d) None of these

2. Which of the following is not correctly matched?

	Places of Revolt	Leader of 1857
1.	Kanpur	Nana Saheb
2.	Baghpat	Shahmal
3.	Mathura	Kadam Singh Maulawi
4.	Faizabad	Ahmadullah

Codes:
(a) 2 (b) 4
(c) 1 (d) 3

3. Lord Cornwallis introduced which of the following system/systems?
1. Daroga system
2. Subsidiary Alliance system
3. Permanent settlement in Bengal
Select the correct option from codes given below:
(a) 1 only (b) 1 and 2 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3

4. What role did Christian missionaries have in assisting the British East India Company? Choose the statement about the missionaries that is NOT TRUE from the following list.
(a) Christian missionaries had complete freedom of operation and even possessed land and property.
(b) Women's education was not encouraged by Christian missionaries.
(c) An Indian who converts to Christianity may be able to inherit his or her ancestors' property.
(d) The people were converted to Christianity by Christian missionaries.

5. The following is a mixed-up sequence of events that occurred on May 9, 1857. Choose the correct statement order from the given list.
1. Other soldiers stationed at Meerut revolted, leading to the release of the imprisoned men by British superiors.
2. A number of soldiers revolted and stormed out of their military barracks.
3. The freed soldiers assassinated British officers and marched to Delhi, proclaiming Mughal ruler Bahadur Shah Zafar as India's sovereign.
4. For refusing to use greased cartridges, the soldiers were discharged and condemned to ten years in prison
Codes:
(a) 2, 3, 4, 1 (b) 1, 2, 4 3
(c) 1, 2, 3, 4 (d) 2, 4, 1, 3

6. Consider the following statements with reference of measures taken by British Government after mutiny of 1857:
1. The British Parliament passed a new Act in 1858 and transferred the powers of the East India Company to the British Crown.
2. All ruling chiefs of the country were assured that their territory would never be annexed in future.
3. The land and property of Muslims was not confiscated on a large scale.
Which of the above statement is/are correct?
(a) 1 only
(b) 1 and 2 only
(c) All of them
(d) None of them

7. Consider the following statement in context of EIC's reforms for Indian society:
1. Laws were passed to stop the practice of sati and to encourage the remarriage of widows.
2. English-language education was not actively promoted.
3. The Company allowed missionaries of every religion to function freely.
4. In 1850, a new law was passed to make conversion to Christianity easier.
Which of the following statement is/are correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 1 and 2 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 only (d) 1 and 4 only

8. Where did Kunwar Singh and Maulvi Ahmadullah lead the sepoy mutiny?
(a) Arrah and Faizabad
(b) Lucknow and Meerut
(c) Punjab and Kolkata
(d) Arrah and Patna

9. Queen Victoria's Proclamation in the year 1858 was
1. To disclaim any intention to annex Indian states.

2. To place the Indian administration under the British Crown.
3. To regulate East India Company's trade with India.

(a) Only option 1 is correct
(b) Only option 2 is correct
(c) Options 1 and 2 are correct
(d) Options 1, 2 and 3 are correct

10. With reference to the revolt of the year 1857, who of the following was betrayed by a friend; captured and put to death by the British?
(a) Nana Sahib
(b) Kunwar Singh
(c) Khan Bahadur Khan
(d) None of these

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Tantia Tope was the commander-in-chief of Nana Saheb's army during the 1857 mutiny and he organised the Bhils of the Panchamahal region against the British.

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Begum Hazrat Mahal, Nawab Wajid Ali Shah's wife, was also known as the Begum of Awadh. She revolted against the British East India Company during the Indian Rebellion of 1857. She was granted asylum in Nepal in 1879, where she died.

3. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Rani Laxmi Bai was hailed by Sir Hugh Rose as "the best and bravest military leader of the insurgents."

4. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Because of the cartridge incident, the sepoys were angered with the British. Because, it was suspected of being covered with cow and pig fat.

5. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The Indian sepoys employed by the Company were likewise dissatisfied. They were dissatisfied with their wages, benefits and working conditions. Furthermore, several of the new restrictions contradicted their religious sensitivities and beliefs. Many individuals in the nation felt that crossing the water would cause them to lose their faith and caste. So, when the sepoys were commanded to go to Burma by water to fight for the Company in 1824, they refused, even though they consented to go by land. In 1856, the Company approved a new legislation requiring every new individual who joined the Company's army to pledge to serve overseas if necessary. Sepoys, too, reacted to what was going on in the countryside. Many of them were peasants with families who lived in communities. As a result, the peasants' rage swiftly spread among the sepoys.

6. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The social reasons for 1857 revolt were:
- The English were unable to create any social relationships with the Indians.
- The British's racial arrogance produced a schism between the rulers and the ruled.

7. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: In order to assure more responsible management of Indian affairs, the British Parliament approved a new Act in 1858 that transferred the powers of the East India Company to the British Crown. The Governor-General of India was elevated to the rank of Viceroy, a personal representative of the Crown. The British Government took direct responsibility for ruling India through these actions.

8. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Governor-General Dalhousie said in 1849 that following the death of Bahadur Shah Zafar, the king's family would be relocated from the Red Fort to another location in Delhi. Governor-General Canning declared in 1856 that Bahadur Shah Zafar would be the last Mughal ruler and that following his death, none of his successors would be recognised as kings; instead, they would be known as princes.

9. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Colin Campbell was assisted by the Gurkha regiment in rescuing the British who were hold up in the Lucknow residence.

10. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Many individuals in the nation felt that crossing the water would cause them to lose their faith and caste. As a result, when the sepoys were commanded to proceed to Burma by water to fight for the Company in 1824, they rejected.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: One of India's greatest historic revolts occurred in 1857, under Lord Canning's Governorship.

2. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Devi Singh was the leader of the 1857 Mathura Revolt. Meerut's leader during the 1857 Revolt was Kadam Singh.

3. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Daroga was instituted as part of Police reforms by Lord Cornwallis (1786–1793). In 1793, he also established the Permanent Settlement of Bengal.

4. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Christian missionaries are permitted to operate freely in its jurisdiction and even possess land and property. A new law was passed in 1850 to facilitate conversion to Christianity. This legislation permitted an Indian who converted to Christianity to inherit his forefathers' property. However, it is not true that Christian missionaries did not promote women's education.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The correct sequence of events are as follows:

- A number of soldiers marched out of their military quarters and mutinied.
- The soldiers were dismissed and sentenced to 10 years imprisonment for refusing to use the greased cartridges.
- Other troops stationed at Meerut rose up in protest and British authorities released the imprisoned men.
- The released soldiers killed the British officers and after marching to Delhi proclaimed the Mughal emperor Bahadur Shah Zafar as the emperor of India.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The following are the significant alterations brought by the British after the mutiny of 1857:

- The British Parliament approved a new Act in 1858 that transferred the powers of the East India Company to the British Crown.
- All of the country's governing chiefs were permitted to pass their kingdoms on to their heirs, even adopted sons.
- Muslims' land and possessions were widely taken and they were viewed with mistrust and hostility.
- It was decided that the proportion of Indian soldiers in the army would be reduced and the number of European soldiers would be increased.
- The British opted to respect the people of India's traditional religious and social customs.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The British saw the need to improve Indian society. Laws were enacted to prohibit the practise of sati and to encourage widow remarriage. The study of English was strongly pushed. After 1830, the Company let Christian missionaries to operate freely throughout its realm, even owning land and property. A new law was passed in 1850 to facilitate conversion to Christianity. This legislation permitted an Indian who converted to Christianity to inherit his forefathers' property. Many Indians came to believe that the British were undermining their religion, social practises and way of life.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The sepoy insurrection at Arrah and Faizabad was led by Kunwar Singh and Maulvi Ahmadullah respectively.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Queen Victoria's Proclamation of 1858 was intended for:

- To disclaim any intention to annex Indian states.
- To place the Indian administration under the British Crown.
- To regulate East India Company’s trade with India.

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Gwalior's Scindia was hostile to the revolt. Mansingh betrayed Tantia Tope since he was a Scindia loyalist at the time.

HISTORY CLASS-VIII

6 WEAVERS, IRON SMELTERS AND FACTORY OWNERS

Introduction

- This chapter tells the story of the crafts and industries of India during British rule by focusing on two industries, namely, textiles and iron & steel.
- Both these industries were crucial for the industrial revolution in the modern world. The mechanised production of cotton textiles made Britain the foremost industrial nation in the nineteenth century.
- And when its iron and steel industry started growing from the 1850s, Britain came to be known as the "workshop of the world".
- The industrialisation of Britain had a close connection with the conquest and colonisation of India.

Indian Textiles and the World Market

- India was the world's largest manufacturer of cotton textiles around 1750, famous for their superb quality and beautiful craftsmanship. Southeast Asia (Java, Sumatra and Penang) as well as West and Central Asia traded them. Indian textiles were purchased by European trading companies and sold in Europe.

Words tell us histories

- Fine cotton cloth from India was first discovered by European traders in Mosul, present-day Iraq, carried by Arab merchants. The Portuguese travelled to India in pursuit of spices and cotton fabrics, which they dubbed "calico" in Europe (derived from Calicut). There were other such phrases that alluded to Indian textiles' appeal in Western markets.
- Printed cotton fabrics were termed chintz, cossaes (or khassa) and bandanna, among other names. The word chintz comes from the Hindi word chhint, which refers to a textile with little colourful floral motifs. The magnificent floral motifs, delicate texture and relative cheapness of Indian cotton fabrics sparked a trend in England and Europe.
- Bandanna, derived from the word "bandhna", refers to any brightly coloured and printed scarf for the neck or head produced through a method of tying and dying.
- There were other cloths in the order book that were noted by their place of origin: Kasimbazar, Patna, Calcutta, Orissa, Charpoore. The widespread use of such words shows how popular Indian textiles had become in different parts of the world.

Indian textiles in European markets

- The Indian textiles became widely popular by the early eighteenth century, which worried wool and silk makers in England. They began protesting against the import of Indian cotton textiles. In 1720, the British Government enacted legislation banning the use of printed cotton textiles – chintz – in England, called the **Calico Act**.
- The textile businesses in England had only recently begun to flourish and they desired a secure market within the kingdom by prohibiting Indian textiles from entering. The Calico printing industry was established with government support. In England, Indian motifs were copied and printed on white muslin or unbleached Indian cloth.
- John Kaye invented the spinning jenny in 1764. The steam engine, created by Richard Arkwright in 1786, revolutionised cotton textile weaving. Until the end of the eighteenth century, Indian textiles dominated world trade. By importing silver, European trading companies were able to acquire cotton and silk fabrics in India.

Who were the weavers?

- Weavers often belonged to communities that specialised in weaving. Their skills were passed on from one generation to the next. The tanti weavers of Bengal, the julahas or momin weavers of north India, sale and kaikollar and devangs of south India are some of the communities famous for weaving.
- The charkha and takli were employed in the initial stage of manufacture, spinning. The charkha spun the thread, which was then rolled on the takli. The weaver knitted the thread into cloth once it was spun.
- The dyer, known as rangrez, dyed the thread for coloured fabrics. Weavers needed the expertise of chhipigars, or specialist block printers, to create printed cloth.

The decline of Indian textiles

- In Britain, cotton industries were developed which affected textile producers in India.
- Indian textiles had to compete with British textiles in the European and American markets.
- Exporting textiles to England also became increasingly difficult since very high duties were imposed on Indian textiles imported to Britain.
- The traditional market for Indian commodities in Africa, America and Europe has been displaced by English-made cotton textiles. Distressed weavers petitioned the government for assistance after English and European corporations stopped buying Indian textiles.

- By the 1830s, Indian markets had been swamped by British cotton material, which harmed specially weavers and spinners. Handloom weaving survived in India because some types of cloth could not be produced by machines.
- In the late 1800s, Sholapur in western India and Madura in southern India emerged as key new weaving centres. During the national movement, Mahatma Gandhi pushed people to boycott imported textiles in favour of hand-spun and handwoven material.
- The charkha became a symbol of India, whereas the khadi became a symbol of nationalism. The charkha was placed in the centre of the Indian National Congress's tricolour flag, which was adopted in 1931.

Cotton mills come up

- The first cotton mill in India was set up as a spinning mill in Bombay in 1854. From the early nineteenth century, Bombay had grown as an important port for the export of raw cotton from India to England and China. It was close to the vast black soil tract of western India where cotton was grown. When the cotton textile mills came up they could get supplies of raw material with ease.
- By 1900, Parsi and Gujarati industrialists had established over 84 mills in Bombay. Cities began to create mills and the first mill in Ahmedabad was established in 1861. Cotton mill expansion necessitated more workers. The mills employed poor peasants, artisans and agricultural labourers.
- The textile factory industry in India had challenges, such as, competing with low-cost textiles imported from the United Kingdom. In the most countries, the government-aided industrialization by levying high import tariffs, which eliminated competition and protected fledgling companies.
- As a result, the first big spurt in the development of cotton factory production in India occurred during the first World War, when British textile imports fell and Indian factories were called upon to create cloth for military supplies.

The sword of Tipu Sultan and Wootz steel

- Tipu Sultan's sword was unique in that it possessed an extremely strong and sharp edge that could readily rip through an opponent's armour.
- The sword's exceptional quality stemmed from a specific form of high carbon steel known as Wootz, which was produced throughout south India. Wootz steel generated a razor-sharp edge with a flowing water pattern due to the presence of very minute carbon crystals imbedded in the iron.
- Wootz steel was made in Mysore in hundreds of smelting (process of obtaining a metal from rock or soil by heating at very high temperature or melting metal objects to make something new) furnaces. Iron was combined with charcoal and placed inside little clay pots in these furnaces. The smelters manufactured steel ingots for sword forging by carefully controlling temperatures.
- Wootz is an anglicised version of the Kannada word ukku, Telugu hukku and Tamil and Malayalam urukku – meaning steel. The Wootz steel making process was widely known in south India, which completely lost its existence by the mid-nineteenth century. The swords and armour making industry died with the conquest of India by the British and imports of iron and steel from England displaced the iron and steel produced by craftspeople in India.

Abandoned furnaces in villages

- Wootz steel manufacturing necessitated a highly specialised iron refining procedure. Iron smelting was common in India until the late eighteenth century.
- Every district in Bihar and Central India had a smelter. Clay and sun-dried bricks were used to construct the furnaces. The art of iron smelting had fallen out of favour by the late nineteenth century. The reason for this was that the government forbade individuals from entering the protected areas.
- In other locations, the government provided access to the forest, but iron smelters were required to pay a substantial tax to the forest department for each furnace they used.
- Iron and steel were imported from Britain by the late nineteenth century. By the early twentieth century, iron and steel artisans were up against new competition.

Iron and steel factories come up in India

- In 1904, an American geologist named Charles Weld and Jamsetji Tata's eldest son, Dorabji Tata, travelled to Chhattisgarh in quest of iron ore resources.
- In India, they intended to build a sophisticated iron and steel plant. After months of searching, Weld and Dorabji discovered Rajhara Hills, which contained some of the world's finest ores.
- However, the area was dry and there was no water around. As a result, the search continued and the Agarias assisted in the finding of an iron ore supply.
- To build the factory and an industrial township – Jamshedpur – a significant amount of forest was cut along the banks of the river Subarnarekha. In 1912, the Tata Iron and Steel Company (TISCO) began manufacturing steel.
- Prior to TISCO, India was importing steel from the United Kingdom. By the time TISCO was established, the situation had altered. When the First World War broke out in 1914, steel manufactured in the United Kingdom had to fulfil the demands of the European conflict.
- Because the conflict lasted several years, TISCO was forced to make shells and carriage wheels. Within the British empire, TISCO grew to be the largest steel producer.
- Industrial expansion occurred in the case of iron and steel when British imports into India decreased and the market for Indian industrial goods grew. As the nationalist movement and the industrial class grew in strength, the call for government protection grew louder.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Women and men who carried iron ore baskets on their heads were called as
   (a) bandanna **(b)** wootz
   (c) agaria **(d)** cossaes
2. The term Chintz, derived from the Hindi word Chhint, was first used by Europeans. What does the word Chhint mean?
   (a) A weaver is a person who weaves.
   (b) A fabric with small, bright flowery motifs.
   (c) A silk-based fabric
   (c) A ready-to-ship order to the United Kingdom
3. In which place in present day Iraq did the European trader's first encountered fine cotton from India carried by Arab merchants?
   (a) Basra **(b)** Mosul
   (c) Tekrit **(d)** Baghdad
4. From the following list, identify the important weavers of Northern India.
   (a) Kaikollar **(b)** Devangs
   (c) Julahas **(d)** None of these
5. TISCO expanded steel production during the
   (a) After 1935 **(b)** Second World War
   (c) First World War **(d)** None of these
6. Initially, the Portuguese travelled to India in quest of
   (a) Spices **(b)** Steel
   (c) Cotton **(d)** None of these
7. The sword of Tipu Sultan was built of
   (a) Silver **(b)** Wootz
   (c) Steel **(d)** Iron
8. Which of the following did Michael Faraday spend four years studying?
   (a) The ancient Indian culture
   (b) The property of Indian steel
   (c) The properties of Indian Wootz
   (d) None of these
9. Which part of India had some of the world's best ores?
   (a) Rajhara Hills **(b)** Jharia
   (c) Raniganj **(d)** None of these
10. Spinning Jenny was invented by which one of the following?
    (a) Richard Arkwright **(b)** John Kaye
    (c) Michael Faraday **(d)** None of the above

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Who of the following were economic critic/critics of colonialism in India?
   1. Dadabhai Naoroji
   2. G. Subramania Iyer
   3. R.C. Dutt
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
2. The word bandanna comes from the word bandhana. Which of the following definitions of the word Bandanna is the most appropriate?
   (a) Any bright coloured dress.
   (b) A bright coloured scarf for the neck or head
   (c) A woolen shawl
   (d) A woolen scarf
3. With the reference of Indian textiles, consider the following pairs:
   1. Jamdani : A printed cotton cloth.
   2. Bandanna : It is a brightly coloured and printed scarf for the neck or head.
   3. Chintz : It is a fine muslin on which decorative motifs are woven on the loom, typically in grey and white.
   Choose the correct pair/pairs among above:
   (a) 1 and 2 are correct
   (b) 2 and 3 are correct
   (c) 2 only
   (d) 3 only
4. In England, in 1720, a law was passed prohibiting the use of patterned cotton textiles known as chintz. Which of following was that law?
   (a) The Silk Act **(b)** The Calico Act
   (c) The Bandanna Act **(d)** The Chintz Act
5. Which of following is incorrect statement about the Jamdani?
   (a) Jamdani is a fine muslin on which decorative motifs are woven on the loom.
   (b) A mixture of cotton and gold thread was often used for this.
   (c) The most important centres of jamdani weaving were Dacca and Calcutta.
   (d) All the above statement are correct.
6. Name the machine that boosted the productivity of traditional spindles in the textile industry.
   (a) Flying shuttle **(b)** Spinning Jenny
   (c) Spinning engine **(d)** None of these
7. What did the Portuguese bring back with them to Europe?
   (a) Wootz **(b)** Silk
   (c) Coffee **(d)** Cotton
8. The company TISCO was founded in the city of:
   (a) Bhilai **(b)** Jamshedpur
   (c) Surat **(d)** Mumbai
9. Kanpur had its first cotton mill in
   (a) 1862 **(b)** 1872
   (c) 1855 **(d)** None of the above

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Agarias were experts in the art of iron smelting. A succession of famines ravaged India's drylands in the late nineteenth century. Many Agaria iron smelters in central India quit working, abandoned their communities and travelled in search of better opportunities.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Chintz was a fabric with tiny, colourful floral motifs. The English name chintz is derived from the Hindi word chhint, which refers to a textile with tiny and colourful floral motifs.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Fine cotton fabric from India was first discovered by European traders in Mosul, Iraq, transported by Arab merchants.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Weavers were frequently members of weaving communities. Their abilities were passed down from generation to generation. Tanti weavers of Bengal, julahas or momin weavers of north India, sale and kaikollar weavers of south India are some of the weaving cultures.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The First World War began in 1914. Steel manufactured in the United Kingdom was now required to satisfy the demands of the European war effort. As a result, shipments of British steel into India fell precipitously and the Indian Railways resorted to TISCO for rail supplies. As the conflict stretched on for years, TISCO was forced to make shells and carriage wheels. By 1919, the colonial government had purchased 90% of the steel produced by TISCO. Over time, TISCO grew to become the largest steel producer in the British Empire.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Portuguese first came to India in search of spices, they landed in Calicut on the Kerala coast in south-west India.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Tipu's famed sword was fashioned of Wootz, a high carbon steel.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Michael Faraday, the great scientist and discoverer of electricity and electromagnetic, studied the qualities of Indian Wootz for four years (1818-22).
9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Rajhara Hills contained some of the best ores on the planet.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Spinning Jenny - A machine that allowed a single worker to operate many spindles on which thread was spun. John Kaye devised the spinning jenny in 1764, which enhanced the output of conventional spindles.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Dadabhai Naoroji, G. Subramania Iyer and R.C. Dutt were economic opponents of colonialism in India. They were constantly hostile to British India's economic policies.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The term "bandanna" currently refers to any vividly coloured and patterned neck or head scarf. Originally, the name "bandhna" (Hindi meaning tying) refers to a sort of vividly coloured fabric manufactured using a tying and dying procedure.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Jamdani is a fine muslin on which beautiful designs, often in grey and white, are woven on the loom. A bandanna is any brightly coloured and patterned neck or head scarf. Chintz, on the other hand, is a printed cotton material.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Worried about the popularity of Indian textiles, wool and silk producers in England began to protest the import of Indian cotton textiles in the early eighteenth century. The British government issued regulations in 1720 prohibiting the use of printed cotton material — chintz – in England. Surprisingly, this Act was dubbed the Calico Act.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Jamdani is a fine muslin on which beautiful designs, often in grey and white, are woven on the loom. A cotton and gold thread blend was frequently utilised. Dacca in Bengal and Lucknow in the United Provinces were the most prominent jamdani weaving centres.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Competition from Indian textiles prompted England to seek technical innovation. John Kaye devised the spinning jenny in 1764, which enhanced the output of conventional spindles.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Portuguese arrived in India in pursuit of spices, landing in Calicut on the Kerala coast in south-west India. The cotton fabrics they brought back to Europe, together with the spices, were dubbed "calico" (derived from Calicut) and calico eventually became the generic term for all cotton textiles.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1912, the Tata Iron and Steel Company (TISCO) began manufacturing steel on the banks of the Subarnarekha River in Jamshedpur.
9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Bombay had about 84 mills functioning by 1900. Many of these were founded by Parsi and Gujarati merchants who built their fortune in trading with China. Mills appeared in other cities as well. Ahmedabad's first mill was established in 1861. A mill was erected at Kanpur, United Provinces, a year later, in 1862.

HISTORY CLASS-VIII

7 CIVILISING THE "NATIVE", EDUCATING THE NATION

Introduction

- The British in India wanted not only territorial conquest and control over revenues. They also felt that they had a cultural mission: they had to "civilise the natives" and change their customs and values.
- This chapter will help students understand the implication British rule had on the lives of students.

The tradition of Orientalism

- In 1783, a person named William Jones arrived in Calcutta. He had an appointment as a junior judge at the Supreme Court that the Company had set up. In addition to being a law expert, Jones was a linguist (someone who knows or studies several languages).
- He had studied Greek and Latin at Oxford, knew French and English, had picked up Arabic from a friend and had also learned Persian. At Calcutta, he began spending many hours a day with pandits who taught him the subtleties of Sanskrit language, grammar and poetry. Soon he was studying ancient Indian texts on law, philosophy, religion, politics, morality, arithmetic, medicine and the other sciences.
- Henry Thomas Colebrooke and Nathaniel Halhed were likewise fascinated by old Indian culture, learning Indian languages and translating works from Sanskrit and Persian into English. Jones founded the Asiatic Society of Bengal with them, as well as Asiatick Researches, a periodical.
- Jones and Colebrooke believed that the Indian culture had reached its pinnacle in the past, but had since sunk. It was required to unearth ancient sacred and legal books in order to gain a deeper understanding of India.
- Jones and Colebrooke continued to research old texts, deciphering their meanings, interpreting them and disseminating their findings. They believed that this project will assist Indians in rediscovering their own heritage and understanding the beauties of their past that have been forgotten.
- Institutions should stimulate the study of ancient Indian classics, as well as Sanskrit and Persian literature and poetry, according to Company officials. Hindus and Muslims should learn about what they are already familiar with, as well as what they love and cherish.
- In Calcutta, a madrasa was founded in 1781 to promote the study of Arabic, Persian and Islamic law and in Benaras, the Hindu College was founded in 1791 to promote the study of ancient Sanskrit books that would be important for the country's administration.

Grave errors of the East

- From the early nineteenth century many British officials began to criticise the Orientalist (those with a scholarly knowledge of the language and culture of Asia) vision of learning. They said that knowledge of the East was full of errors and unscientific thought; Eastern literature was non-serious and light-hearted. So, they argued that it was wrong on the part of the British to spend so much effort in encouraging the study of Arabic and Sanskrit language and literature.
- James Mill was one of those who attacked the Orientalists. According to him, the aim of education should be to teach what was useful and practical. So, Indians should be familiar with the scientific and technical advances that the West had made.
- According to Thomas Babington Macaulay, India was an uncivilised country in need of civilisation. He argued that the British administration in India should stop squandering public funds on Oriental education since it was useless.
- Macaulay believed that learning English would enable Indians to study some of the best literature the world had to offer, as well as keep them informed about advances in Western science and philosophy.
- English was established as the medium of teaching for higher education under the English Education Act of 1835. For schools, English textbooks began to be developed.

Education for commerce

- In 1854, the Court of Directors of the East India Company in London sent an educational despatch to the Governor-General in India. Issued by Charles Wood, the President of the Board of Control of the Company, it has come to be known as Wood's Despatch.
- Outlining the educational policy that was to be followed in India, it emphasised once again the practical benefits of a system of European learning, as opposed to Oriental knowledge.
- The Despatch pointed that Indians would benefit from European education because they would understand the benefits of increased trade and commerce, as well as the significance of growing the country's resources.
- Their interests and wants would alter if they adopted European lifestyles. Indians' moral character would improve as a result of their exposure to European culture.
- Following the 1854 Despatch, the British enacted a number of actions. Government education departments were established to exert control over all aspects of education.
- Efforts were made to develop a university education system. Universities were founded in Calcutta, Madras and Bombay in 1857. Attempts were also made to bring about improvements in the educational system.

The demand for moral education

- The argument for practical education was strongly criticized by the Christian missionaries in India in the nineteenth century. The missionaries felt that education should attempt to improve the moral character of the people and morality could be improved only through Christian education.
- Until 1813, the East India Company was opposed to missionary activities in India because they feared that missionary activities would provoke reaction amongst the local population and make them suspicious of the British presence in India.
- Unable to establish an institution within British-controlled territories, the missionaries set up a mission at Serampore in an area under the control of the Danish East India Company.
- Over the nineteenth century, missionary schools were set up all over India. After 1857, however, the British government in India was reluctant to directly support missionary education. There was a feeling that any strong attack on local customs, practices, beliefs and religious ideas might enrage "native" opinion.

The report of William Adam

- William Adam was sent by the Company to tour the provinces of Bengal and Bihar in the 1830s to report on the progress of education in vernacular schools.
- According to Adam's study, there were over 1 lakh pathshalas in Bengal and Bihar, each with no more than 20 students. Wealthy persons or the local community established these institutions.
- With no set fee, no printed books, no dedicated school building, no benches or chairs, no blackboards, no system of separate classes, no roll call registers, no annual tests and no regular timetable, the education system was flexible.
- Classes were held under a banyan tree, in a village shop or temple corner, or at the guru's home. School fees were determined by the parents' income: the wealthy had to pay more than the poor. Orally, the guru determined what to teach based on the needs of the students. Students were seated in one location and the guru interacted with groups of children at various stages of learning.
- This adaptable system met local requirements. Classes were not held during the harvest season. When the crops had been cut and stored, the pathshala resumed.

New routines, new rules

- The Company's primary concern was higher education. Following 1854, the Company decided to enhance the vernacular education system by instituting order, enforcing procedures, setting standards and ensuring regular inspections.
- The Company appointed several government pandits and sent them to four to five schools. The pandit's job was to visit the pathshalas and strive to enhance the teaching quality. Each guru was required to make periodic reports and attend classes on a set schedule.
- Textbooks were used to teach and learning was assessed by an annual examination system. Students were required to pay a set fee, attend regular classes, sit in assigned seats and follow the new discipline regulations.
- Pathshalas which accepted the new rules were supported through government grants. The consequence of new rules and routines was- earlier children from poor peasant families had been able to go to pathshalas, since the timetable was flexible. The new system demanded regular attendance, even during harvest time when children of poor families had to work in the fields.

The Agenda for a National Education

- Before the British officials, many thinkers from different parts of India began to talk of the need for a wider spread of education. Some Indians felt that Western education would help modernise India and urged the British to open more schools, colleges and universities and spend more money on education.
- There were other Indians who reacted against Western education. Mahatma Gandhi and Rabindranath Tagore were two such individuals.

Mahatma Gandhi's Views

- According to Mahatma Gandhi, western civilisation instilled in Indians a sense of inferiority. It made the Indians think it was superior and it eroded their pride in their own culture. Indians trained in these institutes developed a fondness for British rule.
- Mahatma Gandhi desired an education that would assist Indians in regaining their dignity and self-respect. During the national movement, Gandhi encouraged students to abandon educational institutions in order to demonstrate to the British that Indians were no longer ready to be enslaved.
- Education in English distanced Indians from their own social surroundings and made them "strangers in their own lands". Mahatma Gandhi said that education ought to develop a person's mind and soul.
- Literacy was not considered education. As nationalist feelings developed, other philosophers began to consider a system of national education that would be vastly different from that established by the British.

Tagore's "Abode of peace"

- Shantiniketan was founded in 1901 by Rabindranath Tagore. He felt school was smothering and burdensome as a child. So, as he grew older, he wished to construct a school where children could be joyful, free and creative and where they could explore their own thoughts and desires.
- He believed that childhood should be a time of self-learning, free of the severe and confining discipline of the British-imposed schooling system. According to Tagore, current schools suffocated the child's natural drive to be creative, as well as his sense of wonder.
- Tagore believed that creative learning could only be nurtured in a natural setting. Gandhiji was an outspoken opponent of Western civilisation and its worship of machines and technology.
- Tagore, on the other hand, desired to blend elements of modern Western civilisation with the best of Indian tradition. He emphasised the need of teaching science and technology at Shantiniketan, in addition to art, music and dance.
- Many people and thinkers were brainstorming ideas on how to design a national educational system. Some desired reforms to the British-instituted system, believing that it could be expanded to encompass a broader range of people. Others advocated for the development of alternative ways to educate people in really national culture.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. William Jones was a linguist for the following reasons:
   (a) He knew French and English
   (b) He had learned Persian
   (c) He also knew Latin and Greek
   (d) All the above
2. Who among the following founded the Asiatic Society of Bengal?
   (a) Lord Cornwallis
   (b) William Jones
   (c) Raja Ram Mohan Roy
   (d) None of these
3. When did Madrasa was set up in Calcutta?
   (a) 1781 **(b)** 1794
   (c) 1774 **(d)** 1823
4. Who said that "English education had enslaved Indians"?
   (a) Lala Lajpat Rai
   (b) Mahatma Gandhi
   (c) Subhas Chandra Bose
   (d) None of these
5. What did Serampore Mission do in the area of Danish East India company?
   (a) They preached Christianity among Indians
   (b) They worked for women's education
   (c) They studied about Indian History
   (d) None of these
6. Which of the following is not an Orientalist?
   (a) Henry Thomas Colebrooke
   (b) Nathaniel Halhed
   (c) James Mill **(d)** William Jones
7. Which of the following was not a view of Thomas Babington Macaulay?
   (a) He was a big critic of Orientalism.
   (b) He saw India as an uncivilised country that needed to be civilised.
   (c) No branch of Eastern knowledge, according to him could be compared to what England had produced.
   (d) None of the above.
8. Who among the following issued an educational dispatch of 1854?
   (a) James Mill **(b)** Thomas Macaulay
   (c) Charles Wood **(d)** None of these
9. The English Education Act was passed to
   (a) Put Macaulay's ideas into action
   (b) Make English the language of higher education
   (c) Stop the promotion of oriental institutions
   (d) All of the above
10. "Education means all-round drawing out of the best in child and man-body, mind and spirit" were the words of which of the following?
    (a) William Adam
    (b) Mahatma Gandhi
    (c) Rabindranath Tagore
    (d) Pandit Nehru

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following was/were not a fan of Orientalism?
   1. William Jones **2.** Charles Wood
   3. Thomas Macaulay **4.** James Mill
   Choose the correct code among the following:
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 3 and 4 only
   (c) 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** None of the above
2. Consider the following pairs:

	Institution	Year of Establishment
1.	Calcutta Madrasa	1781
2.	Sanskrit College	1791
3.	Fort William College	1800

   Which of the following is/are an incorrect match?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 & 3 only
   (c) All are incorrect **(d)** None of them
3. "A single shelf of a good European library was worth the whole native literature of India and Arabia" was said by which of the following personality?
   (a) Charles Wood **(b)** James Mill
   (c) William Adam **(d)** Thomas Macaulay
4. Which of the following was not a part of Macaulay's Minute (1835)?
   (a) The limited government resources were to be devoted to the teaching of Western sciences and literature.
   (b) English should be the medium of instruction in its schools and colleges.
   (c) Mass education should be promoted.
   (d) None of these
5. Which of the following is also known as the Magna Carta of Indian Education?
   (a) Sadler Commission
   (b) Wood's Despatch
   (c) Serampore Mission
   (d) Indian Education Act 1852
6. Take into account the following:
   1. It is regarded as India's Magna Carta of English Education.
   2. It said that the government's educational policy goal was to teach Western Education.
   Which of the following statements about Sir Charles Wood's Despatch on Education, 1854, is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
7. Consider the following with reference to the report of William Adam:
   1. Adam found that there were over 1 lakh pathshalas in Bengal and Bihar.
   2. The total number of children being taught in these pathshalas was considerable over 20 lakh.
   3. The system of education was flexible.
   Which of the above statement was/were not part of his report?
   (a) 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** None of these

8. According to Aurobindo Ghose, what should be the goal of education?
   1. To awaken the spirit of nationality among the students.
   2. Education should be imparted in the vernacular so as to reach the largest number of people.
   3. The students should also take the fullest advantage of modern scientific discoveries and Western experiments in popular governments.

   Choose the correct code:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
9. Which of the following view of Tagore does not match with the view of Gandhi on education?
   (a) Childhood ought to be a time of self-learning.
   (b) Teachers had to be imaginative, understand the child and help the child develop her curiosity.
   (c) Combination of Western civilisation with the Indian tradition should be imparted in education.
   (d) Education should be imparted in vernacular languages.
10. Which of the following British acts, plans, schemes, or commissions envisions the establishment of universal free and compulsory education for children aged 6 to 14?
    (a) Wardha Scheme of Basic Education
    (b) Wood's Despatch
    (c) Sargent Plan of Education
    (d) None of these

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: William Jones was a linguist. He had studied Greek and Latin at Oxford, knew French and English, had picked up Arabic from a friend and had also learned Persian.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Asiatic Society of Bengal was founded by William Jones in 1974 to study the Indian languages, history of Ancient India and Indian heritage.
3. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: A madrasa was set up in Calcutta in 1781 to promote the study of Arabic, Persian and Islamic law; and the Hindu College was established in Benaras in 1791 to encourage the study of ancient Sanskrit texts.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi argued that colonial education created a sense of inferiority in the minds of Indians. It made them see Western civilization as superior and destroyed the pride they had in their own culture. There was poison in this education, said Mahatma Gandhi, it was sinful, it enslaved Indians, it cast an evil spell on them. Therefore, he said, "English education had enslaved Indians".
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Serampore Mission was India's first Christian missionary organisation. On January 10, 1800, William Carey and two partners founded this mission. From two locations in the Hughli district, the Mission began preaching the gospel of Jesus.
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: James Mill was not an Orientalist. James Mill was one of those who attacked the Orientalists. He declared, it should not be taught what the natives wanted, or what they respected just in order to please them and "win a place in their heart". The aim of education ought to be to teach what was useful and practical.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: By the 1830s the attack on the Orientalists became sharper. One of the most outspoken and influential of such critics of the time was Thomas Babington Macaulay. He saw India as an uncivilised country that needed to be civilised. No branch of Eastern knowledge, according to him could be compared to what England had produced.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: In 1854, the Court of Directors of the East India Company in London sent an educational despatch to the Governor-General in India. Issued by Charles Wood, the President of the Board of Control of the Company, it has come to be known as Wood's Despatch.
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Following Macaulay's minute, the English Education Act of 1835 was introduced. The decision was to make English the medium of instruction for higher education and to stop the promotion of Oriental institutions like the Calcutta Madrasa and Benaras Sanskrit College. These institutions were seen as "temples of darkness that were falling of themselves into decay". English textbooks now began to be produced for schools.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
    Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi wrote in his book that "By education I mean an all-round drawing out of the best in child and man-body, mind and spirit. Literacy is not the end of education nor even the beginning. It is only one of the means whereby man and woman can be educated".

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Charles Wood, Thomas Macaulay and James Mill were the critics of Orientalism. They

wanted to promote western education in India to make them civilized. They had the view that Indian education was a waste and had no progressive outlook.

2. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Warren Hastings founded the Calcutta Madrasa in 1781 for the study of Muslim law and related subjects.

Jonathan Duncan, a resident of Benaras, founded the Sanskrit College in 1791 for the study of Hindu law and philosophy.

Wellesley established Fort William College in 1800 to educate Company's civil servants in Indian languages and traditions (closed in 1802).

3. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Thomas Babington Macaulay saw India as an uncivilised country that needed to be civilised. No branch of Eastern knowledge, according to him could be compared to what England had produced. He said that "a single shelf of a good European library was worth the whole native literature of India and Arabia".

4. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: The famous Lord Macaulay's Minute decided the dispute in favour of the Anglicists, directing limited government resources to the education of Western sciences and literature. A brief history of modern India is told entirely in the English language. Lord Macaulay believed that "Indian learning was inferior to European learning," which he was correct about in terms of physical and social sciences at the time. The government quickly adopted English as the medium of instruction in its schools and universities and instead of a vast number of primary schools, it opened a few English schools and colleges, ignoring mass education.

5. **Option (b) is correct.**

Explanation: The Magna Carta of English Education in India is Sir Charles Wood's Despatch on Education, published in 1854. Outlining the educational policy that was to be followed in India, it emphasised once again the practical benefits of a system of European learning, as opposed to Oriental knowledge.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: The Magna Carta of English Education in India is Sir Charles Wood's Despatch on Education, published in 1854. The goal of the government's educational policy, as stated, was to teach Western Education. In 1857, the three universities of Calcutta, Madras and Bombay were established.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: In the 1830s, William Adam, a Scottish missionary had been asked by the Company to report on the progress of education in vernacular schools. The report Adam produced was interesting. Adam found that there were over 1 lakh pathshalas in Bengal and Bihar. These were small institutions with no more than 20 students each. But the total number of children being taught in these pathshalas was considerable – over 20 lakh. These institutions were set up by wealthy people, or the local community. At times they were started by a teacher (guru). The system of education was flexible. Few things that you associate with schools today were present in the pathshalas at the time and so on.

8. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Aurobindo Ghose declared in a lecture delivered on January 15, 1908 in Bombay that the purpose of national education was to awaken the spirit of nationality among students. This necessitated a reflection on our forefathers' noble actions. To reach the greatest number of people, education should be delivered in the vernacular. While students should stay close to their traditions, Aurobindo Ghose emphasised that they should also take full advantage of new scientific discoveries and Western experiments in democratic governments. Furthermore, pupils should learn some practical crafts so that they can obtain fairly remunerative work after they graduate from high school.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: Gandhiji was an outspoken opponent of Western culture, particularly its worship of machines and technology. Tagore aspired to bring together elements of Western civilisation with the best of Indian culture. He emphasised the importance of teaching science and technology, as well as art, music and dance at Santiniketan.

10. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: The Sargent Plan of Education called for the development of elementary and secondary schools (junior and senior basic schools), as well as universal free and compulsory education for students aged 6 to 14.

HISTORY CLASS-VIII

8 WOMEN, CASTE AND REFORM

Introduction

- Women are valued in today's world; they can work, study and even marry anyone they like when they are grown enough to understand (become adult). But things were very different 200 years ago. Women's life used to be far more difficult than they are now. Women were subjected to a variety of constraints or restrictions. Girl children were not educated and were married at a young age. Women were required to practise sati in most parts of the country.
- One of the most serious challenges at the time was the caste system. The upper caste was represented by the Kshatriyas and Brahmins, while the moneylenders and traders were known as Vaishyas and the artisans, peasants, weavers and potters were known as Shudras.

Working Towards Change

- From the early nineteenth century, we find debates and discussions about social customs and practices taking on a new character. One important reason for this was the development of new forms of communication. For the first time, books, newspapers, magazines, leaflets and pamphlets were printed.
- In the new cities, men and women could debate and discuss a wide range of issues, including social, political, economic and religious ones.
- In Calcutta, Raja Rammohan Roy (1772-1833) established the Brahmo Sabha (later known as the Brahmo Samaj). Raja Rammohan Roy believed that society needed to change and that unjust practices needed to be eliminated. He was eager to extend Western education knowledge throughout the country and to achieve greater freedom and equality for women.

Changing the lives of widows

- Raja Rammohan Roy was particularly moved by the problems widows faced in their lives. He began a campaign against the practice of Sati.
- Through his publications, he attempted to demonstrate that the practice of widow burning was not sanctioned in ancient literature. Sati was outlawed in 1829.
- Later reformers embraced Rammohan's method of challenging a bad habit by looking for a verse or sentence in ancient religious scriptures that supported their point of view.
- Through ancient scriptures, Ishwarchandra Vidyasagar claimed that widows could remarry. A statute allowing widows to remarry was approved in 1856.
- The widow remarriage movement had expanded across the country by the second half of the nineteenth century. The Arya Samaj was formed by Swami Dayanand Saraswati to promote widow remarriage.

Girls begin going to school

- To improve the situation of women in society, girls needed to get an education. The earliest schools were established in the mid-nineteenth century. Many people believed that sending females to school would keep them from fulfilling their household chores.
- Girls had to travel through public locations to get to school. Many individuals believed that girls should avoid going out in public. As a result, the majority of educated women learned at home from liberal fathers or spouses.
- Arya Samaj created schools for girls in Punjab in the late nineteenth century and Jyotirao Phule established schools in Maharashtra. Women learned to read the Koran in Arabic in aristocratic Muslim houses from women who came home to instruct. From the late nineteenth century forward, the first Urdu novel was published.

Women write about women

- Begums of Bhopal played a significant role in encouraging women's education in the early twentieth century. In Aligarh, they established a primary school for girls.
- In Patna and Calcutta, Begum Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain established Muslim girls' schools. By the 1880s, Indian women began attending universities, where they were taught to be doctors and teachers. Tarabai Shinde published a book '**Stripurushtulna**'. Pandita Ramabai wrote a novel about upper-caste Hindu women's wretched life.
- Many Hindu nationalists believed that Hindu women were adopting Western ways, which would lead to the corruption of Hindu culture and the erosion of family values.
- Women authored books, edited periodicals, built schools and training centres and formed women's organisations before the end of the nineteenth century.
- They also organised the political organisations to advocate for laws that would grant women the right to vote, as well as better health care and education. Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose supported aspirations for greater equality and freedom for women in the twentieth century.

Law against child marriage

- The momentum for reform grew stronger with the emergence of women's organisations and literature on these topics. Another long-held tradition was that

of child marriage, which was questioned. Several Indian legislators in the Central Legislative Assembly sought to pass legislation prohibiting child marriage.

- The Child Marriage Restraint Act of 1929 was passed without the vehement debates and conflicts that had accompanied previous measures. The Act stated that no man under the age of 18 and no woman under the age of 16 might marry. These limits were later increased to 21 for men and 18 for women.

Caste and Social Reform

- The Prarthana Samaj followed the Bhakti tradition, which held that all castes are spiritually equal. The Paramhans Mandali, which was established in Bombay in 1840, was dedicated to the elimination of caste.
- The Christian missionaries began establishing schools for tribal populations and "lower"- caste children during the nineteenth century.
- At the same time, the poor from villages and small towns began migrating to cities, where there was a fresh demand for labour.
- Some went to work on plantations in Assam, Mauritius, Trinidad and Indonesia, among other places. It was an opportunity for the impoverished and poor to escape the harsh control that landowners had over their life, as well as the everyday humiliation they endured.

Demands for equality and justice

- Gradually, by the second half of the nineteenth century, people from within the Non-Brahman castes began organising movements against caste discrimination and demanded social equality and justice.
- The Satnami movement in central India was founded by Ghasidas who worked among the leatherworkers and organised a movement to improve their social status.
- In eastern Bengal, Haridas Thakur's Matua sect worked among Chandala cultivators. Haridas questioned Brahmanical texts that supported the caste system. In what is present-day Kerala, a guru from the Ezhava caste, Shri Narayana Guru, proclaimed the ideals of unity for his people. He argued against treating people unequally on the basis of caste differences.
- According to him, all humankind belonged to the same caste. One of his famous statements were: "Oru jati, oru matam, oru daivam manushyanu" (one caste, one religion, one god for humankind).

Gulamgiri

- Jyotirao Phule, who was born in 1827, formulated his own opinions concerning caste society's inequalities. According to him, Brahmans were Aryans who arrived from outside the subcontinent and defeated and enslaved those who had lived here before the arrival of the Aryans.
- The upper castes, according to Phule, had no right to their land and authority. He believed that there was a glorious age before Aryan dominion when warrior-peasants tilled the ground and fairly administered the Maratha countryside. He proposed that Shudras and Ati Shudras join forces to combat caste prejudice. Phule formed the Satyashodhak Samaj to promote caste equality.
- In 1873, Phule wrote a book named Gulamgiri, meaning slavery. Ten years before this, the American Civil War led to the end of slavery in America. He dedicated his book to all those Americans who had fought to free slaves. Phule was concerned about the plight of upper-caste women, the miseries of the labourer and the humiliation of the low castes.

Who could enter temples?

- Ambedkar was born into a Mahar family. As a child he experienced what caste prejudice meant in everyday life. After finishing school, he got a fellowship to go to the US for higher studies. On his return to India in 1919, he wrote extensively about "upper"-caste power in contemporary society.
- In 1927, Ambedkar started a temple entry movement, in which his Mahar caste followers participated. Brahman priests were outraged when the oppressed class used water from the temple tank.
- Ambedkar led three such movements for temple entry between 1927 and 1935. His aim was to make everyone see the power of caste prejudices within society.

The Non-Brahman movement

- The non-Brahman movement was founded by non-Brahman castes who had gained access to education, wealth and power. They said that Brahmans were descended from northern Aryan conquerors who had conquered southern territories from the region's original occupants, the indigenous Dravidian races.
- E.V. Ramaswamy Naicker, often known as Periyar, was a member of Congress until he discovered that the seating arrangements followed caste discriminations. Periyar launched the Self-Respect Movement, claiming that untouchables were the actual guardians of a Tamil and Dravidian culture that had been enslaved.
- Periyar was a vocal critic of Hindu scriptures, particularly Manu's Codes, the Bhagavad Gita and the Ramayana. According to him, these scriptures were utilised to reinforce Brahmans' dominance over oppressed class and men's dominance over women.
- These claims were met with scepticism, prompting some reassessment and self-criticism among upper-caste nationalist leaders. However, orthodox Hindu society responded by establishing Sanatan Dharma Sabhas and the Bharat Dharma Mahamandal in the north, as well as organisations such as the Brahman Sabha in Bengal.
- The goal of these organisations was to defend caste inequalities as a cornerstone of Hinduism and demonstrate how texts sanctified them.

Organising for reform

The Brahmo Samaj

- The Brahmo Samaj, formed in 1830, prohibited all forms of idolatry and sacrifice, believed in the Upanishads and forbade its members from criticising other religious practices. It critically drew upon the ideals of religions – especially of Hinduism and Christianity – looking at their negative and positive dimensions.

Derozio and Young Bengal

- Henry Louis Vivian Derozio, a teacher at Hindu College, Calcutta, in the 1820s, promoted radical ideas and encouraged his pupils to question all authority.

Referred to as the Young Bengal Movement, his students attacked tradition and custom, demanded education for women and campaigned for the freedom of thought and expression.

The Prarthana Samaj

- Established in 1867 in Bombay, the Prarthana Samaj sought to remove caste restrictions, abolish child marriage, encourage the education of women and end the ban on widow remarriage. Its religious meetings drew upon Hindu, Buddhist and Christian texts.

The Veda Samaj

- Established in Madras (Chennai) in 1864, the Veda Samaj was inspired by the Brahmo Samaj. It worked to abolish caste distinctions and promote widow remarriage and women's education. Its members believed in one God. They condemned the superstitions and rituals of orthodox Hinduism.

The Aligarh Movement

- The Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College, founded by Sayyid Ahmed Khan in 1875 at Aligarh, later became the Aligarh Muslim University. The institution offered modern education, including Western science, to Muslims. The Aligarh Movement, as it was known, had an enormous impact in the area of educational reform.

The Singh Sabha Movement

- Reform organisations of the Sikhs, the first Singh Sabhas were formed at Amritsar in 1873 and at Lahore in 1879. The Sabhas sought to rid Sikhism of superstitions, caste distinctions and practices seen by them as non-Sikh. They promoted education among the Sikhs, often combining modern instruction with Sikh teachings.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Who was the founder of Brahmo Sabha?
   (a) Swami Dayanand Saraswati
   (b) Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar
   (c) Raja Rammohan Roy
   (d) None of these
2. Who emphasized the idea of widow remarriage?
   (a) Swami Dayanand Saraswati
   (b) Ishwarchandra Vidyasagar
   (c) Raja Rammohan Roy
   (d) Pandita Ramabai
3. Who among the following established Satyashodhak Samaj?
   (a) Swami Dayanand Saraswati
   (b) Pandita Ramabai
   (c) Jyotirao Phule
   (d) None of these
4. The regulation of 1829 was associated with:
   (a) Widow remarriage
   (b) Abolition of Child marriage
   (c) Abolition of female infanticide
   (d) Abolition of Sati
5. Who among the following founded a widow's home at Poona for the betterment of widows?
   (a) Pandita Ramabai
   (b) Tarabai Shinde
   (c) Begum Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain
   (d) None of these
6. Begum Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain is known for one of the following reasons?
   (a) Work against Child marriage
   (b) Girl's education
   (c) Widow remarriage
   (d) All the above
7. Veerasalingam Pantulu formed an association for:
   (a) Women's education
   (b) Widow remarriage
   (c) Abolition of Female Infanticide
   (d) None of these
8. Ambedkar led three temple admission movements during which period?
   (a) From 1930 to 1938 (b) From 1927 to 1935
   (c) From 1935 to 1940 (d) None of these
9. The Young Bengal Movement was founded by which of the following?
   (a) M. G. Gandhi
   (b) Ishwarchandra Vidyasagar
   (c) Vivian Derozio
   (d) Swami Vivekananda
10. The Prarthana Samaj was established in 1867 in Bombay for which of the following reason(s)?
    (a) For abolition of child marriage
    (b) For women's education
    (c) For removal of caste restriction
    (d) All the above

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. With reference to Sarda Act 1929, which of the following is/are correct?
   1. It pushed up the marriage age to 18 and 14 for boys and girls, respectively.
   2. It also proposed education for the girl child.
   Choose the correct code:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
2. Consider the following pairs:

	Association	Year of establishment
1.	Brahmo Samaj	1830
2.	The Prarthana Samaj	1867
3.	The Veda Samaj	1864
4.	The Singh Sabha Movement	1873

Which of the above given pairs is/are correct?

(a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 2 and 4 only
(c) 1, 2 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4

3. Consider the following pairs:

	Association	Place of establishment
1.	Brahmo Samaj	Calcutta
2.	The Prarthana Samaj	Bombay
3.	The Veda Samaj	Madras
4.	The Singh Sabha Movement	Amritsar and Lahore

Which of the above-given pairs is/are correct?

(a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 2 and 4 only
(c) 1, 2 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4

4. Which of the following statements is/are not associated with Periyar?

1. He belonged to a middle-class family.
2. In his early life, he had studied Sanskrit scriptures carefully.
3. He started the Self Respect Movement.
4. He was an outspoken supporter of the Bhagavad Gita and the Ramayana.

Choose one of the following options:

(a) 2 **(b)** 3
(c) 4 **(d)** 1

5. Consider the following statements with the reference to The Singh Sabha Movement:

1. It was formed in Lahore only.
2. It sought to rid Sikhism of superstitions, caste distinctions and practices seen by them as non-Sikh.

Choose the correct option:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

6. Consider the following statements regarding Raja Rammohan Roy:

1. He was considered the father of the Indian Renaissance.
2. He believed in the modern scientific approach and principles of human dignity and social equality.

Choose the correct option:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

7. Why did Sir Sayyid Ahmed Khan establish Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College?

(a) To offer modern education, including Western science, to Muslims.
(b) To encounter western educational institutions.
(c) To encounter Hindu religious education.
(d) None of these.

8. Who wrote the book "Gulamgiri"?

(a) M. Gandhi
(b) B. R. Ambedkar
(c) Jyotirao Phule
(d) Raja Rammohan Roy

9. Consider the following statements with the reference to Swami Vivekananda:

1. His original name was Mohan Dutta.
2. He had no Guru for spirituality.

Choose the correct option:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

10. The famous statement "one caste, one religion, one god for humankind" was associated with:

(a) B. R. Ambedkar **(b)** Shri Narayana Guru
(c) Jyotirao Phule **(d)** Periyar

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: Raja Rammohan Roy (1772-1833) founded a reform association known as the Brahmo Sabha (later known as the Brahmo Samaj) in Calcutta.

2. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: Swami Dayanand Saraswati, who founded the reform association called Arya Samaj, also supported widow remarriage.

3. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: The Satyashodhak Samaj was founded by Jyotirao Phule for the propagation of caste equality.

4. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: The Governor-General William Bentinck, influenced by the frontal attack undertaken by enlightened Indian reformers led by Raja Rammohan Roy, proclaimed the practice of Sati illegal and punishable by Criminal Courts as culpable homicide. The ordinance of 1829 was initially only applicable to the Bengal Presidency, but it was later extended to the Madras and Bombay Presidencies in somewhat modified forms in 1830.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: Pandita Ramabai, a famous Sanskrit scholar, believed that Hinduism oppressed women and wrote a book about upper-caste Hindu women's wretched life. She established a widows' home in Poona to help widows who had been mistreated by their husbands' families.

6. **Option (b) is correct.**

Explanation: Begum Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain started schools for Muslim girls in Patna and Calcutta. She was a fearless critic of conservative ideas, arguing that religious leaders of every faith accorded an inferior place to women.

7. **Option (b) is correct.**

Explanation: By the second half of the nineteenth century, the pro-widow remarriage movement had expanded across the country. Veerasalingam Pantulu

founded a widow remarriage society in the Telugu-speaking parts of the Madras Presidency.

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1927, Ambedkar started a temple entry movement, in which his Mahar caste followers participated. Ambedkar led three such movements for temple entry between 1927 and 1935.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In the 1820s, a teacher at Hindu College in Calcutta, Henry Louis Vivian Derozio, founded the Young Bengal Movement.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Prarthana Samaj was established in 1867 in Bombay, the Prarthana Samaj sought to remove caste restrictions, abolish child marriage, encourage the education of women and end the ban on widow remarriage.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Child Marriage Restraint Act 1929, popularly known as the Sarda Act, which came into force in 1930, further pushed up the marriage age to 18 and 14 for boys and girls, respectively.

2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Brahmo Samaj, was formed in 1830.
The Prarthana Samaj was established in 1867.
The Veda Samaj was established in 1864.
The Singh Sabha Movement was formed in 1873.

3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Brahmo Samaj was formed in Calcutta.
The Prarthana Samaj was established in Bombay.
The Veda Samaj was established in Madras.
The Singh Sabha Movement was formed in Amritsar & Lahore.

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Self Respect Movement was launched by Periyar. Untouchables, he claimed, were the actual defenders of an indigenous Tamil and Dravidian civilization that had been subdued. All religious authority, he said, considered social divides and inequity as God-given. As a result, in order to achieve social equality, untouchables had to be free of all religions. Periyar was a vocal critic of Hindu scriptures, particularly the ancient lawgiver Manu's Codes, the Bhagavad Gita and the Ramayana.

5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Singh Sabha Movement was the reform organisation of the Sikhs, the first Singh Sabhas were formed at Amritsar in 1873 and at Lahore in 1879.
The Sabhas sought to rid Sikhism of superstitions, caste distinctions and practices seen by them as non-Sikh. They promoted education among the Sikhs, often combining modern instruction with Sikh teachings.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Raja Rammohan Roy (1772–1833), known as the "Father of the Indian Renaissance" and "The Creator of Modern India," was a multi-talented genius. Rammohan Roy was a firm believer in modern science as well as human dignity and social equality. He chose monotheism as his religion. To establish his belief that ancient Hindu literature promotes monotheism, he wrote Gift to Monotheists (1809).

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College, founded by Sayyid Ahmed Khan in 1875 at Aligarh, later became the Aligarh Muslim University. The institution offered modern education, including Western science, to Muslims. The Aligarh Movement, as it was known, had an enormous impact in the area of educational reform.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Jyotirao Phule established a connection in his book Gulamgiri between caste oppression and the practice of slavery in America.

9. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Swami Vivekananda (1863-1902), whose original name was Narendra Nath Dutta, combined the simple teachings of Sri Ramakrishna with his well-founded modern outlook and spread them all over the world. Named after Ramakrishna Paramhansa, Swami Vivekananda's guru, the Ramakrishna Mission stressed the ideal of salvation through social service and selfless action.

10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Shri Narayana Guru proclaimed that all humankind belonged to the same caste. One of his famous statements was: "Oru jati, oru matam, oru daivam manushyanu" (one caste, one religion, one God for humankind).

HISTORY CLASS-VIII

9 THE MAKING OF THE NATIONAL MOVEMENT: 1870S-1947

The Emergence of Nationalism

- Regardless of class, colour, caste, creed, language, or gender, India was the people of India. Its resources and systems were designed to accommodate all of them. The British, on the other hand, had control over India's resources and people's lives. Political organisations founded after 1850, particularly those formed in the 1870s and 1880s, began to express this consciousness effectively.
- The Poona Sarvajanik Sabha, the Indian Association, the Madras Mahajan Sabha, the Bombay Presidency Association and the Indian National Congress were the most influential.
- These organisations operated in specific sections of the country and their goals were declared to be the goals of all Indians. They thought that the people of India should be able to make decisions about their affairs.
- The Arms Act of 1878 made it illegal for Indians to possess firearms. The Vernacular Press Act was passed the same year in an attempt to stifle people who were critical of the administration. If anything published was determined to be "objectionable," the government was empowered to seize the assets of newspapers, including their printing presses, under this Act.
- The Ilbert Bill was adopted in 1883 and it allowed for the trial of British or European citizens by Indian judges, as well as equality between British and Indian judges in the country.
- The Indian National Congress was established in December 1885. The early leaders were Dadabhai Naoroji, Pherozeshah Mehta, Badruddin Tyabji, W.C. Bonnerjee, Surendranath Banerjee, Romesh Chandra Dutt, S. Subramania Iyer, among others largely belonged to Bombay and Calcutta.

A nation in the making

- During the first two decades, Congress pushed for Indians to be included in the government and administration. It wished for a more representative, powerful Legislative Council to be established in areas where none previously existed. It asked that Indians be appointed to senior government jobs.
- The call for Indianisation of the administration was motivated by a desire to combat racism, as the majority of critical jobs were held by white officials.
- The wealth drain to England would be reduced as a result of Indianisation. Separation of the judiciary and the executive, repeal of the Arms Act and freedom of speech and expression were among the other demands.
- A variety of economic issues were discussed by Congress. Poverty and famines resulted from British rule. They sought a drop in revenue, a reduction in military spending and more irrigation funding. Many resolutions regarding the salt tax, the treatment of Indian labourers overseas and the plight of forest inhabitants were also voted by Congress.
- The moderate leaders published newspapers and essays demonstrating how British rule was causing the country's economic downfall. They believed that the British had respect for the ideas of liberty and justice and that as a result, they would accept Indian aspirations.

"Freedom is our birthright"

- Many Indians raised concerns about Congress political style. Leaders like Bipin Chandra Pal, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Lala Lajpat Rai in Bengal, Maharashtra and Punjab chastised the moderates for their prayer politics and emphasised the necessity of self-reliance and constructive work.
- Bengal, the largest province of British India, was partitioned in 1905. Bengal was partitioned by the British for administrative reasons. Rather than eliminating the non-Bengali territories from the province, the British split East Bengal and combined it with Assam.
- The division of Bengal was opposed by the Moderates and Radicals. The Swadeshi movement, which was strongest in Bengal and deltaic Andhra and was known as the Vandemataram Movement, was sparked by mass protests and enormous public gatherings.
- The Swadeshi movement was an anti-British movement that promoted self-reliance, swadeshi enterprise, national education and the usage of Indian languages. To topple British control, some people felt that revolutionary bloodshed would be required.
- The All India Muslim League was created in Dacca in 1906 by a group of Muslim landlords and nawabs. It was in favour of Bengal's division. In 1909, the government agreed to the League's demand for separate Muslim electorates. In 1907, the Congress got split.
- Following the break, the Congress was dominated by the Moderates, with Tilak's supporters operating from the outside. In December 1915, the two factions reconciled. The Congress and the Muslim League formed the Lucknow Pact, agreeing to work together to ensure that the country had a representative administration.

The Growth of Mass Nationalism

- After 1919, the resistance to British control grew into a mass movement, incorporating vast numbers of peasants, tribals, students and women, as well as manufacturing employees on occasion.
- Following the First World War, India's economic and political condition changed, resulting in a significant increase in the government's defence spending. Individual income and corporate profit taxes have been raised. During the war, Indian industries grew and Indian business organisations began to demand more development chances. The conflict also necessitated an increase in the size of the British army. Russia experienced a revolution in 1917.

The advent of Mahatma Gandhi

- It is in these circumstances that Mahatma Gandhi emerged as a mass leader. As you may know, Gandhiji, aged 46, arrived in India in 1915 from South Africa.
- Having led Indians in that country in non-violent marches against racist restrictions, he was already a respected leader, known internationally. His South African campaigns had brought him in contact with various types of Indians: Hindus, Muslims, Parsis and Christians; Gujaratis, Tamils and north Indians; and upper-class merchants, lawyers and workers. He spent his first year travelling throughout the country, understanding the people, their needs and the overall situation.

The Rowlatt Satyagraha

- Gandhiji called for satyagraha to protest the Rowlatt Act in 1919. Fundamental liberties including freedom of expression were curtailed and police powers were bolstered. Gandhiji and the Indian people marked April 6, 1919, as a day of nonviolent resistance to the Act. To kickstart the movement, Satyagraha Sabhas were formed.
- There were a lot of demonstrations and hartals around the country in April 1919 and the government took harsh measures to put them down. General Dyer's atrocities at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar on Baisakhi day (13 April) were part of this crackdown.
- During the Rowlatt Satyagraha, the participants ensured that Hindus and Muslims were united against British rule. Mahatma Gandhi saw India as a land of all the people who lived in the country – Hindus, Muslims and those of other religions.

Khilafat agitation and the Non-Cooperation Movement

- The Sultan or Khalifa of Turkey was subjected to a harsh treaty by the British in 1920. Mohammad Ali and Shaukat Ali, the leaders of the Khilafat agitation, launched a full-fledged Non-Cooperation Movement. Gandhiji backed them up and pushed the Congress to struggle against the Jallianwala Bagh atrocity, the Khilafat and the demand for swaraj.
- During the years 1921-1922, the Non-Cooperation Movement gained traction. British titles were relinquished and the legislature was boycotted. Between 1920 and 1922, foreign fabric imports dropped dramatically. Large swaths of the country were on the verge of a massive uprising.

People's initiatives

- The Non-violent resistance to British authority was used by certain people. People of various classes and groups responded to Gandhiji's call in their own unique ways, protesting in ways that were not consistent with his principles. People related their movements to local problems in certain situations.
- Patidar peasants in Kheda, Gujarat, organised the non-violent campaigns in response to the British's high land revenue demands. Liquor stores were picketed in coastal Andhra Pradesh and central Tamil Nadu. Tribals and poor peasants in Andhra Pradesh's Guntur region staged a number of "forest satyagraha," sending their animals into forests without paying grazing fees.
- In Sind (now in Pakistan), Muslim traders and peasants were very enthusiastic about the Khilafat call. In Bengal, the Khilafat-Non-Cooperation alliance gave enormous communal unity and strength to the national movement. In Punjab, the Akali agitation of the Sikhs sought to remove corrupt mahants from their gurdwaras.

The people's Mahatma

- Gandhiji believed in building class unity, not class conflict. Peasants believed that Gandhi would help them in their fight against zamindars and agricultural labourers believed he would provide them with the land.
- At the end of a powerful movement, peasants of Pratapgarh in the United Provinces managed to stop the illegal eviction of tenants; but they felt it was Gandhiji who had won this demand for them.

The happenings of 1922-1929

- The Non-Cooperation Movement was called off by Mahatma Gandhi after a crowd of peasants set fire to a police station in Chauri Chaura in February 1922. After the Non-Cooperation campaign ended, Gandhi's supporters emphasised the importance of Congress doing constructive work in rural regions.
- Other party leaders suggested that the party should contest council elections. The Civil Disobedience Movement began in 1930. The founding of the Hindu Rashtriya Swayamsevak Sangh (RSS) and the Communist Party of India were two significant developments in the mid-1920s.
- Under the presidency of Jawaharlal Nehru in 1929, Congress decided to strive for Purna Swaraj by the end of the decade. As a result, on January 26, 1930, "Independence Day" was recognised across the country.

The March to Dandi

- Gandhiji marched in 1930 to protest the salt ban. The state held a monopoly on the manufacturing and sale of salt. The Salt March linked the basic desire for freedom to a specific grievance that everyone felt, thus bridging the gap between rich and poor.
- Gandhiji and his supporters marched almost 240 kilometres from Sabarmati to Dandi, where they defied the law by collecting natural salt from the seashore and boiling it to make salt.
- A vast number of peasants, tribals and women took part. The Government of India Act of 1935 established regional autonomy and elections to provincial legislatures were held in 1937. The Second World War began in September 1939. Leaders of the Congress

were willing to support the British war effort in exchange for independence. The British refused to give in to the demand and in protest, the Congress ministries resigned.

Quit India and Later

- Mahatma Gandhi ushered in a new era of anti-British resistance. He demanded that the British leave India immediately. He told the people to "do or die" in their fight against the British, albeit non-violently.
- Peasants and youngsters who had given up their studies to join the revolution were drawn to it. People in various locations form their own governments. The British's first response was harsh repression. The Raj was eventually brought to its knees as a result of the uprising.

Towards Independence and Partition

- The Muslim League called for "The Independent States" for Muslims in 1940. Beginning in the late 1930s, the League began to regard Muslims as a distinct "nation" from Hindus.
- The League was convinced by the provincial elections of 1937 that Muslims were a minority and would always have to play second fiddle in any democratic organisation.
- The League was also irritated by the Congress rejection of the League's intention to form a joint Congress-League government in the United Provinces in 1937.
- The British launched negotiations for India's independence with the Congress, the League and themselves, after the war ended in 1945. Provincial elections were held once more in 1946. Pakistan was sought by the League.
- The British Government dispatched a three-member team to Delhi in March 1946 to investigate and recommend a suitable political framework for a free India. According to this mission, India should stay intact and form a loose confederation with some autonomy for Muslim-majority areas.
- Following the collapse of the Cabinet Mission, the Muslim League resolved to engage in popular agitation in order to achieve its goal of obtaining Pakistan. "Direct Action Day" was declared on August 16, 1946. By March 1947, violence had spread throughout northern India. Partition caused India to transform, as did many of its cities and a new country, Pakistan, to emerge.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Chitta Ranjan Das is connected with which of the following movements?
- **(a)** Non-Cooperation Movement
- **(b)** Quit India Movement
- **(c)** Bardoli Satyagraha
- **(d)** Rowlatt Satyagraha

2. In which year was the Arms Act passed?
- **(a)** 1888 (b) 1878
- (c) 1893 (d) 1858

3. In which year was the Vernacular Press Act passed?
- **(a)** 1888 (b) 1875
- (c) 1878 (d) None of these

4. Ilbert Bill 1883 was related to which of the following statement?
- **(a)** It was enacted to give immunity to the officers of EIC.
- **(b)** It was enacted to limit political activities in Bengal.
- **(c)** It was enacted to disallow possession of arms by Indians.
- **(d)** None of these

5. When did the Indian National Congress establish?
- **(a)** 1874 (b) 1893
- (c) 1885 (d) None of these

6. Which of the following is not an extremist leader of early congress?
- **(a)** Bipin Chandra Pal (b) Dadabhai Naoroji
- (c) Bal Gangadhar Tilak (d) Lala Lajpat Rai

7. "Freedom is my birthright and I shall have it!" was related to which of the following leader?
- **(a)** B. G. Tilak (b) Lala Lajpat Rai
- (c) Badruddin Tyabji (d) Subramania Iyer

8. What was the main motive of the British Government behind the partition of Bengal in 1905?
- **(a)** Administrative convenience
- **(b)** To give Assam more land and make it a big state
- **(c)** To curtail the influence of Bengali politicians and to split the Bengali people
- **(d)** None of these

9. The struggle against the partition of Bengal is known as:
- **(a)** Non-cooperation movement
- **(b)** Swadeshi movement
- **(c)** Bengal Movement
- **(d)** Quit India movement

10. All India Muslim League was founded in the year of:
- **(a)** 1910 (b) 1905
- (c) 1915 (d) None of these

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements with the reference to the nationalism of India:
- **1.** Educational changes in the nineteenth century
- **2.** Introduction of new laws and administrative institutions
- **3.** Changes in the lives of peasants and tribals

Which of the given statements is/are responsible for the spread of discontent against the British rule in India?
- **(a)** 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
- **(c)** 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

2. Consider the following pairs:

Organisation		Year of Establishment
1.	Poona Sarvajanik Sabha	1870
2.	Madras Mahajan Sabha	1890
3.	Indian League	1874

Which of the following is/are the correct match?
(a) 1 only
(b) 1 and 3 only
(c) All are incorrect match
(d) None of them

3. Consider the given statements with the reference to moderate phase of the Indian National Congress:
1. It demanded a greater voice for Indians in the government and in administration.
2. It demanded that Indians be placed in high positions in the government.
Which of the given statement is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

4. Which of the following was/were the measures of early Congress leaders against the British government?
1. They published newspapers, authored articles and demonstrated how British rule was causing the country's economic devastation.
2. They criticised British rule in their speeches and called for active agitation against the government.
Which of the given statement is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

5. With reference to Rowlatt Satyagraha, consider the following statements:
1. It was not restricted to cities.
2. Mohammad Ali Jinnah did not support this movement.
3. In 1919 Gandhiji gave a call for satyagraha against the Rowlatt Act.
Which of the given statements is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** None of these

6. Which of the following personality renounce Knighthood against the atrocities of Jallianwala Bagh?
(a) M. A. Jinnah **(b)** R. N. Tagore
(c) M. Gandhi **(d)** Lala Lajpat Rai

7. Which of the following initiatives was/were associated with the Non-cooperation movement?
1. Patidar peasants organised nonviolent campaigns against the high land revenue demand of the British.
2. In Bengal, liquor shops were picketed.
Code:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

8. Why did Mahatma Gandhi call off the Non-cooperation movement abruptly?
(a) Because of the increasing atrocities of the British Government.
(b) Because he knew that mass movement has not a long life.
(c) Because of the act of violence done by people.
(d) None of the above

9. Why did Mahatma Gandhi decide to protest against the Salt law?
(a) British Government had a monopoly over its production.
(b) The Salt March related the general desire for freedom to a specific grievance shared by everybody.
(c) Both (a) and (b)
(d) None of the above

10. Ambabai was known for which of the following reasons?
(a) She worked for women's education.
(b) She picketed foreign cloth and liquor shops in Udipi.
(c) She worked against Sati.
(d) None of these

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Quit India Movement was launched in response to: **[UPSC]**
(a) Cabinet Mission Plan
(b) Cripps Proposal
(c) Simon Commission Report
(d) Wavell Plan

2. The people of India agitated against the arrival of the Simon Commission because **[UPSC]**
(a) Indians never wanted the review of the working of the Act of 1919
(b) Simon Commission recommended the abolition of Dyarchy (Diarchy) in the Provinces
(c) There was no Indian member of the Simon Commission
(d) The Simon Commission suggested the partition of the country

3. With reference to the Indian freedom struggle, Usha Mehta is well-known for: **[UPSC]**
(a) Running the secret Congress Radio in the wake of the Quit India Movement
(b) Participating in the Second Round Table Conference
(c) Leading a contingent of the Indian National Army
(d) Assisting in the formation of the Interim Government under Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru

4. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
The most effective contribution made by Dadabhai Naoroji to the cause of the Indian National Movement was that he

1. exposed the economic exploitation of India by the British
2. interpreted the ancient Indian texts and restored the self-confidence of Indians
3. stressed the need for eradication of all the social evils before anything else

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only
(b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only
(d) 1, 2 and 3

5. Mahatma Gandhi undertook fast unto death in 1932, mainly because **[UPSC]**

(a) Round Table Conference failed to satisfy Indian political aspirations
(b) Congress and Muslim League had differences of opinion
(c) Ramsay MacDonald announced the Communal Award
(d) None of the statements (a), (b) and (c) given above is correct in this context

6. With reference to the period of the Indian freedom struggle, which of the following was/were recommended by the Nehru report? **[UPSC]**

1. Complete Independence for India.
2. Joint electorates for reservation of seats for minorities.
3. Provision of fundamental rights for the people of India in the Constitution.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

7. The Rowlatt Act aimed at: **[UPSC]**

(a) compulsory economic support to war efforts
(b) imprisonment without trial and summary procedures for trial
(c) suppression of the Khilafat Movement
(d) imposition of restrictions on freedom of the press

8. The Partition of Bengal made by Lord Curzon in 1905 lasted until **[UPSC]**

(a) the First World War when Indian troops were needed by the British and the partition was ended.
(b) King George V abrogated Curzon's Act at the Royal Darbar in Delhi in 1911
(c) Gandhiji launched his Civil Disobedience Movement
(d) the Partition of India, in 1947 when East Bengal became East Pakistan

9. The Radcliffe Committee was appointed to **[UPSC]**

(a) solve the problem of minorities in India
(b) give effect to the Independence Bill
(c) delimit the boundaries between India and Pakistan
(d) enquire into the riots in East Bengal

10. **Assertion:** The Lucknow pact was signed between the Congress and the Muslim leagues in 1916.
Reason (R): The younger militant nationalists of the league advocated coming closer to congress on the issue of self-rule. **[UPSC]**

(a) Both A & R are true & R is the correct explanation of A.
(b) Both A & R are true, but R is not a correct explanation of A.
(c) A is true, but R is false.
(d) A is false, but R is true.

11. Which of the following statements about the Non-Cooperation Movement is/are correct? **[CDS]**

1. It was marked by the significant participation of peasants from Karnataka.
2. It was marked by non-Brahmin lower Caste participation in Madras and Maharashtra
3. It was marked by the lack of labour unrest in Places like Assam, Bengal and Madras.
4. It was badly shaken by the Chauri Chaura incident in 1922 after which Gandhiji decided to continue with the movement on a much smaller scale.

Select the correct answer using the code given below.

(a) 1 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 4
(c) 2 and 3 **(d)** 2 only

12. Who among the following was the founder of Phoenix Settlement? **[CDS]**

(a) Mahatma Gandhi **(b)** B. R. Ambedkar
(c) Rabindranath Tagore **(d)** Swami Vivekananda

13. The Gandhi-Irwin pact included the following? **[UPSC]**

1. Invitation of Congress to participate in the Round Table Conference
2. Withdrawal of Ordinances promulgated in connection with the Civil Disobedience Movement
3. Acceptance of Gandhiji's suggestion for enquiry into police excesses
4. Release of all political prisoners who are not convicted of violence

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 1,2 and 4 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 2,3 and 4 only

14. With reference to Swadeshi Movement consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**

1. It contributed to the revival of indigenous artisan crafts and industries.
2. The National Council of Education was established as a part of the Swadeshi Movement.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

15. In the Federation established by The Government of India Act of 1935, residuary powers were given to the **[UPSC]**

(a) Federal Legislature **(b)** Viceroy
(c) Provincial Legislature **(d)** Provincial Governors

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: During 1921-22, the Non-Cooperation Movement gained traction. Thousands of pupils have dropped out of government-run schools and colleges. Many lawyers, including Motilal Nehru, Chitta Rajan Das, C. Rajagopalachari and Asaf Ali gave up their practices. British titles were relinquished and legislatures were shut down. People threw the foreign cloth into public bonfires.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Arms Act was passed in 1878, disallowing Indians from possessing arms.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Vernacular Press Act 1878 was enacted in an effort to silence those who were critical of the government. The Act allowed the government to confiscate the assets of newspapers including their printing presses if the newspapers published anything that was found "objectionable".
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The attempt by the government to introduce the Ilbert Bill in 1883 caused a stir. The law called for the trial of British or European citizens by Indian judges, as well as a level playing field between British and Indian judges in the country. Indians were furious when white opposition caused the administration to withdraw the bill. The episode brought to light British racial prejudices in India.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In December 1885, 72 delegates from around the country met in Bombay to form the Indian National Congress.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Bipin Chandra Pal, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Lala Lajpat Rai were interested in more radical objectives and methods. Thus, they belonged to the extremist leadership of congress but Dadabhai Naoroji was of moderate ideology.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: B. G. Tilak raised the slogan, "Freedom is my birthright and I shall have it!" to incite the spirit of freedom in the masses.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1905 Viceroy Curzon partitioned Bengal. The British argued for dividing Bengal for reasons of administrative convenience. It was obviously linked to British authorities' and businessmen's interests. The main British motivations may have been to limit the power of Bengali politicians and to divide the Bengali people.
9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Bengal's split enraged Indians all around the country. It was opposed by all factions of Congress, including the Moderates and Radicals, as they were known. Large public gatherings and demonstrations were held and fresh forms of popular dissent emerged. The ensuing battle became known as the Swadeshi movement, which was centred in Bengal but had echoes throughout the country - for example, the Vandemataram Movement in deltaic Andhra Pradesh.
10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The All India Muslim League was founded in Dacca in 1906 by a group of Muslim landlords and nawabs. Bengal was partitioned with the League's assistance. It demanded separate Muslim electorates, which the government agreed to in 1909.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The following were the reasons for discontent among the people for British rule:
   - The British conquest of territories and takeover of kingdoms.
   - Introduction of new laws and administrative institutions.
   - Changes in the lives of peasants and tribals.
   - Educational changes in the nineteenth century.
   - Debates regarding the condition of women.
   - Challenges to the caste system.
   - Social and religious reform.
   - The revolt of 1857 and its aftermath.
   - The decline of crafts and growth of industries.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Political Associations Before Indian National Congress:
   - Bangabhasha Prakasika Sabha was established in 1836.
   - Bengal British India Society was established in 1843.
   - British Indian Association was established in 1851.
   - East India Association was established in 1866.
   - Poona Sarvajanik Sabha was established in 1870.
   - Indian League was established in 1875.
   - Indian Association of Calcutta or Indian National Association was established in 1876.
   - Bombay Presidency Association was established in 1885.
   - Madras Mahajan Sabha was established in 1884.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Congress in the first twenty years was "moderate" in its objectives and methods. During this period, it demanded a greater voice for Indians in the

government and in administration. It wanted the Legislative Councils to be made more representative, given more power and introduced in provinces where none existed. It demanded that Indians be placed in high positions in the government. For this purpose, it called for civil service examinations to be held in India as well, not just in London.

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Moderate leaders of early congress wanted to develop public awareness about the unjust nature of British rule. They published newspapers, wrote articles and showed how British rule was leading to the economic ruin of the country. They criticised British rule in their speeches and sent representatives to different parts of the country to mobilise public opinion. They felt that the British had respect for the ideals of freedom and justice and so they would accept the just demands of Indians. But they never called for direct agitation against the British Government.

5. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In 1919, Gandhiji called for a satyagraha to protest the British government's Rowlatt Act. Fundamental liberties including freedom of expression were curtailed and police powers were bolstered. The government has no right to restrict people's basic freedoms, according to Mahatma Gandhi, Mohammad Ali Jinnah and others. They called the Act "tyrannical" and "devilish." Gandhiji called for a day of nonviolent opposition to the Act on April 6, 1919, as well as a day of "humiliation and prayer" and a hartal (strike). To kickstart the movement, Satyagraha Sabhas were formed. The Rowlatt Satyagraha turned out to be the first all-India struggle against the British government although it was largely restricted to cities. In April 1919 there were a number of demonstrations and hartals in the country and the government used brutal measures to suppress them.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Jallianwala Bagh atrocities was inflicted by General Dyer in Amritsar on Baisakhi day (13 April). On learning about the massacre, Rabindranath Tagore expressed the pain and anger of the country by renouncing his knighthood.

7. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In many cases people resisted British rule non-violently. In others, different classes and groups, interpreting Gandhiji's call in their manner, protested in ways that were not in accordance with his ideas. In Kheda, Gujarat, Patidar peasants organised non-violent campaigns against the high land revenue demand of the British. In coastal Andhra and interior Tamil Nadu, liquor shops were picketed. In the Guntur district of Andhra Pradesh, tribals and poor peasants staged a number of "forest satyagraha", sometimes sending their cattle into forests without paying grazing fees. They were protesting because the colonial state had restricted their use of forest resources in various ways.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi was an outspoken opponent of violent activities. When a multitude of peasants set fire to a police station in Chauri Chaura in February 1922, he immediately ended the Non-Cooperation Movement. On that day, 22 police officers were slain. The peasants were enraged as the cops opened fire on their peaceful protest.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In 1930, Gandhiji declared that he would lead a march to break the salt law. According to this law, the state had a monopoly on the manufacture and sale of salt. Mahatma Gandhi along with other nationalists reasoned that it was sinful to tax salt since it is such an essential item of our food. The Salt March related the general desire for freedom to a specific grievance shared by everybody and thus did not divide the rich and the poor.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Both British officials and Indian nationalists felt that women's participation gave the national struggle an immense force. Ambabai of Karnataka had been married at age twelve. Widowed at sixteen, she picketed foreign cloth and liquor shops in Udipi. She was arrested, served a sentence and was rearrested. Between prison terms, she made speeches, taught spinning and organised Prabhat Feris. Ambabai regarded these as the happiest days of her life because they gave it a new purpose and commitment.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Following Cripps' mission failure, Gandhiji drafted a resolution advocating for British disengagement and a non-violent anti-Japanese non-cooperation movement. The notion of a battle was endorsed at the CWC meeting in Wardha on July 14, 1942 and called for Quit India Movement.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: India's reaction to the Simon Commission was swift and practically unanimity. The exclusion of Indians from the committee, as well as the underlying assumption that foreigners would discuss and decide on India's suitability for self-government, enraged Indians the most.

3. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Usha Mehta is well-known for running the secret Congress Radio in the wake of the Quit India Movement.

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Dadabhai Naoroji studied the political economy of British rule in India and proposed the "drain hypothesis" to explain British exploitation of

the country. They resisted the transformation of a largely self-sufficient Indian economy into a colonial economy (i.e., a provider of raw resources and food, an importer of finished commodities and a target for British capital investment). As a result, the Moderates were able to generate a widespread belief that British rule was the primary cause of India's poverty and economic backwardness.

5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: On August 16, 1932, Prime Minister Ramsay MacDonald of the United Kingdom unveiled the Communal Award. The Communal Award established distinct electorates and reserved seats for minorities, especially the depressed classes, who were given 78 reserved seats, based on the conclusions of the Indian Franchise Committee (also known as the Lothian Committee). On September 20, 1932, he decided to go on an indefinite fast against this award.

6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Nehru's report did not talk about complete independence but it talked about Dominion status on lines of self-governing dominions as the form of government desired by Indians. It rejected separate electorates which had been the basis of constitutional reforms so far; instead, demanded joint electorates with reservation of seats for Muslims at the Centre and in Provinces. It also demanded 19 fundamental rights including equal rights for women, the right to form unions and universal adult suffrage.

7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Rowlatt Act made it possible to have political activists convicted without a jury and even imprisoned without a trial. It made it possible to detain Indians without a warrant if they were suspected of treason.

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The decision to annul Bengal's partition in 1911 was made primarily to combat the threat of revolutionary terrorism. Curzon's Act was repealed by King George V in the Royal Darbar in Delhi in 1911.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Boundary Commission, chaired by Sir Cyril Radcliffe, was appointed by the British government to demarcate the borders between India and Pakistan.

10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: When it comes to safeguarding concerns for Muslims and going for self-rule, leaders of the Muslim League have called for a temporary convergence of issues. Despite the fact that they never explicitly demanded to go along with the congress.

11. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Statement 2 is true. In Madras and Maharashtra, there was a non-Brahmin lower caste movement. Statement 1, 3 and 4 are not true. The NCM had little effect on Karnataka. In Assam, Bengal and Madras, there was labour agitation. It was halted after Chauri Chaura.

12. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi built the Phoenix Settlement on the outskirts of Durban in 1904 to experiment with Satyagraha, Sarvodaya and Ahimsa (non-violence). It was here that Gandhiji first championed the cause of mine and sugarcane workers, women's independence and the fight against alcohol.

13. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Irwin, on behalf of the government, agreed to the following:
- Immediate release of all political prisoners who have not been convicted of violence.
- Remission of all fines not yet collected.
- Return of all lands not yet sold to third parties.
- Lenient treatment of government employees who have resigned.
- Right to make salt in coastal villages for personal consumption (not for sale).
- Right to peaceful and non-aggressive picketing.
- Withdrawal of emergency ordinances.

14. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Swadeshi Movement contributed to the revival of the indigenous artisan crafts and industries. The National Council of Education was established as a part of the Swadeshi Movement.

15. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Government of India Act of 1935 provided residuary powers to the Viceroy.

HISTORY CLASS-VIII

10 INDIA AFTER INDEPENDENCE

A New and Divided Nation

- India gained independence in August 1947. The Partition had sent 8 million refugees into the nation from what is now Pakistan. The princely states' dilemma was that they were each ruled by a maharaja or a nawab, who had to be persuaded to join the new nation.
- India's population was massive in 1947 and it was split between high and low castes, the dominant Hindu group and Indians of other faiths. The citizens of India spoke different languages, wore different kinds of dresses, ate different kinds of food and practised different professions.
- The bulk of Indians lived in villages at the time of independence. Farmers and peasants, as well as the non-farm sector of the rural economy, relied on the monsoon for existence. Factory workers in the cities lived in overcrowded slums with little access to education and health care.

A Constitution is Written

- Three hundred Indians met in a series of meetings on the country's political destiny between December 1946 and November 1949. New Delhi hosted these "Constituent Assembly" gatherings. The Indian Constitution was drafted as a result of these negotiations and it went into effect on January 26, 1950.
- The establishment of universal adult franchise was one of the Constitution's features. In state and national elections, all Indians over the age of 21 will be entitled to vote. On the other hand, India elected to extend this right to all of its citizens shortly after independence, regardless of gender, class, or education. The Constitution's second element ensured that all citizens, regardless of caste or religious affiliation, were treated equally before the law.
- Sikhs, Christians, Parsis and Jains all had significant numbers in India. They will enjoy the same rights as Hindus under the new Constitution, including the same opportunity to work in government or the commercial sector and equal protection under the law.
- The Constitution's third feature provided specific benefits to the poorest and most disadvantaged Indians.
- The Constituent Assembly debated the powers of the Federal Government vs State Governments for many days. The Constitution balanced these competing claims by establishing three lists of subjects: a Union List, which includes subjects such as taxes, defence and foreign affairs and is solely the responsibility of the Centre; a State List, which includes subjects such as education and health and is primarily the responsibility of the States; and a Concurrent List, which includes subjects such as forests and agriculture and is jointly responsible by the Centre and the States.
- Another major point of contention was the use of terminology. Many members believed that English should be phased out of India and Hindi should take its place. Finally, a compromise was reached: Hindi would be the "official language" of India, while English would be used in courts, services and Inter-State Communications.
- Dr B.R. Ambedkar, Chairman of the Drafting Committee, drafted the Indian Constitution. Dr Ambedkar stressed in his final speech that political democracy must be complemented by economic and social democracy. India was about to embark on a life of contradictions with the new Constitution.

How were States to be Formed?

- Back in the 1920s, the Indian National Congress – the main party of the freedom struggle – had promised that once the country won independence, each major linguistic group would have its own province. However, after independence the Congress did not take any steps to honour this promise. For India had been divided on the basis of religion: despite the wishes and efforts of Mahatma Gandhi, freedom had come not to one nation but to two.
- The Kannada speakers, the Malayalam speakers and the Marathi speakers all desired separate states. The Telugu-speaking districts of the Madras Presidency were the epicentre of the protests. Potti Sriramulu embarked on a hunger strike to seek the creation of an Andhra State to preserve Telugu speakers' interests.
- Potti Sriramulu died on December 15, 1952. The new state of Andhra, which later became Andhra Pradesh, was established on October 1, 1953.
- A States Reorganisation Commission was established and its report was delivered in 1956, recommending that district and provincial boundaries be redrawn to produce compact provinces of Assamese, Bengali, Oriya, Tamil, Malayalam, Kannada and Telugu languages. Several states were formed from the big Hindi-speaking region.
- Bombay was separated into two states in 1960, one for Marathi speakers and the other for Gujarati people. Punjab was partitioned into two states in 1966: Punjab and Haryana.

Planning for Development

- The government established a Planning Commission in 1950 to formulate and implement appropriate

economic development programmes. The state and the private sector would both play major and complementary roles in expanding production and creating jobs in a mixed economy paradigm.

- The Planning Commission's job is to figure out which industries should be started by the government and which should be started by the market, as well as how to strike a balance between the various regions and states.
- In 1956, the Second Five-Year Plan was formulated, which focused strongly on the development of heavy industries such as steel and on the building of large dams. These sectors would be under the control of the State. Some people criticized this approach stating that it had put inadequate emphasis on agriculture. Others argued that it had neglected primary education.

The Nation, Sixty Years On

- On August 15, 2007, India commemorated its sixty-fifth year as a free country. India is still a democratic and united country. Several foreign observers believed that India could not exist as a unified country and that it would disintegrate into many sections, with each area or linguistic group attempting to become its own nation. Some speculated that it would be ruled by the military.
- Despite constitutional protections, depressed class continue to experience violence and prejudice in rural India. Despite the secular objectives stated in the Constitution, battles between religious organisations have occurred in numerous states.
- The gap between the rich and the poor has widened over time. Economic development has helped some sections of India and certain segments of Indians significantly. Many others, on the other hand, continue to live in poverty.
- Although, the Constitution recognises equality under the law, certain Indians are more equal than others in reality. The Republic of India has not been a big success by the standards it set for itself at independence. It hasn't, however, been a complete failure.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. When was Mahatma Gandhi assassinated?
(a) 30^{th} Jan 1948 **(b)** 30^{th} June 1949
(c) 2^{nd} October 1947 **(d)** None of these

2. When was the constitution written by the constituent assembly?
(a) December 1947 to November 1950
(b) December 1946 to November 1949
(c) July 1946 and January 1950
(d) None of these

3. Which of the following was not a feature of the Indian Constitution at the time of its commencement?
(a) All Indians above the age of 18 would be allowed to vote in state and national elections.
(b) It guaranteed equality before the law to all citizens.
(c) It offered special privileges for the poorest and most disadvantaged Indians.
(d) All the above.

4. Who among the following raised the voice of South India for their languages in Constituent Assembly?
(a) C. R. Das **(b)** B.R. Ambedkar
(c) Potti Sriramulu **(d)** T.T. Krishnamachari

5. Who was the Chairman of the Drafting Committee of the Constitution?
(a) Jawahar Lal Nehru **(b)** Sardar Patel
(c) Dr. B. R. Ambedkar **(d)** None of these

6. Which of the following leader died due to fasting for a separate state of Telugu speaking people?
(a) Potti Sriramulu **(b)** C. R. Das
(c) T.T. Krishnamachari **(d)** None of these

7. Concurrent list of the subjects in Constitution is the list of _____.
(a) subjects on which Centre and State have the power to make law
(b) subjects on which only the Centre has the power to make law
(c) subjects on which only the State has the power to make law
(d) none of the options is correct

8. When was Planning Commission established?
(a) 1955 **(b)** 1965
(c) 1975 **(d)** None of these

9. On which subjects did the Second Five-year Plan focussed?
(a) Agriculture and Village development
(b) Infrastructure
(c) Heavy industries
(d) Education

10. Which of the following country was not part of the leadership of NAM?
(a) India **(b)** Egypt
(c) Ghana **(d)** Pakistan

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following leaders was/were associated with provisions of welfare for depressed class in the Constitution?
1. Dr B. R. Ambedkar **2.** M. Gandhi
3. H.J. Khandekar
Choose the correct code:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 1 only **(d)** None of these

2. Consider the following pairs:

	State	Year of formation
1.	Andhra Pradesh	1953
2.	Gujarat	1960
3.	Haryana	1966

Which of the above pairs is/are correct?
(a) Both 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 only
(c) 1 only **(d)** All of the above

3. Consider the given statements with reference to the first steel plant in India:
   1. It was set up in the state of Bengal.
   2. It was set up with the help of the USSR.

   Which of the above statement is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
4. Consider the given statements with reference to nuclear energy development in India:
   1. Atomic Energy Commission was headed by Homi J. Bhabha.
   2. It was set up in August 1950.
   3. In August 1966, India's first nuclear reactor in Trombay, became critical.

   Which of the above statements is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** None of the above
5. Who was the first chairman of the Indian University Education Commission?
   (a) Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru
   (b) Maulana Abul Kalam Azad
   (c) Dr. S. Radhakrishnan
   (d) None of these
6. Which of the following was/were not part of Indian foreign policy under J. L. Nehru?
   1. An independent foreign policy not tied to any of the two contending power blocs.
   2. A policy of international friendship with all countries.
   3. A strong anti-colonial stance that favoured decolonization in Asian, African and Latin American countries.
   4. Anti-apartheid policies are openly supported.

   Choose the correct code:
   (a) 1, 2 and 3 **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 1, 2, 3 and 4 **(d)** None of the above
7. The Panchsheel Agreement was related to:
   (a) India and Pakistan **(b)** India and China
   (c) India and Nepal **(d)** India and USSR
8. Which of the following was not a result of the Indo-China war of 1962?
   (a) The non-alignment policy was called into doubt.
   (b) The Congress lost three consecutive parliamentary by-elections and Nehru faced his first no-confidence motion.
   (c) Because resources were redirected for defence, the Third Five-Year Plan was severely harmed.
   (d) India's foreign policy took a change, as the US and the UK had responded negatively in the crisis.
9. Who led India in the UN during the early years after Independence?
   (a) Krishna Menon **(b)** Dr. S. Rajkrishnan
   (c) M. Deshpande **(d)** None of these
10. The First Five-Year Plan was based on:
   (a) Harrod–Domar model
   (b) Mahalanobis model
   (c) John Sandy & S. Chakrawarty Model
   (d) None of these

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: On 30 January 1948, Mahatma Gandhi was assassinated by Nathuram Godse.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The three hundred Indians met in a series of meetings on the country's political destiny (making of the constitution) between December 1946 and November 1949.
3. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The following were the main features of the Constitution at the time of its commencement:
   - All Indians above the age of 21 would be allowed to vote in state and national elections.
   - It guaranteed equality before the law to all citizens, regardless of their caste or religious affiliation.
   - It offered special privileges for the poorest and most disadvantaged Indians.
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: A major debate in the Constituent Assembly concerned language. Many members believed that the English language should leave India with the British rulers. Its place, they argued, should be taken by Hindi. But leaders from South India were of a different opinion. Speaking in the Assembly, T.T. Krishnamachari conveyed "a warning on behalf of people of the South", some of whom threatened to separate from India if Hindi was imposed on them.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Dr B.R. Ambedkar was the Chairman of the Drafting Committee of the constitution.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Both Prime Minister Nehru and Deputy Prime Minister Vallabhbhai Patel were against the creation of linguistic states. But the Kannada speakers, Malayalam speakers and the Marathi speakers, had all looked forward to having their own state. The strongest protests, however, came from the Telugu-speaking districts of what was the Madras Presidency. Potti Sriramulu, the Gandhian leader who died fasting for a separate state for Telugu speakers.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Constitution has three lists of subjects: a Union List, with subjects such as taxes, defence and foreign affairs, which would be the

exclusive responsibility of the Centre; a State List of subjects, such as education and health, which would be taken care of principally by the States; a Concurrent List, under which would come subjects such as forests and agriculture, in which the Centre and the States would have joint responsibility.

8. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1950, the government set up a Planning Commission to help design and execute suitable policies for economic development.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1956, the Second Five Year Plan was formulated. This focused strongly on the development of heavy industries such as steel and on the building of large dams.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Prime Minister Jawaharlal Nehru, who was also the Foreign Minister of newly independent India, developed free India's foreign policy. Non-alignment formed the bedrock of this foreign policy. Led by statesmen from Egypt, Yugoslavia, Indonesia, Ghana and India, the non-aligned movement urged countries not to join either of the two major alliances.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Dr B.R. Ambedkar and H.J. Khandekar were the two staunch supporters of the welfare of the depressed class and untouchables. They raised their voice in the Constituent Assembly. Mahatma Gandhi was not part of the Constituent Assembly.

2. **Option (d) is correct.**

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Bhilai steel plant was set up with the help of the former Soviet Union in 1959.
Located in the backward rural area of Chhattisgarh, it came to be seen as an important sign of the development of modern India after Independence.

4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In August 1948, the Atomic Energy Commission, led by Homi J. Bhabha, was established. Bhabha was directly urged by Nehru to do his best. The government took action in 1954.
Homi Bhabha established a distinct Department of Atomic Energy. As secretary, Homi Bhabha. The first nuclear power plant in India was built in August 1956.
The reactor in Trombay (also Asia's first) became critical.

5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Indian University Education Commission, chaired by Dr S. Radhakrishnan, was established in 1949.
The University Grants Commission (UGC) was established in 1953 and the University Grants Commission Act was ratified in 1956.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: During the Nehruvian era, India's main foreign policy principles centred around the premises listed below:
- Disapproval of participation in any military alliance either bilaterally or multilaterally.
- An independent foreign policy not tied to any of the two contending power blocs.
- A policy of international friendship with all countries.
- A strong anti-colonial stance that favoured decolonization in Asian, African and Latin American countries.
- Anti-apartheid policies are openly supported.
- Disarmament promotion as a means to world peace.

7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1950, the Chinese army invaded Tibet and occupied it. Apart from sharing a border with Tibet of roughly 2000 kilometres, India has inherited numerous rights and obligations from British control in Tibet. To keep the peace, Nehru signed an agreement with China in 1954 that formalised China's annexation of Tibet. Panchsheel is the name given to the agreement.

8. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Consequences of the Sino-Indian Conflict:
- The non-alignment policy was called into doubt.
- The Congress lost three consecutive parliamentary by-elections and Nehru faced his first no-confidence motion.
- Because resources were redirected for defence, the Third Five-Year Plan was severely harmed.
- India's foreign policy took a change, as the US and the UK had responded positively in the crisis, they were to be considered in future.
- Pakistan, emboldened by India's defeat in the war, planned to strike India in 1965, with China's support.

9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Krishna Menon led the Indian delegation to the UN between 1952 and 1962 and argued for a policy of non-alignment.

10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The First Five-Year Plan (1951–56), based on the Harrod–Domar model, aimed to break the nation's poverty cycle. It primarily addressed the agrarian sector, including dam and irrigation investments. Large-scale projects, such as the Bhakhra Nangal Dam, have received significant funding. It also emphasised land reforms.

HISTORY CLASS-IX

1 THE FRENCH REVOLUTION

Introduction

- The French Revolution was a turning point in modern European history, ushering in enlightened ideas and democracy and establishing a rational and egalitarian society. It began in 1789 and concluded in 1799.
- In France and its colonies, the French Revolution was a period of social and political upheaval. The Monarchy was overthrown and the decline of absolute monarchies in other regions of Europe was affected by liberal and radical views. This was also the revolution that brought Napoleon Bonaparte to power.
- In 1789, the French Revolution began. The top classes were shaken by a series of events that began with the middle class. The people rose up against the monarchy's brutal rule. The values of liberty, fraternity and equality were promoted during this revolution. The revolution began on July 14, 1789 with the storming of the Bastille, a fortress prison. The Bastille was hated by all because it symbolized the king's dictatorial power. The fortification was reduced to rubble.

Causes of the French Revolution

- France was the most populous country in Europe at the time and it had been expanding in wealth and status since King Louis XIV's reign. Louis XVI of the Bourbon dynasty ascended to the French throne in 1774. He was 20 years old and married to Marie Antoinette, an Austrian princess. However the country was still socially and politically backward, so the economic growth of the country was not obvious.
- **Social Inequality:** In the eighteenth century, French society was split into three estates: the Clergy, the Nobility and the Third Estates. The clergy and the nobility, the first two estates, were born with special rights. They were not required to pay taxes, were born with special rights. They were not required to pay taxes. The Third Estate is made up of business people, merchants, peasants and artisans who were compelled to pay taxes to the government. The Church too extracted its share of taxes called **tithes** from the peasants.
- **Political Causes:** Long years of war have depleted France's financial resources. Under Louis XVI, France helped the thirteen American colonies to gain their independence from the common enemy, Britain. France was in debt in the amount of around 2 billion lives. Lenders who gave credit to the state now began to charge 10 % interest on loans. So, the French government was obliged to spend an increasing percentage of its budget on interest payments alone. The state was compelled to raise taxes to pay its usual expenses, such as the cost of keeping an army, the judiciary, running government offices and universities.
- **Economic Problems:** In addition, France's population grew from 23 million in 1715 to 28 million in 1789. Foodgrains were in high demand during the time. The cost of bread increased dramatically. Wages did not keep up with inflation. This resulted in a food shortage. Things became worse whenever drought or hail reduced the harvest. This led to a subsistence crisis (an extreme situation where the basic means of livelihood are endangered).
- **Strong Middle Class:** A new middle class emerged educated and wealthy during the eighteenth century. They believed that no group in society should be given privileges by birth. Ideas of equality and freedom were put forward by philosophers such as John Locke and Jean Jacques Rousseau. Locke sought to refute the doctrine of the divine and absolute right of the monarch in his '**Two Treatises of Government**'. Rousseau proposed a form of government based on a social contract between people and their representatives. Montesquieu proposed a division of power within the government between the legislative, the executive and the judiciary in '**The Spirit of the Laws**'. The ideas of these philosophers were discussed intensively in salons and coffee houses and spread among people.
- Immediate Causes: Louis XVI called an Estates General assembly on May 5, 1789 to implement new tax policies. The third estates were opposed to the proposition, but only because each estate had only one vote, although having the most numbers (the first and second estates had 300 representatives each and the third estate had 600 members).
- The third estate urged that voting be done by the entire assembly with each member having one vote. This was one of the democratic principles put forward by philosophers like Rousseau in his book "**The Social Contract**". The king dismissed the appeal and they left the meeting without saying anything.

Note:

Livre – Unit of currency in France, discontinued in 1794

Clergy – Group of persons invested with special functions in the church

Tithe – A tax levied by the church, comprising one-tenth of the agricultural produce

Taille – Tax to be paid directly to the state

The Outbreak

- After the rejection of the proposal of the third estate by the king, members of the third estate walked out of the assembly in protest. On 20th June, 1789 the representatives of the third estate assembled in the hall of an indoor tennis court on the grounds of Versailles where they declared themselves a National Assembly and vowed to draft a Constitution for France that would limit the powers of the monarch. The third estate was led by Mirabeau, a noble and Abbé Sieyès, a priest.
- The food harvests were damaged by the harsh winter, resulting in a spike in costs. Bakers also hoarded bread supplies in order to increase profits. Crowds of angry ladies poured into the shops after spending hours in huge lines at the bakery. The king also ordered troops to deploy into Paris at the same time. The Bastille was assaulted and destroyed on July 14th by an enraged crowd.
- Due to the strong uprising of the third estate, the king had to recognize the National Assembly and the Constitution made by it was ratified. France passed a statute abolishing the feudal system of responsibilities and taxes on August 4, 1789. The Clergy members were also forced to relinquish their privileges. Tithes were abolished and the Church's lands were confiscated.

France Becomes a Constitutional Monarchy

- The National Assembly completed the draft of the constitution in 1791. Its main objective was to limit the powers of the monarch. These powers were now separated and assigned to different institutions – the legislature, executive and judiciary. This made France a constitutional monarchy. The Constitution of 1791 gave the power of making laws in the hands of the the National Assembly, which was indirectly elected by a group of electors, which were chosen by active citizens.
- Only men above the age of 25 who paid taxes equal to at least three days of a laborer's income are considered Active Citizens. The remaining men and women were labelled as "passive citizens," meaning they were not allowed to vote. The Constitution began with a Declaration of the Rights of Man and Citizen. Rights which were provided in the constitution were the right to life, freedom of speech, freedom of opinion, equality before law and these were established as 'natural and inalienable' rights, that is, they belonged to each human being by birth and could not be taken away. The constitution also made sure that it was the duty of the state to protect each citizen's natural rights.

> **Note:** The revolutionary journalist Jean-Paul Marat in his newspaper L'Ami du peuple (The friend of the people) commented on the Constitution drafted by the National Assembly:
>
> 'The task of representing the people has been given to the rich … the lot of the poor and oppressed will never be improved by peaceful means alone. Here we have absolute proof of how wealth influences the law. Yet laws will last only as long as the people agree to obey them. And when they have managed to cast off the yoke of the aristocrats, they will do the same to the other owners of wealth.'

France Abolishes Monarchy and Becomes a Republic

- Although Louis XVI had signed the Constitution, he secretly negotiated with King Frederick William III of Prussia. The rulers of other neighbouring countries were also concerned about the events in France and formed plans to send troops to put an end to the revolution.
- Meanwhile the National Assembly voted in April 1792 to declare war on Prussia and Austria, preventing this from happening. Thousands of volunteers from the provinces volunteered to join the army. People throughout Europe saw this battle as a people's fight against kings and aristocracies.
- The revolutionary wars brought losses and economic difficulties to the people. The Constitution of 1791 gave political rights only to the richer sections of society. Political clubs were established by the people who wished to discuss government policies and plan their own forms of action. The most successful of these clubs was that of the Jacobins (got its name from the former convent, a building belonging to a community devoted to a religious life, of St Jacob in Paris). The members of the Jacobin club belonged mainly to the less prosperous sections of society. Their leader was Maximilian Robespierre.
- Jacobins started wearing long striped trousers and came to be known as the sans-culottes, literally meaning those without knee-breeches. In the summer of 1792, the Jacobins planned a revolt of a large number of the people of Paris who were angered by the short supplies and high prices of food.
- On the morning of August 10, they stormed the Palace of the Tuileries, massacred the king's guards and held the king himself hostage for several hours. Later, the Assembly voted to imprison the royal family. Elections were held.
- From now on all men of 21 years and above, regardless of wealth, got the right to vote. The newly elected assembly was called the Convention. On 21 September 1792, it abolished the monarchy and declared France a republic.
- Louis XVI was sentenced to death by a court on the charge of treason. On 21 January 1793, he was executed publicly at the Place de la Concorde. Queen Marie Antoinette met with the same fate shortly after.

The Reign of Terror

- The period from 1793 to 1794 is referred to as the **Reign of Terror**. Robespierre followed a policy of severe control and punishment. All those whom he saw as being 'enemies' (ex-nobles and clergy, members of other political parties, even members of his own party who did not agree with his methods) of the republic had been killed.
- Robespierre's Government issued laws placing a maximum ceiling on wages and prices. Meat and bread were rationed. Peasants were forced to transport their grain to the cities and sell it at prices fixed by the government.
- Robespierre pursued his policies so relentlessly that even his supporters began to demand moderation. Finally, he was convicted by a court in July 1794, arrested and on the next day sent to the Guillotine.

A Directory Rules France

- The wealthier middle classes seized power after the fall of the Jacobin government. A new constitution was introduced which denied the right to vote to non-propertied sections of society. The new constitution provided for two elected legislative councils. These then appointed a Directory, an executive made up of five members. The Directory of five members was meant as a safeguard against the concentration of power in a one-man executive as under the Jacobins. However, the Directors often clashed with the legislative councils, who then sought to dismiss them. The political instability of the Directory opened the way for the rise of Napoleon Bonaparte, a military dictator.

Women in revolution

- From the very start, women had an active role in the events that ushered in so many changes in French society. The majority of women in the third estate had to work to make ends meet. Their pay was less than that of men. Women created their own political clubs and journals to discuss and share their concerns.
- One of their main demands was that women must enjoy the same political rights as men. Some laws were introduced to improve the position of women. Their struggle still continues in several parts of the world. It was finally in 1946 that the women in France won the right to vote.
- The revolutionary government did introduce laws that helped improve the lives of women.
- By the creation of state schools, schooling was made compulsory for all girls.
- Their fathers could no longer force them into marriage against their will.
- Divorce was made legal and could be applied for by both women and men.
- Women could now train for jobs become artists, or run small businesses.
- It was finally in 1946 that the women in France won the right to vote.

The Abolition of Slavery

- One of the most revolutionary social reforms of the Jacobin regime was the abolition of slavery in the French colonies.
- The unwillingness of Europeans to go and work in the colonies in the Caribbean that were important suppliers of commodities such as tobacco, indigo, sugar and coffee created a shortage of labour on the plantations.
- This was the reason for the slave trade that began in the seventeenth century. French merchants sailed from their ports to the African coast, where they bought slaves from local chieftains.
- The National Assembly held long debates about whether the rights of man should be extended to all French subjects, including those in the colonies. But it did not pass any laws, fearing opposition from businessmen whose incomes depended on the slave trade.
- Jacobin regime, in 1794, abolished slavery in the French colonies. However, ten years later, Napoleon reintroduced slavery. Slavery was finally abolished in French colonies in 1848.

Conclusion

- In 1804, Napoleon Bonaparte crowned himself Emperor of France. He set out to conquer neighbouring European countries, dispossessing dynasties and creating kingdoms. Napoleon saw his role as a moderniser of Europe. He introduced many laws such as the protection of private property and a uniform system of weights and measures provided by the decimal system.
- But soon the Napoleonic armies came to be viewed everywhere as an invading force. He was finally defeated at Waterloo in 1815. Many of his measures that carried the revolutionary ideas of liberty and modern laws to other parts of Europe had an impact on people long after Napoleon left.

Timeline of important incidents
1774 : Louis XVI becomes king of France, faces empty treasury, increasing debt and growing discontent within the society of the Old Regime.
1789 : Convocation of Estates General, Third Estate forms National Assembly, the Bastille is stormed, peasant revolts in the countryside.
1791 : A constitution is framed to limit the powers of the king/monarch and to guarantee basic rights to all human beings.
1792-93 : France becomes a republic, the king is beheaded. Overthrow of the Jacobin republic, Rule of Directory over France.
1804 : Napoleon becomes emperor of France, annexes large parts of Europe.
1815 : Napoleon defeated at Waterloo.
1848 : Abolition of slavery in French Colonies.
1946 : Right to vote to women.

Legacy

- Democratic rights we enjoy today whose origins could be traced to the French Revolution.
- We can trace the origin of the following democratic rights we enjoy today to the French revolution:
  1. Right to Equality before the law
  2. Freedom of Speech and expression
  3. Right against exploitation
  4. Right to justice
- The ideas of liberty and democratic rights were the most important legacy of the French Revolution. These spread from France to the rest of Europe during the nineteenth century, when feudal systems were abolished.
- Colonised peoples reworked the idea of freedom from bondage into their movements to create a sovereign nation-state.
- Tipu Sultan and Raja Ram Mohan Roy are two examples of individuals who responded to the ideas coming from revolutionary France.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. What type of government did the Constitution of 1791 create?
   (a) Monarchy **(b)** Communist
   (c) Limited monarchy **(d)** Dictatorship
2. Why was the fortress prison, the Bastille, hated by all?
   (a) It stood for the despotic power of the king.
   (b) Because of dictatorship
   (c) Aristocracy
   (d) None of these
3. Which group of people did not join the Jacobin Club?
   (a) Artisans **(b)** Shopkeepers
   (c) Daily wage workers **(d)** Men with property
4. Name the two individuals from India who responded to the ideas coming from the French revolution.
   (a) Tantia Tope and Raja Rammohan Roy
   (b) Tipu Sultan and Rammohan Roy
   (c) Tipu Sultan and Laxmi Bai
   (d) Dada-bhai Naoroji and Raja Rammohan Roy
5. The publication L'Ami du peuple, which means _____, was published by revolutionary journalist, Jean-Paul Marat.
   (a) Friend of people **(b)** King of people
   (c) Rights of people **(d)** None of these
6. Which factor did not contribute to France's pre-revolution debt?
   (a) The Seven Years' War
   (b) The cost of maintaining the army and navy
   (c) High tariffs on imported goods
   (d) Upkeep at Versailles
7. What was one effect of the French Revolution?
   (a) Differences between ethnic groups were eliminated
   (b) Communism became popular
   (c) Militarism was discouraged
   (d) Nationalistic feelings were stimulated
8. Which statement describes a similarity between the French Revolution and the Bolshevik Revolution in Russia?
   (a) The leaders in power before the revolutions favoured changing the political system in their country.
   (b) Both revolutions were the result of government denial of basic human rights and stressful economic conditions.
   (c) Most of the revolutionary support was provided by radicals from other countries.
   (d) The new democracies created by the revolutions gave people greater representation in their governments
9. When was the Tennis Court Oath taken?
   (a) June 20, 1789
   (b) July 20, 1789
   (c) August 20, 1789
   (d) September 18,1789
10. Which of the following would not have been grouped under the Third Estate?
    (a) Priests **(b)** Merchants
    (c) The Bourgeoisie **(d)** Peasants

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of these statements is correct about Europe after the French Revolution?
   (a) Suddenly, it seemed possible to change the aristocracy
   (b) Not everyone wanted a complete change of society
   (c) Some wanted gradual change, others wanted a complete change
   (d) All of the above
2. Which period was known as the Great Fear?
   (a) The era of Napoleon Bonaparte (1804 -1815), when he ruled France as Monarch.
   (b) The summer of 1789, when peasants around the French countryside revolted against their feudal landlords
   (c) 1793–1794, when Robespierre systematically killed more than 15,000 alleged counter revolutionary activists
   (d) 1797–1799, when the corrupt Directory ruled dictatorially
3. Which of the following lists of events is in correct chronological order (from earliest to latest)?
   (a) Estates-General convenes; Civil Constitution of the Clergy is issued; Louis XVI is executed; storming of the Bastille
   (b) National Assembly is established; Reign of Terror; Declaration of Pillnitz; Louis XVI attempts to flee France
   (c) Tennis Court Oath; storming of the Bastille; First Republic is declared; Reign of Terror
   (d) The Directory takes dictatorial powers; Napoleon overthrows the Directory; Robespierre is executed, Declaration of Pillnitz
4. With reference to French Revolution, which of the following was/were the essential elements of the French society?
   (a) French society was divided into hierarchical classes.
   (b) Majority of French came under lowest level of society
   (c) Top class had lowest responsibility of taxes
   (d) All of the above

5. Which of the following was/were the outcomes of the French revolution?
   1. Ideas of liberty and democratic rights were the most important outcome
   2. Rise of Napoleon Bonaparte
   3. End of slavery in Europe

   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
6. Who of the following was/were critic/critics of the French monarchy and feudal system?
   1. Karl Marx
   2. John Locke
   3. Jean Jacques Rousseau

   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
7. Consider the following pairs:

	Philosophy	Person
1.	Two Treatises of Government	John Locke
2.	The Social Contract	Mirabeau
3.	The Spirit of the Laws	Jean Jacques
		Rousseau

Which of the above pairs is/are correctly matched?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 3 only
(c) 1 only **(d)** 1 and 3 only

8. French women demanded the right:
   (a) to vote
   (b) to be elected to the assembly
   (c) to hold political office
   (d) All of the above
9. Which of the following places were not associated with French Revolution?
   1. Grounds of Versailles
   2. St Petersburg
   3. The Bastille
   4. Petrograd

   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 2 and 4 only
   (c) 1, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 3 and 4 only
10. Which of these provisions was/were passed by the Assembly on the night of 4 August, 1789?
    (a) Abolition of feudal system of obligations
    (b) Clergy had to give up its privileges
    (c) Tithes were abolished
    (d) All the above

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: In 1971, king gave up many privileges and powers; and new Constitution conferred power to the third estate. Hence, monarchy with limited power still existed in France.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Rebel Parisians stormed the Bastille not to free any prisoners but to get ammunition and arms. But to them, it was also a symbol of the monarchy's tyranny. Bastille was hated by all because it stood for the despotic power of the king.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Jacobin Club was mostly made up of persons from lower socio-economic classes. Small business owners, artisans such as shoemakers, pastry chefs, watchmakers and printers, as well as servants and daily wage labourers, were among them. Maximilian Robespierre was their leader.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Tipu Sultan and Raja Rammohan Roy are two examples of individuals who responded to the ideas coming from revolutionary France.
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Jean-Paul Marat is best remembered for his work as a radical journalist during the French Revolution. He was a remarkable political theorist, surgeon and scientist. His opinions were published in his newspaper, L'Ami du People, which meant 'friend of the people,' bringing him even closer to the then-revolutionaries known as Jacobins.
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Seven Years' War, the cost of maintaining the army and navy and upkeep at Versailles were the reasons behind the economic and social problems of French people and finally resulted in revolution. Since, the third estate in France did not use imported goods in large quantities as they could not afford these things. So, high tariffs on imported goods had no effect on their lives.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Revolution initially heralded a new era of fraternity. This proved ephemeral as war engulfed Europe from 1792 to 1815. In France, war initially encouraged national solidarity as the entire country mobilized. As the war persisted, this solidarity broke down and a chasm developed between civilians and soldiers.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The French Revolution and the Russian Revolution have many similarities. Such as in their government, the poverty/class structure and the radical uprisings. For example, both countries had strict rule, France having absolute monarchy and Russia having autocracy, prior to the revolutions. They both had a high population of peasants and workers in their time. The first way that the French Revolution in the late 1700s and the Russian Revolution in the early 1900s compare is their government. Both revolutions

were the result of government denial of basic human rights and stressful economic conditions.

9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Tennis Court Oath was taken on June 20, 1789.

10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Priest was the part of the first estate in French society before the French revolution.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The French Revolution opened up the possibility of creating a dramatic change in the way in which society was structured. Suddenly, after the revolution, it seemed possible to change this. In many parts of the world including Europe and Asia, new ideas about individual rights and who controlled social power began to be discussed. Not everyone in Europe, however, wanted a complete transformation of society. Responses varied from those who accepted that some change was necessary but wished for a gradual shift, to those who wanted to restructure society radically. Some were 'conservatives', others were 'liberals' or 'radicals'.

2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1789, Louis XVI called together an assembly of the Estates-General to pass proposals for new taxes. The third estate revolted and declared themselves a National Assembly and swore not to disperse. Parisian also revolted with representatives of the third estate. King brought the army to suppress it. In the countryside rumours spread from village to village that the lords of the manor had hired bands of brigands who were on their way to destroy the ripe crops. Caught in a frenzy of fear, peasants in several districts seized hoes and pitchforks and attacked chateaux. They looted hoarded grain and burnt down documents containing records of manorial dues.

3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Tennis court oath- June 20, 1789
Crowd stormed and destroyed the Bastille- 14 July, 1789
France became first republic- 21 September 1792
Reign of Terror- 5 September, 1793 and July 27, 1794

4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: French society in the eighteenth century was divided into three estates and only members of the third estate, which comprised 90 per cent of the population, paid taxes. The members of the first two estates, that is, the clergy and the nobility, enjoyed certain privileges by birth.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The ideas of liberty and democratic rights were the most important legacy of the French Revolution. These spread from France to the rest of Europe during the nineteenth century.
In 1804, Napoleon Bonaparte crowned himself as the Emperor of France. He set out to conquer neighbouring European countries.
Slavery continued in Europe after French revolution.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: These ideas envisaging a society based on freedom and equal laws and opportunities for all were put forward by philosophers such as John Locke and Jean Jacques Rousseau. But, Karl Marx was more associated with the idea of Socialism which was the precursor of the Russian revolution.

7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Theory of "The Social Contract" was proposed by Jean Jacques Rousseau, whereas Montesquieu proposed a division of power within the government between the legislative, the executive and the judiciary in its "The Spirit of the Laws."

8. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: French women demanded the right to vote, to be elected to the assembly and to hold political office.

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
- Grounds of Versailles: The representatives of the, third estate assembled here in an indoor tennis court when their entry was denied into the French Parliament.
- St Petersburg was the winter place of king Tsar Nicholas II of the Russian empire.
- The Bastille was a fortress prison in Paris which was stormed by a group of several hundred people which was one of the precursors of revolution.
- Petrograd was the capital of Russian empire.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Assembly passed several provisions, including Abolition of feudal system of obligations, Clergy had to give up its privileges, Tithes were abolished, on the night of 4 August, 1789.

HISTORY CLASS-IX

2 SOCIALISM IN EUROPE AND THE RUSSIAN REVOLUTION

Introduction

- The French Revolution opened up the possibility of creating a dramatic change in the way in which society was structured. In many parts of the world, including Europe and Asia, new ideas about individual rights and who controlled social power began to be discussed.
- Not everyone in Europe, however, wanted a complete transformation of society. Responses varied from those who accepted that some change was necessary but wished for a gradual shift, to those who wanted to restructure society radically. Some were 'conservatives', while others were 'liberals' or 'radicals'.
- Liberals desired a country that tolerated all religions. They advocated for a democratically elected Parliamentary Government governed by laws interpreted by a well-trained court free of rulers and officials. They were not members of the Democratic Party.
- Radicals desired a country in which the bulk of the public was represented in government. They objected to the concentration of wealth in the hands of a few individuals rather than the presence of private property.
- Conservatives resisted change. After the revolution, they started accepting change provided it was slow and had links and respected the past.

Industrial Society and Social Change

- Industrialisation brought men, women and children to factories. Work hours were often long and wages were poor. Unemployment was common, particularly during times of low demand for industrial goods. Basic needs were also a major problem. Liberals and radicals searched for solutions to these issues.
- Some nationalists, liberals and radicals wanted revolutions to put an end to the kind of governments established in Europe in 1815. In France, Italy, Germany and Russia, they became revolutionaries and worked to overthrow existing monarchs.

The Coming of Socialism to Europe

- Socialism was a well-known body of ideas that attracted widespread attention in Europe by the mid-nineteenth century. Socialists opposed private property and saw it as the source of social ills. They had opposing perspectives about the future. Some people supported cooperatives, while others asked that governments support cooperatives.
- Industrial society, according to Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels, is capitalist. Marx felt that workers would be liberated from capitalism if they lived in a socialist society. This society would be communist.

Support for Socialism

- Socialist ideas spread through Europe by 1870. Socialists formed an organization called '**Second International**' to spread socialist ideas. Workers in Germany and England began forming associations to fight for better living conditions. They set up funds for members in distress, reduction of working hours and right to vote.
- In Germany, these associations worked closely with the Social Democratic Party (SDP) and helped it win Parliamentary seats. By 1905, socialists and trade unionists formed Labour Party in Britain and Socialist Party in France. However, till 1914, socialists never succeeded in forming a government in Europe. Their representatives won by strong figures in parliamentary politics and their ideas played role in shaping legislation, but governments continued to be run by conservatives, liberals and radicals.

Russian Revolution

- Socialists took over the government in Russia through the **October Revolution of 1917**. The fall of the monarchy in February 1917 and the events of October are normally called the "**Russian Revolution**".
- Tsar Nicholas II commanded Russia and its empire in 1914. The Russian empire encompassed modern-day Finland, Latvia, Lithuania, Estonia, sections of Poland, Ukraine and Belarus, in addition to the territories around Moscow. It included today's Central Asian States, as well as Georgia, Armenia and Azerbaijan and went all the way to the Pacific.
- Russia's people were agriculturists. About 85 per cent of the Russian empire's population earned their living from agriculture. This proportion was higher than in most European countries. For instance, in France and Germany, the proportion was between 40 per cent and 50 per cent. Industries were very less. St Petersburg and Moscow were the prominent industrial cities.
- Most industry was the private property of industrialists. Government supervised large factories to ensure minimum wages and limited hours of work.
- Workers were a divided social group. Some had strong links with the villages from which they came while others had settled in cities permanently. Workers were divided by skill.
- Despite divisions, workers did unite to strike work (stop work) when they disagreed with employers about dismissals or work conditions.
- In the countryside, peasants cultivated most of the land. But the nobility, the crown and the Orthodox Church owned large properties.

- In the year 1900, the Russian Socialist Democratic Labour Party was founded. It fought to grant peasants rights to land previously owned by lords. Because the land was split among peasants on a regular basis, it was assumed that peasants, rather than workers, would be the primary source of revolution. However, Lenin disagreed, believing that peasants were not a single social bloc. Bolsheviks and Mensheviks were two factions within the party.
- **The 1905 Revolution:** Russia was an autocracy. The Tsar was not subject to the Parliament. Liberals wanted to end this state of affairs. They worked towards demanding a constitution during the Revolution of 1905.
- **Bloody Sunday:** Prices of essential goods rose so quickly by 1904 that the real wages declined by 20%. During this time, four members of the Putilov Iron Works were dismissed. The action was called for. Over 110,000 workers in St. Petersburg went on strike demanding a reduction in working hours and an increase in wages. This procession was attacked by the police and Cossacks.
- Over 100 workers were killed. Strikes took place as a reaction. People demanded a Constituent Assembly. The Tsar allowed the creation of an elected Consultative Parliament or Duma. The Tsar dismissed the first Duma within 75 days and announced the election of a second Duma.

The First World War and the Russian Empire

- A war broke out between two European alliances – Germany, Austria and Turkey (the Central powers) and France, Britain and Russia (later Italy and Romania) in 1914. In 1914, the Russian Army was the largest army in the world. The war was initially very popular and people rallied around Tsar Nicholas II, but later the support grew thin. Anti-German sentiments ran high. Russian armies lost badly in Germany and Austria. There were 7 million casualties and 3 million refugees in Russia.
- The war also had a severe impact on industry. Russia's own industries were few in number and the country was cut off from other suppliers of industrial goods by German control of the Baltic Sea.
- For the people in the cities, bread and flour became scarce. Industrial equipment disintegrated more rapidly in Russia than elsewhere in Europe.

The February Revolution

- In the winter of 1917, Petrograd was grim. There was a food shortage in the workers' quarters.
- On 22 February a lockout took place at a factory. Workers of 50 other factories joined in sympathy. Women also led and participated in the strikes. This came to be called the **International Women's Day**.
- The government-imposed curfew as the quarters of the fashionable area and official buildings were surrounded by workers.
- On the 24th and 25th, the government called out the cavalry and police to keep an eye on them.
- On 25th February, the government suspended the Duma and politicians spoke against this measure. The people were out with force once again.
- On 27th, the Police Headquarters were ransacked. People raised slogans and were out in the streets.
- Cavalry was called out again, but they refused to fire on the demonstrators.
- An officer was shot at the barracks of a regiment and other regiments mutinied, voting to join the striking workers. They gathered in the evening to form a Soviet or Council. This was the Petrograd Soviet.
- On 28th, a delegation went to meet the Tsar. The military commanders advised him to abdicate.
- The Tsar abdicated on 2nd March.
- A Provincial Government was formed by the Soviet and Duma leaders to run the country.
- The people involved were the parliamentarians, workers, women workers, soldiers and military commanders.

Effects

- Restrictions on public meetings and associations were removed.
- Soviets like the Petrograd Soviet were set up everywhere.
- In individual areas, factory committees were formed which began questioning the way industrialists ran their factories.
- Soldiers' committees were formed in the army.
- The Provisional Government saw its power declining and Bolshevik influence grew. It decided to take stern measures against the spreading discontent.
- It resisted attempts by workers to run factories and arrested leaders.
- Peasants and the Socialist Revolutionary leaders pressed for a redistribution of land. Land committees were formed and the peasants seized land between July and September 1917.

October Revolution

- As the conflict between the Provisional Government and the Bolsheviks grew, Lenin feared the Provisional Government would set up a dictatorship. Lenin persuaded the Petrograd Soviet and the Bolshevik Party to agree to a socialist takeover of power on October 16, 1917. The Soviet created a Military Revolutionary Committee to organise the seizing.
- The uprising began on October 24th. Prime Minister Kerenskii has left the city to call up reinforcements. The buildings of two Bolshevik periodicals were seized by government-aligned military forces. To take over telephone and telegraph offices and secure the Winter Palace, pro-government forces were dispatched.
- The Military Revolutionary Committee responded by ordering the seizure of government offices and the arrest of ministers. The Winter Palace was shelled by the 'Aurora' ship. Other ships grabbed control of key strategic locations.
- By night the city had been taken over and ministers had surrendered. The Bolshevik action was endorsed by the whole Russian Congress of Soviets in Petrograd.

Effects of October Revolution

- In November 1917, the majority of industry and banks were nationalised.
- The nobility's land was proclaimed social property and peasants were free to seize it.
- The use of aristocratic titles from the past was outlawed.
- The troops and officials were given new uniforms.

- Russia became a one-party State.
- Trade unions were kept under the supervision of the ruling party.
- A centralised planning procedure was implemented. As a result, the economy grew.
- Industrial output has risen.
- A system of extended education was created.
- Farms began to be collectively owned.
- Collectivisation of farms started.

The Civil War

- The Russian army began to disintegrate when the Bolsheviks enacted land redistribution. The Bolshevik rebellion was opposed by non-Bolshevik socialists, liberals and allies of autocracy. They organised a unit known as the 'Greens,' which would combat the Bolshevik 'Reds.' The pro-Tsar 'Whites' ruled over the majority of Russian empire. They were backed up by forces from France, the United States, the United Kingdom and Japan. All of them were involved in a conflict with the Bolsheviks.

Making a Socialist Society

- The Bolsheviks kept industries and banks nationalised during the civil war. A process of centralised planning was introduced. Rapid construction and industrialisation started. An extended schooling system developed.

Stalin ism and Collectivisation of Agriculture

- Stalin headed the party after the death of Lenin. Stalin felt that wealthy peasants and businessman had stored supplies in order to create a grain scarcity. As a result, collectivization became a necessity. This method would also assist in the modernization of farms. Farmers who refused to join the collectivization movement were punished, deported, or exiled.

Global Influence

- By the 1950s, it was widely acknowledged both inside and outside the country that everything was no longer in line with the Russian revolution's objectives. Despite the fact that its businesses and agriculture had flourished and/or were being fed, its population were denied basic freedoms. However, it was understood that social ideas were still held in high regard by Russians. However, the concepts of socialism were rethought in a variety of ways in each country.

Important Dates
1850s -1880s : Debates over socialism in Russia.
1898 : Formation of the Russian Social Democratic Workers Party.
1905 : The Bloody Sunday and the Revolution of 1905.
1917 : 2nd March - Abdication of the Tsar. 24th October - Bolshevik uprising in Petrograd.
1918-20 : The Civil War.
1919 : Formation of Comintern (Communist International).
1929 : Beginning of Collectivisation.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. The main occupation of the people of Russia in the beginning of the twentieth century was
(a) manufacturing **(b)** agriculture
(c) fishing **(d)** poultry farming

2. The Labour Party in Britain was formed by socialists and
(a) trade unionists **(b)** peasants
(c) industrialists **(d)** young students

3. The successor of Lenin was
(a) Trotskii **(b)** Kerenskii
(c) Stalin **(d)** Louis Blance

4. Which of the following groups was opposed to political or social change in Europe?
(a) Nationalists **(b)** Conservatives
(c) Liberals **(d)** Radicals

5. What changes have happened in Europe as a result of contemporary political trends?
(a) Industrial Revolution occurred
(b) New cities came up
(c) Railways expanded
(d) All the above

6. Which of the following was associated with the policy of Collectivisation?
(a) Stalin **(b)** Lenin
(c) Tsar Nicolas II **(d)** None of these

7. In the World War I, which started in 1914, Russia fought against
(a) Britain and France
(b) Germany and Austria
(c) America
(d) All the above

8. Soldiers and striking workers united on February 27, 1917, to form the Workers' Council called
(a) Moscow Union **(b)** Russian Council
(c) Petrograd Soviet **(d)** None of these

9. The commune of farmers was known as
(a) Tsar **(b)** Duma
(c) Cossacks **(d)** None of these

10. Nicolas Tsar II of Russia resigned on
(a) March 2, 1917 **(b)** June 5, 1918
(c) August 7, 1917 **(d)** January 2, 1919

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following is not a Russian industrial region?
1. St. Petersburg **2.** Moscow
3. East London **4.** Greenland
Select the correct option using the code given below:

(a) 1 and 4 only (b) 2 and 4 only
(c) 3 and 4 only (d) None of these

2. What was/were the feature(s) of Communist International?
   1. It was formed to promote Socialist Revolution on an international scale.
   2. It was decided on the policies to be pursued and laid them down for worldwide acceptance.
   3. The section of the socialist party which were more radical and progressive organised themselves into a common interest
   4. It was formally ended in 1943

   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) 2 and 4 are correct (b) 3 and 4 are correct
   (c) 1 only (d) All are correct
3. Before the Russian Revolution of 1917, what was the position of non-Russian nationalities?
   1. They were treated as inferiors
   2. They had equal status
   3. They were not allowed to practise their own language and culture
   4. They were given equal rights

   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only (b) 1 and 3 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3 only (d) 1 and 2 only
4. Why did Russia opted to leave World War I?
   1. It was against imperialism.
   2. People were demanding peace.
   3. Russia had lost lot of manpower.

   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 (b) 1 and 3
   (c) All of them (d) None of them
5. Why did some liberals and radicals in France, Italy and Russia become revolutionaries?
   (a) They wanted to concentrate powers in their own hands
   (b) They wanted to overthrow the existing monarchs
   (c) They were against equal rights
   (d) They were against any change in existing system
6. Which of the following statements about Marfa Vasileva are correct?
   1. She was a brave mill worker
   2. She was a milling machine operator
   3. She single handled organised a successful strike
   4. She was a typical Russian housewife.

   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 1, 2 and 4 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3 only (d) 1, 2, 3 and 4
7. Who were the Kulaks?
   (a) Workers of Bolshevik Party
   (b) Group of army leader
   (c) Well-to-do peasants Some well-to-do peasants
   (d) None of the above
8. In the reference of, Bolshevik leader Vladimir Lenin's declaration, which of the following are correct?
   1. He declared that the war be brought to a close
   2. Land be transferred to the peasants
   3. Banks be nationalised

   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only (b) 1 and 3 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3 only (d) None of the above
9. What were the demands of the St. Petersburg employees who went on strike?
   (a) A reduction in working hours to eight hours
   (b) A wage increase
   (c) A better working environment
   (d) All of the above
10. The police ambushed the workers' parade to the Winter Palace, killing 100 of them. This event is known as
    (a) Bloody Sunday (b) Black day
    (c) Black Sunday (d) Unlucky Saturday

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: At the beginning of the twentieth century, the vast majority of Russia's people were agriculturists. About 85 per cent of the Russian empire's population earned their living from agriculture.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Labour Party of Britain was founded in 1900, having grown out of the trade union movement and socialist parties of the 19th century. It overtook the Liberal Party to become the main opposition to the Conservative Party in the early 1920s, forming two minority governments under Ramsay MacDonald in the 1920s and early 1930s.

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Stalin was formally welcomed as Lenin's successor as the leader of the ruling Communist Party and the Soviet Union.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Earlier, in the eighteenth century, conservatives had been generally opposed to the idea of change. By the nineteenth century, they accepted that some change was inevitable but believed that the past had to be respected and change had to be brought about through a slow process.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Industrial Revolution occurred in whole Europe after the revolution. New cities came up in various parts of Europe after the revolution. Railways network also expanded.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Collectivisation was the policy of Stalin. The period of the early Planned Economy was linked to the disasters of the collectivisation of agriculture.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: In 1914, First World War broke out between two European alliances – Germany, Austria

and Turkey (the Central powers) and France, Britain and Russia (later Italy and Romania).

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Soldiers and labourers convened on February 27, 1917 to organise their own 'Soviet' or council, known as the Petrograd Soviet.
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The commune of farmers was known as "Mir".
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Nicolas Tsar II of Russia resigned on March 2, 1917.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: St. Petersburg and Moscow were two prominent industrial areas of Russia in the 1890s.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: All of the given characteristics were present in the Communist International. They were also known as the Comintern or the Third International.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Prior to the 1917 Russian Revolution, non-Russian nationalities were viewed as second-class citizens who were denied the right to exercise their own language and culture.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Russia withdrew from World War-I because it was demanding peace, had many casualties, was against imperialism and a civil war was taking place in Russia.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In France, Italy, Russia and other countries, both liberals and radicals became revolutionaries in order to remove the existing kings.
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Marfa Vasiteva was a courageous mill worker and milling machine operator who organised a successful strike on her own.
7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Peasants with a lot of money. During that time, there were some well-to-do peasants known as Kulaks.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In April 1917, the Bolshevik leader Vladimir Lenin returned to Russia from his exile. He and the Bolsheviks had opposed the war since 1914. Now he felt it was time for Soviets to take over power. He declared that the war be brought to a close, land be transferred to the peasants and banks be nationalised. These three demands were Lenin's 'April Theses'.
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: St. Petersburg employees agitated with demands of reducing working hours to 8 hours, increase in wages and improvement in working conditions.
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The year 1904 was a particularly bad one for Russian workers. Prices of essential goods rose so quickly that real wages declined by 20 percent. Over the next few days over 110,000 workers in St Petersburg went on strike. When the procession of workers led by Father Gapon reached the Winter Palace it was attacked by the police and the Cossacks. Over 100 workers were killed and about 300 wounded. The incident, known as Bloody Sunday, started a series of events that became known as the 1905 Revolution.

HISTORY CLASS-IX

3 NAZISM AND THE RISE OF HITLER

Introduction

- In the First World War (1914–1918), Germany fought alongside the Austrian empire and against the Allies (England, France and Russia). Initially, Germany made gains by occupying France and Belgium. In 1918, however, the Allies won over Germany and the Central Powers.
- Germany had to sign the "Treaty of Versailles" with the Allies and it was a harsh and humiliating peace because:
  1. Germany lost its overseas colonies
  2. A tenth of its population
  3. 13% of its territories
  4. 75 %of its iron and 26 % of its coal to France, Poland, Denmark and Lithuania
  5. Germany was forced to pay compensation amounting to £6 billion
  6. Germany was forced for demilitarised
- At Weimer, a National Assembly formed a Democratic Constitution with a Federal system. The Republic, on the other hand, was not well greeted by its own people, owing to the terms it was compelled to accept following Germany's defeat at the end of World War I. Many Germans blamed the new Weimer Republic for not only the war's defeat but also the humiliation at Versailles.

The Effects of the War

- The war had a devastating impact on the entire continent both psychologically and financially. The war of guilt and national humiliation was carried by the republic which was financially crippled by being forced to pay compensation.
- Socialists, Catholics and Democrats supported the Weimar Republic and they were mockingly called the "November criminals".
- From being a creditor, Europe became a debtor. The supporters of the Weimer Republic were criticized and became easy targets of attack in the Conservative Nationalist circles. Soldiers came to be placed above civilians. Aggressive war propaganda and national honour became important.

Political Radicalism and Economic Crises

- The birth of the Weimar Republic coincided with the revolutionary uprising of the Spartacist League on the pattern of the Bolshevik Revolution in Russia.
- The Weimar Republic crushed the uprising with the help of a war veterans organisation called Free Corps.
- Political radicalisation was heightened by the economic crisis of 1923. As Germany refused to pay the war reparations, France occupied its leading industrial area, Ruhr. Germany retaliated by printing paper currency recklessly. The value of the Mark collapsed. Prices of goods soared. There was hyperinflation.

The Years of Depression

- The years between 1924 and 1928 saw some stability, but this stability was like a fort made of sand. German investments and industrial recovery were totally dependent on short-term loans, largely from the USA.
- The support of short-term loans was withdrawn when the Wall Street Exchange (Share Market) crashed in 1929. The Great Economic Depression, started and over the next three years between 1929 and 1932, the national income of the USA fell by half. This economic depression hit the whole world.
- The economy of Germany was the worst hit. In 1932, German industrial production fell by 60 per cent, compare to 1929. Workers became jobless and went on streets with placards saying, 'Willing to do any work'. Youth indulged in criminal activities. The middle class and small businessmen were filled with the fear of proletarianization, anxiety of being reduced to the ranks of the working class, or unemployment.
- Politically as well the Weimar Republic was fragile. The Weimar Constitution due to some inherent defects made it unstable and vulnerable to dictatorship. One inherent defect was proportional representation. Another defect was Article 48, which gave the President the powers to impose an emergency, suspend Civil Rights and rule by decree.

Hitler's Rise to Power

- Hitler was born in Austria in 1889. He earned many medals for bravery in the First World War. The German defeat horrified him. The **Treaty of Versailles** made him furious. He joined the German Workers Party and renamed it the National Socialist German Workers' Party. This later came to be known as the Nazi Party.
- Hitler was a powerful speaker and his words moved people. In his speech, he promised to build a strong nation, undo the injustice of the Versailles Treaty and restore the dignity of the German people.
- Nazism became a mass movement only during the Great Depression. The Nazi propaganda stirred hopes of a better future. Hitler was a powerful and effective speaker. He promised the people a strong nation where all would get employment.
- In 1928, the Nazi Party got no more than 2.6% votes in the Reichstag – the German parliament. By 1932, it had become the largest party with 37% votes.

- Hitler achieved the highest position in the Cabinet of Ministries on 30 January 1933. Hitler now set out to dismantle the structures of democratic rule.

The Destruction of Democracy

- Civic rights like Freedom of Speech, Press and Assembly were suspended by the Fire Decree of February 28, 1933. Communists were rushed to detention camps that had recently been created. Every political party was outlawed. Special surveillance and security units were established in order to maintain control over the population and to govern with impunity.

Reconstruction

- Hjalmar Schacht, an economist, has been tasked with reviving the economy. This was to be accomplished by a government-funded job creation initiative. Under the motto "One people, one empire, one commander," Hitler withdrew from the League of Nations in 1933, reoccupied the Rhineland in 1936 and united Austria and Germany in 1938.
- He then took Sudetenland from Czechoslovakia. Hitler had the unspoken support of England. Hitler did not stop here. He chose war as a way out of the Economic Crisis. Resources were to be accumulated through expansion of territory. In September 1940, Germany invaded Poland.
- This started a war with France and England. USA resisted involvement in the war. But when Japan extended its support to Hitler and bombarded Pearl Harbour, the USA entered the war. The war ended in 1945 with Hitler's defeat and the US bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki in Japan.

The Nazi World View

- Racism of Hitler borrowed from thinkers like Charles Darwin and Herbert Spencer. The argument of Nazi was simple: the strongest race would survive and the weak ones would perish. The Aryan race was the finest who retained its purity, became stronger and dominated the world.
- The geopolitical idea of Lebensraum, or living space, was another part of Hitler's philosophy. By pushing eastwards, Hitler hoped to expand German borders and bring all Germans together in one location.
- Hitler believed in pseudoscientific theories of race which said that conversion was no solution to the Jewish problem. It had to be solved through their total elimination. From 1933–1938, the Nazis terrorised, pauperised and segregated the Jews, compelling them to leave the country. The next phase, 1939–1945, aimed at concentrating them in certain areas and then killing them in gas chambers in Poland.
- Genocide and war become interchangeable terms. Poland was partitioned and Germany acquired much of north-western Poland. Poles were compelled to flee their homes and possessions. Polish intellectuals were assassinated in great numbers and Polish children who appeared to be Aryans were taken from their mothers and inspected by 'race experts.'

Note:
Steps To Death:
Stage 1: Exclusion 1933-1939 - You have no right to live among us as citizens.
Stage 2: Ghettoisation 1940-1944 - You have no right to live among us.
Stage 3: Annihilation 1941 onwards- You have no right to live.

Youth in Nazi Germany

- Hitler was fanatically interested in the youth of the country. He felt that a strong Nazi society could be established only by teaching Nazi ideology to children. This required a control over the child both inside and outside school.
- All schools were given German teachers. Children were divided into two groups — desirable and undesirable. Textbooks were rewritten, functions of sports in schools were to nurture the spirit of violence and aggression. Ten-year-olds had to enter Jungvolk. At 14, all boys joined 'Hitler Youth'; they joined the Labour Service at 18.
- Women were told to be good mothers and rear pure blooded Aryan children. They were encouraged to produce many children.

The Art of Propaganda

- The Nazi regime used language and media with care and often to great effect. They used films, pictures, radio, posters, etc. to spread hatred for Jews.
- Nazis never used the words 'kill' or 'murder' in their official communications. Mass killings were termed special treatment, final solution (for the Jews), euthanasia (for the disabled), selection and disinfections. 'Evacuation' meant deporting people to gas chambers.
- The Nazis made equal efforts to appeal to all the different sections of the population. They sought to win their support by suggesting that Nazis alone could solve all their problems.

The Crimes Against Humanity

- People began to see the world through Nazi glasses and to speak in Nazi jargon. They harboured animosity for Jews and sincerely believed that Nazism would bring wealth and enhance people's lives.
- Pastor Niemoeller decried an unusual silence among ordinary Germans in the face of the Nazi empire's cruel and organised crimes. The Third Reich of Dreams, a book by Charlotte Beradt, examines how Jews themselves came to believe in Nazi prejudices about them.

Knowledge about the Holocaust

- Information about Nazi practices had trickled out of Germany during the last years of the regime. But, it was only after the war ended and Germany was defeated that the world came to realise the horrors of what had happened.
- While Germans were pre-occupied with their own plight, the Jews wanted the world to remember the atrocities and sufferings they had endured during the Nazi killing operations – also called the **Holocaust**. This indomitable spirit to bear witness and to preserve the documents can be seen in many ghetto and camp inhabitants who wrote diaries, kept notebooks and created archives.
- When they lost the war, the Nazi leadership distributed petrol to its functionaries to destroy all incriminating evidence available in offices.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. When did Germany declare war on Poland?
   (a) September 3, 1938 **(b)** September 1, 1939
   (c) September 4, 1940 **(d)** September 1, 1941
2. Hitler became the Chancellor of Germany in the year
   (a) 1930 **(b)** 1931
   (c) 1932 **(d)** 1933
3. What was the name of the place where all of the German Empire's "undesirables" went?
   (a) Land of the "undesirables"
   (b) Land of the "curse"
   (c) General government
   (d) Land of the "abnormals"
4. When was the Second World War declared over?
   (a) May 1945 **(b)** August 1945
   (c) September 1944 **(d)** None of the above
5. Which act established dictatorship in Germany?
   (a) Act of 1933 **(b)** Act of 1943
   (c) Act of 1927 **(d)** Enabling Act
6. The country that dropped the atomic bomb on Hiroshima, Japan was
   (a) Germany **(b)** Britain
   (c) USA **(d)** France
7. The Treaty of Versailles (1920), signed after the end of World War-I, was harsh and humiliating for Germany because of the following reasons:
   (a) Germany's foreign possessions were lost and 13 % of the country's territory
   (b) It surrendered 75% of its iron and 26% of its coal to France, Poland, Denmark and Lithuania. Germany was compelled to pay 6 billion pounds in compensation.
   (c) Germany was demilitarised by Western countries and they occupied the Rhineland in 1920s, which was rich in resources.
   (d) All the given options.
8. Why were just 11 Nazis sentenced to death for such a large massacre by the Nuremburg Tribunal?
   (a) Only these 11 Nazis were found guilty.
   (b) The Allies did not want to be as harsh on the defeated Germany as they had been after World War II.
   (c) Germany promised never to repeat such an act.
   (d) Germany was willing to pay a large sum of money to the Allied countries as compensation for the killings.
9. In terms of school children, what was Nazi ideology?
   (a) Nazi ideology believed that children's education was unnecessary
   (b) It believed that children should be monitored both inside and outside of school
   (c) All children should be treated equally
   (d) None of the above.
10. The 1935 Nuremburg citizenship law specified that:
    (a) Only those of German or kindred blood would be German citizens
    (b) Jews and Germans could not marry
    (c) Jews could not fly the national flag
    (d) All of the above given options

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. What was Germany's reaction to the new Weimar Republic?
   (a) They blamed the new Weimar Republic for Germany's defeat and humiliation at Versailles
   (b) The republic bore the burden of war guilt and national humiliation
   (c) It became the focus of conservative nationalist attacks
   (d) All of the above
2. Which of the following assertions about World War I troops is false?
   (a) In actuality, the soldiers lived in trenches and ate copra to survive.
   (b) All troops were willing to die for their country's honour and personal glory.
   (c) They were exposed to deadly gas and enemy bombardment, as well as the loss of comrades.
   (d) War was glorified through aggressive propaganda.
3. What was Hitler's historic error and why did he make it?
   (a) Hitler's 1941 attack on the Soviet Union was a historic blunder
   (b) He exposed his western front to British aerial bombardment
   (c) The Soviet Red Army humiliated Germany at Stalingrad
   (d) All of the above
4. Proletarianization is considered as:
   (a) Becoming impoverished to the middle class level.
   (b) Impoverished to the upper/ruling class level.
   (c) Destitute to the point of becoming a member of the working class.
   (d) The new middle class is being exploited.
5. What is the name of the German Republic that was founded after World War I?
   (a) German Federation Republic
   (b) German Confederation Republic
   (c) German Republic State
   (d) Weimer Republic
6. Which of the following statement(s) concerning Germany's economic crisis in 1923 is/are correct?
   (a) The value of the 'Mark' (German currency) plummeted
   (b) Goods prices skyrocketed

(c) The Weimer Republic provided economic success
(d) (a) and (b)

7. Which of these were the reasons of Nazi hatred of the Jews?
1. Jews had been stereotyped as killers of Christ.
2. They were 'usurers', i.e., moneylenders.
3. The Jews had always cheated the Nazis.
Choose the correct option:
(a) Both 1 and 2 **(b)** 1, 2 and 3
(c) 1 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only

8. With the reference of Hitler's ideology of 'Lebensraum' or living space, consider the following statements:
1. Multi-storeyed buildings should be built in Germany to increase the living space
2. The world must be occupied enabling the material resources and power of the German nation
3. New territories had to be acquired for settlement
Which of the above statement(s) is/are incorrect?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only

9. With the reference of Hitler's ideology of pure race, consider the given communities:
1. Jews
2. Gypsies
3. Blacks
4. Abnormals
5. Nordic Aryans
Which of the given communities were considered as undesirable in Hitler's Germany?
(a) 1, 2 and 3 only
(b) 1, 2, 3 and 4 only
(c) 1, 2 and 5 only
(d) All the given communities

10. What gave Nazi state its reputation as the most dreaded criminal state?
(a) Extra-constitutional powers were given to the newly organised forces like Gestapo, the SS and SD.
(b) People could be detained in Gestapo torture chambers and sent to concentration camps.
(C) Both (a) and (b)
(d) Neither (a) nor (b)

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Hitler chose war as a way out of the Economic Crisis. Resources were to be accumulated through expansion of territory. On 4th September 1940, Germany invaded Poland.

2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: On 30th January 1933, President Hindenburg offered the Chancellorship, the highest position in the cabinet of ministers, to Hitler. Hitler became chancellor of Germany.

3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Nazis wanted only a society of 'pure and healthy Nordic Aryans'. They alone were considered 'desirable'. They were herald like cattle in the other part called the General Government, the destination of all 'undesirables' of the empire.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: After the surrender of Japan, 2nd World War ended on May, 1945.

5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: On 3rd March 1933, the famous Enabling Act was passed. This Act established dictatorship in Germany. It gave Hitler all powers to side-line Parliament and rule by decree. All political parties and trade unions were banned except for the Nazi Party and its affiliates. The State established complete control over the economy, media, army and judiciary.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: USA dropped bomb on Japan when Japan attacked USA's Pearl harbour.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The peace treaty at Versailles with the Allies was a harsh and humiliating peace. Germany lost its overseas colonies, a tenth of its population, 13 per cent of its territories, 75 per cent of its iron and 26 per cent of its coal to France, Poland, Denmark and Lithuania. The Allied Powers demilitarised Germany to weaken its power. The War Guilt Clause held Germany responsible for the war and damages the Allied countries suffered. Germany was forced to pay compensation amounting to £6 billion. The Allied armies also occupied the resource-rich Rhineland for much of the 1920s.

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Allies did not want to be as harsh on the defeated Germany as they had been after World War II.

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Nazi believed that children should be monitored both inside and outside of school.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: As per the ideology of Hitler, only persons of German or related blood would henceforth be German citizens. He banned marriages between Jews and Germans and Jews were forbidden to fly the national flag.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Weimar Republic was being made to pay for the sins of the old empire. The republic carried the burden of war guilt and national humiliation and was financially crippled by being forced to pay compensation. Those who supported the Weimar Republic, mainly Socialists, Catholics and Democrats, became easy targets of attack in the Conservative Nationalist circles. They were mockingly called the "November criminals".
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Soldiers were not prepared to die for the honour and personal glory of their country. They were fed up with the endless battle.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Hitler attacked the Soviet Union in June 1941. In this historic blunder Hitler exposed the German western front to British aerial bombing and the eastern front to the powerful Soviet armies. The Soviet Red Army inflicted a crushing and humiliating defeat on Germany at Stalingrad. After this the Soviet Red Army hounded out the retreating German soldiers until they reached the heart of Berlin, establishing Soviet hegemony over the entire Eastern Europe for half a century thereafter.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The term 'Proletarianization' refers to impoverished to the level of the upper/ruling class.
5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The German Republic that was founded after World War I is known as Weimer Republic.
6. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: When Germany refused to pay in 1923, the French took Ruhr, Germany's most important industrial sector, to collect their coal. Germany responded with quiet resistance and rash printing of paper money. The value of the German mark decreased due to an excess of printed money in circulation. As the value of the mark fell, so did the cost of commodities. The sight of Germans bringing cartloads of cash to buy a piece of bread was widely reported, eliciting international compassion. This problem became known as hyperinflation, a condition in which prices skyrocket.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Nazi hatred of the Jews because Jews had been stereotyped as killers of Christ and they were 'usurers', i.e., moneylenders.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The geographical notion of Lebensraum, or living space, was central to Hitler's philosophy. He considered that fresh settlement lands needed to be obtained. This would expand the mother country's territory while allowing newcomers to maintain a strong bond with their ancestral homeland. It would also strengthen the German nation's material wealth and authority.
9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Only a community of "clean and robust Nordic Aryans" was desired by the Nazis. They were deemed 'attractive' on their own. Only they were deemed worthy of flourishing and proliferating in the face of all others deemed "undesirable." The Jewish community was not the only one labelled as 'undesirable.'
Others were present. Many Gypsies and blacks residing in Nazi Germany were viewed as racial 'inferiors' who endangered the, 'superior Aryan' race's biological purity. They were persecuted in large numbers. Even Russians and Poles were thought to be subhuman and so unworthy of compassion.
10. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Nazi state its reputation as the most dreaded criminal state because extra-constitutional powers were given to the newly organised forces like Gestapo, the SS and SD and people could be detained in Gestapo torture chambers and sent to concentration camps.

HISTORY CLASS-IX

4 FOREST SOCIETY AND COLONIALISM

Introduction

- Despite the fact that we are living in a hyper-industrialized period, woods continue to play an important role in our lives. The paper for your books and copies comes from the forest. The cooking oil, gum, coffee, honey, the fruits you eat, the material with which tires are made, a lot of medicines, timbers and a whole lot of other things come from the forest.
- Forests provide us with a diverse range of resources to meet our various needs — fuel, fodder, leaves, trees suitable for building ships or railways and trees that can provide hardwood.
- Forest items such as roots, fruits, tubers and herbs are used as medicines while the timber is used to make agricultural implements such as yokes and ploughs.

Why Deforestation?

- Deforestation is cutting down of trees indiscriminately in a forest area. Under colonial rule, it became very systematic and extensive.
- As the population increased over the centuries and the demand for food went up, peasants expanded the limits of farming by clearing woods. The British promoted the growing of commercial crops such as jute, sugar, wheat and cotton as raw materials for their businesses.
- They thought that forests were unproductive land as they yielded no revenue nor agricultural produce. Cultivation was viewed as a sign of progress. The British Government cleared a large part of the forest to bring new land under cultivation which would generate revenue for them.
- Oak forests in England were disappearing. There was no timber supply for the shipbuilding industry. Forest resources of India were used to make ships for the Royal Navy.

Sleepers on the Tracks

- Sleepers are the wooden planks laid across railway tracks; they hold the tracks in position. Railways spread from the 1850s. Railways were essential for colonial trade and for the movement of imperial troops.
- From the 1860s, the railway network expanded rapidly. Trees started falling as the railway tracks spread through India. The government gave out contracts to individuals to supply the required quantities. Forests around the railway tracks started disappearing.
- The spread of railways in the 1850s created a new demand. Railways were essential for colonial trade and for the movement of imperial troops. To run locomotives, wood was needed as fuel and to lay railway lines sleepers were essential to hold the tracks together. Each mile of railway track required between 1,760 and 2,000 sleepers.

Plantations

- Large areas of natural forests were also cleared to make way for tea, coffee and rubber plantations to meet Europe's growing need for these commodities. The Colonial Government took over the forests and gave vast areas to European planters at cheap rates.
- The British were concerned that traders' careless usage of trees and local people's use of woods would result in forest destruction. Dietrich Brandis, a German expert, was appointed as India's first Inspector General of Forests.
- He realised that a suitable system for managing the forests needed to be implemented and that people needed to be educated in conservation science. However, it required legal backing.
- Brandis set up the Indian Forest Service in 1864 and helped formulate the Indian Forest Act of 1865. After the Forest Act was enacted in 1865, it was amended twice, once in 1878 and then in 1927. The 1878 Act divided forests into three categories: reserved, protected and village forests.
- The Imperial Forest Research Institute was set up in Dehradun in 1906. Scientific forestry was taught there. In the scientific forestry system, forests with different kinds of trees were replaced by plantations. Forest management plans were made by forest officials. They planned how much of the forest had to be cut and how much had to be replanted.

How were the Lives of People Affected?

- Villagers wanted forests with species of different types to satisfy their needs for fuel, fodder and leaves. On the other hand, the forest department wanted trees like teak and sal suitable for building ships or railways. Roots, leaves, fruits and tubers were used for many things. In the forest, almost everything was available such as herbs, yokes, ploughs, bamboo, etc.
- The Forest Act meant severe hardship for villagers across the country. After the Act, all their everyday practices became illegal. People were now forced to steal wood from the forests.

How did Forest Rules Affect Cultivation?

- One of the major impacts of European colonialism was on the practice of shifting cultivation or swidden agriculture. It has many local names such as lading in Southeast Asia, milpa in Central America, chitemene or tavy in Africa and chena in Sri Lanka. In India, dhya, penda, bewar, nevad, jhum, podu, khandad and kumri are some of the local terms for swidden agriculture.

- European foresters regarded this practice as harmful for the forests. Shifting cultivation also made it harder for the government to calculate taxes. Therefore, the government decided to ban shifting cultivation.

Hunting

- People who lived near forests survived by hunting deer, partridges and a variety of small animals. The practice was prohibited by the forest laws and those who were caught hunting were punished for poaching.
- However, ironically, the British encouraged the killing of wild animals like tigers. The Kings/British officials engaged in hunting found that now the villagers were prohibited from entering the forests. They had the forest and wild animals to themselves. Hunting animals became a big sport for them. Thus, hunting increased to such an extent that various species like tigers became almost extinct.

New Trades, New Employments and New Services

- New opportunities opened up in trade. In India, forest trade was not new. It existed from the medieval period, where adivasi communities used to trade elephants and other goods like hides, horns, silk cocoons, ivory, bamboo, spices, fibres, grasses, gums and resins through nomadic communities like the Banjaras.
- Outsider Europeans, on the other hand, were given exclusive rights to trade in the forest by the British. The nomadic groups were forced to abandon their way of life. The Europeans hired Santhals from Assam, Oraons from Jharkhand and Gonds from Chhattisgarh to work in the tea plantations. But the wages were too low and the working conditions were bad.
- Many pastoral communities lost their means of livelihood. New opportunities of work did not always mean improved well-being for the people.

Rebellion in the Forest

- In many parts of India and across the world, forest communities rebelled against the changes that were being imposed on them.
- Bastar-Rebellion: Bastar is a part of Chhattisgarh. Maria and Muria Gonds, Halbas and Dhurwas are among the indigenous peoples who inhabit here. They are in intimate proximity to Mother Earth. They believe that Mother Nature has given the land to each village in Bastar. There is a friendly relationship between these settlements. So, when the Forest Act came, the villagers of Bastar could not take part in shifting cultivation or hunting.
- Some people were obliged to relocate in order to make a living. In exchange for free labour for the forest department, a few villages were allowed to dwell in the reserve forest. However, the famines of 1899 and 1907 followed.
- They despised the reserve as a result of the hardship. Under Dhurwas' leadership, the villagers planned to attack forest officials, personnel and anyone who backed them.
- The locals robbed the bazaars and police posts after days of painstaking resource collecting. They attacked the homes of forest authorities and forest product trailers, as well as the bazaars and police stations. These peasants were indeed crushed by British troops. The relentless vitality of the Adivasis, on the other hand, is a source of inspiration for many.
- The Fears of the People: In 1905, Colonial Government proposed to reserve two-thirds of the forest in and stop shifting cultivation, hunting and collection of forest produce. Some people used to stay in forests by working free for the forest department and these are called forest villagers.
- Villagers have long been harmed by rising land rents and frequent labour and commodity demands. People began to discuss these topics at village council meetings, bazaars and festivals.
- The Kanger forest's Dhurwas took the lead in the first reservation. Bazaars were looted, officials' and traders' homes were burned and robbed, schools and police stations were robbed and grain was redistributed. To put down the revolt, British troops were dispatched.
- The practise of keeping people out of the forests and preserving them for industrial use remained after independence.

Forest Transformations in Java

- Java is famous as a rice-producing island in Indonesia. But there was a time when it was covered mostly with forests. In Java, the Dutch started forest management. Villages existed in the fertile plains and there were also many communities living in the mountains and practising shifting cultivation.
- The Woodcutters of Java: The Javanese Kalangs were expert forest cutters and roving cultivators. They are experts in harvesting teak and supplying it to the monarchs for the construction of their palaces. In the eighteenth century, as the Dutch began to acquire control of the woodlands, they attempted to enslave the Kalangs. The Kalangs fought back in 1770 by storming a Dutch fort at Joana, but the revolt was put down.
- Dutch Scientific Forestry: The Dutch created forest rules in Java in the nineteenth century, limiting locals' access to forests. Wood could only be chopped for riverboats or house construction. Villagers were fined for grazing cattle, hauling wood without permission and using horse carts or animals on forest routes. The Dutch first levied rents on forest land that was being cultivated, then freed some settlements from these charges provided they worked together to offer free labour and buffaloes for cutting and hauling timber. The blandongdiensten system was the name for this system.
- Samin's Challenge: Surontiko Samin of Randublatung village, a teak forest village, questioned the state's ownership of the forest and argued that the state had not created the wind, water, earth and wood, so it could not own it. Soon a widespread movement developed. Some of the Saminists protested by lying down on their land when the Dutch came to survey it, while others refused to pay taxes or fines or perform labour.
- War and Deforestation: Both the First and Second World Wars had a significant impact on woodlands. The Dutch used a "scorched earth" approach in Java, destroying sawmills and burning massive heaps of teak logs. It was difficult for the Indonesian Forest Service to reclaim this territory after the conflict.

New Developments in Forestry

- Conservation and preservation of forests has now become the focus rather than timber. It has also been realised that if forests are to survive, the local community needs to be involved. There are many such examples in India where communities are conserving forests in sacred groves. In many places, across India, from Mizoram to Kerala, dense forests have survived only because villages protected them in sacred groves known as sarnas, devarakudu, kan, rai, etc.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Imperial Forest Research was established at
   (a) Lucknow **(b)** Banaras
   (c) Dehradun **(d)** Shimla
2. The Baigas are a forest community of
   (a) Central India **(b)** North-East India
   (c) Western India **(d)** Southern India
3. The Kalangs resisted the Dutch in
   (a) 1700 **(b)** 1750
   (c) 1770 **(d)** 1800
4. What was the 'blandongdiensten' system?
   (a) An educational system
   (b) The Industrial Revolution
   (c) The first imposition of a land rent and its exemption
   (d) None of the above
5. During the First and Second World Wars, what was the British stance toward the forests?
   (a) The forest service cut down trees to suit the demands of the British war effort.
   (b) Everyone, including the British, was rigorously barred from cutting down trees.
   (c) As time went on, more trees were planted in order to provide jobs for Indians.
   (d) None of these
6. Who wrote the book 'Forests of India' in 1923?
   (a) E P Stebbing **(b)** David Spurr
   (c) Verrier Elvin **(d)** None of these
7. Colonial rulers considered forests as unproductive because
   (a) Forests did not yield revenue to enhance income of the State
   (b) Forests had wild grown trees only
   (c) The forests were not fit for habitation
   (d) Forests were full of wild animals
8. In which country the similar situation prevailed as in the forest of Bastar?
   (a) In Thailand **(b)** In Indonesia
   (c) In Japan **(d)** In Sri Lanka
9. Which of the following is not associated with swidden agriculture?
   (a) Bewar **(b)** Jhum
   (c) Penda **(d)** Karacha
10. Sarnas are _____.
    (a) Sacred groves **(b)** Rain Forests
    (c) Desert land **(d)** None of these

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following issues did the people of Bastar confront during the colonial era?
   (a) Villagers were moved without recompense
   (b) Villagers were subjected to higher rents and repeated demands for free labour and products by colonial officials
   (c) Terrible famines occurred in 1899-1900, 1907 and 1908.
   (d) All of the above
2. What was the Dutch policy in Java during the First and Second World Wars when it came to "scorched earth"?
   (a) Dutch weaponry was destroyed in Java
   (b) The earth was further exploited to grow more trees
   (c) Massive heaps of enormous teak logs were burned and sawmills were demolished
   (d) None of the above
3. Which of the following places were not associated with the forest revolution in India?
   1. Gonds
   2. Bastar
   3. Avadh
   4. Chhotanagpur
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 2 and 4 only
   (c) 1, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 3 and 4 only
4. Consider the following pairs:

	Place of rebellion	Leader
1.	Chhotanagpur	Birsa Munda
2.	Siddhu and Kanu	Andhra Pradesh
3.	Sitarama Raju	Santhal Parganas

   Which of the above pairs is/are correctly matched?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
   (c) 1 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
5. Which of the following was/were related to people of Bastar?
   1. They belonged to a plateau region
   2. Maria and Muria Gonds, Dhurwas,Bhatras and Halbas were the communities of Bastar.
   3. They speak different languages but share common customs and beliefs.
   Select the correct answer using the code given below.
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

6. Which of the following was/were outcomes of Forest Act of 1865?
   1. Collecting fruits became illegal
   2. Cutting trees became illegal
   3. Hunting wild animals like tigers became a crime.

   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
7. Which of the following issues did indigenous groups in Assam, Jharkhand and Chhattisgarh face?
   (a) The cessation of shifting agriculture had left them without a source of income
   (b) Wages and working conditions on tea plantations were low
   (c) They couldn't readily return to their native villages where they had been recruited
   (d) All of the above
8. Who was Gunda Dhur?
   (a) A leader of Dhurwa tribe
   (b) A leader of Santhal rebellion
   (c) First Inspector General
   (d) A rebel of Java
9. In South-East Asia, shifting agriculture is known as:
   (a) Chitemene **(b)** Jhum
   (c) Lading **(d)** Tavy
10. Which of these trade regulations in colonial India had serious implications on pastoralist and nomadic communities?
    (a) Many communities became slave labours in tea and coffee plantations
    (b) Some of tribes were called criminal tribes
    (c) Grazing and hunting were restricted and many tribes lost their livelihood
    (d) All the above

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Brandis helped formulate the Indian Forest Act of 1865 and established the Indian Forest Service in 1864. In 1906, the Imperial Forest Research Institute was founded in Dehradun. 'Scientific forestry' was the system they taught here.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Baigas are a forest community of Central India. They depended on shifting cultivation that was banned by new Forest law.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Kalangs of Java were a group of highly talented forest cutters and roving farmers. They were so important that when the Javanese kingdom of Mataram split in 1755, the 6,000 Kalang families were divided evenly between the two kingdoms. It would have been impossible to harvest teak and erect the monarchs' palaces without their knowledge. The Kalangs were forced to labour under the Dutch when they took control of the forests in the eighteenth century. The Kalangs fought back in 1770 by storming a Dutch fort at Joana, but the revolt was put down.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Dutch levied rents on forest property that was being framed and then executed some settlements from these charges provided they banded together to offer free labour and buffaloes for cutting and hauling timber. The blandongdiensten system was the name for this system. Forest dwellers were later granted small payments instead of rent exemptions, but their right to develop forest land was limited.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: British government banned cutting of trees for both Indian and Britishers as they needed timber for the war and making ships.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: In 1923, E P Stebbing wrote a book named "The Forest of India" where he talked about the forests of India and their use by indigenous and British Government.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Colonial people considered forests unproductive. Forests were considered to be wilderness that had to be brought under cultivation so that the land could yield agricultural products and revenue and enhance the income of the state.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: In the forest of Java and Sumatra, i.e., Indonesia similar situation prevailed as in the forest of Bastar.
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: European colonisation had a significant influence on the practise of shifting cultivation, often known as swidden agriculture. In many countries of Asia, Africa and South America, this is a traditional agricultural technique. It is known by several different names in different parts of the world, including lading in Southeast Asia, milpa in Central America, chitemene or tavy in Africa and chena in Sri Lanka. Local terminology for swidden agriculture in India include dhya, penda, bewar, nevad, jhum, podu, khandad and kumri.
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
    Explanation: Sarnas are sacred groves in the Chhota Nagpur Plateau region of India, found in the States of Jharkhand, Bihar, Assam and Chhattisgarh. The Munda, Bhumij, Kharia, Baiga, Ho, Kurukh and Santhal are the main adherents of these ceremonies.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The inhabitants of Bastar were highly concerned when the colonial authorities planned in 1905 to conserve two-thirds of the forest and prohibit

shifting farming, hunting and collecting of forest produce. Some settlements were permitted to remain in the restricted woods if they agreed to labour for the forest service for free, cutting and transporting trees and preventing forest fires. As a result, they were known as 'forest settlements.' Other communities' residents were evacuated without warning or recompense. Villagers have long been afflicted by rising land rents and colonial authorities' frequent demands for free labour and supplies. Then there were the severe famines of 1899-1900 and 1907-1908. All these problems were faced by the people of Bastar and were the reasons of confrontation.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Both the First and Second World War had a significant impact on forests. Working plans were abandoned in India at this time and the forest department was allowed to remove trees as needed to fulfil British war demands. Before the Japanese seized Java, the Dutch used a "scorched earth" tactic, demolishing sawmills and burning massive heaps of gigantic teak logs to prevent them from falling into Japanese hands.

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Bastar and Chhotanagpur were the forest areas where rebellion happened in protest of Britisher's forest policies. Gonds is a tribe and not a place, whereas Avadh is not related to forest rebellions.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In many parts of India and across the world, forest communities rebelled against the changes that were being imposed on them. The leaders of these movements against the British like Siddhu and Kanu in the Santhal Parganas, Birsa Munda of Chhotanagpur or Alluri Sitarama Raju of Andhra Pradesh are still remembered today in songs and stories.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Bastar is in Chhattisgarh's southernmost region, bordering Andhra Pradesh (now Telangana), Orissa and Maharashtra. The plateau that runs through the heart of Bastar. The Chhattisgarh plain is to the north of this plateau, while the Godavari plain lies to the south. The Indrawati River flows east to west through Bastar. Bastar is home to a variety of groups, including the Maria and Muria Gonds, Dhurwas, Bhatras and Halbas. They speak distinct languages, yet they have similar beliefs and practises.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Villagers across the country suffered greatly as a result of the Forest Act of 1865. All of their daily activities became unlawful after the Act, including chopping wood for their homes, grazing their cattle, harvesting fruits and roots, hunting and fishing. People were now obliged to steal wood from woods and if they were caught, they were subjected to forest guards who demanded bribes. While forest rules took away people's traditional hunting rights, large game hunting became a sport. Tiger and other animal hunting has been a part of Indian royal and aristocracy tradition for millennia. But under colonial rule, the scale of hunting increased to such an extent that various species became almost extinct.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The various issues faced by the indigenous groups in Assam, Jharkhand and Chhattisgarh like ban of shifting agriculture, wages and working conditions on tea plantations were low and they couldn't readily return to their native villages without the permission of owner and owner hardly gave permission.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Gunda Dhur, from village Nethanar, was an important figure in the forest movements of Central India.

9. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Lading is a term used in South-East Asia to describe shifting agriculture. Jhum farming or Jhum is a local term for slash and burn agriculture used by tribal people in northeastern Indian states such as Arunachal Pradesh, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Nagaland, as well as Bangladeshi districts such as Khagrachari and Sylhet.

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The trade regulations of British government has many serious effects on the lives of indigenous tribes who were engaged in pastoralist and nomadic communities. Many communities became slave labours in tea and coffee plantations where they had to work without pay sometimes. Some of tribes were called criminal tribes and Grazing and hunting were restricted and many tribes lost their livelihood.

HISTORY CLASS-IX

5 PASTORALISTS IN THE MODERN WORLD

Introduction

- Pastoralism has a long history dating back to the Neolithic period. It is widely assumed that the first pastoralists were hunter groups who travelled from place to place with their cattle in quest of prey. It's sometimes referred to be a transitional period between hunting and farming.
- Nomads are people who do not live in one place but move from one area to another to earn their living. In many parts of India, we can see nomadic pastoralists on roads. Pastoralism has been important in societies like India and Africa. But they hardly got their place in history.

Movement of pastoral nomads in mountains

- Gujjar Bakarwals from Jammu and Kashmir moved to the mountains in search of grazing for their livestock in the nineteenth century. During the winter, they relocated to the Siwalik range's lower elevations.
- They began their northern march for their summer grazing pastures at the end of April. A kafila is the name for this journey. By the end of September, they had resumed their march, this time back to their winter base. Gaddi shepherds of Himachal Pradesh had a similar seasonal migratory cycle.
- The Gujjar cattle herds from the further east came down to the dry forests of the bhabar in the winter and went up to the high meadows – the bugyals – in summer. This pattern of cyclical movement between summer and winter pastures was typical of many pastoral communities of the Himalayas, including the Bhotiyas, Sherpas and Kinnauris.

Movement of pastoral nomads in plateaus, plains and deserts

- Pastoralists were also found in the plateaus, plains and deserts of India. Dhangars were a significant pastoral population in Maharashtra, consisting primarily of shepherds, blanket weavers, and buffalo herders. They used to reside in Maharashtra's central plateau during the monsoon. By October, the Dhangars had finished harvesting their bajra and have relocated to the west. After they reached Konkan, they were welcomed by Konkani peasants. After the kharif harvest was cut, the fields had to be fertilised and made ready for the rabi harvest.
- In the State of Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh, the dry central plateau was covered with stone and grass, inhabited by cattle, goats and sheepherders called Gollas herded cattle. The Kurumas and Kurubas reared sheep and goats and sold woven blankets. During the dry season, they moved to the coastal tracts and left when the rains came. Banjaras were yet another well-known group of graziers, found in the villages of Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra.
- Raikas resided in Rajasthan's deserts. The Raikas of Barmer, Jaisalmer, Jodhpur, and Bikaner stayed in their villages during the monsoons because grass was plentiful. They left in October in search of new pasture and water, only to return during the next monsoon.
- Pastoral groups life was sustained by a host of factors. They needed to determine how long the herds could stay in one location and where they could find water and pasture. They needed to plan their moves and ensure that they could pass through different territories on time. They had to establish a relationship with farmers along the road in order for the herds to graze in harvested fields and fertilise the soil.

Colonial rule and pastoral life

- Under Colonial rule, the life of pastoralists changed dramatically. Heir grazing grounds shrank, their movements were regulated, and the revenue they had to pay increased. Their agricultural stock declined and their trades and crafts were adversely affected.
- Land revenue was one of the main sources for finance of the Colonial State. So, the Colonial Government wanted to transform all grazing lands into cultivated farms through which they could expand cultivation and increase its revenue collection. All uncultivated land was seen as 'Waste Land'. From the mid-nineteenth century, Waste Land Rules were enacted in various parts of the country. Under these rules, uncultivated lands were taken over and given to select individuals.
- Various Forest Acts were enacted in various provinces by the mid-nineteenth century. Forests that produced commercially valuable timber, such as deodar or sal, were designated as '**Reserved**', while other forests were designated as '**Protected**'. Pastoralists' lives were impacted by these Forest Acts, as they were prohibited from entering numerous forests.
- Nomadic people were viewed with suspicion by British officials. The Colonial Government desired to rule over a populated area. The Criminal Tribes Act was passed by the Colonial administration of India in 1871. Many communities of craftsmen, traders, and pastoralists were categorised as Criminal Tribes as a result of this Act. They were described as criminals by birth and nature.
- Taxation was imposed on land, on canal water, on salt, on trade goods, and even on animals. In the mid-nineteenth century, grazing taxes were imposed in most pastoral areas of India. The right to collect

the tax was auctioned off to contractors between the 1850s and the 1880s. The government began collecting taxes directly from pastoralists in the 1880s.

Effects of these changes on the lives of pastoralists

- There was lack of pastures as a result of these actions. The usable area of pastureland decreased as grazing pastures were taken up and converted to cultivated fields. As pasturelands were ploughed under, existing livestock were forced to eat whatever grazing land was left.
- When limits on pastoral movements were imposed, grazing fields were continuously grazed, and pasture quality deteriorated. As a result, there was an even greater scarcity of food for animals, resulting in the degeneration of animal stock.
- Pastoralists reacted to these changes in various ways. They reduced the number of cattle and some discovered new pastures. Over the years, some richer pastoralists began buying land and settling down, giving up their nomadic life. Many poor pastoralists borrowed money from moneylenders to survive. Some of them became labourers, working on fields or in small towns.
- After 1947, the new political boundaries between India and Pakistan stopped the camel and sheep herding Raikas, to graze their camels on the banks of the Indus.
- But they still continued to survive and, in many regions, their numbers have expanded. In many other parts of the world, new laws and settlement patterns forced pastoral communities to alter their lives.

Pastoralism in Africa

- In Africa, even today, over 22 million Africans depend on some form of pastoral activity for their livelihood. They include communities like Bedouins, Berbers, Maasai, Somali, Boran and Turkana. Most of them now live in the semi-arid grasslands or arid deserts where rainfed agriculture is difficult.
- Like pastoralists in India, the lives of African pastoralists have changed dramatically over the Colonial and post-Colonial periods.

The life of Maasai Community

- Maasai are nomadic and pastoral people who depend on milk and meat for subsistence. Before colonial times, Maasailand stretched over a vast area from north Kenya to the steppes of northern Tanzania. In 1885, it was cut into half with an international boundary between British Kenya and German Tanganyika. After the cut, the best grazing lands were gradually taken over for white settlement, and the Maasai were pushed into a small area in south Kenya and north Tanzania.
- In the nineteenth century, African pastoralists could move over vast areas in search of pastures. But, from the late nineteenth century, the Colonial Government began imposing various restrictions on their mobility.
- White settlers and European colonists saw pastoralists as dangerous and savage. The new territorial boundaries and restrictions imposed on them suddenly changed the lives of pastoralists, which adversely affected both their pastoral and trading activities.
- As cultivation expanded, pasturelands were turned into cultivated fields. The Maasai community lost about 60% of their land and were confined to an arid zone with uncertain rainfall and poor pastures.
- Large areas of grazing land were turned into game reserves like the Maasai Mara and Samburu National Park in Kenya and Serengeti Park in Tanzania. The Serengeti National Park has created over 14,760 km of Maasai grazing land.
- The loss of the finest grazing lands and water resources created a serious problem for the pastoralists. Feeding the cattle became a persistent problem due to the unavailability of enough grazing lands. Pastoral groups were forced to live within the confines of special reserves. The boundaries of these reserves became the limits within which they could now move.
- The Maasais were forced to live in semi-arid tracts prone to frequent drought. Since they could not shift their cattle to places where pastures were available, large numbers of Maasai cattle died of starvation and disease in these years of drought.
- The Colonial rules had unequal effects on elders and warrior groups of Maasai society. The social changes in Maasai society occurred at two levels. First, the traditional difference based on age, between the elders and warriors, was disturbed, though it did not break down entirely. Second, a new distinction between the wealthy and poor pastoralists developed.
- The poor pastoralists did not have the resources to tide over bad times and thus, they were compelled to do odd jobs, like charcoal burners, workers in road and building construction, etc.

Kaokoland Herders of Namibia

- In Namibia, in South-West Africa, the Kaokoland herders traditionally moved between Kaokoland and nearby Ovamboland, and they sold skin, meat and other trade products in neighbouring markets.
- All this was stopped with the new system of territorial boundaries that restricted movements between regions. In most places in colonial Africa, the police were given instructions to keep a watch on the movements of pastoralists and prevent them from entering white areas.

Conclusion

- Pastoral communities in different parts of the world are affected in different ways by changes in the modern world. Their pattern of movement was affected by new laws and new borders. Pastoralists find it difficult to move in search of pastures, and grazing becomes difficult. During the time of drought, cattle die in large numbers. Yet, pastoralists do adapt to new times.
- They change their annual migration routes, lower their cattle herds, press for rights to enter new areas, put political pressure on the government for relief, subsidies, and other types of assistance, and demand a say in forest and water resource management.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Banjaras were not found in which of the following state?
   (a) Punjab **(b)** Delhi
   (c) Rajasthan **(d)** Maharashtra
2. Which of these are the pastoral communities of the mountains?
   (a) Gaddis **(b)** Gujjars
   (c) Bhotiyas **(d)** All the above
3. Dhangars were an important pastoral community of which of the following region of India?
   (a) Gujarat **(b)** Kashmir
   (c) Maharashtra **(d)** Punjab
4. For what Maru tribe is well known?
   (a) For camel herding
   (b) For sheep & goat rearing
   (c) For plantation agriculture
   (d) For cyclic seasonal movement
5. According to the 'Wasteland Rules',
   (a) Uncultivated lands were taken over and given to select individuals.
   (b) These individuals were granted various concessions and encouraged to settle these lands.
   (c) Some of them were made headmen of villages in the newly cleared areas.
   (d) All the above.
6. Which of the following assertions is the most accurate description of pastoralist nomads?
   (a) Villagers who shift from one location to another
   (b) People who do not have a permanent residence
   (c) Herdsmen who move from one location to another in search of fodder for their herd
   (d) People who travel to various locations for pleasure
7. Which of these are not the pastoral communities of Africa?
   (a) Bedouins, Berbers **(b)** Raikas, Dhangars
   (c) Boran, Turkana **(d)** Maasai, Somali
8. How was the authority of both elders and warriors adversely affected by the British efforts to administer the affairs of the Maasai?
   (a) The British appointed chiefs of different sub-groups of Maasai
   (b) These chiefs were made responsible for the affairs of the tribe
   (c) Both (a) and (b)
   (d) Neither (a) nor (b)
9. Which seasonal movements affect the Dhangars of Maharashtra?
   (a) Alternate monsoon and dry seasons
   (b) Drought and flood
   (c) Extreme summer
   (d) Cold and snow
10. What was not the result of overgrazing pastures due to restrictions on pastoral movements?
    (a) The quality of pastures declined
    (b) It help to maintain the ecological balance
    (c) Underfed cattle died in large numbers during scarcity and famine
    (d) This created deterioration of animal stock

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. The pastoral groups' lives were sustained by
   (a) Accurate estimation of how long the herds might stay in one location, as well as knowledge of where to locate water and grass.
   (b) Accurate time and movement calculations, as well as guaranteeing that they could pass through the territory
   (c) Establishing relationships with farmers along the way to allow animals to graze.
   (d) All the above.
2. Which of the following was/were the outcomes of the restriction imposed on pastoral movement?
   1. Grazing lands came to be continued overused
   2. The quality of pastures declined
   3. Shortage of forage for animals decreased
   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
3. Consider the following pairs:

	Tribe	Place
1.	Gaddis	Himachal Pradesh
2.	Maldharis	Assam
3.	Kurumas	Karnataka

   Which of the above pairs is/are correctly matched?
   (a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 and 3
   (c) 1 Only **(d)** 2 Only
4. What is referred as Bhabar?
   (a) A dry forest area below the foothills of Garhwal and Kamaun.
   (b) A dry area which is sparsely populated.
   (c) A moderate area having plenty of vegetation.
   (d) A wet forest area below the foothills of Garhwal and Kumaun.
5. The tribal population of the Andaman and Nicobar Islands is divided into three groups
   (a) Astraloids **(b)** Caucasoids
   (c) Mongoloids **(d)** Negroids
6. Which of the following Indian State has the most number of Scheduled Tribal population?
   (a) Madhya Pradesh **(b)** Rajasthan
   (c) Bihar **(d)** Gujarat

7. The maximum percentage of the tribal population in India consists of
   (a) Mundas **(b)** Bhils
   (c) Santhals **(d)** Dhangars
8. What prompted the designation of some forests as "protected"?
   (a) Pastoralists were awarded customary grazing rights in certain areas, but their movement was severely restricted.
   (a) Colonial officials thought that grazing killed saplings and young tree shoots that grew on the forest floor.
   (c) Both (a) and (b) are true
   (d) None of them
9. Which of the following statement/statements is/are incorrect about Maasai community of Africa?
   1. They are the biggest pastoral community of Africa.
   2. The Maasai lost about 60 per cent of their pre-colonial lands.

   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) Only 1 is correct
   (b) Only 2 is correct
   (c) Both 1 and 2 are correct
   (d) Neither 1 nor 2 is correct
10. With the reference of various forest laws of colonial rulers, which of the following is/are correct outcomes of those laws?
    1. Pastoralist was allowed access to these forests.
    2. Some customary grazing rights of pastoralists were granted but their movements were severely restricted.

    Select the correct option using the code given below:
    (a) Only 1 is correct
    (b) Only 2 is correct
    (c) Both 1 and 2 are correct
    (d) Neither 1 nor 2 is correct

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Banjaras are a well-known grazing group. They were discovered in Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, and Maharashtra villages.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Bhotiyas is the mountain tribe found in the Himalayan region whereas Gaddis are shepherds of Himachal Pradesh. Gujjar Bakarwals of Jammu and Kashmir are great herders of goat and sheep.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Dhangars were a significant pastoral group in Maharashtra. The majority of them were shepherds, while some were blanket weavers and buffalo herders.
4. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Raikas were people who lived in Rajasthan's deserts. Harvests on cultivated land varied from year to year. No crop could be cultivated across large areas. As a result, the Raikas merged farming and pastoralism. The Maru (desert) Raikas were a tribe of Raikas that herded camels.
5. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: According to wasteland guidelines, uncultivated lands were taken over and given to a chosen group of people who were given concessions and urged to populate them. As a result, increased cultivation eventually resulted in the reduction of pastures, causing issues and hardships for pastoralists. Individuals were granted various concessions and encouraged to settle these lands and some of them were made headmen of villages in the newly cleared areas.
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Pastoralist nomads are the herdsmen who move from one location to another in search of fodder for their herd.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Raikas and Dhangars are the tribes that belonged to Indian States. Raikas are the pastoral community of Rajasthan and Dhangars are the pastoral community of Maharashtra.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: In order to handle the Maasai's affairs, the British implemented a number of policies that had far-reaching consequences. They designated leaders of several Maasai sub-groups accountable for the tribe's affairs. The British set different raiding and warfare limitations. As a result, both elders and warriors' traditional authority has been weakened.
9. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: During the monsoon season, the Dhangar shepherds resided in Maharashtra's central plateau. This was a semi-arid area with poor soil and minimal rainfall. This area became a big grazing pasture for the Dhangar flocks during the monsoon. They arrived at the Konkan after a month of marching. This was a thriving agricultural region with abundant rains and fertile soil. With the arrival of the monsoon, the Dhangars and their flocks departed the Konkan and coastal areas and returned to their dry plateau homes.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
    Explanation: Pastoral movements allowed time for the natural restoration of vegetation growth. When restrictions were imposed on pastoral movements

by foreign governments, grazing lands came to be continuously used and the quality of pastures declined. This in turn created a further shortage of forage for animals and the deterioration of animal stock. Underfed cattle died in large numbers during scarcities and famines.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The pastoral groups' lives were sustained by accurate estimation of how long the herds might stay in one location, as well as knowledge of where to locate water and grass, accurate time and movement calculations, as well as guaranteeing that they could pass through the territory and establishing relationships with farmers along the way to allow animals to graze.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: When pastoral movements were restricted, grazing grounds were continually exploited, and the quality of pastures deteriorated. This resulted in an even greater scarcity of food for animals as well as the degeneration of animal stock. During scarcities and famines, underfed cattle died in great numbers.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Gaddis are the tribe belongs to Himachal Pradesh whereas Maldharis belongs to Gujarat and not from Assam. Kurumas people found in parts of Karnataka.

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Bhabar referred to area of dry forest area below the foothills of Garhwal and Kamaun.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Negroids are the native people of the Andaman and Nicobar Islands. Negroid is a term used to describe a group of humans that was once considered a biological taxon. Forensic and physical anthropologists have coined the phrase to describe individuals and populations with similar morphological and skeletal characteristics.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The State with the most tribals is Madhya Pradesh. According to the 2011 census, it has about 1.6 crore Schedule Tribes, accounting for 21% of the State's population.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Bhils make up the largest share of India's tribal population.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: When forests designated as "protected" then pastoralists were awarded customary grazing rights in certain areas, but their movement was severely restricted. Since, colonial officials thought that grazing killed saplings and young tree shoots that grew on the forest floor so they designated many forests as "protected".

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Maasai does not form the largest group of pastoral community in Africa, but they had to lost about 60 percent of their pre-colonial lands due to various restrictions and policies of Colonial Government.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: By the mid-nineteenth century, multiple Forest Acts had been implemented across the country. Some woods that produced economically valuable timber, such as deodar or sal, were designated as "Reserved" under these Acts. These woodlands were off-limits to pastoralists. Other woods have been designated as 'Protected.' Pastoralists were permitted certain customary grazing rights, but their movement was severely limited. Grazing, according to colonial officials, damaged the seedlings and young shoots of trees that grew on the forest floor. The cattle crushed the saplings and devoured their shoots. This stunted the growth of new trees.

HISTORY CLASS-X

1 THE RISE OF NATIONALISM IN EUROPE

Introduction

- The emergence of nationalism in Europe was the consequence of a succession of events rather than a single event. In Europe, nationalism began in the 18th century and peaked in the 19th century when it had spread to nearly all the countries of continent.
- 'Vision of World' by Frédéric Sorrieu: This chapter begins with understanding about Frédéric Sorrieu's vision of the world. The accomplished French artist created four prints in 1848 which present his vision of a dream world based on Social Republics and democracy.
- The first print shows the people of Europe and America marching in a long train and offering homage to the Statue of Liberty as they pass through it. The torch of Enlightenment was carried by a female figure in one hand and the Charter of the Rights of Man in the other.
- The shattered ruins of the symbols of absolutist institutions can be seen in the foreground on the land.
- In Sorrieu's utopian vision, the people of the world are grouped as distinct nations, identified through their flags and national costume.
- The United States and Switzerland lead the parade, followed by France and Germany. The people of Austria, the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies, Lombardy, Poland, England, Ireland, Hungary and Russia follow the Germans.
- From the heavens above, Christ, saints and angels gaze upon the scene. They have been used by the artist to symbolise fraternity among the nations of the world.

The French Revolution and the Idea of the Nation

- In 1789, Nationalism came with French Revolution and the political and constitutional changes led to the transfer of Sovereignty from the Monarchy to a body of French citizens. Various measures and practices were introduced such as the ideas of *la patrie* (the fatherland) and *le citoyen* (the citizen). A new French flag, the tricolour was chosen to replace the former one. The Estates General was elected by the body of active citizens and renamed the National Assembly and a centralized administrative system formulated uniform laws for all citizens. Regional dialects were discouraged and French became the common language of the nation.
- The revolutionaries further decided to liberate the peoples of Europe from despotism as the mission and the destiny of the French nation.
- Later, Jacobin clubs were set up and their activities and campaigns prepared the path for the armies of France which moved into Holland, Belgium, Switzerland and Italy in the 1790s. The French army began to carry the idea of nationalism abroad with the outbreak of the revolutionary wars.
- Democracy was destroyed in France by Napoleon, but the Civil Code of 1804, known as the Napoleonic Code, did away with all privileges based on birth, established equality before the law and secured the right to property.

The Making of Nationalism in Europe

- What we know today as Germany, Italy and Switzerland were divided into kingdoms, duchies and cantons whose rulers had their autonomous regions/territories. Eastern and Central Europe were under autocratic monarchies and diverse people lived within the territories which did not see themselves as a collective identity or a common culture. They have their different languages and belonged to different ethnic groups.
- The only common tie between them was allegiance to the emperor. It was not easy to promote the sense of political unity despite such differences.

The Aristocracy and the New Middle Class

- The Aristocracy, politically and socially, was the dominant class on the continent
- The members of this class were united by a common way of life that cut across regional divisions. They owned estates in the countryside and also townhouses. They spoke French for purposes of diplomacy and in high society. Their families were often connected by ties of marriage. But, these aristocrats were numerically small. The majority of the population was made up of the peasantry.
- In Western and parts of Central Europe the growth of industrial production and trade meant the growth of towns and the emergence of commercial classes whose existence was based on production for the market.
- Industrialization began in England in the second half of the eighteenth century.
- The new social groups came into being: a working-class population and middle classes made up of industrialists, businessmen and professionals.
- It was among the educated, liberal middle classes that ideas of national unity following the abolition of aristocratic privileges gained popularity.

What did Liberal Nationalism Stand for?

- The word "Liberalism" comes from the Latin word "liber," which means "free." Liberalism for the middle classes stood for the freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law. It emphasised the concept of government by consent, politically.

- In the economic sphere, liberalism stood for the freedom of markets and the abolition of state-imposed restrictions on the movement of goods and capital. During the nineteenth century this was a strong demand of the emerging middle classes.

A New Conservatism after 1815

- After the defeat of Napoleon in 1815, the European Governments were led by a conservative attitude. Conservatives supported monarchy, the Church, social hierarchies, property and the preservation of the family.
- They realised that the end of Feudalism and Serfdom, as well as a modern army, an efficient bureaucracy and a dynamic economy, may strengthen Europe's Authoritarian Monarchy.
- Representatives from the European powers — Britain, Russia, Prussia and Austria convened in Vienna in 1815 to draw up a European settlement.
- France lost those countries which were gained under Napoleon and the Bourbon Monarchy was restored to power. The main intention was to restore the monarchies that were overthrown by Napoleon and to create a conservative order in Europe.
- They imposed censorship laws to control press.
- The Freedom of the press was one of the key issues raised by the liberal-nationalists who opposed the New Conservative order.

> **Note:**
> Conservatism: A political philosophy that stresses the importance of tradition, customs and established institutions and prefers gradual development.

The Revolutionaries

- In 1815, many liberal-nationalists gone underground because of the fear of repression, the secret societies were formed in many European States to train revolutionaries and spread their ideas. Revolutionaries opposed monarchical forms and fought for Liberty and Freedom.
- Giuseppe Mazzini, an Italian revolutionary born in Genoa in 1807, formed two additional secret societies, the first of which was Young Italy in Marseilles and the second he founded Young Europe in Berne, whose members were like-minded young men from Poland, France, Italy and the German States. His vision of democratic republics and criticism of monarchism frightened the conservatives. Metternich quoted him as 'the most dangerous enemy of our social order'.

The Age of Revolutions: 1830-1848

- As Conservative regimes tried to consolidate their power, Liberalism and Nationalism came to be increasingly associated with revolution in many regions of Europe such as the Italian and German States, the Provinces of the Ottoman Empire, Ireland and Poland.
- The Bourbon Kings were deposed by liberal revolutionaries in July 1830, who founded a Constitutional Monarchy commanded by Louis Philippe. The July Revolution prompted an uprising in Brussels, which resulted in Belgium seceding from the Netherlands' United Kingdom. Greeks fought for freedom in 1821.

The Romantic Imagination and National Feeling

- Art, poetry, storytelling and music all contributed to the formation of the nation's concept: they helped express and create nationalist feelings.
- Romanticism, a cultural movement that sought to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiment.
- Language too played an important role in developing sentiments of nationalism. After the occupation of Russia, The Russian language was imposed upon everyone, (the Polish language was forced out) and in 1831 there was an armed insurrection against Russian administration, which was eventually subdued.

Hunger, Hardship and Popular Revolt

- Europe faced economic hardships in the 1830s. The first half of the nineteenth century saw an enormous increase in population all over Europe. The rise of food prices or a year of bad harvest led to widespread pauperism in town and country. In 1848, food shortages and widespread unemployment brought the population of Paris out on the roads.

The Revolution of the Liberals

- A revolt driven by the educated middle classes erupted in 1848. The construction of a nation-state based on parliamentary ideals — a Constitution, Freedom of the press and Freedom of association – was advocated by men and women in the liberal middle class.
- A large number of political associations came together in Frankfurt to vote for an all-German National Assembly. On 18 May 1848, 831 elected representatives marched to take their places in the Frankfurt Parliament convened in the Church of St Paul.
- A Monarchy presided over the German nation's Constitution, which was subject to a Parliament. Friedrich Wilhelm IV, King of Prussia, was offered the Crown, but he declined and joined other Monarchs in opposing the Elected Assembly. The Parliament was dominated by the middle class and a substantial number of women took part in the Liberal Movement.
- Women formed their own political associations, founded newspapers and took part in political meetings and demonstrations, but they were still denied suffrage rights during the election of the Assembly.
- The authoritarian kings of Central and Eastern Europe began to implement the reforms that had already occurred in Western Europe prior to 1815 in the years following 1848. Serfdom and bonded labour were thus abolished in both the Habsburg and Russian dominions.

The Making of Germany

- After 1848, Nationalism in Europe faded and Germany and Italy merged as nation-states. The quest for national unification was taken over by Prussia. Otto von Bismarck, the Prussian Chief Minister, was the architect of this process, which was carried out with the support of the Prussian army and bureaucracy.
- In January 1871, the Prussian King, William I, was proclaimed German Emperor. An assembly was held to proclaim the new German Empire. The process of nation-building demonstrated the dominance of Prussian State power. The currency, banking, legal and judicial system in Germany were modernised.

The Making of Italy

- Italy was scattered over several dynastic states and the multi-national Hasburg Empire as well.
- Italy was divided into seven states (only Sardinia-Piedmont was ruled by an Italian princely house) during the middle of the nineteenth century. The north was under the Austrian Hasburgs, the pope controlled the centre and the southern region was under the domination of the Bourbon kings of Spain.
- Giuseppe Mazzini put together a programme for a unitary Italian Republic during the 1830s. He formed Young Italy society for the dissemination of his goals. After the failure of the 1831 and 1848 revolutionary uprisings, the mantle of a unified Italy fell on the King Victor Emmanuel II of Sardinia-Piedmont.
- Chief Minister Cavour led the movement and his tactics and diplomatic alliance with France made sure the win of Sardinia-Piedmont over the Austrian forces in 1859.
- In 1860, a large number of troops under the leadership of Giuseppe Garibaldi marched into South Italy and drove out Spanish rulers. Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed king of united Italy in the year 1861.

The Strange Case of Britain

- Great Britain was the model of the nation and prior to the eighteenth century there was no British nation. The nation became powerful as it steadily grew in wealth, importance and power.
- The foundation of the 'United Kingdom of Great Britain' as a result of the Act of Union (1707) between England and Scotland meant that England could effectively impose its influence on Scotland. Ireland was forcibly absorbed into the United Kingdom in 1801.
- The symbols of the new Britain – the British flag (Union Jack), the National Anthem (God Save Our Noble King), the English language – were actively promoted.

Visualising the Nation

- In the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, artists represented a country as a person and nations as female figures. During the French Revolution, female figures portray ideas such as Liberty, Justice and the Republic.
- Liberty is represented as a red cap, or the broken chain, Justice a blindfolded woman carrying a pair of weighing scales.

Nationalism and Imperialism

- By the last quarter of the nineteenth century, nationalism had lost its appeal. The Balkans, which include modern-day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro, were the tensest region after 1871.
- Ottoman Empire made the Balkans region explosive and all through the nineteenth century, they strengthened themselves through modernization and internal reforms. Due to various conflicts, the Balkan became an area of intense conflict.
- During this time, intense rivalry arose between European powers over trade, colonies and naval and military supremacy, leading to a succession of regional wars and, eventually, the First World War.
- Nationalism, which was associated with imperialism, wreaked havoc on Europe in 1914. Anti-imperial groups arose, but none of them succeeded in forming independent Nation-States. The concept of 'Nation-States' on the other hand, was widely recognised as natural and universal.

TIMELINE
1797 : Napoleon invades Italy - Napoleonic wars begin
1814-1815 : Fall of Napoleon - Vienna Peace Settlement
1821 : Greek struggle for independence starts
1848 : Revolutions in Europe
1861 : Unification of Italy
1871 : Unification of Germany

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which of the following sentences best describes the Utopian Society?
- **(a)** A society with a comprehensive Constitution
- **(b)** A society where everyone is equal
- **(c)** A democratic society
- **(d)** An idealist society that can never be achieved

2. Select the appropriate definition for the phrase 'plebiscite.'
- **(a)** A plebiscite is a direct vote in which all the region's residents are asked to accept or reject a proposition.
- **(b)** In a matriarchal society, a plebiscite is a direct vote by female members to adopt or reject a proposition.
- **(c)** A plebiscite is a direct vote by a small group of people from a specific region to adopt or reject a proposition.
- **(d)** A plebiscite is a direct vote in which only female members of a region vote on whether or not to accept or reject a proposition.

3. 'Nationalism,' which arose as a political force in the late 1800s, refers to
- **(a)** strong attachment to one's own nation, its history and culture.
- **(b)** a strong attachment to one's own country without regard for other countries.
- **(c)** a strong attachment to one's own country and a dislike for others.
- **(d)** a strong commitment to all countries around the world.

4. What mission did the revolutionaries declare the French people's destiny to be?
- **(a)** To become a democracy
- **(b)** To free European peoples from despotism – to assist other European peoples in becoming countries.

(c) To become a one-nation State
(d) To gain Sovereignty

5. Who said "when France sneezes the rest of Europe catches a cold"?
(a) Metternich **(b)** Mazzini
(c) Bismarck **(d)** Garibaldi

6. Who was responsible for the unification of Germany?
(a) Cavour **(b)** Bismarck
(c) Mazzini **(d)** None of these

7. Which of the following Act resulted in the Union of Great Britain?
(a) Act of Union **(b)** Act of Great Britain
(c) Act of Integration **(d)** None of these

8. With the reference to tensions in Europe after 1871, choose the correct option among the following:
(a) Increasing power of Germany
(b) Revival of feudalism
(c) Ethnic clashes
(d) None of these

9. The first great revolution which gave the clear idea of nationalism with its core words: 'Liberty, Equality and Fraternity' was
(a) The American Revolution
(b) The French Revolution
(c) The Russian Revolution
(d) None of these

10. Which of the following countries did not attend the Congress of Vienna?
(a) Switzerland **(b)** Russia
(c) Italy **(d)** None of these

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Match the term with the statements given below:
A 'Utopian Society' is
1. A society ruled by a friendly Monarchy
2. A society that is unlikely to ever exist
3. A society under the control of a chosen few wise men
Select the correct code:
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 and 3
(c) 2 only **(d)** 3 only

2. Which of the following group of powers collectively defeated Napoleon?
(a) England, USA, Italy, France
(b) England, Italy, Spain, Russia
(c) Austria, Prussia, Russia, Britain
(d) Britain, Prussia, Russia, Japan

3. Which of the following claims, concerning the "French Revolution" is true?
1. Following the end of the French Revolution, it was declared that the people would henceforth form the nation and determine its fate.
2. To provide universal laws for all citizens, a centralised administrative structure will be implemented.
3. France will be a Constitutional Monarchy, with a member of the royal family as President of the New Republic.
4. Imposition of internal customs duties and dues will continue to exist in France.
Select the correct option using the code given below:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 3 and 4 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4

4. Considering the account of measures taken by Napoleon after the French Revolution, read the following statements:
1. Napoleon did no change in the existing administrative system of France.
2. He abolished the feudal system in many European countries.
3. No measure was taken for Guilds.
Choose the option which has/have only correct statement/statements:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) 2 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only

5. After the defeat of Napoleon, which of the following is/are correct statements about conservatives of Europe?
1. Conservatives believed that established, traditional institutions of state and society.
2. They believed that modern army, an efficient bureaucracy, a dynamic economy, the abolition of feudalism and serfdom could strengthen the autocratic monarchies.
Choose the correct option:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

6. Consider the following pairs:
1. Treaty of Vienna of 1815 - Restoration of power to Bourbon dynasty
2. Young Europe - Giuseppe Mazzini
3. Balkans - Ottoman Empire
Which of the above pairs is/are correctly matched?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

7. The Liberal Nationalism stands for
(a) Freedom for the individual and equality before law.
(b) Autocracy and Ecclesiastical privileges are preserved.
(c) Only male members of society have freedom and are treated equally under the law.
(d) Only older citizens have freedom.

8. Which one of the following treaties of recognized Greece as an independent nation?
(a) Warsaw 1814
(b) Constantinople 1832
(c) Vienna 1815
(d) None of these

9. What occurred in Poland during the end of the eighteenth century?
(a) At the end of the 18^{th} century, Poland declared independence.
(b) Poland was completely absorbed into Russia and became a part of it.

(c) Poland was annexed by East Germany.
(d) Poland was partitioned at the end of the 18th century by three Great Powers: Russia, Prussia and Austria.

10. Who among the following acquired the power of Italy after its unification in 1861?
(a) Count Cavour (b) Giuseppe Mazzini
(c) Giuseppe Garibaldi (d) None of these

11. With reference to prior to the unification of Italy, consider the following statements:
1. Sardinia-Piedmont was ruled by an Italian princely house.
2. The northern Italy was under the control of Austrian Habsburgs.
3. The central Italy was ruled by Bourbon kings of Spain.

Select the correct code:
(a) 1 only (b) 1 and 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 only (d) 1 and 3 only

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: A Utopia represents an idealistic place that is almost perfect. The idea behind utopianism is a society in which everyone's needs are met and society's ills have been defeated.

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: A plebiscite is a direct vote in which all the residents of a region vote on whether or not to accept or reject a proposition.

3. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: 'Nationalism', which emerged as a force in the late 19th century, means strong devotion to one's own country and its history and culture.

4. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The revolutionaries declared that it was the mission and the destiny of the French nation to liberate the peoples of Europe from despotism, in other words, to help other peoples of Europe to become nations.

5. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Metternich once remarked that, 'When France sneezes,' the rest of Europe catches cold.'

6. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: In the 1860s, Prussian Minister President Otto von Bismarck instigated three brief decisive wars against Denmark, Austria and France, uniting the lesser German States behind Prussia in its defeat over France. In 1871, he formed the German Empire by uniting Germany into a Nation-State.

7. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Act of Union (1707) between England and Scotland that resulted in the formation of the 'United Kingdom of Great Britain' meant, in effect, that England was able to impose its influence on Scotland.

8. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The most serious source of nationalist tension in Europe after 1871 was the area called the Balkans. The Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic variation comprising modern-day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro whose inhabitants were broadly known as the Slavs. A large part of the Balkans was under the control of the Ottoman Empire. The spread of the ideas of romantic nationalism in the Balkans together with the disintegration of the Ottoman Empire made this region very explosive.

9. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The first great revolution which gave the clear idea of nationalism with its core words: 'Liberty, Equality and Fraternity' was "The French Revolution".

10. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Switzerland did not attend the Congress of Vienna. In 1815, representatives of the European powers – Britain, Russia, Prussia and Austria – who had collectively defeated Napoleon and met at Vienna to draw up a settlement for Europe. The Congress was hosted by the Austrian Chancellor Duke Metternich.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: A 'Utopian Society' is a society that is unlikely to ever exist and it is a society under the control of a chosen few wise men.

2. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The Battle of Waterloo, fought in Belgium on June 18, 1815, was Napoleon Bonaparte's ultimate defeat after conquering much of Europe in the early nineteenth century. He was defeated by the combine army of Austria, Prussia, Russia and Britain.

3. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The French revolutionaries introduced various measures and practices that could create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people. The ideas of *la patrie* (the fatherland) and *le citoyen* (the citizen) emphasised the notion of a united community enjoying equal rights under a Constitution. A centralised administrative system was put in place and it formulated uniform laws for all citizen within its territory. Internal customs duties and dues were abolished and a uniform system of weights and measures was adopted. Regional dialects were discouraged and French, as it was spoken and

written in Paris, became the common language of the nation.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Napoleon had incorporated Revolutionary principles in the administrative field in order to make the whole system more rational and efficient. The Civil Code of 1804 – usually known as the Napoleonic Code – did away with all privileges based on birth, established equality before the law and secured the right to property. This Code was exported to the regions under French control. In the Dutch Republic, in Switzerland, in Italy and Germany, Napoleon simplified administrative divisions, abolished the feudal system and freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues. In the towns too, guild restrictions were removed. Transport and communication systems were improved.

5 Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Following the defeat of Napoleon in 1815, European governments were driven by a spirit of conservatism. Conservatives believed that established traditional institutions of state and society – like the monarchy, the Church, social hierarchies, property and the family – should be preserved. Most conservatives, however, did not propose a return to the society of pre-revolutionary days. Rather, they realised, from the changes initiated by Napoleon, that modernisation could in fact strengthen traditional institutions like the monarchy. It could make state power more effective and stronger. A modern army, an efficient bureaucracy, a dynamic economy, the abolition of Feudalism and Serfdom could strengthen the autocratic monarchies of Europe.

6. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Treaty of Vienna of 1815 was hosted by Metternich with the object of undoing most of the changes that had come about in Europe during the Napoleonic wars. The Bourbon dynasty, which had been deposed during the French Revolution, was restored to power and France lost the territories it had annexed under Napoleon. A series of states were set up on the boundaries of France to prevent French expansion in future.

The Italian revolutionary Giuseppe Mazzini was born in Genoa in 1807. He became a member of the Secret Society of the Carbonari. As a young man of 24, he was sent into exile in 1831 for attempting a revolution in Liguria. He subsequently founded two more underground societies, first, Young Italy in Marseilles and then, Young Europe in Berne.

The source of most serious nationalist tension in Europe after 1871 was the Balkans. The Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic variation comprising modern-day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro whose inhabitants were broadly known as the Slavs. A large part of the Balkans was under the control of the Ottoman Empire.

7. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Individual liberty, equality before the law, representative government and constitution, as well as the inviolability of private property were all hallmarks of liberal nationalism. The main aim of Liberal Nationalism is the freedom for the individual and equality before law.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Greece had been part of the Ottoman Empire since the fifteenth century. The growth of Revolutionary Nationalism in Europe sparked off a struggle for independence amongst the Greeks which began in 1821. Nationalists in Greece got support from other Greeks living in exile and also from many West Europeans. The English poet Lord Byron organised funds and later went to fight in the war, where he died of fever in 1824. Finally, the Treaty of Constantinople of 1832 recognised Greece as an independent nation.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Poland was partitioned at the end of the 18^{th} century by three Great Powers: Russia, Prussia and Austria.

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Victor Emmanuel II was King of Sardinia from 1849 to 17 March 1861, when he became the first king of an independent united Italy since the 6^{th} century.

11. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Italy was divided into seven states (only Sardinia-Piedmont was ruled by an Italian princely house) during the middle of the nineteenth century. The north was under the Austrian Hasburgs, the pope controlled the centre and the southern region was under the domination of the Bourbon kings of Spain.

HISTORY CLASS-X

2 NATIONALISM IN INDIA

Introduction

- In India and in many other colonies, the growth of modern nationalism is intimately connected to the anti-colonial movement. People began discovering their unity in the process of their struggle with colonialism.
- The sense of being oppressed under colonialism provided a shared bond that tied many different groups together. But each class and group felt the effects of colonialism differently, their experiences were varied and their notions of freedom were not always the same.
- The Congress under Mahatma Gandhi tried to forge these groups together within one movement, but the unity did not emerge without conflict.

The First World War, Khilafat and Non-Cooperation

- The rise of contemporary nationalism in India is linked to the anti-colonial movement. Many groups formed relationships as a result of colonialism, which were developed by the Congress under Mahatma Gandhi.
- In the years following 1919, the war created a new economic and political scenario. Between 1913 and 1918, an income tax was enacted and the prices of customs taxes were doubled, making life extremely difficult for ordinary people.
- Crop failure in India in 1918-19 and 1920-21 resulted in a food shortage and it was accompanied by an influenza epidemic. A new leader emerged at this point, proposing a new form of struggle.

The Idea of Satyagraha

- Mahatma Gandhi returned to India from South Africa (where he had successfully fought the racist with satyagraha, a novel method of mass agitation) in January 1915 and launched the Satyagraha Movement. Satyagraha emphasised the importance of seeking truth and the power of truth. According to Mahatma Gandhi, non-violence may win a conflict and bring all Indians together.
- In 1917, Gandhiji travelled to Champaran in Bihar to inspire the peasants to struggle against the oppressive plantation system. In the same year, he organised Satyagraha to support the peasants of the Kheda district of Gujarat. In 1918, Mahatma Gandhi went to Ahmedabad to organise a Satyagraha Movement amongst cotton mill workers.

The Rowlatt Act

- Mahatma Gandhi organised a statewide Satyagraha in 1919 to protest the planned Rowlatt Act. The Act grants the government broad powers to suppress political activities and allows political prisoners to be held for two years without charge or trial.
- The British Government decided to clamp down on nationalists by witnessing the outrage of the people. On April 10th, police in Amritsar fired on a peaceful procession, which provoked widespread attacks on banks, post offices and railway stations. Martial law was imposed and General Dyer took command.
- On 13th April, the Jallianwala Bagh incident took place. A large crowd gathered in the Jallianwala Bagh where a few people came to protest against the government's new repressive measures, while some came to attend the annual Baisakhi fair. General Dyer blocked all the exit points and opened fire on the crowd killing hundreds. After the Jallianwala Bagh massacre, people grew furious and went on strikes, clashes with police and attacks on government buildings. Mahatma Gandhi had to call off the movement as it was turning into a violent war.
- Mahatma Gandhi then took up the Khilafat issue by bringing Hindus and Muslims together. The defeat of Ottoman Turkey marked the conclusion of the First World War. A Khilafat Committee was created in Bombay in March 1919. Mahatma Gandhi persuaded other leaders in September 1920 for the non-cooperation movement in support of Khilafat and swaraj that was necessary.

Why Non-cooperation?

- In his famous book Hind Swaraj (1909), Mahatma Gandhi declared that British rule was established in India with the cooperation of Indians and had survived only because of this cooperation. If Indians refused to cooperate, British rule in India would collapse within a year and the swaraj would come.
- The Non-cooperation movement was proposed in stages. It should begin with the surrender of titles that the government awarded and a boycott of civil services, army, police, courts and legislative councils, schools and foreign goods. After many hurdles and campaigning between the supporters and opponents of the movement, finally in the Congress session at Nagpur in December 1920, the Non-Cooperation Movement was adopted.

Differing Strands within the Movement

- The Non-Cooperation-Khilafat Movement began in January 1921. Various social groups participated in this movement, each with its own specific aspiration.

- All of them responded to the call of Swaraj, but the term meant different things to different people.

The Movement in the Towns

- The middle-class started the movement and thousands of students, teachers, headmasters left the government-controlled schools and colleges, lawyers gave up their legal practices. In the economic front, the effects of non-cooperation were more dramatic.
- When people began boycotting the foreign items, it resulted in fruitful way, as the production of Indian textile factories and handlooms increased. But the trend, however, stalled due to a multitude of factors, including the high cost of Khadi clothing, a lack of Indian institutions for students and teachers to choose from, so they had no choice than to return to government schools and attorneys returned to government courts.

Rebellion in the Countryside

- In several sections of India, the Non-Cooperation Movement expanded to the countryside, where peasants and tribals were flourishing. The peasant movement began as a response to talukdars and landowners who wanted exorbitant rents and other concessions. The movement called for a reduction in taxation, the abolition of beggars and a social boycott of tyrannical landlords.
- Jawaharlal Nehru in June 1920, started going around the villages in Awadh to understand their grievances. In October, he along with few others set up the Oudh Kisan Sabha and within a month 300 branches had been set up. In 1921, the peasant movement spread rapidly and the houses of talukdars and merchants were attacked, bazaars were looted and grain boards were taken over.
- In the early 1920s, a militant guerrilla movement started in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh. As the government started closing down forest areas, due to which their livelihood was affected. As a result the hill people revolted, it was led by Alluri Sitaram Raju who claimed that he had a variety of special powers.

Swaraj in the Plantations

- For plantation workers in Assam, freedom meant right to move freely in and out and retaining a link with the village from where they had come.
- Under the Inland Emigration Act of 1859, plantation workers were not permitted to leave the tea gardens without permission. When they heard of the Non-Cooperation Movement, thousands of workers left the plantations and headed towards their home. But, unfortunately, they never reached their destination and were caught by the police and brutally beaten up. They interpreted the term swaraj in their own ways.

Towards Civil Disobedience

- In February 1922, the Non-Cooperation Movement was withdrawn because Mahatma Gandhi felt that it was turning violent. Some of the leaders wanted to participate in elections for the Provincial Councils. Swaraj Party was formed by CR Das and Motilal Nehru, but Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhash Chandra Bose pressed for more radical mass agitation and for full independence.
- In late 1920s, two causes once again affected the Indian politics. The first, it was a result of global economic downturn and the second was a fall in agricultural prices. The Statutory Commission was established to examine the functioning of India's Constitutional system and to provide recommendations for changes.
- In 1928, Simon Commission arrived in India and it was greeted by the slogan 'Go back Simon'. All parties, including the Congress and Muslim League, participated in the demonstrations, whereas to calm down the demonstrations and an effort to win them over, the viceroy, Lord Irwin announced an offer of dominion status and a Round Table Conference to discuss a future constitution in October 1929. But, it did not satisfy the leaders of Congress. In December 1929, under the presidency of Jawaharlal Nehru, the Lahore Congress formalised the demand of 'Purna Swaraj' or full independence for India. It was declared that 26 January 1930 would be celebrated as Independence Day.

The Salt March and the Civil Disobedience Movement

- On 31 January 1930, Mahatma Gandhi sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin stating eleven demands. Among the demands, the most stirring of all was to abolish the salt tax which is consumed by the rich and the poor equally.
- The demands had to be met by March 11th, else Congress would begin a campaign of Civil Disobedience. Mahatma Gandhi began the legendary salt march with the help of 78 of his loyal volunteers.
- From Gandhiji's ashram at Sabarmati to the Gujarati seaside town of Dandi, the march covered nearly 240 km. On April 6, he along with others arrived at Dandi and ceremonially broke the law by boiling seawater to make salt. The Civil Disobedience Movement began with this event.
- The movement gained traction around the world and the salt ban was repealed in various sections of the country. The foreign textiles were boycotted, peasants refused to pay taxes and the forest laws were broken in numerous locations.
- In April 1930, Abdul Ghaffar Khan, a devout disciple of Mahatma Gandhi was arrested and Mahatma Gandhi was also arrested a month later, which led the attacks to all structures that symbolised British rule.
- Mahatma Gandhi decided to call off the struggle after observing the awful circumstances and signed a contract with Irwin on March 5, 1931. Gandhiji agreed to attend a Round Table Conference in London as part of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact. When the conference fell apart, Mahatma Gandhi was dissatisfied and resumed the Civil Disobedience Movement in India. It continued for almost a year, but by 1934 it lost its momentum.

How Participants saw the Movement

- The Patidars of Gujarat and the Jats of Uttar Pradesh (producer of commercial crops) were active in the movement. They became enthusiastic supporters of

the Civil Disobedience Movement. But they were deeply disappointed when the movement was called off in 1931. So, when the movement was restarted in 1932, many of them refused to participate. The poorer peasants joined a variety of radical movements, often led by Socialists and Communists.

- The Indian Industrial and Commercial Congress was founded in 1920 and the Federation of the Indian Chamber of Commerce and Industries (FICCI) was founded in 1927 to organise corporate interests. When the Civil Disobedience Movement was first formed, businessmen opposed British control over the Indian economy. The Civil Disobedience Movement drew the participation of certain industrial workers. Railway and dock employees went on strike in 1930 and 1932.
- The large-scale participation of women was another major characteristic of the Civil Disobedience Movement. For a long time, however, Congress was adamant about not allowing women to take any position of power within the organisation.

The Limits of Civil Disobedience

- The concept of Swaraj did not sway Dalits, or oppressed class who were referred to as "untouchables." Mahatma Gandhi referred to them as Harijans or God's offspring, without whom swaraj would be impossible to attain.
- He organised Satyagraha for the untouchables, but they preferred a political solution to the community's concerns. They requested a separate electorate and special seats in educational institutions.
- Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, who organised the oppressed class into the Depressed Classes Association in 1930, clashed with Mahatma Gandhi at the second Round Table Conference by demanding separate electorates for them.
- The Poona Pact of September 1932 gave the Depressed Classes (later to be known as the Scheduled Castes) reserved seats in Provincial and Central Legislative Councils. After the decline of the Non-Cooperation-Khilafat Movement, the Muslims felt alienated from the Congress due to which the relations between Hindus and Muslims worsened.
- If the Muslims were guaranteed reserved seats in the Central Assembly and representation in proportion to population in Muslim-dominated regions, Muhammad Ali Jinnah was willing to give up his demand for separate electorates.
- Despite this, hopes of resolving the problem during the 1928, All Parties Conference were dashed when M.R. Jayakar of the Hindu Mahasabha vehemently resisted any attempts at compromise.

The Sense of Collective Belonging

- The Nationalism spreads when people begin to believe that they are all part of the same nation. Nationalism was shaped by history and fiction, folklore and songs, popular prints and symbols and so on. Finally, in the twentieth century, the image of Bharat Mata visually identified with India's identity.
- The image was first produced by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay, who also penned the song 'Vande Mataram' in 1870s.
- Abanindranath Tagore painted the famous image of Bharat Mata, portrayed as an ascetic figure; she is calm, composed, divine and spiritual. In late-nineteenth-century India, nationalists began recording folk tales sung by bards and they toured villages to gather folk songs and legends.
- A tricolour flag (red, green and yellow) was designed during the Swadeshi Movement in Bengal, with eight lotuses representing the eight regions of British India and a crescent moon signifying Hindus and Muslims. By 1921, Gandhiji had developed the Swaraj flag, which was a tricolour (red, green and white) with a spinning wheel in the centre, symbolising Gandhi's self-help concept.

Conclusion

- In the first half of the twentieth century, various groups and classes of Indians came together for the struggle of independence. The Congress under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi attempted to resolve differences and ensured that the demands of one group did not alienate another.
- In other words, the nation with many voices demanding independence from colonial domination was forming.

TIMELINE
1918-19 : UP peasants organised by Baba Ramchandra
April 1919 : Gandhian hartal against Rowlatt Act; Jallianwala Bagh massacre
January 1921 : Non-Cooperation and Khilafat movement launched
February 1922 : Chauri Chaura and withdrawal of Non-Cooperation by Gandhiji
May 1924 : Alluri Sitarama Raju arrested ending a two-year armed tribal struggle
December 1929 : Lahore Congress Session - Purna Swaraj
1930 : B.R. Ambedkar established Depressed Classes Association
March 1930 : Gandhiji begins Civil Disobedience Movement by breaking salt law at Dandi
March 1931 : End of Civil Disobedience Movement
December 1931 : Second Round Table Conference
1932 : Civil Disobedience re-launched

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. To examine the Government of India Act 1919, the British Government formed an Indian Statutory Commission, which is also known as?
   (a) Simon Commission **(b)** Hunter Commission
   (c) Elbert Commission **(d)** Cripps Mission
2. Which of the following is not a Mahatma Gandhi's literary work?
   (a) Hind Swaraj **(b)** Indian Viewpoint
   (c) Yugantar **(d)** The young India
3. The Poona Pact (1932) was an agreement between
   (a) Jinnah and Ambedkar
   (b) Gandhi and Ambedkar
   (c) Malaviya and Nehru
   (d) None of these
4. The author of nationalist song "Vande Mataram" is
   (a) Rabindranath Tagore
   (b) Mahatma Gandhi
   (c) Sarat Chandra Chatterjee
   (d) Bankim Chandra Chatterjee
5. When was the Non-Cooperation Movement got momentum under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi and the Indian National Congress?
   (a) 1920-1922 **(b)** 1922-1924
   (c) 1987-1989 **(d)** 1990-1992
6. Khilafat Movement was organised by
   (a) Jinnah **(b)** Aga Khan
   (c) Ali Brothers **(d)** None of these
7. Khilafat Movement was organised to protest against the injustice done to
   (a) Spain **(b)** Turkey
   (c) Arabia **(d)** None of these
8. When did Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi start the "Quit India Movement"?
   (a) 1946 **(b)** 1939
   (c) 1942 **(d)** 1940
9. In the absence of Gandhi, the Quit India Movement had been led by
   (a) Jawaharlal Nehru **(b)** Sarojini Naidu
   (c) Aruna Asaf Ali **(d)** Dadabhai Naoroji
10. The Non-Cooperation Movement of 1921 reached which of the following milestones?
    (a) It put an end to the injustices against the Khilafat.
    (b) It gave Indians some political rights.
    (c) In terms of politics, Hindus and Muslims became closer.
    (d) It avenged the horrors committed in Punjab.
11. The Civil Disobedience Movement was re-launched in
    (a) 1932 **(b)** 1933
    (c) 1931 **(d)** 1930

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following statement/s is/are associated with the idea of satyagraha?
   1. The idea of satyagraha emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth.
   2. The struggle was against injustice, then the physical force was not necessary to fight the oppressor.
   3. But sometimes small violence can be used to attain the big goal and welfare of the masses.

   Choose the correct option:
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** None of these
2. Consider the following pairs:
   1. Kheda satyagraha - 1917
   2. Champaran - 1918
   3. Ahmedabad Mill Strike - 1917

   Which of the above pairs is/are correctly matched?
   (a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 and 3
   (c) 1 only **(d)** 3 only
3. Which of the following statements is/are not correct about Rowlatt Act?
   1. This Act had been hurriedly passed through the Imperial Legislative Council despite the united opposition of the Indian members.
   2. It gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.
   3. Mahatma Gandhi did not want non-violent civil disobedience against such unjust laws.

   Choose the correct option given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 and 3
   (c) 2 and 3 **(d)** None of these
4. After the Civil Disobedience Movement failed, Mahatma Gandhi focused on
   (a) reaching a deal with the British
   (b) limiting the use of violence.
   (c) constructive program
   (d) none of the above
5. Mahatma Gandhi launched the Civil Disobedience Movement in 1930 from
   (a) Sabarmati Ashram **(b)** Ahmedabad
   (c) Porbandar **(d)** None of these
6. Arrange the correct sequence:
   1. Rowlatt Act **2.** Gandhi Erwin Pact
   3. Morley Minto reforms **4.** Elbert Bill
   (a) 4 – 3 – 1 – 2 **(b)** 4 – 2 – 3 – 1
   (c) 4 – 3 – 2 – 1 **(d)** 3 – 1 – 2 – 4
7. Which of the following statements about the Indian National Congress is/are correct?
   1. In the December session of the Congress in Lahore, the Poorna Swaraj resolution was passed.
   2. On January 2, 1930, the Congress Working Committee resolved that January 26, 1930, shall be marked as Poorna Swaraj Day.

   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
8. Who was responsible for the Jallianwala Bagh massacre?
   (a) Michael O'Dyer **(b)** Nigel Collett
   (c) Lord Curzon **(d)** Simon Hunter

9. "Hind Swaraj" was written by"
   (a) Pandit Nehru (b) B R Ambedkar
   (c) M K Gandhi (d) None of these
10. The members of the Red Shirt Movement of Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan were known as:
   (a) Khidmatgars (Servants)
   (b) Insan-i-Khidmatgar (Servants of the people)
   (c) Khuda-i-Khidamatgar (Servants of God)
   (d) Angels of Freedom
11. Consider the following statements with reference to Lord Irwin's efforts to win over the Indian leadership after the demonstrations against the Simon Commission:
   1. Lord Irwin offered full independence to India.
   2. Lord Irwin proposed a Round Table Conference to discuss a future constitution.

   Select the answer using the code given below :
   (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Which one of the following observations is not true about the Quit India Movement of 1942? **[UPSC]**
   (a) It was a non-violent movement
   (b) It was led by Mahatma Gandhi
   (c) It was a spontaneous movement
   (d) It did not attract the labour class in general
2. With reference to Rowlatt Satyagraha, which of the following statements is/ are correct? **[UPSC]**
   1. The Rowlatt Act was based on the recommendations of the 'Sedition Committee'.
   2. In Rowlatt Satyagraha, Gandhiji tried to utilize the Home Rule League.
   3. Demonstrations against the arrival of Simon Commission coincided with Rowlatt Satyagraha.

   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only (b) 1 and 2 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3
3. Quit India Movement was launched in response to: **[UPSC]**
   (a) Cabinet Mission Plan
   (b) Cripps Proposals
   (c) Simon Commission Report
   (d) Wavell Plan
4. The people of India agitated against the arrival of Simon Commission because: **[UPSC]**
   (a) Indians never wanted the review of the working of the Act of 1919
   (b) Simon Commission recommended the abolition of Dyarchy (Diarchy) in the Provinces
   (c) there was no Indian member in the Simon Commission
   (d) the Simon Commission suggested the partition of the country
5. With reference to Indian freedom struggle, Usha Mehta is well-known for **[UPSC]**
   (a) Running the secret Congress Radio in the wake of Quit India Movement
   (b) Participating in the Second Round Table Conference
   (c) Leading a contingent of Indian National Army
   (d) Assisting in the formation of Interim Government under Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru
6. What was the reason for Mahatma Gandhi to organize a satyagraha on behalf of the peasants of Kheda? **[UPSC]**
   1. The Administration did not suspend the land revenue collection in spite of a drought.
   2. The Administration proposed to introduce Permanent Settlement in Gujarat.

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
7. Mahatma Gandhi undertook fast unto death in 1932, mainly because: **[UPSC]**
   (a) Round Table Conference failed to satisfy Indian political aspirations.
   (b) Congress and Muslim League had differences of opinion.
   (c) Ramsay MacDonald announced the Communal Award.
   (d) None of the statements (a), (b) and (c) given above is correct in this context.
8. The Rowlatt Act aimed at **[UPSC]**
   (a) compulsory economic support to war efforts
   (b) imprisonment without trial and summary procedures for trial
   (c) suppression of the Khilafat Movement
   (d) imposition of restrictions on freedom of the press
9. The Lahore Session of the Indian National Congress (1929) is very important in history, because **[UPSC]**
   1. the Congress passed a resolution demanding complete independence
   2. the rift between the extremists and moderates was resolved in that Session
   3. a resolution was passed rejecting the two-nation theory in that Session

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) I only (b) 2 and 3
   (c) 1 and 3 (d) None of the above
10. The Government of India Act of 1919 clearly defined **[UPSC]**
   (a) the separation of power between the judiciary and the legislature
   (b) the jurisdiction of the Central and Provincial Governments
   (c) the powers of the Secretary of State for India and the Viceroy
   (d) None of the above
11. The Montague-Chelmsford Proposals were related to **[UPSC]**
   (a) social reforms
   (b) educational reforms
   (c) reforms in police administration
   (d) constitutional reforms
12. The Gandhi-Irwin Pact included of the following? **[UPSC]**
   1. Invitation to Congress to participate in the Round Table Conference
   2. Withdrawal of Ordinances promulgated in connection with the Civil Disobedience Movement

3. Acceptance of Gandhi's suggestion for enquiry into police excesses
4. Release of only those prisoners who were not charged with violence

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 4 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 2, 3 and 4 only

13. Which one of the following is a very significant aspect of the Champaran Satyagraha? **[UPSC]**
(a) Active all-India participation of lawyers, students and women in the National Movement
(b) Active involvement of Dalit and Tribal communities of India in the National Movement
(c) Joining of peasant unrest to India's National Movement
(d) Drastic decrease in the cultivation of plantation crops and commercial crops

14. The Trade Disputes Act of 1929 provided for **[UPSC]**
(a) the participation of workers in the management of industries.
(b) arbitrary powers to the management to quell industrial disputes.
(c) an intervention by the British Court in the event of a trade dispute.
(d) a system of tribunals and a ban on strikes.

15. Which one of the following statements about the Gandhi-Irwin Pack of 1931 is correct? **[UPSC]**
(a) The Government would not release those prisoners who had been nonviolent.
(b) The Government would not release those prisoners who had indulged in the peaceful picketing of liquor and foreign cloth shops.
(c) The Congress did not agree to the suspension of the Civil Disobedience Movement.
(d) The Congress agreed to take part in the Second Round Table Conference.

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Indian Statutory Commission, commonly known as the Simon Commission, was a body of seven members of Parliament led by Sir John Simon (later, 1st Viscount Simon). The commission arrived in British India to research constitutional reform in the country's largest and most significant colony. One of its members was Clement Attlee, the future head of the Labour Party, who grew committed to India's self-government.

2. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Hind Swaraj or Indian Home Rule is a book written by Mohandas K. Gandhi in 1909. In it, he expresses his views on Swaraj, modern civilization, mechanisation, etc.
M. K. Gandhi launched the Indian Opinion/Viewpoint newspaper. The publication was a crucial weapon in Gandhi's and the Natal Indian Congress's political campaign to end racial discrimination and restore civil rights to South Africa's Indian population.
Young India was a weekly paper or journal in English started by Mahatma Gandhi. Through this work, he desired to popularise India's demand of self-government.
Yugantar was a Bengali weekly newspaper, started by Sri Aurobindo, that preached open revolt.

3. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: On September 24, 1932, Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar and Mahatma Gandhi signed a memorandum of understanding, at Yerwada Central Jail in Pune. Pt. Madan Mohan Malviya and Dr. B. R. Ambedkar, together with some Dalit leaders, signed an agreement to end Mahatma Gandhi's fast unto death.

4. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Bankim Chandra Chatterjee composed the national anthem 'Vande Mataram,' which he included in his novel Anandamath (1882). It's a political book about a Sanyasi army battling British troops.

5. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Non-Cooperation Movement was pitched in under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi and the Indian National Congress from September 1920 to February 1922, marking a new awakening in the Indian Independence Movement.

6. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The Khilafat Movement, also known as the Indian Muslim Movement, was a pan-Islamist political protest campaign led by Shaukat Ali, Mohammad Ali Jauhar and Abul Kalam Azad, to restore the Ottoman Caliphate's caliph, who was considered the leader of Sunni Muslims, as an effective political authority (1919–24).

7. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Under Mustafa Kemal Ataturk, a pro-western nationalist, a national movement formed in Turkey. The position of Caliph was abolished by him, with the help of western nations. As their religious leader's power and influence waned, Muslims in India naturally became anti-British. After the allied nations partitioned the Turkish Empire, Muslims were particularly concerned about the survival of Islamic sites of worship.

8. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: On 8 August 1942 at the All-India Congress Committee session in Bombay, Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi launched the 'Quit India' Movement.

9. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Aruna Asaf Ali was an Indian independence activist widely remembered for hoisting the Indian National flag at the Gowalia Tank Maidan in Bombay during the Quit India Movement, 1942.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Indian obtains some political rights was the achieved milestone of the Non-Cooperation Movement of 1921.

11. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Civil Disobedience Movement was started by Gandhiji by breaking the salt law in Dandi in March 1930. Later, it was ended in March 1931. But, it was re-launched in the year 1932.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi had successfully fought the racist regime of South Africa with a novel method of mass agitation, which he called Satyagraha. The idea of satyagraha emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth. It suggested that if the cause was true, if the struggle was against injustice, then physical force was not necessary to fight the oppressor. Without seeking vengeance or being aggressive, a satyagrahi could win the battle through nonviolence.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi successfully organised Satyagraha Movements in various places. In 1917 he travelled to Champaran in Bihar to inspire the peasants to struggle against the oppressive plantation system. Then in the same year he organised a satyagraha to support the peasants of the Kheda district of Gujarat. Affected by crop failure and a plague epidemic, the peasants of Kheda could not pay the revenue and were demanding that revenue collection be relaxed. In 1918, Mahatma Gandhi went to Ahmedabad to organise a Satyagraha Movement amongst cotton mill workers.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: In 1919, Gandhiji decided to stage a statewide satyagraha to protest the impending Rowlatt Act (1919). Despite the unanimous opposition of the Indian members, this Act was rushed through the Imperial Legislative Council. It granted the government broad powers to suppress political activity and allowed political prisoners to be held indefinitely without charge or trial. Mahatma Gandhi advocated for nonviolent civil disobedience in the face of such unjust laws, beginning with a hartal on April 6.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi declared his decision to abandon the Civil Disobedience Movement in early April 1934. The second phase of the Civil Disobedience Movement came to an end with these events. The constructive programme could also be referred to as the creation of Poorna Swaraj, or total independence through honest and nonviolent means. We are all too familiar with the so-called effort to build independence by violent and thus inherently untruthful tactics. Take a look at how the current war destroys property, lives and truth on a daily basis. Complete independence through truth and nonviolence entails the independence of every unit of the nation, no matter how little, regardless of race, colour, or creed.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: On March 12, 1930, Mahatma Gandhi began the civil disobedience movement (with break of salt law) from Sabarmati Ashram.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Rowlatt Act - 1919
Morley Minto reforms - 1909
Gandhi–Irwin Pact - 1931
Elbert Bill - 1884

7. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Congress passed the Poorna Swarajya resolution in December in Lahore and the Congress Working Committee resolved on January 2, 1930, that January 26, 1930, should be marked as Poorna Swarajya Day.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: On 13 April, the infamous Jallianwalla Bagh incident took place. On that day a large crowd gathered in the enclosed ground of Jallianwalla Bagh. Some came to protest against the government's new repressive measures. Others had come to attend the annual Baisakhi fair. Being from outside the city, many villagers were unaware of the martial law that had been imposed. Dyer entered the area, blocked the exit points and opened fire on the crowd, killing hundreds. His object, as he declared later, was to 'produce a moral effect', to create in the minds of satyagrahis a feeling of terror and awe.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Hind Swaraj (1909) written by Mahatma Gandhi declared that British rule was established in India with the cooperation of Indians and had survived only because of this cooperation. If Indians refused to cooperate, British rule in India would collapse within a year and swaraj would come.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Khuda-i-Khidamatgar was the name given to members of Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan's Red Shirt Movement (Servants of God).

11. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: In the year 1928, the Simon Commission arrived in India and it was greeted by the slogan 'Go back Simon'. All parties, including the Congress and Muslim League, participated in the demonstrations. But to calm down the demonstrations and an effort to win them over, the viceroy, Lord Irwin announced an offer of dominion status and a Round Table Conference to discuss a future constitution in October 1929.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Congress met at Bombay on 8th August, 1942 and passed the famous Quit India Resolution. Gandhiji gave the slogan Do or Die. The Quit India Movement became a powerful mass campaign galvanising people into vehemently demanding, freedom from the British rule. On 9th August, 1942, Gandhiji and other Congress leaders were arrested and the Congress party was declared illegal once again and there after the movement was leaderless.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: This act was passed on the recommendations of Sedition Committee chaired by Sir Sidney Rowlatt. This act had been hurriedly passed in the Imperial Legislative Council despite the united opposition of the Indian members. It gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years. In Rowlatt Satyagraha, Gandhiji tried to utilize the Home Rule League. Demonstrations against the arrival of Simon Commission did not coincide with Rowlatt Satyagraha.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Quit India Movement, also known as August Movement or August Kranti, was a clarion call given by Mahatma Gandhi on 08 August 1942 from the Bombay session of the All-India Congress Committee in Mumbai. It is a part of the Civil Disobedience Movement launched by Mahatma Gandhi to end British rule in India. It was launched in response of Cripps mission.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Indian Statutory Commission also known as Simon Commison', was a group of seven Members of Parliament under the chairmanship of Sir John Simon (later, 1st Viscount Simon). The commission arrived in British India in 1928 to study constitutional reform in Britain's largest and most important possession. It was opposed by Indian as there were no Indian members in this commission.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: This is Congress Radio calling on 42.34 meters from somewhere in India", these lines were uttered by Usha Mehta in 1942 when The Quit India Movement was just gaining momentum. Usha Mehta was a Gandhian and freedom fighter who is also known for her efforts in organising the Congress Radio, a clandestine radio station to spread nationalistic fervor at a time when the country was vehemently fighting the British.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The farmers of Kheda district in Gujarat were in distress because of the failure of crops. The government refused to remit land revenue and insisted on its full collection. As part of the experiment, Mahatma Gandhi advised the peasants to withhold payment of revenue till their demand for its remission was met. The struggle was withdrawn when it was learnt that the government had issued instructions that revenue should be recovered only from those peasants who could afford to pay. The Administration did not propose to introduce Permanent Settlement in Gujarat.

7. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi undertook fast unto death in 1932, mainly because Ramsay MacDonald announced the Communal Award.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Rowlatt Act had been hurriedly passed and it gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Lahore Session of the Indian National Congress (1929) is very important in history, because Congress passed a resolution demanding complete independence.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Government of India Act of 1919 clearly defined the jurisdiction of the Central and Provincial Governments.

11. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Montague-Chelmsford Proposals were related to constitutional reforms.

12. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Gandhi-Irwin Pact included the following provisions: invitation to Congress to participate in the Round Table Conference, withdrawal of ordinances promulgated in connection with the Civil Disobedience Movement and release of only those prisoners who were not charged with violence.

13. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: A very significant aspect of the Champaran Satyagraha was to joining of peasant unrest to India's National Movement.

14. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Trade Disputes Act of 1929 provided a system of tribunals and a ban on strikes. The main object of the Trade Disputes Act of 1929 was to lay down the procedures for the establishment of Courts of Inquiry and Boards of Conciliation.

The Trade Disputes Act of 1929 also prohibited strikes or lock-outs without notice in public utility services.

15. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Gandhi-Irwin Pact: Indian National Congress (INC) agreed to participate in the Second Round Table Conference. INC promised to stop the civil disobedience movement. The government on the other hand agreed for:

- Withdrawal of all ordinances that curb Congress activities.
- Return of all prosecutions except for violent crimes.
- The release of those arrested for participating in the Civil Disobedience Movement.
- Removal of the salt tax.

HISTORY CLASS-X

3 THE MAKING OF A GLOBAL WORLD

The Pre-modern World

- Globalization is a term that has been used to describe an economic system that has arisen in the last 50 years or so. However, the history of trade, migration, people looking for job, capital movement and other factors have all contributed to the creation of the global globe.
- Travellers, traders, priests and pilgrims have travelled huge distances for information, opportunity and spiritual fulfilment, as well as to avoid persecution since ancient times. The Indus valley civilisations and modern-day West Asia were linked by active coastal trade as early as 3000 BCE.

Silk Routes Link the World

- The silk routes are a good example of vibrant pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world. The name 'silk routes' points to the importance of West-bound Chinese silk cargoes along this route.
- Historians have discovered several silk routes, both overland and by water, that connect enormous parts of Asia and connect Asia with Europe and northern Africa. Precious metals — gold and silver – moved from Europe to Asia in exchange for textiles and species from India and Southeast Asia.
- Trade and cultural exchange always went hand in hand. Early Christian missionaries almost certainly travelled this route to Asia, as did early Muslim preachers a few centuries later.

Food Travels: Spaghetti and Potato

- Food offers many examples of long-distance cultural exchange. Traders and travellers introduced new crops to the lands they travelled.
- New crops were introduced by traders and travellers. Ready foodstuff such as noodles travelled west from China to become spaghetti.
- Around five centuries ago, our forefathers were unfamiliar with common foods such as potatoes, soya, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chilies, sweet potatoes and so on. These foods were only introduced in Europe and Asia after Christopher Columbus accidentally discovered the vast continent.
- Many of the foods we eat now originated with America's first occupants, the American Indians. Here, America refers North America, South America and Caribbean.

Conquest, Disease and Trade

- For ages, the Indian Ocean has been a hive of activities, with products, people, knowledge, customs and other items crisscrossing its waters. The arrival of Europeans aided in the redirection of these movements to Europe.
- The enormous lands and bountiful fruits and minerals of America began to affect trade and people's lives all across the world. By the mid-sixteenth century, the Portuguese and Spanish invasion and colonisation of America had begun in earnest.
- Europeans' most powerful weapon was not a conventional military weapon, but germs such as those of smallpox that they carried on their person. It proved to be a deadly killer. Until the nineteenth century, poverty and hunger were common in Europe. Until well into the eighteenth century, China and India were among the world's richest countries.
- However, from the fifteenth century, China is said to have restricted overseas contacts and retreated into isolation. Europe now emerged as the centre of world trade.

The Nineteenth Century (1815-1914)

- Economic, political, social, cultural and technological elements combined in complicated ways in the nineteenth century to restructure societies and reshape external connections. Economists identified three flows or movements.
  1. The first is the flow of trade referred largely to trade in goods (e.g., cloth or wheat).
  2. The second is the flow of labour – the migration of people in search of employment.
  3. The third is the movement of capital for short-term or long-term investments over long distances.
- All three flows were closely interwoven and affected peoples' lives more deeply now than ever before.

A World Economy Takes Shape

- In the nineteenth-century self-sufficiency in food meant lower living standards and social conflict in Britain. It happened because of population growth from the late eighteenth century. Corn laws were imposed which means restriction in the import of corn.
- The British agriculture was unable to compete with imports and vast areas of land were left uncultivated. So, thousands of men and women flocked to the cities or migrated overseas.
- In Britain, food prices fell and in the mid-nineteenth century, industrial growth led to higher incomes and more food imports. In order to fulfil British demand, in Eastern Europe, Russia, America and Australia, lands were cleared to expand food production.
- In order to manage linking of railways to agricultural fields, creating infrastructure and building homes for people required capital and labour. London helped

in terms of finance and demand of labour led more emigration from Europe to America and Australia in the nineteenth century.

- By 1890, a global agricultural economy had emerged, adjusting to complex shifts in labour mobility, capital flows, ecosystems and technology. The British Indian Government created a network of irrigation canals in West Punjab to convert semi-desert wastelands into rich agricultural fields where wheat and cotton could be grown for export. Cotton planting was also increased globally to feed British textile manufacturers.

Role of Technology

- Technology played a critical part in the global economy's expansion. The invention of railways, steamships and the telegraph all helped to revolutionise the world in the nineteenth century.
- Technology progressed as a result of a variety of social, political and economic forces. For example, colonisation by various European nations boosted demand for enhanced transportation, such as quicker railways, larger ships and so on, in order to assist the speedy and inexpensive delivery of agricultural products to distant locations.
- For example, colonisation stimulated new investments and improvements in transport: faster railways, lighter wagons and larger ships helped move food more cheaply and quickly from faraway farms to final markets.
- Animals were also shipped live from America to Europe till the 1870s. Meat was considered an expensive luxury beyond the reach of the European poor. To break the earlier monotony of bread and potatoes, many could now add meat (and butter and eggs) to their diet.

Late nineteenth-century Colonialism

- In the late nineteenth century, trade developed and markets grew. However, it has a darker side, since the development of commerce and a stronger interaction with the global economy has resulted in the loss of freedoms and livelihoods in many regions of the world.
- In 1885, the major European countries convened in Berlin to finalise the division of Africa. Britain and France expanded their overseas possessions significantly. Belgium and Germany established themselves as new colonial powers. In the late 1890s, the United States likewise became a colonial power by assuming control of various Spanish provinces.

Rinderpest, or the Cattle Plague

- A fast-spreading epidemic of cow plague devastated people's livelihoods and the local economy in Africa in the 1890s (rinderpest arrived in Africa in late 1880s). Africa had a large amount of land and a small population. Europeans were drawn to Africa in the late eighteenth century because of its immense territory and mineral resources.
- Europeans arrived to Africa with the intention of establishing plantations and mines to produce crops and minerals for sale.
- However, there was an unanticipated issue: a shortage of labour was willing to work for pay. Inheritance regulations were amended and only one member of a family was entitled to inherit land under the new system. Rinderpest appeared in Africa in the late 1880s, brought by sick cattle imported from British Asia to feed Italian troops attacking Eritrea in East Africa. Cattle extinction ruined African livelihoods.

Indentured Labour Migration from India

- Indentured labour is a bonded labour under a contract to work for an employer for a specific amount of time, to pay off their passage to a new country or home.
- Indentured labour exemplifies the world's dual nature in the eighteenth century. Higher salaries for some and poverty for others, technological improvements in some sectors and new forms of coercion in others, all contribute to a world of quicker economic growth and more pain. Indentured labourers were engaged on a contract basis in India and the majority of them came from the present-day regions of eastern Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Central India and Tamil Nadu's dry districts.
- Indian indentured migrants, main destinations were the Caribbean Islands (mainly Trinidad, Guyana and Surinam), Mauritius and Fiji. Indentured workers were also recruited for tea plantations in Assam. Nineteenth-century indenture has been described as a 'new system of slavery'. In Trinidad, the annual Muharram procession was transformed into a riotous carnival called 'Hosay' in which workers of all races and religions joined.
- Similarly, Rastafarianism, a protest religion, is thought to reflect social and cultural ties with Indian migrants in the Caribbean. In the early 1900s, India's nationalist leaders began to criticise the indentured labour migration system, calling it harsh and cruel. In 1921, it was repealed.

Indian Entrepreneurs Abroad

- To raise food and other products for the global market, people require a lot of money. Shikaripuri shroffs and Nattukottai Chettiars were among the many groups of bankers and dealers who financed export agriculture in Central and Southeast Asia, either with their own money or borrowed money from European banks.

Indian Trade, Colonialism and the Global System

- India's cotton was exported to Europe. Imports of fabric were subjected to duties in the United Kingdom. As a result, quality Indian cotton imports began to fall. British manufacturers saturated the Indian market in the nineteenth century.
- India played a major role in the late-nineteenth-century world economy by assisting Britain in balancing its imbalances. The so-called 'home charges,' which comprised private remittances home by British officials and traders, interest payments on India's foreign debt and pensions for British officials in India, were aided by Britain's trade surplus in India.

The Inter-war Economy

- The First World War (1914-18) was fought in Europe, but its impact was felt around the world. During this period the world experienced widespread economic and political instability and another catastrophic war.

Wartime Transformations

- The Allies — Britain, France and Russia (eventually joined by the United States) – fought the Central Powers – Germany, Austria-Hungary and Ottoman Turkey – in the First World War. The conflict, which lasted more than four years, engaged the world's top industrial nations.

- It was regarded as the first modern industrial war, with enormous deployments of machine guns, tanks, aeroplanes, chemical weapons and other armaments. Industries were reformed to manufacture war-related commodities during the war.
- The United Kingdom borrowed significant sums of money from both US banks and the general population, changing the United States from a global debtor to a global creditor.

Post-War Recovery

- Economic recovery after WWI, Britain, the world's largest economy, has been mired in a long-running crisis. While Britain was distracted with the war, India and Japan expanded their industries.
- Following WWI, Britain found it impossible to reclaim its former supremacy in the Indian market and compete with Japan on a global scale. Britain was saddled with massive external obligations at the end of the war. Anxiety and uncertainty about work became ingrained in the postwar environment.

Rise of Mass Production and Consumption

- In the early 1920s, the US economy recovered more quickly and resumed its robust expansion. One of the most important elements of the late-nineteenth-century American economy is mass production.
- Henry Ford is a well-known mass-production pioneer and a vehicle maker who founded his factory in Detroit. The Ford T-Model was the world's first mass-produced automobile. Fordist industrial methods quickly swept across the United States and in the 1920s, they were widely imitated in Europe.
- Demand for refrigerators, washing machines and other appliances soared, fuelled by loans once more. In 1923, the United States restarted capital exports to the rest of the world, becoming the world's largest lender.

The Great Depression

- The period of The Great Depression began around 1929 and lasted till the mid-1930s, most parts of the world experienced catastrophic declines in production, employment, incomes and trade. The most affected areas were agricultural regions and communities.
- Depression was caused by a combination of circumstances. The first element is agricultural overproduction and the second is that several countries financed their investments with loans from the United States in the mid-1920s.
- The withdrawal of US loans has a variety of consequences for the rest of the world. Depression struck the United States as well. Thousands of banks went bankrupt and were forced to close, resulting in the collapse of the US banking system.

India and the Great Depression

- Indian trade is immediately affected by depression. The prices of agriculture fell sharply, but still the colonial government refused to reduce revenue demands.
- In those depression years, India became an exporter of precious metals, notably gold. Rural India was thus seething with unrest when Mahatma Gandhi launched the Civil Disobedience Movement at the height of the depression in 1931.

Rebuilding a World Economy: The Post-war Era

- The Second World War broke out two decades after the First World War ended. It was fought between the Allies (Britain, France, the Soviet Union and the US) and the Axis countries (primarily Nazi Germany, Japan and Italy).
- For six years, the battle raged on land, at sea and in the air. The war wreaked havoc on the economy and threw the country into chaos. Two major factors influenced post war reconstruction. The first is that the United States has become the world's main economic, political and military force. The Soviet Union's supremacy was the second.

Post-war Settlement and the Bretton Woods Institutions

- The interwar economic experience yielded two crucial insights. To begin with, mass production was impossible to continue without mass communication. The second lesson was about a country's economic ties to the rest of the globe.
- The International Monetary Fund (IMF) was founded at the Bretton Woods Conference to deal with the external surpluses and deficits of its member countries.
- The International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (often referred to as the World Bank) was established to assist with post war reconstruction. In 1947, the IMF and the World Bank began their financial operations.

The Early Post-war Years

- An era of unprecedented growth of trade and incomes was inaugurated by the Bretton Woods for the Western industrial nations and Japan. During this decade, technology and enterprise were spread worldwide.

Decolonisation and Independence

- Large swaths of the globe remained under European colonial power after World War II ended. The International Monetary Fund and the World Bank were created to satisfy the financial demands of industrialised countries.
- Since the late 1950s, the IMF and the World Bank have focused more on developing countries. The rapid expansion that Western economies experienced in the 1950s and 1960s did not benefit most developing countries.
- They formed the Group of 77 (or G-77) and called for a new worldwide economic system (NIEO). NIEO meant a system that would provide them true control over their natural resources, more development aid, fairer raw material prices and better access to developed-country markets for their produced goods.

End of Bretton Woods and the Beginning of 'Globalisation'

- Since the 1960s, mounting costs of the US's abroad involvements have harmed the country's financial and competitive strength. The international financial system transformed in the mid-1970s and the industrial world was also devastated by unemployment. MNCs began shifting production to Asia's low-wage countries.
- China has been a popular investment destination for multinational corporations (MNCs). The world's economic geography has changed dramatically in the recent two decades, as countries such as India, China and Brazil have experienced significant economic growth.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. The reduction of cotton textile exports from India to the United Kingdom in the early nineteenth century was due to the following factor:
   (a) Imposition of a levy on cotton imports into the United Kingdom.
   (b) The cotton textile was of poor quality.
   (c) In India, there is a scarcity of raw cotton.
   (d) Cotton growers have found new markets.
2. India did not suffer a significant loss when cotton textile exports to the United Kingdom fell. Why?
   (a) Because there were enough purchasers for Indian textiles in India's domestic market.
   (b) Because Indian cotton textiles were welcomed in South-east Asian countries.
   (c) Because the demand for Indian cotton textiles in the United States has risen.
   (d) India's textile industry now has a market in China.
3. The spreading disease of cattle plague is known as:
   (a) Bubonic Plague **(b)** Rinderpest
   (c) Chicken Pox **(d)** Cattle Fever
4. The direct effect of the Great Depression on Indian trade was which of the following?
   (a) Farmers and peasants were harmed.
   (b) Between 1928 and 1934, India's exports and imports practically halved.
   (c) The indebtedness of peasants grew.
   (d) Caused massive unrest in India's rural areas.
5. After Christopher Columbus found America, what foods were introduced to Europe and Asia?
   (a) Sweet potatoes, soybeans, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chillies
   (b) Meats
   (c) Rice and wheat
   (d) None of these
6. The silk routes linked Asia with
   (a) Europe **(b)** Africa
   (c) Both (a) and (b) **(d)** None of these
7. Tamil migrants went to
   (a) Ceylon and Surinam **(b)** Mauritius and Fiji
   (c) Ceylon and Suriname **(d)** None of these
8. Why were the Europeans attracted to Africa?
   (a) For recruitment of labour
   (b) By the opportunities for investment
   (c) For its vast land resources and mineral wealth
   (d) None of these
9. What was the primary cause of the world's shrinkage?
   (a) European sailors discovered a sea passage
   (b) Production increased for the European market
   (c) Europe became the global commercial hub
   (d) None of these
10. What exactly do you imply when you say "international monetary system"?
    (a) It is the money withdrawal system.
    (c) It is a money-depositing system.
    (c) It's the system that connects national currencies to the monetary system.
    (d) None of these

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the given statement/s is/are correct about mass production in USA in early 20th century?
   1. The move towards mass production had begun in the late nineteenth century, but in the 1920s it became a characteristic feature of industrial production.
   2. Henry Ford was pioneer of mass production.
   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) 2 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
2. With the reference of "Great Depression of 1929-1930", which of the following statement is incorrect?
   (a) During this period most parts of the world experienced catastrophic declines in production, employment, incomes and trade.
   (b) Agricultural regions and communities were affected least.
   (c) The Loan from USA resulted depression in the economies of other European countries.
   (d) In Europe it led to the failure of some major banks and the collapse of currencies such as the British pound sterling.
3. What do you mean by tariff?
   (a) Tax imposed on a country's exports
   (b) Tax imposed on a country's imports
   (c) Tax imposed on the income of foreign residents
   (d) Tax imposed in all goods and services
4. With reference to the effects of Great depression on India, consider the following statements:
   1. The depression had no immediately affect on Indian trade.
   2. As international prices crashed, prices in India also plunged.
   3. Peasants and farmers suffered more than urban dwellers.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
5. What did "Bretton Woods" bring to mind for you?
   (a) A postwar international economic system
   (b) A United Nations Monetary and Financial Conference
   (c) A peace agreement
   (d) Both (a) and (b) are true.

6. What critical influences affected post-war reconstruction?
   (a) The United States became the dominating country in the Western World
   (b) The fall of capitalism
   (c) The ascension of the Soviet Union as a World Power
   (d) Both (a) and (c)
7. From ancient times, travellers travel long distances in search of
   (a) Trade **(b)** Knowledge
   (c) Peace **(d)** New places
8. What advantages did humans gain through meat trade?
   (a) Improved living circumstances at home and support for imperialism overseas were aided by technology.
   (b) Frozen meat delivered to Europe lowered the cost of shipping meat, making it more accessible to the poor.
   (c) Lower the risk of loss if the animal dies while being transported.
   (d) All of the above
9. In ancient times, what was the product of India's robust coastal trade?
   (a) Goods, money, skills and ideas from other countries.
   (c) Goods only
   (c) Only money
   (d) None of the above
10. Consider the following statements:
    1. Rinderpest arrived in Africa in the late 1880s.
    2. It was carried by infected cattle imported from British Asia.
    3. It reached the Cape (Africa's southernmost tip) ten years later.
    Which of the statements given above are correct?
    (a) 1 and 2 only
    (b) 2 and 3 only
    (c) All of these
    (d) None of the given option is correct
11. Consider the following factors regarding the Great Depression:
    1. Agricultural overproduction
    2. Loan from the USA
    3. Increasing Agricultural prices
    Select the correct answer using the code given below:
    (a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 1 only
    (c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The export of Indian textiles began to drop in the early nineteenth century due to the following factors:

- The United Kingdom imposed import tariffs on cotton textiles, resulting in a decrease in the export market.
- British goods exports to India rose. The commodities from Manchester swamped Indian markets.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: India did not suffer a significant loss when cotton textile exports to the United Kingdom fell because the demand for Indian cotton textiles in the United States has risen.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: In Africa, in the 1890s, a fast-spreading disease of cattle plague or rinderpest had a terrifying impact on people's livelihoods and the local economy.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: India's export sand imports nearly halved between 1928 and 1934. As international prices crashed, prices in India also plunged. Between 1928 and 1934, wheat prices in India fell by 50 per cent. Peasants and farmers suffered more than urban dwellers. Though, agricultural prices fell sharply, the colonial government refused to reduce revenue demands. Peasants produced for the world market were the worst hit.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Until roughly five centuries ago, our forefathers had never heard of potatoes, soya, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chilies, sweet potatoes and other crops. After Christopher Columbus accidentally discovered the vast continent that would later become known as the Americas, these foods were only introduced to Europe and Asia.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The silk routes are a good example of vibrant pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world. Silk routes linked Asia with Europe and northern Africa.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The main destinations of Indian indentured migrants were the Caribbean islands (mainly Trinidad, Guyana and Surinam), Mauritius and Fiji. Tamil migrants went to Ceylon and Malaya.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In the late nineteenth century, Europeans were attracted to Africa due to its vast resources of land and minerals. Europeans came to Africa hoping to establish plantations and mines to produce crops and minerals for export to Europe.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: European sailors found a sea route to Asia and also crossed the Atlantic and discovered America, it became easier to reach any part of the world.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The international monetary system binds national currencies and monetary systems together. National currencies, such as the Indian rupee, were linked to the dollar at a fixed exchange rate under this arrangement.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: One important feature of the US economy of the 1920s was mass production. The move towards mass production had begun in the late nineteenth century, but in the 1920s it became a characteristic feature of industrial production in the US. A well-known pioneer of mass production was the car manufacturer Henry Ford. He adapted the assembly line of a Chicago slaughterhouse to his new car plant in Detroit. He realised that the 'assembly line' method would allow a faster and cheaper way of producing vehicles.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Great Depression began around 1929 and lasted till the mid-1930s. During this period most parts of the world experienced catastrophic declines in production, employment, incomes and trade. The exact timing and impact of the depression varied across countries. But in general, agricultural regions and communities were the worst affected. The depression was caused by a combination of several factors.

First: agricultural overproduction remained a problem. This was made worse by falling agricultural prices.

Second: in the mid-1920s, many countries financed their investments through loans from the US. The withdrawal of US loans affected much of the rest of the world, though in different ways. In Europe, it led to the failure of some major banks and the collapse of currencies.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: A tax applied at the point of entry, such as a border or an airport, on a country's imports from the rest of the world.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Colonial India had become an exporter of agricultural goods and importer of manufacturers. The depression immediately affected Indian trade. India's exports and imports nearly halved between 1928 and 1934. As international prices crashed, prices in India also plunged. Between 1928 and 1934, wheat prices in India fell by 50 per cent. Peasants and farmers suffered more than urban dwellers.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Bretton Woods' is associated with a post-war international system to preserve economic stability and a United Nations Monetary and Financial Conference held in July 1944, in Bretton Woods, New Hampshire.

6. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Two major forces impacted post-war reconstruction: the United States emerged as the leading economic, political and military power in the West, while the Soviet Union developed as a global power.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: From ancient times, travellers, traders, priests and pilgrims travelled vast distances for knowledge, opportunity and spiritual fulfilment, or to escape persecution. They carried goods, money, values, skills, ideas, inventions and even germs and diseases.

8. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Animals were shipped alive and subsequently slaughtered until the 1870s. However, living animals took up a lot of space on the ship. Many people died, became ill, or lost weight as a result of their experiences. Meat became an expensive luxury beyond the reach of the poor in Europe, but refrigerated ships allowed perishable items to be transported over large distances.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Indians traded commodities, money, skills and ideas across borders as early as 3000 BC, when an active maritime trade linked the Indus Valley Civilisation with modern-day West Asia.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Rinderpest arrived in Africa in the late 1880s. It was carried by infected cattle imported from British Asia to feed the Italian soldiers invading Eritrea in East Africa. Entering Africa in the east, rinderpest moved west 'like forest fire', reaching Africa's Atlantic coast in 1892. It reached the Cape (Africa's southernmost tip) five years later. Along the way rinderpest killed 90 per cent of the cattle.

11. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The period of The Great Depression began around 1929 and lasted till the mid-1930s. The most parts of the world experienced catastrophic declines in production, employment, incomes and trade. The most affected areas were agricultural regions and communities. This was made worse by falling agricultural prices.

Depression was caused by a combination of circumstances. The first element is agricultural overproduction and the second is that several countries financed their investments with loans from the United States in the mid-1920s.

HISTORY CLASS-X

4 THE AGE OF INDUSTRIALISATION

Introduction

- In this chapter, we will look at the history by focusing first on Britain, the first industrial nation and then on India, where the pattern of industrial change was conditioned by colonial rule.

Before the Industrial Revolution

- Proto-industrialisation (proto means the first or early form of something) refers to the period before factories were established in England and Europe. There was industrial manufacturing on a vast scale for an international market that was not dependent on factories.
- Merchants from Europe flocked to the countryside in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, supplying money to peasants and artisans and asking them to produce for an international market.
- Because kings allowed separate guilds the rights to create and sell in specific products, merchants were limited in their ability to extend their output inside towns.
- Poor peasants and artisans in the countryside happily agreed so that they could stay in the countryside and produce in their little plots. As a result, the Proto-industrial system was part of a network of merchant-controlled commercial exchanges.
- A close relationship developed, within this system, between the town and the countryside. Merchants were based in towns while the work was done mostly in the countryside (where poor peasants and artisans lived).
- In England, a merchant clothier purchased wool from a wool stapler and carried it to spinners; the yarn was taken in subsequent stages of production to weavers, fullers and then to dyers. The finishing was done in London before exporting it in the international market. London came to be known as a finishing centre.

The Coming Up of the Factory

- The earliest factories in England came up by the 1730s. But it was only in the late eighteenth-century that the number of factories multiplied.
- Cotton was the first symbol of the new era and its production boomed in the late nineteenth-century. Richard Arkwright created the cotton mill where costly machines were set up and all the processes were brought together under one roof and management.
- A series of inventions in the eighteenth century increased the efficacy of each step of the production process (carding, twisting and spinning and rolling). They enhanced the output per worker, enabling each worker to produce more and they made possible the production of stronger threads and yarn.

The Pace of Industrial Change

- First, cotton and metals were the most dynamic sectors in Britain. Cotton was the most important industry in the early stages of industrialization, up until the 1840s, when it was overtaken by the iron and steel industry.
- Second, it was difficult for emerging sectors to supplant old industries.
- Third, while steam-powered cotton and metal industries did not dictate the pace of development in the 'old' industries, they did not remain completely stationary either.
- Fourth, technological advancements were gradual.
- James Watt improved the steam engine produced by Newcomen and patented the new engine in 1781. His industrialist friend, Mathew Boulton, manufactured the new model. Steam engines were not used in any of the other industries until much later in the century.

Hand Labour and Steam Power

- In Victorian Britain there was no shortage of human labour. Poor peasants and vagrants moved to the cities in large numbers in search of jobs, waiting for work. As you will know, when there is plenty of labour, wages are low. So, industrialists had no problem of labour shortage or high wage costs. They did not want to introduce machines that got rid of human labour and required large capital investment.
- Instead of machines industrialists required large capital investment. The demand for labour was seasonal in many industries. In all such industries where production fluctuated with the season, industrialists usually preferred hand labour, employing workers for the season.
- The industrialists in countries with labour shortage, were keen on using mechanical power so that the need for human labour can be minimised. This was the case in nineteenth-century America. Britain, however, had no problem hiring human hands.

Life of the Workers

- The oversupply of labour in the market had an impact on the lives of the employees. Workers in a workplace should have established networks of friendship and familial links in order to secure a job. It was difficult for workers to obtain work until the mid-nineteenth century. Wages were raised in the early nineteenth-century.
- Workers were averse to new technologies because they were afraid of losing their jobs. In the woollen sector, Spinning Jenny was introduced. Building activity in the cities increased after the 1840s, resulting

in more job prospects. Roads were enlarged, new railway stations were constructed, railway lines were extended, tunnels were built, drainage and sewer systems were installed and rivers were embanked.

Industrialisation in the Colonies

- Let us now move to India to see how a colony industrialises. Once again, we will look not only at factory industries but also at the non-mechanised sector (primarily textile sector).

The Age of Indian Textiles

- Before the period of machine industries, silk and cotton commodities dominated the worldwide textile market in India. In this network of export trade, a variety of Indian merchants and bankers were involved — funding production, transporting commodities and supplying exporters. This network, which was dominated by Indian merchants, was crumbling by the 1750s.
- The European companies gradually came into power – first securing a variety of concessions from local courts, then the monopoly rights to trade. The shift from the old ports to the new ones was an indicator of the growth of Colonial Power. European companies controlled trade through the new ports and were carried in European ships. Many old trading houses collapsed and those who wanted to survive had to operate within a network shaped by European trading companies.

What Happened to Weavers?

- The consolidation of the East India Company did not originally result in a decrease in textile exports from India after the 1760s. The East India Company had struggled to maintain consistent supply of goods for export before acquiring political authority in Bengal and Carnatic in the 1760s and 1770s.
- After gaining political power, the East India Company devised a management and control structure that would limit competitors, control costs and ensure consistent supplies of cotton and silk commodities. It was created by following a set of instructions:
  1. By eliminating existing traders and brokers connected with the cloth trade and establishing more direct control over the weaver.
  2. By preventing Company weavers from dealing with other buyers.
- Once an order was placed, the weavers received a loan to purchase the raw ingredients. Weavers who took out loans were required to provide the gomastha with the fabric they produced. Weaving needed the participation of the entire family, with children and women participating at various stages. Previously, supply merchants and weavers had a tight relationship, but the new gomasthas were strangers to the hamlet with no social ties.
- In many places in Carnatic and Bengal, weavers set up looms in other villages where they had some family relations. In other places, weavers along with the village traders revolted, opposing the Company and its officials. Over time many weavers began refusing loans, closing down their workshops and taking to agricultural labour. By the turn of the nineteenth-century, cotton weavers faced a new set of problems.

Manchester Comes to India

- Henry Patullo stated in 1772 that the demand for Indian textiles would never decrease because no other country produced goods of comparable quality. Unfortunately, India's textile exports began to diminish at the turn of the nineteenth century. Exports of British cotton textiles skyrocketed in the early nineteenth century. At the end of the eighteenth century, import of cotton piece-goods was restricted into India. In India cotton weavers faced two problems:
  1. Their export market collapsed
  2. Local market shrank and glutted with Manchester imports.
- Weavers confronted a new dilemma in the 1860s. They were unable to obtain a sufficient quantity of high-quality raw cotton. Raw cotton shipments from India also surged, causing the price to rise. Other artisans confronted a new challenge by the end of the nineteenth century. India's factories started producing machine parts, flooding the market.

Factories Come Up

- In 1854, the first cotton mill in Bombay set up and went into production two years later. By 1862, four more mills were set up and around the same time jute mills came up in Bengal.
- The first jute mill was set up in 1855 and another one after seven years in 1862. In the 1860s, in north India, the Elgin Mill was started in Kanpur and a year later the first cotton mill of Ahmedabad was set up. By 1874, the first spinning and weaving mill of Madras began production.

The Early Entrepreneurs

- The history of commerce dates back to the late eighteenth-century, when the British in India began selling opium to China and receiving tea from China. Some of the businesses involved in these trades dreamed of establishing industrial enterprises in India. Dwarkanath Tagore built his money in the China trade in Bengal.
- Dinshaw Petit and Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata, both Parsis, developed massive industrial empires in Bombay. In 1917, a Marwari businessman named Seth Hukumchand established the first Indian jute factory in Calcutta. Industry investment opportunities arose and several of them established factories.
- However, because of colonial dominance, Indians were prohibited from trading in manufactured goods with Europe and were forced to export largely raw materials and food grains, such as raw cotton, opium, wheat and indigo, which the British demanded.
- Bird Heiglers & Co. Andrew Yule and Jardine Skinner & Co. are three of the largest European Managing Agencies, who mobilised funds, established joint-stock firms and managed them.

Where Did the Workers Come From?

- As the factories grew in size, so did the demand for workers. The majority of the labourers came from the surrounding areas in quest of work. In 1911, over half of the workers in the Bombay cotton industries came from the neighbouring district of Ratnagiri, while most textile workers in Kanpur mills came from the region's villages.

- Workers travelled large distances in the hopes of finding work in the mills as word of employment spread. Getting a job was tough even after the demand for workers grew.
- The number of people looking for work was always greater than the number of jobs available. To recruit new labour, most of the industrialists hired a jobber, who he recruited from his town. Jobbers were assisted in settling down by industrialists.

The Peculiarities of Industrial Growth

- Certain items, like as tea and coffee, piqued the interest of European Managing Agencies. They started tea and coffee farms as well as mining, indigo and jute businesses. These products are solely utilised for export. Indian entrepreneurs began establishing businesses in the late 1800s. Handloom weavers in India used the yarn produced in Indian spinning mills and it was also sold to China.
- A series of changes influenced the pattern of industrialisation. The nationalists rejected foreign textiles once the swadeshi movement gained traction. Since 1906, when Chinese and Japanese mills saturated the Chinese market, Indian yarn exports to China have decreased. Industrial progress remained modest until the end of World War I.
- The war radically altered the situation and Indian mills took full advantage of it. They had a large market for war supplies such as jute bags, army uniform cloth, tents, leather boots, horse and mule saddles and a variety of other products. Manchester's industrial production grew rapidly over the years, although it was never able to reclaim its former position in the Indian market after the war.

Small-scale Industries Predominate

- Most of the large industries were located in Bengal and Bombay. The rest of the country was still dominated by small-scale enterprises. In registered factories, just a small percentage of the entire industrial labour force was employed. The rest of them worked in modest workshops or in their homes.
- In the twentieth-century, the production of handicrafts increased. Handloom fabric production grew in the same century. It occurred as a result of technological advancements, as they began to adopt new technologies that allowed them to boost output without increasing costs significantly.
- Certain weavers were in a better position than others to endure the mill industries' competition. Some weavers woven coarse cloth, while others woven finer fabrics. Weavers and other artisans who increased production throughout the twentieth century did not always profit.
- Everyone worked in lengthy shifts, including women and children. But they weren't just relics of a bygone era in the industrial age. Their works and lives were intertwined with the industrialisation process.

Market for Goods

- When new items were being developed, marketing aided consumers in persuading them that they were desirable and required. They attempted to mould people's thoughts and create new needs.
- Advertisements abound in today's world, appearing in newspapers, magazines, hoardings, street walls and television screens. Advertisements have played a role in extending product markets and establishing new consumer culture since the dawn of the industrial age.
- The fabric bundles were labelled by Manchester businessmen to indicate their quality. When purchasers read the words 'MADE IN MANCHESTER' written in bold on the label, they were expected to be confident in their decision to purchase the fabric.
- Some of the labels were nicely-created and included graphics. These labels featured images of Indian gods and goddesses. Manufacturers began printing calendars to popularise their products. Figures of gods were employed to promote new items in these calendars. Later on, advertisements became a vehicle for the swadeshi nationalist agenda.
- The age of industries has meant major technological changes, the growth of factories and the making of a new industrial labour force. Hand technology and small-scale production remained an important part of the industrial landscape.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. The person who brought people from village, ensured them jobs, helped them settle in cities and provided them money in times of need was known as:
(a) Stapler **(b)** Fuller
(c) Gomastha **(d)** Jobber

2. Who was appointed as a paid servant to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth?
(a) Gomastha **(b)** Sepoy
(c) Stapler **(d)** Fuller

3. Why did Manchester's exports to India drop after World War I?
(a) People were preoccupied with the conflict.
(b) Factories were shut down due to a security issue.
(c) Factories and mills were churning out goods to meet the army's demands.
(d) The government-imposed restrictions on export trade.

4. Why did the gomastha and the weavers have so many disagreements?
(a) The weavers despised outsiders.
(b) The gomastha compelled weavers to sell their wares at a set price.
(c) The Gomasthas were strangers with no long-term social ties to the village.
(d) None of these

5. Which of the following was a management agency in Europe?
(a) Tata Iron and Steel Company

(b) Andrew Yule
(c) Elgin Mill
(d) Birla Industries

6. Why did British manufacturers make calendars for advertisements in the late nineteenth century?
(a) Calendars were popular among Indians in their homes.
(b) Unlike newspapers and magazines, calendars were utilised by people who were illiterate in reading and writing.
(c) Using calendars to promote products was less expensive.
(d) It used to beautify the space.

7. Where was the first cotton mill established?
(a) Lucknow **(b)** Ahmedabad
(c) Delhi **(d)** None of these

8. How did urban merchants come to have a monopoly on trade?
(a) The weavers and artisans had been won over by the old merchants.
(b) The rulers had been bribed by prominent guild members.
(c) The monarchs awarded certain guilds monopoly rights and the ability to trade specific products.
(d) The guilds were so powerful that they prohibited new merchants from entering the market.

9. What caused the 'Spinning Jenny' to be despised by her co-workers?
(a) The general public had not yet accepted machine-made goods.
(b) Machines appeared to some people as 'monsters.'
(c) Handcrafted items remained popular.
(d) It had reduced the labour demand.

10. Which of the following is not a reason why 19th-century European entrepreneurs preferred hand labour over machines?
(a) Because there was a surplus of labour, wages were low.
(b) For a mass market, hand labour produced homogenous and standardised goods.
(c) Machines necessitated a significant capital outlay.
(d) Hand labour was favoured by industrialists in industries where demand was seasonal.

11. Coarser cotton was produced in many countries, but finer varieties came from:
(a) India **(b)** Java & Sumatra
(c) China **(d)** Surinam

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following statement/s was/were associated with industrialisation in England?
1. The most dynamic industries in Britain were clearly cotton and metals.
2. Iron was the leading sector in the first phase of industrialisation up to the 1840s.

Choose the correct option:
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 only
(c) 1 only **(d)** None of these

2. During World War I, which war items were made in India for supply to Britain?
(a) Gunpowder, cannons and other weapons of war.
(b) Jute bags, army uniform fabric, tents and leather boots
(c) Medicines for the soldiers who have been injured.
(d) Hammers, axes and other tools for construction.

3. Consider the following pairs:

	Cotton mill	Year of establishment
1.	Bombay cotton mill	1854
2.	Kanpur cotton mill	1865
3.	Madras cotton mill	1874

Which of the above pairs is/are correctly matched?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 and 3
(c) 1 only **(d)** 1 and 3 Only

4. How did the East India Company keep Indian weavers from doing business with other firms?
(a) They demanded greater pricing for their goods.
(b) Purchased them as slaves.
(c) Provided them with financing for their production.
(d) Increased the tariff to deter them from dealing with other foreigners.

5. With reference to Indian industrialist of late nineteenth century, which of the given statement/s is/are incorrect?
1. They avoided competing with Manchester goods in the Indian market.
2. The early cotton mills in India produced coarse cotton yarn (thread) rather than fabric.
3. The yarn produced in Indian spinning mills was used by handloom weavers in India or exported to England.

Choose the correct option:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 only **(d)** 3 only

6. Which of the given statement is incorrect?
(a) Dwarkanath Tagore established his company in Bengal.
(b) In Bombay, Parsis like Dinshaw Petit and Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata who built huge industrial empires in India.
(c) Seth Hukumchand, a Marwari businessman who set up the first Indian jute mill in Madras in 1917.
(d) All of the above.

7. Bird Heiglers & Co. Andrew Yule and Jardine Skinner & Co. were related to:
(a) Cotton mills of Manchester city
(b) Jute Industry of Bengal.

(c) Iron manufacturing industries in India in early 19th century.
(d) European Managing Agencies that controlled a large sector of Indian industries.

8. With the reference of early industrialisation in England, which of following is/are correct statement?
1. The new industries easily displaced traditional industries.
2. Textiles were largely based on Industrial production.
3. The pace of change in the 'traditional' industries was set by steam-powered cotton or metal industries.

Choose among the given options:
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 only
(d) None of them is correct

9. Indian industrial growth increased after First World War because:
(a) British opened new factories in various parts of India.
(b) New technological changes helped Indian industries to grow.
(c) Indian mills now had a vast home market to supply to.
(d) None of these

10. Why couldn't merchants increase production within cities?
(a) The powerful guilds forbade them from doing so.
(b) New merchants lacked the necessary skills to continue production and trade.
(c) New merchants lacked sufficient capital.
(d) In towns, skilled weavers and artisans were few.

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Industrialists usually employed a jobber to get new recruits. Very often the jobber was an old and trusted worker. He got people from his village, ensured them jobs, helped them settle in the city and provided them money in times of crisis. The jobber therefore became a person with some authority and power. He began demanding money and gifts for his favour and controlling the lives of workers.

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The East India Company appointed a paid servant called the gomastha to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth.

3. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The war created a dramatically new situation. The British mills were busy with war production to meet the needs of the army, Manchester imports into India declined. Suddenly, Indian mills had a vast home market to supply. As the war prolonged, Indian factories were called upon to supply war needs: jute bags, cloth for army uniforms, tents and leather boots, horse and mule saddles and a host of other items.

4. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: In many weaving villages there were reports of clashes between weavers and gomasthas. Earlier supply merchants had very often lived within the weaving villages and had a close relationship with the weavers, looking after their needs and helping them in times of crisis. The new gomasthas were outsiders, with no long-term social link with the village. They acted arrogantly, marched into villages with sepoys and peons and punished weavers for delays in supply – often beating and flogging them.

5. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Andrew Yule was a management agency in Europe.

6. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: British manufacturers made calendars for advertisements in the late nineteenth century because, unlike newspapers and magazines, calendars were utilised by people who were illiterate in reading and writing.

7. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The first cotton mill in Bombay came up in 1854 and it went into production two years later. By 1862 four mills were at work; around the same time jute mills came up in Bengal, the first being set up in 1855 and another one seven years later, in 1862. In north India, the Elgin Mill was started in Kanpur in the 1860s and a year later the first cotton mill of Ahmedabad was set up. By 1874, the first spinning and weaving mill of Madras began production.

8. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Urban merchants come to have a monopoly on trade because the monarchs awarded certain guilds monopoly rights and the ability to trade specific products.

9. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The fear of unemployment made workers hostile to the introduction of new technology. When the Spinning Jenny was introduced in the woollen industry, women who survived on hand spinning began attacking the new machines. This conflict over the introduction of the jenny continued for a long time.

10. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: European entrepreneurs preferred hand labour over machines because, for a mass

market, hand labour produced homogenous and standardised goods.

11. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Before the age of machine industries, silk and cotton goods from India dominated the international market in textiles. Coarser kinds of cotton were produced in many countries, but the finer varieties often came from China.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The most dynamic industries in Britain were clearly cotton and metals. Growing at a rapid pace, cotton was the leading sector in the first phase of industrialisation up to the 1840s. After that, the iron and steel industry led the way. With the expansion of railways, in England from the 1840s and in the colonies from the 1860s, the demand for iron and steel increased rapidly.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: During World War I, India supplied Jute bags, army uniform fabric, tents and leather boots to Britain.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The first cotton mill in Bombay came up in 1854 and it went into production two years later. The Elgin Mill was started in Kanpur in the 1860s. The first spinning and weaving mill of Madras began production by 1874.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: East India Company keeps Indian weavers from doing business with other firms by providing them a loan for their production.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: When Indian businessmen began setting up industries in the late nineteenth-century, they avoided competing with Manchester goods in the Indian market. Since the yarn was not an important part of British imports into India, the early cotton mills in India produced coarse cotton yarn (thread) rather than fabric.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In Bengal, Dwarkanath Tagore made his fortune in the China trade before he turned to industrial investment, setting up six joint-stock companies in the 1830s and 1840s. Tagore's enterprises sank along with those of others in the wider business crises of the 1840s, but later in the nineteenth century many of the China traders became successful industrialists. In Bombay, Parsis like Dinshaw Petit and Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata, who built huge industrial empires in India, accumulated their initial wealth partly from exports to China and partly from raw cotton shipments to England. Seth Hukumchand, a Marwari businessman who set up the first Indian jute mill in Calcutta in 1917, also traded with China.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Till the First World War, European Managing Agencies in fact controlled a large sector of Indian industries. Three of the biggest ones were Bird Heiglers & Co. andrew Yule and Jardine Skinner & Co. These Agencies mobilised capital, set up joint-stock companies and managed them. In most instances Indian financiers provided the capital while the European Agencies made all investment and business decisions.

8. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The new industries could not easily displace traditional industries. Even at the end of the nineteenth century, less than 20 per cent of the total workforce was employed in technologically advanced industrial sectors. Textile was a dynamic sector, but a large portion of the output was produced not within factories, but outside, within the domestic unit. The pace of change in the 'traditional' industries was not set by steam-powered cotton or metal industries, but they did not remain entirely stagnant either. Seemingly ordinary and small innovations were the basis of growth in many non-mechanised sectors such as food processing, building, pottery, glasswork, tanning, furniture making and production of implements.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The first World War created a dramatically new situation. With British mills busy with war production to meet the needs of the army, Manchester imports into India declined. Suddenly, Indian mills had a vast home market to supply. After the war, Manchester could never recapture its old position in the Indian market. Local industrialists gradually consolidated their position, substituting foreign manufactures and capturing the home market.

10. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Merchants couldn't increase production within cities because the powerful guilds forbade them from doing so.

HISTORY CLASS-X

5 PRINT CULTURE AND THE MODERN WORLD

Introduction

- In this chapter we will look at the development of print, from its beginnings in East Asia to its expansion in Europe and in India. We will understand the impact of the spread of technology and consider how social lives and cultures changed with the coming of print.

The First Printed Books

- The earliest kind of print technology was developed in China, Japan and Korea. This was a system of hand printing. From AD 594 onwards, books in China were printed by rubbing paper – also invented there – against the inked surface of woodblocks.
- China began holding civil service examinations for its bureaucrats and a large number of textbooks were printed. Scholar-officials were no longer the only ones who could read. The print was used by merchants to collect trade information.
- Reading became a popular pastime and wealthy women began to publish their own poetry and plays. This new reading culture sparked the development of new technology. Western printing processes and mechanical presses were imported in the late 1800s.

Print in Japan

- Buddhist missionaries from China introduced the hand-printing technique to Japan in AD 768-770. The Buddhist Diamond Sutra, produced in AD 868 and featuring six sheets of text and woodcut pictures, is the earliest Japanese book.
- The printing of visual media resulted in several unusual publishing techniques. Illustrative collections of paintings presented a beautiful urban culture in the late nineteenth-century, while libraries and bookstores were brimming with hand-printed material of many types – books on ladies, musical instruments and so on.

Print Comes to Europe

- After studying China, Marco Polo returned to Europe and carried with him the knowledge of woodblock printing, which quickly spread throughout Europe. As the demand for books grew, bookstores began to export books to various countries.
- Handwritten manuscripts, on the other hand, were unable to meet the ever-increasing demand for books. Woodblocks were commonly used in Europe to print textiles, playing cards and religious artwork with simple, brief words. In the 1430s, Johann Gutenberg invented the first printing press.

Gutenberg and the Printing Press

- Gutenberg was a master in the field of stone polishing and he used this knowledge to create his invention by adapting existing technology. The Bible was the first printed book to use the new system. The existing art of manufacturing books by hand was not fully supplanted by the adoption of new technology.
- On the printed page, books printed for the wealthy left the blank area for embellishment. Between 1450 and 1550, printing presses were established in almost every country in Europe. The print revolution began with the transition from manual to mechanical printing.

The Print Revolution and Its Impact

- Print revolution was not only a new way of producing books, but it transformed the lives of people, changing their relationship to information and knowledge and with institutions and authorities.

A New Reading Public

- The print revolution brought down the price of books. Markets were saturated with publications aimed at an ever-increasing audience. It ushered in a new reading culture.
- Previously, only elites were allowed to read books, while ordinary people had to listen to sacred scriptures being read aloud. Books were prohibitively expensive prior to the printing revolution.
- However, the transfer was not straightforward because books could only be read by those who were literate. For individuals who could not read, printers began producing popular ballads and folk tales with illustrations. Oral culture made its way into print and printed literature was passed along orally.

Religious Debates and the Fear of Print

- Print opened up a whole new realm of debate and discussion. Printed books are not universally embraced and many individuals are concerned about the psychological repercussions of increased book circulation.
- There was apprehension about the propagation of rebellious and irreligious ideas. Martin Luther, a Christian reformer, penned the Ninety-Five Theses in 1517, criticising many of the Roman Catholic Church's practises and ceremonies. His printed textbook caused a schism within the Church and ushered in the Protestant Reformation.

Print and Dissent

- In the sixteenth century, Menocchio began to read books available in his locality. He reinterpreted the message of the Bible and formulated a view of God and Creation that enraged the Roman Catholic Church.
- Menocchio was hauled up twice and ultimately executed. From 1558, the Roman Church began to maintain an Index of Prohibited Books.

The Reading Mania

- Throughout the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, literacy rates increased in most parts of Europe. As schools and reading increased throughout Europe, people desired more books to be printed. Other types of reading, primarily for entertainment, came to reach common people.
- Books came in a variety of sizes and served a variety of purposes and interests. Periodical presses emerged in the early 18th century, combining current-event knowledge with pleasure. Journals and newspapers reported about battles, trade and events in other parts of the world. Scientifically interested readers were impacted by Issac Newton's discoveries.

'Tremble, therefore, tyrants of the world!'

- By the mid-eighteenth century, books were seen as a tool of promoting progress and enlightenment. 'The printing press is the most potent engine of development and public opinion is the force that will sweep dictatorship away,' declared Louise-Sebastien Mercier, an eighteenth-century French novelist.
- 'Tremble, therefore, tyrants of the globe!' Mercier exclaimed, certain of the power of print in spreading enlightenment and shattering the root of oppression. 'Beware of the virtual author!'

Print Culture and the French Revolution

- Print culture, according to historians, established the conditions for the French Revolution. Three different types of arguments were presented.
  1. Print popularised the ideas of the enlightenment thinkers. Their writings provided a critical commentary on tradition, superstition and despotism. The writings of Voltaire and Rousseau were read widely; and people saw the world through new eyes, eyes that were questioning, critical and rational.
  2. Print created a new culture of dialogue and debate. Within this public culture, new ideas of social revolution came into being.
  3. By the 1780s, there was an outpouring of literature that mocked the royalty and criticised their morality.
- Print helped in spreading ideas. They accepted some ideas and rejected others and interpreted things their way.
- Print did not directly shape their minds, but it did open up the possibility of thinking differently.

The Nineteenth Century

- Large numbers of new readers among children, women and workers were added to the mass literacy in Europe during the 19th century.

Children, Women and Workers

- Primary schooling became compulsory in the late nineteenth century. In 1857, a children's press dedicated to children's literature was established in France. Grimm Brothers gathered traditional folk stories in Germany. Rural folk stories took on a new shape.
- Women gained prominence as readers and writers. Women's magazine, as well as guides emphasising correct behaviour and housekeeping were issued just for them. Lending libraries in England became vehicles for educating white-collar employees, artisans and lower-middle-class individuals in the nineteenth-century.

Further Innovations

- By the late eighteenth-century, printing technology had seen a succession of advancements and metal presses became commonplace.
- Richard M perfected the power-driven cylindrical press during the century, which was mostly used for printing newspapers. The offset printer was created and it was capable of printing six colours at once. Electrically operated presses accelerated printing processes by the twentieth-century, followed by a number of further developments.
  1. Methods of feeding paper improved.
  2. The quality of plates became better.
  3. Automatic paper reels and photoelectric controls of the colour register were introduced.

India and the World of Print

- Let us see when printing began in India and how ideas and informations were written before the age of print.

Manuscripts Before the Age of Print

- India has a long legacy of handwritten manuscripts in Sanskrit, Arabic, Persian and a variety of vernacular languages. On palm leaves or homemade paper, these handwritten documents were copied.
- The manuscript was still being produced after the invention of print. It is regarded to be both pricey and delicate. Because pupils in Bengal were only taught to write, many became literate without ever reading any form of literature.

Print Comes to India

- The first printing press arrived in Goa with Portuguese missionaries in the mid-sixteenth century. In 1579, Catholic priests in Cochin printed the first Tamil book and in 1713, they printed the first Malayalam book.
- Despite the fact that the English East India Company began importing presses in the late seventeenth-century, the English press flourished slowly in India.
- James Augustus Hickey edited the Bengal Gazette, a weekly publication. Hickey published advertisements, as well as a lot of gossip about the Company's senior personnel in India. A number of newspapers and journals were published by the end of the eighteenth century.

Religious Reform and Public Debates

- From the early nineteenth-century forward, religious debates were increasingly heated. People began to criticise established methods and fight for reform, while others argued against reformers' claims. Printed tracts and newspapers disseminated new ideas and changed the debate's tone.
- Over issues such as widow immolation, monotheism, Brahmanical priesthood and idolatry, fierce debates erupted between social and religious reformers and Hindu orthodoxy. Rammohun Roy published the Sambad Kaumudi in 1821. Jam-i-Jahan Nama and Shamsul Akhbar, two Persian newspapers, were published in 1822.
- The Bombay Samachar, a Gujarati daily, was founded the same year. Thousands upon thousands of fatwas were produced by the Deoband Seminary, which was

formed in 1867, instructing Muslim readers on how to conduct oneself in everyday life and explaining the meanings of Islamic principles.

- Print encouraged the reading of religious texts, among Hindus, especially in the vernacular languages. Religious texts reached a very wide circle of people, encouraging discussions, debates and controversies within and among different religions. Newspapers conveyed news from one place to another, creating pan-Indian identities.

New Forms of Publication

- New kinds of writing were introduced as more and more people got interested in reading. In Europe, the novel, a literary form, was developed to cater to the needs of people who acquired Indian forms and styles.
- Lyrics, short stories and essays about social and political issues are examples of new literary forms that have entered the world of reading. By the end of the nineteenth-century, a new visual culture had emerged.
- Cheap calendars were available in the market and even the impoverished might purchase them to decorate the walls of their houses or workplaces. These prints influenced common perceptions of modernity and tradition, religion and politics, as well as society and culture.
- By the 1870s, caricatures and cartoons had begun to appear in journals and newspapers, commenting on social and political topics.

Women and Print

- In middle-class houses, women's reading increased dramatically. Women's schools were established in cities. Women's works began to appear in journals, along with explanations of why women should be educated. Conservative Hindus, on the other hand, believed that a literate girl would be widowed and Muslims feared that reading Urdu romances would corrupt educated women.
- Women's lives and emotions sparked a tremendous deal of attention as a result of social changes and books. Women's journals, authored and published by women, became immensely popular in the early twentieth century.
- In Bengal, an entire area in central Calcutta – the Battala – was devoted to the printing of popular books. By the late nineteenth-century, a lot of these books were profusely illustrated with woodcuts and coloured lithographs. Pedlars took the Battala publications to homes, enabling women to read them in their leisure time.

Print and the Poor People

- At markets, low-cost books were purchased. The majority of public libraries were built in cities and towns. Caste discrimination began to appear in many literary tracts and essays in the late nineteenth century.
- Factory employees lacked the educational background to write extensively about their experiences.
- To demonstrate the links between caste and class exploitation, Kashibaba authored and published' Chhote Aur Bade Ka Sawal in 1938. Bangalore cotton mill workers established libraries to educate themselves in the 1930s.

Print and Censorship

- Under the East India Company, censorship was not an issue. In 1835, Governor-General Bentinck agreed to amend press rules after the Calcutta Supreme Court imposed several regulations to control press freedom.
- Thomas Macaulay devised new rules that restored the previous level of liberty. After the 1857 insurrection, there was a shift in press freedom. The Vernacular Press Act, modelled after the Irish Press Laws, was passed in 1878, giving the government broad powers to censor reporting and editorials in the vernacular press.
- The government began keeping track of the local media. Nationalist newspapers proliferated across India. When Punjab revolutionaries were deported in 1907, Bal Gangadhar Tilak wrote about them in his Kesari with tremendous affection, which resulted to his imprisonment in 1908.
- Despite repressive measures, nationalist newspapers grew in numbers in all parts of India. They reported on colonial misrule and encouraged nationalist activities. Attempts to throttle nationalist criticism provoked militant protest.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Who wrote about the injustices of the caste system in 'Gulamgiri'?
- **(a)** Raja Ram Mohan Roy
- **(b)** Jyotiba Phule
- **(c)** Balgangadhar Tilak
- **(d)** Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay

2. Which of the following statements is true about the printing revolution?
- **(a)** Manuscripts for printed books
- **(b)** The invention of the printing press
- **(c)** People's revolt against printed content
- **(d)** The transition from manual to mechanical printing

3. The Bengal Gazette was edited by:
- **(a)** James Augustus Hickey
- **(b)** Raja Ram Mohan Roy
- **(c)** Gangadhar Bhattacharya
- **(d)** None of these

4. _____ became the center of the new print culture as Western countries created outposts in China.
- **(a)** Hong Kong **(b)** Beijing
- **(c)** Guangzhou **(d)** None of these

5. Who introduced hand printing from China to Japan in 8^{th} century AD?
- **(a)** Chinese traders

(b) Chinese travellers
(c) Buddhist missionaries
(d) Japanese Monks

6. Penny magazines were designed especially for:
(a) elite class **(b)** women
(c) factory workers **(d)** children

7. The main theme of the book 'Chhote aur Bade Ka Sawal' written by Kashibaba, a Kanpur mill worker, was:
(a) The life of the elite upper castes.
(b) The caste system's inequity.
(c) The relationship between caste and class oppression.
(d) None of these

8. In 1821, who published "Sambad Kaumudi"?
(a) Ishwer Chandra Vidyasagar
(b) C.R. Das
(c) Raja Rammohan Roy
(d) Swami Vivekanand

9. Which of the following materials was used to write manuscripts in ancient India?
(a) Parchments **(b)** Palm leaves
(c) Vellum **(d)** None of these

10. Who was Kitagawa Utamaro?
(a) An Korean artist **(b)** A Japanese artist
(c) An Indian artist **(d)** An Italian writer

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. What developments occurred in China's urban culture throughout the seventeenth century?
1. Scholars were no longer the only ones who used print.
2. Merchants used print in their everyday life, as they collected trade information.
3. Fictional narratives, poetry, autobiographies, compilations of literary masters and romantic plays were chosen by new readers.
4. Women began publishing their poetry and plays. Wives of scholar-officials published their works and courtesans wrote about their lives.
Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) All of the above **(d)** None of the above

2. What was the impact of print on the French Revolution?
1. The Enlightenment thinkers' ideas were popularised through print and their publications gave a critical commentary on tradition, superstition and authoritarianism, as well as logic.
2. Print created a new culture of dialogue and debate
3. By the 1780s there was literature that mocked the royalty and monarchy and criticised their morality, along with cartoons and caricatures
4. People were not affected directly but they did pay attention
Select the correct one:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2
(c) All of the above **(d)** None of the above

3. Why did the Roman Catholic Church start keeping a Prohibited Books Index in 1558?
1. Foreign writers' interference
2. People are being indoctrinated with too many different views through books
3. Disturbed by the effects of popular literature and religious doubts
4. Writing and printing of heretical beliefs
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2
(c) 1, 2 and 4 **(d)** 3 and 4

4. What role did print culture have in assisting India's poor?
(a) The large amount of books that flooded the market led to the establishment of hundreds of bookshops, which provided employment to the impoverished.
(b) Public libraries were established, with underprivileged people being offered jobs.
(c) Low-cost books were published that the poor could afford to buy and read.
(d) With a minimal investment, selling books became a business for the poor.

5. What was the purpose of the Vernacular Press Act of 1878?
(a) It gave the government broad powers to censor news and editorials in the vernacular press.
(b) It gave the government broad powers to censor reports and editorials in the vernacular press.
(c) The expulsion of Indian writers
(d) Only English-language works will be published.

6. Was the rise in reading culture beneficial to women's education?
(a) When women's schools were established in cities, liberal husbands and fathers began educating their wives and daughters at home.
(b) No, women were not allowed to be educated.
(c) Women's education would lead to liberal views, which were not acceptable.
(d) Women were exclusively designed for domestic duties.

7. Consider the following pairs:

	Person	Text
1.	James Augustus Hickey	Bengal Gazette
2.	Ishwar C. V. Sagar	Chhote Aur Bade Ka Sawal
3.	Ram Mohan Roy	Sambad Kaumudi

Which of the above pairs is/are correctly matched?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 3 only
(c) 1 only **(d)** 1 and 3 only

8. Who was the first to print with woodblocks?
(a) French **(b)** Spaniards
(c) Indian **(d)** None of these

9. What exactly do you mean when you say 'galley'?
(a) A metal frame in which the type is spread out and the text is composed
(b) A corridor
(c) A scarecrow
(d) None of the above

10. Diamond Sutra is the oldest printed book of
(a) China **(b)** Japan
(c) India **(d)** None of these

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: From the late nineteenth century, issues of caste discrimination began to be written about in many printed tracts and essays. Jyotiba Phule, the Maratha pioneer of 'low caste' protest movements, wrote about the injustices of the caste system in his work Gulamgiri (1871).
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: In the hundred years between 1450 and 1550, printing presses were set up in most countries of Europe. Printers from Germany travelled to other countries, seeking work and helping start new presses. This shift from hand printing to mechanical printing led to the print revolution.
3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: From 1780, James Augustus Hickey began to edit the Bengal Gazette, a weekly magazine that described itself as 'a commercial paper open to all, but influenced by none'.
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Western printing techniques and mechanical presses were imported in the late nineteenth century as Western powers established their outposts in China. Shanghai became the hub of the new print culture, catering to Western-style schools. From hand printing there was now a gradual shift to mechanical printing.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Buddhist missionaries from China introduced hand-printing technology into Japan around AD 768-770. The oldest Japanese book, printed in AD 868, is the Buddhist Diamond Sutra, containing six sheets of text and woodcut illustrations.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Penny magazines were especially designed for women. Women became important as readers as well as writers.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Kashibaba, a Kanpur mill worker, wrote and published Chhote Aur Bade Ka Sawal in 1938 to show the links between caste and class exploitation.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Raja Rammohan Roy published the Sambad Kaumudi from 1821 and the Hindu orthodoxy commissioned the Samachar Chandrika to oppose his opinions.
9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Vellum was used to write manuscripts in ancient India.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Kitagawa Utamaro was a Japanese painter who was born in Edo in 1753 and is best known for his contribution to the 'Ukiyo' art form, which influenced European painters such as Manet, Monet and Van Gogh.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: By the seventeenth century, as urban culture bloomed in China, the uses of print diversified. Print was no longer used just by scholar officials. Merchants used print in their everyday life, as they collected trade information. Reading increasingly became a leisure activity. The new readership preferred fictional narratives, poetry, autobiographies, anthologies of literary masterpieces and romantic plays. Rich women began to read and many women began publishing their poetry and plays. Wives of scholar-officials published their works and courtesans wrote about their lives.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Print popularised the ideas of the enlightenment thinkers. Collectively, their writings provided a critical commentary on tradition, superstition and despotism. They argued for the rule of reason rather than custom and demanded that everything be judged through the application of reason and rationality. Print created a new culture of dialogue and debate. All values, norms and institutions were re-evaluated and discussed. By the 1780s, there was an outpouring of literature that mocked the royalty and criticised their morality. There can be no doubt that print helps the spread of ideas. But people did not read just one kind of literature. They were not influenced directly by everything they read or saw. They accepted some ideas and rejected others. Print did not directly shape their minds, but it did open up the possibility of thinking differently.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: In the sixteenth century, Menocchio, a miller in Italy, began to read books that were available in his locality. He reinterpreted the message of the Bible and formulated a view of God and Creation that enraged the Roman Catholic Church. When the Roman Church began its inquisition to repress heretical ideas, Menocchio was hauled up twice and ultimately executed. The Roman Church, troubled by such effects of popular readings and questionings of faith, imposed severe controls over publishers and booksellers and began to maintain an Index of Prohibited Books from 1558.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Very cheap small books were brought to markets in nineteenth-century Madras towns and sold at crossroads, allowing poor people travelling to markets to buy them.

5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1878, the Vernacular Press Act was passed, modelled on the Irish Press Laws. It provided the government with extensive rights to censor reports and editorials in the vernacular press.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Reading culture beneficial to women's education by establishing women's schools were in cities, liberal husbands and fathers began educating their wives and daughters at home.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: 'Chhote Aur Bade Ka Sawal' was written by Kashibaba. Rest of the pairs are correctly matched.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Spaniards were the first to employ wood-block printing. Woodblocks were frequently employed in Europe by the early fifteenth century to print fabrics, playing cards and religious images with basic, brief phrases.
9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Galley is the metal frame in which types are laid and the text composed.
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The oldest Japanese book, printed in AD 868, is the Buddhist Diamond Sutra, containing six sheets of text and woodcut illustrations.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

1 FROM THE BEGINNING OF TIME

The Precursors of Modern Human Beings

- The story of human evolution is very long and complicated because there are many unanswered questions and new findings often lead to modification or change in previous data and concepts.
- About 36 mya (million years ago), a category of mammals, primate, emerged in Asia and Africa.
- About 24 mya, hominids (this included apes), a subgroup among primates emerged.
- And, much later, about 5.6 mya, we find the evidence of the first hominids.
- Hominoids have a smaller brain than hominids. They are quadrupeds, walking on all four limbs, but with flexible forelimbs.
- Hominids, by contrast, have an upright posture and bipedal locomotion (walking on two feet).
- Two lines of evidence suggest an African origin for hominids. First, it is the group of African apes that are most closely related to hominids. Second, the earliest hominid fossils, which belong to the genus *Australopithecus*, have been found in East Africa and date back to about 5.6 million years ago (mya).
- Hominids belong to a family known as Hominidae, which includes all forms of human beings.
- Hominids are further subdivided into branches, known as genus, of which *Australopithecus* and *Homo* are important.
- Around 2.5 mya, with the onset of a phase of glaciation (or an Ice Age), when large parts of the earth were covered with snow, there were major changes in climate and vegetation. Later, due to the reduction in temperatures and rainfall, the area of grasslands expanded, it led to gradual extinction of the early forms of Australopithecus (adapted to forests) and the replacement by species that were better adapted to the drier conditions.
- Among these were the earliest representative of genus *Homo*.
- *Homo* is a Latin word that means 'man' (although there were women as well).
- Scientists distinguished them differently as *Homo habilis* (the tool maker), *Homo erectus* (the upright man) and Homo sapiens (the wise or thinking man).
- The earliest fossils of Homo *habilis* have been discovered at Omo in Ethiopis and at Olduvai Gorge in Tanzania.
- The earliest fossils of *Homo erectus* have been found both in Africa and Asia: Koobi Fora and West Turkana, Kenya, Modjokerto and Sangiran, Java.
- The earliest fossils from Europe are of *Homo heidelbergensis* and *Homo neanderthalensis*.

Modern Human Beings

- The replacement model visualises the complete replacement everywhere of all older forms of humans with modern humans.
- Early humans would have obtained food through several ways, such as gathering, hunting, scavenging and fishing.
- Hunting probably began later – about 500,000 years ago.
- Between 400,000 and 125,000 years ago, caves and open-air sites began to be used.
- The earliest evidence for the making and use of stone tools comes from sites in Ethiopia and Kenya.
- There are several views on language development: (1) that hominid language involved gestures or hand movements; (2) that spoken language was preceded by a vocal but non-verbal communication such as singing or humming; (3) that human speech probably began with calls like the ones that have been observed among primates.
- The act of painting could have been a ritual to ensure a successful hunt.
- Farming and pastoralism led to the introduction of many other changes such as the making of pots which were used to store grains and other products to cook food.
- The wheel, important for both pot making and transportation, came into use.

When	Where	Who
5-1 mya	Sub-Saharan Africa	*Australopithecus*, early *Homo, Homo erectus*
1 mya-40000 years ago	Africa, Asia and Europe in mid-latitudes	*Homo erectus, archaic Homo sapiens, Neanderthals, Homo sapiens sapiens* (modern humans)
45000 years ago	Australia	Modern humans

40000 years ago to present	Europe in high-latitudes and Asia-Pacific islands North and South America in deserts, rain forests	Late Neanderthals, modern humans

Table 1: Peopling of the World

36-24	Primates; Monkeys inm Asia and Africa
24	(Superfamily) Hominoids; Gibbons, Asian orang-utan and African apes (gorilla, chimpanzee and bonobo or 'pygmy' chimpanzee)
6.4	Branching out of hominoids and hominids
5.6	*Australopithecus*
2.6-2.5	Earliest stone tools
2.5-2.0	Cooling and drying of Africa, resulting in decrease in woodlands and increase in grasslands
2.5-2.0	*Homo*
2.2	*Homo habilis*
1.8	*Homo erectus*
1.3	Extinction of *Australopithecus*
0.8	'Archaic' *sapiens, Homo heidelbergensis*
0.19-0.16	*Homo sapiens sapiens* (modern humans)

Table 2: Important Timeline (mya)

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. What are the features of hominoids?
- **(a)** They are quadrupeds.
- **(b)** They have a larger brain than hominids.
- **(c)** They have stiff forelimbs.
- **(d)** All of the above

2. In which century, the Olduvai Gorge was first 'discovered' by a German butterfly collector?
- **(a)** Early twenty-first **(b)** Seventeenth
- **(c)** Early twentieth **(d)** Twentieth

3. In what kind of features are species of early humans differentiated?
- **(a)** Jaw shape
- **(b)** Skull size
- **(c)** Bone structure of the body
- **(d)** All of the above

4. About 1 mya-40,000 years ago, what was found in Africa, Asia and Europe in mid-latitudes?
- **(a)** Australopithecus **(b)** Homo erectus
- **(c)** Early homo **(d)** Late Neanderthals

5. The issue of the place of origin of modern humans has been much debated. Two divergent views have been expounded, one advocates the regional continuity What is the second one?
- **(a)** Multiple regions of origin
- **(b)** Replacement model
- **(c)** Bone structure
- **(d)** Time based

6. Anatomical and _____ adaptations have led to the skilled use of hands, probably due to the important role of tools in human lives.
- **(a)** Neurological **(b)** Experimental
- **(c)** Flexible **(d)** Periodical

7. Which of the following European site seems to be deliberately chosen by early people for hunting?
- **(a)** Dolni Vestonice
- **(b)** Cinque Terre
- **(c)** Barcelona
- **(d)** Neuschwanstein Castle

8. Considered as a mode of communication, hundreds of paintings of animals (painted between 30,000 and 12,000 years ago) have been discovered in France and Altamira, in Spain. What was the name of the cave where they were discovered?
- **(a)** Bétharram caves
- **(b)** Lascaux and Chauvet
- **(c)** Bruniquel and Bournillon
- **(d)** Cabrespine and Bédeilhac cave

9. Pieces of baked clay and burnt bone along with stone tools, dated between 1.4 and 1 mya, have been found at _____.
- **(a)** Chesowanja **(b)** Kenya
- **(c)** Swartkrans **(d)** All of the above

10. Which of the following terms is used to describe a small group of hunters and gatherers, living in the vicinity of Lake Eyasi, a salt rift-valley lake?
- **(a)** Hazda **(b)** Gazda
- **(c)** Hamza **(d)** None of the above

11. The earliest evidence of burials was found _____ ago.
(a) 200, 000 **(b)** 300,000
(c) 400,000 **(d)** 500,000

12. Which term is used to describe the study of contemporary ethnic groups?
(a) Enthropology **(b)** Ethnography
(c) Anthropology **(d)** Anthography

13. When was Charles Darwin's Origin of Species published?
(a) 1898 **(b)** 1847
(c) 1859 **(d)** 1863

14. _____ are a subgroup of a larger group of mammals. They include monkeys, apes and humans.
(a) Primates **(b)** Monotreme
(c) Marsupials **(d)** Placentals

15. Around how many years ago, Archaic *Homo sapiens* skull was found in India in the Narmada Valley?
(a) 190,000 - 150,000 **(b)** 195,000 - 165,000
(c) 200,000 - 130,000 **(d)** 130, 000 - 100, 000

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following help in understanding human evolution?
(a) Fossils **(b)** Art
(c) Tools **(d)** All of the above

2. Fossils can be dated through direct chemical analysis. What does 'dated' refers to
(a) Age of fossil
(b) Process of fossil year determination
(c) Experiment
(d) Break

3. Consider the following statements:
1. This timeline focuses on the emergence of humans and the domestication of plants and animals.
2. It highlights some major technological developments such as the use of fire, metals, plough agriculture and the wheel.
Identify the period mentioned in the given statements:
(a) 6 MYA to 1 BCE
(b) 1 MYA to 6 BCE
(c) 16 MYA to 10 BCE
(d) 10 MYA to 16 BCE

4. Consider the following statements:
1. Domestication of donkey
2. Cultivation of millet
3. Use of copper
4. Use of glass bottle
Which of the following did not take place in the same period?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 4 only

5. Match column I with column II and choose the correct option with help of the given codes:

Column I		Column II	
A.	*Homo habilis*	**1.**	Toolmaker
B.	*Homo erectus*	**2.**	Upright man
C.	*Homo sapiens*	**3.**	Wise man

Choose the correct alternative:
(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1 **(d)** A-2, B-1, C-3

6. Which of the following is the earliest fossils from Europe?
(a) *Homo heidelbergensis*
(b) *Homo neanderthalensis*
(c) *Australopithecus*
(d) Both (a) and (b)

7. Find the odd one out.
(a) Border Cave **(b)** Die Kelders
(c) Klasies River Mouth **(d)** Dar-es-Solton

8. Consider the following statements with regards to language:
1. Hominid language involved gestures or hand movements.
2. Spoken language was preceded by a vocal but non-verbal communication such as singing or humming.
3. Human speech probably began with calls like the ones that have been observed among primates.
Which of the following is correct regarding language development?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** All of the above

9. Consider the following statements:
1. It is a cave site in Spain.
2. The paintings on the ceiling of the cave were first brought to the attention of Marcelino Sanz de Sautuola.
Which cave site is mentioned in the given statements?
(a) Altamira **(b)** Las Meninas
(c) Arnolfini Portrait **(d)** The Sleeping Gypsy

10. Which of the following is the incorrect pair?

Caves		Location
A.	Lascaux	France
B.	Chauvet	Greece
C	Altamira	Spain

(a) A **(b)** B
(c) C **(d)** A and C

11. Consider the following statements:
1. When we first came into this area, all we saw were strange footprints on the sand.
2. We wondered what kind of people were these.
3. We found their villages, but they were always empty because as soon as they saw strangers coming, they would scatter and hide in the bush.
Who are 'we' here?
(a) A member of an African pastoral group
(b) A member of an American pastoral group

(c) A member of an Indian pastoral group
(d) A member of an Australian pastoral group

12. Which of the following is incorrect about Hadza?
1. The Hadza are a large group of hunters and gatherers.
2. They live in the vicinity of Lake Eyasi, a salt, rift-valley lake.
3. The Hadza consider that about 5-6 kilometres is the maximum distance over which water can reasonably be carried and camps are normally sited within a kilometre of a watercourse.

(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) 1 only (d) 2 and 3

13. Which of the following is not a characteristic of Hominidae?
(a) Large brain size
(b) Upright posture
(c) Bipedal locomotion
(d) Small jaws

14. Match column I with column II and choose the correct option with help of the given codes:

Column I		Column II	
A.	*Australopithecus*	1.	Africa
B.	*Homo erectus*	2.	Australia
C.	Modern Humans	3.	Sub-Saharan Africa

Choose the correct alternative:
(a) A-1, B-2, C-3 (b) A-1, B-3, C-2
(c) A-2, B-1, C-3 (d) A-3, B-1, C-2

15. Consider the following statements:
1. The last ice age came to an end about 13,000 years ago.
2. Conditions were favourable for the growth of grasses such as wild barley and wheat.
3. At the same time, open forests and grasslands expanded.
4. The population of certain animal species such as wild sheep, goat, cattle, pig and donkey decreased.

Which of the following is not correct regarding the last ice age?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3
(c) 3 only (d) 4 only

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Hominids have evolved from hominoids and share certain common features, but there are major differences as well. Hominoids have a smaller brain than hominids. They are quadrupeds, walking on all fours, but with flexible forelimbs.

2. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The Olduvai Gorge was first 'discovered' in the early twentieth century by a German butterfly collector. However, Olduvai has come to be identified with Mary and Louis Leakey, who worked here for over 40 years.

3. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The remains of early humans have been classified into different species. These are often distinguished from one another based on differences in bone structure. For instance, species of early humans are differentiated in terms of their skull size and distinctive jaws.

4. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: 1 mya-40,000 years ago in Africa, Asia and Europe these were found-*Homo Erectus*, archaic mid-latitudes *Homo sapiens, Neanderthals, Homo sapiens*/modern human.

5. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The issue of the place of origin of modern humans has been much debated. Two divergent views have been expounded, one advocates the regional continuity model (with multiple regions of origin), while the other advocates the replacement model (with a single origin in Africa).

6. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Anatomical and neurological (related to the nervous system) adaptations have led to the skilled use of hands, probably due to the important role of tools in human lives. Moreover, how humans use and make tools often require greater memory and complex organisational skills, both of which are absent in apes.

7. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: About 35,000 years ago, there are evidences of planned hunting from some European sites. Some sites, such as Dolni Vestonice (in the Czech Republic) which was near a river, seem to have been deliberately chosen by early people.

8. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Hundreds of paintings of animals (painted between 30,000 and 12,000 years ago) have been discovered in the caves of Lascaux and Chauvet, both in France and Altamira, in Spain.

9. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Pieces of baked clay and burnt bone along with stone tools, dated between 1.4 and 1 mya, have been found at Chesowanja, Kenya and Swartkrans, South Africa.

10. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Hadza were a small group of hunters and gatherers, living in the vicinity of Lake Eyasi, a salt, rift-valley lake. The country of the eastern Hadza, dry, rocky savanna, dominated by thorn scrub and acacia trees is rich in wild food.

11. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Earliest evidence of burials was found 300,000 years ago.

12. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Ethnography is the study of contemporary ethnic groups. It includes an examination of their modes of livelihood, technology, gender roles, rituals, political institutions and social customs.

13. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: On 24th November 1859, Charles Darwin's theory, the "Origin of Species", was published and it marked a landmark in the study of evolution. All 1,250 copies of the first print were sold out the same day. Darwin argued that humans had evolved from animals a long time ago.

14. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Primates are a subgroup of a larger group of mammals. They include monkeys, apes and humans. They have body hair, a relatively long gestation period following birth, mammary glands, different types of teeth and the ability to maintain a constant body temperature.

15. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Archaic *Homo sapiens* skull in the Narmada valley, India was found 200,000–130,000 years ago.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Discoveries of human fossils, stone tools and cave paintings help us to understand early human history. The evidence for human evolution comes from fossils of species of humans that have become extinct.

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Fossils can be dated either through direct chemical analysis or indirectly by dating the sediments in which they are buried.

3. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The period is 6 MYA to 1 BCE.

4. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Domestication of the donkey, cultivation of millet, use of copper took place in Africa around 4000–3000 BCE and the glass bottle was used in 1500–1400 BCE.

5. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The names assigned to these species are derived from what is regarded as their typical characteristics. So, fossils are classified as *Homo habilis* (the toolmaker), *Homo erectus* (the upright man) and *Homo sapiens* (the wise or thinking man).

6. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The earliest fossils from Europe are of *Homo heidelbergensis* and *Homo neanderthalensis*.

7. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Border Cave, Die Kelders, Klasies River Mouth was found in South Africa and Dar es Solton was found in Morocco.

8. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: There are several views on language development: (1) that hominid language involved gestures or hand movements; (2) that spoken language was preceded by a vocal but non-verbal communication such as singing or humming; (3) that human speech probably began with calls like the ones that have been observed among primates.

9. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Altamira is a cave site in Spain. The paintings on the ceiling of the cave were first brought to the attention of Marcelino Sanz de Sautuola, a local landowner and an amateur archaeologist, by his daughter Maria in November 1879.

10. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Hundreds of paintings of animals (painted between 30,000 and 12,000 years ago) have been discovered in the caves of Lascaux and Chauvet, both in France and Altamira, in Spain.

11. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The information given in the statements is an account by a member of an African pastoral group about its initial contact in 1870 with the Kung San, a hunter-gatherer society living in the Kalahari Desert.

12. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Hadza are a small group of hunters and gatherers, living in the vicinity of Lake Eyasi, a salt rift-valley lake. The Hadza consider that about 5-6 kilometres is the maximum distance over which water can reasonably be carried and camps are normally sited within a kilometre of a watercourse.

13. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Hominids belong to a family known as Hominidae, which includes all forms of human beings. The distinctive characteristics of hominids include a large brain size, upright posture, bipedal locomotion and specialisation of the hand.

14. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: *Homo erectus* is found in Africa, *Australopithecus* was found in Sub-Saharan Africa and Modern Humans was found in Australia.

15. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The last ice age came to an end about 13,000 years ago and with that warmer, wetter conditions prevailed. As a result, conditions were favourable for the growth of grasses such as wild barley and wheat. At the same time, as open forests and grasslands expanded, the population of certain animal species such as wild sheep, goat, cattle, pig and donkey increased.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

2 WRITING AND CITY LIFE

Mesopotamia and its Geography

- Iraq is a land of diverse environments. In the north-east lie green, undulating plains, gradually rising to tree-covered mountain ranges with clear streams and wildflowers, with enough rainfall to grow crops.
- To the east, tributaries of the Tigris provide routes of communication into the mountains of Iran. The south is a desert – and this is where the first cities and writing emerged.
- After the Euphrates river has entered the desert, its water flows out into small channels. These channels flood their banks, and, in the past, functioned as irrigation canals: water could be let into the fields of wheat, barley, peas or lentils when necessary.
- Not only agriculture, Mesopotamian sheep and goats that grazed on the steppe, the north-eastern plains and the mountain slopes produced meat, milk and wool in abundance.

The Significance of Urbanism

- Urban economies comprise food production, trade, manufacturing and services.
- There must be a social organisation in place. Fuel, metal, various stones, wood, etc., come from many different places for city manufacturers.
- There are deliveries of grains and other food items from the village to the city, and food supplies need to be stored and distributed.
- However rich the food resources of Mesopotamia were, its mineral resources were few. Most parts of the south lacked stones for tools, seals and jewels; the wood of the Iraqi date-palm and poplar was not good enough for carts, cartwheels or boats; and there was no metal for tools, vessels or ornaments.
- Besides crafts, trade and services, efficient transport is also important for urban development. If it takes too much time, or too much animal feed, to carry grain or charcoal into cities on pack animals or bullock carts, the city economy will not be viable.
- The canals and natural channels of ancient Mesopotamia were in fact routes of goods transport between large and small settlements.

Development of Writing

- All societies have languages in which certain spoken sounds convey certain meanings.
- The first Mesopotamian tablets, written around 3200 BCE, contained picture-like signs and numbers.
- Mesopotamians wrote on tablets of clay. A scribe would wet clay and pat it into a size which he could hold comfortably in one hand.
- The sound that a *cuneiform* sign represented, was not a single consonant or vowel (such as 'm' or 'a' in the English alphabet), but was syllables (say, -put-, or -la-, or -in-).
- Very few Mesopotamians could read and write.
- The connection between city life, trade and writing is brought out in a long Sumerian epic poem about Enmerkar, one of the earliest rulers of Uruk.

Urbanisation in Southern Mesopotamia: Temples and Kings

- From 5000 BCE, settlements had begun to develop in southern Mesopotamia. The earliest cities emerged from some of these settlements.
- These were of various kinds: those that gradually developed around temples; those that developed as centers of trade; and imperial cities.
- Temples were the residences of various gods: of the Moon God of Ur, or Inanna, the goddess of Love and War.
- The god was also the theoretical owner of the agricultural fields, the fisheries, and the herds of the local community. In that time, the processing of produce (for example, oil pressing, grain grinding, spinning, and the weaving of woollen cloth) was also done in the temple.
- The natural outlet channels of the Euphrates would have too much water for one year which used to flood the crops, and sometimes they would change course altogether.
- War captives and local people were put to work for the temple, or directly for the ruler.
- Hundreds of ration lists have been found, which have details against people's names, like the quantities of grain, cloth or oil allotted to them.
- Bronze tools came into use for various crafts. Architects learnt to construct brick columns, there being no suitable wood to bear the weight of the roof of large halls.
- There was a town cemetery at Ur in which the graves of royalty and commoners have been found, but a few individuals were found buried under the floors of ordinary houses.
- After 2000 BCE, the royal capital of Mari flourished.
- Herders need to exchange young animals, cheese, leather and meat in return for grain, metal tools, etc., and the manure of a penned flock is also of great use to a farmer.
- Through Mesopotamian history, nomadic communities of the western desert filtered into the prosperous agricultural heartland.
- The kings of Mari were Amorites whose dress differed from that of the original inhabitants and who respected not only the gods of Mesopotamia but also raised a temple at Mari for Dagan, the god of the steppe.

- Mesopotamian society and culture were thus open to different people and cultures, and the vitality of the civilisation was perhaps due to this intermixture.
- The kings of Mari, however, had to be vigilant; herders of various tribes were allowed to move into the kingdom, but they were watched.
- Mari is a good example of an urban centre prospering in trade.
- Boats carrying grinding stones, wood, wine and oil jars, would stop at Mari on their way to the southern cities.
- Most important, tablets refer to copper from 'Alashiya', the island of Cyprus, known for its copper, and tin was also an item of trade.
- As bronze was the main industrial material for tools and weapons, this trade was of great importance. Thus, although the kingdom of Mari was not militarily strong, it was extremely prosperous.
- The most poignant reminder to us about the pride Mesopotamians took in their cities, comes at the end of the Gilgamesh Epic, which was written on twelve tablets.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which of the following event took place during the period of 668–627 BCE?
(a) Establishment of the Assyrian kingdom
(b) Alexander conquers Babylon
(c) Rule of Assurbanipal
(d) Assyrian Empire

2. Who was the last ruler of independent Babylon?
(a) Nabonidus **(b)** Sargon
(c) Gilgamesh **(d)** None of the above

3. After the war, Mesopotamian cities were completely destroyed but they recalled them in the form of _____.
(a) Street plays **(b)** Paintings
(c) Poetry **(d)** Theatre

4. First writing in Mesopotamia took place in which period?
(a) 3000 BCE **(b)** 3200 BCE
(c) 5000 BCE **(d)** 2700 BCE

5. "About 10 hectares in the area in 2500 BCE with a population less than 10,000. The outlines of walls were at first traced by scraping surface."
Based on the above description, which of the following towns is the correct option?
(a) Abu Salabikh **(b)** Eridu
(c) Assur **(d)** Uruk

6. To the kings of Mari, once an officer writes to him that he has been seeing frequent fire signals at night – sent by one camp to another – and he suspects that a raid or an attack is being planned. Whom they were talking about?
(a) Labour **(b)** Herders
(c) Woodcutter **(d)** Border troops

7. The great palace of Mari was the residence of the royal family and was famous for _____.
(a) Metal ornaments **(b)** Paintings
(c) Royal food **(d)** Architecture

8. Mesopotamian civilisation is known for its prosperity, city life, its voluminous and rich literature and _____.
(a) Astronomy **(b)** Architecture
(c) Culture **(d)** All of the above

9. In which year did archaeology in Mesopotamia begin?
(a) 1830s **(b)** 1820s
(c) 1840s **(d)** 1860s

10. From where did the ancient Mesopotamians trade their abundant textiles and agricultural produce for wood, copper, tin, silver, gold, shell and various stones?
(a) Across Gulf **(b)** Turkey
(c) Iran **(d)** All of the above

11. What was the name of the writing that was written on tablets by Mesopotamians?
(a) Cuneiform **(b)** Sumerian
(c) Warka **(d)** Enmerkar

12. The god was also the theoretical owner of the _____.
(a) Agriculture field
(b) Fisheries
(c) Flock of the local community
(d) All of the above

13. Which of the following was the king of Mari?
(a) Akkadians **(b)** Amorites
(c) Assyrians **(d)** Aramaeans

14. What kind of seals were used in Mesopotamia until the end of the first millennium BCE?
(a) Cylindrical stone seal
(b) Rectangular clay seal
(c) Square stone seal
(d) Flat seal

15. In Mesopotamian tablets there were approx. 5000 pictures and numbers. Which of the following was the sign in tablets?
(a) Fish **(b)** Bread
(c) Loaves **(d)** All of the above

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Archaeologists have dug out large volumes to recover animals and plants remain. What was the main proof of existence they got on the avenue?
(a) Charred fish **(b)** Palm leaves
(c) Bamboo **(d)** Pork

2. Which animal was buried with the dead for his nourishment in the afterlife?
(a) Pork **(b)** Medicinal leaves
(c) Seeds **(d)** All of the above

3. Match the following period with event:

Period		Event	
A.	1800 BCE	1.	Spread of cuneiform writing to Syria
B.	3000 BCE	2.	Mathematical texts composed
C.	1000 BCE	3.	Uruk develops into a huge city
D.	2000 BCE	4.	Use of iron

Choose the correct alternatives:
(a) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4 **(b)** A-2, B-3, C-4, D-1
(c) A-1, B-4, C-2, D-3 **(d)** A-3, B-1, C-2, D-4

4. Which mineral was of great importance for the Mesopotamians?
(a) Clay **(b)** Iron
(c) Bronze **(d)** Copper

5. How was the material transported from one place to another?
(a) By using boat
(b) With the help of cargo
(c) The transfer was done through water
(d) All of the above

6. How was the city of Ur planned?
(a) Sewage system fully planned
(b) Symmetrical built of houses
(c) Rainwater harvesting was shabby
(d) Unplanned street design

7. In the city of Ur, in which direction were the house roofs sloped?
(a) Inwards **(b)** Outward
(c) Centrally **(d)** Both a and b

8. How did historians find about the number of people working to build a new temple?
(a) By checking the architecture of the temple
(b) By counting lists of labours
(c) By checking the lists of ration allotment
(d) All of the above

9. In which year was the Uruk site occupied?
(a) 400 BCE **(b)** 400 CE
(c) 4200 BCE **(d)** 4200 BCE to 400 CE

10. Consider the following statements:
1. All societies have languages in which certain spoken sounds convey certain meanings.
2. Writing too is a verbal communication.
3. The first Mesopotamian tablets were written around 4500 BCE.

Which of the following is/are incorrect?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1 and 3

11. Consider the following statements:
1. Herders need to exchange young animals, cheese, leather and meat in return for grain, metal tools, etc., and the manure of a penned flock is also of great use to a farmer.
2. A shepherd may take his flock to water across a sown field, to the ruin of the crop.
3. Herdsmen being mobile can raid agricultural villages and seize their stored goods.

Which of the following statements is incorrect?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** None of the above

12. Find the odd one out with respect to Mari (an urban centre prospering on trade)
(a) Turkey **(b)** Syria
(c) Lebanon **(d)** Greece

13. On how many tablets were the Gilgamesh Epic written?
(a) 10 **(b)** 11
(c) 12 **(d)** 13

14. Which of the following is not the correct pair?

(a)	c.5000 BCE	Earliest temples in southern Mesopotamia built
(b)	c.2400 BCE	Replacement of Sumerian by Akkadian
(c)	720–610 BCE	Assyrian empire
(d)	c.1100 BCE	Development of the cuneiform script

15. Consider the following statements:
1. At the beginning of recorded history, the land, mainly the urbanised south was called Sumer and Akkad.
2. The first known language of the land was Sumerian.

Identify the land:
(a) Babylon **(b)** Iraq
(c) Tigris **(d)** Turkey

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: There was Assyrian empire rule during 668-627 BCE.

2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: A man of the southern marshes, Nabopolassar, released Babylonia from Assyrian domination in 625 BCE. His successors increased their territory and organised building projects at Babylon. Nabonidus was the last ruler of independent Babylon.

3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Mesopotamians valued city life in which people of many communities and cultures lived side by side. After cities were destroyed in the war, they recalled them in poetry.

4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The first writing in Mesopotamia took place in 3200 BCE.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The small town at Abu Salabikh, about 10 hectares in the area in 2500 BCE had a population of less than 10,000. The outlines of walls were at first traced by scraping surfaces. This involves scraping off the top few millimetres of the mound with the sharp and wide end of a shovel or other tool.

6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The kings of Mari had to be vigilant; herders of various tribes were allowed to move in the kingdom, but they were watched. The camps of herders are mentioned frequently in letters between kings and officials. In one letter, an officer writes to the king that he has been seeing frequent fire signals at night – sent by one camp to another – and he suspects that a raid or an attack is being planned.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The great palace of Mari was the residence of the royal family and was famous for metal ornaments.

8. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The city life began in Mesopotamia, the land between the Euphrates and the Tigris rivers that is now part of the Republic of Iraq. Mesopotamian civilisation is known for its prosperity, city life, its voluminous and rich literature and its mathematics and astronomy.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Archaeology in Mesopotamia began in the 1840s. At one or two sites (including Uruk and Mari), excavations continued for decades. (No Indian site has ever seen such long-term projects.)

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The ancient Mesopotamians could have traded their abundant textiles and agricultural produce for wood, copper, tin, silver, gold, shell and various stones from Turkey and Iran, or across the Gulf. These latter regions had mineral resources, but much less scope for agriculture.

11. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: By 2600 BCE or so, the letters became cuneiform, and the language was Sumerian. And, it is because of this wealth of sources that we know so much more about Mesopotamia than we do about contemporary India.

12. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The god was the focus of worship: to him or her people brought grain, curd and fish (the floors of some early temples had thick layers of fish bones). The god was also the theoretical owner of the agricultural fields, the fisheries, and the herds of the local community.

13. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The kings of Mari were Amorites.

14. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In Mesopotamia until the end of the first millennium BCE, cylindrical stone seals, pierced down at the centre, were fitted with a stick and rolled over wet clay so that a continuous picture was created.

15. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The first Mesopotamian tablets, written around 3200 BCE, contained picture-like signs and numbers. These were about 5,000 lists of oxen, fish, bread loaves, etc. – lists of goods that were brought into or distributed from the temples of Uruk, a city in the south.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Archaeologists in Mesopotamia have dug and sieved through tons of earth to recover plant and animal remains, and in the process identified many species of plants and animals and found large quantities of charred fish bones that had been swept out onto the streets.

2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The dead person must have been given some pork for his nourishment in the afterlife.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
1000 BCE Use of iron
1800 BCE Mathematical texts composed
2000 BCE Spread of cuneiform writing to Syria
3000 BCE Uruk develops into a huge city

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Although the kingdom of Mari was not militarily strong, it was exceptionally prosperous. Bronze, an alloy of tin and copper, was the main industrial material for tools and weapons, so trade linked with it was of great importance to the Mesopotamians.

5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Boats were used for transporting of goods like, grinding stones, wood, wine and oil jars. Officers of this town would go aboard, inspect the cargo and levy a charge of about one-tenth the value of the goods before allowing the boat to continue downstream.

6. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The city of Ur was unplanned. It had narrow winding streets and irregular shapes of house plots, which indicate absence of town planning. Through the narrow winding streets wheeled carts could not reach all the houses. So, sack of grain and firewood would have reached on donkey.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: It is believed that house roofs sloped inwards and rainwater was channelled via the drainpipes into sumps, in the inner courtyards.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Hundreds of ration lists have been found, which gave, against people's names, the

quantities of grain, cloth or oil allotted to them. It has been estimated that one of the temples took 1,500 men working 10 hours a day, five years to build.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: The site was continuously occupied from about 4200 BCE to about 400 CE, and by about 2800 BCE it had expanded to 400 hectares.

10. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: All societies have languages in which certain spoken sounds convey certain meanings. This is verbal communication. Writing too is verbal communication – but differently. The first Mesopotamian tablets were written around 3200 BCE.

11. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Herders need to exchange young animals, cheese, leather and meat in return for grain, metal tools, etc., and the manure of a penned flock is also of great use to a farmer. Yet, at the same time, there may be conflict. A shepherd may take his flock to water across a sown field, to the ruin of the crop. Herdsmen being mobile can raid agricultural villages and seize their stored goods.

12. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Located on the Euphrates in a prime position for trade – in wood, copper, tin, oil, wine, and various other goods that were carried in boats along the Euphrates – between the south and the mineral-rich uplands of Turkey, Syria and Lebanon, Mari is a good example of an urban centre prospering on trade.

13. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: The most poignant reminder to us of the pride Mesopotamians took in their cities comes at the end of the Gilgamesh Epic, which was written on twelve tablets.

14. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Earliest temples in southern Mesopotamia were built in c. 5000 BCE. The replacement of Sumerians by Akkadian took place in c. 2400 BCE. The Assyrian empire was established in 720-610 BCE. The development of the cuneiform script took place in 2600 BCE.

15. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: At the beginning of recorded history, the land, mainly the urbanised south was called Sumer and Akkad. After 2000 BCE, when Babylon became an important city, the term Babylonia was used for the southern region. From about 1100 BCE, when the Assyrians established their kingdom in the north, the region became known as Assyria.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

3 AN EMPIRE ACROSS THREE CONTINENTS – THE ROMAN EMPIRE

Political history of the empire

- Sources of Study: Roman history is based on three main sources: (1) texts, (2) documents and 3) material remains.
- Two powerful empires of Rome and Iran ruled over most of Europe, North Africa and the Middle East in the period between the birth of Christ and the early part of the seventh century.
- Rome dominated the Mediterranean and all the regions around that sea in both directions, north as well as south.
- Iran controlled the whole area south of the Caspian Sea, down to eastern Arabia.
- The Roman Empire is broadly divided into two phases, 'Early Roman Empire' and 'Late Roman Empire'.
- Since the Roman Empire ruled over vast regions, many languages were spoken in the empire, but for administration Latin and Greek were the most widely used languages, indeed the only languages.
- The regime established by Augustus, the first emperor, in 27 BCE was called the Principate.
- The body which had run Rome earlier, in the days when it was a Republic.
- The Romans had a paid professional army where soldiers had to put in a minimum of 25 years of service. Indeed, the existence of a paid army was a distinctive feature of the Roman Empire.
- The emperor, the aristocracy and the army were the three main 'players' in the political history of the empire.
- The success of individual emperors depended on their control of the army, and when the armies were divided, the result usually was the civil war.
- Tiberius (14–37 CE), was the adopted son of Augustus, who became the next emperor.
- The empire inherited by Tiberius from Augustus was very vast. The Augustan age is remembered for the *peace* it ushered in after decades of internal strife and centuries of military conquest.
- Much more characteristic was the gradual extension of Roman direct rule. This was accomplished by absorbing a whole series of 'dependent' kingdoms into Roman provincial territory.
- In fact, except for Italy, which was not considered a province in these centuries, all the territories of the empire were organised into provinces and were subject to taxation.
- At its peak in the second century, the Roman Empire stretched from Scotland to the borders of Armenia, and from the Sahara to the Euphrates and sometimes beyond.
- Public baths were a striking feature of Roman urban life.

The Third-Century Crisis

- If the first and second centuries were, by and large, a period of peace, prosperity and economic expansion, the third century brought the first major signs of internal strain.
- From the 230s, the empire found itself fighting on several fronts simultaneously. In Iran, a new and more aggressive dynasty emerged in 225 (they called themselves the Sasanians) and within just 15 years, they were expanding rapidly in the direction of the Euphrates.
- Meanwhile, a whole series of Germanic tribes or rather tribal confederacies (most notably, the Alamanni, the Franks and the Goths) began to move against the Rhine and Danube frontiers, and the whole period from 233 to 280 saw repeated invasions of a whole line of provinces that stretched from the Black Sea to the Alps and southern Germany.
- The Romans were forced to abandon much of the territory beyond the Danube, while the emperors of this period were constantly in the field against what the Romans called *barbarians*.

Gender, Literacy, Culture

- One of the more modern features of Roman society was the widespread prevalence of the nuclear family.
- Adult sons did not live with their families, and it was exceptional for adult brothers to share a common household.
- On the other hand, slaves were included in the family as the Romans understood this. By the late Republic (the first century BCE), the typical form of marriage was one where the wife did not transfer to her husband's authority but retained full rights in the property of her natal family.
- While the woman's dowry went to the husband for the duration of the marriage, the woman remained a primary heir of her father and became an independent property owner on her father's death.
- Thus, Roman women enjoyed considerable legal rights in owning and managing property.
- Divorce was relatively easy and needed no more than a notice of intent to dissolve the marriage by either husband or wife.
- Marriages were generally arranged, and there is no doubt that women were often subject to domination by their husbands.
- Certainly, rates of casual literacy varied greatly between different parts of the empire.

- Literacy was certainly more widespread among certain categories such as soldiers, army officers and estate managers.
- The cultural diversity of the empire was reflected in many ways and at many levels.
- But many of these linguistic cultures were purely oral, at least until a script was invented for them.
- Elsewhere, the spread of Latin displaced the written form of otherwise widespread languages; this happened notably with Celtic, which ceased to be written after the first century.

Economic Expansion

- The empire had a substantial economic infrastructure of harbours, mines, quarries, brickyards, olive oil factories, etc.
- Wheat, wine and olive oil were traded and consumed in huge quantities, and they came mainly from Spain, the Gallic provinces, North Africa, Egypt and, to a lesser extent, Italy.
- Liquids like wine and olive oil were transported in containers called amphorae.
- The empire included many regions that had a reputation for exceptional fertility.
- On the other hand, large expanses of Roman territory were in a much less advanced state.
- Their forms of cultural and economic life were not necessarily backward or primitive.
- They had diversified applications of water power around the Mediterranean as well as advances in water-powered milling technology, the use of hydraulic mining techniques in the Spanish gold and silver mines and the gigantic industrial scale on which those mines were worked in the first and second centuries.
- There was the existence of well-organised commercial and banking networks, and the widespread use of money are all indications of how much we tend to underestimate the sophistication of the Roman economy.

Controlling Workers

- Slavery was an institution deeply rooted in the ancient world, both in the Mediterranean and in the Near East.
- It does not follow that the bulk of the labour in the Roman economy was performed by slaves.
- As warfare became less widespread with the establishment of peace in the first century, the supply of slaves tended to decline and also the users of slave labour.
- Free labour was extensively used on public works in Rome precisely because extensive use of slave labour would have been too expensive.
- Unlike hired workers, slaves had to be fed and maintained throughout the year, which increased the cost of holding this kind of labour.
- On the other hand, they and freedmen, that is, slaves who had been set free by their masters were extensively used as business managers, where they were not required in large numbers.
- Masters often gave their slaves or freedmen some capital to run businesses on their behalf or even businesses of their own.

Social Hierarchies

- Tacitus described the leading social groups of the early empire as follows: senators (patres, lit. fathers); leading members of the equestrian class; the respectable section of the people, those attached to the great houses; the unkempt lower class (plebs sordida) who, he tells us, were addicted to the circus and theatrical displays; and finally, the slaves.
- By the late empire, the first two groups mentioned by Tacitus (the senators and the equities, the knights or horsemen) had merged into a unified and expanded aristocracy.
- This 'late Roman' aristocracy was enormously wealthy but in many ways less powerful than the purely military elites who came almost entirely from non-aristocratic backgrounds.
- The 'middle' class now consisted of the considerable mass of persons connected with imperial service in the bureaucracy and army but also the more prosperous merchants and farmers, of whom there were many in the eastern provinces.
- Below them were the vast mass of the lower classes known collectively as humiliores (lit. 'lower').
- They comprised a rural labour force of which many were permanently employed on the large estates; workers in industrial and mining establishments; migrant workers who supplied much of the labour for the grain and olive harvests and the building industry; self-employed artisans who, it was said, were better fed than wage labourers; a large mass of casual labourers, especially in the big cities; and of course the many thousands of slaves that were still found all over the western empire in particular.
- Constantine founded the new monetary system on gold and there were vast amounts of this in circulation throughout late antiquity.
- The late Roman bureaucracy, both the higher and middle echelons, was a comparatively affluent group because it drew the bulk of its salary in gold and invested much of this in buying up assets like land.
- Emperors were not free to do whatever they liked, and the law was actively used to protect civil rights.

Late Antiquity

- Late antiquity is the term now used to describe the final, fascinating period in the evolution and break-up of the Roman Empire and refers broadly to the fourth to seventh centuries.
- At the cultural level, the period saw momentous developments in religious life, with the emperor Constantine deciding to make Christianity the official religion, with the rise of Islam in the seventh century.
- Overexpansion had led Diocletian to 'cut back' by abandoning territories with little strategic or economic value.
- Diocletian also fortified the frontiers, reorganised provincial boundaries, and separated civilians from military functions, granting greater autonomy to the military commanders (duces), who now became a more powerful group.
- Constantine consolidated some of these changes and added others of his own. His chief innovations were in the monetary sphere, where he introduced a new denomination, the solidus (a coin of 4 1/2 gm of pure

gold). Solidi were minted on a very large scale and their circulation ran into millions.
- The other area of innovation was the creation of a second capital at Constantinople (at the site of modern Istanbul in Turkey, and previously called Byzantium), surrounded on three sides by the sea.
- As the new capital required a new senate, the fourth century was a period of rapid expansion of the governing classes.
- Monetary stability and an expanding population stimulated economic growth.
- All of this carried over into strong urban prosperity that was marked by new forms of architecture and an exaggerated sense of luxury.
- The ruling elites were wealthier and more powerful than ever before.
- The traditional religious culture of the classical world, both Greek and Roman, had been polytheist.
- The other great religious tradition in the empire was Judaism. But Judaism was not a monolith either, and there was a great deal of diversity within the Jewish communities of late antiquity.
- Thus, the 'Christianisation' of the empire in the fourth and fifth centuries was a gradual and complex process.
- The general prosperity was especially marked in the East where the population was still expanding till the sixth century, despite the impact of the plague which affected the Mediterranean in the 540s.
- In the West, by contrast, the empire fragmented politically as Germanic groups from the North (Goths, Vandals, Lombards, etc.) took over all the major provinces and established kingdoms that are best described as 'post-Roman'.
- In the East, where the empire remained united, the reign of Justinian is the highwater mark of prosperity and imperial ambition.
- By the early seventh century, the war between Rome and Iran had flared up again, and the Sasanians who had ruled Iran since the third century launched a wholesale invasion of all the major eastern provinces (including Egypt).
- When Byzantium, as the Roman Empire was now increasingly known, recovered these provinces in the 620s, it was just a few years away, literally, from the final major blow which came, this time, from the south-east.
- The expansion of Islam from its beginnings in Arabia has been called 'the greatest political revolution ever to occur in the history of the ancient world'.
- By 642, barely ten years after the Prophet Muhammad's death, large parts of both the eastern Roman and Sasanian empires had fallen to the Arabs in a series of stunning confrontations.
- The unification of the Arabian Peninsula and its numerous tribes was the key factor behind the territorial expansion of Islam.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Roman historians' collection of sources can be broadly divided into three groups. Two of them are texts and material remains. Name the third group.
(a) Journal **(b)** Documents
(c) Words **(d)** Images

2. Which languages can be used for administration in the Roman Empire?
(a) Latin **(b)** Greek
(c) (a) and (b) **(d)** French

3. Which sea separates the continents of Europe and Africa?
(a) Mediterranean Sea **(b)** Tyrrhenian Sea
(c) Adriatic Sea **(d)** Red Sea

4. Which of the following was a striking feature of Roman urban life?
(a) Malnutrition **(b)** Army
(c) Public baths **(d)** Countryside

5. Who were papyrologists?
(a) Archaeologists **(b)** Ancient doctors
(c) Papyrus scholars **(d)** Magicians

6. Which law was referred to workers being branded, so that they could be recognised if and when they run away and try to hide while working in a factory?
(a) 453 **(b)** 299
(c) 398 **(d)** 420

7. Which of the following is not the exporter of wine and olive in the later fifth and sixth century?
(a) Syria **(b)** Palestine
(c) Spain **(d)** Turkey

8. What were the oven-shaped huts, in which pastoral and semi-nomadic communities moved, called?
(a) Mapalia **(b)** Fundi
(c) Castella **(d)** Turkey

9. What was the regime established by Augustus, the first emperor, in 27 BCE called?
(a) Principate **(b)** Senate
(c) Republic **(d)** Augustan age

10. When was Rome sacked by the Visigoths?
(a) 410 BCE **(b)** 420 BCE
(c) 430 BCE **(d)** 450 BCE

11. The _____ Empire covered a vast stretch of territory that included most of Europe as we know it today and a large part of the Fertile Crescent and North Africa.
(a) British **(b)** Mongol
(c) Roman **(d)** European

12. The Roman Empire can broadly be divided into two phases, 'early' and 'late', divided by the _____ century.
(a) Third **(b)** Fourth
(c) Fifth **(d)** Sixth

13. Herod's kingdom yielded the equivalent of _____ million denarii per year, equal to over 125,000 kg of gold.
(a) 3.2 **(b)** 6.5
(c) 5.4 **(d)** 2.5

14. The first and second centuries were, by and large, a period of _____, prosperity and economic expansion.
(a) health **(b)** peace
(c) wealth **(d)** None of the above
15. In Roman society, adult _____ did not live with their families, and it was exceptional for adult brothers to share a common household.
(a) daughters **(b)** sons
(c) sisters **(d)** family members
16. The Romans were forced to abandon much of the territory beyond the Danube, while the emperors of this period were constantly in the field against what the Romans called _____.
(a) Barbarians **(b)** Augustine
(c) Confederacy **(d)** None of the above
17. Lucius Pedanius Secundus was murdered by one of his _____.
(a) Wives **(b)** slaves
(c) brothers **(d)** ministers
18. _____, a first-century writer who came from the south of Spain during the Roman Empire.
(a) Columella **(b)** Pedro Antonio
(c) Baltasar del Alcázar **(d)** Miguel
19. The _____ of the late empire broke with the silver-based currencies of the first three centuries because the Spanish silver mines were exhausted.
(a) economic growth **(b)** monetary system
(c) social welfare **(d)** All of the above
20. _____ is the term now used to describe the final, fascinating period in the evolution and break-up of the Roman Empire.
(a) Late antiquity **(b)** Overexpansion
(c) Bureaucracy **(d)** Senators
21. What happened in the year 711?
(a) Arabs capture Carthage
(b) Arab invasion of Spain
(c) Lombards invade Italy
(d) Muhammad and companions leave Mecca for Medina
22. Textual sources include histories of the period written by contemporaries, and were usually called 'Annals', because _____.
(a) the narrative was constructed on a year-by-year basis
(b) the terms used were mostly period wise
(c) the Roman historian sources changes after every four years
(d) None of the above
23. In the early empire, the upper classes of the east spoke and wrote in which language?
(a) Latin **(b)** Greek
(c) Mediterranean **(d)** All of the above

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements:
1. Roman society saw the widespread prevalence of the joint family.
2. Slaves were included in the family.
3. The typical form of marriage was one where the wife did not transfer to her husband's authority but retained full rights in the property of her natal family.
4. Roman women enjoyed considerable legal rights in owning and managing property.
Which of the above statements is/are related to Roman society?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3
(c) 2, 3 and 4 **(d)** 1, 3 and 2
2. Consider the following statements:
1. By the sixth century BCE, Iranians had established control over major parts of the Assyrian empire.
2. Networks of trade developed over land, as well as along the coasts of the Mediterranean Sea.
3. In the eastern Mediterranean, Greek cities and their colonies did not get any benefits from improvements in the trade that were the result of these changes.
4. They also benefited from close trade with nomadic people to the north of the Black Sea.
Which of the above statements is/are true?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 4
(c) 1, 2, 3 and 4 **(d)** 1, 3 and 1
3. Consider the following statements:
1. This timeline focuses on kingdoms and empires.
2. This was also the time when some of the major religious and cultural traditions developed.
3. It was a time when institutions of intellectual activity emerged.
4. Some things that are now part of our everyday lives were used for the first time during this period.
Which of the above statements is/are true about the timeline, c. 100 BCE to 1300 CE?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 4
(c) 2, 3 and 4 **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4
4. Consider the following statements:
1. Prophet Muhammad goes to Medina
2. The beginning of the Hijri era
3. The collapse of the Sasanian Empire
4. Establishment of the Turkish empire by Alp Arsalan
Which of the following took place during the time period of 600–650?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3
(c) 2, 3 and 4 **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4
5. Consider the following statements:
1. Walls on the main streets of Pompeii often carried advertisements.
2. Graffiti were found all over the city.
What do the given statements indicate?
(a) Equality **(b)** Literacy
(c) Technology **(d)** Skilled-labour
6. **Assertion (A):** Pliny the Elder, the author of a very famous 'Natural History', condemned the use of slave gangs as the worst method of organising production
Reason (R): Slaves who worked in gangs were usually chained together by their feet.
Choose the correct option:
(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(c) A is true but R is false.
(d) A is false but R is true.

7. **Assertion (A):** There was a major difference between the two superpowers and their respective empires, i.e., Roman and Iran.
   Reason (R): The Roman Empire was culturally much more diverse than that of Iran.
   Choose the correct option:
   (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
   (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
   (c) A is true but R is false.
   (d) A is false but R is true.
8. **Assertion:** In law, the married couple was not one financial entity but two, and the wife enjoyed complete legal independence.
   Reason: Roman women enjoyed considerable legal rights in owning and managing property.
   Choose the correct option:
   (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
   (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
   (c) A is true but R is false.
   (d) A is false but R is true.
9. Consider the following statements:
   1. He was the second in the long line of Roman emperors. He was not the natural son of Augustus.
   2. He founded the Principate.
   Identify the ruler from the following options:
   (a) Tiberius **(b)** Augustus
   (c) Alexander **(d)** Shapur I
10. Consider the following statements:
   1. They were rivals and fought against each other for much of their history.
   2. Their empires lay next to each other, separated only by a narrow strip of land that ran along the river Euphrates.
   Identify 'they' in the given statements.
   (a) Romans and Bulgarians
   (b) Romans and French
   (c) French and Iranian
   (d) Romans and Iranians
11. **Assertion:** The Roman Empire was divided into eastern and western halves in the fourth century CE.
   Reason: This took place to make government easier.
   Choose the correct option:
   (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
   (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
   (c) A is true but R is false.
   (d) A is false but R is true.

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Roman historians have a rich collection of sources to go on, which we can broadly divide into three groups: (a) texts, (b) documents, and (c) material remains.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Many languages were spoken in the empire, but for administration Latin and Greek were the most widely used.
3. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The continents of Europe and Africa are separated by a sea that stretches from Spain in the west to Syria in the east. This sea is called the Mediterranean.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Public baths were a striking feature of Roman urban life.
5. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Papyrus scholars would maintain thousands of contracts, accounts, letters and official documents 'on papyrus.'
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: A law of 398 referred to workers being branded so they could be recognised if and when they run away and try to hide.
7. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: In the later fifth and sixth centuries the Aegean, southern Asia Minor (Turkey), Syria and Palestine became major exporters of wine and olive oil.
8. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: These pastoral and semi-nomadic communities were often on the move, carrying their oven-shaped huts (called Mapalia) with them.
9. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The regime established by Augustus, the first emperor, in 27 BCE was called the 'Principate'.
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
    Explanation: Rome was sacked by the Visigoths in 410 BCE.
11. **Option (c) is correct.**
    Explanation: The Roman Empire covered a vast stretch of territory that included most of Europe as we know it today and a large part of the Fertile Crescent and North Africa.
12. **Option (a) is correct.**
    Explanation: The Roman Empire can broadly be divided into two phases, 'early' and 'late', divided by the third century as a sort of historical watershed between them. In other words, the whole period down to the main part of the third century can be called the 'early empire', and the period after that the 'late empire.
13. **Option (c) is correct.**
    Explanation: Herod's kingdom yielded the equivalent of 5.4 million denarii per year, equal to over 125,000 kg of gold.
14. **Option (b) is correct.**
    Explanation: The first and second centuries were, by and large, a period of peace, prosperity and economic expansion, the third century brought the first major signs of internal strain.

15. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: One of the more modern features of Roman society was the widespread prevalence of the nuclear family. Adult sons did not live with their families, and it was exceptional for adult brothers to share a common household.
16. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Romans were forced to abandon much of the territory beyond the Danube, while the emperors of this period were constantly in the field against what the Romans called 'barbarians'.
17. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Lucius Pedanius Secundus was murdered by one of his slaves.
18. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Columella is a first-century writer who came from the south of Spain.
19. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The monetary system of the late empire broke with the silver-based currencies of the first three centuries because the Spanish silver mines were exhausted and the government ran out of sufficient stocks of the metal to support a stable coinage in silver.
20. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: 'Late antiquity' is the term now used to describe the final, fascinating period in the evolution and break-up of the Roman Empire and refers broadly to the fourth to seventh centuries.
21. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 711, Muslim forces invaded and in seven years conquered the Iberian Peninsula (Spain). It became one of the great Muslim civilisations; reaching its summit with the Umayyad caliphate of Cordova in the tenth century. Muslim rule declined after that and ended in 1492 when Granada was conquered.
22. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Textual sources include histories of the period written by contemporaries (these were usually called 'Annals' because the narrative was constructed on a year-by-year basis), letters, speeches, sermons, laws, and so on.
23. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The upper classes of the east spoke and wrote in Greek, those of the west in Latin, and the boundary between these broad language areas ran somewhere across the middle of the Mediterranean, between the African provinces of Tripolitania (which was Latin speaking) and Cyrenaica (Greek-speaking).

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Roman family was a nuclear family. It was not a joint family. Adult sons did not live with their families, and it was exceptional for adult brothers to share a common household. On the other hand, slaves were included in the family as the Romans understood this.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: By the sixth century BCE, Iranians had established control over major parts of the Assyrian empire. Networks of trade developed overland, as well as along the coasts of the Mediterranean Sea. In the eastern Mediterranean, Greek cities and their colonies benefited from improvements in the trade that were the result of these changes. They also benefited from close trade with nomadic people to the north of the Black Sea.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: This timeline focuses on kingdoms and empires. Some of these such as the Roman Empire were very large, spreading across three continents. This was also the time when some of the major religious and cultural traditions developed. It was a time when institutions of intellectual activity emerged. Some things that are now part of our everyday lives were used for the first time during this period.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Prophet Muhammad goes to Medina; the beginning of the Hijri era (622) and the collapse of the Sasanian empire (642) took place during the period of 600-650.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In Pompeii, which was buried in a volcanic eruption in 79 CE, there is strong evidence of widespread casual literacy. Walls on the main streets of Pompeii often carried advertisements, and graffiti were found all over the city.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Pliny the Elder, the author of a very famous 'Natural History', condemned the use of slave gangs as the worst method of organising production, mainly because slaves who worked in gangs were usually chained together by their feet.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: A major difference between the two superpowers and their respective empires was that the Roman Empire was culturally much more diverse than that of Iran.
8. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Roman women enjoyed considerable legal rights in owning and managing property. In law, the married couple was not one financial entity but two, and the wife enjoyed complete legal independence.
9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Tiberius (14–37 CE), the second in the long line of Roman emperors, was not the natural son of Augustus, the ruler who founded the Principate, but Augustus adopted him to ensure a smooth transition.
10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Romans and the Iranians were rivals and fought against each other for much of their history. Their empires lay next to each other, separated only by a narrow strip of land that ran along the river Euphrates.
11. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Both statements are correct and are of cause and effect relationship.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

4 THE CENTRAL ISLAMIC LANDS

The Rise of Islam in Arabia: Faith, Community, and Politics

- During 612-32, the Prophet Muhammad preached the worship of a single God, Allah, and the membership of a single community of believers (Umma).
- Sixth-century Arab culture was largely confined to the Arabian Peninsula and areas of southern Syria and Mesopotamia.
- The Arabs were divided into tribes (qabila), each led by a chief who was chosen partly based on his family connections but more for his courage, wisdom, and generosity (murawwa). Each tribe had its god or goddess, who was worshipped as an idol (Sanam) in a shrine.
- Muhammad's own tribe, Quraysh, lived in Mecca and controlled the main shrine there, a cube-like structure called Kaba, in which idols were placed.
- Around 612, Muhammad declared himself to be the messenger (rasul) of God who had been commanded to preach that Allah alone should be worshipped.
- The worship involved simple rituals, such as daily prayers (salat), and moral principles, such as distributing alms and abstaining from theft.
- The community would bear witness (shahada) to the existence of the religion before God as well as before members of other religious communities.
- Muhammad's message particularly appealed to those Meccans who felt deprived of the gains from trade and religion and were looking for new community identity. Those who accepted the doctrine were called Muslims.
- The Muslims soon faced considerable opposition from affluent Meccans who took offence to the rejection of their deities and found the new religion a threat to the status and prosperity of Mecca.
- In 622, Muhammad was forced to migrate with his followers to Medina. Muhammad's journey from Mecca (hijra) was a turning point in the history of Islam.
- The umma was converted into a wider community to include polytheists and the Jews of Medina under the political leadership of Muhammad.
- Muhammad now insisted on conversion as the sole criterion for membership of the community.
- Medina became the administrative capital of the emerging Islamic state with Mecca as its religious centre. The Kaba was cleansed of idols as Muslims were required to face the shrine when offering prayers.

The Caliphate: Expansion, Civil Wars, and Sect Formation

- After the death of Muhammad in 632, no one could legitimately claim to be the next prophet of Islam. As a result, his political authority was transferred to the umma with no established principle of succession.
- The biggest innovation was the creation of the institution of the caliphate, in which the leader of the community (Amir al-Muminin) became the deputy (Khalifa) of the Prophet.
- The twin objectives of the caliphate were to retain control over the tribes constituting the umma and to raise resources for the state.
- Following Muhammad's death, many tribes broke away from the Islamic state. Some even raised their prophets to establish communities modelled on the umma.
- The first caliph, Abu Bakr, suppressed the revolts by a series of campaigns. The second caliph, Umar, shaped the umma's policy of expansion of power.
- Realising that rich booty (Ghanima) could be obtained from expeditionary raids, the caliph and his military commanders mustered their tribal strength to conquer lands belonging to the Byzantine Empire in the west and the Sasanian empire in the east.
- The Byzantine Empire promoted Christianity and the Sasanian empire patronised Zoroastrianism, the ancient religion of Iran.
- In three successful campaigns (637–642), the Arabs brought Syria, Iraq, Iran, and Egypt under the control of Medina.
- Military strategy, religious fervour, and the weakness of the opposition contributed to the success of the Arabs.
- Further campaigns were launched by the third caliph, Uthman, to extend the control to Central Asia.
- In all the conquered provinces, the caliphs imposed a new administrative structure headed by governors (Amirs) and tribal chieftains (Ashraf).
- The central treasury (bait al-mal) obtained its revenue from taxes paid by Muslims as well as its share of the booty from raids.
- The caliph's soldiers, mostly Bedouins, settled in camp cities at the edge of the desert, such as Kufa and Basra, to remain within reach of their natural habitat as well as the caliph's command.
- The non-Muslim population retained their rights to property and religious practices on payment of taxes (Kharaj and Jizya). Jews and Christians were declared protected subjects of the state (dhimmis) and given a large measure of autonomy in the conduct of their communal affairs.

- Political expansion and unification did not come easily to the Arab tribesmen.
- The rifts among the Muslims deepened after Ali (656-61) fought two wars against those who represented the Meccan aristocracy.
- Ali (the fourth caliph) established himself at Kufa and defeated an army led by Muhammad's wife, Aisha, in the Battle of the Camel (657). He was, however, not able to suppress the faction led by Muawiya, a kinsman of Uthman and the governor of Syria.
- Ali's second battle, at Siffin (northern Mesopotamia), ended in a truce that split his followers into two groups: some remained loyal to him, while others left the camp and came to be known as Khariji.

The Umayyads and the Centralisation of Polity

- The Umayyads implemented a series of political measures which consolidated their leadership within the umma.
- The first Umayyad caliph, Muawiya, moved his capital to Damascus and adopted the court ceremonies and administrative institutions of the Byzantine Empire.
- The Umayyad state was now an imperial power, no longer based directly on Islam but on statecraft and the loyalty of Syrian troops.
- The Umayyads always appealed for unity and suppressed rebellions in the name of Islam. They also retained their Arab social identity.
- During the reign of Abd al-Malik (685-705) and his successors, both the Arab and Islamic identities were strongly emphasised. Among the measures Abd al-Malik took was the adoption of Arabic as the language of administration and the introduction of Islamic coinage.
- The gold dinar and silver dirham that had been circulating in the caliphate were copies of Byzantine and Iranian coins (denarius and drachm), with symbols of crosses and fire altars and Greek and Pahlavi (the language of Iran) inscriptions.
- A well-organized movement, called Dawa, brought down the Umayyads and replaced them with another family of Meccan origin, the Abbasids, in 750.
- The Abbasids portrayed the Umayyad regime as evil and promised a restoration of the original Islam of the Prophet.
- The Abbasid uprising broke out in the distant region of Khurasan (eastern Iran), a 20-day journey from Damascus on a fast horse. Khurasan had a mixed Arab-Iranian population which could be mobilized for various reasons.
- The civilian Arabs of Khurasan disliked the Umayyad regime for having made promises of tax concessions and privileges which were never fulfilled.
- The Abbasids, descendants of Abbas, the Prophet's uncle, mustered the support of the various dissident groups and legitimised their bid for power by promising that a messiah (Mahdi) from the family of the Prophet (Ahl al-Bayt) would liberate them from the oppressive Umayyad regime.
- The Abbasids established their capital at Baghdad, near the ruins of the ancient Iranian metropolis, Ctesiphon.
- The Abbasid rulers strengthened the religious status and functions of the caliphate and patronised Islamic institutions and scholars.

Break-up of the Caliphate and the Rise of Sultanates

- The Abbasid state became weaker from the ninth century because Baghdad's control over the distant provinces declined, and because of conflict between pro-Arab and pro-Iranian factions in the army and bureaucracy.
- In 810, a civil war broke out between supporters of Amin and Mamun, sons of the caliph Harun al-Rashid, which deepened the factionalism and created a new power bloc of Turkish slave officers (mamluk).
- Several minor dynasties arose, such as the Tahirids and Samanids in Khurasan and Transoxiana (Turan or lands beyond the Oxus), and the Tulunids in Egypt and Syria.
- The Fatimids belonged to the Ismaili sub-sect of Shiism and claimed to be descended from the Prophet's daughter, Fatima, and hence, the sole rightful rulers of Islam. From their base in North Africa, they conquered Egypt in 969 and established the Fatimid caliphate.
- The old capital of Egypt, Fustat, was replaced by a new city, Qahira (Cairo), founded on the day of the rise of the planet Mars (Mirrikh, also called al-Qahir).
- Between 950 and 1200, Islamic society was held together not by a single political order or a single language of culture (Arabic) but by common economic and cultural patterns.
- Unity in the face of political divisions was maintained by the separation between state and society, the development of Persian as a language of Islamic high culture, and the maturity of the dialogue between intellectual traditions.
- The identity of Islam as a religion and a cultural system separated from other religions became much sharper, which made conversion possible and meaningful.
- A third ethnic group was added to the Arabs and Iranians, with the rise of the Turkish sultanates in the tenth and eleventh centuries.
- Turks were nomadic tribes from the Central Asian steppes (grasslands) of Turkistan (north-east of the Aral Sea up to the borders of China) who gradually converted to Islam.
- The caliph was willing to support the Sunni Ghaznavid as a counterweight to Shiite power.
- The Seljuq Turks entered Turan as soldiers in the armies of the Samanids and Qarakhanids (non-Muslim Turks from further east).
- The Seljuqs next turned their attention to western Persia and Iraq (ruled by the Buyids) and, in 1055, restored Baghdad to Sunni rule.
- The caliph, al-Qaim, conferred on Tughril Beg the title of Sultan in a move that marked the separation of religious and political authority. The two Seljuq brothers ruled together following the tribal notion of rule by the family as a whole. Tughril (d. 1064) was succeeded by his nephew, Alp Arsalan.

The Crusades

- In medieval Islamic societies, Christians were regarded as the People of the Book (Ahl al-Kitab) since they had their scripture (the New Testament or Injil).

- Christians were granted safe-conduct (aman) while venturing into Muslim states as merchants, pilgrims, ambassadors and travellers.
- Jerusalem was conquered by the Arabs in 638, but it was ever-present in the Christian imagination as the place of Jesus' crucifixion and resurrection.
- Hostility towards the Muslim world became more pronounced in the eleventh century. Normans, Hungarians, and some Slavs had been converted to Christianity, and the Muslims alone remained as the main enemy.
- There was also a change in the social and economic organisation of western Europe in the eleventh century which contributed to the hostility between Christendom and the Islamic world.
- The Peace of God deflected the aggressive tendencies of feudal society away from the Christian world and towards the 'enemies' of God.
- In 1095, the Pope joined the Byzantine emperor in calling for a war in the name of God to liberate the Holy Land.
- In the first crusade (1098–99), soldiers from France and Italy captured Antioch in Syria, and claimed Jerusalem. Their victory was accompanied by the slaughter of Muslims and Jews in the city, chronicled by both Christians and Muslims.
- The Outremer survived well for some time, but when the Turks captured Edessa in 1144, an appeal was made by the Pope for a second crusade (1145–49).
- The Mamluks, the rulers of Egypt, finally drove the crusading Christians from all of Palestine in 1291.
- The Crusades left a lasting impact on two aspects of Christian-Muslim relations. One was the harsher attitude of the Muslim state towards its Christian subjects and the other was the greater influence of Italian mercantile communities (from Pisa, Genoa and Venice) in the trade between the East and the West even after the restoration of Muslim power.

Economy: Agriculture, Urbanisation, and Commerce

- Agriculture was the principal occupation of the settled populations in the newly conquered territories.
- In Iraq and Iran, the land existed in fairly large units cultivated by peasants. The estate owners collected taxes on behalf of the state during the Sasanian as well as Islamic periods.
- The state had overall control of agricultural lands, deriving the bulk of its income from land revenue once the conquests were over.
- The lands conquered by the Arabs that remained in the hands of the owners were subject to a tax (Kharaj), which varied from half to a fifth of the produce, according to the conditions of cultivation.
- When non-Muslims started to convert to Islam to pay lower taxes, this reduced the income of the state. To address the shortfall, the caliphs first discouraged conversions and later adopted a uniform policy of taxation.
- In many areas, especially in the Nile valley, the state-supported irrigation systems, the construction of dams and canals, and the digging of wells (often equipped with waterwheels or noria), all of which were crucial for good harvests.
- Islamic law gave tax concessions to people who brought the land under cultivation.
- At the heart of the city were two building complexes radiating cultural and economic power: the congregational mosque (Masjid al-Jami), big enough to be seen from a distance, and the central marketplace (souk), with shops in a row, merchants' lodgings (fanduq) and the office of the money-changer.
- Political unification and urban demand for foodstuffs and luxuries enlarged the circuit of exchange.
- For five centuries, Arab and Iranian traders monopolised the maritime trade between China, India and Europe.
- Towards the eastern end, caravans of Iranian merchants set out from Baghdad along the Silk Route to China, via the oasis cities of Bukhara and Samarqand (Transoxiana), to bring Central Asian and Chinese goods, including paper.
- The fiscal system (income and expenditure of the state) and market exchange increased the importance of money in the central Islamic lands.
- The greatest contribution of the Muslim world to medieval economic life was the development of superior methods of payment and business organisation.

Learning and Culture

- For religious scholars (ulama), knowledge (Ilm) derived from the Quran and the model behaviour of the Prophet (Sunna) was the only way to know the will of God and provide guidance in this world.
- The ulama in medieval times devoted themselves to writing 'tafsir' and documenting Muhammad's authentic 'hadith'.
- The sharia guided on all possible legal issues within Sunni society, though it was more precise on questions of personal status (marriage, divorce and inheritance) than on commercial matters or penal and constitutional issues.
- A group of religious-minded people in medieval Islam, known as Sufis, sought a deeper and more personal knowledge of God through asceticism (Rahbaniya) and mysticism.
- Pantheism is the idea of the oneness of God and his creation which implies that the human soul must be united with its maker.
- The study of new subjects promoted critical inquiry and had a profound influence on Islamic intellectual life. Scholars with a theological bent of mind, such as the group known as Mutazila, used Greek logic and methods of reasoning (Kalam) to defend Islamic beliefs.
- In medieval Islamic societies, fine language and creative imagination were among the most appreciated qualities in a person.
- By the time the Arabs conquered Iran, Pahlavi, the language of the sacred books of ancient Iran, was in decay.
- At the beginning of the eleventh century, Ghazni became the centre of Persian literary life. Poets were naturally attracted by the brilliance of the imperial court. Rulers, too, realised the importance of patronising arts and learning for enhancing their prestige.

- The catalogue (Kitab al-Fihrist) of a Baghdad bookseller, Ibn Nadim (d. 895), describes a large number of works written in prose for the moral education and amusement of readers.
- From the ninth century onwards, the scope of adab was expanded to include biographies, manuals of ethics (akhlaq), Mirrors for Princes (books on statecraft) and, above all, history (Tarikh) and geography.
- In the two major historical works, 'Ansab al-Ashraf' (Genealogies of the Nobles) of Baladhuri (d. 892) and 'Tarikh al-Rusul wal Muluk' (History of Prophets and Kings) of Tabari, the whole of human history was treated with the Islamic period as the focal point.
- Geography and travel (rihla) constituted a special branch of adab (literature). This combined knowledge from Greek, Iranian and Indian books with the observations of merchants and travellers.
- The exact position of each city was determined astronomically. Muqaddasi's (d. 1000) descriptive geography, 'Ahsan al-Taqasim' (The Best Divisions) is a comparative study of the countries and peoples of the world and a treasure trove of exotic curiosities.
- By the tenth century, an Islamic world had emerged which was easily recognisable by travellers. Religious buildings were the greatest external symbols of this world. Mosques, shrines and tombs from Spain to Central Asia showed the same basic design – arches, domes, minarets and open courtyards – and expressed the spiritual and practical needs of Muslims.
- The Umayyads built 'desert palaces' in oases, such as 'Khirbat al-Mafjar' in Palestine and Qusayr Amra in Jordan, which served as luxurious residences and retreats for hunting and pleasure.
- The history of the central Islamic lands brings together three important aspects of human civilization: religion, community and politics.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which of the following areas did not imbibe Arab culture in the 6th century?
(a) Southern Syria **(b)** Mesopotamia
(c) Arabian Peninsula **(d)** France

2. Which of the following is the basis on which the classification of Arabs took place?
(a) Family connections **(b)** Personal Courage
(c) Wisdom **(d)** All of the above

3. Which of the following controlled a cube-like structure called Kaba?
(a) Quraysh **(b)** Murawwa
(c) Mecca **(d)** Jibril

4. Which of the following is not involved in the worship of Allah preached by Muhammad?
(a) Salat
(b) Abstaining from theft
(c) Distributing alms
(d) Bathing daily

5. Which of the following community was promised salvation on the day of Judgement?
(a) Muslims **(b)** Hindus
(c) Christians **(d)** Sikhs

6. When was Muhammad forced to migrate with his followers to Medina?
(a) 522 **(b)** 622
(c) 650 **(d)** 700

7. Which of the following letters shows a date in the Hijri calendar?
(a) AD **(b)** AG
(c) AH **(d)** AM

8. Which of the following is the correct formula to calculate rough equivalents between the Islamic (H) and Gregorian Christian (C) years?
(a) $(H + 32 / 33) + 622 = C (C - 622) \times 33 / 32 = H$
(b) $(H - 32 / 33) + 622 = C (C - 622) \times 33 / 32 = H$
(c) $(H \times 32 / 33) + 622 = C (C - 622) \times 33 / 32 = H$
(d) $(H \times 33 / 32) + 622 = C (C - 622) \times 33 / 32 = H$

9. Which of the following was not included in a wider community to include under the political leadership of Muhammad?
(a) Polytheists **(b)** Jews of Medina
(c) Shahada **(d)** Both (a) and (b)

10. Which of the following is the reason for the conversion of Bedouins to Islam?
(a) They were impressed by Muhammad's achievements.
(b) They were defeated by other tribes.
(c) They were forced to convert to Islam.
(d) They got scared by the acts of Muhamma.

11. The Kaba was cleansed of idols as _____ were required to face the shrine when offering prayers.
(a) Hindus **(b)** Muslims
(c) Sikhs **(d)** Christians

12. Who was the third caliph?
(a) Uthman **(b)** Mamluk Abbasid
(c) Umayyad Caliphate **(d)** Rashidun

13. In which battle did Muhammad's wife, Aisha fight Ali?
(a) Battle of the Ox
(b) Battle at the river Zab
(c) Battle of the Camel
(d) Battle of Tarain

14. Where did the Abbasids establish their capital?
(a) Baghdad **(b)** Iran
(c) Iraq **(d)** Greece

15. Which of the following was the principal occupation of the settled populations in the newly conquered territories in Arab?
(a) Agriculture **(b)** Banking
(c) Trade **(d)** Architecture

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements:
1. The Meccan shrine was a sanctuary (haram) where violence was forbidden and protection was given to all visitors.
2. Mecca considered the Kaba holy and installed their idols at this shrine.
3. Mecca was located on the crossroads of a trade route between Yemen and Syria which further enhanced the city's importance.

Which of the following are correct about Mecca?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

2. Match the following pairs:

Meaning		Terms	
A.	Community of believers	**1.**	Salat
B.	Daily prayers	**2.**	Shahada
C.	Witness	**3.**	Ummah

Choose the correct alternative:
(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3
(c) A-3, B-1, C-2 **(d)** A-2, B-3, C-1

3. Consider the following statements with regards to the Hijri calendar:
1. It is a lunar year of 354 days, 12 months (Muharram to Dhul Hijja) of 29 or 30 days.
2. Each day begins at sunset and each month with the sighting of the crescent moon.
3. The Hijri year is about 11 days shorter than the solar year.

Which of the following are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

4. Which of the following is not the source that was used by Muhammad to create a political order for giving protection to his followers?
(a) Political institutions **(b)** States
(c) Governments **(d)** Local leaders

5. What happened after the death of Muhammad in 632?
(a) His political authority was transferred to the umma with no established principle of succession.
(b) No one took the seat.
(c) the religion completely vanished.
(d) The wife of Muhammad took the throne.

6. Match the following:

Positions/Departments		Names	
A.	Governors	**1.**	Amirs
B.	Chieftains	**2.**	Ashraf
C.	Central treasury	**3.**	Bait al-mal

Choose the correct alternative:
(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1 **(d)** A-2, B-3, C-1

7. Who were considered as the backbone of the local administration?
(a) Arab soldiers **(b)** Money
(c) Administration **(d)** Politics

8. What did Mutazila use to defend Islamic beliefs?
(a) Greek logic and methods
(b) French logic and methods
(c) Signs and symbols
(d) Non-verbal communication

9. Which of the following books gave a picture of medieval Islamic society?
(a) The Arab of the Future
(b) Arabia nights
(c) Ibn Khaldun
(d) Thousand and One Nights

10. Find the odd one out:
(a) Maliki **(b)** Hanafi
(c) Hanbali **(d)** Ashraf

11. Consider the following statements:
1. A group of religious-minded people in medieval Islam, Sufis, sought a deeper and more personal knowledge of God through asceticism (rahbaniya) and mysticism.
2. Pantheism is the idea of the oneness of God and His creation which implies that the human soul must be united with its Maker.
3. Sufism is not open to all regardless of religious affiliation, status and gender.

Which of the following are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

12. Which of the following increased the importance of the Red Sea route from the tenth century?
(a) Rise of Cairo as a centre of commerce and power
(b) Growing demand for eastern goods from the trading cities of Italy
(c) Both (a) and (b)
(d) Increase in the number of migrants

13. Which of the following is not included in the fiscal system of the central Islamic lands?
(a) Copper coins **(b)** Bronze coins
(c) Gold coins **(d)** Silver coins

14. Which of the following is not responsible for the successful campaigns of Arabs when they brought Iraq, Iran and Egypt under the control of Medina?
(a) Religious fervour
(b) Weakness of the opposition
(c) Military strategy
(d) Local administration

15. Consider the following statements:
1. Many Arab tribes were nomadic (Bedouins).
2. Each tribe had its god or goddess, who was worshipped as an idol (Sanam) in a shrine.
3. Some tribes settled in cities and practised trade or agriculture.

Which of the following are correct about the tribes in the Arabs?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Sixth-century Arab culture was largely confined to the Arabian Peninsula and areas of southern Syria and Mesopotamia.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Arabs were divided into tribes (Kabila), each led by a chief who was chosen partly based on his family connections but more for his personal courage, wisdom and generosity (murawwa).
3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Muhammad's own tribe, Quraysh, lived in Mecca and controlled the main shrine there, a cube-like structure called *Kaba*, in which idols were placed.
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The worship involved simple rituals, such as daily prayers (salat), and moral principles, such as distributing alms and abstaining from theft.
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Muslims were promised salvation on the Day of Judgement (qiyama) and a share of the resources of the community while on earth.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 622, Muhammad was forced to migrate with his followers to Medina.
7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: A date in the Hijri calendar is followed by the letters AH.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: One can calculate the rough equivalents between the Islamic (H) and Gregorian Christian (C) years with the following formulae:
$(H \times 32 / 33) + 622 = C$ $(C - 622) \times 33 / 32 = H$
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The umma was converted into a wider community to include polytheists and the Jews of Medina under the political leadership of Muhammad.
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Impressed by Muhammad's achievements, many tribes, mostly Bedouins, joined the community by converting to Islam.
11. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Kaba was cleansed of idols as Muslims were required to face the shrine when offering prayers.
12. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The third caliph, Uthman (644-56), also a Quraysh, packed his administration with his men to secure greater control.
13. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Ali established himself at Kufa and defeated an army led by Muhammad's wife, Aisha, in the Battle of the Camel (657).
14. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Abbasids established their capital at Baghdad, near the ruins of the ancient Iranian metropolis, Ctesiphon.
15. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Agriculture was the principal occupation of the settled populations in the newly conquered territories.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Even tribes outside Mecca considered the Kaba holy and installed their idols at this shrine, making annual pilgrimages (hajj) to the shrine. Mecca was located on the crossroads of a trade route between Yemen and Syria which further enhanced the city's importance. The Meccan shrine was a sanctuary (haram) where violence was forbidden and protection was given to all visitors.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The worship involved simple rituals, such as daily prayers (salat). Muhammad was to found a community of believers (umma) bound by a common set of religious beliefs. The community would bear witness (shahada) to the existence of the religion before God as well as before members of other religious communities.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Hijri year is a lunar year of 354 days, 12 months (Muharram to Dhul Hijja) of 29 or 30 days. Each day begins at sunset and each month with the sighting of the crescent moon. The Hijri year is about 11 days shorter than the solar year.
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Consolidation and protection require political institutions such as states and governments which are either inherited from the past, borrowed from outside, or created from scratch. In Medina, Muhammad created a political order from all three sources which gave his followers the protection they needed as well as resolved the city's ongoing civil strife.
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: His political authority was transferred to the umma with no established principle of succession.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In all the conquered provinces, the caliphs imposed a new administrative structure headed by governors (amirs) and tribal chieftains

(ashraf). The central treasury (bait al-mal) obtained its revenue from taxes paid by Muslims as well as its share of the booty from raids.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: Islamic Civilization flourished as the number of cities grew phenomenally. Many new cities were founded, mainly to settle Arab soldiers (Jund) who formed the backbone of the local administration. Among this class of garrison-cities, called Misr (the Arabic name for Egypt), were Kufa and Basra in Iraq, and Fustat and Cairo in Egypt.

8. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: The study of new subjects promoted critical inquiry and had a profound influence on Islamic intellectual life. Scholars with a theological bent of mind, such as the group Mutazila, used Greek logic and methods of reasoning (Kalam) to defend Islamic beliefs. Philosophers (Falasifa) posed wider questions and provided fresh answers.

9. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Many tales from the Thousand and One Nights (Alf Layla wa Layla) give us a picture of medieval Islamic society, featuring characters such as sailors, slaves, merchants and money-changers.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Differences in the interpretation of the sources and methods of jurisprudence led to the formation of four schools of law (madhab) in the eighth and ninth centuries. These were the Maliki, Hanafi, Shafii and Hanbali schools, each named after a leading jurist (faqih), the last being the most conservative.

11. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: A group of religious-minded people in medieval Islam, Sufis, sought a deeper and more personal knowledge of God through asceticism (rahbaniya) and mysticism. Pantheism is the idea of the oneness of God and His creation which implies that the human soul must be united with its Maker. Sufism is open to all regardless of religious affiliation, status, and gender.

12. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: From the tenth century, the Red Sea route gained greater importance due to the rise of Cairo as a centre of commerce and power and the growing demand for eastern goods from the trading cities of Italy.

13. **Option (b) is correct.**

Explanation: Coins of gold, silver, and copper (fulus) were minted and circulated, often in bags sealed by money-changers, to pay for goods and services.

14. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: In three successful campaigns (637-642), the Arabs brought Syria, Iraq, Iran, and Egypt under the control of Medina. Military strategy, religious fervour, and the weakness of the opposition contributed to the success of the Arabs.

15. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Each tribe had its god or goddess, who was worshipped as an idol (Sanam) in a shrine. Many Arab tribes were nomadic (Bedouins), moving from dry to green areas (oases) of the desert in search of food (mainly dates) and fodder for their camels. Some settled in cities and practised trade or agriculture.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

5 NOMADIC EMPIRES

Introduction

- The great empires of the Euro-Asian continent in the early decades of the thirteenth century realised the danger posed to them by the arrival of a new political power in the steppes of Central Asia: Genghis Khan (d. 1227) had united the Mongol people.
- Genghis Khan's political vision was to go far beyond the creation of a confederacy of Mongol tribes, however, he had a mandate from God to rule the world. Although a major portion of his lifetime was spent consolidating his hold over the Mongol tribes, leading and directing campaigns into adjoining areas in north China, Transoxiana, Afghanistan, eastern Iran and the Russian steppes.
- The descendants of Genghis Khan travelled further to fulfill his vision and create the largest empire the world had ever seen.
- The 1236-41 campaigns of Batu, one of the grandsons of Genghis Khan, devastated Russian lands up to Moscow, seized Poland and Hungary and camped outside Vienna.
- In the thirteenth century, many parts of China, the Middle East and Europe saw in Genghis Khan's conquests of the inhabited world the 'wrath of God', the beginning of the Day of Judgement. It did seem that the Eternal Sky was on the side of the Mongols.
- The Mongols were a diverse body of people, linked by similarities of language to the Tatars, Khitan and Manchus to the east, and the Turkic tribes to the west. Some of the Mongols were pastoralists while others were hunter-gatherers.
- Lush, luxuriant grasses for pasture and considerable small game were available in a good season.
- The hunter-gatherers resided to the north of the pastoralists in the Siberian forests.
- Agriculture was possible in the pastoral regions during short parts of the year but the Mongols (unlike some of the Turks further west) did not take to farming.
- Ethnic and language ties united the Mongol people but the scarce resources meant that their society was divided into patrilineal lineages; the richer families were larger, possessed more animals and pasture lands.
- Groups of families would occasionally ally for offensive and defensive purposes around richer and more powerful lineages but, barring the few exceptions, these confederacies were usually small and short-lived.
- Unlike Attila, however, Genghis Khan's political system was far more durable and survived its founder. It was stable enough to counter larger armies with superior equipment in China, Iran and Eastern Europe.
- Although the social and political organisations of the nomadic and agrarian economies were very different, the two societies were hardly foreign to each other.
- When the Mongol lineages allied they could force their Chinese neighbours to offer better terms, and trade ties were sometimes discarded in favour of outright plunder.
- The Chinese would then confidently assert their influence in the steppe. These frontier wars were more debilitating to settled societies.

The Career of Genghis Khan

- Genghis Khan was born sometime around 1162 near the Onon River in the north of present-day Mongolia. Named Temujin, he was the son of Yesugei, the chieftain of the Kiyat, a group of families related to the Borjigid clan.
- The young Boghurchu was his first ally and remained a trusted friend; Jamuqa, his blood-brother (anda), was another. Temujin also restored old alliances with the ruler of the Kereyits, Tughril/Ong Khan, his father's old blood-brother.
- Through the 1180s and 1190s, Temujin remained an ally of Ong Khan and used the alliance to defeat powerful adversaries like Jamuqa, his old friend who had become a hostile foe.
- After the defeat in 1218 of the Qara Khita who controlled the Tien Shan mountains north-west of China, Mongol dominions reached the Amu Darya and the states of Transoxiana and Khwarazm. Sultan Muhammad, the ruler of Khwarazm, felt the fury of Genghis Khan's rage when he executed Mongol envoys. In the campaigns between 1219 and 1221 the great cities – Otrar, Bukhara, Samarqand, Balkh, Gurganj, Merv, Nishapur and Herat – surrendered to the Mongol forces.
- Mongol forces in pursuit of Sultan Muhammad pushed into Azerbaijan, defeated Russian forces at the Crimea and encircled the Caspian Sea.
- Genghis Khan died in 1227, having spent most of his life in military combat. His military achievements were astounding and they were largely a result of his ability to innovate and transform different aspects of steppe combat into extremely effective military strategies.
- The horse-riding skills of the Mongols and the Turks provided speed and mobility to the army; their abilities as rapid-shooting archers from horseback were further perfected during regular hunting expeditions which doubled as field manoeuvres.

The Mongols after Genghis Khan

- We can divide Mongol expansion after Genghis Khan's death into two distinct phases: the first which spanned the years 1236-42 when the major gains were in the Russian steppes, Bulghar, Kiev, Poland and Hungary. The second phase including the years 1255-1300 led to the conquest of all of China (1279), Iran, Iraq and Syria. The frontier of the empire stabilised after this campaign.
- The Mongol military forces met with few reversals in the decades after 1203 but, quite noticeably, after the 1260s the original impetus of campaigns could not be sustained in the West.
- With the accession of Mongke, a descendant of Toluy, Genghis Khan's youngest son, military campaigns were pursued energetically in Iran during the 1250s.
- The suspension of Mongol expansion in the West did not arrest their campaigns in China which was reunited under the Mongols.

Social, Political and Military Organisation

- Among the Mongols, and many other nomadic societies as well, all the able-bodied, adult males of the tribe bore arms: they constituted the armed forces when the occasion demanded.
- Mongol tribes and subsequent campaigns against diverse people introduced new members into Genghis Khan's army complicating the composition of this relatively small, undifferentiated body into an incredibly heterogeneous mass of people.
- Genghis Khan worked to systematically erase the old tribal identities of the different groups who joined his confederacy.
- Genghis Khan divided the old tribal groupings and distributed their members into new military units.
- The new military contingents were required to serve under his four sons and specially chosen captains of his army units called noyan.
- In this new hierarchy, Genghis Khan assigned the responsibility of governing the newly conquered people to his four sons. These comprised the four ulus, a term that did not originally mean fixed territories.
- Genghis Khan had indicated that his third son, Ogodei, would succeed him as the Great Khan and on accession, the Prince established his capital at the Karakorum. The youngest son, Toluy, received the ancestral lands of Mongolia.
- Genghis Khan envisaged that his sons would rule the empire collectively, and to underline this point, military contingents (Tama) of the individual princes were placed in each ulus.
- Genghis Khan had already fashioned a rapid courier system that connected the distant areas of his regime.
- Mongol nomads contributed a tenth of their herd – either horses or livestock – as provisions. This was called the quaker tax, a levy that the nomads paid willingly for the multiple benefits that it brought.
- All classes of people, from the elites to the peasantry suffered. In the resulting instability, the underground canals, called qanats, in the arid Iranian plateau could no longer receive periodic maintenance. As they fell into disrepair, the desert crept in.
- Communication and ease of travel were vital to retain the coherence of the Mongol regime and travellers were given a pass (paiza in Persian; gerege in Mongolian) for safe conduct. Traders paid the baj tax for the same purpose, all acknowledging thereby the authority of the Mongol Khan.
- From Genghis Khan's reign itself, the Mongols had recruited civil administrators from the conquered societies.
- The Mongol Khans trusted them as long as they continued to raise revenue for their masters and these administrators could sometimes command considerable influence.
- By the middle of the thirteenth century, the sense of a common patrimony shared by all the brothers was gradually replaced by individual dynasties each ruling their separate *ulus*, a term which now carried the sense of territorial dominion.
- The gradual separation of the descendants of Genghis Khan into separate lineage groups implied that their connections with the memory and traditions of a past family concordance also altered.
- Persian chronicles produced in Il-Khanid Iran during the late thirteenth century detailed the gory killings of the Great Khan and greatly exaggerated the numbers killed.

Conclusion: Situating Genghis Khan and the Mongols in World History

- Many thirteenth-century residents of towns in China, Iran and Eastern Europe looked at the hordes from the steppes with fear and distaste. And yet, for the Mongols, Genghis Khan was the greatest leader of all time: he united the Mongol people, freed them from interminable tribal wars and Chinese exploitation, brought them prosperity, fashioned a grand transcontinental empire and restored trade routes and markets that attracted distant travellers like the Venetian Marco Polo.
- Although the Mongol Khans themselves belonged to a variety of different faiths – Shaman, Buddhist, Christian and eventually Islam – they never let their personal beliefs dictate public policy.
- The Mongol rulers recruited administrators and armed contingents from people of all ethnic groups and religions.
- The nature of the documentation on the Mongols – and any nomadic regime – makes it virtually impossible to understand the inspiration that led to the confederation of fragmented groups of people in the pursuit of an ambition to create an empire.
- The Mongol empire eventually altered in its different milieus, but the inspiration of its founder remained a powerful force.
- Today, after decades of Soviet control, the country of Mongolia is recreating its identity as an independent nation.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Mongol Khans belonged to _____ faiths.
   (a) Shaman **(b)** Buddhist
   (c) Christian **(d)** All of the above
2. What was the reason that Timur hesitated to declare himself monarch?
   (a) He was too young to be a monarch.
   (b) He did not have the qualities of aspirations.
   (c) He was not of Genghis Khanid descent.
   (d) He was from a nomadic regime.
3. Which city of Uzbekistan reported that 400 soldiers defended the citadel, and Il-Khanid chronicle reported that 30,000 soldiers were killed in the attack on the citadel?
   (a) Tashkent **(b)** Bukhara
   (c) Namangan **(d)** Kokand
4. _____ are arguably quintessential wanderers, organised in family assemblies with a relatively undifferentiated economic life and rudimentary systems of political organisation.
   (a) Nomads **(b)** Migrant
   (c) Native **(d)** Empire
5. How do we get to know about the itinerant societies and their living style?
   (a) Chronicles
   (b) Travelogues
   (c) Documents produced by city-based litterateurs
   (d) All of the above
6. Who did the most valuable research on the Mongols?
   (a) Indian scholars
   (b) Russian scholars
   (c) Persian scholars
   (d) Mongolian scholars
7. In which language was a transcontinental span of the Mongol empire sources available to scholars written?
   (a) Chinese **(b)** Mongolian
   (c) Arabic **(d)** All of the above
8. What was the name of Genghis Khan's grandson who ruled from 1251-1260?
   (a) Tolui Khan **(b)** Toregene Khatun
   (c) Mongke Khan **(d)** Ogedei Khan
9. Which of the following rivers flows through Mongolia and Russia?
   (a) Selenga **(b)** Yellow river
   (c) Oglio **(d)** Arno
10. Which of the following were not exchanged for agriculture products and iron utensils from china?
    (a) Horses
    (b) Fur
    (c) Game trapped in the steppe
    (d) Goats
11. Perhaps the most valuable research on the Mongols started in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries as the Tsarist regime consolidated its control over _____.
    (a) Central Asia **(b)** South Asia
    (c) Africa **(d)** Northern Asia
12. Which language is the term 'barbarian' derived from?
    (a) Greek **(b)** French
    (c) Latin **(d)** Portuguese
13. What was the name of Temujin's close friend?
    (a) Boghurchu **(b)** Jamuqa
    (c) Yesugei **(d)** Tughril
14. Which of the following controlled the Tien Shan mountains northwest of China?
    (a) Genghis Khan **(b)** Qara Khita
    (c) Sultan Muhammad **(d)** Ong Khan
15. Which of the following was not benefitted in the first phase after the death of Genghis Khan?
    (a) Bulghar **(b)** Kiev
    (c) Poland **(d)** Iran

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following did not make Genghis Khan the greatest leader of the Mongols?
   (a) He united the Mongol people.
   (b) He freed Mongol people from interminable tribal wars.
   (c) He fashioned a grand transcontinental empire.
   (d) He freed Mongolians from French exploitation.
2. Some of these individuals as Genghis Khan's 'blood-brothers' (anda). Who were these individuals?
   (a) People who were Genghis Khan's slaves
   (b) People who worshipped Genghis Khan
   (c) People who abandoned Genghis Khan
   (d) A band of followers who had served Genghis Khan loyally through grave adversity for many years.
3. Match the following:

Event		Year	
A.	Accession of Qubilai Khan as Grand Khan in Peking	**1.**	1260
B.	End of Yuan dynasty in China	**2.**	1368
C.	Capture of Transoxiana by Shaybani Khan	**3.**	1500

   Choose the correct alternative:
   (a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3
   (c) A-3, B-2, C-1 **(d)** A-1, B-3, C-2
4. Consider the following statements regarding the three realms:
   1. By 1209, the Hsi Hsia was defeated.
   2. The 'Great Wall of China' was breached in 1213.
   3. Peking was sacked in 1215.
   Which of the following is/are correct statement(s)?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 1 and 2 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
5. Consider the following statements:
   1. His father was murdered at an early age.
   2. His mother, Oelun-eke, raised him, his brothers and step-brothers in great hardship.

3. He was the son of Yesugei, the chieftain of the Kiyat, a group of families related to the Borjigid clan.

Identify the ruler in the given statements:

(a) Genghis Khan **(b)** Taimur
(c) Temujin **(d)** Jochi

6. Consider the following statements:
   1. The advanced transportation system of the Mongols and the Turks provided speed and mobility to the army.
   2. The steppe cavalry had always travelled light and moved quickly.
   3. The military achievements were astounding and they were largely a result of his ability to innovate and transform different aspects of steppe combat into extremely effective military strategies.

   Which of the following is/are incorrect?

   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 1 and 2 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

7. Which of the following event took place in the year 1258?
   (a) Period of alliance formation
   (b) Rule of the three Great Khans
   (c) Capture of Baghdad
   (d) Campaigns in Iran

8. In which year did the capture of Transoxiana by Shaybani Khan take place?
   (a) 1200 **(b)** 1300
   (c) 1400 **(d)** 1500

9. Consider the following statements:
   1. The Mongols was a diverse body of people, linked by similarities of language to the Tatars, Khitan and Manchus to the east, and the Turkic tribes to the west.
   2. Some of the Mongols were pastoralists while others were hunter-gatherers.
   3. The pastoralists were nomadised in the steppes of Central Asia in a tract of land in the area of the modern state of Mongolia.

   Which of the following is/are correct?

   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2
   (c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

10. Match the following:

Mongol Prince/ King		Their work	
A	Jochi	**1.**	Given the Transoxianian steppe
B	Chaghatai	**2.**	Received the Russian steppes
C	Ogodei	**3.**	Established his capital at Karakorum

Choose the correct alternative:

(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1 **(d)** A-3, B-1, C-2

11. Mongol people had many followers and were more influential in local politics. Which of the following is the correct reason for it?
   (a) Ethnic and language ties united the Mongol people.
   (b) Their society was divided into patrilineal lineages.
   (c) The richer families were larger and possessed more animals and pasture lands.
   (d) They had a strong political background.

12. Consider the following statements:
   1. Genghis Khan's political system was far more durable and survived its founder.
   2. The Mongols had a very weak army and could not counter larger armies with superior equipment in China, Iran and eastern Europe.
   3. The Mongols administered complex agrarian economies and urban settlements.

   Identify the incorrect statement.

   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 2 and 3

13. What played a vital role in the regime of Gengis Khan?
   (a) Courier system
   (b) Transport system
   (c) Education system
   (d) Health facilities

14. Match the following:

Year		Work	
A.	1368	**1.**	End of the Yuan dynasty in China
B.	1921	**2.**	Republic of Mongolia
C.	1500	**3.**	The capture of Transoxiana by Shaybani Khan

Choose the correct alternative:

(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1 **(d)** A-3, B-1, C-2

15. Consider the following statements:
   1. He (d. 1227) had united the Mongol people.
   2. His political vision, however, went far beyond the creation of a confederacy of Mongol tribes in the steppes of Central Asia.
   3. He had a mandate from God to rule the world.

   Identify 'he/his' in the given statements:

   (a) Ogodei
   (b) Jochi
   (c) Ghazan Khan
   (d) Gengis Khan

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Although the Mongol Khans themselves belonged to a variety of different faiths – Shaman, Buddhist, Christian and eventually Islam – they never let their personal beliefs dictate public policy.

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: At the end of the fourteenth century, Timur, another monarch who aspired to universal dominion, hesitated to declare himself monarch because he was not of Genghis Khanid descent. When he did declare his independent sovereignty it was as the son-in-law (guregen) of the Genghis Khanid family.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: 400 soldiers defended the citadel of Bukhara, an Il-Khanid chronicle reported that 30,000 soldiers were killed in the attack on the citadel. Although Il-Khanid reports still eulogised Genghis Khan, they also carried a statement of relief that times had changed and the great killings of the past were over.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The term 'nomadic empires' can appear contradictory: nomads are arguably quintessential wanderers, organised in family assemblies with a relatively undifferentiated economic life and rudimentary systems of political organisation. The term 'empire', on the other hand, carries with it the sense of a material location, stability derived from complex social and economic structures and the governance of an extensive territorial dominion through an elaborate administrative system.

5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Our knowledge of nomadic societies comes mainly from chronicles, travelogues and documents produced by city-based litterateurs. These authors often produced extremely ignorant and biased reports of nomadic life. The imperial success of the Mongols, however, attracted many literati. Some of them produced travelogues of their experiences; others stayed to serve Mongol masters.

6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The most valuable research on the Mongols was done by Russian scholars starting in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries as the Tsarist regime consolidated its control over Central Asia.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The transcontinental span of the Mongol Empire also meant that the sources available to scholars are written in a vast number of languages. Perhaps the most crucial is the sources in Chinese, Mongolian, Persian and Arabic, but vital materials are also available in Italian, Latin, French and Russian. Often the same text was produced in two languages with differing contents.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: It was in the spirit of Genghis Khan's ideals that his grandson Mongke (1251-60) warned the French ruler, Louis IX (1226-70): 'In Heaven, there is only one Eternal Sky, on Earth, there is only one Lord, Genghis Khan, the Son of Heaven.

9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The pastoralists were nomadised in the steppes of Central Asia in a tract of land in the area of the modern state of Mongolia. This was (and still is) a majestic landscape with wide horizons, rolling plains, ringed by the snow-capped Altai mountains to the west, the arid Gobi desert in the south and drained by the Onon and Selenga rivers and myriad springs from the melting snows of the hills in the north and the west.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Agricultural produce and iron utensils from China were exchanged for horses, furs and game trapped in the steppe.

11. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Perhaps the most valuable research on the Mongols was done by Russian scholars starting in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries as the Tsarist regime consolidated its control over Central Asia.

12. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The term 'barbarian' is derived from the Greek barbarous which meant a non-Greek, someone whose language sounded like a random noise: 'bar- bar'.

13. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The young Boghurchu was Temujin's first ally and remained a trusted friend; Jamuqa, his blood-brother (anda), was another. Temujin also restored old alliances with the ruler of the Kereyits, Tughril/Ong Khan, his father's old blood-brother.

14. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: After the defeat in 1218 of the Qara Khita, who controlled the Tien Shan mountains north-west of China, Mongol dominions reached the Amu Darya and the states of Transoxiana and Khwarazm. Sultan Muhammad, the ruler of Khwarazm, felt the fury of Genghis Khan's rage when he executed Mongol envoys. In the campaigns between 1219 and 1221 the great cities – Otrar, Bukhara, Samarqand, Balkh, Gurganj, Merv, Nishapur and Herat – surrendered to the Mongol forces.

15. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: We can divide Mongol expansion after Genghis Khan's death into two distinct phases: the first which spanned the years 1236-42 when the major gains were in the Russian steppes, Bulghar, Kiev, Poland and Hungary. The second phase including the years 1255-1300 led to the conquest of all of China (1279), Iran, Iraq and Syria.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Genghis Khan was the greatest leader of all time: he united the Mongol people, freed them from interminable tribal wars and Chinese exploitation, brought them prosperity, fashioned a grand transcontinental empire and restored trade routes and markets that attracted distant travellers like the Venetian Marco Polo.

2. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The new military contingents were required to serve under his four sons and specially chosen captains of his army units called noyan. Also important within the new realm were a band of followers who had served Genghis Khan loyally through grave adversity for many years. Genghis Khan publicly honoured some of these individuals as his 'blood-brothers' (anda).

3. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Accession of Qubilai Khan as Grand Khan in Peking took place in 1260. Yuan dynasty ended in China in 1368. The capture of Transoxiana by Shaybani Khan occurred in 1500.

4. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: By 1209, the Hsi Hsia was defeated, the 'Great Wall of China' was breached in 1213 and Peking was sacked in 1215. Long-drawn-out battles against the China continued until 1234 but Genghis Khan was satisfied enough with the progress of his campaigns to return to his Mongolian homeland in 1216 and leave the military affairs of the region to his subordinates.

5. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Temujin was the son of Yesugei, the chieftain of the Kiyat, a group of families related to the Borjigid clan. His father was murdered at an early age and his mother, Oelun-eke, raised Temujin, his brothers and step-brothers in great hardship.

6. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The horse-riding skills of the Mongols and the Turks provided speed and mobility to the army; their abilities as rapid-shooting archers from horseback were further perfected during regular hunting expeditions which doubled as field manoeuvres. The steppe cavalry had always travelled light and moved quickly.

7. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: In the year 1258, the following events took place: Capture of Baghdad and the end of the Abbasid caliphate. Establishment of the Il-Khanid state of Iran under Hulegu, younger brother of Mongke. Beginning of conflict between the Jochids and the Il-Khans.

8. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: In the year 1500, Capture of Transoxiana took place by Shaybani Khan, a descendant of Jochi's youngest son, Shiban. It consolidates Shaybani power (Shaybanids also described as Uzbeg, from whom Uzbekistan, today, gets its name) in Transoxiana and expels Babur and other Timurids from the region.

9. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The Mongols were a diverse body of people, linked by similarities of language to the Tatars, Khitan and Manchus to the east, and the Turkic tribes to the west. Some of the Mongols were pastoralists while others were hunter-gatherers. The pastoralists tended horses, sheep and, to a lesser extent, cattle, goats and camels. They were nomadised in the steppes of Central Asia in a tract of land in the area of the modern state of Mongolia.

10. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The eldest son, Jochi, received the Russian steppes but the farthest extent of his territory, ulus, was indeterminate: it extended as far west as his horses could roam. The second son, Chaghatai, was given the Transoxianian steppe and lands north of the Pamir mountains adjacent to those of his brother. Presumably, these lands would shift as Jochi marched westward. Genghis Khan had indicated that his third son, Ogodei, would succeed him as the Great Khan and on accession, the Prince established his capital at the Karakorum.

11. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Ethnic and language ties united the Mongol people but the scarce resources meant that their society was divided into patrilineal lineages; the richer families were larger, possessed more animals and pasture lands. They, therefore, had many followers and were more influential in local politics.

12. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Unlike Attila, however, Genghis Khan's political system was far more durable and survived its founder. It was stable enough to counter larger armies with superior equipment in China, Iran and eastern Europe. And, as they established control over these regions, the Mongols administered complex agrarian economies and urban settlements

13. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Genghis Khan had already fashioned a rapid courier system that connected the distant areas of his regime. Fresh mounts and despatch riders were placed in outposts at regularly spaced distances. The courier system (yam) was further refined after Genghis Khan's death and its speed and reliability surprised travellers. It enabled the Great Khans to keep a check on developments at the farthest end of their regime across the continental landmass.

14. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: End of the Yuan dynasty in China occurred in 1368, Mongolia became a republic in 1921 and the capture of Transoxiana by Shaybani Khan took place in 1500.

15. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Genghis Khan (d. 1227) had united the Mongol people. Genghis Khan's political vision, however, went far beyond the creation of a confederacy of Mongol tribes in the steppes of Central had a mandate from God to rule the world.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

6 CHANGING TRADITIONS: THE THREE ORDERS

Introduction

- Large parts of Asia witnessed the growth and expansion of great empires – some nomadic, some based on well-developed cities and trading networks that centered on them.
- The difference between the Macedonian, Roman, and Arab empires and the ones that preceded them (the Egyptian, Assyrian, Chinese, Mauryan) was that they covered greater areas of territory, and were continental or transcontinental.
- In western Europe during the period from the ninth to the seventeenth centuries, much that we connect with modern times evolved slowly – the development of scientific knowledge based on experiments rather than religious belief, serious thought about the organisation of government, with attention to the creation of civil services, parliaments and different codes of law, improvements in technology that was used in industry and agriculture.
- By the fifth century CE, the Roman Empire in the west had disintegrated.
- In western and central Europe, the remains of the Roman Empire were slowly adapted to the administrative requirements and needs of tribes that had established kingdoms there.
- By the ninth century, the commercial and urban centres – Aix, London, Rome, Sienna – though small, could not be dismissed.
- Feudalism was marked by agricultural production around castles and 'manor houses', where lords of the manor possessed land that was cultivated by peasants (serfs) who pledged them loyalty, goods and services.
- The Catholic Church (centred on the papacy) supported this state of affairs and itself possessed the land.
- Monasteries were created where God-fearing people could devote themselves to the service of God in the way Catholic churchmen thought fit.
- Equally, churches were part of a network of scholarship that ran from the Muslim states of Spain to Byzantium, and they provided the petty kings of Europe with a sense of the opulence of the eastern Mediterranean and beyond.
- The influence of commerce and towns in the feudal order came to evolve and change encouraged by Mediterranean entrepreneurs in Venice and Genoa (from the twelfth century).
- Trade within Europe improved (centred on fairs and the port cities of the Baltic Sea and the North Sea and stimulated by a growing population).
- Respect for human beings and living things marked much of Islamic art and literature, and the example of Greek art and ideas that came to Europe from the Byzantine trade encouraged Europeans to take a new look at the world.
- Sculptors, painters, and writers became interested in humanity and the discovery of the world.
- By the end of the fifteenth century, this state of affairs encouraged travel and discovery as never before. Voyages of discovery took place.
- Columbus attempted to find a western route to India and in 1492 reached the islands which the Europeans called the West Indies.
- European travellers encountered a range of different peoples in the course of their journeys.
- The papacy encouraged the work of the North African geographer and traveller Hasan al-Wazzan (later known in Europe as Leo Africanus), who wrote the first geography of Africa in the early sixteenth century for Pope Leo X.
- As in the case of Hasan al-Wazzan, people that the Europeans encountered in the Americas often took a great interest in them and sometimes worked for them.
- From the point of view of non-Europeans, the encounter with Europe varied. For much of the Islamic lands and India and China, though, Europeans remained a curiosity until the end of the seventeenth century.
- In the Americas, enemies of the Aztec empire sometimes used Europeans to challenge the power of the Aztecs.

An Introduction to Feudalism

- The term feudalism has been used by historians to describe the economic, legal, political and social relationships that existed in Europe in the medieval era.
- In an economic sense, feudalism refers to a kind of agricultural production that is based on the relationship between lords and peasants.
- The peasants performed labour services for the lords, who in exchange provided military protection.
- Although its roots have been traced to practices that existed in the Roman Empire and during the age of the French king Charlemagne (742–814), feudalism as an established way of life in large parts of Europe may be said to have emerged later, in the eleventh century.

France and England

- Gaul, a province of the Roman Empire, had two extensive coastlines, mountain ranges, long rivers, forests and large tracts of plains suited to agriculture.

- The Franks, a Germanic tribe, gave their name to Gaul, making it 'France'. From the sixth century, this region was a kingdom ruled by Frankish/French kings, who were Christian.
- Across a narrow channel, lay the island of England–Scotland, which in the eleventh century was conquered by a duke from the French province of Normandy.

The Three Orders

- French priests believed in the concept that people were members of one of the three 'orders', depending on their work. The three orders of society were the clergy, the nobility and the peasantry.

The Second Order: The Nobility

- Priests placed themselves in the first order and nobles in the second. The nobility had, in reality, a central role in social processes. This is because they controlled land. This control was the outcome of a practice called *vassalage*.
- The kings of France were linked to the people by 'vassalage', similar to the practice among the Germanic peoples, of whom the Franks were one.
- The big landowners – the nobles – were vassals of the king, and peasants were vassals of the landowners.
- The nobles enjoyed a privileged status. They had absolute control over their property, in perpetuity. They could raise troops called *feudal levies*.

The Manorial Estate

- A lord had his manor-house. He also controlled villages – some lords controlled hundreds of villages – where peasants lived.
- A small manorial estate could contain a dozen families, while larger estates might include fifty or sixty.
- Women spun and wove fabric, and children worked in the lord's wine presses. The estate had extensive woodlands and forests where the lords hunted.
- From the thirteenth century, some castles were made bigger for use as residences for a knight's family.
- The manor could not be completely self-sufficient because salt, millstones and metalware had to be obtained from outside sources.

The Knights

- From the ninth century, there were frequent localised wars in Europe. The amateur peasant soldiers were not sufficient, and good cavalry was needed.
- The Lord gave the knight a piece of land (called *fief*) and promised to protect it. The fief could be inherited.
- A knight might serve more than one lord, but his foremost loyalty was to his lord.
- In France, from the twelfth century, minstrels travelled from manor to manor, singing songs that told stories – partly historical, partly invented – about brave kings and knights.
- Many manors had a narrow balcony above the large hall where the people of the manor gathered for meals. This was the minstrels' gallery, from where singers entertained nobles while they feasted.

The First Order: The Clergy

- The Catholic Church had its laws, owned lands given to it by rulers, and could levy taxes.
- At the head of the western Church was the Pope. He lived in Rome. The Christians in Europe were guided by bishops and clerics – who constituted the first 'order'.
- Most villages had their church, where people assembled every Sunday to listen to the sermon by the priest and pray together.
- The Church was entitled to a tenth share of whatever the peasants produced from their land over the year, called a *tithe*.
- Some of the important ceremonies conducted by the Church copied the formal customs of the feudal elite.
- The act of kneeling while praying, with hands clasped and head bowed, was a replica of how a knight conducted himself while taking vows of loyalty to his lord.

Monks

- Apart from the Church, devout Christians had another kind of organization. Some deeply religious people chose to live isolated lives, in contrast to clerics who lived amongst people in towns and villages.
- Monks took vows to remain in the abbey for the rest of their lives and to spend their time in prayer, study and manual labour, like farming.
- From small communities of 10 or 20 men/women, monasteries grew to communities often of several hundred, with large buildings and landed estates, with attached schools or colleges and hospitals.
- From the thirteenth century, some groups of monks – called *friars* – chose not to be based in a monastery but to move from place to place, preaching to the people and living on charity.
- By the fourteenth century, there was a growing uncertainty about the value and purpose of monasticism. In England, Langland's poem, Piers Plowman (c.1360–70), contrasted the ease and luxury of the lives of some monks with the 'pure faith' of 'simple ploughmen and shepherds and poor common labourers.'

The Church and Society

- Christmas and Easter became important dates in the fourth century.
- Christ's birth was celebrated on 25 December, replacing an old pre-Roman festival, the date of which was calculated by the solar calendar. Easter marked the crucifixion of Christ and his rising from the dead.
- Overworked peasants welcomed 'holy days'/holidays because they were not expected to work then. These days were meant for prayer, but people usually spent a good part of them having fun and feasting.
- The pilgrimage was an important part of a Christian's life, and many people went on long journeys to shrines of martyrs or too big churches.

The Third Order: Peasants, Free and Unfree

- Cultivators were of two kinds: free peasants and serfs (from the verb 'to serve').
- Free peasants held their farms as tenants of the lord. The men had to render military service (at least forty days every year).
- Peasant families had to set aside certain days of the week, usually three but often more, when they would go to the lord's estate and work there.

- In addition, they could be required to do other unpaid labour services, like digging ditches, gathering firewood, building fences, and repairing roads and buildings. Besides helping in the fields, women and children had to do other tasks.
- Serfs cultivated plots of land, but these belonged to the lord. They also had to work on the land which belonged exclusively to the lord. They received no wages and could not leave the estate without the lord's permission.

England

- Feudalism developed in England from the eleventh century. The Angles and Saxons, from central Europe, had settled in England in the sixth century.
- In the eleventh century, William, the Duke of Normandy, crossed the English Channel with an army and defeated the Saxon king of England.
- William I had the land mapped and distributed it in sections to 180 Norman nobles who had migrated with him.
- The lords became the chief tenants of the king and were expected to give him military help.
- Anglo-Saxon peasants became tenants of various levels of landholders.

Factors Affecting Social and Economic Relations

- While members of the first two orders saw the social system as stable and unchanging, several processes were transforming the system.

1. The Environment

- Europe was undergoing an intensely cold climatic spell in this period. This led to severe and prolonged winters, a shortened growing season for crops, and reduced yields from agriculture.
- From the eleventh century, Europe entered a warm phase. Average temperatures increased, which had a profound effect on agriculture.
- Peasants now had a longer growing season and the soil, now less subjected to frost, could be more easily ploughed.

2. Land Use

- Initially, agricultural technology was very primitive. The only mechanical aid available to the peasant was the wooden plough, drawn by a team of oxen.
- With this system, the soil slowly deteriorated, and famines were not uncommon. Chronic malnutrition alternated with devastating famines and life was difficult for the poor.
- Despite these hardships, the lords were anxious to maximise their incomes. Since it was not possible to increase output from the land, the peasants were forced to bring under cultivation all the land in the manorial estate, and spend more time doing this than they were legally bound to do.

New Agricultural Technology

- Instead of the basic wooden ploughs, cultivators began using heavy iron-tipped ploughs and mould-boards.
- There was increased use of wind and water energy for agriculture. More water-powered and wind-powered mills were set up all over Europe for purposes like milling corn and pressing grapes.
- There were also changes in land use. The most revolutionary one was the switch from a two-field to a three-field system.
- The greater use of plants like peas and beans meant more vegetable proteins in the diet of the average European and a better source of fodder for their animals.
- Some of these technological changes cost a lot of money. Peasants did not have enough money to set up watermills and windmills.
- From the eleventh century, the personal bonds that had been the basis of feudalism were weakening, because economic transactions were becoming more and more money based.
- The increasing use of money began to influence prices, which became higher in times of poor harvests. In England, for instance, agricultural prices doubled between the 1270s and the 1320s.

A Fourth Order? New Towns and Townspeople

- Expansion in agriculture was accompanied by growth in three related areas: population, trade and towns.
- Better food meant a longer lifespan. By the thirteenth century, an average European could expect to live 10 years longer than in the eighth century. Women and girls had shorter lifespans compared to men because the latter ate better food.
- Peasants who had surplus grain to sell needed a place where they could set up a selling centre and where they could buy tools and cloth.
- In towns, instead of services, people paid a tax to the lords who owned the land on which the town stood.
- 'Town air makes free' was a popular saying. Many serfs craving to be free ran away and hid in towns.
- The basis of economic organisation was the guild. Each craft or industry was organised into a guild, an association that controlled the quality of the product, its price and its sale.
- Guards patrolled the town walls and musicians were called to play at feasts and in civic processions, and innkeepers looked after travellers.
- Scandinavian merchants were sailing south from the North Sea to exchange furs and hunting hawks for cloth; English traders came to sell in.

Cathedral-Towns

- One of the ways that rich merchants spent their money was by making donations to churches. From the twelfth century, large churches – called *cathedrals* – were being built in France.
- Cathedrals were designed so that the priest's voice could be heard clearly within the hall where large numbers of people gathered, and so that the singing by monks could sound beautiful and the chiming bells calling people to prayer could be heard over a great distance.
- During the day the sunlight would make them radiant for people inside the cathedral, and after sunset, the light of candles would make them visible to people outside.

The Crisis of the Fourteenth Century

- By the early fourteenth century, Europe's economic expansion slowed down.

- In northern Europe, by the end of the thirteenth century, the warm summers of the previous 300 years had given way to bitterly cold summers.
- The opportunities offered by favourable climatic conditions before the thirteenth century had led to large-scale reclamation of the land of forests and pastures for agriculture.
- Severe famines hit Europe between 1315 and 1317, followed in the 1320s by massive cattle deaths.
- Trade was hit by a severe shortage of metal money because of a shortfall in the output of silver mines in Austria and Serbia.
- As trade centres, cities were the hardest hit. In enclosed communities like monasteries and convents, when one individual contracted the plague, it was not long before everyone did.
- The plague took its worst toll among infants, the young and the elderly. There were other relatively minor episodes of plague in the 1360s and 1370s.

Social Unrest

- The income of lords was thus badly hit. It declined as agricultural prices came down and wages of labourers increased.
- The money economy was too far advanced to be reversed. Therefore, though the lords succeeded in crushing the revolts, the peasants ensured that the feudal privileges of earlier days could not be reinvented.

Political Changes

- Developments in the political sphere paralleled social processes. In the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, European kings strengthened their military and financial power.
- The powerful new states they created were as significant for Europe as the economic changes that were occurring.
- Louis XI in France, Maximilian in Austria, Henry VII in England and Isabelle and Ferdinand in Spain were absolutist rulers, who started the process of organising standing armies, a permanent bureaucracy and national taxation and, in Spain and Portugal, began to play a role in Europe's expansion overseas.
- The most important reason for the triumph of these monarchies was the social changes that had taken place in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.
- By increasing taxes, monarchs got enough revenues to support larger armies and thus defended and expanded their frontiers and overcame internal resistance to royal authority.
- Centralisation did not occur without resistance from the aristocracy.
- In England, rebellions occurred and were put down in 1497, 1536, 1547, 1549 and 1553. In France, Louis XI (1461–83) had to wage a long struggle against dukes and princes.
- The nobility managed a tactical shift to ensure their survival. From being opponents of the new regimes, they quickly transformed themselves into loyalists.
- The king was no longer at the apex of a pyramid where loyalty had been a matter of personal dependence and trust.
- Today, France has a republican form of government and England has a monarchy. This is because of the different directions that the histories of the two countries took after the seventeenth century.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. What was the name of one of a group of scholars who argued that history consisted of much more than just political history, international relations, and the lives of great people?
(a) Marc Bloch **(b)** René Girard
(c) Fernand Braudel **(d)** Michel Foucault

2. Which of the following terms is referred to as the period in European history between the fifth and the fifteenth centuries?
(a) Precambrian **(b)** Medieval era
(c) Mesozoic era **(d)** Early Middle Ages

3. Which of the following is not the three orders of the society of French priests?
(a) The clergy **(b)** The nobility
(c) The peasantry **(d)** The discipleship

4. In which country were castles practically unknown before the Norman Conquest, and developed as centres of political administration and military power?
(a) England **(b)** Scotland
(c) Wales **(d)** Northern Ireland

5. In which city, did the Pope live in the western church?
(a) Genoa **(b)** Rome
(c) Venice **(d)** All of the above

6. _____ then lands on Van Diemen's land, later called Tasmania.
(a) Abel Tasman
(b) Vasco da Gama
(c) Babur
(d) Tokugawa Shogunate

7. Who was a gifted musician, and did much to develop the practice of community singing of prayers in church?
(a) Abbess Hildegard **(b)** Clovis
(c) Babur **(d)** Philip II Augustus

8. Which of the following poems contrasted the ease and luxury of the lives of some monks with the 'pure faith' of 'simple ploughmen and shepherds and poor common labourers?
(a) The Tyger **(b)** Fire and Ice
(c) Piers Plowman **(d)** Invictus

9. Which of the following is not the kind of cultivators?
(a) Free peasants **(b)** Serfs
(c) Landlords **(d)** a and b

10. Into how many Norman nobles had William I mapped the land and distributed in sections to nobles who had migrated with him?
(a) 150 **(b)** 160
(c) 170 **(d)** 180

11. Centralisation, however, did not occur without resistance from the _____.
(a) Aristocracy **(b)** Democracy
(c) Anarchy **(d)** Communalism

12. What was the period in which a great famine in Europe occurred?
(a) 1100–02 **(b)** 1381–83
(c) 1315–17 **(d)** 1066–68

13. Columbus attempted to find a western route to India and in _____ reached the islands, which the Europeans called the West Indies.
(a) 1491 **(b)** 1492
(c) 1493 **(d)** 1494

14. Who has written the first geography of Africa in the early sixteenth century for Pope Leo X?
(a) Hasan al-Wazzan
(b) Admiral Zheng He
(c) Ahmad Ibn Majid
(d) Abu Al Hasan Al Masudi

15. Which of the following was the correct reason to make some castles bigger from the thirteenth century?
(a) To use as a residence for a knight's family
(b) To use as a place for the army
(c) to convert it into the palace
(d) To show the prosperity

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the given statements:
1. The development of scientific knowledge were based on experiments rather than on religious beliefs.
2. Serious thoughts about the organisation of government.
3. Improvements in technology that was used in industry and agriculture.
Which of the following was affected due to the given changes?
(a) Outside Europe **(b)** Outside Asia
(c) Outside Australia **(d)** Outside Africa

2. Which of the following was/were marked by feudalism?
(a) Agricultural production around castles
(b) Manor houses
(c) Trading networks
(d) Both (a) and (b)

3. Match the following:

Event		Year	
A.	Plague in Egypt	**1.**	1348–55
B.	Ibn Batuta explores the Sahara	**2.**	1350–75
C.	Portuguese destroy the Kongo kingdom	**3.**	1662
D.	Portuguese begin slave trading	**4.**	1442

Choose the correct alternatives
(a) A-2, B-1, C-3, D-4 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1, D-4 **(d)** A-1, B-3, C-4, D-2

4. Why was the Catholic Church a very powerful institution?
(a) It did not depend on the king.
(b) It had a lot of money.
(c) It was ruled by the king.
(d) It was ruled by the landlords.

5. Consider the following statements regarding monks:
1. Monks took vows to remain in the abbey for the rest of their lives and to spend their time in prayer, study and manual labour, like farming.
2. Men became monks and women became nuns.
3. Except in a few cases, all abbeys were single-sex communities, that is, there were separate abbeys for men and women.
Which of the following is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

6. Which of the following were known as friars?
(a) Monks who used to live in groups.
(b) Monks who chose not to be based in a monastery but to move from place to place, preaching to the people and living on charity.
(c) Monks who got married.
(d) Monks who used to leave the monastery after a few years.

7. Consider the following statements regarding Easter:
1. Easter marked the crucifixion of Christ and his rising from the dead.
2. Its date was not a fixed one, because it replaced an older festival to celebrate the coming of spring after a long winter, dated by the lunar calendar.
3. Traditionally, on that day, people of each village used to make a tour of their village lands.
Which of the following is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

8. Which of the following was the reason for the limited availability of land in Europe from the fifth to the tenth centuries?
(a) Most of Europe was covered with vast forests.
(b) The land was infertile.
(c) There was a lack of water resources.
(d) There was rapid growth in the human population.

9. Consider the following statements:
1. Cathedrals were built of stone and took many years to complete.
2. Cathedrals were designed so that the priest's voice could be heard clearly within the hall where large numbers of people gathered.
3. From the twelfth century, large churches – called cathedrals – were being built in France.
Which of the following is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

10. Which of the following did not take place in Asia during 1625–50?
(a) All European traders except the Dutch were forbidden to trade with Japan
(b) Manchu rule in China
(c) Growing demand in Europe for Chinese tea and silk
(d) Construction of the Victoria Memorial

11. Which of the following relationships is not described by feudalism?
    (a) Economic **(b)** Legal
    (c) Political **(d)** Technological
12. Consider the following statements regarding the Manorial estate:
    1. A small manorial estate could contain a dozen families, while larger estates might include fifty or sixty.
    2. Women spun and wove fabric, and children worked in the lord's wine presses.
    3. A lord had his manor-house and controlled villages – some lords controlled hundreds of villages – where peasants lived.

    Which of the following is/are correct?
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
13. Nobility had a central role in social processes. Which of the following is responsible for the given statement?
    (a) Nobles were extremely rich.
    (b) Nobles controlled land.
    (c) Nobles worked under the King.
    (d) Nobles had good administration skills.
14. Match the following.

Event		Year	
A.	Clovis becomes king of the Franks	**1.**	481
B.	Clovis and the Franks begin the conquest of northern Gaul	**2.**	486
C.	Clovis and the Franks convert to Christianity	**3.**	496

    Choose the correct alternative:
    (a) A-1, B-2, C-3 **(b)** A-2, B-1, C-3
    (c) A-3, B-1, C-2 **(d)** A-3, B-2, C-1
15. Consider the following statements:
    1. The period under consideration witnessed several major developments in Europe, including changes in agriculture and the lives of peasants.
    2. The period was also marked by a range of cultural developments.
    3. This timeline draws attention to contacts between continents, stimulated in many instances by the growth of trade.

    Which of the following timeline is mentioned in the given statements?
    (a) c. 1000 to 1700 **(b)** c. 1100 to 1700
    (c) c. 1200 to 1700 **(d)** c. 1300 to 1700

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Of the many scholars in France who have worked on feudalism, one of the earliest was Bloch. Marc Bloch (1886–1944) was one of a group of scholars who argued that history consisted of much more than just political history, international relations, and the lives of great people. He emphasized the importance of geography in shaping human history, and the need to understand the collective behaviour or attitudes of groups of people.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The term medieval era refers to the period in European history between the fifth and the fifteenth centuries. The definition of medieval is related to the Middle Ages.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: French priests believed in the concept that people were members of one of the three 'orders', depending on their work. A bishop stated, 'Here below, some pray, others fight, still others work...' Thus, the three orders of society were broadly the clergy, the nobility and the peasantry. Priests placed themselves in the first order and nobles in the second.
4. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: From the thirteenth century, some castles were made bigger for use as a residence for a knight's family. In fact, in England castles were practically unknown before the Norman Conquest, and developed as centres of political administration and military power under the feudal system.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Catholic Church had its laws, owned lands given to it by rulers, and could levy taxes. It was thus a very powerful institution that did not depend on the king. At the head of the western Church was the Pope. He lived in Rome.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Dutch navigator Abel Tasman sails around Australia without realising it. He then lands on Van Diemen's land, later called Tasmania. He also reaches New Zealand but thinks that it is a part of a huge landmass.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Abbess Hildegard was a gifted musician and did much to develop the practice of community singing of prayers in church.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: By the fourteenth century, there was a growing uncertainty about the value and purpose of monasticism. In England, Langland's poem, Piers Plowman (c.1360–70), contrasted the ease and luxury of the lives of some monks with the 'pure faith' of 'simple ploughmen and shepherds and poor common labourers.'
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Cultivators were of two kinds: free peasants and serfs (from the verb 'to serve').
10. **Option (d) is correct.**
    Explanation: William I had mapped the land, and distributed it in sections to 180 Norman nobles who had migrated with him. The lords became the chief tenants of the king and were expected to give him military help.

11. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Centralisation, however, did not occur without resistance from the aristocracy. A common thread running through all types of opposition to the monarchies was the question of taxation.

12. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Great famine in Europe occurred in 1315–17.

13. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Columbus attempted to find a western route to India and in 1492 reached the islands which the Europeans called the West Indies.

14. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The papacy encouraged the work of the North African geographer and traveller Hasan al-Wazzan (later known in Europe as Leo Africanus), who wrote the first geography of Africa in the early sixteenth century for Pope Leo X.

15. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: From the thirteenth century, some castles were made bigger for use as a residence for a knight's family.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The development of scientific knowledge based on experiment rather than religious belief, serious thought about the organisation of government, with attention to the creation of civil services, parliaments and different codes of law, improvements in technology that was used in industry and agriculture. The consequences of these changes could be felt with great force outside Europe.

2. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Feudalism was marked by agricultural production around castles and 'manor houses', where lords of the manor possessed land that was cultivated by peasants (serfs) who pledged them loyalty, goods and services.

3. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Plague in Egypt spread in 1348–55. Ibn Batuta explores the Sahara in 1350–75. Portuguese destroyed the Kongo kingdom in 1662. Portuguese begin slave trading in 1442.

4. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Catholic Church had its laws, owned lands given to it by rulers, and could levy taxes. It was thus a very powerful institution that did not depend on the king.

5. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Monks took vows to remain in the abbey for the rest of their lives and to spend their time in prayer, study and manual labour, like farming. Men became monks and women became nuns. Except in a few cases, all abbeys were single-sex communities, that is, there were separate abbeys for men and women.

6. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Monks who chose not to be based in a monastery but to move from place to place, preaching to the people and living on charity were known as friars.

7. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Easter marked the crucifixion of Christ and his rising from the dead. But its date was not a fixed one, because it replaced an older festival to celebrate the coming of spring after a long winter, dated by the lunar calendar. Traditionally, on that day, people of each village used to make a tour of their village lands.

8. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: From the fifth to the tenth centuries, most of Europe was covered with vast forests. Thus, the land available for agriculture was limited. Also, peasants dissatisfied with their conditions could flee from oppression and take refuge in the forest.

9. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: From the twelfth century, large churches called cathedrals were being built in France. Cathedrals were built of stone and took many years to complete. As they were being built, the area around the cathedrals became more populated, and when they were completed they became centres of pilgrimage. Thus, small towns developed around them. Cathedrals were designed so that the priest's voice could be heard clearly within the hall where large numbers of people gathered.

10. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: All European traders except the Dutch were forbidden to trade with Japan, Manchu rule in China and the Growing demand in Europe for Chinese tea and silk took place in Asia during 1625–50.

11. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The term feudalism has been used by historians to describe the economic, legal, political and social relationships that existed in Europe in the medieval era.

12. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: A small manorial estate could contain a dozen families, while larger estates might include fifty or sixty. Women spun and wove fabric, and children worked in the lord's wine presses. A lord had his manor-house and controlled villages – some lords controlled hundreds of villages – where peasants lived.

13. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Priests placed themselves in the first order and nobles in the second. The nobility had, in reality, a central role in social processes. This is because they controlled land. This control was the outcome of a practice called 'vassalage'.

14. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Clovis becomes king of the Franks in 481. Clovis and the Franks begin the conquest of northern Gaul in 486. Clovis and the Franks converted to Christianity in 496.

15. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The period, C. 1300 TO 1700, under consideration witnessed several major developments in Europe, including changes in agriculture and the lives of peasants. The period was also marked by a range of cultural developments. This timeline draws attention to contacts between continents, stimulated in many instances by the growth of trade.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

7 CHANGING CULTURAL TRADITIONS

The Revival of Italian Cities

- After the fall of the western Roman Empire, many of the towns that had been political and cultural centres in Italy fell into ruin.
- While western Europe was being reshaped by feudal bonds and unified under the Latin Church, eastern Europe under the Byzantine Empire, and Islam was creating a common civilisation further west, Italy was weak and fragmented.
- One of the most vibrant cities was Venice, another was Genoa. They were different from other parts of Europe – the clergy were not politically dominant here, nor were there powerful feudal lords.

Universities and Humanism

- The earliest universities in Europe had been set up in Italian towns.
- Commerce being the chief activity in the city, there was an increasing demand for lawyers and notaries (a combination of solicitor and record-keeper) to write and interpret rules and written agreements without which trade on a large scale was not possible.
- To Francesco Petrarch, antiquity was a distinctive civilisation that could be best understood through the actual words of the ancient Greeks and Romans.
- This educational programme implied that there was much to be learnt that religious teaching alone could not give. This was the culture that historians in the nineteenth century were to label humanism.
- Till the end of the thirteenth century, this city had not made a mark as a centre of trade or learning, but things changed dramatically in the fifteenth century.
- A city is known by its great citizens as much as by its wealth, and Florence had come to be known because of Dante Alighieri (1265–1321), a layman who wrote on religious themes, and Giotto (1267–1337), an artist who painted lifelike portraits, very different from the stiff figures done by earlier artists.
- The term Renaissance Man is often used to describe a person with many interests and skills, because many of the individuals who became well known at this time were people of many parts.

The Humanist View of History

- Humanists thought that they were restoring 'true civilisation' after centuries of darkness, for they believed that a 'dark age' had set in after the collapse of the Roman Empire.
- The term Middle Ages/Medieval Period was used for the millennium (thousand years) after the fall of Rome.
- The humanists used the word modern for the period from the fifteenth century.
- With more research being done and more being found out about Europe in this period, scholars are increasingly reluctant to make sharp divisions between centuries in terms of being culturally vibrant or otherwise.

Science and Philosophy: The Arabs' Contribution

- Much of the writings of the Greeks and Romans had been familiar to monks and clergymen through the 'Middle Ages', but they had not made these widely known.
- In the fourteenth century, many scholars began to read translated works of Greek writers like Plato and Aristotle.
- While some European scholars read Greek in Arabic translation, the Greeks translated works of Arabic and Persian scholars for further transmission to other Europeans.
- Among the Muslim writers who were regarded as men of wisdom in the Italian world were Ibn Sina ('Avicenna' in Latin, 980–1037), an Arab physician and philosopher of Bukhara in Central Asia, and al-Razi ('Rhazes'), author of a medical encyclopaedia.
- Ibn Rushd ('Averroes' in Latin, 1126–98), an Arab philosopher of Spain, tried to resolve the tension between philosophical knowledge (faylasuf) and religious beliefs. His method was adopted by Christian thinkers.

Artists and Realism

- Formal education was not the only way through which humanists shaped the minds of their age.
- Art, architecture and books were wonderfully effective in transmitting humanist ideas.
- The material remains of Roman culture were sought with as much excitement as ancient texts: a thousand years after the fall of Rome, fragments of art were discovered in the ruins of ancient Rome and other deserted cities.
- In 1416, Donatello (1386–1466) broke new ground with his lifelike statues.
- Andreas Vesalius (1514–64), a Belgian and a professor of medicine at the University of Padua, was the first to dissect the human body. This was the beginning of modern physiology.
- The use of oil as a medium for painting also gave a greater richness of colour to paintings than before. In the colours and designs of costumes in many paintings, there is evidence of the influence of Chinese and Persian art, made available to them by the Mongols.

Architecture

- The city of Rome was revived spectacularly in the fifteenth century. From 1417, the popes were

politically stronger because the weakness caused by the election of two rival popes in 1378 had ended.
- Popes, wealthy merchants and aristocrats employed architects who were familiar with classical architecture.
- Artists and sculptors were also to decorate buildings with paintings, sculptures and reliefs.
- The most impressive example is Michelangelo Buonarroti (1475–1564) – immortalised by the ceiling he painted for the Pope in the Sistine Chapel, the sculpture called 'The Pieta' and his design of the dome of St Peter's Church, all in Rome.
- Filippo Brunelleschi (1337–1446), the architect who designed the spectacular Duomo of Florence, had started his career as a sculptor.

The First Printed Books
- If people in other countries wanted to see paintings, sculptures or buildings of great artists, they had to travel to Italy.
- In 1455, 150 copies of the Bible were printed in the workshop of Johannes Gutenberg (1400–1458), the German who made the first printing press.
- By 1500, many classical texts, nearly all in Latin, had been printed in Italy. As printed books became available, it was possible to buy them, and students did not have to depend solely on lecture notes.
- A printed book promoting new ideas could quickly reach hundreds of readers.
- The chief reason that the humanist culture of Italy spread more rapidly across the Alps from the end of the fifteenth century is that printed books were circulating.

A New Concept of Human Beings
- One of the features of humanist culture was a slackening of the control of religion over human life. Italians were strongly attracted to material wealth, power and glory, but they were not necessarily irreligious.
- In 'On Pleasure', Lorenzo Valla (1406–1457), who believed that the study of history leads man to strive for a life of perfection, criticised the Christian injunction against pleasure.
- Humanism also implied that individuals were capable of shaping their own lives through means other than the mere pursuit of power and money.

The Aspirations of Women
- Men from aristocratic families dominated public life and were the decision-makers in their families.
- Although their dowries were invested in the family businesses, women generally had no say in how their husbands should run their businesses.
- If an adequate dowry could not be arranged, daughters were sent to convents to live the life of a nun.
- The position of women in the families of merchants, however, was somewhat different.
- A few women were intellectually very creative and sensitive about the importance of humanist education.
- Fedele's writings bring into focus the general regard for education at that age. She was one of many Venetian women writers who criticised the republic 'for creating a highly limited definition of freedom that favoured the desires of men over those of women'.
- Another remarkable woman was the 'Marchesa of Mantua, Isabella d'Este' (1474–1539). She ruled the state while her husband was absent, and the court of Mantua, a small state, was famed for its intellectual brilliance.

Debates within Christianity
- Trade and travel, military conquest and diplomatic contacts linked Italian towns and courts with the world beyond.
- The new culture was admired and imitated by the educated and the wealthy.
- In the fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries, many scholars in universities in northern Europe were attracted to humanist ideas.
- Christian humanists like Thomas More (1478–1535) in England and Erasmus (1466–1536) in Holland felt that the Church had become an institution marked by greed, extorting money at will from ordinary people.
- One of the favourite methods of the clergy was to sell 'indulgences', documents that freed the buyer from the burden of the sins he had committed.
- Christians came to realise from printed translations of the Bible in local languages that their religion did not permit such practices.
- In almost every part of Europe, peasants began to rebel against the taxes imposed by the Church. While the common folk resented the extortions of churchmen, princes found their interference in the work of the state irritating.
- In 1517, a young German monk called Martin Luther (1483–1546) launched a campaign against the Catholic Church and argued that a person did not need priests to establish contact with God.
- In Switzerland, Luther's ideas were popularised by Ulrich Zwingli (1484–1531) and later by Jean Calvin (1509–64).
- Other German reformers, like the Anabaptists, were even more radical. They blended the idea of salvation with the end of all forms of social oppression.
- Luther did not support radicalism. He called upon German rulers to suppress the peasants' rebellion, which they did in 1525.
- The Catholic Church itself did not escape the impact of these ideas and began to reform itself from within. In Spain and Italy, churchmen emphasised the need for a simple life and service to the poor.
- In Spain, Ignatius Loyola, in an attempt to combat Protestantism, set up the Society of Jesus in 1540.

The Copernican Revolution
- The Christian notion of man as a sinner was questioned from an entirely different angle – by scientists.
- Christians had believed that the earth was a sinful place and the heavy burden of sin made it immobile. The earth stood at the centre of the universe around which moved the celestial planets.
- A devout Christian, Copernicus was afraid of the possible reaction to his theory by traditionalist clergymen.
- The theory of the earth as part of a sun-centred system was made popular by Kepler's Cosmographical Mystery, which demonstrated that the planets move around the sun, not in circles but ellipses.

- Galileo confirmed the notion of the dynamic world in his work 'The Motion'.

Reading the Universe

- Galileo once remarked that the Bible that lights the road to heaven does not say much about how the heavens work.
- Consequently, in the minds of sceptics and non-believers, God began to be replaced by Nature as the source of creation. Even those who retained their faith in God started talking about a distant God who does not directly regulate the act of living in the material world.
- The Paris Academy, established in 1670 and the Royal Society in London for the promotion of natural knowledge, was formed in 1662, held lectures and conducted experiments for public viewing.

Was there a European 'Renaissance' in the Fourteenth Century?

- Recent writers, like Peter Burke of England, have suggested that Burckhardt was exaggerating the sharp difference between this period and the one that preceded it, by using the term Renaissance, which implies that the Greek and Roman civilisations were reborn at this time and that scholars and artists of this period substituted the pre-Christian world-view for the Christian one.
- To contrast the Renaissance as a period of dynamism and artistic creativity, and the Middle Ages as a period of gloom and lack of development is an over-simplification.
- Many elements associated with the Renaissance in Italy can be traced back to the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.
- The cultural changes in Europe at this time were not shaped only by the 'classical' civilisation of Rome and Greece.
- The archaeological and literary recovery of Roman culture did create a great admiration for that civilisation.
- The expansion of Islam and the Mongol conquests had linked Asia and North Africa with Europe, not politically but in terms of trade and learning skills.
- The Europeans learned not just from the Greeks and Romans, but from India, Arabia, Iran, Central Asia and China.
- The individual had a private as well as a public role. He was not simply a member of one of the 'three orders'; he was also a person in his own right.
- In the eighteenth century, this sense of the individual would be expressed in a political forum, in the belief that all individuals had equal political rights.
- Another development was that the different regions of Europe started to have their separate sense of identity, based on language.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which of the following material is available on European history from the fourteenth century?
(a) Documents **(b)** Paintings
(c) Textiles **(d)** All of the above

2. Which historian emphasised the word 'Renaissance' to describe cultural changes?
(a) Jacob Burckhardt **(b)** Leopold von Ranke
(c) Timothy Snyder **(d)** Henry Reynolds

3. Which event took place in 1390?
(a) Geoffrey Chaucer's Canterbury Tales published
(b) Brunelleschi designs the Duomo in Florence
(c) Gutenberg prints the Bible with movable type
(d) Ottoman Turks defeat the Byzantine ruler of Constantinople

4. For what kind of studies the universities of Padua and Bologna had been centres since the eleventh century?
(a) Study of arts
(b) Legal studies
(c) Science and technology
(d) Study of literature

5. The term 'humanist' was used for masters who taught _____ subject/s.
(a) Grammar **(b)** Rhetoric
(c) Poetry **(d)** All of the above

6. What was the profession of Giotto?
(a) Painter **(b)** A lawyer
(c) A politician **(d)** A Pope

7. Which of the following events took place in 1517?
(a) Thomas More's Utopia published
(b) Martin Luther writes the Ninety-Five Theses
(c) Luther translates the Bible into German
(d) Peasant uprising in Germany

8. What was the greatest revolution of the sixteenth century?
(a) Paintings **(b)** Sculptures
(c) Printing **(d)** Hunting weapons

9. What happened to the daughters if adequate dowry could not be arranged for marriage?
(a) They were forced to do business.
(b) They were sent to convents to live the life of a nun.
(c) They were forced to marry poor people.
(d) All of the above.

10. Francesco Barbaro (1390–1454), a humanist belonged to _____ city.
(a) Milan **(b)** Genoa
(c) Venice **(d)** Rome

11. Who was known for her proficiency in Greek and Latin, and was invited to give orations at the University of Padua?
(a) Emma Baeri **(b)** Camilla Brunelli
(c) Anna Bravo **(d)** Fedele

12. Who launched a campaign against the Catholic Church?
(a) Martin Luther **(b)** Matthieu Ricard
(c) Dietrich Bonhoeffer **(d)** None of the above

13. The Royal Society in London for the promotion of natural knowledge, formed in which year?
(a) 1660 **(b)** 1664
(c) 1662 **(d)** 1669

14. When scientists had shown the experiments and investigations that in the minds of sceptics and non-believers, God began to be replaced by which of the following?
(a) Nature **(b)** Science
(c) Scientists **(d)** Roman Empire

15. In 1455, _____ copies of the Bible were printed in the workshop of Johannes Gutenberg (1400–1458), the German who made the first printing press.
(a) 120 **(b)** 130
(c) 140 **(d)** 150

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements:
1. From the twelfth century, the Mongols opened up trade with China via the Silk Route.
2. Trade with western European countries decreased.
3. Italian towns played a central role. They no longer saw themselves as part of a powerful empire.
Which of the above statement/s is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1 and 2

2. In Italian towns, there was an increasing demand for notaries and _____.
(a) Activists **(b)** Lawyers
(c) Artists **(b)** Archaeologists

3. Match the following.

Event		Year	
A.	Columbus reaches America	**1.**	1495
B.	Leonardo da Vinci paints The Last Supper	**2.**	1512
C.	Michelangelo paints the Sistine Chapel ceiling	**3.**	1492

Choose the correct alternative:
(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1 **(d)** A-3, B-1, C-2

4. Consider the following statements:
1. He asserted that the planets, including the earth, rotate around the sun.
2. He was afraid of the possible reaction to his theory by traditionalist clergymen.
3. He was born in the year 1473 and died in 1543.
Identify the scientist.
(a) Galileo Galilei **(b)** Copernicus
(c) Johannes Kepler
(d) Joachim Rheticus

5. Consider the following statements:
1. According to Petrarch, antiquity was a distinctive civilization that could be best understood through the actual words of the ancient Greeks and Romans.
2. Petrarch stressed the importance of a close reading of ancient authors.
Which of the following is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

6. Which of the following attracted the scholars in universities in northern Europe?
(a) Humanist ideas
(b) Marxist ideas
(c) Communist ideas
(d) Democratic ideas

7. Consider the following statements:
1. Luther supported radicalism.
2. He called upon German rulers to suppress the peasants' rebellion, which they did in 1525.
3. Radicalism survived and merged with the resistance of Protestants in France.
Which of the following is/are not correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1 and 3

8. Who brought the turning point in European science?
(a) Claudine Picardet
(b) Antoine-Augustin Parmentier
(c) Copernicus
(d) Martin Luther

9. Which civilizations were included in the term 'Renaissance' according to Peter Burke of England?
(a) French **(b)** Roman
(c) Greek **(d)** Both (b) and (c)

10. Match the following:

Event		Year	
A.	The Paris Academy	**1.**	1670
B.	Royal Society	**2.**	1662
C.	Andreas Vesalius writes On Anatomy	**3.**	1543

Choose the correct alternative:
(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1 **(d)** A-3, B-1, C-2

11. Consider the following statements:
1. Copernicus asserted that the planets, including the earth, rotate around the sun.
2. Copernicus was afraid of the possible reaction to his theory by traditionalist clergymen.
3. Copernicus did not want his manuscript, De revolutionibus (The Rotation) to be printed.
Which of the following is/are the correct statement?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

12. She ruled the state while her husband was absent, and the court of Mantua, a small state was famed for her intellectual brilliance.
Who is 'she'?
(a) Marchesa of Mantua **(b)** Brigitte Bardot
(c) Marie Antoinette **(d)** Camille Claudel

13. What was/were the mission of Jesuits?
(a) To serve the poor
(b) To widen their knowledge of other cultures
(c) To increase their power
(d) Both (a) and (b)

14. Consider the following statements:
1. In almost every part of Europe, peasants began to rebel against the taxes imposed by the Church.
2. Christian humanists felt that the Church had become an institution marked by greed.
3. The common folk resented the extortions of churchmen.

Which of the above statement/s is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

15. Consider the following statements:
1. He did not support radicalism.
2. He called upon German rulers to suppress the peasants' rebellion, which they did in 1525.
3. He argued that a person did not need priests to establish contact with God.

Identify the scientist.
(a) Martin Luther **(b)** William Tyndale
(c) Balthasar Castiglione **(d)** Niccolo Machiavelli

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: There is a vast amount of material on European history from the fourteenth century – documents, printed books, paintings, sculptures, buildings, textiles. Much of this has been carefully preserved in archives, art galleries and museums in Europe and America.

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: From the nineteenth century, historians used the term 'Renaissance' (literally, rebirth) to describe the cultural changes of this period. The historian who emphasised these most was a Swiss scholar – Jacob Burckhardt (1818–97) of the University of Basle in Switzerland. He was a student of the German historian Leopold von Ranke (1795–1886).

3. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: In 1390, Geoffrey Chaucer's Canterbury Tales was published. In 1436, Brunelleschi designs the Duomo in Florence. In 1453, Ottoman Turks defeated the Byzantine ruler of Constantinople. In 1454, Gutenberg prints the Bible with movable type.

4. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The earliest universities in Europe had been set up in Italian towns. The universities of Padua and Bologna had been centres of legal studies since the eleventh century.

5. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: By the early fifteenth century, the term 'humanist' was used for masters who taught grammar, rhetoric, poetry, history and moral philosophy. The Latin word humanitas, from which 'humanities' was derived, had been used many centuries ago by the Roman lawyer and essayist Cicero (106–43 BCE), a contemporary of Julius Caesar, to mean culture. These subjects were not drawn from or connected with religion and emphasised skills developed by individuals through discussion and debate.

6. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Dante Alighieri (1265–1321), a layman who wrote on religious themes, and Giotto (1267–1337), an artist who painted lifelike portraits, very different from the stiff figures done by earlier artists.

7. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: In 1516, Thomas More's Utopia was published. In 1517, Martin Luther wrote the Ninety-Five Theses. In 1522, Luther translated the Bible into German. In 1525, a peasant uprising happened in Germany

8. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: If people in other countries wanted to see paintings, sculptures or buildings of great artists, they had to travel to Italy. But in the case of the written word, what was written in Italy travelled to other countries. This was because of the greatest revolution of the sixteenth century – the mastery of the technology of printing. For this, Europeans were indebted to other peoples – the Chinese, for printing technology, and Mongol rulers because European traders and diplomats had become familiar with it during visits to their courts.

9. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Often, marriages were intended to strengthen business alliances. If an adequate dowry could not be arranged, daughters were sent to convents to live the life of a nun.

10. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Italians were strongly attracted to material wealth, power and glory, but they were not necessarily irreligious. Francesco Barbaro (1390–1454), a humanist from Venice, wrote a pamphlet defending the acquisition of wealth as a virtue.

11. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: A few women were intellectually very creative and sensitive about the importance of humanist education. 'Even though the study of letters promises and offers no reward for women and no dignity', wrote the Venetian Cassandra Fedele (1465–1558), 'every woman ought to seek and embrace these studies.' She was one of a handful of women who questioned the idea that women were incapable of achieving the qualities of a humanist scholar. Fedele was known for her proficiency in Greek and Latin and was invited to give orations at the University of Padua.

12. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: In 1517, a young German monk called Martin Luther (1483–1546) launched a campaign against the Catholic Church and argued that a person did not need priests to establish contact with God. He asked his followers to have complete faith in God, for faith alone could guide them to the right life and entry into heaven. This movement – called the Protestant Reformation – led to the churches in Germany and Switzerland breaking their connection with the Pope and the Catholic Church.

13. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The Paris Academy, established in 1670 and the Royal Society in London for the promotion of natural knowledge, was formed in 1662, held lectures and conducted experiments for public viewing.

14. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Historians were to label this new approach to the knowledge of man and nature the Scientific Revolution. Consequently, in the minds

of sceptics and non-believers, God began to be replaced by Nature as the source of creation. Even those who retained their faith in God started talking about a distant God who does not directly regulate the act of living in the material world. Such ideas were popularised through scientific societies that established a new scientific culture in the public domain.

15. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: In 1455, 150 copies of the Bible were printed in the workshop of Johannes Gutenberg (1400–1458), the German who made the first printing press.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: With the expansion of trade between the Byzantine Empire and the Islamic countries, the ports on the Italian coast revived. From the twelfth century, as the Mongols opened up trade with China via the Silk Route and as trade with western European countries also increased, Italian towns played a central role. They no longer saw themselves as part of a powerful empire but as independent city-states.

2. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The earliest universities in Europe had been set up in Italian towns. The universities of Padua and Bologna had been centres of legal studies since the eleventh century. Commerce being the chief activity in the city, there was an increasing demand for lawyers and notaries (a combination of solicitor and record-keeper) to write and interpret rules and written agreements without which trade on a large scale was not possible. Law was therefore a popular subject of study,

3. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: In 1492, Columbus reached America. In 1495, Leonardo da Vinci painted The Last Supper. In 1512, Michelangelo painted the Sistine Chapel ceiling.

4. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The turning point in European science came with the work of Copernicus (1473–1543), a contemporary of Martin Luther. Christians had believed that the earth was a sinful place and the heavy burden of sin made it immobile. The earth stood at the centre of the universe around which moved the celestial planets. Copernicus asserted that the planets, including the earth, rotate around the sun. A devout Christian, Copernicus was afraid of the possible reaction to his theory by traditionalist clergymen. For this reason, he did not want his manuscript, 'De revolutionibus' (The Rotation) to be printed.

5. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: To Petrarch, antiquity was a distinctive civilisation that could be best understood through the actual words of the ancient Greeks and Romans. He, therefore, stressed the importance of a close reading of ancient authors.

6. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: In the fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries, many scholars in universities in northern Europe were attracted to humanist ideas. Like their Italian colleagues, they too focused on classical Greek and Roman texts along with the holy books of the Christians.

7. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Luther did not support radicalism. He called upon German rulers to suppress the peasants' rebellion, which they did in 1525. But radicalism survived, and merged with the resistance of Protestants in France, who, persecuted by the Catholic rulers, started claiming the right of a people to remove an oppressive ruler and to choose someone of their own liking.

8. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The turning point in European science came with the work of Copernicus (1473–1543), a contemporary of Martin Luther.

9. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Peter Burke of England has suggested that Burckhardt was exaggerating the sharp difference between this period and the one that preceded it, by using the term 'Renaissance', which implies that the Greek and Roman civilisations were reborn at this time.

10. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Andreas Vesalius wrote On Anatomy in 1543. The Paris Academy, established in 1670 and the Royal Society in London for the promotion of natural knowledge, was formed in 1662, held lectures and conducted experiments for public viewing.

11. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Copernicus asserted that the planets, including the earth, rotate around the sun. He was afraid of the possible reaction to his theory by traditionalist clergymen. Copernicus did not want his manuscript, De revolutionibus (The Rotation) to be printed.

12. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Marchesa of Mantua, Isabella d'Este (1474–1539), ruled the state while her husband was absent, and the court of Mantua, a small state, was famed for its intellectual brilliance.

13. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: In Spain, Ignatius Loyola, in an attempt to combat Protestantism, set up the Society of Jesus in 1540. His followers were called Jesuits, whose mission was to serve the poor and to widen their knowledge of other cultures.

14. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Christian humanists like Thomas More (1478–1535) in England and Erasmus (1466–1536) in Holland felt that the Church had become an institution marked by greed, extorting money at his own will from ordinary people. In almost every part of Europe, peasants began to rebel against the taxes imposed by the Church. While the common folk resented the extortions of churchmen, princes found their interference in the work of the state irritating.

15. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Luther did not support radicalism. He called upon German rulers to suppress the peasants' rebellion, which they did in 1525. But radicalism survived and merged with the resistance of Protestants in France, who, persecuted by the Catholic rulers, started claiming the right of a people to remove an oppressive ruler and to choose someone of their own liking. He launched a campaign against the Catholic Church and argued that a person did not need priests to establish contact with God.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

8 CONFRONTATION OF CULTURES

Communities of the Caribbean and Brazil

- The Arawakan Lucayos lived on a cluster of hundreds of small islands in the Caribbean Sea, today these are known as the Bahamas, and the Greater Antilles.
- The Arawaks were a people who preferred negotiation to conflict. Skilled boat-builders, they sailed the open sea in dugout canoes (canoes made from hollow tree trunks). They lived by hunting, fishing and agriculture, growing corn, sweet potatoes, tubers and cassava.
- A central cultural value was the organisation of people to produce food collectively and to feed everyone in the community. They were organised under clan elders.
- People called the Tupinamba lived on the east coast of South America, and in villages in the forests (the name 'Brazil' is derived from the brazilwood tree).
- The Arawaks were generous and were happy to collaborate with the Spanish in their search for gold.
- The Europeans who met them envied their happy freedom, with no king, army or church to regulate their lives.

The State Systems of Central and South America

- In contrast to the Caribbean and Brazil, there were some highly organised states in Central America.
- The monumental architectural remains of these cities continue to mesmerise visitors today.

The Aztecs

- In the twelfth century, the Aztecs had migrated from the north into the central valley of Mexico (named after their god Mexitli). They expanded their empire by defeating different tribes, who were forced to pay tribute.
- The hereditary nobility was a small minority who occupied the senior positions in the government, the army and the priesthood.
- The king was regarded as the representative of the sun on earth.
- Warriors, priests and nobles were the most respected groups, but traders also enjoyed many privileges and often served the government as ambassadors and spies.
- Since the land was limited, the Aztecs undertook reclamations. They made chinampas, artificial islands, in Lake Mexico, by weaving huge reed mats and covering them with mud and plants.
- The empire rested on a rural base. People cultivated corn, beans, squash, pumpkins, manioc root, potatoes and other crops.
- The land was owned not by individuals but by clans, which also organised public construction works. Peasants, like European serfs, were attached to lands owned by the nobility and cultivated in exchange for part of the harvest.
- The poor would sometimes sell their children as slaves, but this was usually only for a limited period, and slaves could buy back their freedom.
- The Aztecs made sure that all children went to school. Children of the nobility attended the calmecac and were trained to become military and religious leaders.
- In the early sixteenth century, the Aztec empire was showing signs of strain. This was largely to do with discontent among recently conquered peoples who were looking for opportunities to break free from central control.

The Mayas

- The Mayan culture of Mexico developed remarkably between the eleventh and fourteenth centuries, but in the sixteenth century, they had less political power than the Aztecs.
- Efficient agricultural production generated surplus, which helped the ruling classes, priests and chiefs to invest in architecture and the development of astronomy and mathematics.
- The Mayas devised a pictographic form of writing that has only been partially deciphered.

The Incas of Peru

- The largest of the indigenous civilisations in South America was that of the Quechuas or Incas in Peru. In the twelfth century, the first Inca, Manco Capac, established his capital at Cuzco.
- The empire was highly centralised, with the king representing the highest source of authority. Newly conquered tribes were absorbed effectively; every subject was required to speak Quechua, the language of the court.
- Like the Aztecs, the Incas too were magnificent builders. They built roads through mountains from Ecuador to Chile.
- Masons shaped the blocks, using an effective but simple method called flaking. Many stones weighed more than 100 metric tons, but they did not have any wheeled vehicles to transport these.
- The basis of the Inca civilisation was agriculture. To cope with the infertile soil conditions, the terraced hillsides and developed systems of drainage and irrigation.
- Their weaving and pottery were of high quality. They did not develop a system of writing.
- The organisation of the Inca empire, with its pyramid-like structure, meant that if the Inca chief was captured, the chain of command could quickly come apart.

- The cultures of the Aztecs and Incas had certain features in common and were very different from European culture. Society was hierarchical, but there was no private ownership of resources by a few people, as in Europe.

Voyages of Exploration by Europeans

- The people of South America and the Caribbean got to know of the existence of European people when the latter began to sail across the Atlantic Sea.
- Larger ships were built, that could carry a huge quantity of cargo as well as equipment to defend themselves if attacked by enemy ships.
- The circulation of travel literature and books on cosmography and geography created widespread interest right through the fifteenth century.
- People from the Iberian Peninsula – the Portuguese and the Spanish – were the pioneers in the fifteenth-century voyages of exploration.
- Arabs, Chinese and Indians had navigated vast stretches of ocean, and sailors from the Pacific Islands (the Polynesians and Micronesians) had made major ocean crossings. The Vikings of Norway had reached North America in the eleventh century.
- Italians managed to do business with Turks but were now required to pay higher taxes on trade.
- Africans were captured and enslaved, and gold dust yielded the precious metal.
- In Spain, economic reasons encouraged individuals to become knights of the ocean. The memory of the Crusades and the success of the Reconquista fanned private ambitions and gave rise to contracts known as capitulaciones.

The Atlantic Crossing

- Christopher Columbus (1451–1506) was a self-taught man who sought adventure and glory. Believing in prophecies, he was convinced that his destiny lay in discovering a route to the East (the 'Indies') by sailing westwards.
- The fleet was small, consisting of a small nao (a heavy ship) called Santa Maria, and two caravels (small lightships) named Pinta and Nina. Columbus himself commanded the Santa Maria along with 40 capable sailors.
- On 12 October 1492, they sighted land; they had reached what Columbus thought was India, but which was the island of Guanahani in the Bahamas.
- Columbus planted a Spanish flag in Guanahani (which he renamed San Salvador), held a prayer service, and, without consulting the locals.
- Gold was not immediately available, but the explorers had heard that it could be found in Hispaniola, in the mountain streams in the interior.
- Columbus's achievement had been to discover the boundaries of what seemed like infinite seas and to demonstrate that five weeks' sailing with the trade wind took one to the other side of the globe.
- The two continents were named after Amerigo Vespucci, a geographer from Florence who realised how large they might be, and described them as the 'New World'.
- The name 'America' was first used by a German publisher in 1507.

Spain Establishes an Empire in America

- Spanish expansion was based on a display of military strength with the use of gunpowder and horses. The local people were compelled either to pay tribute or to work in gold and silver mines.
- Military repression and forced labour have added to the ravages of disease. The diseases of the Old World, particularly smallpox wreaked havoc on the Arawaks whose lack of immunity resulted in large-scale deaths.
- The expeditions of Columbus were followed by a sustained and successful exploration of Central and South America.
- Before this, the Spanish conquered lands of two great empires in the region. This was largely the work of two individuals: Hernan Cortes (1488–1547) and Francisco Pizarro (1478–1541).

Cortes and the Aztecs

- Cortes and his soldiers (called conquistadores) conquered Mexico swiftly and ruthlessly.
- The Aztec king, Montezuma, sent an official to meet him. He was terrified at the aggressiveness of the Spanish, their gunpowder and their horses.
- The Spaniards pressed against the Tlaxcalans, fierce fighters who submitted only after stiff resistance.
- The invading Spaniards were dumbstruck at the sight of Tenochtitlan. It was five times larger than Madrid and had 100,000 inhabitants, twice the population of Seville, Spain's largest city.
- The fears of the Aztecs proved to be well-founded. Cortes without any explanation placed the Emperor under house arrest and attempted to rule in his name.
- When Cortes returned on 25 June 1520, he had on his hands a full-blown crisis. The causeways were cut, the bridges taken away and the net closed.
- The Aztecs continued to fight the Spaniards. 600 conquistadores and many more of their Tlaxcalan allies were killed in what is known as the 'Night of Tears'.
- The Aztecs thought they could see omens foretelling that their end was near, and because of this the Emperor chose to give up his life.
- The conquest of Mexico had taken two years. Cortes became Captain-General of New Spain in Mexico and was showered with honours by Charles V. From Mexico, the Spaniards extended their control over Guatemala, Nicaragua and Honduras.

Pizarro and the Incas

- Pizarro, in contrast to Cortes, was uneducated and poor when he joined the army and found his way to the Caribbean Islands in 1502.
- The king's greed was aroused, and he promised Pizarro the governorship of the Inca lands if he conquered them.
- In 1532, Atahualpa secured the throne of the Inca empire after a civil war. Pizarro arrived on the scene and captured the king after setting a trap for him.
- The cruelty of the conquerors provoked an uprising in 1534 that continued for two years, during which time thousands died in war and due to epidemics.

Cabral and Brazil

- The Portuguese occupation of Brazil occurred by accident. In 1500, a grand procession of ships set out

from Portugal for India, headed by Pedro Alvares Cabral.
- The Portuguese were more eager to increase their trade with western India than with Brazil, which did not promise any gold. But there was one natural resource there that they exploited: timber.
- The natives readily agreed to cut the trees and carry the logs to the ships in exchange for iron knives and saws, which they regarded as marvels.
- This trade-in timber led to fierce battles between Portuguese and French traders. The Portuguese won because they decided to 'settle' in/colonise the coast.
- In the 1540s, the Portuguese began to grow sugarcane on large plantations and built mills to extract sugar, which was then sold in Europe.
- The natives kept retreating into the forests to escape the 'slavers' and, as time went on, there were hardly any native villages on the coast; instead, there were large, well-laid-out European towns.
- In 1549, a formal government under the Portuguese king was established, with the capital in Bahia/ Salvador.

Conquest, Colonies and the Slave Trade
- From the fifteenth century, European maritime projects produced knowledge of continuous sea passages from ocean to ocean. Before this, most of these passages had been unknown to Europeans. Some were not known to anyone.
- The South Atlantic was wholly unexplored; no sea-going ship had ever entered its waters, much less crossed it, or sailed from it to the Pacific or the Indian Ocean. In the late fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries, all these feats were accomplished.
- Europe also became familiar with new crops from America, notably potatoes and chillies.
- The Spanish avarice for gold and silver was incomprehensible to the natives.
- The enslavement of the population was a sharp reminder of the brutality of the encounter. Slavery was not a new idea, but the South American experience was new in that it accompanied the emerging capitalist system of production.
- In 1601, Philip II of Spain publicly banned forced labour but made arrangements by a secret decree for its continuation.
- From the early debates in the 1780s on abolishing slavery, some argued that slavery existed in Africa before the entry of the Europeans, indeed slaves formed the bulk of the labour force in the states being formed in Africa from the fifteenth century.

Epilogue
- South America today is also called Latin America. This is because Spanish and Portuguese, two of the main languages of the continent, are part of the Latin family of languages.
- Most of them are Catholics. Their culture has many elements of native traditions mixed with European ones.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. In which year was the Inca city of Machu Picchu rediscovered?
(a) 1910 **(b)** 1911
(c) 1912 **(d)** 1913

2. Arawaks were a people who _____.
(a) believed in violence
(b) were into killing and hunting
(c) preferred negotiation to conflict
(d) non-generous and unhappy people

3. Where did the people called the Tupinamba live?
(a) Nigeria **(b)** Brazil
(c) Arizona **(d)** The Bahamas

4. There was a generous surplus of corn, which provided the basis for the urbanised civilisations of the Aztecs, _____.
(a) Incas **(b)** Mayas
(c) Both (a) and (b) **(d)** Nahua

5. As the Aztecs were frequently engaged in war, the most impressive temples were dedicated to the gods of war and _____.
(a) Sun **(b)** Moon
(c) Stars **(d)** Eclipse

6. Which of the following events took place in 1498?
(a) Columbus claims Bahama Islands and Cuba for Spain
(b) The 'undiscovered world' was divided between Portugal and Spain
(c) John Cabot, Englishman, explores the North American coast
(d) Vasco da Gama reaches Calicut/Kozhikode

7. When did the Spanish authorities sanction a modest expedition that set sail from the port of Palos to Christopher Columbus?
(a) 3 August 1492
(b) 15 December 1485
(c) 18 July 1495
(d) 18 September 1487

8. What is the reason that South America today is also called 'Latin America'?
(a) Spanish and Portuguese, two of the main languages of the continent.
(b) Spanish and Portuguese are part of the Latin family of languages.
(c) The inhabitants are mostly native Europeans.
(d) All of the above

9. Which old world disease caused large-scale deaths in Arawaks?
(a) Typhoid **(b)** Jaundice
(c) Smallpox **(d)** Plague

10. The Aztecs continued to fight the Spaniards. 600 conquistadores and many more of their Tlaxcalan allies were killed in what is known as _____.
(a) Black Day **(b)** The Night of Tears
(c) The Bloody Town **(d)** Cry Out of Innocents

11. Over which area did Cortes become Captain-General of New Spain in Mexico, the Spaniards extended their control over which area?

(a) Guatemala (b) Nicaragua
(c) Honduras (d) All of the above

12. The Portuguese were more eager to increase their trade with western India than _____.
(a) Spain (b) America
(c) Brazil (d) Africa

13. Timber trade led to fierce battles between Portuguese and _____ traders.
(a) Spanish (b) American
(c) Mexican (d) French

14. In which year was the formal government under the Portuguese king established?
(a) 1429 (b) 1492
(c) 1549 (d) 1562

15. What was the name of the island that Columbus thought was India on 12 October 1492?
(a) Guanahani (b) Nao
(c) Polynesia (d) None of the above

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the given statements:
1. The Arawaks was animists.
2. They were skilled boat-builders, they sailed the open sea in dugout canoes.
3. The Arawaks used bronze for ornaments.
Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 (d) 1 and 2

2. Consider the following statements:
1. In the sixteenth century, they had less political power than the Aztecs.
2. Culture of Mexico developed remarkably between the eleventh and fourteenth centuries.
3. Corn cultivation was central to their culture, and many religious ceremonies were centred on the planting.
Identify the culture:
(a) Incas (b) Mayas
(c) Nahua (d) None of the above

3. Match the following.

Event		Year	
A.	Spanish conquer the Philippines	1.	1600
B.	British East India Company formed	2.	1602
C.	Dutch East India Company formed	3.	1571

Select the correct code:
(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 (b) A-1, B-2, C-3
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1 (d) A-3, B-1, C-2

4. Consider the following statements:
1. In 1519, Cortes set sail from Cuba to Mexico, where he made friends with the Totonacs, a group that wanted to secede from the Aztec rule.
2. Montezuma was convinced that Cortes was the reincarnation of an exiled god who had returned to avenge himself.
3. Montezuma was terrified by their gunpowder and their horses.
Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 (d) 1, 2 and 3

5. Where did the Aztecs migrate from the north in the twelfth century?
(a) Central valley of Mexico
(b) Greece
(c) Spain
(d) Tenochtitlan

6. Boys received military training as well as training in _____ and the trades. Girls were trained in domestic skills.
(a) Agriculture (b) Banking
(c) Business (d) Horse-riding

7. Which of the following cultivation is related to the Aztecs?
(a) Corn (b) Peas
(c) Potatoes (d) Chillies

8. Which of the following devised a pictograph form of writing?
(a) The Aztecs (b) The Mayas
(c) The Romans (d) The Greeks

9. Consider the following statements regarding the Incas:
1. The Incas too was magnificent builders.
2. The Incas empire resembled a confederacy, with the Incas in control.
3. The Incas built roads through mountains from Ecuador to Chile.
Which of the following statements is/are correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 1, 2 and 3

10. Match the following.

Event		Year	
A.	Cortes defeats Aztecs	1.	1500
B.	Amerigo Vespucci sights South American coast	2.	1499
C.	Cabral claims Brazil for Portugal	3.	1521

Select the correct code:
(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 (b) A-1, B-2, C-3
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1 (d) A-3, B-1, C-2

11. Consider the following statements about the Aztecs:
1. In the twelfth century, the Aztecs had migrated from the north into the central valley of Mexico.
2. The Aztecs expanded their empire by defeating different tribes, who were forced to pay tribute.
3. Aztec society was hierarchical.
Which of the following is/are correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) 1 and 2 (d) 1, 2 and 3

12. According to Ptolemy, an Egyptian, the regions of the world were arranged in terms of _____ and _____.
(a) Green, blue
(b) Latitudes, longitudes
(c) Horizontal, vertical
(d) Right, wrong

13. When was the name 'America' first used?
(a) 1504 (b) 1505
(c) 1506 (d) 1507

14. What was the pre-conquest Mexico population?
    (a) Between 30 and 37.5 million
    (b) Between 40 and 48 million
    (c) Between 20 and 20.5 million
    (d) Between 35 and 38.6 million

15. Which of the following expansion took place on a display of military strength with the use of gunpowder and horses?
    (a) Greece (b) Roman
    (c) Italian (d) Spanish

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Inca city of Machu Picchu was rediscovered in 1911. Recently, photographs taken from the air have shown traces of many cities now covered by forest.

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Arawakian Lucayos lived on a cluster of hundreds of small islands in the Caribbean Sea, today these are known as the Bahamas, and the Greater Antilles. They had been expelled from the Lesser Antilles by the Caribs, a fierce tribe. In contrast to them, the Arawaks were a people who preferred negotiation to conflict.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: People called the Tupinamba lived on the east coast of South America, and in villages in the forests (the name 'Brazil' is derived from the brazilwood tree). They could not clear the dense forests for cultivation as they had no access to iron. But they had a healthy and plentiful supply of fruits, vegetables and fish, and so did not have to depend on agriculture.

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: In contrast to the Caribbean and Brazil, there were some highly organised states in central America. There was a generous surplus of corn, which provided the basis for the urbanised civilisations of the Aztecs, Mayas and Incas. The monumental architectural remains of these cities continue to mesmerise visitors today.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Since the land was limited, the Aztecs undertook reclamations. They made chinampas, artificial islands, in Lake Mexico, by weaving huge reed mats and covering them with mud and plants. Between these exceptionally fertile islands, canals were constructed on which, in 1325, was built the capital city Tenochtitlan. Its palaces and pyramids rose dramatically out of the lake. Because the Aztecs were frequently engaged in war, the most impressive temples were dedicated to the gods of war and the sun.

6. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: 1492 Columbus claims Bahama Islands and Cuba for Spain; 1494 The 'undiscovered world' divided between Portugal and Spain; 1497 John Cabot, Englishman, explores North American coast; 1498 Vasco da Gama reaches Calicut/Kozhikode.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Christopher Columbus was inspired by reading Imago Mundi (a work on astronomy and geography) by Cardinal Pierre d'Ailly written in 1410. He submitted his plans to the Portuguese Crown, only to have them turned down. He had better luck with the Spanish authorities who sanctioned a modest expedition that set sail from the port of Palos on 3 August 1492.

8. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Today South America is also called 'Latin America'. This is because Spanish and Portuguese, two of the main languages of the continent, are part of the Latin family of languages. The inhabitants are mostly native European (called Creole), European, and African by origin. Most of them are Catholics. Their culture has many elements of native traditions mixed with European ones.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The diseases of the Old World, particularly smallpox wreaked havoc on the Arawaks whose lack of immunity resulted in large-scale deaths. The local people imagined these diseases were caused by 'invisible bullets' with which the Spaniards attacked them. The extinction of the Arawaks and all traces of their way of life is a silent reminder of their tragic encounter with the Spaniards.

10. **Option (b) is correct.**
    Explanation: When Cortes returned on 25 June 1520, he had on his hands a full-blown crisis. The causeways were cut, the bridges were taken away and the net was closed. The Spaniards faced acute shortages of food and drinking water. Cortes was forced to retreat. Around this time, Montezuma died under mysterious circumstances. The Aztecs continued to fight the Spaniards. 600 conquistadores and many more of their Tlaxcalan allies were killed in what is known as the Night of Tears.

11. **Option (d) is correct.**
    Explanation: Cortes moved into Tenochtitlan as the Aztecs prepared for their final stand. The Aztecs thought they could see omens foretelling that their end was near, and because of this the Emperor chose to give up his life. The conquest of Mexico had taken two years. Cortes became Captain-General of New Spain in Mexico and was showered with honours by Charles V. From Mexico, the Spaniards extended their control over Guatemala, Nicaragua and Honduras.

12. **Option (c) is correct.**
    Explanation: The Portuguese occupation of Brazil occurred by accident. In 1500, a grand procession of ships set out from Portugal for India, headed by

Pedro Alvares Cabral. The Portuguese were more eager to increase their trade with western India than with Brazil.

13. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: This trade in timber led to fierce battles between Portuguese and French traders. The Portuguese won because they decided to 'settle' in/ colonise the coast.

14. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In 1549, a formal government under the Portuguese king was established, with the capital in Bahia/Salvador.

15. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: On 12 October 1492, Columbus sighted land; they had reached what Columbus thought was India, but which was the island of Guanahani in the Bahamas. (It is said that this name was given by Columbus, who described the Islands as surrounded by shallow seas, Baja mar in Spanish).

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Arawaks were a people who preferred negotiation to conflict. Skilled boat-builders, they sailed the open sea in dugout canoes (canoes made from hollow tree trunks). They lived by hunting, fishing and agriculture, growing corn, sweet potatoes, tubers and cassava. They were organised under clan elders. Polygamy was common. The Arawak were animists. The Arawaks used gold for ornaments.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Mayan culture of Mexico developed remarkably between the eleventh and fourteenth centuries, but in the sixteenth century, they had less political power than the Aztecs. Corn cultivation was central to their culture, and many religious ceremonies were centred on the planting, growing and harvesting of corn. Efficient agricultural production generated surplus, which helped the ruling classes, priests and chiefs to invest in architecture and the development of astronomy and mathematics.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: In 1571, the Spanish conquered the Philippines. In 1600, the British East India Company was formed. In 1602, the Dutch East India Company was formed.

4. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Cortes and his soldiers (called conquistadores) conquered Mexico swiftly and ruthlessly. In 1519, Cortes set sail from Cuba to Mexico, where he made friends with the Totonacs, a group that wanted to secede from the Aztec rule. The Aztec king, Montezuma, sent an official to meet him. He was terrified at the aggressiveness of the Spanish, their gunpowder and their horses. Montezuma himself was convinced that Cortes was the reincarnation of an exiled god who had returned to avenge himself.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In the twelfth century, the Aztecs had migrated from the north into the central valley of Mexico.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Boys received military training as well as training in agriculture and the trades. Girls were trained in domestic skills.

7. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Corn cultivation was central to the Aztec culture, and many religious ceremonies were centred on the planting, growing and harvesting of corn.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Mayas devised a pictographic form of writing that has only been partially deciphered.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Like the Aztec empire, the Inca empire resembled a confederacy, with the Incas in control. There are no precise figures for the population, but it would seem that it included over a million people. Like the Aztecs, the Incas too were magnificent builders. They built roads through mountains from Ecuador to Chile.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Cortes defeats Aztecs in 1521. Amerigo Vespucci sights the South American coast in 1499. Cabral claims Brazil for Portugal in 1500.

11. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: In the twelfth century, the Aztecs had migrated from the north into the central valley of Mexico (named after their god Mexitli). They expanded their empire by defeating different tribes, who were forced to pay tribute. Aztec society was hierarchical.

12. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: According to Ptolemy, an Egyptian, the regions of the world were arranged in terms of latitudes and longitudes.

13. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The name 'America' was first used by a German publisher in 1507.

14. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Estimates indicate that pre-conquest Mexico had a population between 30 and 37.5 million, the Andean region had a similar number while Central America had population between 10 and 13 million.

15. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Spanish expansion was based on a display of military strength with the use of gunpowder and horses.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

9 THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

Introduction: Towards Modernisation

- For a long it was believed that British industrialisation provided the model for industrialisation in other countries.
- European powers began to colonise parts of America and Asia and South Africa well before the Industrial Revolution.
- Western capitalism – mercantile, industrial and financial – and early twentieth-century Japanese capitalism created colonies in large parts of the third world.
- Here Britain, France, Germany, Russia, America and Japan meddled in Chinese affairs without directly taking over state power.
- Almost everywhere, colonial exploitation was challenged by powerful nationalist movements. Nationalism, however, also arose without a colonial context, as in the West or Japan.
- Civic nationalism vests sovereignty in all people regardless of language, ethnicity, religion or gender.
- Today, most western countries define their nationhood in terms of common citizenship and not by common ethnicity. One prominent exception is Germany where ideas of ethnic nationalism have had a long and troubling career going back to the reaction against the French imperial occupation of German states in 1806.
- As with industrialisation, so with paths to modernisation, different societies have evolved their distinctive modernities. The Japanese and Chinese cases are very instructive in this regard.
- The Chinese resisted colonial exploitation and their own bureaucratic landed elite through a combination of peasant rebellion, reform and revolution.

Why Britain?

- Britain was the first country to experience modern industrialisation. It had been politically stable since the seventeenth century, with England, Wales and Scotland unified under a monarchy.
- By then a large section of the people received their income in the form of wages and salaries rather than in goods. This gave people a wider choice of ways to spend their earnings and expanded the market for the sale of goods.
- In the eighteenth century, England had been through a major economic change, later described as the agricultural revolution. This was the process by which bigger landlords had bought up small farms near their properties and enclosed the village common lands, thus creating very large estates and increasing food production.

Towns, Trade and Finance

- From the eighteenth century, many towns in Europe were growing in area and population. Out of the 19 European cities whose population doubled between 1750 and 1800, 11 were in Britain.
- London had also acquired a global significance. By the eighteenth century, the centre of global trade had shifted from the Mediterranean ports of Italy and France to the Atlantic ports of Holland and Britain.
- London also became the centre of a triangular trade network that drew in England, Africa and the West Indies. The companies trading in America and Asia also had their offices in London.
- As early as 1724, English rivers provided some 1,160 miles of navigable water, and except for mountainous areas, most places in the country were within 15 miles of a river.
- The centre of the country's financial system was the Bank of England (founded in 1694). By 1784, there were more than a hundred provincial banks in England, and during the next 10 years, their numbers trebled.
- The industrialisation that occurred in Britain from the 1780s to the 1850s is explained partly by the factors described above – many poor people from the villages available to work in towns; banks that could loan money to set up large industries; and a good transport network.
- Of the 26,000 inventions recorded in the eighteenth century, more than half were listed for the period 1782–1800.

Coal and Iron

- England was fortunate in that coal and iron ore, the staple materials for mechanisation, were plentifully available, as were other minerals – lead, copper and tin – that were used in industry.
- For centuries, charcoal (from burnt timber) was used for the smelting process.
- The durability of iron made it a better material than wood for everyday items and machinery.
- In the 1770s, John Wilkinson (1728–1808) made the first iron chairs, vats for breweries and distilleries, and iron pipes of all sizes. In 1779, the third Darby (1750–91) built the first iron bridge in the world, in Coalbrookdale, spanning the river Severn.
- Wilkinson used cast iron for the first time to make water pipes (40 miles of it for the water supply of Paris).
- The iron industry then came to be concentrated in specific regions as integrated units of coal mining and iron smelting.

- The British iron industry quadrupled its output between 1800 and 1830, and its product was the cheapest in Europe.
- In 1820, a ton of pig iron needed 8 tons of coal to make it, but by 1850 it could be produced by using only 2 tons.

Cotton Spinning and Weaving

- The British had always woven cloth out of wool and flax (to make linen).
- From the seventeenth century, the country had been importing bales of cotton cloth from India at great cost.
- Till the early eighteenth century, spinning had been so slow and laborious that 10 spinners (mostly women, hence the word spinster) were required to supply sufficient yarn to keep a single weaver busy.
- From the 1780s, the cotton industry symbolised British industrialisation in many ways. This industry had two features that were also seen in other industries.
- The industry was heavily dependent on the work of women and children in factories.

Steam Power

- The realisation that steam could generate tremendous power was decisive to large-scale industrialisation.
- Water as hydraulic power had been the prime source of energy for centuries, but it had been limited to certain areas, seasons and the speed of the flow of water.
- Steam power provided pressure at high temperatures that enabled the use of a broad range of machinery.
- Steam power was first used in mining industries. As the demand for coal and metals expanded, efforts to obtain them from ever-deeper mines intensified.
- Thomas Savery (1650–1715) built a model steam engine called the Miner's Friend in 1698 to drain mines.
- Another steam engine was built by Thomas Newcomen (1663–1729) in 1712. This had the major defect of losing energy due to continuous cooling of the condensing cylinder.
- The steam engine had been used only in coal mines until James Watt (1736–1819) developed his machine in 1769.
- Backed by the wealthy manufacturer Matthew Boulton (1728–1809), Watt created the Soho Foundry in Birmingham in 1775.
- By the end of the eighteenth century, Watt's steam engine was beginning to replace hydraulic power.
- After 1800, steam engine technology was further developed with the use of lighter, stronger metals, the manufacture of more accurate machine tools and the spread of better scientific knowledge.

Canals and Railways

- Canals were initially built to transport coal to cities. This was because the bulk and weight of coal made its transport by road much slower and more expensive than by barges on canals.
- Canals were usually built by big landowners to increase the value of the mines, quarries or forests on their lands. The confluence of canals created marketing centres in new towns.
- From 1760 to 1790, twenty-five new canal-building projects were begun. In the period known as the canal-mania, from 1788 to 1796, there were another 46 new projects and over the next 60 years, more than 4,000 miles of canal were built.
- The first steam locomotive, Stephenson's Rocket, appeared in 1814. Railways emerged as a new means of transportation that was available throughout the year, both cheap and fast, to carry passengers and goods.
- The invention of the railways took the entire process of industrialisation to a second stage.
- In 1801, Richard Trevithick (1771–1833) had devised an engine called the Puffing Devil that pulled trucks around the mine where he worked in Cornwall.
- The first railway line connecting the cities of Stockton and Darlington in 1825, a distance of 9 miles that was completed in two hours at speeds of up to 24 kph (15 mph), and the next railway line connected Liverpool and Manchester in 1830.
- In the 1830s, the use of canals revealed several problems. The congestion of vessels moved slow on certain stretches of canals, and frost, flood or drought limited the time of their use.
- During the 'little railway mania' of 1833–37, 1400 miles of line were built, and during the bigger 'mania' of 1844–47, another 9,500 miles of line were sanctioned.

Changed Lives

- Wealth, in the form of goods, incomes, services, knowledge and productive efficiency, did increase dramatically.
- The number of cities in England with a population of over 50,000 grew from two in 1750 to 29 in 1850.
- Newcomers were forced to live in overcrowded slums in the congested central areas of towns near factories, while the rich inhabitants escaped, by shifting to homes in the suburbs where the air was cleaner and the water safe to drink.

The Workers

- A survey in 1842 revealed that the average lifespan of workers was lower than that of any other social group in cities: it was 15 years in Birmingham, 17 in Manchester, and 21 in Derby.
- More people died, and died at a younger age, in the new industrial cities, than in the villages they had come from.
- The increase in the population of cities was because of immigrants, rather than by an increase in the number of children born to families who already lived there.
- Deaths were primarily caused by epidemics of disease that sprang from the pollution of water, like cholera and typhoid, or of the air, like tuberculosis.
- More than 31,000 people died from an outbreak of cholera in 1832.

Women, Children and Industrialisation

- The Industrial Revolution was a time of important changes in the way that children and women worked. Children of the rural poor had always worked at home or on the farm at jobs that varied during the day or between seasons, under the watchful eye of parents or relatives.
- Work in the factories, with long, unbroken hours of the same kind of work, under strict discipline and sharp forms of punishment was completely different.
- The earnings of women and children were necessary to supplement men's meagre wages. As the use of

machinery spread, and fewer workers were needed, industrialists preferred to employ women and children who would be less agitated about their poor working conditions and work for lower wages than men.

- Coal mines were also dangerous places to work in. Roofs caved in or there could be an explosion, and injuries were therefore common. The owners of coal mines used children to reach deep coal faces or those where the approach path was too narrow for adults.
- Factory managers considered child labour to be important training for future factory work. The evidence from British factory records reveals that about half of the factory workers had started work when they were less than ten years old and 28 per cent when they were under 14.
- Women may well have gained increased financial independence and self-esteem from their jobs.

Protest Movements

- The early decades of industrialisation coincided with the spread of new political ideas pioneered by the French Revolution (1789–94).
- In England, political protest against the harsh working conditions in factories kept increasing, and the working population agitated to be given the right to vote.
- England had been at war with France for a long time – from 1792 to 1815.
- Trade between England and Europe was disrupted, factories were forced to shut down, unemployment grew and the price of essential items of food, like bread and meat, soared to heights beyond the level of average wages.
- Parliament in 1795 passed two Combination Acts which made it illegal to 'incite the people by speech or writing to hatred or contempt of the King, Constitution or Government'; and banned unauthorised public meetings of over 50 persons.
- The bread was the staple item in the diet of the poor and its price governed their standard of living.
- Stocks of bread were seized and sold at a price that was affordable and morally correct rather than at the high prices charged by profit-hungry traders.
- Another cause of hardship was the process known as enclosure – by which, from the 1770s, hundreds of small farms had been merged into the larger ones of powerful landlords.
- Poor rural families affected by this had sought industrial work.
- From the 1790s, these weavers began to demand a legal minimum wage, which was refused by the Parliament.
- In Yorkshire, shearing frames were destroyed by croppers, who had traditionally sheared sheep by hand.
- In the riots of 1830, farm labourers found their jobs threatened by the new threshing machines that separated the grain from the husk.
- The movement is known as Luddism (1811–17), led by the charismatic General Ned Ludd, who exemplified another type of protest.
- Luddism was not merely a backwards-looking assault on machines. Its participants demanded a minimum wage, control over the labour of women and children, work for those who had lost their jobs because of the coming of machinery, and the right to form trade unions so that they could legally present these demands.
- During the early years of industrialisation, the working population possessed neither the vote nor legal methods to express their anger at the drastic manner in which their lives had been overturned.
- In August 1819, 80,000 people gathered peacefully at St Peter's Fields in Manchester to claim democratic rights – of political organisation, public meetings, and the freedom of the press.
- After Peterloo, the need to make the House of Commons more representative was recognised by liberal political groups, and the Combination Acts were repealed in 1824–25.

Reforms through Laws

- Laws were passed in 1819 prohibiting the employment of children under the age of nine in factories and limiting the hours of work of those between the ages of nine and sixteen to 12 hours a day.
- In 1847, after more than 30 years of agitation, the Ten Hours' Bill was passed.
- The Mines Commission of 1842, set up by the government, revealed that working conditions in mines had become worse since the Act of 1833 because more children had been put to work in coal mines.
- Fielder's Factory Act laid down in 1847 that children under eighteen and women should not work more than 10 hours a day.

The Debate on the 'Industrial Revolution'

- Until the 1970s, historians used the term industrial revolution for the changes that occurred in Britain from the 1780s to the 1820s.
- Industrialisation had been too gradual to be considered a 'revolution'. It carried processes that already existed to new levels.
- The impressive growth of cotton textiles, based on new machinery, was in an industry that relied on non-British raw material, on sales abroad (especially in India), on non-metallic machinery, and with few links to other branches of industry.
- Metallic machinery and steam power were rare until much later in the nineteenth century.
- Indicators of economic change occurring before and after 1815–20 suggest that sustained industrialisation was to be seen after rather than before these dates.
- Productive investment, in these senses, grew steadily only after 1820, as did levels of productivity.
- The word industrial used with the word revolution is too limited. The transformation extended beyond the economic or industrial sphere and into society and gave prominence to two classes: the bourgeoisie and the new class of proletarian labourers in towns and the countryside.
- In 1851, visitors thronged the Great Exhibition at the specially constructed Crystal Palace in London to view the achievements of British industry.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. What was the period of the French Revolution?
   (a) 1789–94 **(b)** 1776–81
   (c) 1799–81 **(d)** 1776–94
2. When was the first outbreak of smallpox brought by sailors in Cape Town, South Africa?
   (a) 1750–60 **(b)** 1760–70
   (c) 1770–80 **(d)** 1780–90
3. Which of the following did not take place in 1850–60 in Asia?
   (a) King Rama IV rules Thailand
   (b) Railway and telegraph lines introduced
   (c) The Great Revolt started
   (d) Foundation of Indian National Congress
4. Which of the following did not take place in South Asia?
   (a) Quit India Movement
   (b) Balfour Declaration promises a homeland for Jews in Palestine
   (c) Sirimavo Bandaranaike becomes the world's first woman prime minister
   (d) Bangladesh emerges as an independent nation
5. Which of the following terms was used by Georges Michelet in France and Friedrich Engels in Germany?
   (a) French Revolution **(b)** Industrial Revolution
   (c) Pink Revolution **(d)** Golden Revolution
6. Which of the following was the first country to experience modern industrialisation?
   (a) Greece **(b)** Spain
   (c) Britain **(d)** Poland
7. Which of the countries had been through a major economic change, later described as the 'agricultural revolution' during the eighteenth century?
   (a) England **(b)** Paris
   (c) Scotland **(d)** France
8. How many European countries' populations got doubled between 1750 and 1800?
   (a) 15 **(b)** 16
   (c) 18 **(d)** 19
9. Which of the following countries was not part of a triangular trade network whose centre was London?
   (a) England **(b)** Africa
   (c) West Indies **(d)** Ukraine
10. When was the Bank of England founded?
    (a) 1694 **(b)** 1695
    (c) 1696 **(d)** 1697
11. In which of the following factories do women work as main workers?
    (a) Silk **(b)** Lace-making
    (c) Carpet **(d)** Knitting
12. When did the first steam locomotive appear?
    (a) 1814 **(b)** 1815
    (c) 1816 **(d)** 1817
13. Which of the two cities were connected by the first railway line in 1825?
    (a) Stockton and Darlington
    (b) Belgium and Poland
    (c) Darlington and Poland
    (d) Stockton and Belgium
14. What was the nickname given to the machine invented in 1779 by Samuel Crompton?
    (a) Molar **(b)** Mule
    (c) Samcro **(d)** Crompton
15. Which of the following killed almost one-fifth of the population of Western Samoa in 1918?
    (a) Influenza **(b)** Chickenpox
    (c) Plague **(d)** Cholera

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Match the following:

A.	Javanese revolt against Dutch	**1.**	1820–30
B.	Opening of the first Japanese railway	**2.**	1870–80
C.	Britain annexes Burma	**3.**	1880–90

   Choose the correct alternative:
   (a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-3, B-2, C-1
   (c) A-1, B-2, C-3 **(d)** A-1, B-3, C-2
2. What did the Great Exhibition display?
   (a) Achievements of British industry
   (b) Failure of British industry
   (c) Industrial Revolution
   (d) French Revolution
3. Consider the following statements regarding the 'Industrial Revolution':
   1. Until the 1970s, historians used the term 'industrial revolution' for the changes that occurred in Britain from the 1780s to the 1820s.
   2. Industrialisation had been too gradual to be considered a 'revolution'.
   3. Industrialisation carried processes that already existed to new levels.
   Which of the following is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
4. For which of the following was the term 'old corruption' used?
   (a) For the exploitation
   (b) For privileges linked to the monarchy and Parliament
   (c) For poor people
   (d) For exploitation done by members of the Parliament

5. Which of the following did not support the Corn Laws?
   (a) Landowners **(b)** Manufacturers
   (c) Professionals **(d)** Tenants
6. Match the following:

Places		Lifespan	
A.	Birmingham	**1.**	15
B.	Manchester	**2.**	17
C.	Derby	**3.**	21

   Choose the correct alternative:
   (a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-3, B-2, C-1
   (c) A-1, B-2, C-3 **(d)** A-1, B-3, C-2
7. Which of the following was the aim to construct canals initially?
   (a) To transport coal to cities
   (b) To give water for drinking
   (c) To use the underground water as a water reservoir
   (d) To collect rainwater
8. Consider the following statements:
   1. The invention of the railways took the entire process of industrialisation to a second stage.
   2. In 1801, Richard Trevithick (1771–1833) had devised an engine called the 'Puffing Devil' that pulled trucks around the mine where he worked in Cornwall.
   3. In 1814, the railway engineer George Stephenson (1781–1848) constructed a locomotive called 'The Blutcher'.
   Which of the following is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
9. Consider the following statements:
   1. During the 'little railway mania' of 1833–37, 1800 miles of line were built.
   2. During the bigger 'mania' of 1844–47, another 9,500 miles of line was sanctioned.
   3. About 6,000 miles of railway were opened in Britain between 1830 and 1850, most of it in two short bursts.
   Which of the following is/are not correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
10. Consider the following statements:
   1. In the course of half a century, three generations of the family– grandfather, father and son, all called Abraham Darby.
   2. They brought about a revolution in the metallurgical industry.
   3. It began with an invention in 1508 by the first Abraham Darby.
   Which of the above statements is/are incorrect?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
11. Which of the following was built by the first generation of Abraham Darby built?
   (a) Blast furnace that would use coke
   (b) Wrought iron from pig iron
   (c) Puddling furnace
   (d) Iron pipes
12. Consider the following statements:
   1. He invented the Steam engine.
   2. He also created a unit of measurement based on comparing mechanical power with that of the previous universal power source, the horse.
   3. He invented a chemical process for copying documents.
   Identify the inventor.
   (a) E. B. Wilson **(b)** Richard Arkwright
   (c) James Watt **(d)** Thomas
13. Consider the following statements:
   1. Richard Trevithick had devised an engine called the 'Puffing Devil'.
   2. The 'Puffing Devil' pulled trucks around the mine where he worked in Cornwall.
   3. The Puffing Devil was started in 1724.
   Which of the above statements is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3
   (c) 1 and 2 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
14. Match the following:

A.	The US enters Second World War	**1.**	1940–50
B.	Civil Rights movement in the USA	**2.**	1960–70
C.	Wright brothers invent the aeroplane	**3.**	1900–10

   Choose the correct alternative:
   (a) A-1, B-2, C-3 **(b)** A-2, B-1, C-3
   (c) A-3, B-2, C-1 **(d)** A-1, B-3, C-2
15. Consider the following statements:
   1. The movement, known as Luddism (1811–17), was led by the charismatic General Ned Ludd.
   2. Luddism was not merely a backwards-looking assault on machines.
   3. The participants of Luddism demanded a minimum wage.
   Which of the following is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: A series of political revolutions that transformed subjects into citizens, beginning with the American Revolution (1776–81) and the French Revolution (1789–94).

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: First outbreak of smallpox (1755) was brought by sailors, in Cape Town, South Africa. It took place from 1750 to 60.

3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1850–60, King Rama IV ruled Thailand, Railway and telegraph lines were introduced in 1853, and the Great Revolt started in 1857.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The events, Quit India Movement in 1942, Bangladesh emerges as an independent nation in 1971 and Sirimavo Bandaranaike becomes the world's first woman prime minister in 1960 took place in South Asia.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The term 'Industrial Revolution' was used by European scholars – Georges Michelet in France and Friedrich Engels in Germany. It was used for the first time in English by the philosopher and economist Arnold Toynbee (1852–83), to describe the changes that occurred in British industrial development between 1760 and 1820.
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Britain was the first country to experience modern industrialisation.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In the eighteenth century, England had been through a major economic change, later described as the 'agricultural revolution'.
8. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: From the eighteenth century, many towns in Europe were growing in area and population. Out of the 19 European cities whose population doubled between 1750 and 1800, 11 were in Britain.
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: London also became the centre of a triangular trade network that drew in England, Africa and the West Indies. The companies trading in America and Asia also had their offices in London.
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The centre of the country's financial system was the Bank of England (founded in 1694).
11. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Women were also the main workers in the silk, lace–making and knitting industries, as well as (along with children) in the metal industries of Birmingham.
12. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The first steam locomotive, Stephenson's Rocket, appeared in 1814.
13. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The first railway line connected the cities of Stockton and Darlington in 1825 and the next railway line connected Liverpool and Manchester in 1830.
14. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The 'mule' was the nickname for the machine invented in 1779 by Samuel Crompton (1753–1827) that allowed the spinning of strong and fine yarn.
15. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Influenza epidemic killed one-fifth of the population of Western Samoa in 1918.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Javanese revolt against the Dutch started in 1820–30. In 1870–80, the first Japanese railway was opened. In 1880–90, Britain annexed Burma.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1851, visitors thronged the Great Exhibition at the specially constructed Crystal Palace in London to view the achievements of British industry.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Until the 1970s, historians used the term 'industrial revolution' for the changes that occurred in Britain from the 1780s to the 1820s. Industrialisation had been too gradual to be considered a 'revolution'. Industrialisation carried processes that already existed to new levels.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Parliament in 1795 passed two Combination Acts which made it illegal to 'incite the people by speech or writing to hatred or contempt of the King, Constitution or Government'; and banned unauthorised public meetings of over 50 persons. Protest, nonetheless, continued against 'Old Corruption. This term was used for privileges linked to the monarchy and Parliament.
5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Members of Parliament – landowners, manufacturers and professionals – were opposed to giving the working population the right to vote. They supported the Corn Laws, which prevented the import of cheaper food until prices in Britain had risen to a certain level.
6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: A survey in 1842 revealed that the average lifespan of workers was lower than that of any other social group in cities: it was 15 years in Birmingham, 17 in Manchester, and 21 in Derby.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Canals were initially built to transport coal to cities. This was because the bulk and weight of coal made its transport by road much slower and more expensive than by barges on canals.
8. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The invention of the railways took the entire process of industrialisation to a second stage. In 1801, Richard Trevithick (1771–1833) had devised an engine called the 'Puffing Devil' that pulled trucks around the mine where he worked in Cornwall. In 1814, the railway engineer George Stephenson (1781–1848) constructed a locomotive called 'The Blutcher'.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: During the 'little railway mania' of 1833–37, 1400 miles of line were built, and during the bigger 'mania' of 1844–47, another 9,500 miles of line were sanctioned. They used vast amounts of coal and iron, employed large numbers of workers and boosted activity in the construction and public works industries. About 6,000 miles of railway were opened in Britain between 1830 and 1850, most of it in two short bursts.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In the course of half a century, three generations of this family – grandfather, father and son, all called Abraham Darby – brought about a revolution in the metallurgical industry.

11. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: It began with an invention in 1709 by the first Abraham Darby (1677–1717). This was a blast furnace that would use coke, which could generate high temperatures; coke was derived from coal by removing the sulphur and impurities.

12. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Watt's inventions were not limited to the steam engine. He invented a chemical process for copying documents. He also created a unit of measurement based on comparing mechanical power with that of the previous universal power source, the horse.

13. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Richard Trevithick had devised an engine called the 'Puffing Devil'. The Puffing Devil was started in 1801.

14. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In 1940–50, the US enters Second World War. In 1960–70, the Civil Rights movement in the USA. In 1900–1910, the Wright brothers invent the aeroplane.

15. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The movement, known as Luddism (1811–17), was led by the charismatic General Ned Ludd. Luddism was not merely a backwards-looking assault on machines. The participants of Luddism demanded a minimum wage.

HISTORY CLASS-XI

10 DISPLACING INDIGENOUS PEOPLE

Introduction: European Imperialism

- The American empires of Spain and Portugal did not expand after the seventeenth century.
- From that time other countries – France, Holland, and England – began to extend their trading activities and establish colonies – in America, Africa, and Asia.
- Ireland also was virtually a colony of England, as the landowners, there were mostly English settlers.
- In South Asia, trading companies like the East India Company made themselves into political powers, defeated local rulers, and annexed their territories.
- In Africa, Europeans traded on the coast, except in South Africa, and only in the late nineteenth century did they venture into the interior.
- The word settler is used for the Dutch in South Africa, the British in Ireland, New Zealand and Australia, and the Europeans in America. The official language in these colonies was English (except in Canada, where French is also an official language).

North America

- The continent of North America extends from the Arctic Circle to the Tropic of Cancer, from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean.
- To the south is Mexico. Forty percent of Canada is covered with forests.
- Oil, gas and mineral resources are found in many areas, which explains the many big industries in the USA and Canada.
- Mining, industry and extensive agriculture have been developed only in the last 200 years by immigrants from Europe, Africa and China.

The Native Peoples

- The earliest inhabitants of North America came from Asia over 30,000 years ago on a land bridge across the Bering Straits, and during the last Ice Age 10,000 years ago they moved further south.
- The oldest artefact found in America – an arrow-point – is 11,000 years old.
- The population started to increase about 5,000 years ago when the climate became more stable.
- Numerous languages were spoken in North America, though these were not written down. They believed that time moved in cycles, and each tribe had accounts about their origins and their earlier history which were passed on from one generation to the next.

Encounters with Europeans

- In the seventeenth century, the European traders who reached the north coast of North America after a difficult two-month voyage were relieved to find the native peoples friendly and welcoming.
- Unlike the Spanish in South America, who were overcome by the abundance of gold in the country, these adventurers came to trade in fish and furs, in which they got the willing help of the natives who were hunting experts.
- In exchange for local products, the Europeans gave the natives blankets, iron vessels (which they used sometimes in place of their clay pots), guns, which were a useful supplement for bows and arrows to kill animals, and alcohol.

Mutual Perceptions

- In the eighteenth century, western Europeans defined 'civilised' people in terms of literacy, organized religion and urbanism.
- A popular term was the noble savage. Some lines in a poem by the English poet William Wordsworth indicate another perspective.
- To the natives, the goods they exchanged with the Europeans were gifts, given in friendship.
- The prices of the goods they sold varied from year to year, depending on the supply. The natives could not understand this – they had no sense of the 'market' in faraway Europe.
- From the seventeenth century, there were groups of Europeans who were being persecuted because they were of a different sect of Christianity (Protestants living in predominantly Catholic countries, or Catholics in countries where Protestantism was the official religion).
- Natives and Europeans saw different things when they looked at forests – natives identified tracks invisible to the Europeans.
- Jefferson's 'dream' was a country populated by Europeans with small farms. The natives, who grew crops for their own needs, not for sale and profit, and thought it wrong to 'own' the land, could not understand this.
- The countries that are known as Canada and the United States of America came into existence at the end of the eighteenth century.
- Over the next hundred years, they extended their control over more territory, to reach their present size.
- Large areas were acquired by the USA by purchase – they bought land in the south from France (the 'Louisiana Purchase') and Russia (Alaska), and by war – much of the southern USA was won from Mexico.
- The Europeans treated the land differently from the natives. Some of the migrants from Britain and France were younger sons who would not inherit their fathers' property and therefore were eager to own land in America.

- People from Poland were happy to work in the prairie grasslands, which reminded them of the steppes of their homes, and were excited at being able to buy huge properties at very low prices.
- The climate of the southern region was too hot for Europeans to work outdoors, and the experience of South American colonies had shown that the natives who had been enslaved had died in large numbers.
- The northern states of the USA, where the economy did not depend on plantations (and therefore on slavery), argued for ending slavery which they condemned as an inhuman practice.
- In 1861–65, there was a war between the states that wanted to retain slavery and those supporting abolition.
- Slavery was abolished, though it was only in the twentieth century that the African Americans were able to win the battle for civil liberties, and segregation between 'whites' and 'non-whites' in schools and public transport was ended.
- The Canada had been won by the British after a war with France in 1763. The French settlers repeatedly demanded autonomous political status. In 1867, this problem was solved by organising Canada as a Confederation of autonomous states.

The Native Peoples Lose their Land

- In the USA, as settlement expanded, the natives were induced or forced to move, after signing treaties selling their land.
- Even high officials saw nothing wrong in depriving the native peoples of their land. This is seen in an episode in Georgia, a state in the USA.
- In 1832, an important judgment was announced by the US Chief Justice, John Marshall.
- US President Andrew Jackson had a reputation for fighting against economic and political privilege, but when it came to the Indians, he was a different person.
- Many tribes were forced to share the land originally occupied by one tribe, thus leading to quarrels between them. They were locked off in small areas called 'reservations', which often was land with which they had no earlier connection.

The Gold Rush, and the Growth of Industries

- There was always the hope that there was gold in North America. In the 1840s, traces of gold were found in the USA, in California.
- Large-scale agriculture also expanded. Vast areas were cleared and divided up into farms.
- By 1890, the bison had almost been exterminated, thus ending the life of hunting the natives had followed for centuries.
- In 1892, the USA's continental expansion was complete. The area between the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans was divided up into states. There no longer remained the 'frontier' that had pulled European settlers west for many decades.

Constitutional Rights

- The 'democratic spirit' which had been the rallying cry of the settlers in their fight for independence in the 1770s, came to define the identity of the USA against the monarchies and aristocracies of the Old World.
- Daniel Paul, a Canadian native, pointed out in 2000 that Thomas Paine, the champion of democracy at the time of the War for American Independence and the French Revolution, 'used the Indians as models of how society might be organized'.

The Winds of Change

- Not till the 1920s did things begin to improve for the native peoples of the USA and Canada.
- The Problem of Indian Administration, a survey directed by social scientist Lewis Meriam and published in 1928, only a few years before the USA was swept by a major economic depression that affected all its people, painted a grim picture of the terribly poor health and education facilities for natives in reservations.
- White Americans felt sympathy for the natives who were being discouraged from the full exercise of their cultures and simultaneously denied the benefits of citizenship.
- In the 1950s and 1960s, the US and Canadian governments thought of ending all special provisions for the natives in the hope that they would 'join the mainstream', that is, adopt European culture.
- In 1969 the government announced that they would 'not recognise aboriginal rights'. The natives, in a well-organised opposition move, held a series of demonstrations and debates.

Australia

- The 'aborigines' (a general name given to a number of different societies) began to arrive on the continent over 40,000 years ago (possibly even earlier).
- In the late eighteenth century, there were between 350 and 750 native communities in Australia each with its own language (even today 200 of these languages are spoken).
- There is another large group of indigenous people living in the north, called the Torres Strait Islanders.
- The term Aborigine is not used for these as they are believed to have migrated from elsewhere and belong to a different race.
- Australia is sparsely populated, and even now most of the towns are along the coast (where the British first arrived in 1770) because the central region is an arid desert.
- The story of the interaction between the European settlers, the native peoples and the land in Australia has many points of similarity to the story of the Americas, though it began nearly 300 years later.
- There was a sharp reversal of feeling on the part of the British when Cook was killed by a native – not in Australia, but Hawaii.
- The British had adopted the same practice in the American colonies until they became independent. Then they continued it in Australia.
- Most of the early settlers were convicts who had been deported from England and when their jail term ended, they were allowed to live as free people in Australia on the condition that they did not return to Britain.
- Some natives were employed on farms, under conditions of work so harsh that it was little different from slavery.

- Till 1974, such to the popular fear that 'dark' people from South Asia or Southeast Asia might migrate to Australia in large numbers that there was a government policy to keep 'non-white' people out.

The Winds of Change

- From the 1970s, as was happening in North America, there was an eagerness to understand natives not as anthropological curiosities but as communities with distinct cultures, unique ways of understanding nature and climate, with a sense of community that had vast bodies of stories, textile and painting and carving skills, which should be understood and recorded and respected.
- Since 1974, 'multiculturalism' has been the official policy in Australia, which gave equal respect to native cultures and the different cultures of the immigrants from Europe and Asia.
- From the 1970s, as the term human rights began to be heard at meetings of the UNO and other international agencies, the Australian public realized with dismay that, in contrast to the USA, Canada, and New Zealand, Australia had no treaties with the natives formalising the takeover of land by Europeans.
- The government had always termed the land of Australia terra nullius, that is belonging to nobody.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. How much percent of Canada is covered with forests?
(a) 20 **(b)** 30
(c) 40 **(d)** 50

2. Which of the following industries found in many areas did not explain the many big industries in the USA and Canada?
(a) Oil **(b)** Gas
(c) Mineral **(d)** Steel

3. How old was the oldest artefact an arrow-point found in America?
(a) 10,000 years **(b)** 11,000 years
(c) 12,000 years **(d)** 13,000 years

4. Which of the following was not the important feature of the people of North America?
(a) Making formal alliances
(b) Exchanging gifts
(c) Making friendships
(d) Calling guests

5. Which of the term is used by the Indians Act of 1876?
(a) Band **(b)** Nation
(c) Native **(d)** Aboriginal

6. In the 1860s, people of _____ tribe were moved to Nebraska.
(a) Winnebago **(b)** Cindi
(c) Burgundi **(d)** Gothi

7. How long was the voyage in the seventeenth century by the European traders who reached the north coast of North America?
(a) 2 months **(b)** 3 months
(c) 4 months **(d)** 5 months

8. When did the American empires of Spain and Portugal stop expanding?
(a) Fifteenth century **(b)** Sixteenth century
(c) Seventeenth century **(d)** Eighteenth century

9. In Canada, which of the following languages is also an official language apart from English?
(a) Russian **(b)** French
(c) German **(d)** All of the above

10. Who was the third President of the USA?
(a) Andrew Jackson **(b)** John Adams
(c) Thomas Jefferson **(d)** James Madison

11. In which year did the British give Mid-West to the USA?
(a) 1781 **(b)** 1783
(c) 1785 **(d)** 1787

12. The USA bought land in the south from France-Louisiana and from Russia _____.
(a) New Jersey **(b)** Hawaii
(c) Texas **(d)** Alaska

13. In which year was the barbed wire invented?
(a) 1873 **(b)** 1877
(c) 1882 **(d)** 1890

14. Which of the following terms was used by Europeans to describe the inhabitants of countries they had colonised till the early twentieth century?
(a) Local **(b)** Native
(c) Immigrants **(d)** Nomads

15. Which of the following did not contribute to the expansion of mining, industry and extensive agriculture?
(a) Europe **(b)** Africa
(c) Russia **(d)** China

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. What was the reason for an increase in the population about 5000 years ago?
(a) Stability in climate
(b) Advanced technology
(c) Population Growth
(d) Increase in resources

2. Match the following:

A.	Aborigine	**1.**	Native people of Australia
B.	Amerind	**2.**	Native peoples of North and South America and the Caribbean
C.	Red Indian	**3.**	Brown-complexioned people whose land Columbus mistook for India

Choose the correct alternative:
(a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-3, B-2, C-1
(c) A-1, B-3, C-2 **(d)** A-1, B-2, C-3

3. Consider the following statements:
   1. The economic development of Australia under European settlement was not as varied as in America.
   2. Vast sheep farms and mining stations were established over a long period and with much labour, followed by vineyards and wheat farming. These came to form the basis of the country's prosperity.
   3. When the states were united, and it was decided that a new capital would be built for Australia in 1911, one name suggested for it was Wool wheat gold!

   Which of the above statements is/are incorrect?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
   (c) 2 only **(d)** None of the above
4. Match the following:

A.	Self-government was granted to Australian colonies.	**1.**	1911
B.	Canberra was established as the capital.	**2.**	1901
C.	Formation of Federation of Australia, with six states.	**3.**	1850

   Choose the correct alternative:
   (a) A-1, B-2, C-3 **(b)** A-2, B-1, C-3
   (c) A-3, B-1, C-2 **(d)** A-2, B-3, C-1
5. There is another large group of indigenous people living in the north of Australia; they are called the _____.
   (a) Torres Strait Islanders **(b)** Aborigine
   (c) Forest loco migrates **(d)** None of the above
6. Karl Marx was the great German _____.
   (a) Politician **(b)** Leader
   (c) Philosopher **(d)** Historian
7. Consider the following statements:
   1. White Americans felt sympathy for the natives who were being discouraged from the full exercise of their cultures and simultaneously denied the benefits of citizenship.
   2. The sympathy led to a landmark law in the USA, the Indian Reorganisation Act of 1934, which gave natives in reservations the right to buy land and take loans.
   3. In the 1950s and 1960s, the US and Canadian governments thought of ending all special provisions for the natives in the hope that they would 'join the mainstream', that is, adopt European culture.

   Which of the above statements is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 and 3
   (c) 2 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
8. Consider the following statements:
   1. In 1832, an important judgment was announced by the US Chief Justice, Marc Isaac.
   2. He said that the Cherokees were 'a distinct community, occupying its own territory in which the laws of Georgia had no force' and that they had sovereignty in certain matters.
   3. US President Andrew Jackson had a reputation for fighting against economic and political privilege, but when it came to the Indians, he was a different person.

   Which of the above statements is/are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 and 3
   (c) 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
9. Match the following:

A.	John Cabot reaches	**1.**	1497
B.	French found the colony	**2.**	1608
C.	Jacques Cartier travels down the St Lawrence River and meets native peoples	**3.**	1534

   Choose the correct alternative:
   (a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-3, B-2, C-1
   (c) A-1, B-3, C-2 **(d)** A-1, B-2, C-3
10. Consider the following statements:
    1. The landscapes of America changed drastically in the nineteenth century.
    2. The Europeans treated the land differently from the natives.
    3. Some of the migrants from Britain and France were younger sons who would not inherit their fathers' property and therefore were eager to own land in America.

    Which of the following is/are correct?
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) 2 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
11. Consider the following statements:
    1. The northern states of the USA, where the economy did not depend on plantations (and therefore on slavery), argued for ending slavery which they condemned as an inhuman practice.
    2. In 1861–65, there was a war between the states that wanted to retain slavery and those supporting abolition.
    3. Protests by anti-slavery groups led to a ban on the slave trade, but the Africans who were in the USA remained slaves, as did their children.

    Which of the following is/are correct?
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) 2 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
12. Which of the following was the reason for the quarrels between many tribes in North America?
    (a) They were forced to share their lands
    (b) They were asked to migrate from their lands.
    (c) They were considered non-whites.
    (d) All of the above
13. What was considered the 'Gold Rush' in the 1840s in North America?
    (a) Europeans hurried to America in the hope of making a quick fortune.
    (b) Europeans hurried to Asia in the hope of making a quick fortune.
    (c) Europeans hurried to America to buy a lot of gold.
    (d) Europeans hurried to Asia to buy a lot of gold.
14. Match the following:

A.	Dakota	**1.**	Aeroplane
B.	Cherokee	**2.**	Jeep
C.	Mohawk	**3.**	Haircut

    Choose the correct alternatives:
    (a) A-2, B-1, C-3 **(b)** A-3, B-2, C-1
    (c) A-1, B-3, C-2 **(d)** A-1, B-2, C-3

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Forty per cent of Canada is covered with forests.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Oil, gas and mineral resources are found in many areas, which explains the many big industries in the USA and Canada.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The oldest artefact found in America – an arrow-point – is 11,000 years old.
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: An important feature of their tradition was that of making formal alliances and friendships, and exchanging gifts. Goods were obtained not by buying them, but as gifts.
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The organised native groups were recognised by the Canadian government (the Indians Act of 1876 used the term 'bands' but from the 1980s the word 'nations' is used).
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In the 1860s, people of Winnebago tribe were moved to Nebraska.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In the seventeenth century, the European traders who reached the north coast of North America after a difficult two-month voyage were relieved to find the native peoples friendly and welcoming.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The American empires of Spain and Portugal did not expand after the seventeenth century. From that time other countries – France, Holland and England – began to extend their trading activities and to establish colonies – in America, Africa and Asia.
9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In Africa, Europeans traded on the coast, except in South Africa, and only in the late nineteenth century did they venture into the interior. After this, some of the European countries reached an agreement to divide up Africa as colonies for themselves. The word 'settler' is used for the Dutch in South Africa, the British in Ireland, New Zealand and Australia, and the Europeans in America.
The official language in these colonies was English (except in Canada, where French is also an official language).
10. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Thomas Jefferson was the third President of the USA.
11. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1781 Britain recognises the USA as an independent country, and in 1783, British gave Mid-West to the USA.
12. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The countries are known as Canada and the United States of America came into existence at the end of the eighteenth century. At that time they occupied only a fraction of the land they now cover. Over the next hundred years, they extended their control over more territory, to reach their present size. Large areas were acquired by the USA by purchase – they bought land in the south from France (the 'Louisiana Purchase') and Russia (Alaska), and by war – much of the southern USA was won from Mexico.
13. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: People from Poland were happy to work in the prairie grasslands, which reminded them of the steppes of their homes, and were excited at being able to buy huge properties at very low prices. They cleared land and developed agriculture, introducing crops (rice and cotton) that could not grow in Europe and therefore could be sold there for profit. To protect their huge farms from wild animals – wolves and mountain lions – these were hunted to extinction. They felt secure only with the invention of barbed wire in 1873.
14. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: 'Native' means a person born in the place he/she lives in. Till the early twentieth century, the term was used by Europeans to describe the inhabitants of countries they had colonized.
15. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Mining, industry, and extensive agriculture have been developed only in the last 200 years by immigrants from Europe, Africa, and China.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The earliest inhabitants of North America came from Asia over 30,000 years ago on a land bridge across the Bering Straits, and during the last Ice Age 10,000 years ago they moved further south. The population started to increase about 5,000 years ago when the climate became more stable.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Aborigine means native people of Australia (in Latin, ab = from, origine = the beginning. Aboriginal – adjective, often misused as a noun. American Indian/Amerind/Amerindian – native peoples of North and South America and the Caribbean. Red Indians are the brown-complexioned people whose land Columbus mistook for India.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The economic development of Australia under European settlement was not as varied as in America. Vast sheep farms and mining stations were established over a long period and with much labour, followed by vineyards and wheat farming. These came to form the basis of the country's prosperity. When the states were united, and it was decided that a new capital would be built for Australia in 1911, one name suggested for it was Wool wheat gold! Ultimately, it was called Canberra (= kamberra, a native word meaning 'meeting place').

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In 1850, self-government was granted to Australian colonies. In 1901, the formation of the Federation of Australia, with six states took place. In 1911, Canberra was established as the capital.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In the late eighteenth century, there were between 350 and 750 native communities in Australia each with its own language (even today 200 of these languages are spoken). There is another large group of indigenous people living in the north, called the Torres Strait Islanders.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Karl Marx (1818-83), the great German philosopher, described the American frontier as 'the last positive capitalist utopia…the limitless nature and space to which the limitless thirst for profit adapts itself'.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: White Americans felt sympathy for the natives who were being discouraged from the full exercise of their cultures and simultaneously denied the benefits of citizenship. The sympathy led to a landmark law in the USA, the Indian Reorganisation Act of 1934, which gave natives in reservations the right to buy land and take loans. In the 1950s and 1960s, the US and Canadian governments thought of ending all special provisions for the natives in the hope that they would 'join the mainstream', that is, adopt European culture.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: In 1832, an important judgment was announced by the US Chief Justice, John Marshall. He said that the Cherokees were 'a distinct community, occupying its own territory in which the laws of Georgia had no force' and that they had sovereignty in certain matters. US President Andrew Jackson had a reputation for fighting against economic and political privilege, but when it came to the Indians, he was a different person. He refused to honour the Chief Justice's judgment and ordered the US army to evict the Cherokees from their land and drive them to the Great American Desert. Of the 15,000 people thus forced to go, over a quarter died along the 'Trail of Tears'.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: In 1497, John Cabot reaches Newfoundland. In 1608, the French found the colony of Quebec. In 1534, Jacques Cartier travels down the St Lawrence River and meets native peoples.

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The landscapes of America changed drastically in the nineteenth century. The Europeans treated the land differently from the natives. Some of the migrants from Britain and France were younger sons who would not inherit their fathers' property and therefore were eager to own land in America.

11. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The northern states of the USA, where the economy did not depend on plantations (and therefore on slavery), argued for ending slavery which they condemned as an inhuman practice. In 1861-65, there was a war between the states that wanted to retain slavery and those supporting abolition. Protests by anti-slavery groups led to a ban on the slave trade, but the Africans who were in the USA remained slaves, as did their children.

12. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Many tribes in North America were forced to share the land originally occupied by one tribe, thus leading to quarrels between them. They were locked off in small areas called 'reservations', which often was land with which they had no earlier connection.

13. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: There was always the hope that there was gold in North America. In the 1840s, traces of gold were found in the USA, in California. This led to the 'Gold Rush' when thousands of eager Europeans hurried to America in the hope of making a quick fortune.

14. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Names of native tribes are often given to things unconnected with them: Dakota (an aeroplane), Cherokee (a jeep), Pontiac (a car), Mohawk (a haircut).

HISTORY CLASS-XI

11 PATHS TO MODERNISATION

Introduction

- China and Japan present a marked physical contrast. China is a vast continental country that spans many climatic zones; the core is dominated by three major river systems: The Yellow River (Huang He), the Yangtse River (Chang Jiang) and the Pearl River.
- The dominant ethnic group are the Han and the major language is Chinese (Putonghua) but there are many other nationalities, such as the Uighur, Hui, Manchu and Tibetan.
- Chinese food reflects this regional diversity with at least four distinct types. The best known is southern or Cantonese cuisine – as most overseas Chinese come from the Canton area – which includes dim sum (literally touch your heart), an assortment of pastries and dumplings.
- In eastern China, both rice and wheat are eaten.
- Japan, by contrast, is a string of islands, the four largest being Honshu, Kyushu, Shikoku and Hokkaido. The Okinawan chain is the southernmost, about the same latitude as the Bahamas.
- Japan lacks a tradition of animal rearing. Rice is the staple crop and fish the major source of protein.

The Political System (Japan)

- An emperor had ruled Japan from Kyoto, but by the twelfth century, the imperial court lost power to shoguns, who in theory ruled in the name of the emperor. From 1603 to 1867, members of the Tokugawa family held the position of shogun.
- The shogun exercised power over the domain lords, ordering them to stay at the capital Edo (modern Tokyo) for long periods so that they would not pose a threat.
- A vibrant culture blossomed in the towns, where the fast-growing class of merchants patronised theatre and the arts.
- In Edo, people could 'rent' a book for the price of a bowl of noodles. This shows how popular reading had become and gives a glimpse into the scale of printing.
- Japan was considered rich, because it imported luxury goods like silk from China and textiles from India.
- The silk from Nishijin came to be known as the best in the world. Other developments such as the increased use of money and the creation of a stock market in rice show that the economy was developing in new ways.

The Meiji Restoration

- In 1853, the USA sent Commodore Matthew Perry (1794–1858) to Japan to demand that the government sign a treaty that would permit trade and open diplomatic relations, which it did the following year.
- Perry's arrival had an important effect on Japanese politics. The emperor, who till then had little political power, now re-emerged as an important figure.
- In 1868, a movement forcibly removed the shogun from power and brought the Emperor to Edo. This was made the capital and renamed Tokyo, which means 'eastern capital'.
- The government launched a policy with the slogan 'fukoku kyohei' (rich country, strong army).
- At the same time, the new government also worked to build what they called the emperor system.
- The Emperor would be treated with reverence as he was considered a direct descendant of the Sun Goddess, but he was also shown as the leader of westernisation.
- The Imperial Rescript on Education of 1890 urged people to pursue learning, advance public good and promote common interests.
- A new school system began to be built in the 1870s. Schooling was compulsory for boys and girls and by 1910 almost universal.
- Tuition fees were minimal. The curriculum had been based on Western models but by the 1870s, while emphasising modern ideas, stress was placed on loyalty and the study of Japanese history.
- To integrate the nation, the Meiji government imposed a new administrative structure by altering old village and domain boundaries.
- A modern military force was developed. A legal system was set up to regulate the formation of political groups, control the holding of meetings and impose strict censorship.
- The tension between these different ideals represented by a democratic constitution and a modern army was to have far-reaching consequences.
- Popular demand for greater democracy was often in opposition to the government's aggressive policies.
- Japan developed economically and acquired a colonial empire that suppressed the spread of democracy at home and put it in collision with the people it colonised.

Modernising the Economy

- Funds were raised by levying an agricultural tax.
- Japan's first railway line, between Tokyo and the port of Yokohama, was built in 1870–72. Textile machinery was imported from Europe, and foreign technicians were employed to train workers, as well as to teach in universities and schools, and Japanese students were sent abroad.

- In 1872, modern banking institutions were launched. Companies like Mitsubishi and Sumitomo were helped through subsidies and tax benefits to become major shipbuilders so that Japanese trade was from now on carried in Japanese ships.
- Within Japan, there was a shift to towns as the industry developed. By 1925, 21 percent of the population lived in cities; by 1935, this figure had gone up to 32 percent (22.5 million).

Industrial Workers

- The number of people in manufacturing increased from 700,000 in 1870 to 4 million in 1913. Over half of those employed in modern factories were women.
- The size of factories also began to increase. Factories employing more than a hundred workers, just over 1,000 in 1909, jumped to over 2,000 by 1920 and 4,000 by the 1930s.
- The rapid and unregulated growth of industry and the demand for natural resources such as timber led to environmental destruction.
- Tanaka Shozo, elected to the first House of Representatives, launched the first agitation against industrial pollution in 1897 with 800 villagers in a mass protest forcing the government to take action.

Aggressive Nationalism

- The Meiji constitution was based on a restricted franchise and created a *Diet* (the Japanese used the German word for parliament because of the influence of German legal ideas) with limited powers.
- The emperor was the commander of the forces, and from 1890 this was interpreted to mean that the army and the navy had independent control.
- In 1899, the prime minister ordered that only serving generals and admirals could become ministers.

'Westernisation' and 'Tradition'

- Successive generations of Japanese intellectuals had different views on Japan's relations with other countries.
- To some, the USA and western European countries were at the highest point of civilisation, to which Japan aspired.
- Fukuzawa Yukichi, a leading Meiji intellectual, expressed this by saying that Japan must 'expel Asia'.
- The philosopher Miyake Setsurei (1860–1945) argued that each nation must develop its special talents in the interest of world civilisation: 'To devote oneself to one's country is to devote oneself to the world.'

Daily Life

- The patriarchal household system comprised many generations living together under the control of the head of the house, but as more people became affluent, new ideas of the family spread.
- The new home (*homu* as the Japanese say, using the English word) was that of the nuclear family, where the husband and wife lived as breadwinners and homemakers.
- In the 1920s, construction companies made cheap housing available for a down payment of 200 yen and a monthly installment of 12 yen for ten years – this at a time when the salary of a bank employee (a person with higher education) was 40 yen per month.

Overcoming Modernity

- State-centred nationalism found full expression in the 1930s and 1940s as Japan launched wars to extend its empire in China and other parts of Asia, a war that merged into the Second World War after Japan attacked the USA at Pearl Harbour.
- An influential symposium on 'Overcoming Modernity' in 1943 debated the dilemma facing Japan – of how to combat the West while being modern.
- A musician, Moroi Saburo, posed the question of how to rescue the music from the art of sensory stimulation and restore it to the art of the spirit.
- The philosopher Nishitani Keiji defined 'modern' as the unity of three streams of Western thought: The Renaissance, the Protestant Reformation, and the rise of natural sciences.

After Defeat: Re-emerging as a Global Economic Power

- Japan's attempt to carve out a colonial empire ended with its defeat by the Allied forces.
- Under the US-led Occupation (1945–47) Japan was demilitarised and a new constitution was introduced.
- Agrarian reforms, the re-establishment of trade unions and an attempt to dismantle the zaibatsu or large monopoly houses that dominated the Japanese economy were also carried out.
- Political parties were revived and the first post-war elections were held in 1946 where women voted for the first time.
- The rapid rebuilding of the Japanese economy after its shattering defeat was called a post-war miracle.
- The social cohesion of the pre-war years was strengthened, allowing for a close working of the government, bureaucracy and industry.
- US support, as well as the demand created by the Korean and the Vietnamese wars also helped the Japanese economy.
- The 1960s saw the growth of civil society movements as industrialisation had been pushed with utter disregard for its effect on health and the environment.
- Cadmium poisoning, which led to a painful disease, was an early indicator, followed by mercury poisoning in Minamata in the 1960s and problems caused by air pollution in the early 1970s.
- Grass-roots pressure groups began to demand recognition of these problems as well as compensation for the victims.
- Government action and new legal regulations helped to improve conditions.
- Since the mid-1980s there has been an increasing decline in interest in environmental issues as Japan enacted some of the strictest environmental controls in the world.

China

- The modern history of China has revolved around the question of how to regain sovereignty, end the humiliation of foreign occupation and bring about equality and development.
- The early reformers such as Kang Youwei (1858–1927) or Liang Qichao (1873–1929) tried to use traditional ideas in new and different ways to meet the challenges posed by the West.

- The beginning of modern China can be traced to its first encounter with the West in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries when Jesuit missionaries introduced Western sciences such as astronomy and mathematics.
- Limited though its immediate impact was, it set in motion events that gathered momentum in the nineteenth century when Britain used force to expand its lucrative trade in opium leading to the First Opium War (1839–42).
- The negative example of colonised countries worked powerfully on Chinese thinkers. The partition of Poland in the eighteenth century was a much-discussed example.
- In 1903, the thinker Liang Qichao, who believed that only by making people aware that China was a nation would they be able to resist the West, wrote that India was a country that was destroyed by a non-country that is the East India Company.
- Confucianism, developed from the teachings of Confucius (551–479 BCE) and his disciples, was concerned with good conduct, practical wisdom and proper social relationships.
- To train people in modern subjects students were sent to study in Japan, Britain and France and bring back new ideas.
- Many Chinese students went to Japan in the 1890s. They not only brought back new ideas but many became leading republicans.
- In 1905, just after the Russo-Japanese war (a war fought on Chinese soil and over Chinese territory), the centuries-old Chinese examination system that gave candidates entry into the elite ruling class was abolished.

Establishing the Republic

- The Manchu empire was overthrown and a republic was established in 1911 under Sun Yat-sen (1866–1925) who is unanimously regarded as the founder of modern China.
- The social and political situation continued to be unstable. On 4 May 1919, an angry demonstration was held in Beijing to protest against the decisions of the post-war peace conference.
- The protest became a movement. It galvanised a whole generation to attack tradition and to call for saving China through modern science, democracy and nationalism.
- The Guomindang (the National People's Party) and the CCP emerged as major forces striving to unite the country and bring stability.
- Sun Yat-sen's ideas became the basis of the political philosophy of the Guomindang. They identified the 'four great needs' as clothing, food, housing and transportation. The people, he said, must develop a 'habit and instinct for unified behaviour'.
- The Guomindang's social base was in urban areas. Industrial growth was slow and limited. In cities such as Shanghai, which became the centres of modern growth, by 1919 an industrial working class had appeared numbering 500,000.
- Social and cultural change was helped along by the spread of schools and universities (Peking University was established in 1902).
- Journalism flourished reflecting the growing attraction of this new thinking.
- The Guomindang despite its attempts to unite the country failed because of its narrow social base and limited political vision. A major plank in Sun Yat-sen's programme – regulating capital and equalizing land – was never carried out because the party ignored the peasantry and the rising social inequalities.

The Rise of the Communist Party of China

- The long and exhausting war weakened China. Prices rose 30 percent per month between 1945 and 1949 and utterly destroyed the lives of ordinary people.
- Rural China faced two crises: one ecological, with soil exhaustion, deforestation and floods, and the second, a socio-economic one caused by exploitative land-tenure systems, indebtedness, primitive technology and poor communications.
- The CCP had been founded in 1921, soon after the Russian Revolution.
- The Comintern and the Soviet Union supported communist parties around the world but they worked within the traditional Marxist understanding that revolution would be brought about by the working class in cities.
- Mao Zedong's radical approach can be seen in Jiangxi, in the mountains, where they camped from 1928 to 1934, secure from Guomindang attacks.
- The Guomindang blockade of the Communists' Soviet forced the party to seek another base.

Establishing the New Democracy: 1949–65

- The Peoples Republic of China government was established in 1949. It was based on the principles of the 'New Democracy', an alliance of all social classes, unlike the 'dictatorship of the proletariat' that the Soviet Union said it had established.
- The Great Leap Forward movement launched in 1958 was a policy to galvanise the country to industrialise rapidly.
- In the rural areas, people's communes (where land would be collectively owned and cultivated) were started.
- Mao was able to mobilise the masses to attain the goals set by the Party. His concern was with creating a 'socialist man' who would have five loves: fatherland, people, labour, science and public property.

Conflicting Visions: 1965–78

- The conflict between the Maoists wanting to create a 'Socialist Man' and those who objected to his emphasis on ideology rather than expertise, culminated in Mao launching the Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution in 1965 to counter his critics.
- The Red Guards, mainly students and the army, were used for a campaign against old culture, old customs and old habits.
- The Cultural Revolution began a period of turmoil, weakened the Party and severely disrupted the economy and educational system.
- From the late 1960s, the tide began to turn. In 1975, the Party once again emphasized greater social discipline and the need to build an industrial economy so that China could become a power before the end of the century.

Reforms from 1978

- The Cultural Revolution was followed by a process of political manoeuvring. Deng Xiaoping kept party control strong while introducing a socialist market economy.
- In 1978, the Party declared its goal as the Four Modernisations (to develop science, industry, agriculture, defence). The debate was allowed as long as the Party was not questioned.
- On 5 December 1978, a wall poster, 'The Fifth Modernisation' proclaimed that without Democracy the other modernisations would come to nothing.
- These demands were suppressed, but in 1989, on the seventieth anniversary of the May Fourth movement, many intellectuals called for greater openness and an end to ossified dogmas (su shaozhi).
- The post-reform period has seen the emergence of debates on ways to develop China.
- The dominant view supported by the Party is based on strong political control, economic liberalisation and integration into the world market.

The Story of Taiwan

- Chiang Kai-shek, defeated by the CCP fled in 1949 to Taiwan with over US$ 300 million in gold reserves and crates of priceless art treasures and established the Republic of China.
- Taiwan had been a Japanese colony since the Chinese ceded it after the 1894–95 war with Japan.
- Massive demonstrations in February 1947 had led the GMD to brutally kill a whole generation of leading figures.
- The first free election began the process of bringing local Taiwanese to power.
- China may be willing to tolerate a semi-autonomous Taiwan as long as it gives up any move to seek independence.

The Story of Korea

Beginnings of Modernisation

- During the late nineteenth century, Korea' Joseon Dynasty (1392–1910) faced internal political and social strife and increasing foreign pressure from China, Japan and the West.
- After decades of political interference, imperial Japan annexed Korea as its colony in 1910, bringing the over 500-year long Joseon Dynasty to its end.
- Desiring independence, Koreans around the country demonstrated against the colonial rule, set up a provisional government and sent delegations to appeal to foreign leaders at international meetings, such as the Cairo, Yalta and Potsdam conferences.
- The Japanese colonial rule ended after 35 years in August 1945 with Japan's defeat in World War II.

A Post-War Nation

- In June 1950, the Korean War broke out. With South Korea receiving support from the US-led United Nations forces and North Korea receiving support from communist China, it developed into a vintage proxy war of the Cold War era.
- In July 1953, after three years, the war ended in an armistice agreement. Korea remained divided.
- Though South Korea's first president Syngman Rhee had been elected in 1948 through the democratic process after the Korean War, he extended his administration, twice through illegal constitutional amendments.
- With the revolution as an impetus, the spirit of the people, which had been suppressed during the Rhee administration, erupted in the form of demonstrations and demands.
- In May 1961, the Democratic Party government was overthrown in a military coup staged by General Park Chung-hee and other military authorities.

Rapid Industrialisation under Strong Leadership

- In October 1963, an election was held and military coup leader Park Chung-hee was elected the president.
- Korea's unprecedented rate of economic growth began in the early 1960s when the state policy shifted from import substitution industrialisation (ISI) towards a focus on exports.
- During the late 1960s and 1970s, the focus again shifted from light industries to value-added heavy and chemical industries.
- Steel, non-ferrous metals machinery, shipbuilding, electronics and chemical production were selected as the most important industries in the race for economic growth.
- In 1970, the New Village (Saemaul) Movement was introduced to encourage and mobilise the rural population and modernise the agricultural sector.
- Korea achieved startling economic growth thanks to a combination of strong leaders, well-trained bureaucrats, aggressive industrialists and a capable labour force.
- At the dawn of Korea's industrialisation, almost all Korean workers were already literate and could easily acquire new skills.
- Foreign investment and Korea's high domestic savings rate helped develop the heavy industrial sector, while remittances from South Korean workers overseas also contributed to the overall economic development.
- Economic growth was the foundation of the Park administration's long-term power.
- As the president was invested with absolute authority, the progress of democracy was temporarily suspended in pursuit of economic development.

Economic Growth and Calls for Democratisation

- After the death of Park, in 1979, another military coup staged in the leadership of Chun Doo-hwan.
- In May 1980, various protests in key cities around the nation were held by students and citizens demanding democracy in the face of Chun's military faction.
- In the city of Gwangju, in particular, students and citizens did not back down and demanded that martial law be ended. This is known as the Gwangju Democratisation Movement.
- The Chun administration strengthened the suppression of democratisation influences to stabilise the regime.
- In May 1987, the Chun administration's minimisation of inquiries into the death-by-torture of a university student was made known, making citizens begin to participate in a large-scale struggle for democratisation. The June Democracy movement that

followed had participation of students and middle class as well. After this, the Chun administration was forced to make revision in the constitution and allowed direct elections.

Korean Democracy and the IMF Crisis

- In 1990, long-time opposition leader Kim Young-sam compromised with Roh's party to create a large ruling party.
- With governmental support, Korean conglomerates invested in capital-intensive heavy and chemical industries, as well as, electronic industries, while the government continued to focus on building industrial and social infrastructure.
- The crisis was dealt with through emergency financial support provided by the International Monetary Fund (IMF).
- In December 1997, long-time opposition party leader Kim Dae-Jung was elected the president for the first time in Korea, marking a peaceful transfer of power.
- In May 2017, Moon Jae-in was elected the president, in a peaceful transfer of power for the third time.

Two Roads to Modernisation

- Industrial societies far from becoming like each other have found their paths to becoming modern.
- The histories of Japan and China, along with the stories of Taiwan and Korea, show how different historical conditions led them on widely divergent paths to building independent and modern nations.
- Japan was successful in retaining its independence and using traditional skills and practices in new ways.
- Japan's programme of modernisation was carried out in an environment dominated by Western imperial powers.
- The Chinese path to modernisation was very different. Foreign imperialism, both Western and Japanese, combined with a hesitant and unsure Qing dynasty to weaken government control and set the stage for a breakdown of political and social order leading to immense misery for most of the people.
- The nineteenth and twentieth centuries saw a rejection of traditions and a search for ways to build national unity and strength.
- The success of the Communist programme promised hope, but its repressive political system turned the ideals of liberation and equality into slogans to manipulate the people.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which country dominated East Asia at the beginning of the nineteenth century?
(a) Iraq **(b)** Bangladesh
(c) China **(d)** Japan

2. Which of the following is the third-longest river in the world?
(a) Chang Jiang **(b)** Huang He
(c) Yellow river **(d)** Pearl river

3. Which of the following is not the string of islands in Japan?
(a) Honshu **(b)** Kyushu
(c) Shikoku **(d)** Liunku

4. Which year of the Imperial Rescript on Education urged people to pursue learning, advance public good and promote common interests?
(a) 1920 **(b)** 1890
(c) 1885 **(d)** 1918

5. Which of the following reason led to wars with China and Russia and Japan won both the wars?
(a) The military and the bureaucracy were put under the direct command of the emperor. A legal system was set up to regulate the formation of a political group.
(b) The tension between these different ideals represented by a democratic constitution and a modern army was to have far-reaching consequences.
(c) The army pressed for a vigorous foreign policy to acquire more territory.
(d) All of the above

6. Japanese developed two phonetic alphabets. One of them is hiragana. What is the name of the second one?
(a) Amartana **(b)** Katakana
(c) Jargana **(d)** Marruaka

7. In which year was Japan's first railway line, between Tokyo and the port of Yokohama built?
(a) 1870–1872 **(b)** 1910–1913
(c) 1856–1857 **(d)** 1901–1903

8. In which year did the women organise the first modern strike in Japan?
(a) 1875 **(b)** 1886
(c) 1902 **(d)** 1914

9. In which year did the prime minister order that only serving generals and admirals could become ministers in Japan?
(a) 1880 **(b)** 1871
(c) 1899 **(d)** 1909

10. Moga: An abbreviation for _____.
(a) Mini gun **(b)** Modern girl
(c) Monastery group **(d)** Monarchy goal

11. In which year did women vote for the first time in Japan?
(a) 1935 **(b)** 1946
(c) 1950 **(d)** 1957

12. In which city did the Olympics held in the year 1964?
(a) Tokyo **(b)** London
(c) Athens **(d)** Beijing

13. Which of the following countries were involved in the 'triangular trade' (Opium trade)?
(a) Japan, China and Britain

(b) Britain, India and China
(c) Japan, USA and India
(d) USA, Japan and China

14. What was the name of the society journal in China which was also read by leaders such as Mahatma Gandhi and Kemal Ataturk?
(a) Yang Cheng Wan Bao
(b) China Daily
(c) Life Weekly
(d) Shanghai times

15. Who became aware of women's problems and supported the emergence of rural women's associations, promulgated a new marriage law that forbade arranged marriages?
(a) Mao Zedong **(b)** Sun Yat-sen
(c) Chiang Kaishek **(d)** None of the above

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements:
1. His writings influenced scholars worldwide.
2. He helped establish the Department of Oriental Studies at Kyoto University in 1907.
3. Using the new tools of Western historiography he built on a long tradition of studying China as well as bringing his experience as a journalist there.
Identify the name of the Japanese scholar.
(a) Liang Qichao **(b)** Luis Frois
(c) Naito Konan **(d)** Mateo Ricci

2. Consider the following statements:
1. The country was divided into over 450 domains under the rule of lords called daimyo.
2. From 1603 to 1867, members of the Tokugawa family held the position of shogun.
3. The shogun exercised power over the domain lords, ordering them to stay in the capital Edo.
Which of the above statements is/are incorrect?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 only
(c) 2 only **(d)** 2 and 3

3. Consider the following statements:
1. Japan was considered rich, because it imported luxury goods like silk from China.
2. The silk from Nishijin came to be known as the best in the world.
3. Paying for these imports with gold and silver strained the economy and led the Tokugawa to put restrictions on the export of precious metals.
Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 only
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

4. Consider the following statements:
1. In 1872, modern banking institutions were launched.
2. The population, 35 million in the early 1870s, increased to 55 million in 1920.
3. By 1925, 21 per cent of the population lived in cities; by 1935, this figure had gone up to 32 per cent (22.5 million).
Identify the country.
(a) China **(b)** Russia
(c) Japan **(d)** France

5. Consider the following statements:
1. The self-taught son of a farmer, rose to become a major political figure.
2. He was elected member of the first Diet. He believed that ordinary people should not be sacrificed for industrial progress.
Identify the person.
(a) Tanaka Shozo **(b)** Marco Polo
(c) Kume Kunitake **(d)** Mateo Ricci

6. Consider the given statements:
1. Born in an impoverished samurai family, he studied in Nagasaki and Osaka learning Dutch and Western sciences and, later, English.
2. In 1860, he went as a translator for the first Japanese embassy to the USA.
3. He established a school that is today the Keio University. He was one of the core members of the Meirokusha, a society to promotes Western learning.
Identify the person.
(a) Keio Huang **(b)** Fukuzawa Yukichi
(c) Ueki Emori **(d)** Moroi Saburo

7. Consider the following statements:
1. Confucianism, developed from the teachings of Confucius (551–479 BCE) and his disciples were concerned with good conduct, practical wisdom and proper social relationships.
2. To train people in modern subjects students were sent to study in Japan, Britain and USA and bring back new ideas.
3. In 1905, just after the Russo-Japanese war the centuries-old Chinese examination system that gave candidates entry into the elite ruling class was abolished.
Which of the above statements is/are incorrect?
(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 only
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 2 and 3

8. Match the following event with the year:

A.	Meiji Constitution enacted	**1.**	1945
B.	Japan's invasion of China	**2.**	1889
C.	Atomic bombs dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki	**3.**	1931

Choose the correct alternative:
(a) A-1, B-2, C-3 **(b)** A-2, B-1, C-3
(c) A-3, B-1, C-2 **(d)** A-2, B-3, C-1

9. Consider the following statements:
1. The Cultural Revolution was followed by a process of political manoeuvring. Deng Xiaoping kept party control strong while introducing a socialist market economy.

2. December 1978, a wall poster, 'The Fifth Modernisation' proclaimed that without Democracy the other modernisations would come to nothing.
3. It went on to criticise the CCP for not solving the problem of poverty or ending sexual exploitation, even citing cases of such abuse from within the Party.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?

(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 1 only
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

10. Chiang Kai-shek, defeated by the CCP fled in 1949 to _____ with over US$ 300 million in gold reserves and crates of priceless art treasures and established the Republic of China.

(a) Taiwan **(b)** Hongkong
(c) North Korea **(d)** Macau

11. The beginning of modern China can be traced to its first encounter with the West in the _____ and _____ centuries when Jesuit missionaries introduced Western sciences such as astronomy and mathematics.

(a) 13, 14 **(b)** 15,16
(c) 14, 15 **(d)** 16, 17

12. Which of the following did not create a serious balance-of-trade problem regarding the demand for Chinese goods?

(a) Silk **(b)** Tea
(c) Porcelain **(d)** Jute

13. Which of the following did not place on Japan?

(a) Restoration of Meiji
(b) Korea annexed, colony till 1945
(c) The Pacific War
(d) CCP founded

14. Consider the following statements:

1. The Japanese colonial rule ended after 35 years in August 1945 with Japan's defeat in World War II.
2. Following liberation, the Korean Peninsula was temporarily divided along the 38th parallel with the Soviets managing the North and the U.N managing the South even as the nations worked to disband the Japanese forces in the region.
3. Koreans around the country demonstrated against the colonial rule, set up a provisional government and sent delegations to appeal to foreign leaders at international meetings, such as the Cairo, Yalta and Potsdam conferences.

Which of the above statements is/are incorrect?

(a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 only
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

15. Match following with the birth year:

A.	Matthew Perry	**1.**	1860
B.	Miyake Setsurei	**2.**	1858
C.	Kang Youwei	**3.**	1794

Choose the correct alternative:

(a) A-1, B-2, C-3 **(b)** A-3, B-2, C-1
(c) A-3, B-1, C-2 **(d)** A-2, B-3, C-1

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**

Explanation: East Asia at the beginning of the nineteenth century was dominated by China. The Qing dynasty, heir to a long tradition, seemed secure in its power, while Japan, a small island country, seemed to be locked in isolation.

2. **Option (a) is correct.**

Explanation: China is a vast continental country that spans many climatic zones; the core is dominated by three major river systems: the Yellow River (Huang He), the Yangtse River (Chang Jiang – the third-longest river in the world) and the Pearl River. A large part of the country is mountainous.

3. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: Japan, by contrast, is a string of islands, the four largest being Honshu, Kyushu, Shikoku and Hokkaido. The Okinawan chain is the southernmost, about the same latitude as the Bahamas.

4. **Option (b) is correct.**

Explanation: The Imperial Rescript on Education of 1890 urged people to pursue learning, advance public good and promote common interests.

5. **Option (d) is correct.**

Explanation: To integrate the nation, the Meiji government imposed a new administrative structure by altering old village and domain boundaries. The administrative unit had to have revenue adequate to maintain the local schools and health facilities, as well as serve as a recruitment centre for the military. A modern military force was developed. A legal system was set up to regulate the formation of a political group. Constitution and a modern army were to have far-reaching consequences. The army pressed for a vigorous foreign policy to acquire more territory. This led to wars with China and Russia, in both of which Japan was the victor.

6. **Option (b) is correct.**

Explanation: The Japanese had borrowed their written script from the Chinese in the sixth century. However, since their language is very different from Chinese they developed two phonetic alphabets – hiragana and katakana. Hiragana is considered feminine because it was used by many women writers in the Heian period (such as Murasaki). It is written using a mixture of Chinese characters and phonetics so that the main part of the word is written

with a character – for instance, in 'going', 'go' would be written with a character and the 'ing' in phonetics.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Japan's first railway line, between Tokyo and the port of Yokohama, was built in 1870–72.

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: It was women who organised the first modern strike in Japan in 1886.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1899, the prime minister ordered that only serving generals and admirals could become ministers in Japan.

10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Moga: An abbreviation for 'modern girl'. It represented the coming together in the twentieth century of ideas of gender equality, cosmopolitan culture and a developed economy.

11. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Under the US-led Occupation (1945–47) Japan was demilitarised and a new constitution introduced. This had Article 9, the so-called 'no war clause' that renounces the use of war as an instrument of state policy. Agrarian reforms, the re-establishment of trade unions and an attempt to dismantle the zaibatsu or large monopoly houses that dominated the Japanese economy were also carried out. Political parties were revived and the first post-war elections held in 1946 where women voted for the first time.

12. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The 1964 Olympics held in Tokyo marked a symbolic coming of age.

13. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The demand for Chinese goods such as tea, silk and porcelain created a serious balance-of-trade problem. Western goods did not find a market in China, so payment had to be in silver. The East India Company found a new option – opium, which grew in India. They sold the opium in China and gave the silver that they earned to company agents in Canton in return for letters of credit. The Company used the silver to buy tea, silk and porcelain to sell in Britain. This was the 'triangular trade' between Britain, India and China.

14. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Social and cultural change was helped along by the spread of schools and universities (Peking University was established in 1902). Journalism flourished reflecting the growing attraction of this new thinking. The popular Life Weekly, edited by Zao Taofen (1895–1944), is representative of this new trend. It introduced readers to new ideas, as well as to leaders such as Mahatma Gandhi and Kemal Ataturk, the modernist leader of Turkey. Its circulation increased rapidly from just 2,000 in 1926 to a massive 200,000 copies in 1933.

15. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Mao Zedong's radical approach can be seen in Jiangxi, in the mountains, where they camped from 1928 to 1934, securing from Guomindang attacks. A strong peasants' council (soviet) was organised, united through confiscation and redistribution of land. Mao, unlike other leaders, stressed the need for an independent government and army. He had become aware of women's problems and supported the emergence of rural women's associations, promulgated a new marriage law that forbade arranged marriages, stopped the purchase or sale of marriage contracts and simplified divorce.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: A leading Japanese scholar of China, Naito Konan's writings influenced scholars worldwide. Using the new tools of Western historiography Naito built on a long tradition of studying China as well as bringing his experience as a journalist there. He helped establish the Department of Oriental Studies at Kyoto University in 1907. In Sharon [On China (1914)], he argued that republican government offered the Chinese a way to end aristocratic control and centralised power that had existed since the Sung dynasty (960–1279) – a way to revitalise local society where reform must begin.

2. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: An emperor had ruled Japan from Kyoto but by the twelfth century, the imperial court lost power to shoguns, who in theory ruled in the name of the emperor. From 1603 to 1867, members of the Tokugawa family held the position of shogun. The country was divided into over 250 domains under the rule of lords called daimyo. The shogun exercised power over the domain lords, ordering them to stay at the capital Edo (modern Tokyo) for long periods so that they would not pose a threat. He also controlled the major cities and mines. The samurai (the warrior class) were the ruling elite and served the shoguns and daimyo.

3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Japan was considered rich, because it imported luxury goods like silk from China and textiles from India. Paying for these imports with gold and silver strained the economy and led the Tokugawa to put restrictions on the export of precious metals. They also took steps to develop the silk industry in Nishijin in Kyoto to reduce imports. The silk from Nishijin came to be known as the best in the world.

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1872, modern banking institutions were launched. Companies like Mitsubishi and Sumitomo were helped through subsidies and

tax benefits to become major shipbuilders so that Japanese trade was from now on carried in Japanese ships.

The population, 35 million in 1872, increased to 55 million in 1920. Within Japan, there was a shift to towns as the industry developed. By 1925, 21 per cent of the population lived in cities; by 1935, this figure had gone up to 32 per cent (22.5 million).

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Tanaka Shozo (1841–1913), the self-taught son of a farmer, rose to become a major political figure. He participated in the Popular Rights Movement in the 1880s, a movement demanding constitutional government. He was elected a member of the first Diet. He believed that ordinary people should not be sacrificed for industrial progress. Tanaka Shozo, elected to the first House of Representatives, launched the first agitation against industrial pollution in 1897 with 800 villagers in a mass protest forcing the government to take action.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Fukuzawa Yukichi was born in an impoverished samurai family, he studied in Nagasaki and Osaka learning Dutch and Western sciences and, later, English. In 1860, he went as a translator for the first Japanese embassy in the USA. This provided material for a book on the West, written not in the classical but in the spoken style that became extremely popular. He established a school that is today Keio University. He was one of the core members of the Meirokusha, a society to promotes Western learning.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Confucianism, developed from the teachings of Confucius (551–479 BCE) and his disciples, was concerned with good conduct, practical wisdom and proper social relationships. It influenced the Chinese attitude toward life, provided social standards and laid the basis for political theories and institutions. To train people in modern subjects students were sent to study in Japan, Britain and France and bring back new ideas. Many Chinese students went to Japan in the 1890s. They not only brought back new ideas but many became leading republicans. In 1905, just after the Russo-Japanese war (a war fought on Chinese soil and over Chinese territory) the centuries-old Chinese examination system that gave candidates entry into the elite ruling class was abolished.

8. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: In 1931, Japan invaded China. In 1889, Meiji Constitution was enacted. In 1945, Atomic bombs were dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Cultural Revolution was followed by a process of political manoeuvring. Deng Xiaoping kept party control strong while introducing a socialist market economy. In this new and liberating climate, as at the time of the May Fourth movement 60 years earlier, there was an exciting explosion of new ideas. On 5 December 1978, a wall poster, 'The Fifth Modernisation' proclaimed that without Democracy the other modernisations would come to nothing. It went on to criticise the CCP for not solving the problem of poverty or ending sexual exploitation, even citing cases of such abuse from within the Party.

10. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Chiang Kai-shek, defeated by the CCP fled in 1949 to Taiwan with over US$ 300 million in gold reserves and crates of priceless art treasures and established the Republic of China. Taiwan had been a Japanese colony since the Chinese ceded it after the 1894–95 wars with Japan.

11. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The beginning of modern China can be traced to its first encounter with the West in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries when Jesuit missionaries introduced Western sciences such as astronomy and mathematics.

12. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The demand for Chinese goods such as tea, silk and porcelain created a serious balance-of-trade problem.

13. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Restoration of Meiji took place in 1868, Korea annexed, colony till 1945 The Pacific War (1941–45), all these events took place in Japan. CCP was founded in 1921 in China.

14. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Japanese colonial rule ended after 35 years in August 1945 with Japan's defeat in World War II. Following liberation, the Korean Peninsula was temporarily divided along the 38th parallel with the Soviets managing the North and the U.N Managing the South even as the nations worked to disband the Japanese forces in the region. Koreans around the country demonstrated against the colonial rule, set up a provisional government and sent delegations to appeal to foreign leaders at international meetings, such as the Cairo, Yalta and Potsdam conferences.

15. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Matthew Perry was born in 1794. Miyake Setsurei was born in 1860. Kang Youwei was born in 1858.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

1 BRICKS, BEADS AND BONES

Terms, Places & Times

- The IVC (Indus Valley Civilization) is also called the Harappan culture. In case of Harappan culture, distinctive objects include seals, beads, weight, stone, blade and even backed bricks which are usually found with in a specific geographical area and period of time. They were found from areas as far apart as Afghanistan, Jammu, Baluchistan and Gujarat.
- Named after Harappa, the first site where this unique culture was discovered, the civilisation is dated between c. 2600 and 1900 BCE. The Harappan civilisation is sometimes referred as the Mature Harappan culture.

The Harappan Seal

- The Harappan seal is possibly the most distinctive artefact of the Harappan or Indus valley civilisation. It is made of a stone called steatite, seals like this one often contain animal motifs and signs from a script that remains undeciphered.

The Plight of Harappa

Despite being the first site to be found, Harappa was severely damaged by brick robbers. The amount of brick taken from the ancient site was enough to lay bricks for "about 100 miles" of the railway line between Lahore and Multan, according to Alexander Cunningham, the first Director-General of the Archaeological Survey of India (ASI), often referred to as the "Father of Indian Archaeology."

Beginnings

- There were several archaeological cultures in the region prior to the Mature Harappan. These cultures were associated with distinctive pottery, evidence of agriculture and pastoralism, and some crafts.
- Settlements were generally small, and there were virtually no large buildings. It appears that there was a break between the Early Harappan and the Harappan civilisation, evident from large-scale burning at some sites, as well as the abandonment of certain settlements.

Mature Harappan Culture

- It was developed in some of the areas occupied by the Early Harappan cultures. These cultures also shared certain common elements including subsistence strategies. The Harappans ate a wide range of plant and animal products, including fish.
- Archaeologists have been able to reconstruct dietary practices from finds of charred grains and seeds. These are studied by archaeo-botanists, who are specialists in ancient plant remains.

Finding in the Harappan Sites

- **Agricultural Products:**
  1. Grains found at Harappan sites include wheat, barley, lentil, chickpea and sesame.
  2. Millets are found from sites in Gujarat.
  3. Rice are relatively rare.
- **Animals:**
  1. Animal bones found at Harappan sites include those of cattle, sheep, goat, buffalo and pig.
  2. As per the study conducted by zoo-archaeologists, these animals were domesticated.
  3. Bones of wild species such as boar, deer and gharial are also found.

Agricultural Technologies

- Representations on seals and terracotta sculpture indicate that the bull was known, and it was found that those oxen were used for ploughing. Moreover, terracotta models of the plough have been found at sites in Cholistan and at Banawali (Haryana).
- There was evidence of a ploughed field at Kalibangan (Rajasthan), associated with Early Harappan levels. The field had two sets of furrows at right angles to each other, suggesting that two different crops were grown together.
- Most Harappan sites are located in semi-arid lands, where irrigation was probably required for agriculture. Traces of canals have been found at the Harappan site of Shortughai in Afghanistan, but not in Punjab or Sind. It is possible that ancient canals silted up long ago. It is also likely that water drawn from wells was used for irrigation. Besides, water reservoirs found in Dholavira (Gujarat) may have been used to store water for agriculture.

Development of Urban Centre

- It was the most unique feature of the Harappan civilisation. Mohenjodaro is the most well-known site, the first site to be discovered was Harappa.
- **Features of Settlement:**
  1. The settlement is divided into two sections, one smaller but higher and the other much larger but lower. Archaeologists designate these as the Citadel and the Lower Town respectively.
  2. The Citadel owes its height to the fact that buildings were constructed on mud brick platforms. It was walled, which meant that it was physically separated from the Lower Town. It is on the Citadel that we evidence of structures that were probably used for special public purposes. These include the warehouse – a massive structure of which the lower brick portions remain, while the upper portions, probably of wood, decayed long ago – and the Great Bath.

3. The Lower Town was also walled. Several buildings were built on platforms, which served as foundations.

- **Drainage System:** One of the most distinctive features of Harappan cities was the carefully planned drainage system. If domestic waste water had to flow into the street drains, every house needed to have at least one wall along a street. In the Lower Town roads and streets were laid out along an approximate "grid" pattern, intersecting at right angles. It seems that streets with drains were laid out first and then houses built along them.

The Great Bath

- It was a large rectangular tank in a courtyard surrounded by a corridor on all four sides.
- There were two flights of steps on the north and south leading into the tank, which was made watertight by setting bricks on edge and using a mortar of gypsum.
- There were rooms on three sides, in one of which was a large well. Water from the tank flowed into a huge drain.
- Across a lane to the north lay a smaller building with eight bathrooms, four on each side of a corridor, with drains from each bathroom connecting to a drain that ran along the corridor.
- The uniqueness of the structure, as well as the context in which it was found has led scholars to suggest that it was meant for some kind of a special ritual bath.

Domestic Architecture

- The Lower Town at Mohenjodaro provides examples of residential buildings. Many were centred on a courtyard, with rooms on all sides.
- The courtyard was probably the centre of activities such as cooking and weaving, particularly during hot and dry weather.
- Concern for privacy: There are no windows in the walls along the ground level. Besides, the main entrance does not give a direct view of the interior or the courtyard.

Burials

- At burials in Harappan sites the dead were generally laid in pits. Jewellery has been found in burials of both men and women. In some instances the dead were buried with copper mirrors. But on the whole, it appears that the Harappans did not believe in burying precious things with the dead.

Looking for "Luxuries"

- In order to identify social differences, archaeologists broadly classify artefacts as utilitarian and luxuries.
- Utilitarian Category: It includes objects of daily use made fairly easily out of ordinary materials such as stone or clay. These include querns, pottery, needles, body scrubbers, etc., and are usually found distributed throughout settlements.
- A material made of ground sand or silica mixed with colour and a gum and then fired were probably considered precious because they were difficult to make.
- Rare objects made of valuable materials are generally concentrated in large settlements like Mohenjodaro and Harappa and are rarely found in the smaller settlements like Kalibangan. Gold too was rare, and as at present, probably precious-all the gold jewellery found at Harappan sites was recovered from hoards.

Finding Craft Production

- Chanhudaro is a tiny settlement less than (7 hectares) as compared to Mohenjodaro (125 hectares), almost exclusively devoted to craft production, including bead-making, shell-cutting, metal-working, seal-making and weight-making.
- Finished products (such as beads) from Chanhudaro and Lothal were taken to the large urban centres such as Mohenjodaro and Harappa.
  1. Materials Used to Make Beads: Stones like carnelian, jasper, crystal, quartz and steatite; metals like copper, bronze and gold; and shell, faience and terracotta or burnt clay. Some beads were made of two or more stones, cemented together, some of stone with gold caps.
  2. Shapes: Disc-shaped, cylindrical, spherical, barrel-shaped, segmented.
  3. Techniques for making beads: It differed according to the material. Steatite, a very soft stone, was easily worked. Some beads were moulded out of a paste made with steatite powder. This permitted making a variety of shapes, unlike the geometrical forms made out of harder stones. Specialised drills have been found at Chanhudaro, Lothal and more recently at Dholavira.
  4. Specialised centres for making shell objects: Nageshwar and Balakot.
  5. Identifying centres of production: Archaeologists, in order to identify centres of craft production, usually look for the following: raw material such as stone nodules, whole shells, copper ore; tools; unfinished objects; rejects and waste material.

Strategy for Procuring Materials

- The Harappans procured materials for craft production in various ways. For example, they established settlements such as Nageshwar and Balakot in areas where shell was available.
- Other such sites were Shortughai, in far-off Afghanistan, near the best source of lapis lazuli, a blue stone that was apparently very highly valued, and Lothal which was near sources of carnelian (from Bharuch in Gujarat), steatite (from south Rajasthan and north Gujarat) and metal (from Rajasthan). Another strategy for procuring raw materials may have been to send expeditions to areas such as the Khetri region of Rajasthan (for copper) and south India (for gold).
- There is evidence in the Khetri area for what archaeologists call the Ganeshwar-Jodhpura culture, with its distinctive non-Harappan pottery and an unusual wealth of copper objects. It is possible that the inhabitants of this region supplied copper to the Harappans.

Contact with distant lands

- Copper was also probably brought from Oman, on the south-eastern tip of the Arabian peninsula. A distinctive type of vessel, a large Harappan jar coated with a thick layer of black clay has been found at Omani sites.
- Mesopotamian texts datable to the third millennium BCE refer to copper coming from a region called Magan, perhaps a name for Oman, and interestingly

enough copper found at Mesopotamian sites also contains traces of nickel.

- Mesopotamian texts mention contact with regions named Dilmun (probably the island of Bahrain), Magan and Meluhha, possibly the Harappan region. They mention the products from Meluhha: carnelian, lapis lazuli, copper, gold, and varieties of wood.

Seals, Script and Weights

Seals and sealings

- Seals and sealings were used to facilitate long distance communication. Imagine a bag of goods being sent from one place to another. Its mouth was tied with rope and on the knot was affixed some wet clay on which one or more seals were pressed, leaving an impression. The sealing also conveyed the identity of the sender.

An Enigmatic Script

- Harappan seals usually have a line of writing, probably containing the name and title of the owner. Most inscriptions are short, the longest containing about 26 signs. Although the script remains undeciphered to date, it was evidently not alphabetical as it has just too many signs somewhere between 375 and 400. It is apparent that the script was written from right to left.
- The variety of objects on which writing has been found: Seals, Copper tools, Rims of jars, Copper and terracotta tablets, Jewellery, Bone rods, Even an ancient signboard!

Weights

- Exchanges were regulated by a precise system of weights, usually made of a stone called chert and generally cubical with no markings.
- The lower denominations of weights were binary (1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, etc. upto 12,800), while the higher denominations followed the decimal system.
- The smaller weights were probably used for weighing jewellery and beads.
- Metal scale-pans have also been found.

Ancient Authority

- There are indications of complex decisions being taken and implemented in Harappan society.
- **Palaces and kings:** Mohenjodaro was labelled as a palace by archaeologists but no spectacular finds were associated with it. A stone statue was labelled and continues to be known as the "priest-king". This is because archaeologists were familiar with Mesopotamian history and its "priest-kings" and have found parallels in the Indus region.
- **Views of Archaeologists on Harappan Society:** Some are of the opinion that it had no rulers, and that everybody enjoyed equal status. Others feel there was no single ruler but several, that Mohenjodaro had a separate ruler, Harappa another, and so forth.

The End of the Civilisation

- There is evidence that by c. 1800 BCE most of the Mature Harappan sites in regions such as Cholistan had been abandoned. Simultaneously, there was an expansion of population into new settlements in Gujarat, Haryana and western Uttar Pradesh.
- In the few Harappan sites that continued to be occupied after 1900 BCE there appears to have been a transformation of material culture, marked by the disappearance of the distinctive artefacts of the civilisation – weights, seals, special beads. Writing, long-distance trade, and craft specialisation also disappeared.
- Overall, artefacts and settlements indicate a rural way of life in what are called "Late Harappan" or "successor cultures".
- Several explanations have been put forward. These range from climatic change, deforestation, excessive floods, the shifting and/or drying up of rivers, to overuse of the landscape. Some of these "causes" may hold for certain settlements, but they do not explain the collapse of the entire civilisation.

Cunningham's Confusion

- Cunningham, the first Director-General of the ASI, began archaeological excavations in the mid-19th century. His main interest was in the archaeology of the Early Historic, i.e., 6th century BCE-4th century CE and later periods.
- He used the accounts left by Chinese Buddhist pilgrims who had visited the subcontinent between the 4th and 7th centuries CE to locate early settlements. He also collected, documented and translated inscriptions found during his surveys.
- When he excavated sites, he tended to recover artefacts that he thought had cultural value. A site like Harappa, which was not part of the itinerary of the Chinese pilgrims and was not known as an Early Historic city, did not fit very neatly within his framework of investigation.
- A Harappan seal was given to Cunningham by an Englishman. He noted the object, but unsuccessfully tried to place it within the time-frame with which he was familiar. This was because he, like many others, thought that Indian history began with the first cities in the Ganga valley. Given his specific focus, it is not surprising that he missed the significance of Harappa.

A new old civilisation

- Seals were discovered at Harappa by archaeologists such as Daya Ram Sahni in the early decades of the twentieth century, in layers that were definitely much older than Early Historic levels.
- Based on these finds, in 1924, John Marshall, Director-General of the ASI, announced the discovery of a new civilisation in the Indus valley to the world.
- John Marshall's stint as Director-General of the ASI marked a major change in Indian archaeology. He was the first professional archaeologist to work in India, and brought his experience of working in Greece and Crete to the field.
- Marshall tended to excavate along regular horizontal units, measured uniformly throughout the mound, ignoring the stratigraphy of the site. This meant that all the artefacts recovered from the same unit were grouped together, even if they were found at different stratigraphic layers. As a result ,valuable information about the context of these finds were irretrievably lost.

New techniques and questions

- It was R.E.M. Wheeler, after he took over as Director General of the ASI in 1944, who rectified this problem. Wheeler recognised that it was necessary to follow the stratigraphy of the mound rather than

dig mechanically along uniform horizontal lines. The frontiers of the Harappan civilisation have little or no connection with present-day national boundaries. However, with the partition of the subcontinent and the creation of Pakistan, the major sites are now in Pakistani territory. While Kalibangan, Lothal, Rakhigarhi and most recently Dholavira have been discovered, explored and excavated as part of these efforts, fresh explorations continue.

- Since the 1980s, there has also been growing international interest in Harappan archaeology. Specialists from the subcontinent and abroad have been jointly working at both Harappa and Mohenjodaro. They are using modern scientific techniques including surface exploration to recover traces of clay, stone, metal and plant and animal remains as well as to minutely analyse every scrap of available evidence. These explorations promise to yield interesting results in the future.

Problem of Piecing Together the Past

- It is also important to remember that only broken or useless objects would have been thrown away. Other things would probably have been recycled. Archaeologists then classify their finds.
- One simple principle of classification is in terms of material, such as stone, clay, metal, bone, ivory, etc.
- The second, and more complicated, is in terms of function: archaeologists have to decide whether, for instance, an artefact is a tool or an ornament, or both, or something meant for ritual use.

Problems of Archaeological Interpretation

- They are perhaps most evident in attempts to reconstruct religious practices. Early archaeologists thought that certain objects which seemed unusual or unfamiliar may have had a religious significance. These included terracotta figurines of women, heavily jewelled, some with elaborate head-dresses. These were regarded as mother goddesses. Rare stone statuary of men in an almost standardised posture, seated with one hand on the knee – such as the "priest-king" – was also similarly classified.

Proto-Shiva

- Attempts have also been made to reconstruct religious beliefs and practices by examining seals, some of which seem to depict ritual scenes. Others, with plant motifs, are thought to indicate nature worship. Some animals – such as the one-horned animal, often called the "unicorn" – depicted on seals seem to be mythical, composite creatures. In some seals, a figure shown seated cross-legged in a "yogic" posture, sometimes surrounded by animals, has been regarded as a depiction of "proto-Shiva", that is, an early form of one of the major deities of Hinduism. Besides, conical stone objects have been classified as lingas.
- Many reconstructions of Harappan religion are made on the assumption that later traditions provide parallels with earlier ones. This is because archaeologists often move from the known to the unknown, that is, from the present to the past.
- The earliest religious text, the Rigveda which was compiled in 1500-1000 BCE mentions a god named Rudra, which is a name used for Shiva in later Puranic traditions. However, unlike Shiva, Rudra in the Rigveda is neither depicted as Pashupati, nor as a yogi. In other words, this depiction does not match the description of Rudra in the Rigveda.

Timeline : Major Periods in Early Indian Archaeology	
2 million BP (BEFORE PRESENT)	Lower Palaeolithic
80,000	Middle Palaeolithic
35,000	Upper Palaeolithic
12,000	Mesolithic
10,000	Neolithic (early agriculturists and pastoralists)
6,000	Chalcolithic (first use of copper)
2600 BCE	Harappan civilization
1000 BCE	Early iron, megalithic burials
600 BCE-400 CE	Early Historic

(Note: All dates are approximate. Besides, there are wide variations in developments in different parts of the subcontinent. Dates indicated are for the earliest evidence of each phase.)

Timeline : Major developments in Harappan Archaeology
1875 - Report of Alexander Cunningham on Harappan seal
1921 - M.S. Vats begins excavations at Harappa
1925 - Excavations begin at Mohenjodaro
1946 - R.E.M Wheeler excavates at Harappa
1955 - S.R. Rao begins excavations at Lothal
1960 - B.B Lal and B.K. Thapar begin excavations at Kalibangan
1974 - M.R. Mughal begins explorations in Bahawalpur
1980 - A team of German and Italian archaeologists begins surface explorations at Mohenjodaro
1986 - American team begins excavations at Harappa
1990 - R.S. Bisht begins excavations at Dholavira

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. What is the other name of Harappan Civilisation?
   (a) Indus Valley Civilisation
   (b) Vedic Civilisation
   (c) Aryan Civilisation
   (d) All of these
2. Which Harappan Civilisation site is located in Haryana?
   (a) Shortugai **(b)** Rakhigarhi
   (c) Kalibangan **(d)** Lothal
3. Which among the following is the feature of Harappan Civilisation?
   (a) Citadel and Lower town
   (b) Drainage system
   (c) Urban planning
   (d) All of these
4. Where did the Harappans acquire their gold?
   (a) Chotta Nagpur Region **(b)** Himalayan Region
   (c) South India **(d)** Central India
5. Which of these provided copper to the Harappans?
   (a) Karnataka **(b)** Rajasthan
   (c) Andhra Pradesh **(d)** Gujarat
6. Which among the following factors contributed to decline of Harappan civilisation?
   (a) Floods & Climate Change
   (b) Aryan Invasion
   (c) Overuse of wood for burning bricks that destroyed the forests, which necessitated in their migration
   (d) All of these
7. Which among the following was not worshipped by the Harappan?
   (a) Pashupatinath **(b)** Nature
   (c) Indra **(d)** Goddess
8. Which among the following Director General of the ASI brought a military precision to the practice of archaeology?
   (a) James Burgess **(b)** Cunningham
   (c) R.E.M. Wheeler **(d)** Hargreaves
9. Which of the following characteristics of Harappan writing is not one of them?
   (a) Harappan writing was pictographic rather than alphabetical.
   (b) James Prinsep was the one who decrypted it.
   (c) There were too many signs, between 375 and 400.
   (d) The script was written in the right-to-left direction.
10. When did M.S. Vats began his excavations at Harappa?
    (a) 1920 **(b)** 1921
    (c) 1922 **(d)** 1923
11. On the banks of which of the following river is Harappa located?
    (a) Indus **(b)** Beas
    (c) Sutlej **(d)** Ravi
12. In the Indus Valley Civilization, which settlement did not have a citadel?
    (a) Mohenjodaro **(b)** Harappa
    (c) Chanhudaro **(d)** Lothal
13. In which settlement of the Indus Valley Civilisation was the 'Great Bath' discovered?
    (a) Mohenjodaro **(b)** Harappa
    (c) Lothal **(d)** Rangpur
14. Which of the following Harappan sites has a couple burial?
    (a) Mohenjodaro **(b)** Harappa
    (c) Chanhudaro **(d)** Lothal
15. Which among the following is not the unique feature of Dholavira site of the Indus Valley Civilisation?
    (a) Its cities were horizontally divided in multiple parts
    (b) Its cities were unevenly divided
    (c) Its cities were divided into two parts
    (d) None of the above
16. Which of the following metals has so far not been discovered at Harappan site?
    (a) Copper **(b)** Gold
    (c) Silver **(d)** Iron
17. Which of the following distinguishes the Harappan from other contemporary civilization of the world?
    (a) Religious belief and social life
    (b) Development of science and technology
    (c) Town planning, drainage and sanitation
    (d) Uniform weights and measures and commercial contact
18. Harappan civilization covered an expansive area of present South Asia. The geographic area covered by this civilization included:
    (a) Kashmir, Punjab, Sindh and North-Eastern Frontier
    (b) Punjab, Sindh, North-Western Frontier, Kashmir
    (c) Punjab, Sindh and a part of North-Western Frontier
    (d) Punjab, Sindh, a part of North-Western Frontier, Kathiawar and a part of Ganga-Yamuna Doab
19. Which of the following statements regarding the Harappan civilisation is correct?
    (a) The standard Harappan seals were made of clay.
    (b) The inhabitants of Harappa had neither knowledge of copper nor bronze.
    (c) The Harappan civilisation was rural based.
    (d) The inhabitants of Harappa cultivated and used cotton.
20. From which of the following places, remains of wells have been found in houses belonging to the developed stage of the Indus Valley Civilisation?
    (a) Mohenjodaro **(b)** Kalibangan
    (c) Lothal **(d)** Banawali
21. A copper chariot of Harappan times was discovered at which of the following location?
    (a) Kunal **(b)** Rakhigarhi
    (c) Daimabad **(d)** Banawali

22. Which animal was not depicted on Harappan seals and terracotta sculptures?
(a) Tiger **(b)** Elephant
(c) Rhinoceros **(d)** Cow

23. Where was the chief female deity's statue discovered?
(a) Harappa **(b)** Mohenjodaro
(c) Surkotada **(d)** Daimabad

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements about excavation in Rakhigarhi happened in 2014:
1. Discovery of new mounds at Rakhigarhi has established it as the second largest Harappan site, the area of extent.
2. Typical Harappan seals and potsherds are absent in Rakhigarhi excavation.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

2. With reference to Indus Valley Civilization, consider the following statements:
1. The Indus Valley Civilization was spread from present-day North-East Pakistan and North-West India.
2. The civilization flourished in the river basins of the Ghaggar-Hakra river and the Indus.
3. Indus valley civilization is one of the oldest civilizations in the world.
Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 2 and 3 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

3. Consider the following statements with reference to Harappan Civilisation:
1. After Pakistan gained independence, the majority of Harappan civilisation centres moved to Pakistan.
2. The script of Harappa has been deciphered.
3. In Harappan culture, rulers played an essential role.
4. Harappa was where the dead were buried.
Select the correct statements using the code given below:
(a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 1, 3 and 4 only
(c) 1, 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 2, 3 and 4 only

4. Consider the following statements regarding Indus Valley civilisation:
1. The Harappan seal is the civilisation's most distinguishing feature.
2. At a location known as shortughai, evidence of canal irrigation was discovered.
3. Mohenjodaro was an ad hoc city.
4. Copper was imported from Karnataka's Kolar area.
Select the incorrect statements using the code given below:
(a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 3 and 4 only
(c) 1, 2 and 4 only **(d)** 2 and 4 only

5. Which of the following materials is used to make a bead?
1. Carnelian **2.** Jasper
3. Crystal **4.** Quartz
Select the correct statements using the code given below:
(a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 **(b)** 3 and 4 only
(c) 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 2 and 4 only

6. Consider the following statements regarding Harappan seal:
1. It is made of a stone called steatite.
2. It often contain animal motifs and signs from a script that remains undeciphered.
Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

7. Consider the following statements:
1. Millets are found from sites in Bihar.
2. In the Harappan sites animals were domesticated.
Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

8. Consider the following statements:
1. There was evidence of a ploughed field at Kalibangan (Rajasthan).
2. The field had two sets of furrows which were parallel to each other.
3. Two different crops were grown together.
Select the incorrect statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1 and 2 only

9. With reference to the Great Bath consider the following statements:
1. The Great Bath of Mohenjodaro is called as earliest public water tank of the ancient world.
2. It was a huge bath made of burnt/baked bricks.
3. There were rooms on two sides, in one of which was a large well.
4. It was a large rectangular tank in a courtyard surrounded by a corridor on all four sides.
5. There were two flights of steps on the north and south leading into the tank, which was made watertight by setting bricks on edge and using a mortar of gypsum.
Select the correct statements using the code given below:
(a) 1, 2, 3 and 5 only **(b)** 2, 3, 4 and 5 only
(c) 1, 2, 4 and 5 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5

10. Consider the following statements about the seals of Proto-Shiva.
1. In ancient religious scriptures, a diety named 'Rudra' is mentioned.
2. Later, the word Rudra was used to refer to Shiva.
3. The Rigveda does not mention to Rudra as Pashupati.
4. The depiction of Pashupati does not correspond to the Rigvedic account of Rudra.
Which of the given statements given above are correct?
(a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 **(b)** 1, 2 and 3 only
(c) 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 3 and 4 only

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Harappan people did not worship one of the following God: **[NTPC]**
   (a) Shiva **(b)** Vishnu
   (c) Birds **(d)** Swastika
2. Regarding the Indus Valley Civilization, consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
   1. It was predominantly a secular civilization and the religious element, though present, did not dominate the scene.
   2. During this period, cotton was used for manufacturing textiles in India.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
3. Which of the following characterizes/ characterize the people of Indus Valley Civilization? **[UPSC]**
   1. They possessed great palaces and temples.
   2. They worshipped both male and female deities.
   3. They employed horse-drawn chariots in warfare.
   Select the correct statement/statements using the codes given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 only
   (b) 2 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3
   (d) None of the above
4. At which of the place of the Indus Valley Civilization a dockyard connected to the Gulf of Cambay has been discovered? **[CG TET]**
   (a) Lothal **(b)** Sutkagendor
   (c) Amri **(d)** Chahundaro
5. Match the following Indus Valley civilization sites with their geographical location: **[CG TET]**

List–I (sites)		List–II (Location)	
A.	Harappa	**1.**	River Ghaggar
B.	Mohenjodaro	**2.**	River Ravi
C.	Kalibangan	**3.**	Gulf of Cambay
D.	Lothal	**4.**	River Sindh

   Select the correct option using the code given below:
   (a) A-2, B-4, C-1, D-3 **(b)** A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4
   (c) A-4, B-3, C-2, D-1 **(d)** A-3, B-1, C-4, D-2
6. Which of the following is/are the most distinctive artefacts of the Harappan Civilisation? **[CAPF]**
   1. Steatite seal
   2. Bricks of a standardized ratio
   3. Gold bangles
   4. Silver spittoon
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3 only
7. At which Harappan site have traces of a 'Horse' been found? **[HP TGT TET]**
   (a) Kalibangan **(b)** Surkotda
   (c) Lothal **(d)** Ropar
8. With reference to the cultural heritage of Uttar Pradesh, which of the following statement's is/are correct? **[UPPSC RO]**
   1. The oldest evidence of agriculture in the global context has been obtained from many excavated sites in this region.
   2. The oldest cultivated food grains are barley and paddy.
   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Indus Valley Civilisation is another name for Harappan Civilisation. It is India's earliest civilisation. There is no unanimity on the Harappan Civilisation's chronology. Various scholars have assigned various dates to this time period. "This civilisation flourished between 3250 and 2750 BCE," according to Sir John Marshall. In 1921, Daya Ram Sahni was the first to uncover the Harappan sites.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Archaeologists have declared the Harappan site of Rakhigarhi in Hisar district, Haryana, to be the largest Harappan civilization site after the discovery of two additional mounds.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Harappan cities had the following features:
   - The cities of Harappa were meticulously constructed.
   - The city was divided into two sections: the Citadel, which was smaller and higher, and the Lower Town, which was much larger but lower.
   - Harappan Civilisation had a well-planned drainage system, which was one of its most distinguishing features.
   - When we examine the Lower Town plan, we can see that roads and streets were planned out in a roughly 'grid' layout, connecting at right angles.
   - Every house had a drain connected to the street drain so that residential waste water could be discharged.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The raw materials came from a variety of sources for the Harappans. Copper was most likely obtained from modern-day Rajasthan, as well as Oman. Afghanistan and Iran provided the tin. Karnataka may have supplied the gold.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Copper was most likely obtained from modern-day Rajasthan, as well as Oman.

6. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The decline of Harappan civilisation can be attributed to a number of factors.

- Floods were common in the Indus and its tributaries.
- The excessive use of wood for burning bricks resulted in the destruction of forests, forcing people to relocate.
- They could have been attacked by Aryans from the north.
- Infectious illness spread could have had an impact as well.

7. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In addition to male and female deities, the Indus people most likely worshipped Mother Goddess. They worshipped a father God who was likely a prototype of Siva as the Lord of the Animals (pashupatinath) and may have been a parent of the race. They were familiar with yoga and meditation in some form.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: It was R.E.M. Wheeler, as Director General of the ASI in 1944, who brought a military precision to the practice of archaeology. Wheeler recognised that it was necessary to follow the stratigraphy of the mound rather than dig mechanically along uniform horizontal lines.

9. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: It was pictographic in nature as the script consisted of designs of animals, fishes and various forms of human figure too. It was found to be inscribed on seals, terracota tablets, etc. Harappan texts were to be read from right to left.

In spite of many attempts, the 'script' has not yet been deciphered.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Madho Sarup Vats is M.S. Vats' full name. In the 1921, he worked for the Archaeological Survey of India, excavating in Harappa.

11. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Indus Valley civilization was initially found in 1921 at the modern-day site of Harappa in Pakistan's West Punjab state. The city is located on the banks of the Ravi River, which is a left bank tributary of the Indus River.

12. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In 1931, Chanhu-daro was discovered. The site was first excavated by archaeologist NG Majumdar. At this location, hundreds of copper and bronze items have been discovered. The only Harappan city without a citadel.

13. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Great Bath is part of a large citadel complex discovered in the 1920s during excavations at Mohenjo-daro, one of the Indus civilization's main centres.

14. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: A couple burial was discovered from Lothal. Lothal, in the Bhal region of Gujarat, was one of the ancient Indus valley civilisation's southernmost cities. The ritual act of placing a dead person or animals, sometimes with objects, into the earth is known as burial or interment.

15. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

- The archaeological site of Dholavira, a Harappan-era city, has been designated as a UNESCO world heritage site. Dholavira is the first site of the ancient Indus Valley Civilisation (IVC) in India to receive the designation, while it is the fourth site from Gujarat and the 40th from India to make the list.
- Dholavira is the fifth largest metropolis in the IVC. The site includes a fortified citadel, a middle town, and a lower town with sandstone or limestone walls rather than the mud bricks found at many other Harappan sites thus it was divided into 3 parts.
- Some of the unique features of the Dholavira site, according to archaeologist Bisht, include a cascading series of water reservoirs, outer fortification, two multi-purpose grounds — one of which was used for festivities and as a marketplace — nine gates with unique designs, and funerary architecture featuring tumulus — hemispherical structures similar to Buddhist Stupas.

16. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The inhabitants of the Harappan settlements were skilled in the use of bronze, copper, silver, and gold, but not iron.

17. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Harappan culture was known for its urban planning system. Mohenjodaro's drainage system was rather impressive. Practically every big or little property in almost every city has its own patio and bathroom. Manholes were installed in the street drains. The Harappans may have been the only Bronze Age culture to place such a premium on health and sanitation.

18. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Sections of Punjab, Haryana, Sindh, Baluchistan, Gujarat, North-Western Frontier Rajasthan, and the western outskirts of Uttar Pradesh were covered by the Harappan civilisation. It stretched from Jammu in the north to the Narmada estuary in the south, as well as from Baluchistan's Makran coast in the west to Meerut in the north-east.

19. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Most of the Harappan seals were made of steatite, which is a kind of soft stone.

A few of them were also made of terracotta, gold, agate, chert, ivory and faience.

The inhabitants of Harappa had knowledge of both copper and bronze.

The civilization was mainly urban-based.

A piece of woven cotton has been recovered from Mohenjodaro.

It is the evidence for the cotton cultivation in the Indus Valley.

20. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Wells were discovered in the city of Mohenjo-Daro.

At Mohenjo-Daro, vast networks of wells were discovered.

21. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: At Daimabad, a copper chariot from Harappan era was discovered. Daimabad is a town in the Indian state of Maharashtra.

22. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Harappan seal-tablets depict a number of animals.

Four of these are wild animals of the grasslands: rhinoceros, elephant, buffalo, and tiger.

Other animals included the humpless bull, the sheep, and the goat. People domesticated cats, dogs, oxen, buffaloes, goats, humped bulls, sheep, pigs, asses, camels.

23. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: One of the most fascinating figures from the Indus Valley Civilization is the sculpture of 'Mother Goddess'.

This terracotta sculpture has its origin in Mohenjodaro, Pakistan and dates back to Circa 2500 BCE. People used to worship Mother goddess, Pashupati Mahadeva or proto Shiva Lingam, Pipal tree, Humped Bull, Dove, Pigeon, Unicorn, stones.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Archaeologists have declared the Harappan site of Rakhigarhi in Hisar district, Haryana, to be the largest Harappan civilization site after the discovery of two additional mounds in January. Until date, Harappan experts said that Mohenjo-daro in Pakistan was the greatest of the 2,000 Harappan sites believed to exist in India, Pakistan, and Afghanistan. Typical Harappan seals and potsherds are present in Rakhigarhi excavation.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: From modern-day North-East Afghanistan to Pakistan and North-West India, the Indus Valley Civilization flourished. In the Ghaggar-Hakra and Indus river basins, civilization flourished. One of the world's four oldest civilizations is the Indus Valley Civilization. Harappan Civilization is another name for it, and it is recognised for its grid-based planning.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: One of the first civilizations was the Harappan Civilization. After India and Pakistan were partitioned, the majority of the Harappan civilization was transferred to Pakistan. People were buried after death, according to evidence from the Harappan Civilization. The rulers played an essential role in Harappan culture.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Harappa and Mohenjo-daro were the two most prominent cities. Copper was also probably brought from Oman, on the south-eastern tip of the Arabian peninsula. A distinctive type of vessel, a large Harappan jar coated with a thick layer of black clay has been found at Omani sites. Traces of canals were found at Shortughai in Afghanistan.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Chanhudaro is a tiny settlement which is less than 7 hectares as compared to Mohenjodaro which is 125 hectares, almost exclusively devoted to craft production, including bead-making, shell-cutting, metal-working, seal-making and weight-making.

Materials Used to Make Beads: Stones like carnelian, jasper, crystal, quartz and steatite; metals like copper, bronze and gold; and shell, faience and terracotta or burnt clay. Some beads were made of two or more stones, cemented together, some of stone with gold caps.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Harappan seal is possibly the most distinctive artefact of the Harappan or Indus valley civilisation. It is made of a stone called steatite, seals like this one often contain animal motifs and signs from a script that remains undeciphered.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Agriculture Product: Grains found at Harappan sites include wheat, barley, lentil, chickpea and sesame. Millets are found from sites in Gujarat. Rice are relatively rare.

Animals: Animal bones found at Harappan sites include those of cattle, sheep, goat, buffalo and pig.

Bones of wild species such as boar, deer and gharial are also found. According to the study conducted by zoo archaeologists which indicate that these animals were domesticated.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: There was evidence of a ploughed field at Kalibangan (Rajasthan), associated with Early Harappan levels. The field had two sets of furrows at right angles to each other, suggesting that two different crops were grown together.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Great Bath of Mohenjodaro is called as earliest public water tank of the ancient world. It was a huge bath made of burnt/baked bricks. It was a large rectangular tank in a courtyard surrounded by a corridor on all four sides. There were two flights of steps on the north and south leading into the tank, which was made watertight by setting bricks on edge and using a mortar of gypsum. There were rooms on three sides, in one of which was a large well.

10. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In some seals, a figure shown seated cross-legged in a "yogic" posture, sometimes surrounded by animals, has been regarded as a

depiction of "proto-Shiva", that is, an early form of one of the major deities of Hinduism.

The earliest religious text, the Rigveda which was compiled in 1500-1000 BCE mentions a god named Rudra, which is a name used for Shiva in later Puranic traditions. However, unlike Shiva, Rudra in the Rigveda is neither depicted as Pashupati, nor as a yogi. In other words, this depiction does not match the description of Rudra in the Rigveda.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: In addition to male and female deities, the Indus people most likely worshipped Mother Goddess. They worshipped a father God who was likely a prototype of Siva as the Lord of the Animals and may have been a parent of the race. They were familiar with yoga and meditation in some form.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Even though they had the engineering skills, the Indus Valley civilization did not have any massive palaces. Religious events were mostly held in private houses, modest temples, or outside in the open air. Despite the presence of religious features, no indication of religious domination has been uncovered in any of the settlements.

According to Marshall, cotton textiles were only used in India during the Indus Valley Civilization period, and were not introduced to the western globe until 2000 to 3000 years later.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- People of Indus Civilization did not possess great palaces and temples. Hence statement 1 is incorrect.
- Harappan cities have yet to yield any temples or religious sites.
- Although no temple-like structures have been uncovered at any Harappan site, the Great Bath at Mohenjodaro may have been utilised for ritual purposes.
- Both male and female deities were worshipped. Hence statement 2 is correct.
- There is no evidence of horse-drawn chariots being used in warfare. Hence statement 3 is incorrect.
- Domesticated animals included goats, buffaloes, oxen, elephants, dogs, and camels, according to Indus seals, but Harappans were unfamiliar with horses.

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The dockyard at the Indus valley civilization was found in Lothal.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- Harappa is located on the Ravi River in Punjab's Sahiwal district (Pakistan).
- Mohenjodaro is located on the Indus (or Sind) River's bank.
- In the Hanumangarh District, Kalibangan is situated on the banks of the Ghaghhar River.
- Lothal is a Gujarat town situated between the Bhogavo and Sabarmati rivers, close to the Gulf of Khambhat/Cambay.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Thousands of seals, usually made of steatite but occasionally of agate, chert, copper, faience, and terracotta, with beautiful figures of animals such as unicorn bulls, rhinoceros, tiger, elephant, bison, goat, buffalo, and others, have been discovered at various sites throughout the Indus valley by archaeologists. Seals were mostly produced for business purposes. Bricks with a standardised ratio, where the length and breadth were four times and twice the height accordingly, whether sun-dried or baked, were signs of forethought.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Surkotda is in Gujarat's Kutch district, in the Rapar Taluka. Horse bones and other associated artefacts have been discovered here. Horse bones were discovered between 2100 and 1700 BCE, according to J.P. Joshi and A.K. Sharma.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- Archaeological findings in Lahuradeva, Sant Kabir Nagar district, suggest that the First Farmer may have lived in the Middle Ganga Valley (Uttar Pradesh). The results show that ancient humans living in this valley gave up nomadic life and turned to farming and animal domestication during the New Stone Age, according to the State Archaeological Department, which conducted excavations at the Lahuradeva mound. Many excavated sites in this region have yielded the earliest traces of agriculture. Hence statement 1 is correct.
- Archaeologists discovered traces of carbonised material containing cultivated rice grains as well as wild grass. According to the findings, individuals in this region began farming 10,000 years ago. The rice bowl in this period was the Eastern UP plain, where farmers still choose rice production. Barley and wheat were favoured by ancient inhabitants of the Middle East and West Asia, whereas rice was grown by the Chinese. Hence statement 2 is incorrect.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

2 KINGS, FARMERS AND TOWNS

Introduction

- There were several developments in different parts of the subcontinent during the long span of 1,500 years following the end of the Harappan civilisation. This was also the period during which the Rigveda was composed by people living along the Indus and its tributaries. Agricultural settlements emerged in many parts of the subcontinent, including north India, the Deccan Plateau, and parts of Karnataka. Besides, there is evidence of pastoral populations in the Deccan and further south. New modes of disposal of the dead, including the making of elaborate stone structures known as megaliths, emerged in central and south India from the first millennium BCE. Perhaps the most visible was the emergence of early states, empires and kingdoms.

Prinsep and Piyadassi

- The most momentous developments in Indian epigraphy took place in the 1830s. This was when James Prinsep, an officer in the mint of the East India Company, deciphered Brahmi and Kharosthi, two scripts used in the earliest inscriptions and coins.
- He found that most of these mentioned a king referred to as Piyadassi meaning "pleasant to behold". There are a few inscriptions which also referred to the king as Asoka, one of the most famous rulers known from Buddhist texts.

Shift in their Focus

- This gave a new direction to investigations into early Indian political history as European and Indian scholars used inscriptions and texts composed in a variety of languages to reconstruct the lineages of major dynasties that had ruled the subcontinent. Subsequently, scholars began to shift their focus to the context of political history, investigating whether there were connections between political changes and economic and social developments.

The Earliest States- Mahajanapadas

- The 6^{th} century BCE is often regarded as a major turning point in early Indian history. It is an era associated with early states, cities, the growing use of iron, the development of coinage, etc. It also witnessed the growth of diverse systems of thought, including Buddhism and Jainism.
- Early Buddhist and Jaina texts mention, amongst other things, sixteen states known as mahajanapadas. Although the lists vary, some names such as Vajji, Magadha, Koshala, Kuru, Panchala, Gandhara and Avanti occur frequently. Clearly, these were amongst the most important mahajanapadas.
- Most mahajanapadas were ruled by kings, some, known as ganas or sanghas, were oligarchies (Where power is shared by a group of men). Both Mahavira and the Buddha belonged to such ganas.
- Each mahajanapada had a capital city, which was often fortified.
- Rulers were advised to collect taxes and tribute from cultivators, traders and artisans. Some states acquired standing armies and maintained regular bureaucracies. Others continued to depend on militia, recruited, more often than not, from the peasantry.

Dharmasutras

- 6^{th} century BCE onwards, Brahmanas began composing Sanskrit texts known as the Dharmasutras. These laid down norms for rulers as well as for other social categories, who were ideally expected to be Kshatriyas.

First Amongst The Sixteen Mahajanapadas - The Magadha

- Magadha (in present-day Bihar), between the sixth and the fourth centuries BCE, became the most powerful mahajanapada. Magadha was a region where agriculture was especially productive. Besides, iron mines were accessible and provided resources for tools and weapons.
- Elephants, an important component of the army, were found in forests in the region.
- The Ganga and its tributaries provided a means of cheap and convenient communication. However, early Buddhist and Jaina writers who wrote about Magadha attributed its power to the policies of individuals: ruthlessly ambitious kings of whom Bimbisara, Ajatasattu and Mahapadma Nanda are the best known, and their ministers, who helped implement their policies.
- Initially, Rajagaha (Rajgir) was the capital of Magadha. Rajagaha was a fortified settlement, located amongst hills.
- Later, in the fourth century BCE, the capital was shifted to Pataliputra, present-day Patna, commanding routes of communication along the Ganga.

An Early Empire

Mauryan Empire

- The growth of Magadha culminated in the emergence of the Mauryan Empire. Chandragupta Maurya, who founded the empire (c. 321 BCE), extended control as far northwest as Afghanistan and Baluchistan, and his grandson Asoka, arguably the most famous ruler of early India, conquered Kalinga (present-day Odisha).

- Asoka was the first ruler who inscribed his messages to his subjects and officials on stone surfaces – natural rocks as well as polished pillars. He used the inscriptions to proclaim what he understood to be dhamma.

Variety of sources to reconstruct the history of the Mauryan Empire

- These include archaeological finds, especially sculpture. Contemporary works, such as the account of Megasthenes (a Greek ambassador to the court of Chandragupta Maurya), which survives in fragments.
- Another source that is often used is the Arthashastra, parts of which were probably composed by Kautilya or Chanakya, traditionally believed to be the minister of Chandragupta.

Administering the empire

- Asoka also tried to hold his empire together by propagating dhamma, the principles of which, as we have seen, were simple and virtually universally applicable. This, according to him, would ensure the well-being of people in this world and the next. Special officers, known as the dhamma mahamatta, were appointed to spread the message of dhamma.
- There were five major political centres in the empire which were mentioned in the Ashokan inscription – the capital Pataliputra and the provincial centres of Taxila, Ujjayini, Tosali and Suvarnagiri.
- The regions included within the empire were just too diverse, i.e., the contrast between the hilly terrain of Afghanistan and the coast of Orissa.
- It is likely that administrative control was strongest in areas around the capital and the provincial centres. These centres were carefully chosen, both Taxila and Ujjayini being situated on important long-distance trade routes, while Suvarnagiri was possibly important for tapping the gold mines of Karnataka.
- Communication along both land and riverine routes was vital for the existence of the empire.
- It is obvious that the army was an important means for ensuring the latter.
- Megasthenes mentions a committee with 6 subcommittees for coordinating military activity. These are:
  1. the first looked after the navy;
  2. the second managed transport and provisions;
  3. the third is responsible for foot-soldiers;
  4. the fourth for horses;
  5. the fifth for chariots; and
  6. the sixth for elephants.

How important was the empire?

- Many of these historians found the message on Ashokan inscriptions very different from that of most other rulers, suggesting that Asoka was more powerful and industrious, as also more humble than later rulers who adopted grandiose titles.

New Notions of Kinship

Chiefs and kings in the south

- The new kingdoms that emerged in the Deccan and further south, including the chiefdoms of the Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas in Tamilakam, proved to be stable and prosperous.
- The early Tamil Sangam texts contain poems describing chiefs and the ways in which they acquired and distributed resources.
- Many chiefs and kings, including the Satavahanas who ruled over parts of western and central India (c. 2nd century BCE-2nd century CE) and the Shakas, a people of Central Asian origin who established kingdoms in the north-western and western parts of the subcontinent, derived revenues from long-distance trade.

Divine Kings

Kushans

- One means of claiming high status was to identify with a variety of deities. This strategy is best exemplified by the Kushanas (c. 1st century BCE-1st century CE), who ruled over a vast kingdom extending from Central Asia to northwest India.
- Their history has been reconstructed from inscriptions and textual traditions. The notions of kingship they wished to project are perhaps best evidenced in their coins and sculpture.
- Colossal statues of Kushana rulers have been found installed in a shrine at Mat near Mathura.
- Similar statues have been found in a shrine in Afghanistan as well. Some historians feel this indicates that the Kushanas considered themselves godlike.
- Many Kushana rulers also adopted the title devaputra, or "son of god", possibly inspired by Chinese rulers who called themselves sons of heaven.

Gupta Empire

- By the 4th century there is evidence of larger states, including the Gupta Empire. Many of these depended on samantas, men who maintained themselves through local resources including control over land.
- They offered homage and provided military support to rulers. Powerful samantas could become kings: conversely, weak rulers might find themselves being reduced to positions of subordination.
- Histories of the Gupta rulers have been reconstructed from literature, coins and inscriptions, including prashastis, composed in praise of kings in particular, and patrons in general, by poets.
- The Prayaga Prashasti, also known as the Allahabad Pillar Inscription, composed in Sanskrit by Harishena, the court poet of Samudragupta, arguably the most powerful of the Gupta rulers.

A changing countryside

- The Jatakas were written in Pali around the middle of the first millennium CE. One story known as the Gandatindu Jataka describes the plight of the subjects of a wicked king; these included elderly women and men, cultivators, herders, village boys and even animals.

Strategies for increasing production

- One such strategy was the shift to plough agriculture, which spread in fertile alluvial river valleys such as those of the Ganga and the Kaveri from c. sixth century BCE. The iron-tipped ploughshare was used to turn the alluvial soil in areas which had high rainfall.
- In some parts of the Ganga valley, production of paddy was dramatically increased by the introduction of

transplantation, although this meant back-breaking work for the producer.

- While the iron ploughshare led to a growth in agricultural productivity, its use was restricted to certain parts of the subcontinent-cultivators in areas which were semi-arid, such as parts of Punjab and Rajasthan did not adopt it till the twentieth century, and those living in hilly tracts in the northeastern and central parts of the subcontinent practised hoe agriculture, which was much better suited to the terrain.
- The use of irrigation, through wells and tanks, and less commonly, canals to increase agricultural production. Communities as well as individuals organised the construction of irrigation works. The latter, usually powerful men including kings, often recorded such activities in inscriptions.

Differences in rural society

- The term gahapati was often used in Pali texts to designate the second and third categories. The large landholders, as well as the village headman, emerged as powerful figures, and often exercised control over other cultivators.
- Early Tamil literature (the Sangam texts) also mentions different categories of people living in the villages large landowners or vellalar, ploughmen or uzhavar and slaves or adimai.

Land grants and new rural elites

- Some of the inscriptions were on stone, but most were on copper plates which were probably given as a record of the transaction to those who received the land. Most inscriptions were in Sanskrit. In some cases, and especially from the 7^{th} century onwards, part of the inscription was in Sanskrit, while the rest was in a local language such as Tamil or Telugu.
- Prabhavati Gupta was the daughter of one of the most important rulers in early Indian history, Chandragupta II. She was married into another important ruling family, that of the Vakatakas, who were powerful in the Deccan. According to Sanskrit legal texts, women were not supposed to have independent access to resources such as land. However, the inscription indicates that Prabhavati had access to land, which she then granted.
- This may have been because she was a queen, and her situation was therefore exceptional.
- The inscription also gives us an idea about rural populations-these included Brahmanas and peasants, as well as others who were expected to provide a range of produce to the king or his representatives. According to the inscription, they would have to obey the new lord of the village, and perhaps pay him all these dues. Land grants such as this one have been found in several parts of the country.
- There were regional variations in the sizes of land donated-ranging from small plots to vast stretches of uncultivated land-and the rights given to donees.
- The impact of land grants is a subject of heated debate among historians. Some feel that land grants were part of a strategy adopted by ruling lineages to extend agriculture to new areas.
- Land grants provide some insight into the relationship between cultivators and the state.

Towns and Trade

- New Cities: urban centres that emerged in several parts of the subcontinent from c. sixth century BCE.
- Urban populations:
  1. Elites and craftspersons: By the second century BCE, we find short votive inscriptions in a number of cities. These mention the name of the donor, and sometimes specify his/ her occupation as well.
  2. They tell us about people who lived in towns: washing folk, weavers, scribes, carpenters, potters, goldsmiths, blacksmiths, officials, religious teachers, merchants and kings. Sometimes, guilds or shrenis, organisations of craft producers and merchants, are mentioned as well.
  3. These guilds probably procured raw materials, regulated production, and marketed the finished product. It is likely that craftspersons used a range of iron tools to meet the growing demands of urban elites.

Trade in the subcontinent and beyond

- From the sixth century BCE, land and river routes criss-crossed the subcontinent and extended in various directions – overland into Central Asia and beyond, and overseas, from ports that dotted the coastline – extending across the Arabian Sea to East and North Africa and West Asia, and through the Bay of Bengal to Southeast Asia and China.
- Those who traversed these routes included peddlers who probably travelled on foot and merchants who travelled with caravans of bullock carts and pack-animals.
- Also, there were seafarers, whose ventures were risky but highly profitable. Successful merchants, designated as masattuvan in Tamil and setthis and satthavahas in Prakrit, could become enormously rich.

Coins and kings

- Exchanges were facilitated by the introduction of coinage. Punch-marked coins made of silver and copper were amongst the earliest to be minted and used. These have been recovered from excavations at a number of sites throughout the subcontinent.
- The first coins to bear the names and images of rulers were issued by the Indo-Greeks, who established control over the north-western part of the subcontinent c. second century BCE.
- The kushanas, however, issued the largest hoards of gold coins-first gold coins-c. first century CE. These were virtually identical in weight with those issued by contemporary Roman emperors and the Parthian rulers of Iran, and have been found from several sites in north India and Central Asia.
- Besides, hoards of Roman coins have been found from archaeological sites in south India. It is obvious that networks of trade were not confined within political boundaries: south India was not part of the Roman Empire, but there were close connections through trade.
- Coins were also issued by tribal republics such as that of the Yaudheyas of Punjab and Haryana.

- Some of the most spectacular gold coins were issued by the Gupta rulers. The earliest issues are remarkable for their purity. These coins facilitated long-distance transactions from which kings also benefited. From c. sixth century CE onwards, finds of gold coins taper off.

Deciphering Brahmi and Kharosthi

- From the late eighteenth century, European scholars aided by Indian pundits worked backwards from contemporary Bengali and Devanagari manuscripts, comparing their letters with older specimens.
- James Prinsep, an officer in the mint of the East India Company, deciphered Brahmi and Kharosthi, two scripts used in the earliest inscriptions and coins. This gave a new direction to investigations into early Indian political history.
- Kharosthi, the script used in inscriptions and coins in the north western part of India by Indo-Greek kings. Indo-Greek coins contain the names of kings written in Greek and Kharosthi scripts. James Prinsep who could read the Greek script compared the letters and identified the language of the Kharosthi inscriptions as older form of Prakrit.
- James Princep found that Brahmi script is older form of Devanagari script.

Historical evidence from inscriptions

- While Asokan inscriptions have been found in present-day Odisha, the one depicting his anguish is missing. In other words, the inscription has not been found in the region that was conquered.

The limitation of inscriptional evidence

- There are technical limitations in studying the inscriptions. In some inscriptions letters are very faintly engraved.
- Some inscriptions are damaged and, in some inscriptions, letters are missing. So, reconstructions are uncertain.
- Besides, it is not always easy to be sure about the exact meaning of the words used in inscriptions.
- Several thousand inscriptions were made but only some hundreds have been discovered in which all are not deciphered, published and translated.
- There is another more fundamental problem. Politically and economically significant matters are recorded in inscriptions but routine agricultural practices and the joys and sorrows of daily existence are not found in inscriptions.

Timeline -1 : Major Political and Economic Developments	
c.600-500 BCE	Paddy transplantation; urbanisation in the Ganga valley; mahajanapadas; punch-marked coins
c. 500-400 BCE	Rulers of Magadha consolidate power
c. 327-325 BCE	Invasion of Alexander of Macedon
c. 321 BCE	Accession of Chandragupta Maurya
c. 272/268-231 BCE	Reign of Asoka
c. 185 BCE	End of the Mauryan empire
c. 200-100 BCE	Indo-Greek rule in the northwest; Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas in south India; Satavahanas in the Deccan
c. 100 BCE-200 CE	Shaka (peoples from Central Asia) rulers in the northwest; Roman trade; gold coinage
c. 78 CE#	Accession of Kanishka
c.100-200 CE	Earliest inscriptional evidence of land grants by Satavahana and Shaka rulers
c. 320 CE	Beginning of Gupta rule
c. 335-375 CE	Samudragupta
c. 375-415 CE	Chandragupta II; Vakatakas in the Deccan
c. 500-600 CE	Rise of the Chalukyas in Karnataka and of the Pallavas in Tamil Nadu
c. 606-647 CE	Harshavardhana king of Kanauj; Chinese pilgrim Xuan Zang comes in search of Buddhist texts
c. 712	Arabs conquer Sind

Note: It is difficult to date economic developments precisely. Only the earliest dates for specific developments have been given. The date of Kanishka's accession is not certain and this has been marked with a'#'.

Timeline – 2 : Major Advances in Epigraphy	
1784	Founding of the Asiatic Society (Bengal)
1810s	Colin Mackenzie collects over 8,000 inscriptions in Sanskrit and Dravidian languages
1838	Decipherment of Asokan Brahmi by James Prinsep
1877	Alexander Cunningham publishes a set of Asokan inscriptions
1886	First issue of Epigraphia Carnatica, a journal of south Indian inscriptions
1888	First issue of Epigraphia Indica
1965-66 D.C.	Sircar publishes Indian Epigraphy and Indian Epigraphical Glossary

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Buddhist and Jaina texts list 16 powerful states (Solah-Mahajanapada), that flourished in the early 6^{th} century BC. Which is not one of these states?
(a) Kosala **(b)** Anga
(c) Magadha **(d)** Amri

2. Who among the following deciphered Kharosthi and Brahmi scripts?
(a) John Marshall **(b)** R.E.M. Wheeler
(c) Hargreaves **(d)** James Princep

3. Vatsa or Vamsa, south of the Ganga was noted for its fine cotton textiles. Its capital was?
(a) Kaushambi **(b)** Mithila
(c) Champa **(d)** Vaishali

4. What were the total number of Mahajanapadas?
(a) 12 **(b)** 11
(c) 16 **(d)** 19

5. The principality of the Matsya was located in the Jaipur area of Rajasthan and its capital was
(a) Viratnagara **(b)** Ahichchhatra
(c) Takshashila **(d)** Ujjayni

6. Which of the following texts gives a list of the Mahajanapadas?
(a) Therigatta **(b)** Mahabharata
(c) Jatakas **(d)** Anguttara Nikaya

7. Which of these Mahajanapadas was the most powerful during the 6^{th} and 4^{th} centuries BCE?
(a) Magadha **(b)** Gandhara
(c) Kuru **(d)** Panchal

8. Who among the following appointed Dhamma Mahamatras?
(a) Samudragupta **(b)** Ashoka
(c) Bimbisara **(d)** Pandya

9. Between the sixth and fourth centuries BC, the four Mahajanpadas fought for power. Which of these isn't one of them?
(a) Magadha **(b)** Kosala
(c) Surasena **(d)** Avanti

10. Who was the founder of the Mauryan Empire?
(a) Ashoka **(b)** Chandragupta
(c) Bindusara **(d)** Samudragupta

11. Under which of the following regime Harishena was the court poet?
(a) Samudragupta
(b) Chandragupta II
(c) Ashoka
(d) Chandragupta Maurya

12. According to Harishcharita, who killed the Maurya King Brihadratha?
(a) Kanishka I **(b)** Pushyamitra
(c) Dashratha **(d)** Ashoka

13. Which of the following is not one of Ashoka's dhamma's key features?
(a) Treat the Brahmins with respect and be generous to them.
(b) Consider your religion to be superior to all others.
(c) Gahapati should respect family members, relatives, servants, the poor, and slaves with respect.
(d) Adhere to nonviolence.

14. What was the name of the merchants' and artisans' guilds?
(a) Uzhavar **(b)** Adimai
(c) Shrenis **(d)** Ur

15. Which of the following is correctly matched?

	Dynasties	Rulers
(a)	Cheras	Karikala
(b)	Chola	Simuka
(c)	Pandya	Neduchezian
(d)	Satvahana	Senguttan

16. What is James Prinsep's contribution in the development of the Indian epigraphy?
(a) He deciphered the Brahmi script used in most of the Ashokan inscriptions.
(b) He deciphered the Kharoshthi script used in most of the Ashokan inscriptions.
(c) Both (a) and (b)
(d) None of these

17. Who among the following were the first kings whose names appeared on coins?
(a) Satavahanas **(b)** Mauryas
(c) Palas **(d)** Indo-Greeks

18. Which inscription of Skandagupta mentions the Hunas and Pushyamitras as his enemies?
(a) Allahabad pillar transcription
(b) Junagarh rock transcription
(c) Indore pillar transcription
(d) Bhitari Inscription

19. The Tripitaka was written in which of the following language?
(a) Brahmi **(b)** Kharoshti
(c) Pali **(d)** Sanskrit

20. Asoka is mentioned by which titles in his inscriptions?
(a) Ashoka, Piyadassi
(b) Masattuvan, Ashoka
(c) Devanampiya, Piyadassi
(d) Devaputra, Piyadassi

21. Which among the following languages used to write the Ashokan inscriptions?
(a) Pali, Prakrit, and Greek
(b) Pali, Sanskrit, and Aramaic
(c) Prakrit, Aramaic, and Greek
(d) Pali, Sanskrit, and Greek

22. Who was Dhamma Mahamatta?
- **(a)** Special revenue officers appointed by Ashoka for tax collection.
- **(b)** Special officers appointed by Ashoka for maintaining law and order in the kingdom.
- **(c)** Special officers appointed by Ashoka to spread the message of dhamma.
- **(d)** Special officer appointed by Ashoka to stop the spread of dhamma.

23. Why is the sixth century BCE regarded as a watershed moment in Indian history?
- **(a)** Formation of states, cities, and towns; Use of iron
- **(b)** Hinduism's dominance; the use of iron
- **(c)** The emergence of states, cities, and towns; Hinduism's dominance
- **(d)** Buddhism and Jainism Emergence, Extensive Copper Use

24. In the Gupta period many panels of the gods are made which depict the leading god in large size and the retainers drawn on a similar scale. This represents
- **(a)** Increase in number of Gods
- **(b)** Perfection of concept of trinity
- **(c)** Social and political hierarchy and distinction
- **(d)** Premature art and architecture

25. Which of the following is the correct sequence of administrative divisions in the Gupta period?
- **(a)** Bukti, Vishya, Vithi, Grama
- **(b)** Vishya, Bukti, Vithi, Grama
- **(c)** Vithi, Grama, Bukti, Vishya
- **(d)** None of the above

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements related to the history of post Harappan Civilisation:
1. Rigveda was composed by the people living along the Indus and its tributaries.
2. There is a decline of Agricultural Settlements in several parts of the subcontinent.
3. Growth of sixteen Mahajanapadas. Many were ruled by the general public, there was no concept of king.
4. Mauryan Empire became the most powerful Mahajanapada.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
- **(a)** 1, 2 and 4 only **(b)** 1 only
- **(c)** 2 and 4 only **(d)** 1 and 2 only

2. Consider the following statements:
1. Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas in Tamilakam, known from Sangam text.
2. Most of these states including Satavahanas and Shakas had control over long distance trade networks.
3. Kushanas ruled over a vast kingdom extending from central Asia to North West India.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
- **(a)** 1 and 2 only **(b)** 3 only
- **(c)** 1 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

3. Consider the following statement about James Prinsep:
1. In the 1830s James Prinsep, an officer of the Indian Civil Services, deciphered Brahmi and Kharosthi.
2. He found that most of these mentioned a king referred to as Piyadassi.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
- **(a)** 1 only **(b)** 2 only
- **(c)** Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

4. Consider the following statement about Mauryan Empire:
1. The growth of Magadha culminated in the emergence of the Mauryan Empire.
2. Ashoka extended control as far northwest as Afghanistan and Baluchistan.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
- **(a)** 1 only **(b)** 2 only
- **(c)** Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

5. In the context of the Mauryan Empire, consider the following statements:
1. In 321 B.C., Ashoka established the Mauryan Empire.
2. In his work Indica, Megasthenes wrote about the Mauryan Empire.
3. Ashoka utilised his power and wealth to spread Buddhism.
4. The Empire had five important political centres.

Select the correct statement using the code given below:
- **(a)** 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 4 only
- **(c)** 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 3 and 4 only

6. Consider the following statements:
1. Most scripts used to write modern Indian languages are derived from Kharosthi, the script used in most Asokan inscriptions.
2. Brahmi is the script used in inscriptions in the northwest.
3. The coins of Indo-Greek kings, who ruled over the area contain the names of kings written in Greek and Kharosthi scripts.

Select the incorrect statement(s) using the code given below:
- **(a)** 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 only
- **(c)** 3 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only

7. With reference to Gupta Empire, consider the following statements:
1. During the reign of Kumargupta Nalanda University was established.
2. Prakrit as a popular language displaced Sanskrit during the Gupta period.

Select the incorrect statement(s) using the code given below:
- **(a)** 1 only **(b)** 2 only
- **(c)** Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

8. "Chandragupta Maurya control as far northwest as Afghanistan and Baluchistan". In this context which among the area controlled by him?
   1. Central India upto Narmada
   2. Ganges Valley
   3. Deccan
   4. North-Eastern India

   Select the correct answer using the code given below:
   (a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 **(b)** 2, 3 and 4 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only
9. With reference to the taxation during the Gupta period, consider the following statements:
   1. In times of emergency, additional taxes were imposed, and temples were not exempt.
   2. Taxes were only paid in kind.
   3. The bhaga, duties at ports, ferries, and fortified stations were the main sources of revenue.
   4. Forced labour was not uncommon, and on the horders of Tibet, we hear of a unique form of corvee called bhotta-visti.
   5. The crown estates, mining, and other sources of revenue provided income to the rulers.

   Select the correct statements using the code given below:
   (a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 1, 3, 4 and 5 only
   (c) 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only
10. With reference to coins and kings, consider the following statements:
    1. The first coins to bear the names and images of rulers were issued by the Indo-Greeks.
    2. The kushanas issued the largest hoards of gold coins, first gold coins, c. first century CE.

    Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Which of the following was the capital of Matsya Mahajanpada? **[Bihar Police SI]**
   (a) Kaushambi **(b)** Indraprastha
   (c) Viratnagar **(d)** Mathura
2. How many Mahajanapadas were located in present-day Uttar Pradesh among the oldest sixteen Mahajanapadas of India? **[UPPSC RO]**
   (a) 6 **(b)** 7
   (c) 8 **(d)** 9
3. Which among the following is the oldest dynasty? **[ICAR]**
   (a) Maurya **(b)** Gupta
   (c) Kushan **(d)** Kanva
4. Who among the following published a set of Ashokan inscriptions in the year 1877? **[SSC CGL]**
   (a) DC Sircar
   (b) MS Vats
   (c) Alexander Cunningham
   (d) Colin Mackenzie
5. According to Ashokan edicts, how many years after becoming the king did Ashoka wage war on Kalinga? **[SSC CGL]**
   (a) 5 **(b)** 8
   (c) 6 **(d)** 7
6. In Indian history, the 'Mahajanapada' of 6^{th} century BC is related to _____. **[DSSSB TGT]**
   (a) Religious Pandits **(b)** A group of states
   (c) Advisors of kings **(d)** Religious relics
7. Match each of the following 'Mahajanapadas' in Column - A with their 'Capitals' in Column - B and select the correct answer set from the table given below: **[Odisha Police SI]**

Column - A		Column - B	
(a)	Assaka	**(i)**	Kaushambi
(b)	Avanti	**(ii)**	Paudanya
(c)	Kosala	**(iii)**	Shravasti
(d)	Matsya	**(iv)**	Ujjaini
(e)	Vatsa	**(v)**	Vaishali
		(vi)	Viratnagar

   Codes:
   (a) (a) - (ii), (b) - (iv), (c) - (iii), (d) - (vi), (e) - (v)
   (b) (a) - (ii), (b) - (iv), (c) - (iii), (d) - (vi), (e) - (i)
   (c) (a) - (iii), (b) - (v), (c) - (ii), (d) - (vi), (e) - (i)
   (d) (a) - (ii), (b) - (iv), (c) - (iii), (d) - (v), (e) - (i)
8. In the context of Gupta administration, the term 'vithi' referred to a/an: **[SSC MTS]**
   (a) elephantry unit
   (b) administrative unit
   (c) personal guard of the king
   (d) soldier
9. The Gupta empire granted tax-free agrarian land to which of the following? **[MPPSC]**
   (a) Military Officials **(b)** Civil Officials
   (c) Brahmins **(d)** Court Scholars

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: There were total 16 Mahajanapadas which are as follows: Kasi, Kosala, Anga, Magadha, Vajji, Malla, Chedi/Cheti, Vatsa, Kuru, Panchala, Matsya, Surasena/Shurasena, Assaka, Avanti, Gandhara and Kamboja.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: James Princep was the first to decipher Asoka's inscriptions in 1837. They are written in Pali, with some Prakrit thrown in for good measure. For writing, the Brahmi script was used. Asokan inscriptions in Kharosthi script have been discovered in north-western India.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Vatsa was known for its high-quality cotton textiles. Vatsa's capital was Kaushambi, in Allahabad, at the confluence of the Ganga and Yamuna rivers.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: There were total 16 Mahajanapadas.
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Matsya Kingdom was located near Kuru in central India. Matsya Dwaita, son of Uparachira Vasu, created it. Brihadratha (who founded Maghada), Mavella, Yadu, Manivahana, and Rajanya were Uparachira's other sons. Viratanagari was the capital of Matsya (present-day Bairat in the Jaipur district of Rajasthan).
6. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Buddhist Jatakas, Anguttara Nikaya, name sixteen states, or Mahajanapadas. The Anguttara Nikaya is a Buddhist text from the Sutta Pitaka, which is one of the "three baskets" that make up Theravada Buddhism's Pali Tipitaka. It is the fourth of the five nikayas, or collections, in the Sutta Pitaka.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Atharva Veda mentions Magadha, which was located near Anga in modern-day Bihar and separated by the Champa River. Later, Magadha became a Jain centre, and Rajagriha hosted the first Buddhist Council. It was the most powerful during the 6th and 4th centuries BC.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: After witnessing the devastation caused by the Kalinga War, Asoka, considered one of India's greatest emperors, converted to Buddhism. Following this, he made a concerted effort to spread Buddhism's impact. He ordered the construction of various stupas and assigned officers to aid in the spread of the Dhamma.
Dhamma Mahamatras was appointed by Asoka.
9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Surasena was not among the four Mahajanapadas that fought for power.
In the 6^{th} century only 4 powerful kingdoms remained:
   - Magadha
   - Avanti
   - Kosala
   - Vatsa
10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 321 BC, Chandragupta took the throne by overthrowing Dhana Nanda with the help of an educated and politically astute Brahmin.
11. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Harisena, also known as Harishena or Hirisena, was a Sanskrit poet, panegyrist, and government minister in the fourth century. He was a prominent person in the court of Samudragupta, the Gupta emperor.
12. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: According to Bāṇabhaṭṭa's Harshacharita, Pushyamitra crushed his master while parading the entire Mauryan army before Brihadratha on the pretence of exhibiting him the army's power. Pushyamitra assassinated the previous emperor in front of his army, establishing himself as the new monarch.
13. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The following are the main principles of Ashoka's dhamma:
   - People should live in peace and harmony.
   - Everyone should practise the principle of ahimsa, i.e., non-violence and non-injury to all living beings.
   - People should love one another and display respect and tolerance towards other religious faiths.
   - Children should obey their elders and elders should treat children with understanding.
   - People should be truthful, charitable and kind to all, even towards servants and slaves.
14. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: A shreni was a group of traders, merchants, and artisans in Ancient India. In most cases, a separate shreni existed for a specific group of people who shared a common vocation or activity.
15. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Daynasties - Rulers
   - Chera - Senguttan
   - Chola - Karikala
   - Pandya - Neduchezian
   - Satvahana - Simuka
16. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: James Princep was an official at the East India Company's mint. He helped to develop Indian epigraphy by deciphering the Brahmi and Kharosti scripts used in the oldest inscriptions on coinage.
17. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Indo-Greeks, who took control of the north-western half of the subcontinent in the second century BCE, were the first to issue coins with rulers' names and images.
18. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: From AD 455 to 467, Skandagupta ruled the Gupta Empire. He wrote the Bhitari Inscription, a 19-line poem that describes Skandagupta's forefathers, as well as himself and his accomplishments. The fight between Skandagupta and the Huns is mentioned in the Bhitari Inscription. The Skandagupta's fight with Pushyamitra is also mentioned in the Bhitari Inscription.

19. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Tripitaka is the earliest and most important text in pali.

20. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Ashoka's inscriptions mention his title Devanampiya, Piyadassi.

21. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Prakrit, Greek, and Aramaic were the three languages used to write Ashokan inscriptions. The edicts are written in nonstandard and archaic Prakrit forms. Brahmi and Kharosthi scripts were used to write Prakrit inscriptions.

22. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Ashoka ordered the construction of various stupas and assigned officers to aid in the spread of the Dhamma.

Dhamma Mahamatta was appointed by Asoka.

23. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The sixth century BCE is frequently seen as a watershed moment in Indian history. It is a time period connected with the formation of early states, cities, the increased use of iron, the invention of money, and so on. It also saw the rise of several philosophical systems, such as Buddhism and Jainism.

24. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In the Gupta period many panels of the gods are made which depict the leading god in large size and the retainers drawn on a similar scale represents Social and political hierarchy and distinction.

25. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Gupta Empire was divided into provinces called as Bhukti, Bhoga and Pradesha. Provinces were further divided into "Vishayas" and placed under the administration of "Vishaya Patis." "Vishaya" was subdivided into "Nagaras," which were further subdivided into villages. "Vithi" was a part of "Vishaya." "Pethaka" and "Santaka" were the names given to a group or cluster of villages. "Agrahara" and "Patta" were smaller village units.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Rigveda was composed by the people living along the Indus and its tributaries.

Agricultural settlements emerged and developed all over the subcontinent.

Making megaliths is a new method of burying the dead.

By 600 BCE, new cities and kingdoms had sprouted.

600 BCE was a watershed moment in Indian history.

The development of sixteen Mahajanapadas. Many of the countries were ruled by kings.

Magadha became the most powerful Mahajanapada between 600 and 400 BCE.

The founder of the Mauryan Empire, Chandragupta Maurya (C 321 BCE), extended his influence over Afghanistan and Baluchistan.

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: New chiefdoms and kingdoms emerged in various sections of the subcontinent by C 200 BCE. In Tamilakam, the Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas are known from the Sangam text.

Long-distance trade networks were controlled by the majority of these states, including the Satavahanas and Shakas.

Kushanas ruled over a huge kingdom that stretched from Central Asia to North West India from the first century BCE to the first century CE.

Inscriptions, coins, and sculptures that communicate a sense of monarchy have been used to recreate their history.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Brahmi and Kharosthi, two scripts used in the earliest inscriptions and coinage, were decoded in the 1830s by James Prinsep, an officer in the East India Company's mint. He discovered that the majority of them cited a ruler named Piyadassi.

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The growth of Magadha culminated in the emergence of the Mauryan Empire. Chandragupta Maurya, who founded the empire (c. 321 BCE), extended control as far northwest as Afghanistan and Baluchistan, and his grandson Asoka, arguably the most famous ruler of early India, conquered Kalinga.

5. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Mauryan Empire, which lasted from 321 B.C.E. to 185 B.C.E., was the first pan-Indian empire, encompassing much of the Indian subcontinent.

Chandragupta Maurya established the Mauryan Empire. Megasthenes wrote about the Mauryan Empire in his work 'Indica'.

Ashoka the 3rd ruler of the Mauryan Empire utilised his power and wealth to spread Buddhism.

There were five important political centres in the Mauryan Empire: Patliputra (the capital city) and the provincial centres of Taxila, Ujjayini, Tosali and Suvarnagiri.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Most scripts used to write modern Indian languages are derived from Brahmi, the script used in most Asokan inscriptions.

Kharosthi is the script used in inscriptions in the northwest. The coins of Indo-Greek kings, who ruled over the area (c. second-first centuries BCE), contain the names of kings written in Greek and Kharosthi scripts.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Sanskrit replaced Prakrit as the popular language throughout the Gupta dynasty, and most inscriptions were written in Sanskrit. The Guptas

not only declared it the official language of their vast empire, but they also made it mandatory for all members of the imperial family to speak it. The University of Nalanda was set-up by Kumargupta I of the Gupta Dynasty.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The first pan-Indian empire, one that ruled across the majority of the Indian subcontinent, was the Mauryan Empire, which began in 321 BCE and ended in 185 BCE. Eastern Persia was taken over by Chandragupta. It covered parts of modern-day Iran as well as central and northern India.

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Agriculture was the general public's primary source of income, and it contributed significantly to the empire's economy through taxation. People who lived in the state as well as those who arrived from outside the state provided the state with a large amount of money in the form of custom duties and service tax.

10. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Exchanges were facilitated by the introduction of coinage. Punch-marked coins made of silver and copper were amongst the earliest to be minted and used. These have been recovered from excavations at a number of sites throughout the subcontinent.
The first coins to bear the names and images of rulers were issued by the Indo-Greeks, who established control over the north-western part of the subcontinent c. second century BCE.
The kushanas, however, issued the largest hoards of gold coins, first gold coins, c. first century CE. These were virtually identical in weight with those issued by contemporary Roman emperors and the Parthian rulers of Iran, and have been found from several sites in north India and Central Asia

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Matsya Kingdom was located near Kuru in central India. Matsya Dwaita, son of Uparachira Vasu, created it. Viratanagari was the capital of Matsya (present-day Bairat in the Jaipur district of Rajasthan).

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Eight of the sixteen Mahajanapadas during the Mahajanapada Period were found in modern Uttar Pradesh.
Kuru, Panchal, Shursen, Vats, Kaushal, Malla, Kashi, and Chedi were all present in Uttar Pradesh and are still present today.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Mauryans were a group of people that lived during the (322 BC-185 BC). The Mauryan Dynasty is supposed to have been founded by Chandragupta Maurya.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Alexander Cunningham is regarded as the founder of the Indian Archaeological Survey. Sarnath was first excavated by Cunningham.

5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Edicts of Ashoka: The emperor (Ashoka) refers to himself as Devnampiya Piyadasi, which meaning beloved of Gods, in Ashoka edicts.
The victory of Ashoka in the Kalinga war is described in the monumental rock edict XIII. Instead of battle, it explains the conquest by dhamma. In the eighth year of his reign, Ashoka fought the Kalinga war in 261 BC.

6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Mahajanapadas were sixteen kingdoms or groups of states (from Maha: Great and Janapada: Stronghold of a nation). They existed in Northern ancient India during the second urbanisation period, from the sixth to fourth century BCE.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Capital of Assaka- Paudanya
Capital of Avanti- Ujjaini
Capital of Kosala- Shravasti
Capital of Matsya- Viratnagar
Capital of Vatsa- Kaushambi

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The term "vithi" in the context of the Gupta administration referred to the administrative unit.

9. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Guptas are believed to have been Kushana feudatories. The Guptas' original dominion included Uttar Pradesh and Bihar, with Prayag as their capital (U.P). The Guptas established their dominance over the lush Madhyadesha plains, also known as Anuganga (the middle Gangetic basin), Saketa (Ayodhya, Uttar Pradesh), Prayag (Uttar Pradesh), and Magadha (Uttar Pradesh) (mostly Bihar). The Brahmans were given tax-free agrarian land by the Gupta kingdom.

3 KINSHIP, CASTE AND CLASS

The Critical Edition of Mahabharata

- One of the most ambitious projects of scholarship began in 1919, under the leadership of a noted Indian Sanskritist, V. S. Sukthankar. A team comprising dozens of scholars initiated the task of preparing a critical edition of the Mahabharata.
- They selected the verses that appeared common to most versions and published these in several volumes.
- The project took 47 years to completed and prepared 13,000 pages.

Two things became Apparent

- There were several common elements in the Sanskrit versions of the story, evident in manuscripts.
- There were enormous regional variation in the ways in which the text had been transmitted over the centuries.

Note:

- Issues of social history were explored by historians in the 19th and 20th centuries. Believing everything laid down in the text was actually practices.
- Scholar began studying other tradition from works in Pali, Prakrit and Tamil.

Kinship and Marriage- Many rules and varied Practice

Finding out about families

- Historians also investigate and analyse attitudes towards family and kinship. These are important, because they provide an insight into people's thinking; it is likely that some of these ideas would have shaped their actions, just as actions may have led to changes in attitudes.

Important Terms
Patriliny means tracing descent from father to son, grandson and so on. **Matriliny** is the term used when descent is traced through the mother.

The ideal of patriliny

- Under patriliny, sons could claim the resources (including the throne in the case of kings) of their fathers when the latter died.
- Most ruling dynasties claimed to follow this system, although there were variations in practice: sometimes there were no sons, in some situations brothers succeeded one another, sometimes other kinsmen claimed the throne, and, in very exceptional circumstances, women such as Prabhavati Gupta exercised power.
- The concern with patriliny was not unique to ruling families. It is evident in mantras in ritual texts such as the Rigveda.
- It is possible that these attitudes were shared by wealthy men and those who claimed high status, including Brahmanas.

Eight forms of marriage
Brahma marriage: Brahma marriage is the Hindu term for a father's daughter marrying a bridegroom from the same caste through religious procedures. **Daiva form of Marriage:** A father gifts his daughter to a priest. **Arsha form of Marriage:** A token bride price is given in place of the dowry. **Prajapatya form of Marriage:** A father marries his daughter without dowry and bride-price. **Asura form of Marriage:** Bride was brought from her father forcefully. **Gandharva form of marriage:** Love marriage **Rakshasa form of marriage:** Marriage which was done by capture or kidnapping. **Paishacha form of marriage:** Marriage by seduction.

Rules of Marriage

- While sons were important for the continuity of the patrilineage, daughters were viewed rather differently within this framework.
- They had no claims to the resources of the household. At the same time, marrying them into families outside the kin was considered desirable.
- This system, called exogamy (literally, marrying outside), meant that the lives of young girls and women belonging to families that claimed high status were often carefully regulated to ensure that they were married at the "right" time and to the "right" person.
- This gave rise to the belief that kanyadana or the gift of a daughter in marriage was an important religious duty of the father.

Social Culture after the Emergence of New Towns

- Social life became more complex, people from near and far met to buy and sell their products and share ideas in the urban milieu. This may have led to a questioning of earlier beliefs and practices.
- From 500 BCE, these norms were compiled in Sanskrit texts known as the Dharmasutras and Dharmashastras. The most important of such works, the Manusmriti, was compiled between c. 200 BCE and 200 CE.

The Gotra of Women

- One Brahmanical practice, evident from c. 1000 BCE onwards, was to classify people (especially

Brahmanas) in terms of gotras. Each gotra was named after a Vedic seer, and all those who belonged to the same gotra were regarded as his descendants.

- Two rules about gotra were particularly important: Women were expected to give up their father's gotra and adopt that of their husband on marriage and members of the same gotra could not marry.

Metronymics in the Upanishads
The Brihadaranyaka Upanishad, one of the earliest Upanishads, contains a list of successive generations of teachers and students, many of whom were designated by metronymics.

Social difference within and beyond the framework of caste

- Brahmanas claimed that this order, in which they were ranked first, was divinely ordained, while placing groups classified as Shudras and "untouchables" at the very bottom of the social order. Positions within the order were supposedly determined by birth.
- Dharmasutras and Dharmashastras contained rules about the ideal "occupations" of the four categories or varnas.
  1. Brahmanas were supposed to study and teach the Vedas, perform sacrifices and get sacrifices performed, and give and receive gifts.
  2. Kshatriyas were to engage in warfare, protect people and administer justice, study the Vedas, get sacrifices performed, and make gifts.
  3. The last three "occupations" were also assigned to the Vaishyas, who were in addition expected to engage in agriculture, pastoralism and trade.
  4. Shudras were assigned only one occupation – that of serving the three "higher" varnas.
- The Brahmanas evolved three strategies for enforcing these norms.
  1. One, as we have just seen, was to assert that the varna order was of divine origin.
  2. Second, they advised kings to ensure that these norms were followed within their kingdoms.
  3. Third, they attempted to persuade people that their status was determined by birth.

Non-Kshatriya kings

- According to the Shastras, only Kshatriyas could be kings. However, several important ruling lineages probably had different origins.
- The social background of the Mauryas, who ruled over a large empire, has been hotly debated. While later Buddhist texts suggested they were Kshatriyas, Brahmanical texts described them as being of "low" origin.
- The Shungas and Kanvas, the immediate successors of the Mauryas, were Brahmanas. Other rulers, such as the Shakas who came from Central Asia, were regarded as mlechchhas, barbarians or outsiders by the Brahmanas.
- However, one of the earliest inscriptions in Sanskrit describes how Rudradaman, the best-known Shaka ruler (c. second century CE), rebuilt Sudarshana lake. This suggests that powerful mlechchhas were familiar with Sanskritic traditions.

Satavahana Rulers

- Some of the Satavahana rulers were polygynous. An examination of the names of women who married Satavahana rulers indicates that many of them had names derived from gotras such as Gotama and Vasistha, their father's gotras.
- Satavahana rulers were identified through metronymics, i.e., names derived from that of the mother. Although this may suggest that mothers were important.
- It is also interesting that the best-known ruler of the Satavahana dynasty, Gotami-puta Siri-Satakani, claimed to be both a unique Brahmana and a destroyer of the pride of Kshatriyas.
- He also claimed to have ensured that there was no intermarriage amongst members of the four varnas. At the same time, he entered into a marriage alliance with the kin of Rudradaman.
- The Satavahanas claimed to be Brahmanas, whereas according to the Brahmanas, kings ought to have been Kshatriyas.
- They claimed to uphold the four fold varna order, but entered into marriage alliances with people who were supposed to be excluded from the system.

Jatis and social mobility

- These complexities are reflected in another term used in texts to refer to social categories – jati.
- In Brahmanical theory, jati, like varna, was based on birth. However, while the number of varnas was fixed at four, there was no restriction on the number of jatis.
- Jatis which shared a common occupation or profession were sometimes organised into shrenis or guilds.

Beyond the four varnas: Integration

- Populations whose social practices were not influenced by Brahmanical ideas. When they figure in Sanskrit texts, they are often described as odd, uncivilised, or even animal-like.
- In some instances, these included forest-dwellers-for whom hunting and gathering remained an important means of subsistence. Categories such as the nishada are example of this.
- Populations such as nomadic pastoralists, who could not be easily accommodated within the framework of settled agriculturists.
- Sometimes those who spoke non-Sanskritic languages were labelled as mlechchhas and looked down upon.

The Bodhisatta as a chandala
It is part of the Matanga Jataka, a Pali text, where the Bodhisatta (the Buddha in a previous birth) is identified as a chandala. The Bodhisatta was born outside the city of Banaras as a chandala's son and named Matanga.

Beyond the Four Varnas Subordination and Conflict

- While the Brahmanas considered some people as being outside the system, they also developed a sharper social divide by classifying certain social categories as "untouchable".
- In sharp contrast to the purity aspect, some activities were regarded as particularly "polluting". These included handling corpses and dead animals. Those who performed such tasks, designated as chandalas, were placed at the very bottom of the hierarchy.

- The Manusmriti laid down the "duties" of the chandalas. They had to live outside the village, use discarded utensils, and wear clothes of the dead and ornaments of iron. They could not walk about in villages and cities at night.
- They had to dispose of the bodies of those who had no relatives and serve as executioners. Much later, the Chinese Buddhist monk Fa Xian (c. fifth century CE) wrote that "untouchables" had to sound a clapper in the streets so that people could avoid seeing them.
- Another Chinese pilgrim, Xuan Zang (c. seventh century), observed that executioners and scavengers were forced to live outside the city.

Beyond Birth-Resources and Status

- According to the Manusmriti, the paternal estate was to be divided equally amongst sons after the death of the parents, with a special share for the eldest.
- Women could not claim a share of these resources. However, women were allowed to retain the gifts they received on the occasion of their marriage as stridhana.
- This could be inherited by their children, without the husband having any claim on it. At the same time, the Manusmriti warned women against hoarding family property, or even their own valuables, without the husband's permission.

Explaining Social Differences: A social contract

- In a myth found in a text known as the Sutta Pitaka they suggested that originally human beings did not have fully evolved bodily forms, nor was the world of plants fully developed.
- All beings lived in an idyllic state of peace, taking from nature only what they needed for each meal. However, there was a gradual deterioration of this state as human beings became increasingly greedy, vindictive and deceitful.

Handling Text

Language, Content and Author

- Historians usually classify the contents of the present text under two broad heads sections that contain stories, designated as the narrative, and sections that contain prescriptions about social norms, designated as didactic. This division is by no means watertight the didactic sections include stories, and the narrative often contains a social message.
- The original story was probably composed by charioteer-bards known as sutas who generally accompanied Kshatriya warriors to the battlefield and composed poems celebrating their victories and other achievements. These compositions circulated orally. Then, from the fifth century BCE, Brahmanas took over the story and began to commit it to writing.
- Another phase in the composition of the text between c. 200 BCE and 200 CE. This was the period when the worship of Vishnu was growing in importance, and Krishna, one of the important figures of the epic, was coming to be identified with Vishnu.
- Subsequently, between c. 200 and 400 CE, large didactic sections resembling the Manusmriti were added. With these additions, a text which initially perhaps had less than 10,000 verses grew to comprise about 100,000 verses. This enormous composition is traditionally attributed to a sage named Vyasa.

The search for convergence

- The Mahabharata, like any major epic, contains vivid descriptions of battles, forests, palaces and settlements. In 1951-52, the archaeologist B.B. Lal excavated at a village named Hastinapura in Meerut. Present-day historians suggest that the fact that the author(s) describe a polyandrous union indicates that polyandry may have been prevalent amongst ruling elites at some point of time.

A Dynamic Text

- The growth of the Mahabharata did not stop with the Sanskrit version. Over the centuries, versions of the epic were written in a variety of languages through an ongoing process of dialogue between peoples, communities, and those who wrote the texts.
- Several stories that originated in specific regions or circulated amongst certain people found their way into the epic. At the same time, the central story of the epic was often retold in different ways.
- Episodes were depicted in sculpture and painting. They also provided themes for a wide range of performing arts, i.e., plays, dance and other kinds of narrations.

Timeline: Major Textual Traditions

c. 500 BCE - Ashtadhyayi of Panini, a work of Sanskrit grammar

c. 500-100 BCE - Early Buddhist texts including the Tripitaka (in Pali)

c. 500 - 200 BCE - Major Dharmasutras (in Sanskrit)

c. 500 BCE-400 CE - Ramayana and Mahabharata (in Sanskrit)

c. 200 CE - onwards Compilation of the Puranas (in Sanskrit)

c. 100 CE - Charaka and Sushruta Samhitas in Sanskrit, works on medicine

c. 200 CE onwards - Compilation of Puranas in Sanskrit

c. 200 BCE - 200 CE - Manusmriti in Sanskrit; composition and compilation of Tamil Sangam literature

c. 300 CE - Natyashastra of Bharata, a work on dramaturgy (in Sanskrit)

c. 400-500 CE - Sanskrit plays a valuable role in the compilation of Kalidasa's works on astronomy and mathematics by Aryabhata and Varahamihira (in Sanskrit).

c. 300-600 CE - Other Dharmashastras in Sanskrit

TWO MAJOR LANDMARKS IN THE STUDY OF MAHABHARATA

1. Preparation and publication of the Critical Edition of the Mahabharata (1919-66).
2. J.A.B. van Buitenen begins English translation of the Critical Edition in 1973; remains incomplete after his death in 1978

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. The term 'Kula' used in Sanskrit texts specifically refers to which of the following?
   (a) Family **(b)** Kinfolk
   (c) Lineage **(d)** None of the above
2. In the Mahabharata, how many verses are there?
   (a) 30 thousand **(b)** 90 thousand
   (c) 50 thousand **(d)** More than one lakh
3. Which of these Dharmashastras is the most important?
   (a) Rigveda **(b)** Ramayana
   (c) Manusmriti **(d)** All of these
4. According to Shastras which among the following could rule the country?
   (a) Brahmins **(b)** Kshatriyas
   (c) Vaishyas **(d)** Shudras
5. Which among the following rulers followed endogamy?
   (a) Satvahanas **(b)** Palas
   (c) Mauryas **(d)** None of these
6. According to the Shastras, the right of kingship was entitled to which of the following?
   (a) Kshatriyas only
   (b) Brahmanas and Kshatriyas only
   (c) Anyone who could muster support and resources
   (d) Anyone among the Brahmanas, Kshatriyas and Vaishyas who could muster support and resources
7. In which type of marriage does a woman have several husbands?
   (a) Endogamy **(b)** Exogamy
   (c) Polygamy **(d)** Polyandry
8. Shakas who came from Central Asia were regarded by the Brahmanas as
   (a) Dasas **(b)** Untouchables
   (c) Mlechchhas **(d)** Aryans
9. Which of the following statements about people's categorization in terms of 'gotra' under Brahmanical practise from 1000 BCE onwards is correct?
   (a) Women were supposed to give up their father's gotra after marriage.
   (b) They were meant to adopt their husband's gotra.
   (c) Another crucial restriction was that no two people from the same gotra may marry.
   (d) All of these
10. Which among the following composed the original story of Mahabharata?
    (a) Sutas **(b)** Kshatriyas
    (c) Brahmanas **(d)** None of these
11. What was the object of the team of V.S. Sukthankar?
    (a) Prepare critical edition of Mahabharata
    (b) Translate Mahabharata in the English language
    (c) Prepare critical edition of Manusmriti
    (d) Translate Manusmriti in Tamil
12. Who were designated as the Chandalas?
    (a) The non-Kshatriya rulers, considered barbarians/ outsiders by the Brahmanas.
    (b) Those who performed such tasks of handling corpses and dead animals.
    (c) Kshatriyas that were not engaged in the occupations that were 'determined' for them (such as kingship or being a soldier).
    (d) None of the above
13. Which material was used to write the earliest inscriptions?
    (a) Pillars **(b)** Paper
    (c) Wood **(d)** Metal
14. Which of the following was one of the occupations of Brahmanas?
    (a) Perform sacrifices and give gifts
    (b) To teach Vedas
    (c) Trade
    (d) Agriculture
15. Which of the following statements about the Chandalas' responsibilities as outlined in Manusmriti is incorrect?
    (a) They were forced to live on the outskirts of town.
    (b) They were forced to eat using discarded utensils.
    (c) They were meant to dress in villagers' old garments and shell jewellery.
    (d) It was their responsibility to carry out the executions and dispose of the bodies of individuals who had no relatives.
16. Between c. 600 BCE and 600 CE, Brahmanas used which of the following strategies to enforce the Varna order's norms?
    (a) The varna system is divine, according to Brahmanas.
    (b) Brahmanas attempted to persuade people that their profession and social standing are dictated by their birth.
    (c) The monarchs were advised by the Brahmanas to make sure that everyone in the realm follow the varna system's rules.
    (d) All of these
17. The charioteer-bards who generally accompanied Kshatriya warriors to the battlefield, composed poems celebrating their victories and other achievements. They were known as
    (a) Samantas **(b)** Sutas
    (c) Saarthis **(d)** None of the above
18. Rulers whose name ended with the term 'Puta' belonged to which of the following dynasty?
    (a) Satavahana dynasty **(b)** Shunga dynasty.
    (c) Mauryan dynasty **(d)** Kanva dynasty.
19. Marriage within a unit, a kin group, caste or a group living in the same locality, is called _____.
    (a) endogamy **(b)** exogamy
    (c) polygyny **(d)** polyandry
20. The rulers whose names were derived from that of their mothers were
    (a) Shakas **(b)** Satvahanas
    (c) Kurus **(d)** Mauryas

21. From around 1000 BCE onwards, the Hindu religion practised the classification of persons known as gotras by which of the following?
(a) Brahmanas **(b)** Kshatriyas
(c) Vaishyas **(d)** Shudras

22. The Brahmanas considered some people as being outside the system by classifying certain social categories as _____.
(a) Kinfolk **(b)** Varnas
(c) Untouchable **(d)** Nishada

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements about the significance of gender differences in early societies between c. 600 BCE and 600 CE:
1. Patriliny was inherent in societies.
2. Land grants could be given by women.
3. Sons were regarded as crucial to the family's survival.
Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

2. Match the following:

Forms of Marriage		Meaning	
1.	Endogamy	**A.**	refers to marriage outside the unit
2.	Exogamy	**B.**	refer to the practice of a man having several wives
3.	Polygyny	**C.**	refers to a practice of a woman having several husbands
4.	Polyandry	**D.**	refers to marriage within the unit

Select the correct option using the code given below:
(a) 1 - B, 2 - C, 3 - A, 4 - D
(b) 1 - A, 2 - B, 3 - D, 4 - C
(c) 1 - C, 2 - A, 3 - B, 4 - D
(d) 1 - D, 2 - A, 3 - B, 4 - C

3. Consider the following statements regarding the rules of the marriage during the Early Societies:
1. Sons were vital for patrilineal continuity during the time, while girls were considered differently within this framework.
2. At the same time, it was seen advantageous to marry them into non-kin homes.
3. The concept that kanyadana, or the giving of a daughter in marriage, was a significant religious duty of the parent arose from the exogamy system.
Which of the following statement(s) is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

4. Consider the following statements about the Mahabharata critical edition:
1. The task of developing a critical edition of the Mahabharata was started by a team of dozens of scholars.
2. Initially, it entailed gathering Sanskrit manuscripts of the text from all over the country, written in a variety of scripts.
3. The group devised a method for comparing verses from each manuscript.
Which of the following statement(s) is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** 1 and 2 only

5. Consider the following statements:
1. Satavahana kings were known by their metronymics.
2. Mlechchhas were the name given to villagers who fished for Satavahana rulers.
3. For the first time, Sanskrit was used to write the Ramayana and the Mahabharata.
Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** 1 and 3 only

6. Consider the following places of Kuru Panchala region:
1. Kaushambi **2.** Shravasti
3. Indraprastha **4.** Hastinapura
Arrange the places mentioned above in the correct order from west to east direction:
(a) 4-3-2-1 **(b)** 2-3-4-1
(c) 3-4-1-2 **(d)** 2-3-1-4

7. Consider the following statements:
1. Between c. 600 BCE and 600 CE, the daughters had no claims to the resources of the household.
2. Between c. 600 BCE and 600 CE, the daughters were not preferred to marry outside the kin; exogamy was not preferably practised.
Which of the statements given above is/are not correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

8. Consider the following statements:
1. Manusmriti was a dharmasutra that laid down the codes of social behaviour to be followed by the Brahmanas in particular and the society in general.
2. During the period of compilation of Manusmriti (c. 200 BCE and 200 CE), the influence of Brahmanas was all-pervasive.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

9. Consider the following texts:
(a) Manusmriti (in Sanskrit)
(b) Ashtadhyayi of Panini
(c) Tripitaka (in Pali)
(d) Charaka and Sushruta Samhitas (in Sanskrit)
Which of the following is the correct chronological sequence of the composition of the above mentioned texts?
(a) 4-3-2-1 **(b)** 2-3-4-1
(c) 3-4-1-2 **(d)** 2-3-1-4

10. Consider the following statements regarding the access to property and land:
1. Stridhana was the gifts of land and property that women received on the occasion of their marriage.

2. Stridhana was inherited by the woman's children but the husband had no claim on it.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. According to the Manusmriti, women can acquire wealth through which of the following means? **[CDS]**
   (a) Purchase **(b)** Investment
   (c) Token of affection **(d)** Inheritance
2. In the 10th Mandala of the Rigveda, which one of the following hymns reflects upon the marriage ceremonies? **(CDS]**
   (a) Surya Sukta **(b)** Purusha Sukta
   (c) Dana Sutis **(d)** Urna Sutra
3. Which one of the following Brahmana texts belongs to the Rigveda? **[MP PCS]**
   (a) Aitareya Brahmana
   (b) Gopatha Brahmana
   (c) Shatapatha Brahmana
   (d) Taittriya Brahmana
4. Rakshasa type of marriage is: **[CDS]**
   (a) marriage by purchase
   (b) marriage by capture
   (c) marriage by giving dowry
   (d) marriage by seduction
5. Recently, the manuscripts of which one of the following have been included in the UNESCO's memory of the world register? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Abhidhamma Pitaka **(b)** Mahabharata
   (c) Ramayana **(d)** Rigveda
6. In Hindus marriage of a daughter by father with bridegroom of same caste by religious rites is called: **[CG TET]**
   (a) Prajapatya Marriage
   (b) Brahma Marriage
   (c) Religious Rites Marriage
   (d) Aryan Marriage

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Sanskrit texts use the term kula to designate families and jnati for the larger network of kinfolk. The term vamsha is used for lineage.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: Over 100,000 shlokas (hymns) make up the Mahabharata. The epic has almost 200,000 verses because each shloka is a couplet. It was first composed in Sanskrit by Veda Vyasa and has been reworked and repeated in a variety of languages.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The most important surviving texts are the Dharmasastras, Manusmriti, Yajnavalkyasmriti, and Naradasmriti.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Dharmasastras also contained rules about the ideal "occupations" of the four categories or varnas.
   - Brahmanas were supposed to study and teach the Vedas, perform sacrifices and get sacrifices performed, and give and receive gifts.
   - Kshatriyas were to engage in warfare, protect people and administer justice, study the Vedas, get sacrifices performed, and make gifts.
   - The last three "occupations" were also assigned to the Vaishyas, who were in addition expected to engage in agriculture, pastoralism and trade.
   - Shudras were assigned only one occupation – that of serving the three "higher" varnas.
5. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: Endogamy was popular under the Satavahanas' reign. People were classified using Gotras, a Brahmanical tradition.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: According to the Shastras, only Kshatriyas could be kings. However, several important ruling lineages probably had different origins.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation:
   - Polyandry in India refers to the practise of a woman having two or more husbands at the same time, either historically or today in India. The Hindu epic Mahabharata contains an early example, in which Draupadi, the daughter of the ruler of Panchala, is married to five brothers.
   - Polyandry was most common in the Kinnaur region of India, which is part of Himachal Pradesh.
   - Polyandry is also prevalent in South India, particularly among the Nilgiri Todas and Travancore's Nanjanad Vellala tribes.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The Brahmanas considered Shakas from Central Asia to be "mlechchhas," or barbarians or foreigners. Rudradaman was their most well-known ruler, and one of his significant efforts was the reconstruction of Sudarshana Lake.
9. **Option (d) is correct.**
   Explanation: From 1000 BCE onwards, Brahmanical practise categorised persons according to their gotra. Each gotra was given the name of a Vedic seer. All members of the same gotra were considered to be the progeny of the same Vedic seer.
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
    Explanation: The original story was most likely written by sutas, charioteer-bards who accompanied Kshatriya troops to battle and wrote poems commemorating their wins and exploits. These compositions were passed around orally.

11. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: One of the most ambitious projects of scholarship began in 1919, under the leadership of a noted Indian Sanskritist, V.S. Sukthankar. A team comprising dozens of scholars initiated the task of preparing a critical edition of the Mahabharata.

12. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- The Brahmanas considered some people as being outside the system, they also developed a sharper social divide by classifying certain social categories as "untouchable".
- Those who considered themselves pure avoided taking food from those they designated as "untouchable".
- In sharp contrast to the purity aspect, some activities were regarded as particularly "polluting".
- These included handling corpses and dead animals. Those who performed such tasks, designated as Chandalas, were placed at the very bottom of the hierarchy.

13. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Halmidi inscription is the oldest known inscription in the Kannada language. The inscription was found on a pillar in the village of Halmidi, a few kilometres from the famous temple town of Belur in Karnataka's Hassan district, and dates from 450 CE.

14. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Brahmanas were supposed to study and teach the Vedas, perform sacrifices and get sacrifices performed, and give and receive gifts.

15. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The chandalas' responsibilities were outlined in the Manusmriti. They were expected to live beyond the hamlet, eating from discarded bowls and accumulating income from dogs and donkeys. They were to dress as the dead and eat from shattered plates, as well as wear black iron decorations and travel ceaselessly.

16. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Brahmanas devised two or three techniques for enforcing the varna order's norms: The varna order was created by the gods. They instructed rulers to make certain that these rules were observed in their realms. Brahmanas attempted to persuade people that their profession and social standing are dictated by their birth.

17. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Some historians think that the memory of an actual conflict amongst kinfolk was preserved in the narratives that were composed by charioteer-bards known as Sutas who generally accompanied Kshatriya warriors to the battlefield and composed poems celebrating their victories and other achievements.

18. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: From different inscriptions, the names of several generations of Satavahana emperors have been discovered. Every name begins with the prefix raja and finishes with the term 'puta,' a Prakrit word that means "son."

19. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Endogamy is the practise of marrying only within a given social group, religious denomination, caste, or ethnic group, and rejecting those from other groups as inappropriate for marriage or other intimate connections.

20. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Some of the Satavahana rulers were polygynous. An examination of the names of women who married Satavahana rulers indicates that many of them had names derived from gotras such as Gotama and Vasistha, their father's gotras. Satavahana rulers were identified through metronymics i.e., names derived from that of the mother.

21. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: From 1000 BCE onwards, Brahmanical practise classified people according to their gotra.

22. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Brahmanas considered some people as being outside the system, they also developed a sharper social divide by classifying certain social categories as "untouchable".

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: When their fathers died, patriliny allowed sons to claim their fathers' property (even the throne in the case of monarchs). After the death of the parents, the paternal inheritance was to be shared equally among the sons, according to Manusmriti. Women were denied access to these resources. As stridhana, women were allowed to keep the gifts they received on their wedding day.

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Endogamy, also called in-marriage, custom enjoining one to marry within one's own group.

When marriage to an outside group is mandated, it is referred to as exogamy.

Polygamy is defined as marriage between one person and two or more spouses simultaneously. It exists in two main forms: polygyny, where one man is married to several women, and polyandry, where one woman is married to several men.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: While males were crucial for patrilineal continuation, daughters were seen differently. They had no claim to the household's assets. At the same time, they were encouraged to marry into families that were not related to them. Exogamy (literally "marrying outside") meant that the lives of young girls and women from high-status households were frequently meticulously planned to ensure that they were married at the "proper" time and to the "appropriate" partner.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: V.S. Sukthankar, a well-known Indian Sanskritist, led one of the most extensive scholarship programmes, which began in 1919. The endeavour of developing a critical edition of the Mahabharata was started by a group of dozens of academics. Initially, this required gathering Sanskrit copies of the text from all throughout the country, written in a variety of scripts. Finally, they chose passages that looked to be consistent across all languages and published them in multiple volumes over 13,000 pages.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Satavahana rulers were identified through metronymics, i.e., names derived from that of the mother. For the first time, Sanskrit was used to write the Ramayana and the Mahabharata.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Sravasti was the capital city of Kosala. It is located in Eastern Uttar Pradesh (Ayodhya). Kosala's Ayodhya was a significant town. Ajatashatru, the monarch of the Magadha, integrated it into the Magadha.

Kaushambi was the capital city of Vatsa. It is located in Allahabad. Vamsa is another name for vatsa. Buddhism became the official religion under ruler Udayana.

Indraprastha was the capital city of Kuru. It is located in Thaneswar, Meerut and Southeastern Haryana. Kuru Mahajanapada reportedly took place in the vicinity of Kurukshetra. It changed its form of government to a republic.

In the Indian state of Uttar Pradesh, the city of Hastinapur is located in the Meerut district. Ancient Jain literature also make reference to Hastinapura, which is referred to as the Kuru Kingdom's capital in Hindu texts including the Mahabharata and the Puranas. Hastinapur is located on the right bank of the Ganga river.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Rules of Marriage (c. 600 BCE and 600 CE.):

- While sons were important for the continuity of the patrilineage, daughters were viewed rather differently within this framework.
- They had no claims to the resources of the household. Hence, statement 1 is correct.
- At the same time, marrying them into families outside the kin was considered desirable.
- This system, called exogamy (literally, marrying outside), meant that the lives of young girls and women belonging to families that claimed high status were often carefully regulated to ensure that they were married at the "right" time and to the "right" person. Hence, statement 2 is not correct.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- With the emergence of new towns, social life became more complex. People from near and far met to buy and sell their products and share ideas in the urban milieu.
- This may have led to a questioning of earlier beliefs and practices.
- Faced with this challenge, the Brahmanas responded by laying down codes of social behaviour in great detail which were meant to be followed by Brahmanas in particular and the rest of society in general.
- From c. 500 BCE, these norms were compiled in Sanskrit texts known as the Dharmasutras and Dharmashastras. The most important of such works, the Manusmriti, was compiled between c. 200 BCE and 200 CE.
- While the Brahmana authors of these texts claimed that their point of view had universal validity and that what they prescribed had to be obeyed by everybody, it is likely that real social relations were more complicated.
- Besides, given the regional diversity within the subcontinent and the difficulties of communication, the influence of Brahmanas was by no means all-pervasive.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

Major Textual Traditions	
c. 500 BCE	Ashtadhyayi of Panini, a work on Sanskrit grammar
c. 500-100 BCE	Early Buddhist texts including the Tripitaka (in Pali)
c. 200 BCE-200 CE	Manusmriti (in Sanskrit); composition and compilation of Tamil Sangam literature
c. 100 CE	Charaka and Sushruta Samhitas, works on medicine (in Sanskrit)

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- According to the Manusmriti, the paternal estate was to be divided equally amongst sons after the death of the parents, with a special share for the eldest.
- Women could not claim a share of these resources. However, women were allowed to retain the gifts they received on the occasion of their marriage as stridhana (literally, a woman's wealth).
- This could be inherited by their children, without the husband having any claim on it. At the same time, the Manusmriti warned women against hoarding family property, or even their own valuables, without the husband's permission.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Manusmriti declares seven ways for males to accumulate money and six ways for women to accumulate wealth. Inheritance, discovery, conquest, purchase, investment, work, and accepting gifts from

decent people are all options for males. Streedhana (at the time of marriage)/Bridal Processions, Tokens of Affection (whatever she received from her brother, mother, or father), and then a present received after marriage from her husband, again as a mark of affection.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Purusha Sukta reflects on marital ceremonies in the Rigveda's 10^{th} Mandala.

The Rig Veda, commonly known as the "first testament of mankind," is supposed to have been written between 1500 and 1200 B.C. There are 10,600 verses and 1,028 hymns in it. It is divided into ten books, or mandals, with each mandal including Suktas.

3. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The most important of various works written in ancient times to explain the Vedic Samhitas' difficult meaning and secret knowledge.

- Rigveda: Aitareya Brahmana, Kaushitaki/ Sankhayana Brahmana
- Shukla-Yajurveda: Shatapatha Brahmana
- Krishna-Yajurveda: Taittiriya Brahmana
- Samaveda: Tandya Brahmana, Shadvinsha Brahmana, Samavidhana Brahmana, Arsheya Brahmana, Daivata/Devatadhyaya Brahmana, Upanishad Brahmana, Samhitopanishad Brahmana, Vamsha Brahmana, Jaiminiya Brahmana.
- Atharvaveda: Gopatha Braman

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: After her kinsmen have been killed or maimed, a girl is forcibly abducted from her home and married. To persuade the bride to marry him, the groom will wage war with her family, defeat them, and carry her away. This is a base and wicked deed, according to the Manusmriti.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: UNESCO's "Memory of the World" Register 2007 has chosen the Rig Veda manuscripts for inclusion. UNESCO established the 'Memory of the Global' initiative to recognise key milestones in documentary heritage and register them in its 'Memory of the World Register' as world heritage.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Marriage is regarded as a sacred connection in Hinduism. Marriage is regarded as a significant sanskar. Different sorts of Hindu marriages are mentioned in many Hindu holy books and manuscripts. In Hinduism, there are eight main forms of marriages.

- A Brahma marriage is one in which a father gives his daughter to a knowledgeable man of the same caste. It is the highest form of Hindu marriage. Brahma marriage is the Hindu term for a father's daughter marrying a bridegroom from the same caste through religious procedures.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

4 THINKERS, BELIEF AND BUILDINGS

Introduction

- In this chapter we shall go on a long journey across a thousand years to read about philosophers and their attempts to understand the world they inhabited. We will also see how their ideas were compiled as oral and written texts as well as expressed in architecture and sculpture.

A Glimpse of Sanchi

- 19th-century Europeans were very interested in the stupa at Sanchi. In fact, the French sought Shahjehan Begum's permission to take away the eastern gateway, which was the best preserved, to be displayed in a museum in France.
- The rulers of Bhopal, Shahjehan Begum and her successor Sultan Jehan Begum, provided money for the preservation of the ancient site.
- One of the most important Buddhist centres, the discovery of Sanchi has vastly transformed our understanding of early Buddhism.
- Today it stands testimony to the successful restoration and preservation of a key archaeological site by the Archaeological Survey of India.

The Background: Sacrifice & Debate

- The mid-first millennium BCE is often regarded as a turning point in world history. It saw the emergence of thinkers such as Zarathustra in Iran, Kong Zi in China, Socrates, Plato and Aristotle in Greece, and Mahavira and Gautama Buddha, among many others, in India.
- This was also the time when new kingdoms and cities were developing and social and economic life was changing in a variety of ways in the Ganga valley.

The sacrificial tradition

- There were several pre-existing traditions of thought, religious belief and practice, including the early Vedic tradition, known from the Rigveda, compiled between c.1500 and 1000 BCE.
- The Rigveda consists of hymns in praise of a variety of deities, especially Agni, Indra and Soma.
- Many of these hymns were chanted when sacrifices were performed, where people prayed for cattle, sons, good health, long life, etc.
- More elaborate sacrifices, such as the rajasuya and ashvamedha, were performed by chiefs and kings who depended on Brahmana priests to conduct the ritual.
- Many ideas found in the Upanishads c. 6th century BCE onwards show that people were curious about the meaning of life, the possibility of life after death, and rebirth.
- Teachers travelled from place to place, trying to convince one another as well as laypersons, about the validity of their philosophy or the way the understood the world.
- Many of the teachers, including Mahavira and the Buddha, questioned the authority of the Vedas.

Jainism- Message from Mahavira

- The basic philosophy of the Jainas was already in existence in north India before the birth of Vardhamana, who came to be known as Mahavira, in the sixth century BCE.
- According to Jaina tradition, Mahavira was preceded by 23 other teachers or tirthankaras – literally, those who guide men and women across the river of existence.
- The most important idea in Jainism is that the entire world is animated: even stones, rocks and water have life. Non-injury to living beings, especially to humans, animals, plants and insects, is central to Jaina philosophy.
- In fact, the principle of ahimsa, emphasised within Jainism, has left its mark on Indian thinking as a whole.
- According to Jaina teachings, the cycle of birth and rebirth is shaped through karma. Asceticism and penance are required to free oneself from the cycle of karma.
- This can be achieved only by renouncing the world; therefore, monastic existence is a necessary condition of salvation.
- Jaina monks and nuns took five vows: to abstain from killing, stealing and lying; to observe celibacy; and to abstain from possessing property.

The spread of Jainism

- Gradually, Jainism spread to many parts of India. Like the Buddhists, Jaina scholars produced a wealth of literature in a variety of languages – Prakrit, Sanskrit and Tamil.
- Some of the earliest stone sculptures associated with religious traditions were produced by devotees of the Jaina tirthankaras, and have been recovered from several sites throughout the subcontinent.

The Buddha and the Quest for Enlightenment

- One of the most influential teachers of the time was the Buddha. Over the centuries, his message spread across the subcontinent and beyond through Central Asia to China, Korea and Japan, and through Sri Lanka, across the seas to Myanmar, Thailand and Indonesia.
- According to these traditions, Siddhartha, as the Buddha was named at birth, was the son of a chief of the Sakya clan.

- He had a sheltered upbringing within the palace, insulated from the harsh realities of life. Siddhartha explored several paths including bodily mortification which led him to a situation of near death.
- Abandoning these extreme methods, he meditated for several days and finally attained enlightenment.
- After this he came to be known as the Buddha or the Enlightened One. For the rest of his life, he taught dhamma or the path of righteous living.

The Teaching of Buddha

- The Buddha's teachings have been reconstructed from stories, found mainly in the Sutta Pitaka. According to Buddhist philosophy, the world is transient (anicca) and constantly changing; it is also soulless (anatta) as there is nothing permanent or eternal in it. Within this transient world, sorrow (dukkha) is intrinsic to human existence.
- It is by following the path of moderation between severe penance and self-indulgence that human beings can rise above these worldly troubles.
- The Buddha regarded the social world as the creation of humans rather than of divine origin. Therefore, he advised kings and gahapatis to be humane and ethical.
- Individual effort was expected to transform social relations. The Buddha emphasised individual agency and righteous action as the means to escape from the cycle of rebirth and attain self-realisation and nibbana, literally the extinguishing of the ego and desire-and thus end the cycle of suffering for those who renounced the world.

Followers of the Buddha

- Soon there grew a body of disciples of the Buddha and he founded a sangha, an organisation of monks who too became teachers of dhamma. As they lived on alms, they were known as bhikkhus.
- Initially, only men were allowed into the sangha, but later women also came to be admitted.
- According to Buddhist texts, this was made possible through the mediation of Ananda, one of the Buddha's dearest disciples, who persuaded him to allow women into the sangha.
- The Buddha's foster mother, Mahapajapati Gotami was the first woman to be ordained as a bhikkhuni. The Buddha's followers came from many social groups.
- They included kings, wealthy men and gahapatis, and also humbler folk: workers, slaves and craftspeople.
- Buddhism grew rapidly both during the lifetime of the Buddha and after his death, as it appealed to many people dissatisfied with existing religious practices and confused by the rapid social changes taking place around them.
- The importance attached to conduct and values rather than claims of superiority based on birth, the emphasis placed on metta (fellow feeling) and karuna (compassion), especially for those who were younger and weaker than oneself, were ideas that drew men and women to Buddhist teachings.

Stupas

- From earliest times, people tended to regard certain places as sacred. These included sites with special trees or unique rocks, or sites of awe inspiring natural beauty.
- These sites, with small shrines attached to them, were sometimes described as chaityas. Buddhist literature mentions several chaityas.
- It also describes places associated with the Buddha's life – where he was born (Lumbini), where he attained enlightenment (Bodh Gaya), where he gave his first sermon (Sarnath) and where he attained nibbana (Kusinagara). Gradually, each of these places came to be regarded as sacred.

Why were stupas built

- There were other places too that were regarded as sacred. This was because relics of the Buddha such as his bodily remains or objects used by him were buried there.
- These were mounds known as stupas. According to a Buddhist text known as the Ashokavadana, Ashoka distributed portions of the Buddha's relics to every important town and ordered the construction of stupas over them.
- By the 2nd century BCE, a number of stupas, including those at Bharhut, Sanchi and Sarnath had been built.

How were stupas built

- Inscriptions found on the railings and pillars of stupas record donations made for building and decorating them.
- Some donations were made by kings such as the Satavahanas; others were made by guilds, such as that of the ivory workers who financed part of one of the gateways at Sanchi.
- Hundreds of donations were made by women and men who mention their names, sometimes adding the name of the place from where they came, as well as their occupations and names of their relatives. Bhikkhus and bhikkhunis also contributed towards building these monuments.

The structure of the stupa

- The stupa originated as a simple semi-circular mound of earth, later called anda.
- Gradually, it evolved into a more complex structure, balancing round and square shapes. Above the anda was the harmika, a balcony like structure that represented the abode of the Gods.
- Arising from the harmika was a mast called the yashti, often surmounted by a chhatri or umbrella.
- Around the mound was a railing, separating the sacred space from the secular world.

Differences between Early & Later Stupas

- The early stupas at Sanchi and Bharhut were plain except for the stone railings, which resembled a bamboo or wooden fence, and the gateways, which were richly carved and installed at the four cardinal points.
- Later, the mound of the stupas came to be elaborately carved with niches and sculptures as at Amaravati, and Shahji-ki-Dheri in Peshawar (Pakistan).

Discovering Stupas

The fate of Amravati and Sanchi

- British official named Colin Mackenzie visited the site. Although he found several pieces of sculpture and made detailed drawings of them, these reports were never published.

- In 1854, Walter Elliot, the commissioner of Guntur, visited Amaravati and collected several sculpture panels and took them away to Madras. These came to be called the Elliot marbles after him.
  1. He also discovered the remains of the western gateway and came to the conclusion that the structure at Amaravati was one of the largest and most magnificent Buddhist stupas ever built.
  2. By the 1850s, some of the slabs from Amaravati had begun to be taken to different places: to the Asiatic Society of Bengal at Calcutta, to the India Office in Madras and some even to London.

Sculpture

- At first sight the sculpture seems to depict a rural scene, with thatched huts and trees. However, art historians who have carefully studied the sculpture at Sanchi identify it as a scene from the Vessantara Jataka.

Symbols of Worship

- According to hagiographies, the Buddha attained enlightenment while meditating under a tree. Many early sculptors did not show the Buddha in human form instead, they showed his presence through symbols.

Popular traditions

- Other sculptures at Sanchi were perhaps not directly inspired by Buddhist ideas. These include beautiful women swinging from the edge of the gateway, holding onto a tree. According to popular belief, this was a woman whose touch caused trees to flower and bear fruit.
- It is likely that this was regarded as an auspicious symbol and integrated into the decoration of the stupa.
- The shalabhanjika motif suggests that many people who turned to Buddhism enriched it with their own pre-Buddhist and even non-Buddhist beliefs, practices and ideas.
- Some of the recurrent motifs in the sculpture at Sanchi were evidently derived from these traditions. There are other images as well. For instance, some of the finest depictions of animals are found there.
- These animals include elephants, horses, monkeys and cattle.
- While the Jatakas contain several animal stories that are depicted at Sanchi, it is likely that many of these animals were carved to create lively scenes to draw viewers. Also, animals were often used as symbols of human attributes. Elephants, for example, were depicted to signify strength and wisdom.
- Another motif is that of a woman surrounded by lotuses and elephants, which seem to be sprinkling water on her as if performing an abhisheka or consecration.
- Interestingly, one of the earliest modern art historians, James Fergusson, considered Sanchi to be a centre of tree and serpent worship. He was not familiar with Buddhist literature most of which had not yet been translated and arrived at this conclusion by studying only the images on their own.

New Religious Traditions

- The development of Mahayana Buddhism:
  1. By the first century CE, there is evidence of changes in Buddhist ideas and practices. Early Buddhist teachings had given great importance to self-effort in achieving nibbana.
  2. Besides, the Buddha was regarded as a human being who attained enlightenment and nibbana through his own efforts. However, gradually the idea of a saviour emerged.
  3. It was believed that he was the one who could ensure salvation. Simultaneously, the concept of the Bodhisatta also developed.
  4. Bodhisattas were perceived as deeply compassionate beings who accumulated merit through their efforts but used this not to attain nibbana and thereby abandon the world, but to help others.
  5. The worship of images of the Buddha and Bodhisattas became an important part of this tradition. This new way of thinking was called Mahayana literally, the "great vehicle". Those who adopted these beliefs described the older tradition as Hinayana or the "lesser vehicle".

Vaishnavism and Shaivism

- Vaishnavism and Shaivism, in which there was growing emphasis on the worship of a chosen deity. In such worship the bond between the devotee and the god was visualised as one of love and devotion, or bhakti.
- In the case of Vaishnavism, cults developed around the various avatars or incarnations of the deity.
- Ten avatars were recognised within the tradition. These were forms that the deity was believed to have assumed in order to save the world whenever it was threatened by disorder and destruction because of the dominance of evil forces.
- It is likely that different avatars were popular in different parts of the country. Recognising each of these local deities as a form of Vishnu was one way of creating a more unified religious tradition.
- Some of these forms were represented in sculptures, as were other deities. Shiva, for instance, was symbolised by the linga, although he was occasionally represented in human form too.

Building temples

- Around the time that the stupas at sites such as Sanchi were acquiring their present form, the first temples to house images of gods and goddesses were also being built.
- The early temple was a small square room, called the garbhagriha, with a single doorway for the worshipper to enter and offer worship to the image.
- Gradually, a tall structure, known as the shikhara, was built over the central shrine.

TIMELINE: Major Religious Developments

c. 1500 – 1000 BCE - Early Vedic tradition
c. 1000 – 500 CBE - Later Vedic traditions
c. sixth century BCE - Early Upanishads; Jainism, Buddhism
c. third century BCE - First stupas
c. Second century - Development of Mahayana Buddhism, Vaishnavism, Shaivism and goddess cults
c. third century CE - Earliest temples

TIMELINE: Landmarks in the Discovery and Preservation of Early Monuments and Sculpture

Nineteenth Century

1814 - Founding of the Indian Museum, Calcutta

1834 - Publication of Essay on the Architecture of the Hindus by Ram Raja: Cunningham explores the stupa at Sarnath

1835-1842 - James Fergusson surveys major archaeological sites

1851 - Establishment of Government Museum, Madras

1854 - Alexander Cunningham publishes 'Bhilsa Topes', one of the earliest works on Sanchi

1878 - Rajendra Lala Mitra Publishes 'Bhuddas Gaya: The Heritage of sakya Muni'

1880 - H.H Cole appointed curator of Ancient Monuments

1888 - Passing of the Treasure Trove Act, Giving the governments the right to acquire all objects of archaeological interest

Twentieth century

1914 - John Marshall and Alfred Foucher Publish 'The Monuments of Sanchi'

1923 - John Marshall publishes the 'Conservation Manual'

1955 - Prime Minister Jawaharlal Nehru lays the foundation stone of the National Museum, New Delhi

1989 - Sanchi declared a World Heritage Site

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Who among the following was the first female bhikkhuni to be ordained?
(a) Mahapajapati Grishma
(b) Mahapajapati Bodhi
(c) Mahapajapati Gotami
(d) None of the above

2. The Sangha's internal function was based on which of the following Buddhist traditions?
(a) Grihapatis **(b)** Yajnas
(c) Jataka **(d)** Ganas

3. Which among the following are considered as the great teachers of Jainism?
(a) Vardhmanas **(b)** Tirthankars
(c) Jinas **(d)** Jataks

4. What was Buddha's gana's name?
(a) Sakya **(b)** Licchavi
(c) Mitra **(d)** Koliyas

5. According to Jainism, who was the last tirthankara?
(a) Ajita Kesakambalin **(b)** Makkhali Gosala
(c) Siddhartha **(d)** Mahavira

6. What was the name of the stupa's balcony-like structure?
(a) Anda **(b)** Harmika
(c) Yashti **(d)** Chhatri

7. There were certain sites, regarded by people as sacred. One of these sites had small shrines attached to them. Such sites were known as
(a) Stupas **(b)** Harmika
(c) Mandapa **(d)** Chaityas

8. In which of the following century, Indo-Greek rulers had established kingdoms in the cities of Taxila and Peshawar?
(a) 2^{nd} BCE **(b)** 4^{th} BCE
(c) 5^{th} BCE **(d)** 3^{rd} BCE

9. Who provided money for the preservation of the Sanchi Stupa?
(a) John Marshall
(b) Begums of Bhopal
(c) Alexander Cunningham
(d) None of the above

10. A form of Hinduism within which Vishnu was worshipped as the principal deity is known as _____
(a) Brahmanism **(b)** Vaishnavism
(c) Shaivism **(d)** Bhagavatism

11. What does the sign of the "empty seat" represent?
(a) An event in the life of Buddha
(b) First Sermon of the Buddha
(c) Meditation of the Buddha
(d) Wisdom of the Buddha

12. In literary traditions, what has been described in Sanskrit as a Shalabhanjika?

(a) This was the sculpture of a woman whose touch caused trees to flower and bear fruit.
(b) This was a painting of animals that were carved to create lively scenes to draw viewers.
(c) Motif of a woman surrounded by lotuses and elephants, which seem to be sprinkling water on her as if performing an abhisheka.
(d) Motifs of serpents on several pillars at Sanchi.

13. Therigatha is a collection of verses composed by bhikkhunis. It is a part of which of the following texts?
(a) Abhidhamma Pitaka **(b)** Sutta Pitaka
(c) Dipavamsa **(d)** None of the above

14. Where did Lord Buddha attain true enlightenment?
(a) Lumbini **(b)** Kushinagara
(c) Sarnath **(d)** Bodhgaya

15. Ashoka donated pieces of the Buddha's relics to each important town and ordered stupas to be built over them, according to which Buddhist text?
(a) Ashokavadana
(b) Mahaparinibbana Sutta
(c) Sutta Pitaka
(d) Vessantara Jataka

16. Which among the following is the most important idea in Jainism?
(a) Observing celibacy
(b) Entire world is animated
(c) Belief in non-violence
(d) Asceticism and penance are required to free oneself from the cycle of Karma.

17. Who was the author of Buddha Charita?
(a) Asvaghosha **(b)** Nagarjuna
(c) Nagasen **(d)** Vasumitra

18. Which of the following Indian philosophical traditions upholds the Charvakism, Ajivika, Jainism, and Buddhism ideologies?
(a) Unorthodox System of Indian Philosophy
(b) Orthodox System of Indian Philosophy
(c) Both (a) and (b)
(d) Neither (a) nor (b)

19. Two great Buddhist universities of Nalanda and Vikramshila were patronised by which of the following kings?
(a) Palas **(b)** Paramaras
(c) Cheras **(d)** Cholas

20. During the reign of which of the following ruler Buddhism was introduced to Nepal?
(a) Samudragupta **(b)** Ashoka
(c) Chandragupta **(d)** Harshavardhana

21. In Jainism, what is the ultimate objective of education?
(a) Voluntary promotion of human welfare
(b) Renunciation
(c) Non-violence
(d) Moksha

22. According to Svetamber tradition, which of the following Tirthankaras was a lady?
(a) Sumatinatha **(b)** Shantinatha
(c) Arishtanemi **(d)** Mallinatha

23. Which of the following factors contributed to Buddhism's popularity in China?
(a) The patronage of China's ruling dynasties aided the cause of Buddhism.
(b) There were no competing religions at the time of Buddhism's introduction to China.
(c) The writings of people like Mou-tseu instilled confidence in the minds of educated Chinese.
(d) The immigrant Indian Buddhists and their Chinese disciples led a life of purity that drew the Chinese to Buddhism.

24. Which of the following Tirthankars is also known as Prajapati, Adibrahma, and Aadinath in Jain literature?
(a) Rishabhnath **(b)** Ajitnath
(c) Sambhav nath **(d)** Abhnindan Nath

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. With reference to Jainism, consider the following statements:
1. Rishabhdev was the founder of Jainism.
2. Lord Mahavira was Jainism's 24th Tirthankar.
3. In Angar, Jainism teachings are imparted.
4. To spread its massage, Jainism established Sanghas.
Which of the given statements is/are correct?
(a) 1, 2, 3, 4 **(b)** 1, 2 and 3 only
(c) 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 3 and 4 only

2. Consider the following Buddhist Sites:
1. Lumbini **2.** Sanchi
3. Amaravati **4.** Kushinagara
Arrange the Buddhist sites mentioned above in the correct order from west to east direction.
(a) 4-3-2-1 **(b)** 2-3-4-1
(c) 3-4-1-2 **(d)** 2-3-1-4

3. Consider the following statements regarding Jainism:
1. The basic philosophy of the Jainas came into existence in India after the birth of Mahavira.
2. Jaina scholars produced a wealth of literature in a variety of languages such as Prakrit, Sanskrit and Tamil.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

4. Which of the following statements about Buddhism is correct?
1. Sariputta, Moggallanna, Ananda, Kassapa, and Upali were Buddha's most significant followers.
2. Buddism was accepted by kings such as Prasenjit of Kosala and Bimbisara, as well as Ajatshatru of Magadha.
3. Buddha avoided pointless debates about metaphysical issues such as the existence of a god, the soul, karma, rebirth, and so on.
Select the answer from the codes given below:
(a) 2 and 3 **(b)** 1 and 2
(c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

5. Which of the following is not correct according to Buddhist philosophy?

1. The world is transient and constantly changing
2. Sorrow is not intrinsic to human beings
3. Social world is not the creation of the divine origin

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

(a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 3 only

6. Consider the following statements regarding Ajanta Caves:

1. Ajanta is a series of rock-cut caves in the Sahyadri ranges.
2. There are a total of 29 caves all of which are Buddhist.
3. The Ajanta caves were inscribed by the Buddhist monks, under the patronage of the Vakataka kings, specifically Harishena.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** 3 only

7. There are nine truths or realities, according to Jainism's religious philosophy (Nav-tattva). Which of the following are included in the group?

1. Soul (jiva) 2. Non-soul (ajiva)
3. Merit (punya) 4. Sin or Demerit (papa)

Select the answer from the codes given below:

(a) 2, 3 and 4 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3 only
(c) 1, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4

8. Which of the following is/are correct regarding Mahayana Buddhism?

1. It believes that Buddha was a human being who attained enlightenment and nibbana through his own efforts.
2. Buddhist schools embedded in China, Korea and Japan belong to the Mahayana tradition.
3. The worship of images of the Buddha and Bodhisattvas became an important part of this tradition.
4. It is the followers of Mahayana Buddhism that described the older tradition of Buddhism as Hinayana.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

(a) 1 and 4 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** 2, 3 and 4

9. Which of the following statements are correct with regard to the Second Buddhist Council?

1. It was held in 383 BC.
2. The idea of this council was to settle a dispute on Vinaya Pitaka, the code of discipline.
3. It was held under the patronage of King Kalasoka and the presidency of Sabakami.
4. It was held at Pataliputra.

Select the answer from the codes given below:

(a) 2, 3 and 4 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3 only
(c) 1, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4

10. Consider the following statements:

1. The earliest temples of gods/goddesses consisted of only a small square room called the Garbhagriha and did not have the Shikharas.
2. The tradition of building temple caves out of rocks is as old as the third century BCE (during the reign of Ashoka).

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

11. Consider the following religious developments:

1. Building earliest temples
2. Emergence of Jainism
3. Building first stupas
4. Emergence of Vaishnavism

Which of the following is the correct chronological sequence of the above religious developments?

(a) 4-3-2-1 **(b)** 2-3-4-1
(c) 3-4-1-2 **(d)** 2-3-1-4

12. Consider the following pairs:

Symbols used by Sculptors to represent Buddha	Meaning
Empty seat	Mahaparinibbana (Discourse on the Final Nirvana)
Wheel	Meditation of Buddha
Stupa	First sermon delivered by Buddha

Which of the pairs given above is/are correctly matched?

(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 only **(d)** None of the above

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. 'Harmika', a balcony-like structure that represented the abode of God was part of which architecture? **[DSSSB LDC]**

(a) Buddhist **(b)** Mauryan
(c) Mughal **(d)** Jainism

2. Mahavira, who was known in Pali literature as Nigantha Nataputta, founded a religion called _____. **[SSC CGL]**

(a) Sikhism **(b)** Zoroastrianism
(c) Bahá'í Faith **(d)** Jainism

3. What does Patimokkha stand for in Buddhism? **[UPRVUNL]**

(a) The questions of king Menander
(b) A description of Mahayana Buddhism
(c) A description of Hinayana Buddhism
(d) The rules of the Sangha

4. Ashoka was much influenced by Buddhist monk called **[ACC]**

(a) Upagupta **(b)** Vasubandhu
(c) Ambhi **(d)** Asvagosha

5. Which of the following is not one of the animals carved on the Sarnath Pillar? **[SSC]**

(a) Bull **(b)** Lion
(c) Camel **(d)** Horse

6. Which of the following Minor Rock Edicts of Ashoka describes the Conquest of Kalinga by Ashoka? **[UGC NET]**
   (a) No. XIII **(b)** No. X
   (c) No. XI **(d)** No. XII
7. Which of the following are beliefs of Buddhism? **[MPPSC]**
   1. The world is full of sorrows.,
   2. People suffer on account of desires.,
   3. If desires are conquered, nirvana will be attained.,
   4. The existence of God and Soul must be recognised.
   Select the correct statements using the code given below:
   (a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3 only **(d)** 2, 3 and 4 only
8. Which of the following are causes for the Decline of Buddhism in India? **[UPSC]**
   1. The revival of Brahmanism and the rise of Bhagavatism led to the fall of popularity of Buddhism.
   2. The use of Pali, the language of the masses as the language of Buddhism was given up from the 1st century A.D.
   3. After the birth of Mahayana Buddhism, the practice of idol worship and making offerings led to the deterioration of moral standards.
   Select the answer from the codes given below:
   (a) 2 and 3 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
9. It is believed that soon after the Buddha's death a council was called at Rajagriha where: **[UPSC]**
   1. Upali recited the Vinaya Pitaka (rules of the order).
   2. Ananda recited the Sutta Pitaka (Buddha's sermons or doctrines and ethics).
   Which of the above statement(s) is/are correct?
   (a) 2 only **(b)** 1 only
   (c) 1 and 2 Both **(d)** None
10. Which one of the following statements is correct? **[UPSC]**
    (a) Ajanta Caves lie in the gorge of Waghora river.
    (b) Sanchi Stupa lies in the gorge of Chambal river.
    (c) Pandavlena Cave shrines lie in the gorge of Narmada river.
    (d) Amaravati Stupa lies in the gorge of Godavari river.

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Buddha's stepmother and maternal aunt (mother's sister) was Mahapajapati Gotami. She is credited as becoming the first woman to seek women's ordination. She was extremely fortunate in receiving direct ordination from the Buddha and becoming the first female bhikkhuni.

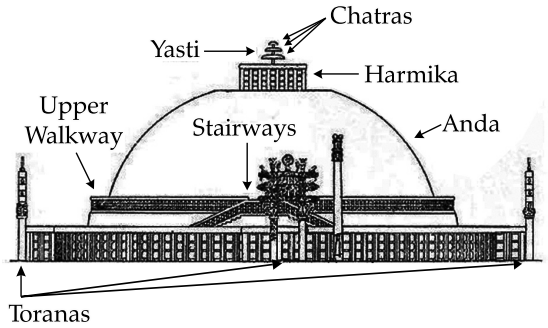
2. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The Buddhist sangha's internal workings were founded on the ganas and sanghas traditions.

3. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: A Tirthankara is a dharma (righteous path) saviour and spiritual teacher in Jainism. The word tirthankara refers to the founder of a tirtha, which is a navigable path through an endless sea of births and deaths known as the sasra.

4. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Gautama Buddha's original name was Siddhartha. Siddhartha Gautama was born approximately 2500 years ago in Lumbini, Kapilvastu, Nepal. He belonged to the Sakya gana and was a kshatriya.

5. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: There were twenty-four Tirthankaras in Jainism. The first Tirthankara was Lord Rishabha, and the last Tirthankara was Lord Mahavira.

6. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Buddhist architecture included the 'Harmika,' a balcony-like structure that portrayed God's residence.



7. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: From earliest times, people tended to regard certain places as sacred. These included sites with special trees or unique rocks, or sites of awe-inspiring natural beauty. These sites, with small shrines attached to them, were sometimes described as Chaityas.

8. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: From 180 BC to roughly 10 AD, the Indo-Greek kingdom (also known as the Graeco-Indian kingdom) ruled over various regions of the northwest and northern Indian subcontinent, and was ruled by a succession of more than thirty Greek rulers, many of whom were at odds with one another. In 180 BC, the Greco-Bactrian king Demetrius invaded India and formed the kingdom.

9. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The rulers of Bhopal, Shahjehan Begum and her successor Sultan Jehan Begum, provided money for the preservation of the ancient site.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Vaishnavism cult sprang up around the deity Vishnu's numerous avatars or incarnations. Within Hindu tradition, ten avatars of Vishnu have been identified.

11. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The empty seat was meant to represent the Buddha's meditation, and the stupa was supposed to represent the mahaparinibbana. The wheel was another often used symbol. This referred to the Buddha's first sermon, which he delivered in Sarnath.

12. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: There were many sculptures at Sanchi that were perhaps not directly inspired by Buddhist ideas. These include beautiful women swinging from the edge of the gateway, holding onto a tree. Initially, scholars were a bit intrigued about this image, which seemed to have little to do with renunciation. However, after examining other literary traditions, they realised that it could be a representation of what is described in Sanskrit as a Shalabhanjika.

According to popular belief, this was a woman whose touch caused trees to flower and bear fruit.

13. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Therigatha - This unique Buddhist text, part of the Sutta Pitaka, is a collection of verses composed by bhikkhunis. It provides an insight into women's social and spiritual experiences.

14. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Buddha left his palace with a charioteer and his beloved horse at the age of 29, abandoning his lavish life in quest of the truth. He roamed for six years before attaining enlightenment or Nirvana under a peepal tree in Gaya, Bihar, at the age of 35.

15. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: According to a Buddhist text known as the Asokavadana, Ashoka distributed portions of the Buddha's relics to every important town and ordered the construction of stupas over them

16. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Most important idea of Jainism:

- The entire world is animated and hence Ahimsa is emphasized.
- Non injury to living beings

17. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Asvaghosa's Buddha Charita (Acts of the Buddha) is a Sanskrit Mahakavya (epic poem) on the life of Gautama Buddha written in the early second century CE.

18. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Unorthodox systems of Indian Philosophy uphold the ideology of Charvakism, Ajivika, Jainism and Buddhism.

19. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In the ancient kingdom of Magadha, Nalanda was a Mahavihara, or huge Buddhist monastery. They supposedly chastised King Harsha for patronising Nalanda, which was revered and cherished by the Palas under the Gupta dynasty. Vikramashila, along with Nalanda, was one of India's two most important centres of learning during the Pala Empire.

20. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: In the second century BCE, Emperor Ashoka of the Maurya Empire erected a pillar in Lumbini, the Buddha's birthplace. Ashoka dispatched missionaries to Nepal following the Third Buddhist Council.

21. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Moksha, according to Jainism, is the ultimate and noblest goal that a soul should aim for. In reality, it is the only goal that a person should have; all other goals are incompatible with the true essence of the soul. All souls can achieve this state with the correct perspective, knowledge, and effort. Thus, Jainism is also known as mokamrga, or "liberation route."

22. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: According to Svetambaras, Mallinath, the 19th Tirthankara, was a woman. They also believe that women can achieve Moksha.

23. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Buddhism became popular in China for a variety of reasons. Buddhism brought the Chinese people together as a religious community. During the Warring States period, this union helped the Chinese endure a period of violence and upheaval. A connection to exchange networks is also available. As trade along the Silk Road expanded, so did ideas and belief systems. There were no competing religions at the time of Buddhism's introduction to China.

24. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In Jainism, Rishabhnath is the first Tirthankara. In Jain cosmology, he was the first of twenty-four teachers in the current half-cycle of time, and he was known as a "ford creator" because his teachings helped people navigate the sea of endless rebirths and deaths (saṃsāra). He is also known as Adishvara (first ishvara), Yugadideva (deva of yuga), Prathamaraja (first king), and Nebheya in Jainism, which translates to "First (Adi) Lord (natha)."

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

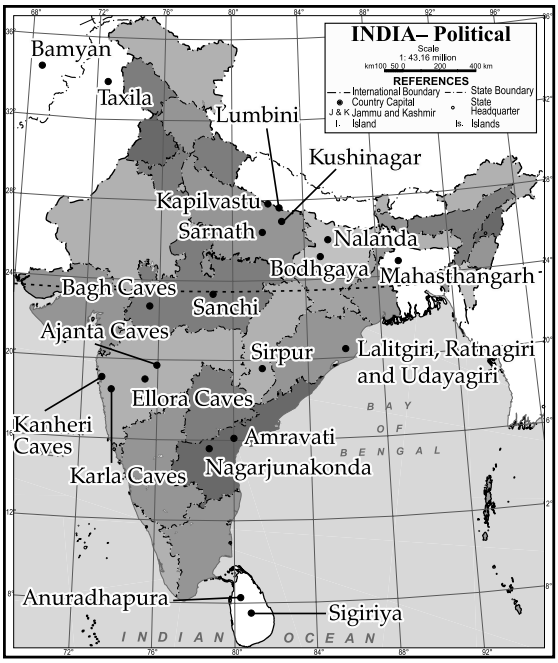
1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Vardhamana Mahavira was the Jain tradition's 24th Tirthankara.

Following his attainment of Kevala Jnana, Mahavira taught that spiritual emancipation requires observation of the vows of ahimsa (nonviolence), satya (truth), asteya (non-stealing), brahmacharya (chastity), and aparigraha (non-attachment). He taught the syadvada and nayavada principles of Anekantavada (many-sided reality). Indrabhuti Gautama (his principal pupil) codified Mahavira's teachings as the Jain Agamas.

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:



Madhya Pradesh's Raisen District is where Sanchi is situated.

The Amarvati Stupa, also known as the Great Stupa at Amaravathi, is located in the Indian state of Andhra Pradesh in the hamlet of Amaravathi.

The Buddhist circuit is a path that travels from Lumbini in Nepal to Kushinagar in Uttar Pradesh, India, the place where the Buddha passed away. Kushinagar is revered by Buddhist pilgrims as the place where Gautama Buddha is said to have given his final lecture and obtained salvation, or "Mahaparinirvana."

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The basic philosophy of the Jainas was already in existence in north India before the birth of Vardhamana, who came to be known as Mahavira, in the sixth century BCE.

Gradually, Jainism spread to many parts of India.

Like the Buddhists, Jaina scholars produced a wealth of literature in a variety of languages – Prakrit, Sanskrit and Tamil.

4. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The practical difficulties that man faces were Buddha's main focus. Buddhism was more of a social revolution than a religious one. It taught a system of practical ethics and established the social equality principle.

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: According to Buddhist philosophy, the world is transient (anicca) and constantly changing; it is also soulless (anatta) as there is nothing permanent or eternal in it. Within this transient world, sorrow (dukkha) is intrinsic to human existence.

The Buddha regarded the social world as the creation of humans rather than of divine origin.

Therefore, he advised kings and gahapatis to be humane and ethical.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Ajanta is a series of rock-cut caves in the Sahyadri ranges (Western Ghats) on Waghora river near Aurangabad in Maharashtra.

There are a total of 29 caves (all Buddhist) of which 25 were used as Viharas or residential caves while 4 were used as Chaitya or prayer halls.

The caves were developed in the period between 200 B.C. to 650 A.D.

The Ajanta caves were inscribed by the Buddhist monks, under the patronage of the Vakataka kings – Harishena being a prominent one.

Reference of the Ajanta caves can be found in the travel accounts of Chinese Buddhist travellers Fa Hien (during the reign of Chandragupta II; 380- 415 CE) and Hieun Tsang (during the reign of emperor Harshavardhana; 606 - 647 CE).

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The 9 truths of jainism are: Jiva (soul), Ajiva (non-living matter), Punya (results of good deeds), Pap (results of bad deeds), Asrava (influx of karmas), Samvar (stoppage of karmas), Bandh (bondage of karmas), Nirjara (eradication of karmas), and Moksha (liberation).

8. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: By the first century CE, there is evidence of changes in Buddhist ideas and practices. Early Buddhist teachings had given great importance to self-effort in achieving nibbana.

Besides, in the earlier teachings, Buddha was regarded as a human being who attained enlightenment and nibbana through his own efforts.

However, gradually the idea of a saviour emerged. It was believed that he was the one who could ensure salvation. This new way of thinking was called Mahayana.

It believes in the heavenliness of Buddha and Idol worship of Buddha.

Simultaneously, the concept of the Bodhisattva also developed who were perceived as deeply compassionate beings who accumulated merit through their efforts but used this not to attain nibbana and thereby abandon the world, but to help others.

Those who adopted these beliefs described the older tradition as Hinayana or the "lesser vehicle".

Supporters of Mahayana regarded other Buddhists as followers of Hinayana. However, followers of the older tradition described themselves as theravadins, that is, those who followed the path of old, respected teachers, the theras.

Mahayana Buddhism originated in northern India and Kashmir and then spread east into Central Asia, East Asia and some areas of Southeast Asia.

Buddhist schools embedded in China, Korea, Tibet and Japan belong to the Mahayana tradition.

9. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Second Buddhist Council was held under the patronage of the Sisunaga dynasty's King Kalasoka. It took place in 383 BC, a century after the Buddha's death. It took place in Vaishali. The council was chaired by Sabakami. The major goal was to explore ten issues of contention in the Vinaypitaka.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Around the time that the stupas at sites such as Sanchi were acquiring their present form, the first temples to house images of gods and goddesses were also being built.

The early temple was only a small square room, called the garbhagriha, with a single doorway for the worshipper to enter and offer worship to the image. Gradually, a tall structure, known as the shikhara, was built over the central shrine.

Temple walls were often decorated with sculpture. Later temples became far more elaborate – with assembly halls, huge walls and gateways, and arrangements for supplying water.

One of the unique features of early temples was that some of these were hollowed out of huge rocks, as artificial caves.

The tradition of building artificial caves was an old one. Some of the earliest of these were constructed in the third century BCE on the orders of Ashoka for renouncers who belonged to the Ajivika sect.

11. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

Major Religious Developments	
c. 1500-1000 BCE	Early Vedic traditions
c. 1000-500 BCE	Later Vedic traditions
c. sixth century BCE	Early Upanishads; Jainism, Buddhism
c. third century BCE	First stupas
c. second century BCE onwards	Development of Mahayana Buddhism, Vaishnavism, Shaivism and goddess cults
c. third century CE	Earliest temples

12. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Art historians had to acquire familiarity with hagiographies of the Buddha in order to understand Buddhist sculpture. According to hagiographies, the Buddha attained enlightenment while meditating under a tree.

Many early sculptors did not show the Buddha in human form – instead, they showed his presence through symbols.

The empty seat was meant to indicate the meditation of the Buddha.

Another frequently used symbol was the wheel. This stood for the first sermon of the Buddha, delivered at Sarnath.

The stupa was meant to represent the mahaparinibbana (Discourse on the Final Nirvana).

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Buddhist architecture included the 'Harmika,' a balcony-like structure that portrayed God's residence. A square railing or fence that surrounded the mound of soil, identifying it as a sacred burial ground, inspired the Harmika. The Great Stupa at Sanchi, central India, was one of the first stupas built, and it served as an architectural model for all that followed. The world-famous stupa, which was built in brick (the same material used in Sri Lanka) by the Mauryan ruler Ashoka in the 3rd century BCE, was later extended in stone to twice its original size.

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Mahavira founded a religion called Jainism. He was the 24^{th} Tirthankar and is considered to be the real founder of Jainism. The symbol of Mahavira is lion and Chandrabala is his discipline.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Within the Buddha's lifetime, the monastic order of monks, and later the order of nuns, was established. The Vinaya Pitaka recounts the founding of the Sangha as well as the rules that ruled it. The Sutta Vibhanga and Khandaka, as well as an appendix known as Parivara, make up the Vinaya Pitaka. The Patimokkha, a series of monastic precepts, is found in the Sutta Vibhanga, with 227 for monks and 311 for nuns. The Patimokkha was read by monks in congregations during the bimonthly

Uposatha ceremony, which took place on full moon and new moon days.

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Upagupta was a Buddhist monk. He was the spiritual teacher of Mauryan monarch Ashoka, according to various stories in the Sanskrit text Ashokavadana, and Ashoka was greatly affected by him.

5. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The horse, the Lion and the Elephant all in the moving position are being placed in between the Chakras. These could symbolize Bull, Lion, Horse and Elephant rolling the Chakras. Pillar was built by Ashoka to mark the site of Buddha's first sermon.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Minor Rock Edicts of Ashoka describes the Conquest of Kalinga by Ashoka in rock Edict XIII.

7. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Following the Buddha's death, several Buddhist schools in India created philosophical studies and systems of inquiry, which later expanded throughout Asia. Philosophical argumentation and meditation are both part of the Buddhist path. The world is full of sufferings, want is the root cause of sorrow, if desire is mastered, all miseries may be erased, and desire can be removed by following the eight-fold path are the four Noble Truths of Buddhism.

8. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Buddhists began to adopt Sanskrit, the language of the elite. Moreover, the attack of the Huns in the 5^{th} and 6^{th} centuries and the Turkish invaders in the 12^{th} century destroyed the monasteries. All these factors contributed to the decline of Buddhism in India.

9. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: First Buddhist Council was held in 400 BC soon after the mahaparinirvana of the Buddha, around 400 BC under the patronage of king Ajatshatru with the monk Mahakasyapa presiding, at Rajgriha, in the Sattapani Cave. During the council, Upali recited the Vinaya Pitaka on the rules of order and Anand recited the Sutta Pitaka, collection of the Buddha's sermons.

10. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Ajanta caves are located near Ajanta village in Maharashtra's Aurangabad district, in the Waghora river valley.

Sanchi is located west of the Betwa River on an elevated plateau.

The Pandu-lena caves are a series of ancient rock-cut sculptures near the Gomai River.

Nasik Caves, Tirthankar Leni, Panch Pandav, or Pandav Leni Jain cave are all names for Pandu-leni cave. The term "Pandavleni" that is often given to the Nasik Caves has nothing to do with the Mahabharata epic's Pandavas.

The Amravati stupa is located in the Krishna River gorges.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

5 THROUGH THE EYES OF TRAVELLERS

Al Biruni

- Al-Biruni was born in 973, in Khwarizm in present day Uzbekistan. It was an important centre of learning, and Al-Biruni received the best education available at the time. He was well versed in several languages: Syriac, Arabic, Persian, Hebrew and Sanskrit.
- Although he did not know Greek, he was familiar with the works of Plato and other Greek philosophers, having read them in Arabic translations.
- In 1017, when Sultan Mahmud invaded Khwarizm, he took several scholars and poets back to his capital, Ghazni; Al-Biruni was one of them. He arrived in Ghazni as a hostage, but gradually developed a liking for the city, where he spent the rest of his life until his death at the age of 70.
- It was in Ghazni that Al-Biruni developed an interest in India.
- When the Punjab became a part of the Ghaznavid empire, contacts with the local population helped create an environment of mutual trust and understanding.
- Al-Biruni spent years in the company of Brahmana priests and scholars, learning Sanskrit, and studying religious and philosophical texts.
- Al-Biruni depended almost exclusively on the works of Brahmanas, often citing passages from the Vedas, the Puranas, the Bhagavad Gita, the works of Patanjali, the Manusmriti, etc., to provide an understanding of Indian society.

The Kitab-ul-Hind

- Al-Biruni's Kitab-ul-Hind, written in Arabic, is simple and lucid. It is a voluminous text, divided into 80 chapters on subjects such as religion and philosophy, festivals, astronomy, alchemy, manners and customs, social life, weights and measures, iconography, laws and metrology.
- Al-Biruni, who wrote in Arabic, probably intended his work for peoples living along the frontiers of the subcontinent.
- He was familiar with translations and adaptations of Sanskrit, Pali and Prakrit texts into Arabic – these ranged from fables to works on astronomy and medicine.

Making Sense of an Alien World: Al-Beruni and Sanskritic Tradition

- Al-Biruni was aware of the problems inherent in the task he had set himself.

Several "barriers"

- The first amongst these was language. According to him, Sanskrit was so different from Arabic and Persian that ideas and concepts could not be easily translated from one language into another.
- The second barrier he identified was the difference in religious beliefs and practices.
- The self-absorption and consequent insularity of the local population according to him, constituted the third barrier.

Al-Biruni's description of the caste system

- He tried to explain the caste system by looking for parallels in other societies.
- He noted that in ancient Persia, four social categories were recognised:
  1. knights and princes;
  2. monks, fire-priests and lawyers;
  3. physicians, astronomers and other scientists; and
  4. peasants and artisans.
- In spite of his acceptance of the Brahmanical description of the caste system, Al-Biruni disapproved of the notion of pollution.

Ibn Battuta

- He was a Moroccan traveller who was born in Tangier into one of the most respectable and educated families known for their expertise in Islamic religious law or shari'a.
- He considered experience gained through travels to be a more important source of knowledge than books.
- Travelling overland through Central Asia, Ibn Battuta reached Sind in 1333. He had heard about Muhammad bin Tughlaq, the Sultan of Delhi, and lured by his reputation as a generous patron of arts and letters, set off for Delhi, passing through Multan and Uch.
- The Sultan was impressed by his scholarship, and appointed him the qazi or judge of Delhi. He remained in that position for several years, until he fell out of favour and was thrown into prison.
- Book written by Ibn Battuta: Ibn Battuta's book of travels, called Rihla, written in Arabic, provides extremely rich and interesting details about the social and cultural life in the subcontinent in the fourteenth century.

Ibn Battuta and the Excitement of the Unfamiliar

- By the time Ibn Battuta arrived in Delhi in the 14th century, the subcontinent was part of a global network of communication that stretched from China in the east to north-west Africa and Europe in the west.
- Some of the best examples of Ibn Battuta's strategies of representation are evident in the ways in which he described the coconut and the paan, two kinds of plant produce that were completely unfamiliar to his audience.

Ibn Battuta and Indian cities

- Ibn Battuta found cities in the subcontinent full of exciting opportunities for those who had the necessary drive, resources and skills.
- They were densely populated and prosperous, except for the occasional disruptions caused by wars and invasions.
- It appears from Ibn Battuta's account that most cities had crowded streets and bright and colourful markets that were stacked with a wide variety of goods.
- Ibn Battuta described Delhi as a vast city, with a great population, the largest in India. Daulatabad in Maharashtra was no less, and easily rivalled Delhi in size.

Bazaars

- The bazaars were not only places of economic transactions, but also the hub of social and cultural activities.
- Most bazaars had a mosque and a temple, and in some of them at least, spaces were marked for public performances by dancers, musicians and singers.

Agriculture & Trade

- Ibn Battuta found Indian agriculture very productive because of the fertility of the soil, which allowed farmers to cultivate two crops a year.
- He also noted that the subcontinent was well integrated with inter-Asian networks of trade and commerce, with Indian manufactures being in great demand in both West Asia and Southeast Asia, fetching huge profits for artisans and merchants.
- Indian textiles, particularly cotton cloth, fine muslins, silks, brocade and satin, were in great demand.
- Ibn Battuta informs us that certain varieties of fine muslin were so expensive that they could be worn only by the nobles and the very rich.

Francios Bernier- A Doctor with a difference

- Once the Portuguese arrived in India in about 1500, a number of them wrote detailed accounts regarding Indian social customs and religious practices.
- A few of them, such as the Jesuit Roberto Nobili, even translated Indian texts into European languages. Among the best known of the Portuguese writers is Duarte Barbosa, who wrote a detailed account of trade and society in south India.
- Some of these travellers, like the Italian doctor Manucci, never returned to Europe, and settled down in India.
- François Bernier: A Frenchman, was a doctor, political philosopher and historian. He belonged to a different intellectual tradition.
- His idea seems to have been to influence policy-makers and the intelligentsia to ensure that they made what he considered to be the "right" decisions.
- Bernier's 'Travels in the Mughal Empire' is marked by detailed observations, critical insights and reflection.
- His account contains discussions trying to place the history of the Mughals within some sort of a universal framework.
- He constantly compared Mughal India with contemporary Europe, generally emphasising the superiority of the latter.
- His representation of India works on the model of binary opposition, where India is presented as the inverse of Europe. He also ordered the perceived differences hierarchically, so that India appeared to be inferior to the Western world.
- He was in India for twelve years, from 1656 to 1668, and was closely associated with the Mughal court, as a physician to Prince Dara Shukoh, the eldest son of Emperor Shah Jahan, and later as an intellectual and scientist, with Danishmand Khan, an Armenian noble at the Mughal court.
- He travelled to several parts of the country, and compared "East" and "West".
- He dedicated his major writing to Louis XIV, the king of France, and many of his other works were written in the form of letters to influential officials and ministers.

The Question of Landownership

- According to Bernier, one of the fundamental differences between Mughal India and Europe was the lack of private property in land in the former.
- According to him, Mughal Empire the emperor owned all the land and distributed it among his nobles, and that this had disastrous consequences for the economy and society.
- This perception was not unique to Bernier, but is found in most travellers' accounts of the 16^{th} and 17^{th} centuries.
- Bernier described Indian society as consisting of undifferentiated masses of impoverished people, subjugated by a small minority of a very rich and powerful ruling class.
- Between the poorest of the poor and the richest of the rich, there was no social group or class worth the name. Bernier confidently asserted: "There is no middle state in India."
- The French philosopher Montesquieu, for instance, used this account to develop the idea of oriental despotism, according to which rulers in Asia enjoyed absolute authority over their subjects, who were kept in conditions of subjugation and poverty, arguing that all land belonged to the king and that private property was non-existent.
- According to this view, everybody, except the emperor and his nobles, barely managed to survive. This idea was further developed as the concept of the Asiatic mode of production by Karl Marx in the nineteenth century.
- He argued that in India and other Asian countries, before colonialism, surplus was appropriated by the state.
- This led to the emergence of a society that was composed of a large number of autonomous and (internally) egalitarian village communities.
- The imperial court presided over these village communities, respecting their autonomy as long as the flow of surplus was unimpeded. This was regarded as a stagnant system.

A more Complex Social Reality

- Manufactures were, consequently, everywhere in decline. At the same time, he conceded that vast quantities of the world's precious metals flowed into

India, as manufactures were exported in exchange for gold and silver.
- Merchants often had strong community or kin ties, and were organised into their own caste-cum occupational bodies.
- In western India these groups were called mahajans, and their chief, the sheth. In urban centres such as Ahmedabad the mahajans were collectively represented by the chief of the merchant community who was called the nagarsheth.

Women: Slaves, Sati & Labourer
- Travellers who left written accounts were generally men who were interested in and sometimes intrigued by the condition of women in the subcontinent.
- Slaves were generally used for domestic labour, and Ibn Battuta found their services particularly indispensable for carrying women and men on palanquins or dola.
- The price of slaves, particularly female slaves required for domestic labour, was very low, and most families who could afford to do so kept at least one or two of them.
- Contemporary European travellers and writers often highlighted the treatment of women as a crucial marker of difference between Western and Eastern societies.
- Not surprisingly, Bernier chose the practice of sati for detailed description. He noted that while some women seemed to embrace death cheerfully, others were forced to die.
- However, women's lives revolved around much else besides the practice of sati. Their labour was crucial in both agricultural and non-agricultural production.
- Women from merchant families participated in commercial activities, sometimes even taking mercantile disputes to the court of law.
- It therefore seems unlikely that women were confined to the private spaces of their homes.

Timeline: Some Travellers who left their accounts

973-1048 - Muhammad ibn Ahmad Abu Raihan al-Biruni (from Uzbekistan)
1254-1323 - Marco Polo (from Italy)
1304-77 - Ibn Battuta (from Morocco)
1413-82 - Abd al-Razzaq Kamal al-Din ibn Ishaq al-Samarqandi (from Samarqand)
1466-72 (years spent in India) - Afanasii Nikitich Nikitin (fifteenth century, from Russia)
1518 (visit to India) - Duarte Barbosa, d.1521 (from Portugal)
1562 (year of death) - Seydi Ali Reis (from Turkey)
1536-1600 - Antonio Monserrate (from Spain)
1626-31 (years spent in India) - Mahmud Wali Balkhi (from Balkh)
1600-67 - Peter Mundy (from England)
1605-89 - Jean-Baptiste Tavernier (from France)
1620-88 - François Bernier (from France)

Note: Unless otherwise indicated, the dates mentioned are those of the life span of the traveller.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which of the following was Prince Dara Shikoh's physician at the Mughal Court?
(a) Ibn-Battuta **(b)** Al-Biruni
(c) François Bernier **(d)** Karl Marx

2. Ibn Battuta, a Moroccan traveller who visited India in the 14th century, visited during whose reign?
(a) Sahjahan
(b) Ibrahim Lodhi
(c) Feroz Shah Tughlaq
(d) Muhammad Bin Tughlaq

3. Which invader accompanied Al-Biruni, the Persian scholar, to Afghanistan and India?
(a) Mahmud Ghazni **(b)** Muhammad Ghori
(c) Alexander **(d)** Allaudin Khilji

4. When he visited the populous port of Calicut (modern-day Kozhikode), which of the following travellers mentioned "a strange nation"?
(a) Abdur Razzaq Samarqandi
(b) Ibn Battuta
(c) Al-biruni
(d) Berneir

5. Which of the following travellers to India wrote "Travels in the Mughal Empire"?
(a) Al-biruni
(b) Abdur Razzaq Samarqandi
(c) Berneir
(d) Ibn Battuta

6. Which traveller defined the distance between Sind and Delhi in days?
(a) Ibn-Battuta **(b)** Al-biruni
(c) Mahmood of Gaznavi **(d)** Marco Polo

7. Which of the following city, according to Ibn-Battuta was the largest?
(a) Surat **(b)** Agra
(c) Daulatabad **(d)** Delhi

8. Which among the following is referred as the chief of the merchant community, in urban centres?
(a) Vaids **(b)** Mahajans
(c) Nagarsheth **(d)** Mullas

9. Which of the following pair is correctly matched?
(a) Kitab-ul-Hind - Ibn Battuta
(b) Rihala - François Bernier
(c) Travels in the Mughal Empire - Al-Biruni
(d) None of the above

10. What subjects did travellers record in their accounts?
(a) Affairs of the Court **(b)** Architecture
(c) Religious Issues **(d)** All of the above

11. Which of the following statement is incorrect?
(a) The Indian postal system had a big influence on Al-Biruni.
(b) Ibn-Battuta visited China extensively.
(c) Crown control of land, according to Ibn-Battuta, was disastrous for farmers.
(d) Al-Biruni observed that Indian cities were densely populated.

12. Which of the following was not one of the barriers as discussed by Al-Biruni?
(a) Self-absorption and the resulting ignorance of the local population
(b) Language
(c) Difference in religious beliefs and practices
(d) Slavery in the eastern societies

13. Which among the following statements is incorrect?
(a) According to Ibn Battuta, the coconut tree's nut resembled a man's head.
(b) According to Bernier, the landlords exploited the Indian peasantry.
(c) Abdur Razzaq is maybe the only historian who has given a full account of how the imperial karkhanas or workshops functioned.
(d) Ibn Battuta described slavery in India in great detail.

14. Which Portuguese author wrote a comprehensive picture of South Indian trade and society?
(a) José Saramago
(b) Duarte Barbosa
(c) Fernando Pessoa
(d) Jean-Baptiste Tavernier

15. Who was responsible for the Arabic translation of various Sanskrit texts, notably Patanjali's grammar work?
(a) Mahmud Wali Balkhi **(b)** Al-Biruni
(c) Marco Polo **(d)** Ibn Battuta

16. During the 17th century, which of the following travellers visited India?
(a) Marco Polo **(b)** Antonio Monserrate
(c) Ibn Battuta **(d)** François Bernier

17. François Bernier stayed in Mughal Court of:
(a) Babur **(b)** Akbar
(c) Jahangir **(d)** Aurangzeb

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. With reference to Ibn Battuta, consider the following statements:
1. According to Ibn Battuta, the uluq (horse post) is manned by royal horses placed every four kilometres.
2. He was a Muslim scholar from Persia who was also a Berber.

Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

2. With reference to the differences mentioned by Bernier between Mughal India and Europe in his account, consider the following statements:
1. There was lack of private property in land in Mughal India while there was not such private ownership of land in Europe.
2. The emperor owned all the land and distributed it among his nobles, and that this had fruitful for the economy and society.
3. The absence of private property in land had, therefore, prevented the emergence of the class of "improving" landlords (as in Western Europe) with a concern to maintain or improve the land.

Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** 1 and 3 only

3. With reference to the contemporary European travellers and writers, consider the following statements:
1. They often highlighted the treatment of women as a crucial marker of difference between Western and Eastern societies.
2. Albiruni chose the practice of sati for detailed description and he noted that while some women seemed to embrace death cheerfully, others were forced to die.
3. While Bernier mentioned in his account that he saw most beautiful young widow sacrificed, who could not have been more than twelve years of age.

Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

4. In the context of Rihla, consider the following statements:
1. It was about the social and cultural life in the 11th century on the Indian subcontinent.
2. The author of this book was born in Tangier into a well-educated family noted for their knowledge in Islamic religious law, or shari'a.

Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

5. With reference to Al-Biruni, consider the following statements:
1. Al-Biruni had the highest education available at the time and was fluent in a variety of languages, including Syriac, Arabic, Persian, English, Hebrew, and Sanskrit.

2. The Kitab-ul-Hind, written in Persian by Al-Biruni.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

6. Consider the following statements:
   1. Bernier's accounts were used by Montesquieu to build his concept of oriental despotism.
   2. Bernier presented comprehensive research on rural society.
   3. Crown land ownership, according to Bernier, was beneficial to peasants.
   4. The Indian King, according to Bernier, was the king of beggars.

   Select the correct statements using the code given below:

   (a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 2, 3 and 4 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 4 only **(d)** 2 and 4 only
7. Which of the following countries was/were visited by François Bernier?
   1. Palestine 2. Egypt
   3. Ethiopia 4. India

   Select the correct answer from the code given below:

   (a) 1 and 4 only **(b)** 2, 3 and 4 only
   (c) 3 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4
8. Which of the following social categories of ancient Persia were described by Al-Biruni?
   1. Knights and princes.
   2. Monks, fire priests and lawyers.
   3. Physicians, astronomers and other scientists.

   Select the correct answer using the code given below:

   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Consider the following statements and select the correct answer using the codes given below: **[UPPSC]**
   1. The Sun temple of Multan is mentioned by Hiuen Tsang, Abuzaiyid, Al-Masudi and Albiruni.
   2. The pilgrimage to Sambalpur was associated with Sun worship.

   Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:

   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
2. The account of the Moroccan traveller Ibn Battuta is known as **[BPSC CDPO]**
   (a) Rihla
   (b) Tarikh-i-Rashidi
   (c) Riyaz-us-Salatin
   (d) None of the above/More than one of the above
3. Ibn Battuta went to China as the envoy of which one of the following Delhi Sultans? **[CDS]**
   (a) Alauddin Khilji
   (b) Muhammad bin Tughlaq
   (c) Iltutmish
   (d) Firoz Shah Tughlaq

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**

   Explanation: François Bernier (1656 – 1717 A.D.) was a physician and traveller from France. Mughal prince Dara Shikoh and subsequently Mughal emperor Aurangzeb had François Bernier as their personal physician.
2. **Option (d) is correct.**

   Explanation: During Mohammed Bin Tughlaq's reign, Ibn Battuta visited India.
3. **Option (a) is correct.**

   Explanation: Al-Biruni was Mahmud Ghazni's Persian scholar who accompanied him to Afghanistan and India.
4. **Option (a) is correct.**

   Explanation: Abdur Razzaq's travelogue, published in the 1440s, is an intriguing blend of emotions and perceptions. On the one hand, he despised what he saw in the Kerala port of Calicut (now Kozhikode), which was populated by "a people the likes of whom I had never imagined," and referred to them as "a strange nation."
5. **Option (c) is correct.**

   Explanation: Bernier's 'Travels in the Mughal Empire' is known for its detailed observations, critical views, and reflection. His account includes talks attempting to put the Mughal dynasty's history into some form of universal context.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**

   Explanation: According to Ibn Battuta, the journey from Multan to Delhi took forty days, and the journey from Sind to Delhi took roughly fifty days. It took forty days to travel from Daulatabad to Delhi, and 10 days to travel from Gwalior to Delhi.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**

   Explanation: Ibn Battuta found cities in the subcontinent full of exciting opportunities for those Ibn Battuta described Delhi as a vast city, with a great population, the largest in India. Daulatabad (in Maharashtra) was no less, and easily rivalled Delhi in size.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In urban centers like Ahmedabad, merchants, called Mahajans, were collectively represented by the chief of the community, also known as Nagarsheth.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

Kitab-ul-Hind	Al-Biruni
Rihala	Ibn Battuta
Travels in the Mughal Empire	François Bernier

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The accounts of travellers covered a wide range of topics. Some travellers' accounts are concerned with legal matters, while others are concerned with religious matters. Some travellers are interested in contemporary architecture and monuments, while others are interested in social and economic life.

11. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In the Mughal Empire, the emperor owned all the land. He distributed this land among his nobles. Bernier felt that the crown ownership of land had disastrous consequences for the economy as well as society.

12. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Slavery in the eastern societies was not one of the barriers as discussed by Al-Biruni.

As per Al-Biruni, the barriers that obstructed him in understanding India were

- Problems of Language
- Difference in religious beliefs and practices
- Self-absorption and insularity of the local population

13. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Bernier is perhaps the only historian who provides a detailed account of the working of the imperial karkhanas or workshops.

14. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Once the Portuguese arrived in India in about 1500, a number of them wrote detailed accounts regarding Indian social customs and religious practices. A few of them, such as the Jesuit Roberto Nobili, even translated Indian texts into European languages. Among the best known of the Portuguese writers is Duarte Barbosa, who wrote a detailed account of trade and society in south India.

15. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Al-Biruni depended almost exclusively on the works of Brahmanas, often citing passages from the Vedas, the Puranas, the Bhagavad Gita, the works of Patanjali, the Manusmriti, etc., to provide an understanding of Indian society.

16. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: François Bernier was in India for twelve years, from 1656 to 1668, and was closely associated with the Mughal court, as a physician to Prince Dara Shukoh, the eldest son of Emperor Shah Jahan, and later as an intellectual and scientist, with Danishmand Khan, an Armenian noble at the Mughal court.

17. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: François Bernier spent 12 years in the Aurangzeb's court in the 17th Century AD.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The postal system is explained by Ibn Battuta: Royal horses are stationed every four kilometres to run the horse post, known as uluq.

The mile-long foot-post contains three stations, one of which is named Dawa.

He was a Moroccan Muslim Berber scholar and adventurer who travelled widely throughout the medieval world.

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Bernier believed that the Mughal Emperor held all of the land and dispersed it among his nobility, which had terrible economic and social implications. This viewpoint was not exclusive to Bernier; it may be seen in most sixteenth- and seventeenth-century travel reports.

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Bernier was the one who chose the sati practise for detailed description, noting that while some women seemed to enjoy dying, others were compelled to die. In his story, Bernier emphasises the status of women and how the sati system was used at the period. Women's labour was important in agricultural and non-agricultural industries.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Ibn Battuta's book of travels, called Rihla, written in Arabic, provides extremely rich and interesting details about the social and cultural life in the subcontinent in the 14th century.

Ibn Battuta was born in Tangier into one of the most respectable and educated families known for their expertise in Islamic religious law or shari'a.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Al-Biruni was born in 973, in Khwarizm in present day Uzbekistan. It was an important centre of learning, and Al-Biruni received the best education available at the time. He was well versed in several languages: Syriac, Arabic, Persian, Hebrew and Sanskrit.

Al-Biruni's Kitab-ul-Hind, written in Arabic, is simple and lucid. It is a voluminous text, divided into 80 chapters on subjects such as religion and philosophy, festivals, astronomy, alchemy, manners and customs, social life, weights and measures, iconography, laws and metrology.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: According to Bernier, one of the fundamental differences between Mughal India and Europe was the lack of private property in land in the former. According to him, Mughal Empire the emperor owned all the land and distributed it among his nobles, and that this had disastrous consequences for the economy and society.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: François Bernier embarked on his twelve-year voyage to the East at the age of 36, covering Palestine, Egypt, Cairo, Arabia, Ethiopia, and India.

8. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Al-Biruni tried to explain the caste system by comparing it to similar systems in other cultures. In ancient Persia, four social categories were recognised, according to him:

- Princes and knights
- Lawyers, monks, and fire priests
- Doctors, astronomers, and other scientists are among them
- Peasants and craftspeople

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Hiuen Tsang, Abuzaiyid, Al-Masudi, and Albiruni all mentioned Multan's Sun Temple.

The pilgrimage to Sambalpur was linked to the worship of the Sun.

Al-Masudi (957 AD) was an Arab traveller who wrote the book 'Muruj-ul-Zahab', which includes a comprehensive account of India.

During one of Mahmud of Ghazni's Indian incursions, Al-Biruni's real name was Abu Rehan Muhammad, and he came to India with him. 'Tahriq-i-Hind' is a book he wrote.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Moroccan and Berber explorer Ibn Battuta. He is well-known for his vast travels, which he chronicled in the Rihla. Ibn Battuta's journey book Rilah was written in Arabic in the 14^{th} century.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Muhammad bin Abdullah ibn Battuta was Ibn Battuta's full name. At the age of 22, he embarked on a globe tour that lasted for 30 years. During his tour to India, he arrived at the court of Muhammad Tughlaq, who appointed him as Qazi after being impressed by his intelligence. Ibn Battuta went to China as the envoy of Muhammad bin Tughlaq.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

6 BHAKTI-SUFI TRADITIONS

Introduction

- The subcontinent's landscape was dotted with a variety of religious constructions by the mid-first millennium CE — stupas, monasteries, and temples.
- If they represented some religious ideas and practises, others have been reconstructed from textual traditions, such as the Puranas, many of which took shape around the same time, and yet others are very faintly discernible in textual and visual sources.
- Compositions attributed to poet-saints, most of whom expressed themselves verbally in regional languages utilised by ordinary people, are among the new textual sources known from this period.
- Perhaps the most striking feature of this phase is the increasing visibility of a wide range of gods and goddesses in sculpture as well as in texts.

The integration of cults

- Historians suggest that there were at least two processes at work.
- Process of disseminating Brahmanical ideas: This is exemplified by the composition, compilation and preservation of Puranic texts in simple Sanskrit verse, explicitly meant to be accessible to women and Shudras, who were generally excluded from Vedic learning.
- Second process at work: Brahmanas accepting and reworking the beliefs and practices of these and other social categories. Examples of this process is evident at Puri, Orissa, where the principal deity was identified, by the twelfth century, as Jagannatha, a form of Vishnu.
- Worship of the goddess, often simply in the form of a stone smeared with ochre, was evidently widespread.
- These local deities were often incorporated within the Puranic framework by providing them with an identity as a wife of the principal male deities sometimes they were equated with Lakshmi, the wife of Vishnu, in other instances, with Parvati, the wife of Shiva.
- The principal deities of the Vedic pantheon, Agni, Indra and Soma, become marginal figures, rarely visible in textual or visual representations. Vishnu, Shiva and the goddess in Vedic mantras, these have little in common with the elaborate Puranic mythologies.
- Devotional worship had a long history of almost a thousand years.

Tantric practices- Difference and conflict

- Tantric practices were widespread in several parts of the subcontinent-they were open to women and men, and practitioners often ignored differences of caste and class within the ritual context. Many of these ideas influenced Shaivism as well as Buddhism, especially in the eastern, northern and southern parts of the subcontinent.
- There were sometimes conflicts as well-those who valued the Vedic tradition often condemned practices that went beyond the closely regulated contact with the divine through the performance of sacrifices or precisely chanted mantras. On the other hand, those engaged in Tantric practices frequently ignored the authority of the Vedas. Also, devotees often tended to project their chosen deity, either Vishnu or Shiva, as supreme.
- The singing and chanting of devotional compositions was often a part of such modes of worship. This was particularly true of the Vaishnava and Shaiva sects.

Poems of Prayer: Early Traditions of Bhakti

- At a different level, historians of religion often classify bhakti traditions into two broad categories: Saguna (with attributes) and nirguna (without attributes).
- Saguna bhakti included traditions that focused on the worship of specific deities such as Shiva, Vishnu and his avatars (incarnations) and forms of the goddess or Devi, all often conceptualised in anthropomorphic forms.
- Nirguna bhakti on the other hand was worship of an abstract form of God.

The Alvars and Nayanars of Tamil Nadu

- They led some of the earliest bhakti movements of 6^{th} century.
- They travelled from place to place singing hymns in Tamil in praise of their gods.
- Very often large temples were later built at these sacred places.
- These developed as centres of pilgrimage.
- Singing compositions of these poet-saints became part of temple rituals in these shrines.

Alvars: Those who are "immersed" in devotion to Vishnu.
Nayanars: Leaders who were devotees of Shiva.

Attitudes Towards Caste

- According to some historians, Alvars and Nayanars initiated a movement of protest against the caste system and the dominance of Brahmanas or at least attempted to reform the system.
- One of the major anthologies of compositions by the Alvars, the Nalayira Divyaprabandham, was frequently described as the Tamil Veda, thus claiming that the text was as significant as the four Vedas in Sanskrit that were cherished by the Brahmanas.

Women Devotees

- Perhaps one of the most striking features of these traditions was the presence of women.
- The compositions of Andal, a woman Alvar, were widely sung and continue to be sung to date. Andal saw herself as the beloved of Vishnu; her verses express her love for the deity.
- Karaikkal Ammaiyar, a devotee of Shiva, adopted the path of extreme asceticism in order to attain her goal.
- These women renounced their social obligations, but did not join an alternative order or become nuns.
- Their very existence and their compositions posed a challenge to patriarchal norms.

Chola Kingdom

- The powerful Chola rulers supported Brahmanical and bhakti traditions, making land grants and constructing temples for Vishnu and Shiva.
- The Chola kings often attempted to claim divine support and proclaim their own power and status by building splendid temples that were adorned with stone and metal sculpture to recreate the visions of these popular saints who sang in the language of the people.
- These kings also introduced the singing of Tamil Shaiva hymns in the temples under royal patronage, taking the initiative to collect and organise them into a text.
- Inscriptional evidence from around 945 suggests that the Chola ruler Parantaka I had consecrated metal images of Appar, Sambandar and Sundarar in a Shiva temple.
- These were carried in processions during the festivals of these saints.
- Most magnificent Shiva temples: Chidambaram, Thanjavur and Gangaikondacholapuram, were constructed under the patronage of Chola rulers.
- One of the major themes in Tamil bhakti hymns is the poets' opposition to Buddhism and Jainism. This is particularly marked in the compositions of the Nayanars.
- Both Nayanars and Alvars were revered by the Vellala peasants.
- This was also the period when some of the most spectacular representations of Shiva in bronze sculpture were produced.

The Virashaiva Tradition in Karnataka

- The 12th century witnessed the emergence of a new movement in Karnataka, led by a Brahmana named Basavanna (1106-68). His followers were known as Virashaivas or Lingayats.

Lingayats

- Lingayats continue to be an important community in the region to date.
- They worship Shiva in his manifestation as a linga, and men usually wear a small linga in a silver case on a loop strung over the left shoulder.
- Lingayats believe that on death the devotee will be united with Shiva and will not return to this world. Therefore, they do not practise funerary rites such as cremation, prescribed in the Dharmashastras. Instead, they ceremonially bury their dead.
- The Lingayats challenged the idea of caste and the "pollution" attributed to certain groups by Brahmanas. They also questioned the theory of rebirth.
- The Lingayats also encouraged certain practices disapproved in the Dharmashastras, such as post-puberty marriage and the remarriage of widows.

Religious Ferment in North India

- During the same period, in north India deities such as Vishnu and Shiva were worshipped in temples, often built with the support of rulers.
- Many new religious leaders questioned the authority of the Vedas, and expressed themselves in languages spoken by ordinary people, which developed over centuries into the ones used today.
- A new element in this situation was the coming of the Turks which culminated in the establishment of the Delhi Sultanate.
- This undermined the power of many of the Rajput states and the Brahmanas who were associated with these kingdoms.
- This was accompanied by marked changes in the realm of culture and religion. The coming of the Sufis was a significant part of these developments.

New Strands in the Fabric: Islamic Traditions

- Arab merchants, for instance, frequented ports along the western coast in the first millennium CE, while Central Asian people settled in the north-western parts of the subcontinent during the same period.
- From the 7th century, with the advent of Islam, these regions became part of what is often termed the Islamic world.

Faiths of Rulers and Subjects

- In 711 an Arab general named Muhammad Qasim conquered Sind, which became part of the Caliph's domain. Later the Turks and Afghans established the Delhi Sultanate. This was followed by the formation of Sultanates in the Deccan and other parts of the subcontinent; Islam was an acknowledged religion of rulers in several areas.
- This continued with the establishment of the Mughal Empire in the 16th century as well as in many of the regional states that emerged in the 18th century.
- Theoretically, Muslim rulers were to be guided by the ulama, who were expected to ensure that they ruled according to the shari'a.

Taxes under the Muslim Ruler

- The category of the zimmi, meaning protected developed for people who followed revealed scriptures, such as the Jews and Christians, and lived under Muslim rulership.
- They paid a tax called jizya and gained the right to be protected by Muslims. In India this status was extended to Hindus as well.
- Several rulers gave land endowments and granted tax exemptions to Hindu, Jaina, Zoroastrian, Christian and Jewish religious institutions and also expressed respect and devotion towards non-Muslim religious leaders.
- These grants were made by several Mughal rulers, including Akbar and Aurangzeb.

The popular practice of Islam

- The coming of Islam were not confined to ruling elites; it has spread through the subcontinent, amongst different social strata – peasants, artisans, warriors, merchants, to name a few.
- All those who adopted Islam accepted, in principle, the five "pillars" of the faith:
  1. That there is one God, Allah, and Prophet Muhammad is his messenger (shahada);
  2. Offering prayers five times a day;
  3. Giving alms (zakat);
  4. Fasting during the month of Ramzan (sawm); and
  5. Performing the pilgrimage to Mecca (hajj).
- The Khojahs, a branch of the Ismailis (a Shi'a sect), developed new modes of communication, disseminating ideas derived from the Qur'an through indigenous literary genres.
- These included the ginan meaning "knowledge", devotional poems in Punjabi, Multani, Sindhi, Kachchi, Hindi and Gujarati, sung in special ragas during daily prayer meetings.
- Arab Muslim traders who settled along the Malabar coast (Kerala) adopted the local language, Malayalam.

Names for Communities

- Historians who have studied Sanskrit texts and inscriptions dating between the 8th and 14th centuries point out that the term musalman or Muslim was virtually never used. Instead, people were occasionally identified in terms of the region from which they came. So, the Turkish rulers were designated as Turushka, Tajika were people from Tajikistan and Parashika were people from Persia.
- A more general term for these migrant communities was mlechchha, indicating that they did not observe the norms of caste society and spoke languages that were not derived from Sanskrit.
- The term "Hindu" was used in a variety of ways, not necessarily restricted to a religious connotation.

The Growth of Sufism

- In the early centuries of Islam, a group of religious minded people called Sufis turned to asceticism and mysticism in protest against the growing materialism of the Caliphate as a religious and political institution.
- They were critical of the dogmatic definitions and scholastic methods of interpreting the Qur'an and Sunna (traditions of the Prophet) adopted by theologians.

Khanqahs and Silsilas

- By the 11th century Sufism evolved into a well-developed movement with a body of literature on Quranic studies and sufi practices.
- Sufis began to organise communities around the hospice or khanqah (Persian) controlled by a teaching master known as shaikh (in Arabic), pir or murshid (in Persian).
- He enrolled disciples (murids) and appointed a successor (khalifa).
- He established rules for spiritual conduct and interaction between inmates as well as between laypersons and the master.
- Sufi silsilas began to crystallise in different parts of the Islamic world around the twelfth century.
- The word silsila literally means a chain, signifying a continuous link between master and disciple, stretching as an unbroken spiritual genealogy to the Prophet Muhammad.
- It was through this channel that spiritual power and blessings were transmitted to devotees.
- Special rituals of initiation were developed in which initiates took an oath of allegiance, wore a patched garment, and shaved their hair.
- When the shaikh died, his tomb-shrine became the centre of devotion for his followers. This encouraged the practice of pilgrimage or ziyarat to his grave, particularly on his death anniversary or urs.
- This was because people believed that in death saints were united with God, and were thus closer to Him than when living. People sought their blessings to attain material and spiritual benefits. Thus evolved the cult of the shaikh revered as wali.

Outside the Khanqah

- Some mystics initiated movements based on a radical interpretation of sufi ideals.
- Many scorned the khanqah and took to mendicancy and observed celibacy.
- They ignored rituals and observed extreme forms of asceticism.
- They were known by different names – Qalandars, Madaris, Malangs, Haidaris, etc.

The Chistis in the Subcontinent

- Of the groups of sufis who migrated to India in the late 12th century, the Chishtis were the most influential. This was because they adapted successfully to the local environment and adopted several features of Indian devotional traditions.

Life in the Chishti khanqah

- The khanqah was the centre of social life.

Shaikh Nizamuddin's hospice

- It is on the banks of the river Yamuna in Ghiyaspur, on the outskirts of what was then the city of Delhi. It comprised several small rooms and a big hall (jama'at khana) where the inmates and visitors lived and prayed.
- There was an open kitchen (langar), run on futuh (unasked-for charity).
- From morning till late night people from all walks of life – soldiers, slaves, singers, merchants, poets, travellers, rich and poor, Hindu jogis (yogi) and qalandars – came seeking discipleship, amulets for healing, and the intercession of the Shaikh in various matters.
- Other visitors included poets such as Amir Hasan Sijzi and Amir Khusrau and the court historian Ziyauddin Barani, all of whom wrote about the Shaikh.
- Shaikh Nizamuddin appointed several spiritual successors and deputed them to set up hospices in various parts of the subcontinent. Thus, the teachings, practices and organisation of the Chishtis as well as the fame of the Shaikh spread rapidly.

Chishti Devotionalism: Ziyarat and Qawwali

- Pilgrimage, called ziyarat, to tombs of sufi saints is prevalent all over the Muslim world.
- The most revered shrine is that of Khwaja Muinuddin, popularly known as "Gharib Nawaz".

- The earliest textual references to Khwaja Muinuddin's dargah date to the 14th century.
- Muhammad bin Tughlaq was the first Sultan to visit the shrine, but the earliest construction to house the tomb was funded in the late 15th century by Sultan Ghiyasuddin Khalji of Malwa.
- It is a part of ziyarat is the use of music and dance including mystical chants performed by specially trained musicians or qawwals to evoke divine ecstasy.
- The Sufis remember God either by reciting the zikr or evoking His Presence through sama or performance of mystical music.
- Sama was integral to the Chishtis, and exemplified interaction with indigenous devotional traditions.
- By the 16th century the shrine had become very popular; it was the spirited singing of pilgrims bound for Ajmer that inspired Akbar to visit the tomb.
- He went there fourteen times, sometimes two or three times a year, to seek blessings for new conquests, fulfilment of vows, and the birth of sons.
- He maintained this tradition until 1580. Each of these visits was celebrated by generous gifts, which were recorded in imperial documents.
- He also had a mosque constructed within the compound of the dargah.

Languages and Communication

- It was not just in sama that the Chishtis adopted local languages. In Delhi, those associated with the Chishti silsila conversed in Hindavi, the language of the people. Other sufis such as Baba Farid composed verses in the local language, which were incorporated in the Guru Granth Sahib.
- The prem-akhyan (love story) Padmavat composed by Malik Muhammad Jayasi revolved around the romance of Padmini and Ratansen, the king of Chittor.
- Their trials were symbolic of the soul's journey to the divine. Such poetic compositions were often recited in hospices, usually during sama'.
- A different genre of sufi poetry was composed in and around the town of Bijapur, Karnataka. These were short poems in Dakhani attributed to Chishti sufis who lived in this region during the 17th and 18th centuries.
- These poems were probably sung by women while performing household chores like grinding grain and spinning.
- Other compositions were in the form of lurinama or lullabies and shadinama or wedding songs.

Sufis and the State

- A major feature of the Chishti tradition was austerity, including maintaining a distance from worldly power.
- The Chishtis accepted donations in cash and kind.
- When the Turks set up the Delhi Sultanate, they resisted the insistence of the ulama on imposing shari'a as state law because they anticipated opposition from their subjects, the majority of whom were non-Muslims.
- The Sultans then sought out the Sufis – who derived their authority directly from God – and did not depend on jurists to interpret the shari'a.

Kabir

- Kabir is perhaps one of the most outstanding examples of a poet-saint who emerged within this context.
- Verses ascribed to Kabir have been compiled in three distinct but overlapping traditions. The Kabir Bijak is preserved by the Kabirpanth (the path or sect of Kabir) in Varanasi and elsewhere in Uttar Pradesh; the Kabir Granthavali is associated with the Dadupanth in Rajasthan, and many of his compositions are found in the Adi Granth Sahib.
- All these manuscript compilations were made long after the death of Kabir. By the 19th century, anthologies of verses attributed to him circulated in print in regions as far apart as Bengal, Gujarat and Maharashtra.
- Kabir's poems have survived in several languages and dialects; and some are composed in the special language of nirguna poets, the sant bhasha. Others, known as ulatbansi, are written in a form in which everyday meanings are inverted.
- He also used terms drawn from Vedantic traditions, alakh (the unseen), nirakar (formless), Brahman, Atman, etc.
- Other terms with mystical connotations such as shabda (sound) or shunya (emptiness) were drawn from yogic traditions. His legacy was claimed by several groups, who remembered him and continue to do so.
- Hagiographies within the Vaishnava tradition attempted to suggest that he was born a Hindu, Kabirdas but was raised by a poor Muslim family belonging to the community of weavers or julahas, who were relatively recent converts to Islam.
- They also suggested that he was initiated into bhakti by a guru, perhaps Ramananda.

Baba Guru Nanak

- Baba Guru Nanak (1469-1539) was born in a Hindu merchant family in a village called Nankana Sahib near the river Ravi in the predominantly Muslim Punjab.
- He trained to be an accountant and studied Persian. He was married at a young age but he spent most of his time among sufis and bhaktas.
- The message of Baba Guru Nanak is spelt out in his hymns and teachings. These suggest that he advocated a form of nirguna bhakti.
- He rejected sacrifices, ritual baths, image worship, austerities and the scriptures of both Hindus and Muslims. For Baba Guru Nanak, the Absolute or "rab" had no gender or form.
- Baba Guru Nanak would sing these compositions in various ragas while his attendant Mardana played the rabab.
- Baba Guru Nanak organised his followers into a community. He set up rules for congregational worship involving collective recitation.
- He appointed one of his disciples, Angad, to succeed him as the preceptor, and this practice was followed for nearly 200 years.
- It appears that Baba Guru Nanak did not wish to establish a new religion, but after his death his followers consolidated their own practices and

distinguished themselves from both Hindus and Muslims.

- The fifth preceptor, Guru Arjan, compiled Baba Guru Nanak's hymns along with those of his four successors and other religious poets like Baba Farid, Ravidas and Kabir in the Adi Granth Sahib.
- These hymns, called "gurbani", are composed in various languages. In the late 17th century, the tenth preceptor, Guru Gobind Singh, included the compositions of the 9th guru, Guru Tegh Bahadur, and this scripture was called the Guru Granth Sahib.
- Guru Gobind Singh also laid the foundation of the Khalsa Panth and defined its five symbols: uncut hair, a dagger, a pair of shorts, a comb and a steel bangle. Under him the community got consolidated as a socio-religious and military force.

Mirabai

- Mirabai is perhaps the best-known woman poet within the bhakti tradition.
- She was a Rajput princess from Merta in Marwar who was married against her wishes to a prince of the Sisodia clan of Mewar, Rajasthan.
- She defied her husband and did not submit to the traditional role of wife and mother, instead recognising Krishna, the avatar of Vishnu, as her lover.
- According to some traditions, her preceptor was Raidas, a leather worker.
- Mirabai did not attract a sect or group of followers; she has been recognised as a source of inspiration for centuries.
- Her songs continue to be sung by women and men, especially those who are poor and considered "low caste" in Gujarat and Rajasthan.

Conclusion

- The devotional worship of god with ultimate objective of attaining moksha (salvation) is called Bhakti. The word 'Bhakti' was derived from the root word 'Bhaj' meaning to adore. The impact of bhakti movement on the Indian society was significant and far-reaching.
- Virtually all these religious traditions continue to flourish to date. This continuity has certain advantages for historians as it allows them to compare contemporary practices with those described in textual traditions or shown in old paintings and to trace changes.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which of the following Sikh guru had invented the new script called Guru-Mukhi and popularized and expanded the system of Guru ka Langar?
(a) Guru Nanak Dev **(b)** Guru Angad
(c) Guru Amar Das **(d)** Guru Arjun Dev

2. The prem-akhyan 'Padmavat' was composed by which of the following?
(a) Muhammad Qasim
(b) Ziyauddin Barani
(c) Amir Hasan Sijzi
(d) Malik Muhammad Jayasi

3. Which term was used to refer to the migrant communities?
(a) Yavanas **(b)** Mlechchha
(c) Shakas **(d)** Turks

4. Which among the following were principal deities of the Vedic pantheon?
(a) Agni **(b)** Indra
(c) Soma **(d)** All of the above

5. Who were Vishnu Bhakta saints?
(a) Alvar **(b)** Nayanar
(c) Zimmi **(d)** Virshaiv

6. Which of the following rulers supported Brahmanical and bhakti traditions, making land grants and constructing temples for Vishnu and Shiva?
(a) Pandayas **(b)** Magadh
(c) Cholas **(d)** Harsha

7. Which of the following women devotee adopted the path of extreme asceticism in order to attain her goal?
(a) Meerabai **(b)** Karaikkal Ammaiyar
(c) Padmini **(d)** None of the above

8. Which of these was associated with Chishti worship?
(a) Dance **(b)** Music
(c) Qawali **(d)** All of these

9. Who among the following compiled Adi Granth?
(a) Guru Teg Bahadur Ji
(b) Guru Arjan Dev Ji
(c) Guru Nanak Dev Ji
(d) Guru Gobind Singh Ji

10. Alvars and Nayanars were belongs to which of the following state?
(a) Karnataka **(b)** Kerala
(c) Andhra Pradesh **(d)** Tamil Nadu

11. Which Bhakti Movement concept resulted in the concept of Sagunabrahmana?
(a) Vaishanavism **(b)** Nirgunabraman
(c) Shaivism **(d)** None of the above

12. In India, different Sufi organisations or schools were called as
(a) Khangahs **(b)** Qalandars
(c) Silsilas **(d)** Darveshs

13. Which of the following was the Bhakti Movement's fundamental premise?
(a) Bhakti or Single minded uninterrupted and extreme devotion to God was the only means of Salvation.
(b) Bhakti evolved into a well-developed movement with a body of literature on Bhagwat studies.
(c) Bhakti or Single minded uninterrupted and extreme devotion to God with the help of Brahmins was the only means of Salvation.
(d) None of the above.

14. In which century did Sufism, Islam's liberal and mystic movement, make its way to India?
    (a) 11^{th} **(b)** 9^{th}
    (c) 15^{th} **(d)** 10^{th}
15. The followers of Basavanna who led a movement in Karnataka were called
    (a) Lingayats **(b)** Naths
    (c) Brahmins **(d)** Jogis
16. In 711, who concurred Sind?
    (a) Akbar
    (b) Muhammad Qasim
    (c) Sultan Ghiyasuddin Khalji
    (d) Malik Muhammad Jayasi
17. The Bhakti movement of Hinduism found two methods of visualising the divine (Brahman) which of the following are those concepts?
    (a) Nirguna and Saguna **(b)** Shaivism
    (c) Sikkhism **(d)** Jainism
18. Shiva temple in Gangaikondacholapuram was constructed under the patronage of which of the following rulers?
    (a) Chola **(b)** Shakas
    (c) Pandayas **(d)** Palas
19. The Sufi saint who maintained that devotional music was one way of moving closer to God was
    (a) Baba Farid **(b)** Muin-ud-din-Chisti
    (c) Shah Alam Bukhari **(d)** Saiyid Mummed

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. In the context of Sufism, consider the following statements:
    1. Sufism is a mystical form of Islam, a school of practice that does not focus on the spiritual search for God and shuns materialism.
    2. It is a form of Islamic mysticism which stresses on asceticism.

    Select the correct answer using the code given below:
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
2. Which of the following statements is/are true about Chisti Silsila?
    1. The Chisti Silsila was begun by Khwaja Muin-ud-din-Chisti who came to India around 1192.
    2. The most famous of the Chisti saints were Nizamuddin Auliya and Naziruddin chirag-i-Delhi.
    3. The chistis didn't want anything to do with the administration or money.

    Select the correct answer using the code given below:
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 3 only
    (c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
3. Consider the following statements related to Bhakti Movement:
    1. This movement originated in North India in the 7^{th} and 10^{th} CE, mostly in the poems of Alvars and Nayanars.
    2. These poems were composed in Sanskrit; the poems were addressed to Lord Vishnu and Lord Shiva respectively.
    3. The Bhakti Saints moved against the austerities propagated by the Buddhist and Jain schools and professed that ultimate devotion to god was the means to salvation.

    Select the correct answer using the code given below:
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 3 only
    (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
4. Consider the following statements:
    1. He was a 14^{th} century saint and reformer of the Bhakti movement in North India.
    2. It is believed that he was born in Varanasi in a cobbler's family.
    3. He gained prominence due to his belief in one God and his unbiased religious poems.

    The above mentioned statements is related to which of the following person?
    (a) Guru Ravidas **(b)** Guru Amar Das
    (c) Guru Angad **(d)** Guru Arjan
5. Consider the following statements:
    1. It promoted a form of bhakti known as 'Nirguna'.
    2. It establishes a set of guidelines for congregational worship.
    3. Its hymns are known as 'Gurbani.'

    Which of the following religions is most closely associated with the above statements?
    (a) Sikhism **(b)** Kabir's Philosophy
    (c) Judaism **(a)** Sufism
6. With reference to the Kabir, consider the following statements:
    1. He was the disciple of Ramananda and the most liberal among medieval Indian reformers.
    2. He was possibly a contemporary of Sultan Muhammad Bin Tughlaq (1489-1517).
    3. He used terms drawn from Vedantic traditions.

    Select the incorrect statement(s) using the code given below:
    (a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 2 only
    (c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** None of the above
7. With reference to Tantric practices, consider the following statements:
    1. They were open to only men.
    2. There was differences of caste and class within the ritual context.

    Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
    (a) 1 only **(b)** Both 1 and 2
    (c) 2 only **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
8. Consider the following statements related to Guru Tegh Bahadur:
    1. Guru Tegh Bahadur (1621 – 1675) was the seventh of ten Sikh Gurus.
    2. He built the city of Anandpur Sahib.
    3. He was executed on the orders of Mughal Emperor Akbar.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

9. With reference to the Bhakti movement, consider the following statements:
1. The movement began around 11th century A.D. in South India.
2. The movement was led by Alvars and Nayanars in South India belonged to the different caste.
3. Shankaracharya was a 12th century Lingayat saint also known as Bhakti Bhandari.
Which of the statements given above is/are NOT correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 2 only

10. With reference to the cultural history of medieval India, consider the following statements:
1. Lingayats are the followers of the 12th century social reformer-philosopher poet, Basaveshwara.
2. Basaveshwara was against the caste system and Vedic rituals.
3. Lingayats of Kannada region questioned the theory of rebirth and rejected the caste hierarchy.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 3 only
(c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Which of the following is called "Radha of Rajasthan"? **[Rajasthan Police SI]**
(a) Gavri Bai **(b)** Saman Bai
(c) Mirabai **(d)** Karmathi Bai

2. Which one of the following statements about the Bhakti Movement in South India is NOT correct? **[UPSC CAPF]**
(a) The nalayira Divyaprabhandham was also known as the Tamil Veda
(b) Andal was an Alvar
(c) Karaikkal Ammaiyar was a devotee of Vishnu
(d) Metal images of the saints Appar and Sundarar were made and then consecrated in a Shiva temple

3. Who among the following Sikh Gurus founded the Tarn Taran Sahib? **[SSC CGL]**
(a) Guru Nanak Dev **(b)** Guru Arjan Dev
(c) Guru Ram Das **(d)** Guru Gobind Singh

4. In which of the following spheres the Hindu-Muslim cultural synthesis is evident as a result of Bhakti Movement and Sufism? **[CG TET]**
(a) Music **(b)** Literature
(c) Both (a) and (b) **(d)** None of these

5. Amir Khusro was disciple of which sufi saint? **[CG TET]**
(a) Moinuddin Chisti
(b) Sheikh Nizamuddin Aulia
(c) Hamiduddin Naguri
(d) Sheikh Kutubuddin Bakhtiyar

6. Who among the following Sikh Gurus laid the foundation of 'Khalsa Panth'? **[SSC CHSL]**
(a) Guru Gobind Singh **(b)** Guru Arjan Dev
(c) Guru Teg Bahadur **(d)** Guru Nanak Dev

7. Around twelfth century Sufi silsilas began to crystallize in different parts of the Islamic world to signify **[CDS]**
1. continuous link between the master and disciple
2. unbroken spiritual genealogy to the Prophet Muhammad
3. the transmission of spiritual power and blessings to devotees
Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Angad Dev or Guru Angad Dev was the second guru of Sikhs. Under the leadership of Guru Angad Sahib, the system of langar was widely publicized. He started the 'Gurmukhi script'.

2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The prem-akhyan (love story) Padmavat composed by Malik Muhammad Jayasi revolved around the romance of Padmini and Ratansen, the king of Chittor.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: A more general term for migrant communities was mlechchha, indicating that they did not observe the norms of caste society and spoke languages that were not derived from Sanskrit.

4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The principal deities of the Vedic pantheon, Agni, Indra and Soma, become marginal figures, rarely visible in textual or visual representations. Vishnu, Shiva and the goddess in Vedic mantras, these have little in common with the elaborate Puranic mythologies.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: **Alvars**: Those who are "immersed" in devotion to Vishnu.
Nayanars: Leaders who were devotees of Shiva.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The powerful Chola rulers supported Brahmanical and bhakti traditions, making land grants and constructing temples for Vishnu and Shiva.

7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The compositions of Andal, a woman Alvar, were widely sung and continue to be sung to

date. Andal saw herself as the beloved of Vishnu; her verses express her love for the deity. Karaikkal Ammaiyar, a devotee of Shiva, adopted the path of extreme asceticism in order to attain her goal. These women renounced their social obligations, but did not join an alternative order or become nuns.

8. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: It is a part of ziyarat is the use of music and dance including mystical chants performed by specially trained musicians or qawwals to evoke divine ecstasy. The Sufis remember God either by reciting the zikr or evoking his presence through sama or performance of mystical music. Sama was integral to the Chishtis, and exemplified interaction with indigenous devotional traditions.

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The original 'Adi Granth,' which contains verses by Guru Nanak, the founder of Sikhism, and other Sikh Gurus and saints, was compiled by the fifth Sikh Guru Arjan in 1603–04.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Alvars and Nayanars led some of the earliest bhakti movements of 6th century. They travelled from place to place singing hymns in Tamil in praise of their gods.

11. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Nirguna and Saguna were two methods of imagining the divine (Brahman) in Hinduism's Bhakti movement. The notion of Nirguna Brahman was that the Ultimate Reality was formless, devoid of traits or qualities.

12. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Silsila is an Arabic term that means "chain," "link," or "connection," and is frequently used in lineage contexts. It can be translated as "(religious) order" or "spiritual genealogy," in which one Sufi Master passes on his khilfat to another. Silsilas can be traced back to the Islamic prophet Muhammad's introduction into Sufi groups.

13. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Bhakti movement was popularised by medieval India's mystic Saints. They didn't belong to any one sect. They had no blind faith in any sacred books, no sect-forming device, and no allegiance to any one doctrine. They achieved glory via individual effort rather than following any rituals or rites. The Bhakti movement's adherents opposed idolatry and believed in monotheism. They thought that Bhakti or Single minded, uninterrupted and extreme devotion to God was the only means of Salvation.

14. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Sufism arrived in India in the eleventh and twelfth century, when a large number of Sufi saints travelled to the Punjab's Multan and Lahore.

15. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The 12th century witnessed the emergence of a new movement in Karnataka, led by a Brahmana named Basavanna. His followers were known as Virashaivas or Lingayats.

16. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 711 an Arab general named Muhammad Qasim conquered Sind, which became part of the Caliph's domain.

17. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Nirguna and Saguna were two methods of understanding the divine (Brahman) in Hinduism's Bhakti movement.

18. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Most magnificent Shiva temples: Chidambaram, Thanjavur and Gangaikondacholapuram, were constructed under the patronage of Chola rulers.

19. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Baba Farid, also known as Khwaja Fariduddin, was a 12th-century sufi preacher and poet. He is regarded as Punjabi literature's first poet. "Music is the way of contacting God," he discovered.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:
- The word "Sufi" comes from the Arabic word "Suf," which means "wool." Sufi saints were named after Muslim saints who wore coarse woollen robes.
- Sufism is a mystical form of Islam, a school of practice that focuses on the spiritual search for God and shuns materialism.
- It is a form of Islamic mysticism which stresses asceticism.
- There is a lot of emphasis on love and devotion towards God. There are many schools of Sufism all over the world and in India too.

2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation:
- Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti founded the Chishti order in India (1143-1223 AD).
- In 930 AD, it originated in Chist, a little hamlet near Herat in Afghanistan. Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti founded his khanqah in Ajmer to help the poorest people in the community.
- It emphasised the doctrine of the unity of being with God (waḥdat al-wujūd) and members of the order were also pacifists.
- They rejected all material goods as distractions from the contemplation of God.
- They abstained from connection with the secular state.
- Recitation of the names of God, both aloud and silently (dhikr jahrī, dhikr khafī), formed the cornerstone of Chishtī practice.
- The Chistis preferred to remain aloof from state politics and shunned the company of rulers and nobles.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
- This movement originated in South India in the 7th and 10th CE, mostly in the poems of Alvars and Nayanars. These poems were composed in Tamil; the poems were addressed to Lord Vishnu and Lord Shiva respectively.
- The Bhakti Saints moved against the austerities propagated by the Buddhist and Jain schools and professed that ultimate devotion to god was the means to salvation.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Guru Ravidas is a 14th century saint born in Varanasi in a cobbler family.
He was a reformer of the Bhakti movement in North India.
He believed in one God and sung unbiased religious poems.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Guru Nanak Dev preached 'Nirguna' bhakti.
- Sacrifices, ceremonial baths, image worship, austerities, and Hindu and Muslim scriptures were all rejected by him. He formed a community out of his followers. He established regulations for congregational worship (Sangat), which included group recitation.
- In the Adi Granth Sahib, the fifth preceptor, Guru Arjan, collated Baba Guru Nanak's songs, as well as those of his four successors and other religious poets such as Baba Farid, Ravidas (also known as Raidas), and Kabir. These hymns, known as 'Gurbani,' are written in a variety of languages.
- Guru Gobind Singh, the tenth preceptor, contained the compositions of the ninth guru, Guru Tegh Bahadur, in the late 17th century, and this text was known as the Guru Granth Sahib.

6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Kabir is commonly regarded as the first disciple of Bhakti poet-saint Swami Ramananda in Varanasi, a city famed for devout Vaishnavism with a strong inclination toward monist Advaita philosophy, which teaches that God resides within every person and everything. The Tughlaq dynasty started in 1320 in Delhi when Ghazi Malik assumed the throne under the title of Ghiyath al-Din Tughluq. The dynasty ended in 1413. Kabir was born in 1440.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Tantric practices were widespread in several parts of the subcontinent they were open to women and men, and practitioners often ignored differences of caste and class within the ritual context. Many of these ideas influenced Shaivism as well as Buddhism, especially in the eastern, northern and southern parts of the subcontinent.

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
- Guru Tegh Bahadur was the ninth Sikh Guru and was known among Sikhs as the "Protector of Humanity" (Srishtdi-Chadar).
- In the form of 116 poetic hymns, his writings are contained in the sacred text 'Guru Granth Sahib.'
- He created the settlement of Chak-Nanki in Punjab on one of his missions, which ultimately became a part of Punjab's Anandpur Sahib.
- Under the command of Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb, he was killed in Delhi in 1675.

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Bhakti Movement in Hinduism emphasised a devotee's great emotional attachment and love for a personal god, as well as the god's love for the devotee.
- The Movement began in South India in the 7th to 9th centuries, with poems written in Tamil to the gods Vishnu and Shiva by the Alvars and Nayanars, respectively. They came from all castes, including the 'untouchables' such as the Pulaiyar and Panars.
- Basavanna was a Shiva-focused Bhakti saint who lived in India in the 12th century. He was a statesman, philosopher, poet, and Lingayat saint.
- The Lingayats were founded by Basava. He was a Visishtadvaita propagator.
- The Vachana Sahitya in Kannada is one of the Basavanna literary works. Bhaktibhandari, Basavanna, and Basaveswara are some of his other names.

10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Lingayats are the followers of the 12th-century social reformer-philosopher poet, Basaveshwara.
He was against the caste system and Vedic rituals.
Lingayats of Karnataka questioned the theory of rebirth and rejected the caste hierarchy.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Meerabai is known as the "Radha of Rajasthan," and Raidas was her master.

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Karaikkal Ammaiyar was one of the three women of the 63 Nayanars, and she was not a Vishnu follower. The Nayanars were a group of 63 devotees of Lord Shiva who lived in Tamil Nadu.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Tarn Taran Sahib was founded by Guru Arjan Dev, a Sikh Guru.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In and around the 11th century A.D., the Sufi movement arose in India. The concept of devotional surrender to a supreme God was promoted by the Bhakti movement. In the 10^{th} century A.D., the Bhakti movement achieved its pinnacle. Listening to music and singing, or sama, was an important Sufi activity for boosting religious passion.

Sufi teachings were quite similar to bhakti teachings about focusing on a God and the importance of sacred music and song.

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Amir Khusrau was a Sufi mystic from Indo-Persia. His spiritual teacher was Sheikh Nizamuddin Auliya.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Guru Gobind Singh was the Sikhs' ninth Guru. Guru Gobind Singh formed the Khalsa Panth, a society that follows Sikhism as its religion. Guru Gobind Singh was the Sikhs' final human Guru.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Around the eleventh century, Sufi silsilas began to form in various parts of the Islamic world. The word silsila literally means "chain," and it refers to a continuous link between teacher and disciple that stretches all the way back to the Prophet Muhammad. Spiritual power and blessings were transmitted to worshippers through this channel. Initiates made an oath of fealty, wore a patched tunic, and shaved their heads as part of special initiation procedures.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

7 AN IMPERIAL CAPITAL: VIJAYANAGARA

Introduction

- Vijayanagara or "city of victory" was the name of both a city and an empire. The empire was founded in the 14th century. In its heyday it stretched from the river Krishna in the north to the extreme south of the peninsula.
- In 1565 the city was sacked and subsequently deserted. Although it fell into ruin in the 17th -18th centuries, it lived on in the memories of people living in the Krishna-Tungabhadra doab.
- They remembered it as Hampi, a name derived from that of the local mother goddess, Pampadevi.
- These oral traditions combined with archaeological finds, monuments and inscriptions and other records helped scholars to rediscover the Vijayanagara Empire.

The Discovery of Hampi

- The ruins at Hampi were brought to light in 1800 by an engineer and antiquarian named Colonel Colin Mackenzie.
- He prepared the first survey map of the site. Much of the initial information he received was based on the memories of priests of the Virupaksha temple and the shrine of Pampadevi.
- In an effort to reconstruct the history of the city and the empire, historians collated information from these sources with accounts of foreign travellers and other literature written in Telugu, Kannada, Tamil and Sanskrit.

Rayas, Nayakas and Sultans

- According to tradition and epigraphic evidence two brothers, Harihara and Bukka, founded the Vijayanagara Empire in 1336.
- On their northern frontier, the Vijayanagara kings competed with contemporary rulers – including the Sultans of the Deccan and the Gajapati rulers of Orissa – for control of the fertile river valleys and the resources generated by lucrative overseas trade.
- The rulers of Vijayanagara borrowed concepts and building techniques which they then developed further.
- Some of the areas that were incorporated within the empire had witnessed the development of powerful states such as those of the Cholas in Tamil Nadu and the Hoysalas in Karnataka.
- Ruling elites in these areas had extended patronage to elaborate temples such as the Brihadishvara temple at Thanjavur and the Chennakeshava temple at Belur.

Kings & Traders

- This trade was initially controlled by Arab traders. Local communities of merchants known as kudirai chettis or horse merchants also participated in these exchanges.
- From 1498 other actors appeared on the scene. These were the Portuguese, who arrived on the west coast of the subcontinent and attempted to establish trading and military stations.
- Vijayanagara was also noted for its markets dealing in spices, textiles and precious stones.

The apogee and decline of the empire

- The first dynasty, known as the Sangama dynasty, exercised control till 1485. They were supplanted by the Saluvas, military commanders, who remained in power till 1503 when they were replaced by the Tuluvas. Krishnadeva Raya belonged to the Tuluva dynasty.
- Krishnadeva Raya's rule was characterised by expansion and consolidation. This was the time when the land between the Tungabhadra and Krishna rivers (the Raichur doab) was acquired (1512), the rulers of Orissa were subdued (1514) and severe defeats were inflicted on the Sultan of Bijapur (1520).
- Krishnadeva Raya is credited with building some fine temples and adding impressive gopurams to many important south Indian temples. He also founded a suburban township near Vijayanagara called Nagalapuram after his mother.
- Strain began to show within the imperial structure following Krishnadeva Raya's death in 1529. His successors were troubled by rebellious nayakas or military chiefs.
- By 1542 control at the centre had shifted to another ruling lineage, that of the Aravidu, which remained in power till the end of the seventeenth century. In 1565 Rama Raya, the chief minister of Vijayanagara, led the army into battle at Rakshasi-Tangadi (also known as Talikota), where his forces were routed by the combined armies of Bijapur, Ahmadnagar and Golconda. The victorious armies sacked the city of Vijayanagara.
- Krishnadeva Raya, for example, supported some claimants to power in the Sultanates and took pride in the title "establisher of the Yavana kingdom". Similarly, the Sultan of Bijapur intervened to resolve succession disputes in Vijayanagara following the death of Krishnadeva Raya.

The Rayas and the Nayakas

- These chiefs often moved from one area to another, and in many cases were accompanied by peasants looking for fertile land on which to settle. These chiefs were known as nayakas, and they usually spoke Telugu or Kannada.

- The amara-nayaka system was a major political innovation of the Vijayanagara Empire.
- It is likely that many features of this system were derived from the iqta system of the Delhi Sultanate. The amara-nayakas were military commanders who were given territories to govern by the raya.
- They collected taxes and other dues from peasants, craftspersons and traders in the area.
- The amara-nayakas sent tribute to the king annually and personally appeared in the royal court with gifts to express their loyalty.
- During the course of the seventeenth century, many of these nayakas established independent kingdoms. This hastened the collapse of the central imperial structure.

Vijayanagar- The Capital and its Environ

- Vijayanagara, was characterised by a distinctive physical layout and building style.

Water resources

- The most striking feature about the location of Vijayanagara is the natural basin formed by the river Tungabhadra which flows in a north-easterly direction.
- The most important such tank was built in the early years of the fifteenth century and is now called Kamalapuram tank.
- One of the most prominent waterworks to be seen among the ruins is the Hiriya canal.
  1. This canal drew water from a dam across the Tungabhadra and irrigated the cultivated valley that separated the "sacred centre" from the "urban core".
  2. This was apparently built by kings of the Sangama dynasty.

Fortifications and roads

- Abdur Razzaq, an ambassador sent by the ruler of Persia to Calicut in the 15th century, was greatly impressed by the fortifications, and mentioned seven lines of forts.
- These encircled not only the city but also its agricultural hinterland and forests.
- The outermost wall linked the hills surrounding the city.
- No mortar or cementing agent was employed anywhere in the construction.
- The stone blocks were wedge shaped, which held them in place, and the inner portion of the walls was of earth packed with rubble. Square or rectangular bastions projected outwards.
- The was most significant about this is that it enclosed agricultural tracts.
- Abdur Razzaq noted that "between the first, second and the third walls there are cultivated fields, gardens and houses".
  1. A second line of fortification went round the inner core of the urban complex, and
  2. A third line surrounded the royal centre, within which each set of major buildings was surrounded by its own high walls.
- The rulers of Vijayanagara adopted a more expensive and elaborate strategy of protecting the agricultural belt itself.
- Art historians refer to this style as Indo-Islamic, as it grew continually through interaction with local building practices in different regions.
- The urban core: Tombs and mosques located here have distinctive functions, yet their architecture resembles that of the mandapas found in the temples of Hampi.

The Royal Centre

- It was located in the south-western part of the settlement. Although designated as a royal centre, it included over 60 temples.

The Mahanavami Dibba

- The "king's palace" is the largest of the enclosures but has not yielded definitive evidence of being a royal residence.
- It has two of the most impressive platforms, usually called the "audience hall" and the "mahanavami dibba".
- Rituals associated with the structure probably coincided with Mahanavami of the ten-day Hindu festival during the autumn months of September and October, known variously as Dusshera (northern India), Durga Puja (in Bengal) and Navaratri or Mahanavami (in peninsular India).
- The Vijayanagara kings displayed their prestige, power and suzerainty on this occasion.

Other Buildings in the Royal Centre

- One of the most beautiful buildings in the royal centre is the Lotus Mahal, so named by British travellers in the 19th century.
- It may have been a council chamber, a place where the king met his advisers according to Mackenzie.
- One of the most spectacular of these is one known as the Hazara Rama temple.
- The images in the central shrine are missing; however, sculpted panels on the walls survive.
- These include scenes from the Ramayana sculpted on the inner walls of the shrine.
- While many of the structures at Vijayanagara were destroyed when the city was sacked, traditions of building palatial structures were continued by the nayakas.

The Sacred Centre

- According to local tradition, these hills sheltered the monkey kingdom of Vali and Sugriva mentioned in the Ramayana.
- Other traditions suggest that Pampadevi, the local mother goddess, did penance in these hills in order to marry Virupaksha, the guardian deity of the kingdom, also recognised as a form of Shiva.
- To this day this marriage is celebrated annually in the Virupaksha temple.
- Temple building in the region had a long history, going back to dynasties such as the Pallavas, Chalukyas, Hoysalas and Cholas.
- Rulers very often encouraged temple building as a means of associating themselves with the divine – often, the deity was explicitly or implicitly identified with the king.
- Temples also functioned as centres of learning.
- Besides, rulers and others often granted land and other resources for the maintenance of temples.

Consequently, temples developed as significant religious, social, cultural and economic centres.
- It is likely that the very choice of the site of Vijayanagara was inspired by the existence of the shrines of Virupaksha and Pampadevi.
- All royal orders were signed "Shri Virupaksha", usually in the Kannada script. Rulers also indicated their close links with the gods by using the title "Hindu Suratrana".
- This was a Sanskritisation of the Arabic term Sultan, meaning king, so it literally meant Hindu Sultan.

Gopurams and Mandapas
- In terms of temple architecture, by this period certain new features were in evidence. These included structures of immense scale that must have been a mark of imperial authority, best exemplified by the raya gopurams or royal gateways that often dwarfed the towers on the central shrines, and signalled the presence of the temple from a great distance.
- They were also probably meant as reminders of the power of kings, able to command the resources, techniques and skills needed to construct these towering gateways.
- Other distinctive features include mandapas or pavilions and long, pillared corridors that often ran around the shrines within the temple complex.

Virupaksha Temple
- It was built over centuries. Inscriptions suggest that the earliest shrine dated to the 9^{th}-10^{th} centuries, it was substantially enlarged with the establishment of the Vijayanagara Empire.
- The hall in front of the main shrine was built by Krishnadeva Raya to mark his accession.
- This was decorated with delicately carved pillars.
- He is also credited with the construction of the eastern gopuram.
- These additions meant that the central shrine came to occupy a relatively small part of the complex.
- The halls in the temple were used for a variety of purposes.
- Some were spaces in which the images of gods were placed to witness special programmes of music, dance, drama, etc.
- Others were used to celebrate the marriages of deities, and yet others were meant for the deities to swing in.
- Special images, distinct from those kept in the small central shrine, were used on these occasions.

Vitthala Temple
- The principal deity was Vitthala, a form of Vishnu generally worshipped in Maharashtra.
- The introduction of the worship of the deity in Karnataka is another indication of the ways in which the rulers of Vijayanagara drew on different traditions to create an imperial culture.
- As in the case of other temples, this temple too has several halls and a unique shrine designed as a chariot.
- A characteristic feature of the temple complexes is the chariot streets that extended from the temple gopuram in a straight line.
- These streets were paved with stone slabs and lined with pillared pavilions in which merchants set up their shops.
- Just as the nayakas continued with and elaborated on traditions of fortification, so they did with traditions of temple building.
- In fact, some of the most spectacular gopurams were also built by the local nayakas.

Plotting, Places and Bazaars
- The site was preserved by the Archaeological Survey of India and the Karnataka Department of Archaeology and Museums. In 1976, Hampi was recognised as a site of national importance.
- In the early 1980s, an important project was launched to document the material remains at Vijayanagara in detail, through extensive and intensive surveys, using a variety of recording techniques.
- The first step was to divide the entire area into a set of 25 squares, each designated by a letter of the alphabet.
- John M. Fritz, George Michell and M.S. Nagaraja Rao, who worked for years at the site, wrote: "In our study of these monuments of Vijayanagara we have to imagine a whole series of vanished wooden elements columns, brackets, beams, ceilings, overhanging eaves, and towers decorated with plaster and painted, perhaps brightly."

Questions in Search of Answer
- Investigations of architectural features do not tell us what ordinary men, women and children, comprising the vast majority of the people who lived in the city and its outskirts, thought about these impressive buildings.

Timeline 1: Major Political Developments
c. 1200 - 1300 - Establishment of the Delhi Sultanate (1206)
c. 1300 – 1400 - Establishment of the Vijayanagara Empire (1336): establishment of the Bahmani kingdom (1347): sultanates in Jaunpur, Kashmir and Madura
c. 1400 – 1500 - Establishment of the Gajapati kingdom of Orissa (1435); establishment of the sultanates of Ahmadnagar, Bijapur and Berar (1490)
c. 1500 – 1600 - Conquest of Goa by the Portuguese (1510); collapse of the Bahmani kingdom, emergence of the sultanate Golconda (1518); Establishment of the Mughal empire by Babur (1526)

Timeline 2: Landmarks in the Discovery and Conservation of Vijayanagara
1800 - Colin Mackenzie visits Vijayanagara
1856 - Alexander Green law takes the first detailed photographs of archaeological remains at Hampi
1876 - J.F Fleet begins documenting the inscriptions on the temple walls at the site
1902 - Conservation beings under John Marshall
1986 - Hampi Declared a World Heritage site by UNESCO

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Vijayanagara Empire was founded in which of the following century?
   (a) 13^{th} **(b)** 11^{th}
   (c) 14^{th} **(d)** 12^{th}
2. Who was the founder of Vijayanagara Empire?
   (a) Hasan Gangu **(b)** Prantak I
   (c) Harihara and Bukka **(d)** Krishadeva Raya
3. Who was the Local Goddess of Vijayanagara?
   (a) Parvati **(b)** Durga
   (c) Pampadevi **(d)** Laxmi
4. Consider the following statement and select the incorrect one?
   (a) Brihadishvara temple at Belur.
   (b) Hampi is another name for Vijayanagara.
   (c) Vijayanagara empire was stretched from the river Krishna in the north to the extreme south of the peninsula.
   (d) The rulers of Vijayanagara borrowed concepts and building techniques.
5. Which of the following rivers was the major source of water for Vijayanagara Empire?
   (a) Cauvery **(b)** Krishna
   (c) Tungabhadra **(d)** Narmada
6. Which was the second dynasty to rule over the Vijaynagara empire?
   (a) Sangama **(b)** Saluva
   (c) Tuluva **(d)** Aravidu
7. Vijayanagara adopted the emblem of the 'boar or varahaas'. The symbol was earlier an emblem of which of the following kingdom?
   (a) Hoysalas **(b)** Satvahanas
   (c) Chalukyas **(d)** Rashtrakutas
8. Which foreign traveller visited the Vijayanagara kingdom during the reign of Krishnadevaraya?
   (a) Abdur Razzaq **(b)** Nicolo Conti
   (c) Dominigo Paes **(d)** Nikitin
9. In the Battle of Talikotta in 1565, who was responsible for Vijaynagar's defeat?
   (a) Krishna Deva Singh **(b)** Rama Raja
   (c) Harihar II **(d)** Devraya I
10. Who were Amara-Nayakas in Vijayanagara?
    (a) Chiefs
    (b) Gajapati
    (c) Military Commanders
    (d) Rayas
11. What were local merchants called?
    (a) Kudirai Chettis **(b)** Narapati
    (c) Yavana **(d)** Gajapati

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements:
   1. He was the ruler of the Tuluva dynasty of Vijayanagar empire (1509-29 AD).
   2. His rule was characterised by expansion and consolidation.
   3. He is credited with building some fine temples and adding impressive gopurams to many important south Indian temples.

   The above mentioned statements are related to whom?
   (a) Panghupatinanda
   (b) Rashtrapalananada
   (c) Krishnadevaraya
   (d) Harsha
2. Arrange the following dynasties of Vijayanagara kingdom in chronological order:
   1. Saluva **2.** Aravidu
   3. Sangama

   Select the correct answer using the codes given below:
   (a) 3-2-1 **(b)** 1-2-3
   (c) 2-1-3 **(d)** 3-1-2
3. Consider the following pairs:
   1. Amara-Nayaka System – Vijayanagara Empire
   2. Krishnadeva Raya – Founded Vijayanagara
   3. Mahanavami Dibba – King's palace
   4. Hazara Rama Temple – New Delhi

   Which of the following are correctly paired?
   (a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 2 and 4 only
   (c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 3 and 4 only
4. Consider the following statements:
   1. Harihara and Bukka asserted their independence of the Delhi sultanate and established the kingdom of Vijaynagar on AD 1336.
   2. Vijayanagara was also noted for its markets dealing in spices, textiles and precious stones.

   Which of the following statements is/are correct?
   (a) Both 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Neither 1 nor 2 **(d)** 1 only
5. Consider the following:

Empire	Capital
Vijayanagar	Badami
Pallavas	Kanchipuram
Chalukyas	Hampi
Hoysalas	Halebid

   Which of the following pair is/are correctly matched?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 3 only
   (c) 2 and 4 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4
6. Consider the following statements:
   1. The first dynasty known as the Tuluva dynasty
   2. Krishnadeva Raya belonged to the Sangama dynasty.
   3. His rule was characterised by expansion and consolidation.

   Which of the following is NOT the correct statement(s)?
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
7. With reference to the nayakas, consider the following statements:
   1. They were military commanders who were given territories to govern by the raya.

2. They moved from one area to another, and in many cases were accompanied by peasants looking for fertile land on which to settle.
3. They usually spoke Tamil or Malayalam.

Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:

(a) 2 and 3 only **(b)** 3 only
(c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 2 only

8. Consider the following statements:
   1. The sacred centre was situated on the rocky northern end on the bank of the river Tungabhadra.
   2. The rulers and others often granted land and other resources for the maintenance of temples.
   3. Vijayanagara was inspired by the existence of the shrines of Virupaksha and Pampadevi.
   4. Some of the most spectacular gopurams were also built by the local nayakas.

   Select the correct statements using the code given below:

   (a) 1, 2 and 4 only **(b)** 2, 3 and 4 only
   (c) 1, 2, 3 and 4 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. When was the Battle of Talikota fought? **[DSSSB AE]**
   (a) 1558 **(b)** 1535
   (c) 1565 **(d)** 1532
2. Niccolò Conti visited Vijayanagara in _____ AD during the reign of Devaraya II. **[RRC Group D]**
   (a) 1420 **(b)** 1424
   (c) 1418 **(d)** 1419
3. In which place were the Vijayanagara empire ruins found? **[HSSSC]**
   (a) Gulbarga **(b)** Hampi
   (c) Bidar **(d)** Rakhigarhi
4. Which of the following pair regarding temple architecture is correctly matched?
   (a) Stupa - Tower
   (b) Mandapa - Place in temples where people could assemble
   (c) Shikhara - Mound
   (d) Pradakshina patha - Place where the image of the deity is installed
5. Name the platform used for ritual purposes by the kings of the Vijayanagara Empire. **[CDS]**
   (a) Mahanavami Dibba
   (b) Lotus Mahal
   (c) Hazara Rama
   (d) Virupaksha
6. Regarding the taxation system of Krishna Deva, the ruler of Vijayanagar, consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
   1. The tax rate on land was fixed depending on the quality of the land.
   2. Private owners of workshops paid an industries tax.

   Which of the following given above is/are correct?

   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
7. When Raja Wodeyar founded the kingdom of Mysore, who was the ruler of the Vijayanagar Empire? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Sadasiva **(b)** Tirumala
   (c) Ranga II **(d)** Venkata II
8. Consider the following statements:
   1. Narasimha Saluva ended the Sangama dynasty and seized the throne for himself and started the Saluva dynasty.
   2. Vira Narasimha deposed the last Saluva ruler and seized the throne for himself.
   3. Vira Narsimha was succeeded by his younger brother, Krishnadeva Raya.
   4. Krishnadeva Raya was succeeded by his half brother, Achyuta Raya.

   Which of the statements given above are correct?

   (a) 1, 2 and 3 **(b)** 2, 3 and 4
   (c) 1 and 4 **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4
9. Ashtapradhan was the Council of Ministers
   (a) in the Gupta administration
   (b) in the Chola administration
   (c) in the Vijayanagar administration
   (d) in the Maratha administration

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: Vijayanagara or "city of victory" was the name of both a city and an empire. The empire was founded in the 14th century.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: According to tradition and epigraphic evidence, two brothers, Harihara and Bukka, founded the Vijayanagara Empire in 1336.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: In 1565 the city was sacked and subsequently deserted. Although it fell into ruin in the 17th -18th centuries, it lived on in the memories of people living in the Krishna-Tungabhadra doab. They remembered it as Hampi, a name derived from that of the local mother goddess, Pampadevi.
4. **Option (a) is correct.**
   Explanation: The rulers of Vijayanagara borrowed concepts and building techniques which they then developed further. Some of the areas that were incorporated within the empire had witnessed the development of powerful states such as those of the Cholas in Tamil Nadu and the Hoysalas in Karnataka. Ruling elites in these areas had extended patronage to elaborate temples such as the Brihadishvara temple at Thanjavur and the Chennakeshava temple at Belur.

5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The most striking feature about the location of Vijayanagara is the natural basin formed by the river Tungabhadra which flows in a north-easterly direction.

6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Saluva dynasty, founded by Narasimha, succeeded Sangama dynasty as the second dynasty of the empire. It ruled from 1485 to 1505 AD. They ruled over almost the whole South India.

7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Harihara and Bukka laid the foundation for a new kingdom in about 1336.
Vijayanagara rulers adopted the emblem of the Chalukyas, the boar, or varahaas on their royal insignia.

8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Dominigo Paes, Duarte Barbosa, and Fernao Nuniz, contemporary foreign visitors to Vijayanagar, offered glowing praises to Krishnadevaraya's personality, as well as the city's magnificence and richness.

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1565 Rama Raya, the chief minister of Vijayanagara, led the army into battle at Rakshasi-Tangadi (also known as Talikota), where his forces were routed by the combined armies of Bijapur, Ahmadnagar and Golconda. The victorious armies sacked the city of Vijayanagara.

10. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Military Commanders were called 'Amara-Nayakas' who were governed by the kings.

11. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The local communities of merchants was known as 'Kudirai Chettis'.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Krishnadevaraya:
- He was the emperor of the Vijayanagar empire's Tuluva dynasty (1509-29 AD).
- Expansion and consolidation were hallmarks of his reign.
- He is recognised with constructing some beautiful temples and adorning many south Indian temples with outstanding gopurams.
- He also named a township Nagalapuram after his mother, which is located near Vijayanagar.
- In Telugu, he wrote the Amuktamalyada, a book on statecraft.

2. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Vijayanagar kingdom was successively ruled by four dynasties over a period of more than three hundred years:
- The Sangama dynasty (1336–1485),
- The Saluva dynasty (1485–1505),
- The Tuluva dynasty (1505–1570) and
- The Aravidu dynasty (1570–1650).

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Vijayanagara Empire was created in 1336 by two brothers, Harihara and Bukka.
The mahanavami dibba: The "king's palace" is the largest of the enclosures but has not yielded definitive evidence of being a royal residence.
It has two of the most impressive platforms, usually called the "audience hall" and the "mahanavami dibba".
Devaraya II, the then-king of Vijayanagara, constructed Hazara Rama Temple in the early 15th century in Karnataka.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Harihara and Bukka asserted their independence of the Delhi sultanate and established the kingdom of Vijaynagar in AD 1336.
Vijaynagar was noted for its market dealings in spices, textiles and precious stones.
Trade was often regarded as a status symbol for such cities, which boasted of a wealthy population that demanded high-value exotic goods, especially precious stones and jewellery.

5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:

1.	Vijayanagar	Hampi
2.	Pallavas	Kanchipuram
3.	Chalukyas	Badami
4.	Hoysalas	Halebid

6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The first dynasty, known as the Sangama dynasty, exercised control till 1485. They were supplanted by the Saluvas, who were replaced by the Tuluvas in 1503.
Krishnadeva Raya belonged to the Tuluva dynasty. His rule was characterised by expansion and consolidation.
Krishnadeva Raya is credited with building some fine temples and adding impressive gopurams to many important south Indian temples.

7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Nayakas were military chiefs who usually controlled forts and had armed supporters. They moved from one area to another, and in many cases were accompanied by peasants looking for fertile land on which to settle. They usually spoke Telugu or Kannada.
The amara-nayaka were military commanders who were given territories to govern by the raya. They collected taxes and other dues from peasants, craftspersons and traders in the area.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The sacred centre was situated on the rocky northern end on the bank of the river Tungabhadra. According to local tradition, these hills sheltered the monkey kingdom of Vali and Sugriva mentioned in the Ramayana.

Temple building in the region had a long history, going back to dynasties such as the Pallavas, Chalukyas, Hoysalas and Cholas.

The raya gopurams or royal gateways that often dwarfed the towers on the central shrines, and signalled the presence of the temple from a great distance.

Other distinctive features include mandapas or pavilions and long, pillared corridors that often ran around the shrines within the temple complex.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Vijayanagar Empire and the Deccan Sultanates fought each other in the Battle of Talikota. On January 23, 1565, a battle took place southeast of Bijapur, in what is now northern Karnataka state. Raksasa Thangadi is another name for this conflict. The Vijayanagar Empire was thought to have come to an end with this war.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: During the reign of Devaraya II, Niccolo Conti paid a visit to Vijayanagara in 1420 AD. Niccolo Conti was a businessman, traveller, and writer from Italy.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The ruins of the Vijayanagara empire have been discovered in Hampi.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: From the Vedic time onwards, stupas were used as burial mounds in India.

Shikhara refers to a mountain peak in Sanskrit. It is the most visible and conspicuous component of a Hindu temple in North India. It is the same as Vimana in South India. In Hindu temple architecture in North India, Shikhara is the rising tower.

A Hindu temple's Pradakshina Patha is a significant architectural component. The passage around the garbha griha or sanctum sanctorum in a Hindu temple is known as the sanctum sanctorum. The section is mostly for the purpose of doing pradakshina. Mandapa in Indian architecture, especially Hindu temple architecture, is a pillared hall or pavilion for public rituals.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Mahanavmi Dibba is an elevated square stage used by the Vijayanagar Kings to observe army parades, combat games, aquatic sports, royal animal displays, and musical and religious performances.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The taxing policy of the Vijayanagara rulers was oppressive.

The empire's prosperity can be attributed to their taxation policies.

During the Vijayanagar kingdom's reign, land tax was the most important source of revenue.

During Krishna Devaraya's reign, the tariff was set at one-third to one-sixth of the market value, depending on the quality of the land.

Aside from property taxes, there were other levies on retailers, farm staff, labourers, printers, shoemakers, and musicians, among others. There were also grazing and house taxes enforced.

Commercial taxes were imposed on manufactured goods in the form of levies, tariffs, and customs. Private workshop operators also had to pay an industrial tax.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: When Raja Wodeyar founded the kingdom of Mysore, Venkata II was the ruler of the Vijayanagar Empire.

8. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Harihara-I started the Sangama dynasty. Narasimha Saluva established the Saluva dynasty by defeating Dev Rayua-II of the Sangama dynasty. Vira Narasimha created the Taluva dynasty, which was followed by KD Raya and Achyuta Raya.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The eight prominent officials of Marathas were known as Ashta Pradhan. They were as follows:

- Peshwa- Prime Minister.
- Amatya/ Mazumdar- Finance Minister.
- Samant/Dabir- Foreign Minister.
- Waqia-Navis-Home Minister.
- Sachiv- Secratary, preparing royal edicts.
- Sar-i-Naubat or Senapati – Commander-in-Chief, managing the forces and defense of the Empire.
- Nyayadhish – Chief Justice, dispensing justice on civil and criminal matters.
- Panditrao – High Priest, managing internal religious matters.
- The council was formed in 1674 by Chatrapati Shivaji.
- The term Ashta Pradhan literally translates to “the Prime Eight”, from the Sanskrit ashta (“eight”) and pradhan (“prime”).
- The body discharged the functions of a modern council of minister, this is regarded as one of the first successful instances of ministerial delegation in India.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

8 PEASANTS, ZAMINDARS AND THE STATE

Introduction

- During the 16th and 17th centuries about 85% of the population of India lived in its villages. Both peasants and landed elites were involved in agricultural production and claimed rights to a share of the produce. At the same time agencies from outside also entered into the rural world. Most important among these was the Mughal state, which derived the bulk of its income from agricultural production.

Peasants & Agriculture Production

- The basic unit of agricultural society was the village, inhabited by peasants who performed the manifold seasonal tasks that made up agricultural production throughout the year. Several kinds of areas such as large tracts of dry land or hilly regions were not cultivable in the same way as the more fertile expanses of land.

Looking for Sources

- The major source for the agrarian history of the 16th and early 17th centuries are chronicles and documents from the Mughal court. One of the most important chronicles was the Ain-i Akbari.
- Any revolt or assertion of autonomous power against the Mughal state was, in the eyes of the author of the Ain, predestined to fail.
- The extensive records of the East India Company provide us with useful descriptions of agrarian relations in eastern India. All these sources record instances of conflicts between peasants, zamindars and the state.

Ain-i Akbari

- It recorded the arrangements made by the state to ensure cultivation, to enable the collection of revenue by the agencies of the state and to regulate the relationship between the state and rural magnates, the zamindars.

Peasants and their Lands

- The term which Indo-Persian sources of the Mughal period most frequently used to denote a peasant was raiyat or muzarian. Sources of the 17th century refer to two kinds of peasants – "khud-kashta" and "pahi-kashta".
  1. Khud-Kashta were residents of the village in which they held their lands.
  2. Pahi-Kashta were non-resident cultivators who belonged to some other village, but cultivated lands elsewhere on a contractual basis.
- Cultivation was based on the principle of individual ownership. Peasant lands were bought and sold in the same way as the lands of other property owners.

Irrigation and Technology

- Factors that accounted for the constant expansion of Agriculture:
  1. The abundance of land
  2. Available labour
  3. The mobility of peasants.
- Monsoons remained the backbone of Indian agriculture, as they are even today.
- Irrigation projects received state support as well.
- In northern India the state undertook digging of new canals and also repaired old ones like the shahnahr in the Punjab during Shah Jahan's reign.

An Abundance of Crops

- Agriculture was organised around two major seasonal cycles, the kharif and the rabi.
- According to Ain, the Mughal provinces of Agra produced 39 varieties of crops and Delhi produced 43 over the two seasons. Bengal produced 50 varieties of rice alone.
- However, the focus on the cultivation of basic staples did not mean that agriculture in medieval India was only for subsistence.
- Cash Crops for Generating Revenue:
  1. The Mughal state also encouraged peasants to cultivate such crops as they brought in more revenue. Crops such as cotton and sugarcane were jins-i kamil par excellence.
  2. Cotton was grown over a great swathe of territory spread over central India and the Deccan plateau, whereas Bengal was famous for its sugar. Such cash crops would also include various sorts of oilseeds and lentils.
- This shows how subsistence and commercial production were closely intertwined in an average peasant's holding. During the 17th century several new crops from different parts of the world reached the Indian.

The Village Community

- There were three constituents of this community – the cultivators, the panchayat, and the village headman (muqaddam or mandal).

Caste and the Rural Milieu

- Deep inequities on the basis of caste and other castelike distinctions meant that the cultivators were a highly heterogeneous group. Among those who tilled the land, there was a sizeable number who worked as menials or agricultural labourers.
- In Muslim communities menials like the halalkhoran (scavengers) were housed outside the boundaries of the village; similarly, the mallahzadas (literally, sons

of boatmen) in Bihar were comparable to slaves. There was a direct correlation between caste, poverty and social status at the lower strata of society.

Panchayats and headmen

- The village panchayat was an assembly of elders, usually important people of the village with hereditary rights over their property.
- An oligarchy, the panchayat represented various castes and communities in the village, though the village menial-cum-agricultural worker was unlikely to be represented there.
- The decisions made by these panchayats were binding on the members. The panchayat was headed by a headman known as muqaddam or mandal.
- The headman was chosen through the consensus of the village elders, and that this choice had to be ratified by the zamindar.
- Headmen held office as long as they enjoyed the confidence of the village elders, failing which they could be dismissed by them.

Function of Panchayat

- To supervise the preparation of village accounts, assisted by the accountant or patwari of the panchayat.
- One important function of the panchayat was to ensure that caste boundaries among the various communities inhabiting the village were upheld. In eastern India all marriages were held in the presence of the mandal.
- Panchayats also had the authority to levy fines and inflict more serious forms of punishment like expulsion from the community.

Fund for the Panchayat

- The panchayat derived its funds from contributions made by individuals to a common financial pool. These funds were used for defraying the costs of entertaining revenue officials who visited the village from time to time.
- Expenses for community welfare activities such as tiding over natural calamities, were also met from these funds.
- Often these funds were also deployed in construction of a bund or digging a canal which peasants usually could not afford to do on their own.

Jati Panchayat

- In addition to the village panchayat each caste or jati in the village had its own jati panchayat.
- In Rajasthan jati panchayats arbitrated civil disputes between members of different castes.
- They mediated in contested claims on land, decided whether marriages were performed according to the norms laid down by a particular caste group, determined who had ritual precedence in village functions, and so on.
- In most cases, except in matters of criminal justice, the state respected the decisions of jati panchayats.
- In the eyes of the petitioners the right to the basic minimum for survival was sanctioned by custom. They regarded the village panchayat as the court of appeal that would ensure that the state carried out its moral obligations and guaranteed justice.
- The decision of the panchayat in conflicts between "lower-caste" peasants and state officials or the local zamindar could vary from case to case.

Village artisans

- According to the records of 18th-century zamindars in Bengal who remunerated blacksmiths, carpenters, even goldsmiths for their work by paying them "a small daily allowance and diet money". This later came to be described as the jajmani system, though the term was not in vogue in the 16th and 17th centuries.

Women in Agrarian Society

- Women and men had to work shoulder to shoulder in the fields. Men tilled and ploughed, while women sowed, weeded, threshed and winnowed the harvest.
- Nonetheless biases related to women's biological functions did continue.
- Menstruating women, for instance, were not allowed to touch the plough or the potter's wheel in western India, or enter the groves where betel-leaves (paan) were grown in Bengal.
- Artisanal tasks such as spinning yarn, sifting and kneading clay for pottery, and embroidery were among the many aspects of production dependent on female labour.
- Women were considered an important resource in agrarian society also because they were child bearers in a society dependent on labour.

Issues faced by Women

- At the same time, high mortality rates among women owing to malnutrition, frequent pregnancies, death during childbirth – often meant a shortage of wives.
- This led to the emergence of social customs in peasant and artisan communities that were distinct from those prevalent among elite groups.
- Marriages in many rural communities required the payment of bride-price rather than dowry to the bride's family.
- Remarriage was considered legitimate both among divorced and widowed women.

Status of Women

- According to established social norms, the household was headed by a male. Thus, women were kept under strict control by the male members of the family and the community.
- They could inflict draconian punishments if they suspected infidelity on the part of women.
- Documents from Western India – Rajasthan, Gujarat and Maharashtra – record petitions sent by women to the village panchayat, seeking redress and justice.
- Wives protested against the infidelity of their husbands or the neglect of the wife and children by the male head of the household, the grihasthi.
- While male infidelity was not always punished, the state and "superior" caste groups did intervene when it came to ensuring that the family was adequately provided for.
- Amongst the landed gentry, women had the right to inherit property. Instances from the Punjab show that women, including widows, actively participated in the rural land market as sellers of property inherited by them.

- Hindu and Muslim women inherited zamindaris which they were free to sell or mortgage.
- Women zamindars were known in eighteenth-century Bengal. In fact, one of the biggest and most famous of the eighteenth-century zamindaris, that of Rajshahi, had a woman at the helm.

Forest and Tribes

- Forest dwellers were termed jangli in contemporary texts. The term described those whose livelihood came from the gathering of forest produce, hunting and shifting agriculture.
- These activities were largely season specific. Among the Bhils spring was reserved for collecting forest produce, summer for fishing, the monsoon months for cultivation, and autumn and winter for hunting.
- For the state, the forest was a subversive place – a place of refuge (mawas) for troublemakers.
- Babur says that jungles provided a good defence "behind which the people of the pargana become stubbornly rebellious and pay no taxes".

Inroads into Forests

- In the Mughal political ideology, the hunt symbolised the overwhelming concern of the state to relate to all its subjects, rich and poor. The hunt was a subject frequently painted by court artists.
- The spread of commercial agriculture was an important external factor that impinged on the lives of those who lived in the forests.
- Forest products – like honey, beeswax and gum lac – were in great demand. Some, such as gum lac, became major items of overseas export from India in the 17^{th} century.
- Elephants were also captured and sold. Trade involved an exchange of commodities through barter.
- Some tribes, like the Lohanis in the Punjab, were engaged in overland trade, between India and Afghanistan, and in the town-country trade in the Punjab itself.

Changes in the Lives of Forest Dwellers

- Many tribal chiefs had become zamindars, some even became kings.
- In Assam, the Ahom kings had their paiks, people who were obliged to render military service in exchange for land.
- The capture of wild elephants was declared a royal monopoly by the Ahom kings.
- Though the transition from a tribal to a monarchical system had started much earlier, the process seems to have become fully developed only by the sixteenth century.
- The Koch kings fought and subjugated a number of neighbouring tribes in a long sequence of wars through the 16^{th} and 17^{th} centuries.
- New cultural influences also began to penetrate into forested zones.

The Zamindars

- The zamindars who were landed proprietors who also enjoyed certain social and economic privileges by virtue of their superior status in rural society.
- Caste was one factor that accounted for the elevated status of zamindars; another factor was that they performed certain services (khidmat) for the state.
- The zamindars held extensive personal lands termed milkiyat, meaning property.
- Milkiyat lands were cultivated for the private use of zamindars, often with the help of hired or servile labour.
- Zamindars also derived their power from the fact that they could often collect revenue on behalf of the state, a service for which they were compensated financially.
- Most zamindars had fortresses (qilachas) as well as an armed contingent comprising units of cavalry, artillery and infantry.
- Abu'l Fazl's account indicates that an "upper-caste", Brahmana-Rajput combine had already established firm control over rural society.
- It also reflects a fairly large representation from the so-called intermediate castes, as we saw earlier, as well as a liberal sprinkling of Muslim zamindaris.

Consolidation of Clan

- A combination of factors also allowed the consolidation of clan- or lineage-based zamindaris. For example, the Rajputs and Jats adopted these strategies to consolidate their control over vast swathes of territory in northern India. Likewise, peasant-pastoralists (like the Sadgops) carved out powerful zamindaris in areas of central and southwestern Bengal
- The buying and selling of zamindaris accelerated the process of monetisation in the countryside. In addition, zamindars sold the produce from their milkiyat lands. Although there can be little doubt that zamindars were an exploitative class, their relationship with the peasantry had an element of reciprocity, paternalism and patronage. Two aspects reinforce this view:
  1. First, the bhakti saints, who eloquently condemned caste-based and other forms of oppression, did not portray the zamindars as exploiters or oppressors of the peasantry.
  2. Second, in a large number of agrarian uprisings which erupted in north India in the seventeenth century, zamindars often received the support of the peasantry in their struggle against the state.

Land Revenue System

- Revenue from the land was the economic mainstay of the Mughal Empire. It was therefore vital for the state to create an administrative apparatus to ensure control over agricultural production, and to fix and collect revenue from across the length and breadth of the rapidly expanding empire. This apparatus included the office (daftar) of the diwan who was responsible for supervising the fiscal system of the empire.
- The land revenue arrangements consisted of two stages: first, assessment and then actual collection.
- The jama was the amount assessed, as opposed to hasil, the amount collected.
- In 1665, Aurangzeb expressly instructed his revenue officials to prepare annual records of the number of cultivators in each village.

The flow of silver

- The Mughal Empire consolidated powers and resources from the empires of Ming (China), Safavid (Iran) and Ottoman (Turkey) during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

- The political stability achieved by all these empires helped create vibrant networks of overland trade from China to the Mediterranean Sea.
- Voyages of discovery and the opening up of the New World resulted in a massive expansion of Asia's (particularly India's) trade with Europe. This resulted in a greater geographical diversity of India's overseas trade as well as an expansion in the commodity composition of this trade.
- An expanding trade brought in huge amounts of silver bullion into Asia to pay for goods procured from India, and a large part of that bullion gravitated towards India.
- This was good for India as it did not have natural resources of silver. As a result, the period between the 16th and 18th centuries was also marked by a remarkable stability in the availability of metal currency, particularly the silver rupya in India.
- The testimony of an Italian traveller, Giovanni Careri, who passed through India c. 1690, provides a graphic account about the way silver travelled across the globe to reach India.

The Ain-i-Akbari of Abu'l Fazl Allami

- The Ain-i Akbari was the culmination of a large historical, administrative project of classification undertaken by Abu'l Fazl at the order of Emperor Akbar.
- It was completed in 1598, the forty-second regnal year of the emperor, after having gone through five revisions.
- The Ain was part of a larger project of history writing commissioned by Akbar. This history, known as the Akbar Nama, comprised three books. The first two provided a historical narrative.
- The Ain-i Akbari, the third book, was organised as a compendium of imperial regulations and a gazetteer of the empire. The Ain gives detailed accounts of the organisation of the court, administration and army, the sources of revenue and the physical layout of the provinces of Akbar's empire and the literary, cultural and religious traditions of the people.
- Along with a description of the various departments of Akbar's government and elaborate descriptions of the various provinces (subas) of the empire, the Ain gives us intricate quantitative information of those provinces.
- The Ain is made up of five books (daftars), of which the first three books describe the administration. The first book, called manzil-abadi, concerns the imperial household and its maintenance.
- The second book, sipah-abadi, covers the military and civil administration and the establishment of servants. This book includes notices and short biographical sketches of imperial officials (mansabdars), learned men, poets and artists.
- The third book, mulk-abadi, is the one which deals with the fiscal side of the empire and provides rich quantitative information on revenue rates, followed by the "Account of the Twelve Provinces". The mulk-abadi gives a fascinating, detailed and highly complex view of agrarian society in northern India.
- This section has detailed statistical information, which includes the geographic, topographic and economic profile of all subas and their administrative and fiscal divisions (sarkars, parganas and mahals), total measured area, and assessed revenue (jama).
- After setting out details at the suba level, the Ain goes on to give a detailed picture of the sarkars below the suba. This it does in the form of tables, which have eight columns giving the following information:
  (1) parganat/mahal; (2) qila (forts); (3) arazi and zamin-i paimuda (measured area); (4) naqdi, revenue assessed in cash; (5) suyurghal, grants of revenue in charity; (6) zamindars; columns 7 and 8 contain details of the castes of these zamindars, and their troops including their horsemen (sawar), foot-soldiers (piyada) and elephants (fil).
- The fourth and fifth books (daftars) deal with the religious, literary and cultural traditions of the people of India and also contain a collection of Akbar's "auspicious sayings".
- Although the Ain was officially sponsored to record detailed information to facilitate Emperor Akbar govern his empire, it was much more than a reproduction of official papers.
- That the manuscript was revised five times by the author would suggest a high degree of caution on the part of Abu'l Fazl and a search for authenticity.
- Numerous errors in totalling have been detected. These are generally minor and do not detract from the overall quantitative veracity of the manuals. Another limitation of the Ain is the somewhat skewed nature of the quantitative data. Data were not collected uniformly from all provinces.
- Further, while the fiscal data from the subas is remarkable for its richness, some equally vital parameters such as prices and wages from these same areas are not as well documented. The detailed list of prices and wages that the Ain does provide is mainly derived from data pertaining to areas in or around the imperial capital of Agra, and is therefore of limited relevance for the rest of the country.

TIMELINE: Land Marks in the History of the Mughal Empire
1526 - Babur defeats Ibrahim Lodi, the Delhi sultan, at Panipat, becomes the first Mughal emperor
1530-40 - First phase of Humayun's reign
1540-55 - Humayun defeated by Sher Shah, in exile at the safavid court
1555-56 - Humayun regains lost territories
1556-1605 - Reign of Akbar
1605-27 - Reign of Jahangir
1628-58 - Reign of Shan Jahan
1658-1707 - Reign of Aurangzeb
1739 - Nadir Shah invades India and sacks Delhi
1761 - Ahmad Shah Abdali defeats the Marathas in the third battle of Panipat
1765 - The diwani of Bengal transferred to the East India company
1857 - Last Mughal ruler, Bahadur Shah II, deposed by the British and exiled to Rangoon (Present day Yangon, Myanmar)

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Which of the following was an important chronicle from the 16th and early 17th centuries?
   (a) Akbar Nama **(b)** Ain-i Akbari
   (c) Shahjahan Nama **(d)** Alamgir Nama
2. Who was the author of the Ain-i Akbari?
   (a) Abul Fazal **(b)** Al-Biruni
   (c) Ibn Battuta **(d)** Abdur Razzaq
3. From the sources of 17th Century "khud-kashta" and "pahi-kashta" were used for which of the following?
   (a) Village Headman & Its Officials
   (b) Emperor Finance Minister & Advisor
   (c) Peasants
   (d) Qazi
4. What is/are the following factors that accounted for the constant expansion of Agriculture?
   (a) The abundance of land.
   (b) Availability of Labour
   (c) Mobility of Peasants
   (d) All of the above
5. Shahnahr canal in Punjab was repaired during which of the following reign?
   (a) Akbar **(b)** Shah Jahan
   (c) Jahangir **(d)** Bahadur Shah I
6. During the Mughal Period, "Muqaddam" was referred to which of the following?
   (a) Cultivators **(b)** Patwari
   (c) Village headman **(d)** Qazi
7. Which was an important Jins-i-Kamil of Central India during the Mughal Period?
   (a) Cotton **(b)** Sugarcane
   (c) Oil Seeds **(d)** All of these
8. Which jati panchayats arbitrated civil disputes between members of different castes?
   (a) Awadh **(b)** Rajasthan
   (c) Bengal **(d)** Punjab
9. Who introduced the term Jajmani system?
   (a) Humayun **(b)** Shah Jahan
   (c) Jahangir **(d)** None of the above
10. Who says that jungles provided a good defence "behind which the people of the pargana become stubbornly rebellious and pay no taxes"?
    (a) Babur **(b)** Aurangzeb
    (c) Shah Jahan **(d)** Bahadur Shah II
11. Which of the following forest products were in great demand?
    (a) Gum Lac **(b)** Honey
    (c) Beeswax **(d)** All of these
12. Ahom kings belongs to which of the following State?
    (a) Madhya Pradesh **(b)** Andhra Pradesh
    (c) Orissa **(d)** Assam
13. Who instructed his revenue officials to prepare annual records of the number of cultivators in each village?
    (a) Aurangzeb **(b)** Shah Jahan I
    (c) Shah Alam II **(d)** Bahadur Shah II
14. Which of the following book deals with the fiscal side of the empire and provides rich quantitative information on revenue rates?
    (a) Manzil-abadi **(b)** Sipah-abadi
    (c) Mulk-abadi **(d)** None of the above
15. Ottoman empire belonged to which of the following country?
    (a) Saudi Arabia **(b)** Israel
    (c) Turkey **(d)** Syria
16. Which of the metal was used more often to make coins during the Mughal Empire?
    (a) Gold **(b)** Silver
    (c) Copper **(d)** All of the above
17. Which of the following statement is correct about Ain-i-Akbari?
    (a) Manzil-Abadi gives information about the fiscal aspect of the state.
    (b) Sipah-Abadi is related to civil and military administration.
    (c) Mulk-Abadi is related to the royal household.
    (d) All of these.
18. In the context of the Mughal Empire which of the following statement is not correct?
    (a) There were two types of peasants-khud- Kashta and Pahi-Kashta.
    (b) States help was available for irrigation.
    (c) Many new crops reached India such as maize, potato, etc.
    (d) Jins-i-Kamil was a Rabi Crop.
19. Which of the following Muslim community was considered menial?
    (a) Mandal **(b)** Halalkhoran
    (c) Majur **(d)** Jangli
20. Which one of the following statement about women's roles in agrarian society is incorrect?
    (a) The harvest was sown, weeded, threshed, and winnowed by women.
    (b) In the fields, women and men worked side by side.
    (c) Women were not allowed to touch the plough on certain days of the month.
    (d) Women traded the produce in international marketplaces.
21. How did the Panchayats utilise the finances allocated to them during the Mughal Empire?
    (a) It was used to pay salary to muqaddam and chowkidar.
    (b) It was used to entertain revenue officials.
    (c) It was used to meet expenses for the community welfare.
    (d) All of these.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements about the Ain-i-Akbari:
   1. It was written by Abu'l Fazl.
   2. It is a part of a larger work called Akbar Nama.
   3. It describes the Mughal Empire as having a diverse population and a composite culture.

4. It was later revised by Sadullah Khan on the orders of Shah Jahan.

Which of the following statements are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2, 3 and 4 only
(c) 3 and 4 only (d) 1, 2 and 3 only

2. Consider the following statements:
1. During the 16th & 17th Centuries the basic unit of agriculture society was the town as most of the population lived there.
2. The major source for the agrarian history of the 16th and 17th centuries were chronicles.

Which of the following statement is/are NOT correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

3. In the context of Agriculture, consider the following statements:
1. Agriculture in medieval India was only for subsistence.
2. The Mughal state encouraged peasants to cultivate cash crops.
3. Bengal was famous for Cotton which was grown over a great swathe of territory.

Select the correct statements using the code given below:
(a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 2 only

4. Consider the following statements:
1. In Muslim communities menials like the halalkhoran (scavengers) were housed outside the boundaries of the village.
2. The one who tilled the land was known as menials.
3. There was a direct correlation between caste, poverty and social status at the lower strata of society.

Select the correct statements using the code given below:
(a) 1 and 2 only (b) 1, 2 and 3
(c) 2 and 3 only (d) 1 and 3 only

5. Consider the following statements:
1. The village panchayat was an assembly of elders headed by a headman known as Diwan-i-Ala.
2. The headmen held office as long as they enjoyed the confidence of the King, failing which they could be dismissed by them.

Select the correct statements using the code given below:
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

6. Consider the following statements regarding the function of Panchayat:
1. The panchayat was to ensure that caste boundaries among the various communities inhabiting the village were upheld.
2. Panchayats also had the authority to levy fines and inflict more serious forms of punishment like expulsion from the community.

Select the correct statements using the code given below:
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

7. Consider the following statement(s) related to the importance of Women during Medieval Period:
1. Women were considered an important resource in agrarian society.
2. Women does not have the right to inherit property.

Select the incorrect statements using the code given below:
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

8. Consider the following statements related to Zamindars:
1. Zamindars were a class of people in the countryside who participate directly in the processes of agricultural production.
2. The zamindars held extensive personal lands termed qilachas, meaning property.
3. Zamindars also derived their power to collect revenue on behalf of the state.

Which of the following statements is/are correct?
(a) 3 only (b) 2 only
(c) 1 and 2 only (d) 1 and 3 only

9. With reference to Land Revenue System, consider the following statements:
1. Revenue from the land was the economic mainstay of the Mughal Empire.
2. The land revenue arrangements consisted of three stages.
3. The jama was the amount assessed, as opposed to hasil, the amount collected.

Which of the following statements is/are correct?
(a) 3 only (b) 2 only
(c) 1 and 2 only (d) 1 and 3 only

10. With reference to flow of silver consider the following statements:
1. The Mughal Empire consolidated powers and resources from the empires of Ming (China), Safavid (Turkey) and Ottoman (Iran) during the 16th and 17th centuries.
2. An expanding trade brought in huge amounts of silver bullion into Asia to pay for goods procured from India.

Select the incorrect statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

11. In the context of Ain-I Akbari, consider the following statements:
1. Ain-i Akbari is a compilation of imperial regulations and a gazetteer of the empire.
2. It is a part of the Akbar Nama and was completed in 1598.
3. The Ain is made up of five books.
4. The second book, called manzil-abadi, concerns the imperial household and its maintenance.

Which of the following statements is/are correct?
(a) 2 and 4 only (b) 1, 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2, 3 and 4

12. Consider the following:
1. Pahi-Kashta - Residents of the village in which they held their lands.

2. Khud-Kashta - Non-resident cultivators who belonged to some other village, but cultivated lands elsewhere on a contractual basis.
3. Agriculture was organised around two major seasonal cycles- Rabi & Zaid.
4. Bengal was famous for - Sugar

How many of the following pair(s) are correct?

(a) Only 1 pair is correct
(b) Only 3 pairs are correct
(c) Only 2 pairs are correct
(d) All of the pairs are correct

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Which of the following crops was banned by Jahangir? **[Jharkhand PCS]**
   (a) Betel leaf **(b)** Chillies
   (c) Tobacco **(d)** Maize
2. Who authored 'Akbarnama'? **[SSC CGL]**
   (a) Faizi **(b)** Abdus Samad
   (c) Abdul Latif **(d)** Abul Fazl
3. 'Humayun Nama' provides a glimpse into the world of Mughals. Who wrote the book? **[NTPC CBT]**
   (a) Jahanara Begum **(b)** Gulbadan Begum
   (c) Abu'l Fazl **(d)** Nadira
4. Which one of the following statements about the Ain-i-Akbari is not correct? **[NDA]**
   (a) It was written by Abu'l Fazl.
   (b) It is a part of a larger work called Akbar Nama.
   (c) It describes the Mughal Empire as having a diverse population and a composite culture.
   (d) It was later revised by Sadullah Khan on the orders of Shah Jahan.

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The major source for the agrarian history of the 16th and early 17th centuries are chronicles and documents from the Mughal court. One of the most important chronicles was the Ain-i Akbari.

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: The Ain-i Akbari was the culmination of a large historical, administrative project of classification undertaken by Abu'l Fazl at the order of Emperor Akbar.

3. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: The term which Indo-Persian sources of the Mughal period most frequently used to denote a peasant was raiyat or muzarian. Sources of the 17th century refer to two kinds of peasants – "khud-kashta" and "pahi-kashta".
The former were residents of the village in which they held their lands.
The latter were non-resident cultivators who belonged to some other village, but cultivated lands elsewhere on a contractual basis.

4. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation:
Factors that accounted for the constant expansion of Agriculture:
- The abundance of land
- Available labour
- The mobility of peasants.
- Monsoons remained the backbone of Indian agriculture, as they are even today.
- Irrigation projects received state support as well.

5. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: In northern India the state undertook digging of new canals and also repaired old ones like the shahnahr in the Punjab during Shah Jahan's reign.

6. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: There were three constituents of the village community – the cultivators, the panchayat, and the village headman (muqaddam or mandal).

7. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The Mughal state also encouraged peasants to cultivate such crops as they brought in more revenue. Crops such as cotton and sugarcane were jins-i kamil par excellence.
Cotton was grown over a great swathe of territory spread over central India and the Deccan plateau, whereas Bengal was famous for its sugar. Such cash crops would also include various sorts of oilseeds and lentils.

8. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: In addition to the village panchayat each caste or jati in the village had its own jati panchayat.
In Rajasthan jati panchayats arbitrated civil disputes between members of different castes.

9. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Jajmani system is a socio-economic and ritual arrangement in which one caste secures the service of another caste. In jajmani system every one works for a certain family or group, with whom they are hereditarily linked.
William H Wiser was the first one to introduce the term Jajmani system in which it clearly describes how different castes interact with each other for the agricultural and economic process.

10. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Babur says that jungles provided a good defence "behind which the people of the pargana become stubbornly rebellious and pay no taxes".

11. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The spread of commercial agriculture was an important external factor that impinged on the lives of those who lived in the forests.
Forest products like honey, beeswax and gum lac were in great demand. Some, such as gum lac, became major items of overseas export from India in the 17th century.

12. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: Many tribal chiefs had become zamindars, some even became kings.

In Assam, the Ahom kings had their paiks, people who were obliged to render military service in exchange for land.

The capture of wild elephants was declared a royal monopoly by the Ahom kings.

13. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In 1665, Aurangzeb expressly instructed his revenue officials to prepare annual records of the number of cultivators in each village.

14. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The third book, mulk-abadi, is the one which deals with the fiscal side of the empire and provides rich quantitative information on revenue rates, followed by the "Account of the Twelve Provinces".

The mulk-abadi gives a fascinating, detailed and highly complex view of agrarian society in northern India.

15. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Ottoman Empire was one of the mightiest and longest-lasting dynasties in world history.

The Ottoman Empire was a transcontinental empire based out of modern-day Turkey, which covered much of South-eastern Europe, Western Asia and North Africa between the 14^{th} and early 20^{th} centuries.

16. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: An expanding trade brought in huge amounts of silver bullion into Asia to pay for goods procured from India, and a large part of that bullion gravitated towards India.

This was good for India as it did not have natural resources of silver. As a result, the period between the 16^{th} and 18^{th} centuries was also marked by a remarkable stability in the availability of metal currency, particularly the silver rupya in India.

17. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Ain is made up of five books (daftars), of which the first three books describe the administration.

The first book, called manzil-abadi, concerns the imperial household and its maintenance.

The second book, sipah-abadi, covers the military and civil administration and the establishment of servants. This book includes notices and short biographical sketches of imperial officials (mansabdars), learned men, poets and artists.

The third book, mulk-abadi, is the one which deals with the fiscal side of the empire and provides rich quantitative information on revenue rates, followed by the "Account of the Twelve Provinces". The mulk-abadi gives a fascinating, detailed and highly complex view of agrarian society in northern India.

18. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Crops such as cotton and sugarcane were jins-i kamil par excellence i.e., they are kharif crops.

19. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: In Muslim communities menials like the halalkhoran (scavengers) were housed outside the boundaries of the village; similarly, the mallahzadas (literally, sons of boatmen) in Bihar were comparable to slaves. There was a direct correlation between caste, poverty and social status at the lower strata of society.

20. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Women and men had to work shoulder to shoulder in the fields. Men tilled and ploughed, while women sowed, weeded, threshed and winnowed the harvest.

Nonetheless biases related to women's biological functions did continue.

Menstruating women, for instance, were not allowed to touch the plough or the potter's wheel in western India, or enter the groves where betel-leaves (paan) were grown in Bengal.

Artisanal tasks such as spinning yarn, sifting and kneading clay for pottery, and embroidery were among the many aspects of production dependent on female labour.

Women were considered an important resource in agrarian society also because they were child bearers in a society dependent on labour.

21. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The panchayat derived its funds from contributions made by individuals to a common financial pool. These funds were used for defraying the costs of entertaining revenue officials who visited the village from time to time.

Expenses for community welfare activities such as tiding over natural calamities, were also met from these funds.

Often these funds were also deployed in construction of a bund or digging a canal which peasants usually could not afford to do on their own.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- Ain-i-Akbari was written by Abu'l Fazl in the Persian language in the 16^{th} century.
- Abu'l Fazl was Akbar's court historian.
- Abu'l Fazl worked on the 'Akbar Nama' for about thirteen years.
- Abul Hamid Lahori wrote the Badshah Nama during the reign of Shahjahan.
- Padshahnama was the name given to Badshah Nama.
- Henry Beveridge translated Akbar Nama into English in the early twentieth century.
- It deals with Akbar's administration, army, revenues, household, and geography of his empire.
- It provides rich details about the traditions and culture of the people living in India.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- During the 16^{th} and 17^{th} centuries about 85% of the population of India lived in its villages. Both peasants and landed elites were involved in agricultural production and claimed rights to a share of the produce.
- The major source for the agrarian history of the 16^{th} and early 17^{th} centuries are chronicles and

documents from the Mughal court. One of the most important chronicles was the Ain-i Akbari.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- The focus on the cultivation of basic staples did not mean that agriculture in medieval India was only for subsistence.
- The Mughal state also encouraged peasants to cultivate such crops as they brought in more revenue. Crops such as cotton and sugarcane were jins-i kamil par excellence.
- Cotton was grown over a great swathe of territory spread over central India and the Deccan plateau, whereas Bengal was famous for its sugar. Such cash crops would also include various sorts of oilseeds and lentils.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- In Muslim communities menials like the halalkhoran (scavengers) were housed outside the boundaries of the village.
- There was a direct correlation between caste, poverty and social status at the lower strata of society.
- In a manual from seventeenth century Marwar, Rajputs are mentioned as peasants, sharing the same space with Jats, who were accorded a lower status in the caste hierarchy.
- Castes such as the Ahirs, Gujars and Malis rose in the hierarchy because of the profitability of cattle rearing and horticulture.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- The village panchayat was an assembly of elders headed by a headman known as muqaddam or mandal.
- The headmen held office as long as they enjoyed the confidence of the village elders, failing which they could be dismissed by them.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

- The village panchayat was an assembly of elders headed by a headman known as muqaddam or mandal.
- The headmen held office as long as they enjoyed the confidence of the village elders, failing which they could be dismissed by them.
- The panchayat derived its funds from contributions made by individuals to a common financial pool.
- One important function of the panchayat was to ensure that caste boundaries among the various communities inhabiting the village were upheld.
- Panchayats also had the authority to levy fines and inflict more serious forms of punishment like expulsion from the community.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- Women and men had to work shoulder to shoulder in the fields, so a gendered segregation between the home (for women) and the world (for men) was not possible in this context. But biases related to women's biological functions did continue.
- Women were considered an important resource in agrarian society also because they were child bearers in a society dependent on labour.
- Marriages in many rural communities required the payment of bride-price rather than dowry to the bride's family.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- The zamindars were a class of people in the countryside that lived off agriculture but did not participate directly in the processes of agricultural production.
- They were landed proprietors who also enjoyed certain social and economic privileges by virtue of their superior status in rural society.
- The zamindars held extensive personal lands termed milkiyat, meaning property.
- Zamindars also derived their power from the fact that they could often collect revenue on behalf of the state.
- Most zamindars had fortresses (qilachas) as well as an armed contingent comprising units of cavalry, artillery and infantry.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- Revenue from the land was the economic mainstay of the Mughal Empire.
- This apparatus included the office (daftar) of the diwan who was responsible for supervising the fiscal system of the empire.
- The land revenue arrangements consisted of two stages – first, assessment and then actual collection.
- The jama was the amount assessed, as opposed to hasil, the amount collected.

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- The Mughal Empire consolidated powers and resources from the empires of Ming (China), Safavid (Iran) and Ottoman (Turkey) during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.
- Voyages of discovery and the opening up of the New World resulted in a massive expansion of Asia's (particularly India's) trade with Europe.
- An expanding trade brought in huge amounts of silver bullion into Asia to pay for goods procured from India, and a large part of that bullion gravitated towards India.

11. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- Ain-i Akbari is a compilation of imperial regulations and a gazetteer of the empire.
- It is a part of the Akbar Nama and was completed in 1598, after having gone through five revisions.
- The Ain gives detailed accounts of the organisation of the court, administration and army, the sources of revenue and the physical layout of the provinces of Akbar's empire and

the literary, cultural and religious traditions of the people.

- The Ain is made up of five books (daftars), of which the first three books describe the administration.
- The first book, called manzil-abadi, concerns the imperial household and its maintenance.
- The second book, sipah-abadi, covers the military and civil administration and the establishment of servants.
- The third book, mulk-abadi, is the one which deals with the fiscal side of the empire and provides information on revenue rates, followed by the "Account of the Twelve Provinces".

12. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- The term which Indo-Persian sources of the Mughal period most frequently used to denote a peasant was raiyat or muzarian. Sources of the 17th century refer to two kinds of peasants – "khud-kashta" and "pahi-kashta".
  - Khud-Kashta were residents of the village in which they held their lands.
  - Pahi-Kashta were non-resident cultivators who belonged to some other village, but cultivated lands elsewhere on a contractual basis.
- Agriculture was organised around two major seasonal cycles, the kharif and the rabi.
- Cotton was grown over a great swathe of territory spread over central India and the Deccan plateau, whereas Bengal was famous for its sugar.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Tobacco was introduced by the Portuguese in the late 16th century during the reign of Emperor Akbar. Tobacco use grew so widespread that Jahangir had to issue a decree prohibiting it in 1617.

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Abul Fazl wrote the Akbarnama, a three-volume official history of Akbar's reign.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Gulabadan Begum (his aunt) was inspired by Akbar to write Humayun-Nama.
The book was originally titled "The Ahwal Humayun Padshah Jamah Kardom Gulbadan Begum bint Babur Padshah amma Akbar Padshah" and was written in Persian.

4. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Ain-i-Akbari was written by Abu'l Fazl in the Persian language in the 16th century.

- Abu'l Fazl was Akbar's court historian.
- Abu'l Fazl worked on the 'Akbar Nama' for about thirteen years.
- Abul Hamid Lahori wrote the Badshah Nama during the reign of Shahjahan.
- Padshahnama was the name given to Badshah Nama.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

9 KINGS AND CHRONICLES: THE MUGHAL COURTS

Introduction

- The Mughal kings commissioned court historians to write accounts. These accounts recorded the events of the emperor's time. In addition, their writers collected vast amounts of information from the regions of the subcontinent to help the rulers govern their domain. Chronicles are an indispensable source for any scholar wishing to write a history of the Mughals. This chapter will look at the workings of this rich and fascinating dimension of the Mughal Empire.

The Mughal and Their Empire

- The name Mughal derives from Mongol. They referred to themselves as Timurids, as descendants of the Turkish ruler Timur on the paternal side.

Babur

- Babur, the first Mughal ruler, was related to Ghenghiz Khan from his mother's side.
- He spoke Turkish and referred derisively to the Mongols as barbaric hordes.
- During the 16th century, Europeans used the term Mughal to describe the Indian rulers of this branch of the family.
- The empire was carved out of a number of regional states of India through conquests and political alliances between the Mughals and local chieftains.
- The founder of the empire, Zahiruddin Babur, was driven from his Central Asian homeland, Farghana, by the warring Uzbeks.
- He first established himself at Kabul and then in 1526 pushed further into the Indian subcontinent in search of territories and resources to satisfy the needs of the members of his clan.

Humayun

- Nasiruddin Humayun (1530-40, 1555-56) was a successor of Babur expanded the frontiers of the empire, but lost it to the Afghan leader Sher Shah Sur, who drove him into exile.
- Humayun took refuge in the court of the Safavid ruler of Iran. In 1555 Humayun defeated the Surs, but died a year later.

Akbar

- Jalaluddin Akbar (1556-1605) the greatest of all the Mughal emperors, for he not only expanded but also consolidated his empire, making it the largest, strongest and richest kingdom of his time.
- Akbar succeeded in extending the frontiers of the empire to the Hindukush mountains, and checked the expansionist designs of the Uzbeks of Turan (Central Asia) and the Safavids of Iran.

Rulers of Mughal Empire and the Political Power after Akbar

- Akbar had three fairly able successors in Jahangir (1605-27), Shah Jahan (1628-58) and Aurangzeb (1658-1707), much as their characters varied.
- Under them the territorial expansion continued, though at a much reduced pace.
- The three rulers maintained and consolidated the various instruments of governance.
- During the 16th and 17th centuries the institutions of an imperial structure were created.
- These included effective methods of administration and taxation. The visible centre of Mughal power was the court.
- The political system devised by the Mughals was based on a combination of military power and conscious policy to accommodate the different traditions they encountered in the subcontinent.
- After 1707, following the death of Aurangzeb, the power of the dynasty diminished. In place of the vast apparatus of empire controlled from Delhi, Agra or Lahore – the different capital cities – regional powers acquired greater autonomy.
- In 1857 the last scion of this dynasty, Bahadur Shah Zafar II, was overthrown by the British.

From Turkish to Persian

- Mughal court chronicles were written in Persian. Under the Sultans of Delhi, it flourished as a language of the court and of literary writings, alongside north Indian languages, especially Hindavi and its regional variants.
- Babur wrote poetry and his memoirs in Turkish language.
- It was Akbar who consciously set out to make Persian the leading language of the Mughal court.
- Persian was elevated to a language of empire, conferring power and prestige on those who had a command of it. It was spoken by the king, the royal household and the elite at court. Further, it became the language of administration at all levels.
- Persian was not directly used; its vocabulary and idiom heavily influenced the language of official records in Rajasthani and Marathi and even Tamil.
- A new language, Urdu, sprang from the interaction of Persian with Hindavi.
- Mughal chronicles such as the Akbar Nama were written in Persian, others, like Babur's memoirs, were translated from the Turkish into the Persian Babur Nama.
- Translations of Sanskrit texts such as the Mahabharata and the Ramayana into Persian were commissioned by the Mughal emperors.

- The Mahabharata was translated as the Razmnama (Book of Wars).

The making of manuscripts

- All books in Mughal India were manuscripts & they were handwritten.
- The centre of manuscript production was the imperial kitabkhana.
- People involved in the actual production of the manuscript also got recognition in the form of titles and awards.
- Calligraphy, the art of handwriting, was considered a skill of great importance. It was practised using different styles.
- Akbar's favourite was the nastaliq, a fluid style with long horizontal strokes.

The Painted Image

- Paintings were miniatures, and could therefore be passed around for viewing and mounting on the pages of manuscripts.
- Paintings served not only to enhance the beauty of a book, but were believed to possess special powers of communicating ideas about the kingdom and the power of kings in ways that the written medium could not.
- The Safavid kings of Iran, for example, patronised the finest artists, who were trained in workshops set up at court. The names of painters – such as that of Bihzad – contributed to spreading the cultural fame of the Safavid court far and wide.
- Artists from Iran also made their way to Mughal India. Some were brought to the Mughal court, as in the case of Mir Sayyid Ali and Abdus Samad, who were made to accompany Emperor Humayun to Delhi.

The Akbar Nama and the Badshah Nama

- Among the important illustrated Mughal chronicles the Akbar Nama and Badshah Nama (The Chronicle of a King) are the most well-known.
- The author of the Akbar Nama, Abu'l Fazl grew up in the Mughal capital of Agra.
- He was widely read in Arabic, Persian, Greek philosophy and Sufism.
- These qualities impressed Akbar, who found Abu'l Fazl ideally suited as an adviser and a spokesperson for his policies.
- One major objective of the emperor was to free the state from the control of religious orthodoxy.
- In his role as court historian, Abu'l Fazl both shaped and articulated the ideas associated with the reign of Akbar.
- Beginning in 1589, Abu'l Fazl worked on the Akbar Nama for thirteen years, repeatedly revising the draft.

Akbar Nama

- The Akbar Nama is divided into three books of which the first two are chronicles.
- The third book is the Ain-i Akbari.
- The first volume contains the history of mankind from Adam to one celestial cycle of Akbar's life (30 years).
- The second volume closes in the fortysixth regnal year (1601) of Akbar.
- The Akbar Nama was written to provide a detailed description of Akbar's reign in the traditional diachronic sense of recording politically significant events across time, as well as in the more novel sense of giving a synchronic picture of all aspects of Akbar's empire – geographic, social, administrative and cultural – without reference to chronology.
- In the Ain-i Akbari the Mughal Empire is presented as having a diverse population consisting of Hindus, Jainas, Buddhists and Muslims and a composite culture.
- Abu'l Fazl wrote in a language that was ornate and which attached importance to diction and rhythm, as texts were often read aloud.
- A pupil of Abu'l Fazl, Abdul Hamid Lahori is known as the author of the Badshah Nama.
- Emperor Shah Jahan, hearing of his talents, commissioned him to write a history of his reign modelled on the Akbar Nama.
- The Badshah Nama is this official history in three volumes (daftars) of ten lunar years each. Lahori wrote the first and second daftars comprising the first two decades of the emperor's rule (1627-47); these volumes were later revised by Sadullah Khan, Shah Jahan's wazir.

During the colonial period

- The Asiatic Society of Bengal, founded by Sir William Jones in 1784, undertook the editing, printing and translation of many Indian manuscripts.
- Edited versions of the Akbar Nama and Badshah Nama were first published by the Asiatic Society in the 19th century.
- In the early 20th century, the Akbar Nama was translated into English by Henry Beveridge after years of hard labour.
- Only excerpts of the Badshah Nama have been translated into English to date; the text in its entirety still awaits translation.

The Ideal Kingdom

- Abu'l Fazl placed Mughal kingship as the highest station in the hierarchy of objects receiving light emanating from God (farr-i izadi).
- He was inspired by a famous Iranian sufi, Shihabuddin Suhrawardi (d. 1191) who first developed this idea.
- According to this idea, there was a hierarchy in which the Divine Light was transmitted to the king who then became the source of spiritual guidance for his subjects.

A Unifying Force

- Akbar abolished the tax on pilgrimage in 1563 and jizya in 1564 as the two were based on religious discrimination.
- All Mughal emperors gave grants to support the building and maintenance of places of worship.
- Even when temples were destroyed during war, grants were later issued for their repair as we know from the reigns of Shah Jahan and Aurangzeb.
- However, during the reign of the latter, the jizya was reimposed on non-Muslim subjects.

Just sovereignty as social contract

- Abu'l Fazl defined sovereignty as a social contract: the emperor protects the four essences of his subjects, namely, life (jan), property (mal), honour (namus) and faith (din), and in return demands obedience and a share of resources.
- A number of symbols were created for visual representation of the idea of justice which came to stand for the highest virtue of Mughal monarchy.

Capitals & Courts

- The heart of the Mughal Empire was its capital city, where the court assembled. The capital cities of the Mughals frequently shifted during the 16th and 17th centuries.
- Babur took over the Lodi capital of Agra.
- During the 1560s Akbar had the fort of Agra constructed with red sandstone quarried from the adjoining regions. In the 1570s he decided to build a new capital, Fatehpur Sikri.
- One of the reasons prompting this may have been that Sikri was located on the direct road to Ajmer, where the dargah of Shaikh Muinuddin Chishti had become an important pilgrimage centre.
- The Mughal emperors entered into a close relationship with sufis of the Chishti silsila.
- Akbar commissioned the construction of a white marble tomb for Shaikh Salim Chishti next to the majestic Friday mosque at Sikri.
- The enormous arched gateway (Buland Darwaza) was meant to remind visitors of the Mughal victory in Gujarat.
- In 1585 the capital was transferred to Lahore to bring the north-west under greater control and Akbar closely watched the frontier for thirteen years.
- In 1648 the court, army and household moved from Agra to the newly completed imperial capital, Shahjahanabad.

The Mughal court

- The physical arrangement of the court, focused on the sovereign, mirrored his status as the heart of society.
- Its centrepiece was therefore the throne, the takht, which gave physical form to the function of the sovereign as axis mundi.
- Once the emperor sat on the throne, no one was permitted to move from his position or to leave without permission.
- The highest form of submission was sijda or complete prostration.
- Under Shah Jahan these rituals were replaced with chahar taslim and zaminbos.
- Thomas Roe, the English envoy of James I, simply bowed before Jahangir according to European custom, and further shocked the court by demanding a chair.
- The emperor began his day at sunrise with personal religious devotions or prayers, and then appeared on a small balcony, the jharoka, facing the east.
- Jharoka darshan was introduced by Akbar with the objective of broadening the acceptance of the imperial authority as part of popular faith.
- The Mughal kings celebrated three major festivals a year: the solar and lunar birthdays of the monarch and Nauroz, the Iranian New Year on the vernal equinox.

Titles and gifts

- Grand titles were adopted by the Mughal emperors at the time of coronation or after a victory over an enemy.
- The title Asaf Khan for one of the highest ministers originated with Asaf, the legendary minister of the prophet king Sulaiman.
- The title Mirza Raja was accorded by Aurangzeb to his two highest-ranking nobles, Jai Singh and Jaswant Singh. Other awards included the robe of honour (khilat), a garment once worn by the emperor and imbued with his benediction.

The Imperial Household

- The term "harem" is frequently used to refer to the domestic world of the Mughals. It originates in the Persian word haram, meaning a sacred place.
- Polygamy was practised widely in the Indian subcontinent, especially among the ruling groups.
- Both for the Rajput clans as well as the Mughals marriage was a way of cementing political relationships and forging alliances.
- The gift of territory was often accompanied by the gift of a daughter in marriage.
- The concubines (aghacha or the lesser agha) occupied the lowest position in the hierarchy of females intimately related to royalty.
- They all received monthly allowances in cash, supplemented with gifts according to their status.
- After Nur Jahan, Mughal queens and princesses began to control significant financial resources.
- Shah Jahan's daughters Jahanara and Roshanara enjoyed an annual income often equal to that of high imperial mansabdars.
- Control over resources enabled important women of the Mughal household to commission buildings and gardens.
- Jahanara participated in many architectural projects of Shah Jahan's new capital, Shahjahanabad (Delhi).
- The bazaar of Chandni Chowk, the throbbing centre of Shahjahanabad, was designed by Jahanara.
- An interesting book giving us a glimpse into the domestic world of the Mughals is the Humayun Nama written by Gulbadan Begum.
- Gulbadan was the daughter of Babur, Humayun's sister and Akbar's aunt.
- Gulbadan could write fluently in Turkish and Persian.

The Imperial Officials

- In Akbar's imperial service, Turani and Iranian nobles were present from the earliest phase of carving out a political dominion.
- Two ruling groups of Indian origin entered the imperial service from 1560 onwards: the Rajputs and the Indian Muslims (Shaikhzadas).
- The first to join was a Rajput chief, Raja Bharmal Kachhwaha of Amber, to whose daughter Akbar got married.
- Iranians gained high offices under Jahangir, whose politically influential queen, Nur Jahan, was an Iranian.
- Aurangzeb appointed Rajputs to high positions, and under him the Marathas accounted for a sizeable number within the body of officers.
- All holders of government offices held ranks (mansabs) comprising two numerical designations: zat which was an indicator of position in the imperial hierarchy and the salary of the official (mansabdar), and sawar which indicated the number of horsemen he was required to maintain in service.
- Akbar, who designed the mansab system, also established spiritual relationships with a select band of his nobility by treating them as his disciples (murid).
- The mir bakhshi (paymaster general) stood in open court on the right of the emperor and presented all candidates for appointment or promotion, while his office prepared orders bearing his seal and signature as well as those of the emperor.

- There were two other important ministers at the centre: the diwan-i ala (finance minister) and sadr-us sudur (minister of grants or madad-i maash, and in charge of appointing local judges or qazis).
- Nobles stationed at the court (tainat-i rakab) were a reserve force to be deputed to a province or military campaign. They were duty-bound to appear twice daily, morning and evening, to express submission to the emperor in the public audience hall.

Information and Empire

- The mir bakhshi supervised the corps of court writers (waqia nawis) who recorded all applications and documents presented to the court, and all imperial orders (farman).
- In addition, agents (wakil) of nobles and regional rulers recorded the entire proceedings of the court under the heading "News from the Exalted Court" (Akhbarat-i Darbar-i Mualla) with the date and time of the court session (pahar).
- The emperor received reports from even distant provincial capitals within a few days.

Beyond the centre: Provincial Administration

- The division of functions established at the centre was replicated in the provinces (subas) where the ministers had their corresponding subordinates (diwan, bakhshi and sadr).
- The head of the provincial administration was the governor (subadar) who reported directly to the emperor.
- The local administration was looked after at the level of the pargana (sub-district) by three semi-hereditary officers, the qanungo (keeper of revenue records), the chaudhuri (in charge of revenue collection) and the qazi.
- Persian was made the language of administration throughout, but local languages were used for village accounts.

The Safavids and Qandahar

- The political and diplomatic relations between the Mughal kings and the neighbouring countries of Iran and Turan hinged on the control of the frontier defined by the Hindukush mountains that separated Afghanistan from the regions of Iran and Central Asia.
- A constant aim of Mughal policy was to ward off this potential danger by controlling strategic outposts notably Kabul and Qandahar.
- Qandahar was a bone of contention between the Safavids and the Mughals.
- In 1613 Jahangir sent a diplomatic envoy to the court of Shah Abbas to plead the Mughal case for retaining Qandahar, but the mission failed. In the winter of 1622, a Persian army besieged Qandahar.

The Ottomans: pilgrimage and trade

- The relationship between the Mughals and the Ottomans was marked by the concern to ensure free movement for merchants and pilgrims in the territories under Ottoman control.
- Hijaz, that part of Ottoman Arabia where the important pilgrim centres of Mecca and Medina were located.
- Aurangzeb discovered cases of misappropriation of funds sent to Arabia, he favoured their distribution in India which, he thought, "was as much a house of God as Mecca".

Jesuits at the Mughal court

- The Jesuit accounts are the earliest impressions of the Mughal court ever recorded by European writers.
- Following the discovery of a direct sea route to India at the end of the 15th century, Portuguese merchants established a network of trading stations in coastal cities.
- The Portuguese king was also interested in the propagation of Christianity with the help of the missionaries of the Society of Jesus.
- The Christian missions to India during the 16th century were part of this process of trade and empire building.
- Akbar was curious about Christianity and dispatched an embassy to Goa to invite Jesuit priests.
- The first Jesuit mission reached the Mughal court at Fatehpur Sikri in 1580 and stayed for about two years.
- The Jesuits spoke to Akbar about Christianity and debated its virtues with the ulama.
- Two more missions were sent to the Mughal court at Lahore, in 1591 and 1595.
- The Jesuit accounts corroborate the information given in Persian chronicles about state officials and the general conditions of life in Mughal times.

Questioning Formal Religion

- The high respect shown by Akbar towards the members of the Jesuit mission impressed them deeply.
- Akbar's quest for religious knowledge led to interfaith debates in the ibadat khana at Fatehpur Sikri between learned Muslims, Hindus, Jainas, Parsis and Christians.
- Akbar's religious views matured as he queried scholars of different religions and sects and gathered knowledge about their doctrines.
- Akbar and Abu'l Fazl created a philosophy of light and used it to shape the image of the king and ideology of the state.

Timeline
1526 - Babur established Mughal dynasty in India.
1530 - Humayun succeeds the Mughal throne.
1556 - After the second battle of Panipat Akbar succeeds to the throne.
1563 - Akbar abolished the pilgrimage tax.
1585 - Akbar shifted his capital from Fatehpur Sikri to Lahore.
1589-1602 - Babur Nama was translated in Persian and Abu'l Fazl wrote the Akbar Nama.
1605-22 - Jahangir wrote Jahangir Nama.
1648 - Shahjahanabad became the new capital of the Mughal Empire.
1668 - Alamgir Nama was written by Muhammad Kazim. It gives a historical account of the first decade of Aurangzeb's rule.
1707 - Aurangzeb died.
1857 - The last ruler of the Mughal dynasty was overthrown by the British.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Who made Persian the Mughal Court's official language?
   (a) Babur **(b)** Akbar
   (c) Shahjahan **(d)** Aurangzeb
2. When was Asiatic society of Bengal established?
   (a) 1769 **(b)** 1773
   (c) 1784 **(d)** 1802
3. Which of the following cities was not the Mughal Court's capital?
   (a) Fatehpur Sikri **(b)** Agra
   (c) Lahore **(d)** Calcutta
4. Whom Akbar requested to write the history of Babar and Humayun's reigns?
   (a) Gulbadan Begum
   (b) Mirza Muhammad Qazim
   (c) Abul Fazl
   (d) Abdul Hamid Lahori

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements:
   1. The production of chronicle provides us with the information on the Mughals and their empires.
   2. Edited versions of the Akbar Nama and Badshah Nama were first published by the Asiatic Society in the 19th century.
   3. The authors of Mughal chronicles were invariably courtiers.

   Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below?
   (a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
2. Consider the following:

Chronicles		Author
1.	Akbar Nama	Abdul Hamid Lahori
2.	Alamgir Nama	Abu'l Fazl
3.	Shahjahaj Nama	Mirza Muhammad Qazim
4.	Badshah Nama	Inayat Khan

   Which of the following pair is correctly matched?
   (a) Only 2 pairs are correctly matched
   (b) None of the pair is correctly matched
   (c) Only 1 pair is correctly matched
   (d) Only 3 pairs are correctly matched
3. Consider the following statements:
   1. He is considered to be the greatest of all the Mughal emperors.
   2. He consolidated his empire and made it the largest, strongest and richest kingdom of his time.
   3. He succeeded in extending the frontiers of the empire to the Hindukush mountains.

   The above mentioned statements is related to which of the following?
   (a) Sher Shah Sur **(b)** Shah Jahan
   (c) Aurangzeb **(d)** Akbar
4. Arrange them in a chronological order:
   1. Nasiruddin Humayun
   2. Shah Jahan
   3. Jahangir
   4. Jalaluddin Akbar

   Select the correct answer using the code given below?
   (a) 1-2-3-4 **(b)** 2-4-1-2
   (c) 3-1-2-4 **(d)** 1-4-3-2
5. Consider the following statements:
   1. Portuguese merchants entered India after the discovery of a direct sea route.
   2. The Dutch king was interested in the propagation of Christianity with the help of the missionaries of the Society of Jesus.
   3. Shah Jahan was curious about Christianity and dispatched an embassy to Goa to invite Jesuit priests.
   4. Akbar moved away from the orthodox Islamic ways of understanding religions towards a self-conceived eclectic form of divine worship focused on light and the sun.

   Select the incorrect statements using the code given below:
   (a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 4 only **(d)** 1 and 3 only
6. Consider the following statements:
   1. Iranians gained high offices under Aurangzeb.
   2. Turani and Iranian nobles were present from the earliest phase of carving out a political dominion.
   3. Two ruling groups of Indian origin entered the imperial service from 1560 onwards – the Rajputs and the Marathas.

   Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
   (a) 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 3 only
7. With reference to Marriages during the Mughal Period, consider the following statements:
   1. Polygamy was practised widely in the Indian subcontinent, especially among the ruling groups.
   2. Marriage was a way of cementing political relationships and forging alliances.
   3. The gift of territory was often accompanied by the gift of a daughter in marriage.

   Which of the following statements is/are correct?
   (a) 2 and 3 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3
   (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 2 only
8. In the context of Titles, consider the following statements:
   1. Grand titles were adopted by the Mughal emperors at the time of coronation or after a victory over an enemy.
   2. The granting of titles to men of merit was an important aspect of Mughal polity.

Select the correct statements using the code given below:
(a) 2 only **(b)** Neither 1 nor 2
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** 1 only

9. Consider the following statements:
1. The heart of the Mughal Empire was its capital city.
2. Humayun decided to build a new capital, Fatehpur Sikri.
3. In 1585 the capital was transferred to Lahore by Akbar to bring the north-west under greater control.
4. Shah Jahan commissioned the construction of a white marble tomb for Shaikh Salim Chishti.

Which of the following statements is/are NOT correct?
(a) 1, 2 and 4 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 3 and 4 only **(d)** 2 and 4 only

10. With reference to Painted Image, consider the following statements:
1. Paintings served only to enhance the beauty of a book.
2. The historian Abdul Hamid Lahori described painting as a "magical art".

Select the correct statements using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

11. Consider the following statements:
1. All books in Mughal India were manuscripts, i.e., they were handwritten.
2. The centre of manuscript production was the imperial kitabkhana.

Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

12. With reference to the language of the Mughal Empire consider the following statements:
1. The first ruler Babur wrote poetry and his memoirs in Persian language.
2. In Mughal court chronicles were written in Turkish.
3. It was Akbar who consciously set out to make Urdu the leading language of the Mughal court.

Which of the following statements is/are NOT correct?
(a) 2 and 3 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 2 only

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Alamgir nama was written by whom? **[TNPSC]**
(a) Jafar Khan **(b)** Muhammad Qazim
(c) Aurangzeb **(d)** Mukhtiar khan

2. 'Humayun Nama' provides a glimpse into the world of Mughals. Who wrote the book? **[NTPC CBT]**
(a) Jahanara Begum **(b)** Gulbadan Begum
(c) Abu'l Fazl **(d)** Nadira

3. The ruler who ruled during the period of three Mughal Emperors? **[RSMSSB JE]**
(a) Sawai Jaisingh
(b) Mirja Raja Jaisingh
(c) Sawai Mansingh
(d) Sawai Pratapsingh

4. Which was the second capital of Akbar? **[ICAR]**
(a) Delhi **(b)** Agra
(c) Fatehpur Sikri **(d)** Patna

5. The two famous painters who came to India during Humayun's reign were: **[Rajasthan VDO]**
(a) Mohammad Nazir and Abdus Samad
(b) Sayyid Ali and Abdus Samad
(c) Mohammad Nazir and Sayyid Ali
(d) Mansur and Sayyid Ali

6. The Asiatic Society of Bengal was founded by **[WBCS]**
(a) C. F. Andrews **(b)** Raja Rammohan Roy
(c) Sir William Jones **(d)** William Marshal

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
- Mughal court chronicles were written in Persian.
- Babur wrote poetry and his memoirs in Turkish language.
- It was Akbar who consciously set out to make Persian the leading language of the Mughal court.

2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Asiatic Society of Bengal was founded by William Jones on 15 January 1784 at Fort William in Kolkata.

3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Throughout their reign, the Mughals established a number of imperial capitals. The cities of Agra, Delhi, Lahore, and Fatehpur Sikri were among them.

4. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Gulbadan Begum is best known as the author of Humayun-Nama, the account of the life of her half-brother, Emperor Humayun, which she wrote on the request of her nephew, Emperor Akbar.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation:
- The Asiatic Society of Bengal, founded by Sir William Jones in 1784, undertook the editing, printing and translation of many Indian manuscripts.
- Edited versions of the Akbar Nama and Badshah Nama were first published by the Asiatic Society in the 19th century.

- In the early 20th century, the Akbar Nama was translated into English by Henry Beveridge after years of hard labour. Chronicles are an indispensable source for any scholar wishing to write a history of the Mughals.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

Akbar Nama	Abu'l Fazl
Alamgir Nama	Mirza Muhammad Qazim
Shahjahaj Nama	Inayat Khan
Badshah Nama	Abdul Hamid Lahori

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- Jalaluddin Akbar (1556-1605) the greatest of all the Mughal emperors, for he not only expanded but also consolidated his empire, making it the largest, strongest and richest kingdom of his time.
- Akbar succeeded in extending the frontiers of the empire to the Hindukush mountains, and checked the expansionist designs of the Uzbeks of Turan (Central Asia) and the Safavids of Iran.

4. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The correct order is:

- Humayun
- Akbar
- Jahangir
- Shahjahan

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- The Portuguese king was also interested in the propagation of Christianity with the help of the missionaries of the Society of Jesus.
- The Christian missions to India during the 16th century were part of this process of trade and empire building.
- Akbar was curious about Christianity and dispatched an embassy to Goa to invite Jesuit priests.
- The first Jesuit mission reached the Mughal court at Fatehpur Sikri in 1580 and stayed for about two years.
- The Jesuits spoke to Akbar about Christianity and debated its virtues with the ulama.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- Iranians gained high offices under Jahangir, whose politically influential queen, Nur Jahan, was an Iranian.
- In Akbar's imperial service, Turani and Iranian nobles were present from the earliest phase of carving out a political dominion.
- Two ruling groups of Indian origin entered the imperial service from 1560 onwards: the Rajputs and the Indian Muslims (Shaikhzadas).

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- Polygamy was practised widely in the Indian subcontinent, especially among the ruling groups.
- Both for the Rajput clans as well as the Mughals marriage was a way of cementing political relationships and forging alliances.
- The gift of territory was often accompanied by the gift of a daughter in marriage.
- The concubines (aghacha or the lesser agha) occupied the lowest position in the hierarchy of females intimately related to royalty.
- They all received monthly allowances in cash, supplemented with gifts according to their status.
- After Nur Jahan, Mughal queens and princesses began to control significant financial resources.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

- Grand titles were adopted by the Mughal emperors at the time of coronation or after a victory over an enemy.
- The title Asaf Khan for one of the highest ministers originated with Asaf, the legendary minister of the prophet king Sulaiman.
- The title Mirza Raja was accorded by Aurangzeb to his two highest-ranking nobles, Jai Singh and Jaswant Singh. Other awards included the robe of honour (khilat), a garment once worn by the emperor and imbued with his benediction.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- The heart of the Mughal Empire was its capital city, where the court assembled. The capital cities of the Mughals frequently shifted during the 16th and 17th centuries.
- During the 1560s Akbar had the fort of Agra constructed with red sandstone quarried from the adjoining regions. In the 1570s he decided to build a new capital, Fatehpur Sikri.
- The Mughal emperors entered into a close relationship with sufis of the Chishti silsila.

- Akbar commissioned the construction of a white marble tomb for Shaikh Salim Chishti next to the majestic Friday mosque at Sikri.

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Paintings served not only to enhance the beauty of a book, but were believed to possess special powers of communicating ideas about the kingdom and the power of kings in ways that the written medium could not. Abu'l Fazl described painting as a "magical art".

11. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

- All books in Mughal India were manuscripts & they were handwritten.
- The centre of manuscript production was the imperial kitabkhana.
- Calligraphy, the art of handwriting, was considered a skill of great importance. It was practised using different styles.
- Akbar's favourite was the nastaliq, a fluid style with long horizontal strokes.

12. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- Babur wrote poetry and his memoirs in Turkish language.
- It was Akbar who consciously set out to make Persian the leading language of the Mughal court.
- Mughal court chronicles were written in Persian. Under the Sultans of Delhi, it flourished as a language of the court and of literary writings, alongside north Indian languages, especially Hindavi and its regional variants.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Mirza Muhammad Qazim's Alamgirnamah is a court history of Emperor Aurangzeb (1658-1707).

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Gulabadan Begum (his aunt) was inspired by Akbar to write Humayun-Nama.

The book was originally titled "The Ahwal Humayun Padshah Jamah Kardom Gulbadan Begum bint Babur Padshah amma Akbar Padshah" and was written in Persian.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: On July 15, 1611, he was born.

Mirja Raja Jai Singh became the Raja of Amber (Jaipur) and the head of the Kachwaha Rajputs at a young age.

For his exceptional service to the Mughals, he was awarded to the rank of commander of 5000.

Aurangzeb bestowed the title of 'Mirja Raja' on him.

He was given command of a 50,000-strong army to fight the Deccan Sultanates and the rising Marathas.

During the reigns of Jahangir, Shah Jahan, and Aurangzeb, he reigned.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Following his military victories over Chittor and Ranthambhore, Akbar decided to relocate his capital from Agra to a new location in honour of the Sufi saint Salim Chishti.

Fatehabad, which later became Fatehpur Sikri, was his name for the city.

Fatehpur Sikri is a city in Uttar Pradesh, India. It is located in the district of Agra.

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Sayyid Ali was a Persian miniature painter who rose to prominence as a famous creator of Persian miniatures before emigrating to India with the Mughal dynasty. Under Akbar, he became one of the artists responsible for inventing the Mughal painting style. Mir Sayyid Ali contributed to the depiction of Shah Tahmasp's famous Shahnameh, which was created in 1525–48 for Shah Tahmasp I (1514–76).

Abdus Samad was a Persian miniature painter who travelled to India in the 16th century and became one of the founding artists of the Mughal miniature style, as well as holding a number of prominent administrative positions. Samad's time under the Mughals, from around 1550 to 1595, is very well recorded, and a number of works from this period have been credited to him. From around 1572, he was in charge of Emperor Akbar's imperial workshop, and it was under his direction that the Mughal style reached its pinnacle.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Asiatic Society of Bengal was founded by William Jones on 15 January 1784 at Fort William in Kolkata.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

10 COLONALISM AND THE COUNTRYSIDE

Introduction

- In this chapter we will discuss what colonial rule meant to those who lived in the countryside. Zamindars of Bengal, travel to the Rajmahal hills where the Paharias and the Santhals lived, and then move west to the Deccan. English East India Company (E.I.C.) established its raj in the countryside, implemented its revenue policies, what these policies meant to different sections of people, and how they changed everyday lives.

Bengal & Zamindars

- Colonial rule was first established in Bengal. It is here that the earliest attempts were made to reorder rural society and establish a new regime of land rights and a new revenue system.

An Auction in Burdwan

- In 1797 there was an auction in Burdwan. It was a big public event. A number of mahals (estates) held by the Raja of Burdwan were being sold.
- The Permanent Settlement had come into operation in 1793. The East India Company had fixed the revenue that each zamindar had to pay.
- The estates of those who failed to pay were to be auctioned to recover the revenue. Since the raja had accumulated huge arrears, his estates had been put up for auction.

The problem of Unpaid Revenue

- In introducing the Permanent Settlement, British officials hoped to resolve the problems they had been facing since the conquest of Bengal.
- By the 1770s, the rural economy in Bengal was in crisis, with recurrent famines and declining agricultural output.
- Officials felt that agriculture, trade and the revenue resources of the state could all be developed by encouraging investment in agriculture. Hence, they have secured the rights of property and permanently fixing the rates of revenue demand.
- Permanent Settlement was made with the rajas and taluqdars of Bengal. They were now classified as zamindars, and they had to pay the revenue demand that was fixed in perpetuity.
- The zamindar was not a landowner in the village, but a revenue Collector of the state.
- The Company fixed the total demand over the entire estate whose revenue the zamindar contracted to pay.
- The zamindar collected rent from the different villages, paid the revenue to the Company, and retained the difference as his income.
- He was expected to pay the Company regularly, failing which his estate could be auctioned.

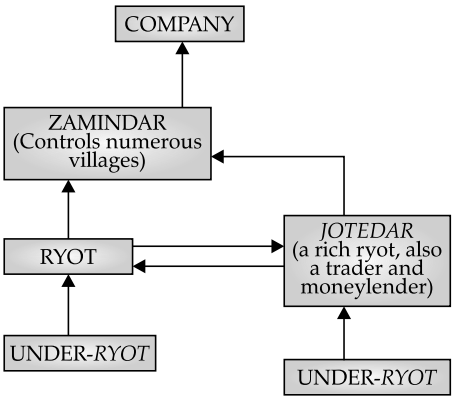
Why zamindars defaulted on payments?

- Company officials felt that a fixed revenue demand would give zamindars a sense of security and, assured of returns on their investment, encourage them to improve their estates.
  1. **High initial demand:** The initial demand was very high. It was felt that if the demand was fixed for all time to come, the Company would never be able to claim a share of increased income from land when prices rose and cultivation expanded. To minimise this anticipated loss, the Company pegged the revenue demand high, arguing that the burden on zamindars would gradually decline as agricultural production expanded and prices rose.
  2. **Imposition of high demand:** This high demand was imposed in the 1790s, a time when the prices of agricultural produce were depressed, making it difficult for the ryots to pay their dues to the zamindar. If the zamindar could not collect the rent, how could he pay the Company?
  3. **The revenue was invariable:** The revenue was invariable, regardless of the harvest, and had to be paid punctually. In fact, according to the Sunset Law, if payment did not come in by sunset of the specified date, the zamindari was liable to be auctioned.
  4. **Powers of Zamindars limited:** The Permanent Settlement initially limited the power of the zamindar to collect rent from the ryot and manage his zamindari.
- Zamindars lost their power to organise local justice and the local police. Over time the collectorate emerged as an alternative centre of authority, severely restricting what the zamindar could do.
- At the time of rent collection, an officer of the zamindar, usually the amlah, came around to the village. But rent collection was a perennial problem. Sometimes bad harvests and low prices made payment of dues difficult for the ryots.

The rise of the Jotedars

- While many zamindars were facing a crisis at the end of the 18th century, a group of rich peasants consolidated their position in the villages.
- This class of rich peasant was known as jotedar.
- By the early 19th century jotedars had acquired vast areas of land.
- They controlled local trade as well as money lending, exercising immense power over the poorer cultivators of the region
- A large part of their land was cultivated through sharecroppers (adhiyars or bargadars).

- When the estate of the zamindar was auctioned for failure to make revenue payment, jotedars were often amongst the purchasers.
- The jotedars were the most powerful in North Bengal, in some places they were called haoladars, gantidars or mandals.



The zamindars resist

- The authority of the zamindars in rural areas, however, did not collapse.
- Faced with an exorbitantly high revenue demand and possible auction of their estates, they devised ways of surviving the pressures.
- By the beginning of the nineteenth century the depression in prices was over. Thus, those who had survived the troubles of the 1790s consolidated their power.
- Rules of revenue payment were also made somewhat flexible. As a result, the zamindar's power over the villages was strengthened.
- It was only during the Great Depression of the 1930s that they finally collapsed and the jotedars consolidated their power in the countryside.

Zamindars were responsible for:
a. paying revenue to the company
b. distributing the revenue demand (jama) over villages.
Each village ryot, big or small, paid rent to the zamindar.
Jotedars gave out loans to other ryots and sold their produce.
Ryots cultivated some land and gave out the rest to under-ryots on rent. Under-ryots paid rent to the ryots

Maharaja Mehtab Chand (1820-79): When the Permanent Settlement was imposed, Tejchand was the Raja of Burdwan.
Subsequently under Mehtab Chand the estate prospered. He helped the British during the Santhal rebellion and the 1857 revolt.

The Fifth Report

- Report that was submitted to the British Parliament in 1813. It was the fifth of a series of reports on the administration and activities of the East India Company in India. Often referred to as the Fifth Report.
- Report reproduced petitions of zamindars and ryots, reports of collectors from different districts, statistical tables on revenue returns, and notes on the revenue and judicial administration of Bengal and Madras written by officials.
- From the time the Company established its rule in Bengal in the mid-1760s, its activities were closely watched and debated in England. There were many groups in Britain who were opposed to the monopoly that the East India Company had over trade with India and China.
- Many political groups argued that the conquest of Bengal was benefiting only the East India Company but not the British nation as a whole. The British Parliament passed a series of Acts in the late eighteenth century to regulate and control Company rule in India.
- It forced the Company to produce regular reports on the administration of India and appointed committees to enquire into the affairs of the Company. The Fifth Report was one such report produced by a Select Committee.

In the hills of Rajmahal

- If we look at late-18th-century revenue records, we learn that these hill folk were known as Paharias.

Paharias

- They lived around the Rajmahal hills, subsisting on forest produce and practising shifting cultivation. They cleared patches of forest by cutting bushes and burning the undergrowth.
- The Paharias grew a variety of pulses and millets for consumption.
- They scratched the ground lightly with hoes, cultivated the cleared land for a few years, then left it fallow so that it could recover its fertility, and moved to a new area.
- In the 1770s the British embarked on a brutal policy of extermination, hunting the Paharias down and killing them.
- By the 1780s, Augustus Cleveland, the Collector of Bhagalpur, proposed a policy of pacification.
- Many Paharia chiefs refused the allowances. Those who accepted, most often lost authority within the community.
- The lower hills were taken over by Santhal settlers, the Paharias receded deeper into the Rajmahal hills.

Santhals

- Santhals were pouring into the area, clearing forests, cutting down timber, ploughing land and growing rice and cotton.

How did the Santhals reach the Rajmahal hills?

- The Santhals had begun to come into Bengal around the 1780s.
- Zamindars hired them to reclaim land and expand cultivation, and British officials invited them to settle in the Jangal Mahals.
- The Paharias refused to cut forests, resisted touching the plough, and continued to be turbulent.
- The Santhals, by contrast, appeared to be ideal settlers, clearing forests and ploughing the land with vigour.
- The Santhals were given land and persuaded to settle in the foothills of Rajmahal.

- By 1832 a large area of land was demarcated as Damin-i-Koh. This was declared to be the land of the Santhals.
- The land grant to the Santhals stipulated that at least one-tenth of the area was to be cleared and cultivated within the first ten years.
- After the demarcation of Damin-i-Koh, Santhal settlements expanded rapidly.
- As cultivation expanded, an increased volume of revenue flowed into the Company's coffers.
- By the 1850s, the Santhals felt that the time had come to rebel against zamindars, moneylenders and the colonial state, in order to create an ideal world for themselves where they would rule.
- It was after the Santhal Revolt (1855-56) that the Santhal Pargana was created, carving out 5,500 square miles from the districts of Bhagalpur and Birbhum.
- The rebellion changed the British perception of the Santhals. Villages that had earlier seemed calm and peaceful now appeared to have become places of violent and savage deeds.
- After the rebellion was crushed, the region was searched, suspects were picked up, and villages set on fire.

The Accounts of Buchanan

- Francis Buchanan was a physician and an employee of the British East India Company.
- He marched everywhere with a large army of people – draughtsmen, surveyors, palanquin bearers, coolies.
- The cost of the travels was borne by the East India Company.
- He was perceived as an agent of the sarkar.
- He observed the stones and rocks and different strata and layers of soil.
- He searched for minerals and stones that were commercially valuable, he recorded all signs of irons ore and mica, granite and saltpetre.
- He carefully observed the local practices of salt – making and iron ore mining.
- Buchanan's journal were packed with observations.

Revolt in the Countryside: The Bombay Deccan

- In such climactic times rebels express their anger and fury; they rise against what they perceive to be injustice and the causes of their suffering. Through the nineteenth century, peasants in various parts of India rose in revolt against moneylenders and grain dealers. One such revolt occurred in 1875 in the Deccan.

Account books were burnt

- The movement began at Supa, a large village in Poona district.
- It was a market centre where many shopkeepers and moneylenders lived.
- On 12 May 1875, ryots from surrounding rural areas gathered and attacked the shopkeepers, demanding their bahi khatas (account books) and debt bonds.
- They burnt the khatas, looted grain shops, and in some cases set fire to the houses of sahukars.

A new revenue system

- As British rule expanded from Bengal to other parts of India, new systems of revenue were imposed.
- Since the revenue demand was fixed under the Permanent Settlement, the colonial state could not claim any share of this enhanced income.
- Keen on expanding its financial resources, the colonial government had to think of ways to maximise its land revenue.
- The revenue system that was introduced in the Bombay Deccan came to be known as the ryotwari settlement.
- Unlike the Bengal system, the revenue was directly settled with the ryot. The average income from different types of soil was estimated, the revenue-paying capacity of the ryot was assessed and a proportion of it fixed as the share of the state.
- The revenue demand was no longer permanent.

Revenue demand and peasant debt

- The first revenue settlement in the Bombay Deccan was made in the 1820s.
- The revenue that was demanded was so high that in many places peasants deserted their villages and migrated to new regions. In areas of poor soil and fluctuating rainfall the problem was particularly acute.
- When rains failed and harvests were poor, peasants found it impossible to pay the revenue. However, the collectors in charge of revenue collection were keen on demonstrating their efficiency and pleasing their superiors.
- They went about extracting payment with utmost severity. When someone failed to pay, his crops were seized and a fine was imposed on the whole village.

Then came the cotton boom

- Before the 1860s, three-fourths of raw cotton imports into Britain came from America. British cotton manufacturers had for long been worried about this dependence on American supplies.
- In 1857 the Cotton Supply Association was founded in Britain, and in 1859 the Manchester Cotton Company was formed.
- Their objective was "to encourage cotton production in every part of the world suited for its growth".
- India was seen as a country that could supply cotton to Lancashire if the American supply dried up. It possessed suitable soil, a climate favourable to cotton cultivation, and cheap labour.
- When the American Civil War broke out in 1861, a wave of panic spread through cotton circles in Britain. Raw cotton imports from America fell to less than three per cent of the normal from over 2000000 bales in 1861 to 55,000 bales in 1862.
- As cotton prices soared export merchants in Bombay were keen to secure as much cotton as possible to meet the British demand. These developments had a profound impact on the Deccan countryside.
- The ryots in the Deccan villages suddenly found access to seemingly limitless credit. Sahukars were more than willing to extend long-term loans.
- While the American crisis continued, cotton production in the Bombay Deccan expanded. Between 1860 and 1864 cotton acreage doubled.
- By 1862 over 90 per cent of cotton imports into Britain were coming from India.

Credit dries up

- As the Civil War ended, cotton production in America revived and Indian cotton exports to Britain steadily declined.

- Export merchants and sahukars in Maharashtra were no longer keen on extending long-term credit.
- They could see the demand for Indian cotton fall and cotton prices slide downwards.
- While credit dried up, the revenue demand increased. The first revenue settlement was in the 1820s and 1830s.

The experience of injustice:

- In 1859 the British passed a Limitation Law that stated that the loan bonds signed between moneylenders and ryots would have validity for only three years.
- This law was meant to check the accumulation of interest over time. The moneylender, however, turned the law around, forcing the ryot to sign a new bond every three years.
- Deeds and bonds appeared as symbols of the new oppressive system. In the past such deeds had been rare.

The Deccan Riots Commission

- When the revolt spread in the Deccan, the Government of Bombay was initially unwilling to see it as anything serious.
- But the Government of India, worried by the memory of 1857, pressurised the Government of Bombay to set up a commission of enquiry to investigate into the causes of the riots.
- The commission produced a report that was presented to the British Parliament in 1878.
- This report provides historians with a range of sources for the study of the riot.

TIMELINE

1765 - East India Company got diwani right for the province of Bengal, in the wake of Battle of Buxar.
1773 - Regulating act enacted by the British Parliament aimed at regulating the East India Company.
1800's - Santhals began to settle in the hills of Rajmahal.
1818 - First land revenue settlement done in the Bombay Deccan.
1820's - Prices of agriculture begin to fall.
1855-56 - Santhals rebel in Rajmahal.
1861 - Cotton boom for the Indian cultivators, in the wake of American civil war
1875 - Ryots in Deccan villages rebel.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Colonial rule was first established in which of the following place?
(a) Madras **(b)** Bengal
(c) Nizam **(d)** Bombay

2. When was the permanent settlement came into force?
(a) 1793 **(b)** 1767
(c) 1764 **(d)** 1783

3. Permanent settlement was started by which of the following personality?
(a) Lord Cornwallis **(b)** Lord Dalhousie
(c) Lord Curzon **(d)** Lord William Bentick

4. What was the worst part of the permanent settlement of Bengal?
(a) Disintegration of the village communities
(b) Creation of absentee landlords
(c) Sub-infatuation of estates and holdings
(d) Subjection of the cultivator to untold misery

5. Which among the following was the reason for defaulted on payments?
(a) The initial demand was very low.
(b) The revenue was invariable, regardless of the harvest.
(c) The power of Zamindars to collect rent from ryot was broader.
(d) All of the above.

6. Who among the following helped the British during the Santhal rebellion and the 1857 revolt?
(a) Mehtab Chand **(b)** Kunwar Singh
(c) Nana Saheb **(d)** Birsa Munda

7. Reports on the administration and activities of the East India Company in India often referred as_____
(a) first **(b)** second
(c) third **(d)** None of the above

8. Damin-i-Koh was the area demarcated for which of the following tribe?
(a) Ho **(b)** Santhal
(c) Munda **(d)** Junto

9. Who among the following led the Santhal uprising?
(a) Tana Bhagat **(b)** Chand and Kanhu
(c) Birsa Munda **(d)** Nilambar

10. Which of the following statements is correct with reference to the Santhal tribal rebellion?
(a) A group called 'Dikus' were formed to attack British establishments.
(b) The rebellion was not having any significant violence.
(c) Local non-tribals peasants were opposing the rebellion.
(d) After the rebellion Santhal inhabited areas were constituted into Santhal Parganas, which recognised their tribal culture and identity.

11. The term "Damin – i – Koh" is related to which of the following?
(a) Settlements of Paharias
(b) Settlements of Santhals
(c) Settlements of Mughal lineage
(d) Settlements of Afghan-Bengalis

12. "They are very clever in clearing new lands, but live meanly. Their huts have no fence, and the walls are made of small sticks placed upright, close together and plastered within with clay. They are small and slovenly, and too flat-roofed, with very little arch" – is described by Francis Buchanan is related to which of the following tribal group?
(a) Santhals **(b)** Paharias
(c) Oraons **(d)** Jarwas

13. In the context of Modern India Taluqdars refers to
    (a) King's official
    (b) Peasants
    (c) Government official
    (d) One who holds territorial unit.
14. Who was referred as a village headman in Bengal?
    (a) Ryots (b) Amins
    (c) Jotedars (d) Amlahs
15. When did the East India Company established its rule in Bengal?
    (a) 1770s (b) 1750s
    (c) 1780s (d) 1760s
16. Which among the following tribes were living in the foothills of Rajmahal hills?
    (a) Gonds (b) Santhals
    (c) Mundas (d) Garo
17. Which of the following commission was set up to investigate the riots of Deccan's farmer in 1875?
    (a) Bengal riots commission
    (b) Hyderabad riots Commission
    (c) Nizam riots Commission
    (d) Deccan riots commission

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements:
    1. Bengal became a centre for establishment of colonial rule in India.
    2. New Land Revenue was announced during the reign on Lord Cornwallis in 1793.
    3. Permanent Revenue settlement in Bengal by Warren Hastings.

    Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
    (a) 2 and 3 only (b) 1 only
    (c) None of the above (d) 1 and 2 only
2. Consider the following statements related to Santhals:
    1. They practiced cultivation land demarcated to them known as Daman-i-koh.
    2. They were the hill people that resided around the Rajmahal hills.
    3. They subsisted on forest produce and practiced shifting cultivation.

    Select the incorrect answer from the options given below?
    (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 1, 2 and 3
    (c) 2 and 3 only (d) None of the above
3. With reference to Paharias, consider the following statements:
    1. The hill folk who lived around the Rajmahal hills were known as the Pahariyas.
    2. The Paharias revolt of 1778, led by Raja Jagannatha, is noteworthy as it was carried out against the British.

    Which of the following statements is/are correct?
    (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
    (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
4. Which of the following pairs is correctly matched?

1.	Mahalwari Settlement	Holt Mackenzie
2.	Permanent Settlement	Lord Cornwallis
3.	Ryotwari Settlement	Alexander Read & Thomas Munro

    Select the correct answer using the code given below:
    (a) Only 1 pair is correctly matched
    (b) Only 2 pair are correctly matched
    (c) All 3 pairs are correctly matched
    (d) None of the pairs are correctly matched
5. Consider the following statements:
    1. The ryotwari settlement was made with the rajas and taluqdars of Bengal.
    2. In ryotwari settlement rajas and taluqdars classified as Zamindars and had to pay the revenue that was fixed.
    3. The Zamindar was not the landowner in the village, but a revenue collector of the state.

    Select the correct statements using the code given below:
    (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 3 only
    (c) 1 only (d) 1, 2 and 3
6. Which of the following is/are the reason for zamindars defaulted on payments?
    1. Imposition of high demand
    2. High initial demand
    3. Powers of Zamindars has increased
    4. Revenue was invariable

    Select the correct option using the code given below?
    (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 3 only
    (c) 1, 2 and 4 only (d) 2, 3 and 4 only
7. With reference to jotedars, consider the following statements:
    1. They controlled local trade as well as money lending, exercising immense power over the poorer cultivators of the region.
    2. They were the most powerful in Maharashtra, in some places they were called haoladars, gantidars or mandals.

    Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
    (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
    (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
8. Consider the following statements:
    1. The first revenue settlement in the Bombay Deccan was made in the 1820s.
    2. The revenue that was demanded was so high that in many places peasants deserted their villages and migrated to new regions.

    Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
    (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
    (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
9. Consider the following statements:
    1. The commission produced a report that was presented to the British Parliament in 1888.

2. This report provides historians with a range of sources for the study of the riot.

Select the incorrect statement(s) using the code given below:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

10. Match the following:

A.	English East India Company acquire Diwani of Bengal	1861
B.	Regulating act passed by the British Parliament	1765
C.	First revenue prices begin to fall	1773
D.	Cotton boom begins	1818

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

(a) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4 **(b)** A-2, B-3, C-4, D-1
(c) A-2, B-4, C-3, D-1 **(d)** A-3, B-2, C-1, D-4

11. Which of the following statements about Permanent Settlement are correct?

1. It conferred proprietary rights to peasants.
2. The Zamindars were recognised as the proprietors of land.
3. The government permanently fixed the land revenue demand.
4. The Zamindars acted as the middlemen between the peasants and the government.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below:

(a) 2, 3 and 4 **(b)** 3 and 4
(c) 1 and 4 **(d)** 1 and 3

12. Consider the following events:

1. Introduction of Permanent settlement
2. American Civil war
3. Fifth report in the British Parliament
4. Santhals arrived in the hilly area of Rajmahal

The correct Chronological order of these events is:

(a) 1, 2, 3, 4 **(b)** 1, 4, 3, 2
(c) 1, 3, 2, 4 **(d)** 1, 3, 4, 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Match the columns: **[ICAR]**

Leaders		Region	
I.	Birsa Munda	**A.**	Santhal Pargana
II.	Siddhu & Kanu	**B.**	Chota nagpur
III.	Alluri Sitarama Raju	**C.**	Andhra region

Select the correct option using the code given below:

(a) I - A, II - B, III - C **(b)** I - B, II - A, III - C
(c) I - A, II - C, III - B **(d)** I - B, II - C, III - A

2. After the Santhal uprising subsided, what was/were the measure/measures taken by the colonial government? **[UPSC]**

1. The territories called 'Santhal Paraganas' were created.
2. It became illegal for a Santhal to transfer land to a non-Santhal.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

3. Consider the following statements: **[CDS]**

1. In the 19th century, peasants in various parts of India rose in revolt against moneylenders and grain dealers.
2. In May 1875, at village Supa in Poona District in the Bombay Deccan, peasants attacked shopkeepers, burnt the bahi khatas (account books), looted grain shops and set fire to the houses of Sahukars.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

4. Who among the following was/were associated with the introduction of Ryotwari Settlement in India during the British rule? **[UPSC]**

1. Lord Cornwallis **2.** Alexander Reed
3. Thomas Munro

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
(c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

5. With reference to Ryotwari Settlement, consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**

1. The rent was paid directly by the peasants to the Government.
2. The Government gave Pattas to the Ryots.
3. The lands were surveyed and assessed before being taxed.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** None

6. Consider the following events: **[UPSC]**

1. Indigo Revolt **2.** Santhal Rebellion
3. Deccan Riot **4.** Mutiny of the Sepoys

The correct chronological sequence of these events is:

(a) 4, 2, 1, 3 **(b)** 4, 2, 3, 1
(c) 2, 4, 3, 1 **(d)** 2, 4, 1,3

7. Under the Permanent Settlement, 1793, the zamindars were required to issue pattas to the farmers which were not issued by many of the zamindars. The reason was **[UPSC]**

(a) the zamindars were trusted by the farmers
(b) there was no official check upon the zamindars
(c) it was the responsibility of the British Government
(d) the farmers were not interested in getting pattas

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Colonial rule was first established in Bengal.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Permanent Settlement had come into operation in 1793. The East India Company had fixed the revenue that each zamindar had to pay.
3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Permanent Settlement of Bengal was brought into effect by the East India Company headed by the Governor-General Lord Cornwallis in 1793. This was basically an agreement between the company and the Zamindars to fix the land revenue.
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation:
   - In introducing the Permanent Settlement, British officials hoped to resolve the problems they had been facing since the conquest of Bengal.
   - By the 1770s, the rural economy in Bengal was in crisis, with recurrent famines and declining agricultural output.
   - The Permanent Settlement, however, created problems. Company officials soon discovered that the zamindars were in fact not investing in the improvement of land. The revenue that had been fixed was so high that the zamindars found it difficult to pay. Anyone who failed to pay the revenue lost his zamindari.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The revenue was invariable, regardless of the harvest, and had to be paid punctually. In fact, according to the Sunset Law, if payment did not come in by sunset of the specified date, the zamindari was liable to be auctioned.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Maharaja Mehtab Chand (1820-79): When the Permanent Settlement was imposed, Tejchand was the Raja of Burdwan. Subsequently under Mehtab Chand the estate prospered. He helped the British during the Santhal rebellion and the 1857 revolt.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Report that was submitted to the British Parliament in 1813. It was the fifth of a series of reports on the administration and activities of the East India Company in India. Often referred to as the Fifth Report.
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
   - By 1832 a large area of land was demarcated as Damin-i-Koh. This was declared to be the land of the Santhals.
   - The land grant to the Santhals stipulated that at least one-tenth of the area was to be cleared and cultivated within the first ten years. After the demarcation of Damin-i-Koh, Santhal settlements expanded rapidly
9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
   - The Santhal people launched a rebellion against both the British colonial government and zamindars.
   - Sidhu, Kahnu, Chand, and Bhairav are the leaders.
   - Place: Jharkhand
   - The uprising was put down and largely overshadowed by other uprisings.
10. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation:
   - The Santhal uprising was the massive one among the all tribal revolts. The Santhals lived in various districts of eastern India. After the introduction of permanent settlement in 1793, Santhals were employed as labourers and forced to become agricultural labour for exploitation. Tribal lands were leased out to non-tribals zamindars and money-lenders. Oppression was done by the Police and European officers for railroad construction.
   - After that, the British government became more cautious and Santhals inhabited areas were constituted into separate administrative units called Santhals Parganas. It was recognised by their tribal culture and identity.
11. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
   - Having failed to subdue the Paharias and transform them into settled agriculturists, the British turned to the Santhals. The Paharias refused to cut forests, resisted touching the plough, and continued to be turbulent.
   - The Santhals, by contrast, appeared to be ideal settlers, clearing forests and ploughing the land with vigour. The Santhals were given land and persuaded to settle in the foothills of Rajmahal.
   - By 1832 a large area of land was demarcated as Damin-i-Koh. This was declared to be the land of the Santhals. They were to live within it, practise plough agriculture, and become settled peasants.
12. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Buchanan on Santhals wrote: They are very clever in clearing new lands, but live meanly. Their huts have no fence, and the walls are made of small sticks placed upright, close together and plastered within with clay. They are small and slovenly, and too flat-roofed, with very little arch.

13. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: The Taluqdars were wealthy landowners who formed part of the ruling class during the Mughal empire and British times.

14. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: Jotedar was referred as a village headman in Bengal.

15. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: It acquired control of Bengal on the Indian subcontinent in 1757, and, as the company was an agent of British imperialism, its shareholders were able to influence British policy there.

16. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The lower hills were taken over by Santhal settlers, the Paharias receded deeper into the Rajmahal hills.

17. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation:
- When the revolt spread in the Deccan, the Government of Bombay was initially unwilling to see it as anything serious.
- But the Government of India, worried by the memory of 1857, pressurised the Government of Bombay to set up a commission (Deccan Riots Commission) of enquiry to investigate into the causes of the riots.
- The commission produced a report that was presented to the British Parliament in 1878.
- This report provides historians with a range of sources for the study of the riot.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: Bengal – Establishment of colonial rule, New land revenue, Auction system under Warren Hastings – 1793, Permanent Revenue settlement in Bengal by Lord Cornwallis.

2. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation:
- The Santhals were encouraged by the British to settle on the foothills of the Rajmahal hills to clear the forests and practice settled agriculture.
- By 1832 a large area of land had been demarcated as Damin-i-Koh.
- It has been declared the property of the Santhals.
- They had to work within it, practice plough farming, and become settled peasants.
- In comparison to the santhals, the Paharia tribes who lived on the hills opposed the British effort to settle them and practice agriculture.

3. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation:
- The Pahariyas were a tribal clan who lived around the Rajmahal Hills in Santhal Pargana. They had retained virtual independence prior to the introduction of British control in India.
- The revolt of the Pahariyas, commanded by Raja Jagannatha, is remarkable. The Pahariyas started raiding established communities on a more regular basis. The British launched a ruthless campaign against the Pahariyas in the 1770s, tracking them down and executing them.

4. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation:
- The zamindari system was introduced by Lord Cornwallis in 1793 through Permanent Settlement that fixed the land rights of the members in perpetuity without any provision for fixed rent or occupancy right for actual cultivators.
- Under the Zamindari system, the land revenue was collected from the farmers by the intermediaries known as Zamindars.
- A system that came to be known as the Ryotwari System, was devised by Captain Alexander Read and Sir Thomas Munro at the end of the 18th century and introduced by the latter when he was governor of Madras Presidency (1819–26).
- Under the Ryotwari system, the land revenue was paid by the farmers directly to the state.
- In 1822, Englishman Holt Mackenzie devised a new system known as the Mahalwari System in the North Western Provinces of the Bengal Presidency (most of this area is now in Uttar Pradesh).
- Under the Mahalwari system, the land revenue was collected from the farmers by the village headmen on behalf of the whole village (and not the zamindar).

5. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation:
- The permanent settlement was made with the rajas and taluqdars of Bengal. They were classified as Zamindars and had to pay the revenue that was fixed.
- The Zamindar was not the landowner in the village, but a revenue collector of the state.

6. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation:
- The initial demand was very high. It was felt that if the demand was fixed for all time to come, the Company would never be able to claim a share of increased income from land when prices rose and cultivation expanded.
- This high demand was imposed in the 1790s, a time when the prices of agricultural produce were depressed, making it difficult for the ryots (raiyat, used to designate peasants) to pay their dues to the zamindar.

- The revenue was invariable, regardless of the harvest, and had to be paid punctually. In fact, according to the Sunset Law, if payment did not come in by sunset of the specified date, the zamindari was liable to be auctioned.
- The Permanent Settlement initially limited the power of the zamindar to collect rent from the ryot and manage his zamindari.

7. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The jotedars were the most powerful in North Bengal, in some places they were called haoladars, gantidars or mandals.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

- The first revenue settlement in the Bombay Deccan was made in the 1820s.
- The revenue that was demanded was so high that in many places peasants deserted their villages and migrated to new regions. In areas of poor soil and fluctuating rainfall the problem was particularly acute.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- The commission produced a report that was presented to the British Parliament in 1878.
- This report provides historians with a range of sources for the study of the riot.

10. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- The Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II granted the Diwani of Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa to the East India Company in 1765.
- The Regulating Act of 1773 (formally, the East India Company Act 1772) was an Act of the Parliament of Great Britain intended to overhaul the management of the East India Company's rule in India. It marked the first step towards parliamentary control over the Company and centralised administration in India.
- First revenue prices begin to fall in 1818.
- Cotton boom begins in 1861.

11. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- On the basis of the report submitted by Sir John Shore Cornwallis introduced land revenue settlement for ten years with Zamindars in 1789 but the same was made permanent in 1793 by the proclamation of Cornwallis and it was known as Permanent Land Revenue settlement. The basic features of the settlement were as follows:
- The Zamindars were made hereditary owners of the land under their possession. They and their successors exercised total control over lands.
- The Zamindars could sell and purchase lands.
- The state had no direct contact with the peasants.
- The company's share in the revenue was fixed permanently with the Zamindars.

12. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- The zamindari system was introduced by Lord Cornwallis in 1793.
- The American Civil War was fought from 1861 to 1865 between the northern states loyal to the Union and the 7 southern states that had seceded from the Union to form the Confederate States of America.
- Report that was submitted to the British Parliament in 1813. It was the fifth of a series of reports on the administration and activities of the East India Company in India.
- The Santhals settled in the Rajmahal hills around 1800. They displaced the hill-folk who lived in this region.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: South of Ranchi in the Chota Nagpur region in 1899–1900, Birsa Munda led the Munda Rebellion. The movement was the most well-known tribal uprising of the Indian subcontinent's 19^{th} century.

As the source of the pain the Mundas were going through, the movement blames the subsequent forces.

The Santhal uprising took place in 1855–1856 and was led by Sidhu and Kanhu Murmu. Santhal Paragana in the Jharkhand state hosted the revolt. The movement was organised in opposition to the corrupt zamindari system as well as the British colonial government.

Indian revolutionary Alluri Sitarama Raju (April 4, 1897 – May 7, 1924) engaged in an armed uprising against British colonial power in his country.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Santhals were the agricultural people settled in Rajmahal Hills of Bihar. They are native to the Indian states of predominantly Jharkhand, West Bengal and Odisha. It was after the Santhal Revolt (1855-56) that the Santhal Pargana was created, carving out 5,500 square miles from the districts of Bhagalpur and Birbhum. The colonial state hoped that by creating a new territory for the Santhals and imposing some special laws within it, the Santhals could be conciliated. It became illegal for a Santhal to transfer land to a non-Santhal. British government enacted laws so that the land of tribals could not be taken by outsiders (dikus).

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Through the 19^{th} century, peasants in various parts of India did revolt against moneylenders and grain dealers. Hence, Statement 1 is correct. One

such revolt occurred in 1875, in Deccan. In May 1875, at village Supa in Poona District in the Bombay Deccan, peasants attacked shopkeepers, burnt the bahi khatas (account books), looted grain shops, and set fire to the houses of Sahukars. Hence, Statement 2 is correct. It was a market center where many shopkeepers and moneylenders lived. On 12 May 1875, ryots from the surrounding rural areas gathered and attacked the shopkeepers and moneylenders. They demand their Bahi khatas(account book) and debt bonds.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The idea of Permanent Settlement was being abandoned in the British colonies in southern India.

Sir Thomas Munro and Captain Alexander Read created a system at the end of the 18th century that they later established as the governor of the Madras Presidency and gave the name "Ryotwari System" (1819–26).

The state received the land revenue under the Ryotwari system directly from the farmers.

5. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Ryotwari System was introduced by Sir Thomas Munro in 1820. Initially, it was implemented in Madras and Bombay areas. Under this system, every registered holder of land was recognised as its proprietor and paid directly to the government. The registered agreement called pattas were given to the Ryots to recognize their ownership rights. The lands were surveyed and assessed before being taxed. The rates were 50% in dryland and 60% in the wetland. Hence all given statements are correct.

6. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The rebellion began on 10 May 1857 in the form of a mutiny of sepoys of the Company's army in the garrison town of Meerut, Delhi.

The Santhal rebellion (1855-56) was a rebellion in present-day Jharkhand, against both the British East India Company and the zamindari system by the Santhal.

The Indigo revolt was a peasant movement and subsequent uprising of indigo farmers against the indigo planters that arose in Bengal in 1859 and continued for over a year.

In May and June 1875, peasants of Maharashtra in some parts of Pune and Ahmednagar districts revolted against increasing agrarian distress.

The rioters' specific purpose was to obtain and destroy the bonds, decrees, and other documents in the possession of the moneylenders.

7. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Permanent Settlement of Bengal was brought into effect by the East India Company headed by Governor-General Lord Cornwallis in 1793.

Landlords or Zamindars were recognised as the owners of the land. They were given hereditary rights of succession of the lands under them.

The amount to be paid by the landlords was fixed. It was agreed that this would not increase in future (permanent).

The fixed amount was 10/11th portion of the revenue for the government and 1/10th was for the Zamindar.

The Zamindars could sell or transfer the land as they wished.

The Zamindar also had to give the tenant a patta which described the area of the land given to him and the rent he had to pay the landlord.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

11 REBELS AND THE RAJ (REVOLT OF 1857 AND ITS PRESENTATIONS)

Introduction

- Late in the afternoon of 10th May 1857, the sepoys in the cantonment of Meerut broke out in mutiny. It began in the lines of the native infantry, spread very swiftly to the cavalry and then to the city. The ordinary people of the town and surrounding villages joined the sepoys.
- The telegraph line to Delhi was cut. As darkness descended, a group of sepoys rode off towards Delhi. The sepoys arrived at the gates of the Red Fort early in the morning on 11th May. It was the month of Ramzan, the Muslim holy month of prayer and fasting. The old Mughal emperor, Bahadur Shah, had just finished his prayers and meal before the sun rose and the fast began.
- They demanded that the emperor give them his blessings. Surrounded by the sepoys, Bahadur Shah had no other option but to comply. The revolt thus acquired a kind of legitimacy because it could now be carried on in the name of the Mughal emperor.
- Through 12th and 13th May, North India remained quiet. Once word spread that Delhi had fallen to the rebels and Bahadur Shah had blessed the rebellion, events moved swiftly. Cantonment after cantonment in the Gangetic valley and some to the west of Delhi rose in mutiny.

Pattern of the Rebellion

How the mutinies began?

- The sepoys began their action with a signal, firing of the evening gun or the sounding of the bugle.
- They seized the bell of the arms and plundered the treasury.
- They attacked the government buildings – the jail, treasury, telephone office, record room, bungalows –burning all records.
- Everything and everybody connected with the white man became a target.
- In major towns like Kanpur, Lucknow, and Bareilly, moneylenders and rich became the objects of the rebels.
- The mutiny in the sepoy ranks quickly became a rebellion.

Leaders and Followers

- To fight the British, leadership and organisation were required, and for this, they turned towards the Mughal ruler Bahadur Shah who agreed to be the nominal leader of the rebellion.
- In Kanpur, the sepoys and the people of the town agreed to support Nana Sahib.
- In Jhansi, the Rani Lakshmibai was forced to assume the leadership of the uprising.
- Kunwar Singh, a local Zamindar in Arrah in Bihar, too took the leadership.
- In Awadh, where the displacement of the popular Nawab Wajid Ali Shah and the annexation of the state were still very fresh in the memory of the people, the populace in Lucknow celebrated the fall of British rule by hailing Birjis Qadr, the young son of the Nawab, as their leader.
- From Meerut, there were reports that a fakir had appeared riding on an elephant and that the sepoys were visiting him frequently. In Lucknow, after the annexation of Awadh, there were many religious leaders and self-styled prophets who preached the destruction of British rule.
- The local leaders emerged, urging peasants, zamindars, and tribals to revolt e.g. – Shah Mal mobilized the villagers of pargana Barout in Uttar Pradesh; Gonooa, a tribal cultivator of Singhbhum in Chotanagpur, became a rebel leader of the Kol tribals of the region.

Rumors and Prophecies

- Rumours and prophecies played a part in moving people to action. The sepoys who had arrived in Delhi from Meerut had told Bahadur Shah about bullets coated with the fat of cows and pigs and that biting those bullets would corrupt their caste and religion.
- This was not the only rumour that was circulating in North India at the beginning of 1857. There was the rumor that the British government had hatched a gigantic conspiracy to destroy the caste and religion of the Hindus and Muslim.
- The rumour said that the British had mixed the bone dust of cows and pigs into the flour that was sold in the market.
- The sepoys and the common people refused to touch the atta.
- There was a fear and suspicion that the British wanted to convert Indians to Christianity.
- The sepoy had the fear about bullets coated with the fats of cows and pigs, and biting those bullets would corrupt their caste and religion.

Why did the people believe in the rumors?

- Under the leadership of Governor General Lord William Bentinck, British adopted policies aimed at reforming Indian society by introducing Western education, Western ideas, and Western institutions.
- With the cooperation of sections of Indian society, they set up English medium schools, colleges, and universities which taught Western sciences and the liberal arts.

- The British established laws to abolished customs like Sati (1829) and to permit the remarriage of Hindu widows.
- The British introduced their own system of administration, their own laws and their own methods of land settlements and land revenue collection.

Awadh in Revolt

- The British annexed not only Awadh, but many other kingdoms and principalities like Jhansi and Satara.
- Once these territories were annexed, the British introduced their own system of administration, their own laws and their own methods of land settlement and land revenue collection.
- Awadh – one of the major centres where the drama of 1857 unfolded.

"A cherry that will drop into our mouth one day"

- In 1851, Governor General Lord Dalhousie described the kingdom of Awadh as "a cherry that will drop into our mouth one day" and five years later it was annexed to the British Empire.
- The Subsidiary Alliance had been imposed on Awadh.
- The terms of this alliance the nawab had to disband his military force of the British to position their troops within the kingdom and act in accordance with the advice of the British.
- Deprived of his armed forces the nawab became increasingly dependent on the British to maintain law and order within the kingdom.
- He could no longer assert control over the rebellious chief and taluqdars.
- By the early 1850s, moreover, all the major areas of India had been conquered: the Maratha lands, the Doab, the Carnatic, the Punjab and Bengal.
- The takeover of Awadh in 1856 was expected to complete a process of territorial annexation that had begun with the conquest of Bengal almost a century earlier.
- Lord Dalhousie's annexations created disaffection in all the areas and principalities that were annexed but nowhere more so than in the kingdom of Awadh in the heart of North India.

Subsidiary Alliance

It was a system devised by Lord Wellesley in 1798. All those who entered into such an alliance with the British had to accept certain terms and conditions:

a. The British would be responsible for protecting their ally from external and internal threats to their power.

b. In the territory of the ally, a British armed contingent would be stationed.

c. The ally would have to provide the resources for maintaining this contingent.

d. The ally could enter into agreements with other rulers or engage in warfare only with the permission of the British.

Land Revenue Policy of British

- It further undermined the position and authority of the taluqdars. After annexation, the first British revenue settlement, known as the Summary Settlement of 1856, was based on the assumption that the taluqdars were interlopers with no permanent stakes in land: they had established their hold over land through force and fraud. The Summary Settlement proceeded to remove the taluqdars wherever possible.
- British land revenue officers believed that by removing taluqdars they would be able to settle the land with the actual owners of the soil and thus reduce the level of exploitation of peasants while increasing revenue returns for the state. But this did not happen in practice: revenue flows for the state increased but the burden of demand on the peasants did not decline.

What the Rebels Wanted

- Most of them were sepoys and ordinary people who were not literate. Thus, other than a few proclamations and ishtahars (notifications) issued by rebel leaders to propagate their ideas and persuade people to join the revolt, we do not have much that throws light on the perspective of the rebels.

The Vision of Unity

- The rebel proclamations in 1857 repeatedly appealed to all sections of the population, irrespective of their caste and creed.
- The rebellion was seen as a war in which both Hindus and Muslims had equally to lose or gain.
- The ishtahars harked back to the pre-British Hindu-Muslim past and glorified the coexistence of different communities under Mughal Empire.
- It was remarkable that during the uprising religious divisions between Hindus and Muslim were hardly noticeable despite British attempts to create such divisions.
- In 1857, the British spent Rs. 50,000 to incite the Hindu population against the Muslims but the attempt failed.

Against the Symbols of Oppression

- The land revenue settlements had dispossessed the landholders, both big and small and foreign commerce had driven artisans and weavers to ruin.
- Every aspect of the British rule was attacked and the firangi accused of destroying a way of life that was familiar and cherished.
- The proclamations expressed the widespread fear that the British were bent on destroying the caste and religions of Hindus and Muslims and converting them to Christianity.
- People were urged to come together and fight to save their livelihood, their faith, their honor, their identity.

The Search for Alternative Power

- Once British rule had collapsed, the rebels in places like Delhi, Lucknow and Kanpur tried to establish some kind of structure of authority and administration.
- The leaders went back to the culture of the court. Appointments were made to various posts, arrangements made for the collection of land revenue and the payment of troops, orders issued to stop loot and plunder. Side by side plans were made to fight battles against the British.

Repression

- It is clear from all accounts that we have of 1857 that the British did not have an easy time in putting down the rebellion.
- The British realised that they were not dealing with a mere mutiny but an uprising that had huge popular support.
- In Awadh, for example, a British official called Forsyth estimated that three-fourths of the adult male population was in rebellion.
- The British used military power on a gigantic scale. But this was not the only instrument they used.
- In large parts of present-day Uttar Pradesh, where big landholders and peasants had offered united resistance, the British tried to break up the unity by promising to give back to the big landholders their estates.
- Many landholders died fighting the British or they escaped into Nepal where they died of illness or starvation.

Images of the Revolt

- Official accounts of colonial administration and military men left their versions in letters and diaries, autobiography and official histories.
- The changing British attitudes were evident through the innumerable memos and notes, assessments of situations.
- The stories of the revolt that were published in British newspapers and magazines narrated the in gory detail the violence of the mutineers.
- The pictorial images were produced by the British and Indians – paintings, pencil drawings, cartoons, bazaar prints.

Celebrating the Saviors

- British pictures offer a variety of images that were meant to provoke a range of different emotions and reactions.
- Some of them commemorate the British heroes who saved the English and repressed the rebels.
- "Relief of Lucknow ", was painted by Thomas Jones Barker In 1859.

English Women and the Honour of Britain

- The British government was asked to protect the honor of innocent women and ensure the safety of helpless children.
- Artists expressed as well as shaped these sentiments through their visual representations of trauma and suffering.

The Performances of Terror

- The urge for vengeance and retribution was expressed in the brutal way in which the rebels were executed.
- They were blown from guns or hung from the gallows.
- Images of these executions were widely circulated through popular journals.

No Time for Clemency

- When Governor General Canning declared that a gesture of leniency and a show of mercy would help in winning back the loyalty of the sepoys, he was mocked in the British press.

Nationalist Imageries

- The nationalist movement drew its inspiration from the events of 1857.
- A whole world of nationalist imagination was woven around the revolt.
- It was celebrated as the first war of independence in which all sections of the people of India came together to fight against imperial rule.
- Art and literature had helped in keeping alive the memories 1857.

Timeline

1849: Governor General Lord Dalhousie announced that after the death of Bahadur Shah Zafar, the family of the king would be shifted out of the Red Fort and given another place in Delhi to reside in.

1856: (i) Governor-General Canning decided that Bahadur Shah Zafar would be the last Mughal king and after his death his descendants would be recognised as princes.

1856: (ii) The Company passed a new law which stated that every new person who took up employment in the Company's army had to agree to serve overseas if required.

29 Mar, 1857: Mangal Pandey, a young soldier, was hanged to death for attacking his officer in Barrackpore.

May, 1857: Sepoys mutinied in several places.

10 May, 1857: Sepoys rushed to Delhi from Meerut.

Sep,1857: Delhi was recaptured from the rebel forces.

Oct, 1858: Mughal Emperor Bahadur Shah Zafar along with his wife was sent to prison in Rangoon.

1858: A new Act passed by the British Parliament transferred the power of the East India Company to the British Crown.

Nov, 1862: Bahadur Shah Zafar died in the jail.of Rangoon.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Who was the last ruler of Mughal Empire?
   (a) Shah Alam II **(b)** Alamgir
   (c) Bahadur Shah **(d)** None of the above
2. Who was the Governor General when 1857 Revolt?
   (a) Lord Dalhousie **(b)** Lord Canning
   (c) Lord Wellesley **(d)** None of the above
3. Who was the Governor General of India at the time of the Sepoy Mutiny?
   (a) Lord Hardings **(b)** Lord Canning
   (c) Lord Lytton **(d)** Lord Dalhousie
4. When was the Revolt of 1857 started?
   (a) 30th June **(b)** 10th May
   (c) 31st May **(d)** 10th June
5. Who led the 1857 Revolt in Bihar?
   (a) Babu Amar Singh **(b)** Hare Krishna Singh
   (c) Babu Kunwar Singh **(d)** Raja Shahzada Singh

6. The nationalist movement drew its inspiration from which of the following events?
   (a) Santhal Uprising **(b)** Revolt of 1857
   (c) Pabana Revolt **(d)** None of the above
7. Which among the following is known as the first war of independence?
   (a) Civil Disobedience Movement
   (b) Bardoli Satyagraha
   (c) Ahom Revolt
   (d) None of the above
8. Which among the following Governor-general declared that a gesture of leniency?
   (a) Lord Canning **(b)** Lord Rippon
   (c) Lord Dalhousie **(d)** Lord Lytton
9. Who painted "Relief of Lucknow"?
   (a) Thomas Jones Barker
   (b) Dadabhai Naroji
   (c) M.N. Roy
   (d) None of the above
10. Which of the following statement is incorrect?
   (a) The rebel proclamations in 1857 repeatedly appealed to all sections of the population, irrespective of their caste and creed.
   (b) The rebellion was seen as a war in which both Hindus and Muslims had equally to lose or gain.
   (c) In 1857, the British spent Rs. 50,000 to incite the Hindu population against the Muslims and it was successful.
   (d) All the statements are correct.
11. Which among the following is not the term and condition for subsidiary alliance?
   (a) The British won't be responsible for protecting their ally from external and internal threats to their power.
   (b) In the territory of the ally, a British armed contingent would be stationed.
   (c) The ally would have to provide the resources for maintaining this contingent.
   (d) The ally could enter into agreements with other rulers or engage in warfare only with the permission of the British.
12. Who among the following started Doctrine of Lapse?
   (a) Lord Canning **(b)** Lord Rippon
   (c) Lord Dalhousie **(d)** Lord Lytton
13. Which of the following best describes the Summary Settlement of 1856?
   (a) The first British land revenue settlement in Awadh
   (b) Settlement with the ryots of Deccan who suffered from heavy taxation under Ryotwari system
   (c) Abolition of sunset clause under Permanent settlement in Bengal
   (d) Return of native lands to Santhal rebels

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following statements is/are true about 1857 revolt?
   1. Simon Fraser was the Political Agent of the British in Delhi who was killed by sepoys
   2. Bengal was the most intensely involved in the revolt
   Select the correct answer using codes below
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2
2. Which of the following was/were not centres of 1857 revolt?
   1. Madras **2.** Jagdishpur
   3. Allahabad **4.** Kanpur
   Select the correct answer using codes below?
   (a) 2, 3 and 4 **(b)** 3 and 4
   (c) 1, 3 and 4 **(d)** 1 and 2
3. With reference to Lord William Bentinck, consider the following statements:
   1. He declared English to be the exclusive language of government.
   2. He did away with the circuit and appellate courts in each province.
   3. He pushed for the Sati to be abolished.
   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
   (c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
4. Consider the following leaders and the area in which they led revolts in 1857.

Leaders		Area
1.	Kunwar Singh	Western UP
2.	Khan Bahadur	Rohilkhand
3.	Nana Saheb	Lucknow

   Select the correct answer using codes below?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 and 3
   (c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1 and 2
5. Consider the following statements:
   1. The 1857 Revolt, according to R.C. Majumdar, was neither the first nor a national war of independence.
   2. According to T.R. Holmes, the 1857 Revolt was a battle between civilisation and barbarism.
   3. Jawaharlal Nehru asserted that the 1857 Revolt was merely a Hindu-Muslim plot.
   Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below?
   (a) 2 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** None of the above
6. Consider the following statements:
   1. The actual command in Delhi was under General Bakht Khan, while Bahadur Shah served as the official leader.
   2. Rani Laxmi Bai became the Sepoys' chief in Arrah.
   3. Begum Hazrat Mahal organised the revolution in Lucknow.
   Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below.
   (a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 1, 2 and 3
   (c) None of the above **(d)** 2 only
7. Match the following

Leaders		Area	
(i)	Laxmi Bai	**(a)**	Faizabad
(ii)	Mangal Pandey	**(b)**	Jhansi
(iii)	Maulvi Ahmadullah	**(c)**	Barrackpore

Codes:

	(a)	(b)	(c)
(a)	(iii)	(i)	(ii)
(b)	(i)	(ii)	(iii)
(c)	(i)	(iii)	(ii)

8. Consider the following statements about Subsidiary Alliance:
   1. It was a system devised by Warren Hasting in 1798.
   2. Under it the ally would have to provide the resources for maintaining this contingent.

   Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below?
   (a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Who led the revolt of 1857 in the city of Kanpur? **[Navik G.K.]**
   (a) Rani Lakshmi Bai **(b)** Nana Sahib
   (c) Begum Hazrat Mahal **(d)** Kunwar Singh
2. The Summary Settlement of 1856 was based on which one of the following assumptions? **[CDS G.K.]**
   (a) The Talukdars were the rightful owners of the land.
   (b) The Talukdars were interlopers with no permanent stakes in the land.
   (c) The Talukdars could evict the peasants from the lands.
   (d) The Talukdars would take a portion of the revenue which flowed to the State.
3. Which one of the following was not included in the terms and conditions of Subsidiary Alliance System of Lord Wellesley? **[UPSC]**
   (a) The British would protect their ally.
   (b) The ally was free to enter into agreements with other rulers or engage in warfare.
   (c) In the territory of the ally, a British armed contingent would be stationed.
   (d) The ally would have to provide resources for the maintenance of the British armed contingent.
4. Who of the following Governor-Generals Promulgated the policy of 'Subsidiary Alliance'? **[CG Vaypam Patwari]**
   (a) Warren Hastings **(b)** Lord Cornwallis
   (c) Lord Wellesley **(d)** Lord Dalhousie
5. Consider the following Princely States of the British rule in India: **[UPSC]**
   1. Jhansi
   2. Sambalpur
   3. Satara

   The correct chronological order in which they were annexed by the British is:
   (a) 1-2-3 **(b)** 1-3-2
   (c) 3-2-1 **(d)** 3-1-2
6. Which one of the following statements does not apply to the system of Subsidiary Alliance introduced by Lord Wellesley? **[UPSC]**
   (a) To maintain a large standing army at other's expense
   (b) To keep India safe from Napoleonic danger
   (c) To secure a fixed income for the Company
   (d) To establish British paramountcy over the Indian States
7. With reference to the 'revolt of the year 1857' who of the following was betrayed by 'friend' captured and put to death by the British? **[SSC CHSL]**
   (a) Nana Sahib **(b)** Kunwar Singh
   (c) Khan Bahadur Khan **(d)** Tantia Tope
8. Which one of the following places did Kunwar Singh, a prominent leader of the Revolt of 1857 belongs to? **[Punjab Civil Service]**
   (a) Bihar **(b)** Madhya Pradesh
   (c) Rajasthan **(d)** Uttar Pradesh
9. Which one of the following territories was not affected by the Revolt of 1857? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Jhansi **(b)** Chittor
   (c) Jagdishpur **(d)** Lucknow
10. "In this instance we could not play off the Mohammedans against the Hindus". To which one of the following events did this remark of Aitchison relate?
    (a) Revolt of 1857
    (b) Champaran Satyagraha (1917)
    (c) Khilafat and Non-Cooperation Movement (1919-22)
    (d) August Movement of 1942
11. The educated middle class in India **[UPSC]**
    (a) opposed the revolt of 1857
    (b) supported the revolt of 1857
    (c) remained neutral to the revolt of 1857
    (d) fought against native rulers

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
   Explanation: The old Mughal emperor, Bahadur Shah was the last ruler of Mughal Empire.
2. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Lord Dalhousie, the Governor-General, had refused to allow her adopted son to succeed to the throne after her husband died and had annexed the state by the application of the Doctrine of Lapse. Though Lord Dalhousie devised "Doctrine of Lapse", but he remained in office till 1856, after whom Lord Canning took over.
3. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: Lord Canning (1856-62) was the Governor-General of India during the 1857 revolt. Lord Canning served as the Governor-General of India from 1856 to 1862.
4. **Option (b) is correct.**
   Explanation: The rebellion began on 10 May 1857 in the form of a mutiny of sepoys of the Company's army in the garrison town of Meerut, 40 mi northeast of Delhi.

5. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The rebellion in Bihar was led by Babu Kunwar Singh. He was nearly 80 when he took charge of the sepoys who were placed at Danapur on 25 July 1857. Singh and his troops laid an attack on the district headquarters at Arrah. He held the fort for 7 days when British officer Major Vincent Eyre took Arrah back. Eyre's troops also raided Jagdispur.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The nationalist movement drew its inspiration from the events of 1857.
7. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Revolt of 1857 is known as the 1st war of independence in which almost all sections of the people of India came together to fight against the Imperial rule in India.
8. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: When Governor General Canning declared that a gesture of leniency and a show of mercy would help in winning back the loyalty of the sepoys, he was mocked in the British press.
9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: "Relief of Lucknow ", was painted by Thomas Jones Barker In 1859.
10. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1857, the British spent Rs. 50,000 to incite the Hindu population against the Muslims but the attempt failed.
11. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The British would be responsible for protecting their ally from external and internal threats to their power.
12. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Doctrine of lapse, in Indian history, formula devised by Lord Dalhousie, governor-general of India (1848–56), to deal with questions of succession to Hindu Indian states.
13. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The taluqdars' authority and status were further weakened by the Summary Settlement, the first British land-revenue settlement in Awadh, which was completed in 1856. The settlement moved forward under the presumption that the taluqdars were trespassers who had no long-term interests to the land and who had gained control by coercion and deceit. Wherever practicable, the taluqdars were eliminated by the Summary Settlement.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Simon Fraser, the Political Agent, and several other Englishmen were killed in Delhi; the public offices were either occupied or destroyed. The capture of Delhi and the proclamation of Bahadur Shah as the Emperor of Hindustan gave a positive political meaning to the Revolt and provided a rallying point for the rebels by recalling the past glory of the imperial city. Hence statement 1 is correct.
Revolt at Meerut and the capture of Delhi was the precursor to a widespread mutiny by the sepoys and rebellion almost all over North India, as well as Central and Western India. South India remained quiet and Punjab and Bengal were only marginally affected. Hence statement 2 is correct.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Within a month of the capture of Delhi, the Revolt spread to different parts of the country: Kanpur, Lucknow, Benares, Allahabad, Bareilly, Jagdishpur and Jhansi.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Lord William Bentinck served as governor general from 1828 to 1835. The following are some of the significant occasions that occurred:
   - Elimination of the sati and other barbaric rites (1829).
   - Elimination of thugi (1830).
   - 1833 Charter Act.
   - Education reforms, a resolution from 1835, and
   - The adoption of English as the official language.
   - Mysore (1831), Coorg (1834), and Central Cachar (1834) were annexed (1834).
   - "Perpetual friendship" agreement with Ranjeet Singh.
   - The circuit and appeals court for provinces were abolished.
4. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: At Kanpur, the natural choice was Nana Saheb, the adopted son of the last Peshwa, Baji Rao II. He had refused the family title and, banished from Poona, was living near Kanpur.
5. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: According to Jawaharlal Nehru, the Revolt of 1857 was primarily a feudal uprising led by feudal chiefs and their adherents and supported by the pervasive anti-foreign sentiments.
6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: In Jhansi, Rani Laxmi Bai assumed the leadership of the Sepoys.
7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation:
   - Laxmi Bai - Jhansi
   - Mangal Pandey - Barrackpore
   - Maulvi Ahmadullah - Faizabad
8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: It was a system devised by Lord Wellesley in 1798. All those who entered into such an alliance with the British had to accept certain terms and conditions:
   - The British would be responsible for protecting their ally from external and internal threats to their power.
   - In the territory of the ally, a British armed contingent would be stationed.
   - The ally would have to provide the resources for maintaining this contingent.
   - The ally could enter into agreements with other rulers or engage in warfare only with the permission of the British.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Nana Sahib led the revolt of 1857 in the city of Kanpur. The original name of Nana Sahib was Dhondu Pant. He was the adopted son of the late Peshwa Baji Rao II. He was the successor of Peshwa Baji Rao II. Tantia Tope was the general of Nana Saheb in the 1857 revolt. It is believed that Nana Sahib escaped to Nepal when the rebellion collapsed.

2. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: In 1856, Nawab Wajid Ali Shah was deposed on the grounds of misgovernance, which marked the beginning of the annexation of Awadh. Assuming that Awadh possessed good grounds, the British wanted it to be a part of their domain. They understood Talukdars were influential landowners in the area. They made the assumption that talukdars were oppressors of the peasants and were not the original owners of the property in order to lower the landholding. The British discovered the lands were greatly overvalued and the talukdars were not oppressors but rather essential to the system after acquiring complete income control. One of the factors that made Awadh a potent hub of the Revolt of 1857 was this episode.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Lord Wellesley came up with the Subsidiary Alliance arrangement in 1798. All parties who joined the British in such an alliance were required to agree to specific terms and conditions. The British would be in charge of defending their friend from threats to their rule coming from both inside and outside the country. A British armed contingent would be stationed on the ally's soil. The ally would be required to contribute the funds necessary to support this contingent. Only with the approval of the British could the ally make deals with other kings or wage war.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The subsidiary Alliance in India was planned by Lord Wellesley, the Governor-General of India from 1798 to 1805. Under the subsidiary Alliance scheme, the ruler of the Allied Indian State was obliged to allow the permanent stationing within his territory of a British force and to pay a subsidy for its maintenance.

5. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Doctrine of Lapse was an annexation policy followed widely by Lord Dalhousie when he was India's Governor-General from 1848 to 1856.

States Annexed by Doctrine of Lapse	Year of Annexation
Jhansi	1854
Sambalpur	1849
Jaitpur	1849
Satara	1848
Udaipur	1852
Nagpur	1854

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The British East India Company forced the states into a "subsidiary alliance". According to the terms under the alliance, Indian rulers were not allowed to have their independent armed forces because the company promised to protect them, but in exchange of payment for the "subsidiary forces" that the Company was supposed to maintain for the purpose of this protection. If the Indian rulers failed to make the payment for the subsidiary forces, then part of their territory was taken away as penalty.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Tantia Tope was a close friend and right hand of Nana Sahib, Peshwa's adopted son.

Tantia Tope defeated the Indian troops of the East India Company at Kanpur in May 1857.

He led the Indians in the 1857 Rebellion and was noted for his guerilla tactics, which terrified the British.

Man Singh, a former Gwalior army Sardar, betrayed Tatia Tope's trust by succumbing to the 'Jagir' and the Englishmen's proposals.

On April 18, 1859, he was hanged in General Meade's camp at Shivpuri.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Kunwar Singh (1777 – 26 April 1858) was a notable leader during the Indian Rebellion of 1857. He belonged to a royal Ujjainiya (Panwar) Rajput house of Jagdispur, currently a part of Bhojpur district, Bihar. At the age of 80, he led a select band of armed soldiers against the troops under the command of the British East India Company. He was the chief organiser of the fight against the British in Bihar.

9. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The rebellion of 1857 began as a mutiny of sepoys of the East India Company's army on 10 May 1857, in the cantonment of the town of Meerut, and soon escalated into other mutinies and civilian rebellions largely confined to present-day Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, northern Madhya Pradesh, and the Delhi region. Chittor was not affected by this revolt.

10. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: This remark of Aitchison relates to the Revolt of 1857. It began on 10 May 1857 at Meerut, as a mutiny of sepoys of the British East India Company's army.

11. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The revolt of 1857 did not spread to all parts of the country. Nor was it supported by all groups and sections of the Indian society. Many Indian rulers refused to help the rebels and some were openly hostile to the rebels and helped the British in suppressing the revolt. The middle and upper classes and the modern educated Indians also did not support the revolt. South and West India remained largely outside the fold of the revolt.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

12 COLONAL CITIES (URABNISATION, PLANNING, AND ARCHITECTURE)

Introduction

- In this chapter we will discuss the process of urbanisation in colonial India, explore the distinguishing characteristics of colonial cities and track social changes within them.
- Madras (Chennai), Calcutta (Kolkata) and Bombay (Mumbai) all three were originally fishing and weaving villages.
- They became important centres of trade due to the economic activities of the English East India Company.
- Company agents settled in Madras in 1639 and in Calcutta in 1690.
- Bombay was given to the Company in 1661 by the English king, who had got it as part of his wife's dowry from the king of Portugal.
- The Company established trading and administrative offices in each of these settlements.
- By the middle of the nineteenth century these settlements had become big cities from where the new rulers controlled the country.
- Institutions were set up to regulate economic activity and demonstrate the authority of the new rulers.

Towns and Cities in Pre-colonial Times

What gave towns their character?

- Towns were defined in opposition to rural areas. They represented specific forms of economic activities and cultures.
- The people lived by cultivating land, foraging in the forest, or rearing animals. Towns dominated over the rural population.
- Towns and cities were often fortified by walls which symbolised their separation from the countryside.
- When towns were attacked, people often sought shelter in the countryside. Traders and peddlers took goods from the towns to sell in the villages. There was a revenue flow of humans and goods from towns to villages.
- During the 16^{th} and 17^{th} centuries towns built by the Mughals were famous for their concentration of populations, their monumental buildings and their imperial grandeur and wealth.
- Agra, Delhi, and Lahore were important centers of imperial administration and control.
- Within these towns were gardens, mosques, temples, tombs, colleges, bazaars and caravanserais. The focus of the town was oriented towards the palace and the principal mosque.

Towns in South India

- In the towns of south India such as Madurai and Kanchipuram, the principal focus was the temple.
- These temples were the important commercial centers.
- Religious festivals often coincided with fairs, linking pilgrimage with the trade.
- The ruler was the highest authority and the principal patron of religious institutions.
- The relationship that he had with other group and classes determined their place in society and in the town.
- In North India, maintaining this order was the work of the imperial officer called the kotwal.

Changes in the Eighteenth Century

- The old towns went to decline and new towns developed in the eighteenth century.
- The Mughal capitals, Delhi and Agra, lost their political authority.
- The growth of new regional powers was reflected in the increasing importance of regional capitals – Lucknow, Hyderabad, Seringapatam, Poona, Nagpur, Baroda and Tanjore.
- Trade, administrators, artisans, and others migrated from the old Mughal centers to these new capitals in search of work and patronage.
- The European commercial companies had set up base in different places early during the Mughal era – the Portuguese in Panaji in 1510, the Dutch in Masulipatam in 1605, the British in Madras in 1639 and the French in Pondicherry in 1673.
- By the end of 18^{th} century, the land-based empire in Asia was replaced by the powerful sea-based European empires.
- Forces of international trade, mercantilism and capitalism now came to decline the nature of society.
- The commercial centers such as Surat, Masulipatam, and Dhaka which had grown in the seventeenth century had declined when trade shifted to other places.
- Madras, Bombay and Calcutta rapidly emerged as new economic capitals and centers of colonial administration and political power.
- New buildings, occupations, institutions developed and urban spaces were ordered in new ways.

Finding out about colonial cities

Colonial records and urban history

- The British kept a detailed record of their trading activities in order to regulate their commercial affairs.
- They carried out the regular survey, gathered statistical data, and published various official report.
- When towns began to grow, maps were prepared not only to plan the development of these towns but also to develop commerce and consolidate power.

- The town map gives information regarding the location of hill, river and vegetation – all important for planning structure for defence purpose.
- These maps also show the location of ghats, density, and quality of house and alignment of roads used to gauge commercial possibilities and plan strategies of taxation.
- The growth of cities was monitored through regular headcounts. By the mid-19th century several local censuses had been carried out in different regions.

Problem Faced While Collecting the Census

- The first all-India census was attempted in 1872. From 1881 decennial (conducted every ten years) censuses became a regular feature.
- The people often refused to cooperate or gave evasive answers to the census officials.
- The people were suspicious of census operation and believed that inquiries were being conducted to impose new taxes.
- Upper caste people were also unwilling to give any information regarding the women of their household.
- Women were supposed to remain secluded within the interior of the household and not subjected to public gaze or public inquiry.
- Census officials also found that the people were claiming identities that they associated with higher status.
- The figures of mortality and disease were difficult to collect for all deaths were not registered and illness was not always reported, nor treated by licensed doctors.

Trends of Change

- After 1800, urbanisation in India was sluggish. The smaller towns had little opportunity to grow economically.
- Calcutta, Bombay, and Madras, on the other hand, grew rapidly and soon became sprawling cities.
- The introduction of railways in 1853 meant a change in the fortunes of towns.
- Economic activities gradually shifted away from traditional towns which were located along old routes and rivers.
- Every railway station became a collection depot for raw materials and distribution point for imported goods.
- Railway towns like Jamalpur, Waltair, and Bareilly developed as a trading centres.

What were the new towns like?

Ports, forts and centers for services

- By the eighteenth century Madras, Calcutta, and Bombay had become important ports.
- The English East India Company built its factories because of competition among the Europeans companies, fortified the settlement for protection.
- In Madras, Fort St George, in Calcutta Fort William and in Bombay the Fort marked out the areas of British settlement.
- There were separate quarters for Europeans and Indians, which came to be labelled in contemporary writings as the "White Town" and "Black Town ".
- After the 1850s, cotton mills were set up by Indian merchants and entrepreneurs in Bombay, and European-owned jute mills were established on the outskirts of Calcutta. This was the beginning of modern industrial development in India.
- Two Industrial cities also developed, Kanpur specializing in leather, woollen and cotton textiles and Jamshedpur, specialize in steel.
- India never became a modern industrialised country as discriminatory colonial policies limited the levels of Industrial development.
- Madras, Calcutta Bombay grew into a large city but did not signify any dramatic economic growth.

A new urban milieu

- Colonial cities reflected the mercantile culture of the new rule.
- Political power and patronage shifted from Indian rulers to the merchants of the East India Company.
- Economic activities near the river or the sea led to the development of docks and ghats.
- Around the periphery of the fort, Europeans merchants and agents built garden houses, racially exclusive clubs, racecourse and theatres for the ruling elites.
- After the Revolt of 1857 British attitudes in India were shaped by a constant fear of rebellion. They felt that towns needed to be better defended, and white people had to live in more secure and segregated enclaves, away from the threat of the "natives".

The first hill stations

- The hill stations were a distinctive feature of colonial urban development.
- The hill stations were initially connected with the needs of the British army.
- Simla (present-day Shimla) was founded during the course of the Gurkha War (1815-16); the Anglo-Maratha War of 1818 led to British interest in Mount Abu; and Darjeeling was wrested from the rulers of Sikkim in 1835. In 1864 the Viceroy John Lawrence officially moved his council to Simla, setting seal to the practice of shifting capitals during the hot season. Simla also became the official residence of the commander-in-chief of the Indian army.
- Hill station became strategic places for billeting troops, guarding frontiers and launching campaigns against enemy rulers.
- The temperate and cool climate of the Indian hills was seen as an advantage.
- British associated hot weather with epidemics, Cholera and malaria and attempts were made to protect the army from these diseases.
- Hill stations were also developed as sanitariums i.e., places where soldiers could be sent for rest and recover from illness.
- The introduction of the railways made hill stations more accessible to a wide range of people including Indians. Upper-and middle-class Indians such as maharajas, lawyers and merchants were drawn to these stations because they afforded them a close proximity to the ruling British elite.
- Hill stations were important for the colonial economy. With the setting up of tea and coffee plantations in the adjoining areas, an influx of immigrant labour from the plains began.

Social life in the New Cities

- New transport facilities such as horse-drawn carriages and, subsequently, trams and buses meant that people could live at a distance from the city centre.
- Social changes did not happen with ease. Cities, for instance, offered new opportunities for women. Middle-class women sought to express themselves through the medium of journals, autobiographies and books.
- Conservatives feared that the education of women would turn the world upside down, and threaten the basis of the entire social order. Even reformers who supported women's education saw women primarily as mothers and wives, and wanted them to remain within the enclosed spaces of the household.
- The poor often created a lively urban culture of their own. They were enthusiastic participants in religious festivals, tamashas (folk theatre) and swangs (satires) which often mocked the pretensions of their masters, Indian and European.

Settlement and Segregation in Madras

- The Company had first set up its trading activities in the well-established port of Surat on the west coast.
- In 1639, the British constructed a trading post in Madraspatam and the settlement known as Chenapattanam.
- The company had purchased the right of settlement from the local Telugu lords, the Nayaks of Kalahasti.
- Rivalry (1746-63) with the French East India Company led the British to fortify Madras and give their representatives increased political and administrative functions. With the defeat of the French in 1761, Madras became more secure and began to grow into an important commercial town.
- Chintadripet area meant for weavers, the Washermanpet colony of dyers, Royapuram was a settlement for Christian boatmen.
- Several different communities came and settled in Madras, performing a range of economic functions. The dubashes were Indians who could speak two languages the local language and English.
- Paraiyars and Vanniyars formed the labouring poor.
- The Nawab of Arcot settled in nearby Triplicane which became the nucleus of a substantial Muslim settlement.
- Mylapore and Triplicane were earlier Hindu religious centres that supported a large group of Brahmins.
- San Thome with its cathedral was the centre Roman Catholics. All these settlements became part of Madras city. Thus, the incorporation of many villages made Madras a city of wide expanse and low density.

Town Planning in Calcutta

- There were many reasons why the British took upon themselves the task of town planning from the early years of their rule in Bengal. One immediate reason was defence. In 1756, Sirajudaula, the Nawab of Bengal, attacked Calcutta and sacked the small fort which the British traders had built as their depot for goods.
- In 1757, when Sirajudaula was defeated in the Battle of Plassey, the East India Company decided to build a new fort, one that could not be easily attacked.
- The history of town planning in Calcutta of course did not end with the building of Fort William and the Maidan. In 1798, Lord Wellesley became the Governor General. He built a massive palace, Government House, for himself in Calcutta, a building that was expected to convey the authority of the British. He became concerned about the condition of the Indian part of the city – the crowding, the excessive vegetation, the dirty tanks, the smells and poor drainage.
- Wellesley wrote a Minute (an administrative order) in 1803 on the need for town planning, and set up various committees for the purpose. After Wellesley's departure the work of town planning was carried on by the Lottery Committee (1817) with the help of the government. The Lottery Committee was so named because funds for town improvement were raised through public lotteries.
- The Lottery Committee commissioned a new map of the city so as to get a comprehensive picture of Calcutta. Among the Committee's major activities was road building in the Indian part of the city and clearing the river bank of "encroachments".
- The existing racial divide of the "White Town" and "Black Town" was reinforced by the new divide of "healthy" and "unhealthy".

White Town Fort St. George

- Fort St. George became the nucleus of the White Town where most of the Europeans lived.
- Colour and religion determined who was allowed to live within the fort.
- The Company did not permit any marriages with Indians.
- Other than the English, the Dutch and the Portuguese were allowed to stay because they were European and Christian.

Black Town

- The Black Town developed outside the Fort.
- It was laid out in straight lines, and housed weavers, artisans, etc.
- Middlemen and interpreters were the person who played a vital role in the company trade.

Architecture in Bombay

- Bombay was initially seven islands. Bombay was the commercial capital of colonial India. As the premier port on the western coast, it was the centre of international trade. By the end of the nineteenth century, half the imports and exports of India passed through Bombay. One important item of this trade was opium that the East India Company exported to China.
- The architectural style was usually European. This importation of European styles reflected the imperial vision in several ways.
  1. First, it expressed the British desire to create a familiar landscape in an alien country, and thus to feel at home in the colony.
  2. Second, the British felt that European styles would best symbolise their superiority, authority and power.
  3. Third, they thought that buildings that looked European would mark out the difference and distance between the colonial masters and their Indian subjects.

- Towards the beginning of the 20th century a new hybrid architectural style developed which combined the Indian with the European.
- This was called Indo-Saracenic. "Indo" was shorthand for Hindu and "Saracen" was a term Europeans used to designate Muslim.
- The Gateway of India, built in the traditional Gujarati style to welcome King George V and Queen Mary to India in 1911, is the most famous example of this style.
- Jamsetji Tata built the Taj Mahal Hotel of Bombay in an Indo-Saracenic style.
- Another style that was extensively used was the neo-Gothic, characterised by high-pitched roofs, pointed arches and detailed decoration.

What Buildings and Architectural Styles Tell Us

- Architecture reflects the aesthetic ideals prevalent at a time, and variations within those ideals.
- These buildings also express the vision of those who build them. Rulers everywhere seek to express their power through buildings.
- Architectural style not only represents and reflects the prevalent taste, they mould tastes, popularise styles and shape the contours of culture.

TIMELINE

1661 - Bombay was handed over to East India company by the English King Charles II.
1673 - French established trading centre at Pondicherry.
1757 - Battle of Plassey
1807 - Lottery commission was setup at Calcutta.
1814-16 - Shimla was established.
1836 - That shed huts were banned in Calcutta.
1872 - Attempts were made for 1st census.
1878 - Organisation of survey of India
1881 - Madras harbour was completed.
1896 - Plague began to spread in India cities.
1911 - British transfer their capital from Calcutta to Delhi.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. When was Bombay given to the East India Company?
(a) 1690 **(b)** 1661
(c) 1639 **(d)** 1680

2. In which of the following year first census survey was conducted?
(a) 1872 **(b)** 1882
(c) 1892 **(d)** 1852

3. Madras, among the British population, was known as _____.
(a) Fort William **(b)** Fort Saint George
(c) Fort Augustus **(d)** All of these

4. Which of the following statement is incorrect?
(a) Towns represented specific forms of economic activities and cultures.
(b) Towns dominated over the rural population.
(c) Agra, Delhi, and Lahore were important centers of imperial administration and control of Delhi Sultanate.
(d) During the 16th and 17th centuries towns built by the Mughals were famous for their concentration of populations.

5. Which of the following was/were the principal focus of temple in Southern part of India?
(a) Madurai **(b)** Mysore
(c) Kanchipuram **(d)** Both (a) and (c)

6. Who was responsible to maintain law and order in northern India during British rule?
(a) Munsif **(b)** Kotwal
(c) Faujdar **(d)** Amil

7. In which of the following century the land-based empire in Asia was replaced by the powerful sea-based European empires?
(a) By the end of 15th century
(b) By the end of 18th century
(c) By the end of 16th century
(d) By the end of 17th century

8. Which did the first hill station came into being during the British rule in India?
(a) Ooty **(b)** Coorg
(c) Shimla **(d)** Darjeeling

9. When did the battle of Plassey took place in India?
(a) 1764 **(b)** 1757
(c) 1762 **(d)** 1758

10. When did the Treaty of Allahabad was signed, between the Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II, son of the late Emperor Alamgir II, and Robert Clive, of the East India Company?
(a) 16 August 1765 **(b)** 16 August 1764
(c) 18 August 1757 **(d)** 18 August 1765

11. When was the Gateway of India constructed?
(a) 1881 **(b)** 1891
(c) 1901 **(d)** 1911

12. When was the first railway line laid in India?
(a) 1833 **(b)** 1843
(c) 1853 **(d)** 1848

13. Where did the Portuguese set up their trading centre?
(a) Goa **(b)** Puducherry
(c) Madras **(d)** Bombay

14. Where did the French set up their trading centre?
(a) Goa **(b)** Puducherry
(c) Madras **(d)** Bombay

15. Jamshedpur was specialized in which of the following?
(a) Leather **(b)** Woollen
(c) Steel **(d)** Cotton

16. Which of the following Viceroy officially moved his council to Simla, setting seal to the practice of shifting capitals during the hot season in 1864?
(a) Lord Lytton **(b)** Lord Mayo
(c) Lord Lawrence **(d)** Lord Rippon

17. In which of the of the following year the British constructed a trading post in Madraspatam and the settlement known as Chenapattanam?

(a) 1632 **(b)** 1639
(c) 1643 **(d)** 1648

18. Who among the following became the Governor general in 1798?
(a) Lord Wellesley **(b)** Warren Hasting
(c) Robert Clive **(d)** None of the above

19. When was the Lottery Committee established?
(a) 1813 **(b)** 1815
(c) 1817 **(d)** 1819

20. Which of the following option is correct?
(a) First census survey was held in 1881.
(b) The British lived in Black towns.
(c) John Lawrence officially shifted his council of Shimla in 1804.
(d) Bombay was the commercial capital of colonial India

21. Which one of the following is an example of Indo-Saracenic Revival Style of architecture?
(a) India Gate
(b) University of Bombay
(c) Gateway of India
(d) The Mahalakshmi Temple

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements:
1. Bombay was given to the Company in 1661 by the Portuguese king.
2. Company agents settled in Madras in 1639 and in Calcutta in 1690.
Select the correct option using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

2. Consider the following settlements in India:
1. Dutch **2.** Britain
3. French **4.** Portuguese
Arrange them in the chronological order:
(a) 1-2-3-4 **(b)** 2-4-1-3
(c) 4-1-2-3 **(d)** 3-1-4-2

3. With reference to towns in southern India, consider the following statement:
1. The ruler was the highest authority and the principal patron of religious institutions.
2. The principal focus was the temple.
Select the correct option using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

4. "The European commercial companies had set up base in different places early during the Mughal era" In this context arrange them in the chronological order:
1. British in Madras
2. Portuguese in Panaji
3. French in Pondicherry
4. Dutch in Masulipatam
Select the correct option using the code given below:
(a) 1-2-3-4 **(b)** 2-4-1-3
(c) 4-1-2-3 **(d)** 3-1-4-2

5. Consider the following statements:
1. The introduction of railways in 1851 meant a change in the fortunes of towns.
2. Economic activities gradually shifted away from traditional towns which were located along old routes and rivers.
3. Railway towns like Jamalpur, Waltair, and Bareilly developed as a trading centres.
Select the correct option using the code given below?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

6. Consider the following events:
1. Gurkha war
2. Anglo Maratha War
3. Viceroy's council shifted to Shimla
4. Darjeeling was wrested from the rulers of Sikkim
Arrange the following events in the chronological order:
(a) 1-2-3-4 **(b)** 2-1-4-3
(c) 1-2-4-3 **(d)** 3-1-4-2

7. With respect to the social life of the women in the new cities, consider the following statements:
1. The status of women were remained same as compared to the previous era.
2. Women were not allowed to talk with the press or media.
Select the correct option using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

8. Consider the following:
1. Lord Macaulay - Wrote a Minute in 1803 on the need for town planning.
2. The work of town planning was carried on by - The Lottery Committee (1817).
3. In 1798, Lord Warren hasting became the Governor General.
Which of the following pairs is/are correctly matched?
(a) Only 1 pair **(b)** Only 2 Pairs
(c) All 3 pairs **(d)** None of the above

9. In the context of Indo-Saracenic architecture, consider the following statements:
1. It combined the European with the Indian style of architecture in the beginning of the 20th century.
2. The most famous example of this style is the Gateway of India in Mumbai.
3. There are many famous examples of this style in the colonial cities of Bombay and Madras.
4. It takes its imputation from ancient Roman.
Which of the statements given above is/are NOT correct?
(a) 1, 2 and 3 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 4 only

10. With reference to Art-Deco Style of architecture, consider the following statements:
1. It was a combination of the Islamic and the Hindu architectural styles.
2. The Art Deco style is also extremely popular amongst various Cinema halls that sprung up in the early to mid-20th Century.
Which of the following given statements is/are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Consider the following statements **[OPSC]**
1. Indo-Saracenic style of architecture combined the Indian architecture with European.
2. The Gateway of India built in the traditional Gujarati style is the most famous example of this style.
Which of the statement(s) given above is/ are correct?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

2. Consider the following: **[CAPF]**
1. Statement I: Towards the beginning of the 20th century, a new hybrid architectural style developed which combined the Indian with the European.
2. Statement II: By integrating Indian and European styles in public architecture, the British wanted to prove that they were legitimate rulers of India.
Codes:
(a) Both the statements are individually true and Statement II is the correct explanation of Statement I
(b) Both the statement are individually true but Statement II is not the correct explanation of Statement I
(c) Statement I is true but Statement II is false
(d) Statement I is false but Statement II is true

3. Town Hall in Bombay is an example of: **[NTA CUET]**
(a) Neo-Gothic Style
(b) Neo-classical Style
(c) Art-Deco Style
(d) Indo-Saracenic Revival Style

4. Who was the first British Viceroy of India? **[RRC Group D]**
(a) Lord Canning **(b)** Lord Wellesley
(c) William Bentinck **(d)** Robert Clive

5. Which of the Governor-Generals introduced the railway system in India? **[JKSSB JE]**
(a) Lord Hardinge **(b)** Lord Lytton
(c) Lord Wellesley **(d)** Lord Canning

6. The tendency for increased litigation was visible after the introduction of the land settlement system of Lord Cornwallis in 1793. The reason for this is normally traced to which of the following provisions? **[UPSC]**
(a) Making Zamindar's position stronger vis-a-vis the ryot.
(b) Making East India Company an overlord of Zamindars.
(c) Making judicial system more efficient.
(d) None of the (a), (b) and (c) above

7. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
1. Assessment of land revenue on the basis of nature of the soil and the quality of crops
2. Use of mobile cannons in warfare
3. Cultivation of tobacco and red chillies
Which of the above was/were introduced into India by the English?
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2
(c) 2 and 3 **(d)** None

8. With reference to Indian history, consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
1. The Dutch established their factories/warehouses on the east coast on lands granted to them by Gajapati rulers.
2. Alfonso de Albuquerque captured Goa from the Bijapur Sultanate.
3. The English East India Company established a factory at Madras on a plot of land leased from a representative of the Vijayanagara empire.
Which of the statements given above are correct?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

9. In the first quarter of seventeenth century, in which of the following was/were the factory/factories of the English East India Company located? **[UPSC]**
1. Broach
2. Chicacole
3. Trichinopoly
Select the correct answer using the code given below.
(a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
(c) 3 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only

10. Wellesley established the Fort William College Calcutta because: **[UPSC]**
(a) he was asked by the Board of Directors at London to do so.
(b) he wanted to revive interest in oriental learning in India.
(c) he wanted to provide William Carey and his associates with employment.
(d) he wanted to train British civilians for administrative purpose in India.

11. Which one of the following statements does not apply to the system of Subsidiary Alliance introduced by Lord Wellesley? **[UPSC]**
(a) To maintain a large standing army at others expense
(b) To keep India safe from Napoleonic danger
(c) To secure a fixed income for the Company
(d) To establish British paramountcy over the Indian States

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Bombay was given to the Company in 1661 by the English king, who had got it as part of his wife's dowry from the king of Portugal.

2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The first all-India census was attempted in 1872. From 1881 decennial (conducted every ten years) censuses became a regular feature.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Madras, among the British population, was known as Fort Saint George. Madras was the collective name for the original Fort St. George settlement, "White Town", and "black Town".

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:
- During the 16th and 17th centuries towns built by the Mughals were famous for their concentration of populations, their monumental buildings and their imperial grandeur and wealth.

- Agra, Delhi, and Lahore were important centers of imperial administration and control during Mughals.

5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: In the towns of south India such as Madurai and Kanchipuram, the principal focus was the temple. These temples were the important commercial centers.
6. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In North India, maintaining the law and order was the work of the imperial officer called the kotwal.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: By the end of 18th century, the land-based empire in Asia was replaced by the powerful sea-based European empires.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The hill stations were a distinctive feature of colonial urban development. The hill stations were initially connected with the needs of the British army. Shimla the first hill station came into being during the British rule in India.
9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The 1757 Battle of Plassey was a result of EIC's on-going wrongdoing against Siraj-Ud-Daulah.
10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Treaty of Allahabad was signed on 16 August 1765, between the Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II, son of the late Emperor Alamgir II, and Robert Clive, of the East India Company, in the aftermath of the Battle of Buxar of 23 October 1764.
11. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Gateway of India, built in the traditional Gujarati style to welcome King George V and Queen Mary to India in 1911, is the most famous example of this style.
12. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:
- The introduction of railways in 1853 meant a change in the fortunes of towns.
- Economic activities gradually shifted away from traditional towns which were located along old routes and rivers.
- Every railway station became a collection depot for raw materials and distribution point for imported goods.
- Railway towns like Jamalpur, Waltair, and Bareilly developed as a trading centres.

13. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The European commercial companies had set up base in different places early during the Mughal era – the Portuguese in Panaji in 1510, the Dutch in Masulipatam in 1605, the British in Madras in 1639 and the French in Pondicherry in 1873.
14. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The European commercial companies had set up base in different places early during the Mughal era – the Portuguese in Panaji in 1510, the Dutch in Masulipatam in 1605, the British in Madras in 1639 and the French in Pondicherry in 1873.
15. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:
- After the 1850s, cotton mills were set up by Indian merchants and entrepreneurs in Bombay, and European-owned jute mills were established on the outskirts of Calcutta. This was the beginning of modern industrial development in India.
- Two Industrial cities also developed, Kanpur specializing in leather, woollen and cotton textiles and Jamshedpur specialize in steel.

16. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1864, the Viceroy John Lawrence officially moved his council to Simla, setting seal to the practice of shifting capitals during the hot season.
17. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In 1639, the British constructed a trading post in Madraspatam and the settlement known as Chenapattanam.
18. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Lord Wellesley was a Governor-General of India between 1798 and 1805. Lord Wellesley was appointed Governor General of Bengal in 1798 at the age of 37.
19. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Wellesley wrote a Minute (an administrative order) in 1803 on the need for town planning, and set up various committees for the purpose. After Wellesley's departure the work of town planning was carried on by the Lottery Committee (1817) with the help of the government. The Lottery Committee was so named because funds for town improvement were raised through public lotteries.
20. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: Bombay was the commercial capital of colonial India. As the premier port on the western coast, it was the centre of international trade.
21. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Indo-Saracenic Revival Style was a hybrid of Indian and European style which developed in the early twentieth century. The Gateway of India is the most famous example of this style. The industrialist Jamsetji Tata built the Taj Mahal Hotel in a similar style.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: Company agents settled in Madras in 1639 and in Calcutta in 1690. Bombay was given to the Company in 1661 by the English king, who had got it as part of his wife's dowry from the king of Portugal.
2. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Portuguese arrived in India in 1498 CE. The Dutch arrived in India in 1605 CE. The British arrived in India in 1612 CE. The French arrived in India in 1667 CE.
3. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:
- In the towns of south India such as Madurai and Kanchipuram, the principal focus was the temple.

- These temples were the important commercial centers.
- Religious festivals often coincided with fairs, linking pilgrimage with the trade.
- The ruler was the highest authority and the principal patron of religious institutions.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The European commercial companies had set up base in different places early during the Mughal era – the Portuguese in Panaji in 1510, the Dutch in Masulipatam in 1605, the British in Madras in 1639 and the French in Pondicherry in 1873.

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The introduction of railways in 1853 meant a change in the fortunes of towns.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Simla (present-day Shimla) was founded during the course of the Gurkha War (1815-16); the Anglo-Maratha War of 1818 led to British interest in Mount Abu; and Darjeeling was wrested from the rulers of Sikkim in 1835.

There were three Anglo-Maratha wars

First Anglo-Maratha War (1775–1782);

Second Anglo-Maratha War (1803–1805); and

Third Anglo-Maratha War (1817–1819).

In 1864 the Viceroy John Lawrence officially moved his council to Simla, setting seal to the practice of shifting capitals during the hot season.

Simla also became the official residence of the commander-in-chief of the Indian army.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Social changes did not happen with ease. Cities, for instance, offered new opportunities for women. Middle-class women sought to express themselves through the medium of journals, autobiographies and books.

8. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: In 1798, Lord Wellesley became the Governor General. Wellesley wrote a Minute (an administrative order) in 1803 on the need for town planning, and set up various committees for the purpose. After Wellesley's departure the work of town planning was carried on by the Lottery Committee (1817) with the help of the government. The Lottery Committee was so named because funds for town improvement were raised through public lotteries.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Indo-Saracenic Style was a hybrid of Indian and European style which developed in the early twentieth century. The Gateway of India is the most famous example of this style. The industrialist Jamsetji Tata built the Taj Mahal Hotel in a similar style.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Art Deco in India (and especially in Mumbai) evolved into a unique style that came to be called Deco-Saracenic. Essentially, it was a combination of the Islamic and the Hindu architectural styles. It was extremely popular amongst various Cinema halls that sprung up in the early to mid-20th Century.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

- Towards the beginning of the 20th century a new hybrid architectural style developed which combined the Indian with the European.
- This was called Indo-Saracenic. "Indo" was shorthand for Hindu and "Saracen" was a term Europeans used to designate Muslim.
- The Gateway of India, built in the traditional Gujarati style to welcome King George V and Queen Mary to India in 1911, is the most famous example of this style.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Beginning in the early 20th century, a brand-new hybrid architectural style that incorporated Indian and European elements emerged.

The word for this was Indo-Saracenic, where "Indo" stood for Hindu and "Saracen" stood for Muslim in Europe.

This architectural style was influenced by Indian mediaeval structures with their domes, chhatris, jalis, and arches. The British intended to establish their legitimacy as the legitimate rulers of India, therefore they incorporated Indian and European architectural forms into public buildings.

3. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Neo-classical Style is an imitation of the classical Greeko-Roman style of architecture. An early example of this style is Town Hall in Bombay.

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Lord Canning (1856-1862) was the first viceroy of India. Viceroy is the British crown representative of the princely states of India.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Lord Hardinge took over as governor-general of India from his brother-in-law, Lord Ellenborough, in 1844. He created ideas for an Indian railway system and started work on the Ganges canal. Lord Dalhousie came to India in 1848 to serve as Governor General of India.

He introduced railways in India and the first railway line from Mumbai to Thane was opened in 1853.

6. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The abolition of court fees under Cornwallis' reforms led to an upsurge in litigation following the implementation of the land settlement system, and anyone may now sue anyone. One of the factors was the expansion of the right of appeal. Cornwallis abolished court costs and mandated that attorneys set their own rates.

The territory where the zamindars had previously been tax collectors was now theirs. The settlement is referred to as the Zamindari Settlement since it was reached with the zamindars. The demand for land revenue was predetermined, and the firm received 10–11% of the controlled revenue. The business also inserted a sunset provision for zamindars. It was introduced by Lord Cornwallis through the Permanent Settlement Act 1793.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: In 1765, the British acquired Diwani's rights over Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa. The British East India Company's main objective was to increase the amount of land taxes collected. Therefore, its policies were designed to maximise profits from the land without regard for how they would affect farmers and peasants.

It was the first battle of Panipat, 1526, that the Mughal Emperor Babur first used the artillery in North India - when he decisively defeated Ibrahim Lodi, the Afghan kings of Delhi. Although the Moghul Emperor Babur is popularly credited with the introduction of the artillery in land warfare in India, evidence is now available that it was the Bahmani Kings who first used artillery-in the Deccan in their wars against the Vijaynagar kingdom.

The Portuguese introduced tobacco farming to India in 1605. The Portuguese also brought red chillies to India.

8. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: In March 1602, by a charter of the Dutch parliament, the Dutch East India Company was established with powers to make wars, settle treaties, acquire territories and build fortresses. The main purpose of the Dutch remained determined in eliminating the Portuguese and British merchandise powers from India and South East Asia. The Dutch East India Company established factories in India at Masulipatnam in 1605 AD, Pulicat (1610 AD), Surat (1616 AD), Bimlipatam (1641 AD), Karaikal (1645 AD). The Gajapati rulers ruled over Kalinga, large parts of Andhra Pradesh and West Bengal, and the eastern and central parts of Madhya Pradesh and Jharkhand from 1435 to 1541 CE.

Alfonso De Albuquerque (1509-1515) is considered to be the real founder of the Portuguese power in India. In 1510 AD, Afonso de Albuquerque captured Goa from the Sultan of Bijapur, Ismail Adil Shah.

English East India Company established a factory in Madras in 1639 on land leased from representatives of the Vijayanagara Empire called the Nayakas.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: By 1st quarter of 17th century, English East India Company had established factories at Surat, Broach, Ahmedabad, Agra, and Masulipatam and not at Chicacole and Tichonopoly.

The timelines are:

1613- A permanent factory of the east India company is established at Surat

1616- 1st factory in south at Masulipatnam

1619- Sir Thomas Roe set up factories at Agra, Ahmedabad, and Broach.

10. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Lord Richard Wellesley was a British politician and colonial administrator. The British territories in India had expanded greatly in the 1800s and there was an urgent need for a more thoroughly organised administration. He established the Fort William College Calcutta because he wanted to train British civilians for administrative purpose in India.

11. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Lord Wellesley used the Subsidiary Alliance as part of his "Non-Intervention Policy" to subjugate the Princely States. Wellesley introduced the Subsidiary Alliance to remove the French Power from India and to uphold British Supremacy in India in order to combat Napoleon's schemes and any further rise of French Power in India. A monarch of India who formed a subsidiary alliance with the British was required to accept British troops on his land and to contribute to their upkeep.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

13 MAHATMA GANDHI AND THE NATIONALIST MOVEMENT

Introduction

- This chapter analyses Gandhiji's activities in India during the crucial period 1915-1948. It explores his interactions with different sections of the Indian society and the popular struggles that he inspired and led.

A Leader Announces Himself

- In January 1915, Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi returned to his homeland after two decades of residence abroad.
- These years had been spent for the most part in South Africa, where he went as a lawyer, and in time became a leader of the Indian community in that territory.
  1. As the historian Chandran Devanesan has remarked, South Africa was "the making of the Mahatma".
  2. It was in South Africa that Mahatma Gandhi first forged the distinctive techniques of non-violent protest known as satyagraha, first promoted harmony between religions, and first alerted upper-caste Indians to their discriminatory treatment of low castes and women.
- The India that Mahatma Gandhi came back to in 1915.
- Through the Swadeshi movement of 1905-07 it had greatly broadened its appeal among the middle classes.
- That movement had thrown up some towering leaders among them Bal Gangadhar Tilak of Maharashtra, Bipin Chandra Pal of Bengal, and Lala Lajpat Rai of Punjab. The three were known as "Lal, Bal and Pal".
- There was a group of "Moderates" who preferred a more gradual and persuasive approach. Among these Moderates was Gandhiji's acknowledged political mentor, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, as well as Mohammad Ali Jinnah, who, like Gandhiji, was a lawyer of Gujarati extraction trained in London.
- On Gokhale's advice, Gandhiji spent a year travelling around British India, getting to know the land and its peoples.
- His first major public appearance was at the opening of the Banaras Hindu University (BHU) in February 1916.
- At the annual Congress, held in Lucknow in December 1916, he was approached by a peasant from Champaran in Bihar, who told him about the harsh treatment of peasants by British indigo planters.

The Making and Unmaking of Non-Cooperation

- Mahatma Gandhi was to spend much of 1917 in Champaran, seeking to obtain for the peasants security of tenure as well as the freedom to cultivate the crops of their choice.
- The following year, 1918, Gandhiji was involved in two campaigns in his home state of Gujarat.
- First, he intervened in a labour dispute in Ahmedabad, demanding better working conditions for the textile mill workers.
- Then he joined peasants in Kheda in asking the state for the remission of taxes following the failure of their harvest.
- These initiatives in Champaran, Ahmedabad and Kheda marked Gandhiji out as a nationalist with a deep sympathy for the poor.
- During the Great War of 1914-18, the British had instituted censorship of the press and permitted detention without trial.

> The Khilafat Movement, (1919-1920) was a movement of Indian Muslims, led by Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali, that demanded the following:
>
> The Turkish Sultan or Khalifa must retain control over the Muslim sacred places in the erstwhile Ottoman empire; the jazirat-ul-Arab (Arabia, Syria, Iraq, Palestine) must remain under Muslim sovereignty; and
>
> The Khalifa must be left with sufficient territory to enable him to defend the Islamic faith.
>
> The Congress supported the movement and Mahatma Gandhi sought to conjoin it to the Non-cooperation Movement.

- On the recommendation of a committee chaired by Sir Sidney Rowlatt, these tough measures were continued.
- In response, Gandhiji called for a countrywide campaign against the "Rowlatt Act".
- Gandhiji was detained while proceeding to the Punjab, even as prominent local Congressmen were arrested.
- In Amritsar in April 1919, when a British Brigadier ordered his troops to open fire on a nationalist meeting.
- More than four hundred people were killed in what is known as the Jallianwala Bagh massacre. It was the Rowlatt satyagraha that made Gandhiji a truly national leader.
- Emboldened by its success, Gandhiji called for a campaign of "non-cooperation" with British rule.
- To further broaden the struggle, he had joined hands with the Khilafat Movement that sought to restore the Caliphate, a symbol of Pan-Islamism which had recently been abolished by the Turkish ruler Kemal Attaturk.

Knitting a Popular Movement

- Gandhiji hoped that by coupling non-cooperation with Khilafat, India's two major religious communities, Hindus and Muslims, could collectively bring an end to colonial rule.
- Students stopped going to schools and colleges run by the government. Lawyers refused to attend court. The working class went on strike in many towns and cities.
- Hill tribes in northern Andhra violated the forest laws. Farmers in Awadh did not pay taxes. Peasants in Kumaun refused to carry loads for colonial officials.
- In February 1922, a group of peasants attacked and torched a police station in the hamlet of Chauri Chaura, in the United Provinces (now, Uttar Pradesh and Uttaranchal).
- Several constables perished in the conflagration. This act of violence prompted Gandhiji to call off the movement altogether.
- During the Non-Cooperation Movement thousands of Indians were put in jail. Gandhiji himself was arrested in March 1922, and charged with sedition.

A People's Leader

- By 1922, Gandhiji had transformed Indian nationalism, thereby redeeming the promise he made in his BHU speech of February 1916.
- It was no longer a movement of professionals and intellectuals; now, hundreds of thousands of peasants, workers and artisans also participated in it.
- He spent part of each day working on the charkha (spinning wheel), and encouraged other nationalists to do likewise.
- The act of spinning allowed Gandhiji to break the boundaries that prevailed within the traditional caste system, between mental labour and manual labour.
- Between 1917 and 1922, a group of highly talented Indians attached themselves to Gandhiji.
- They included Mahadev Desai, Vallabh Bhai Patel, J.B. Kripalani, Subhas Chandra Bose, Abul Kalam Azad, Jawaharlal Nehru, Sarojini Naidu, Govind Ballabh Pant and C. Rajagopalachari.
- Mahatma Gandhi was released from prison in February 1924, and now chose to devote his attention to the promotion of home-spun cloth (khadi), and the abolition of untouchability.
- For, Gandhiji was as much a social reformer as he was a politician. He believed that in order to be worthy of freedom, Indians had to get rid of social evils such as child marriage and untouchability.
- Indians of one faith had also to cultivate a genuine tolerance for Indians of another – hence his emphasis on Hindu-Muslim harmony.
- Meanwhile, on the economic front Indians had to learn to become self-reliant – hence his stress on the significance of wearing khadi rather than mill-made cloth imported from overseas.

The Salt Satyagraha- A Case Study

- For several years after the Non-cooperation Movement ended, Mahatma Gandhi focused on his social reform work.
- In 1928 there was an all-India campaign in opposition to the all-White Simon Commission, sent from England to enquire into conditions in the colony. Gandhiji did not himself participate in this movement.
- In the end of December 1929, the Congress held its annual session in the city of Lahore. The meeting was significant for two things: the election of Jawaharlal Nehru as President, signifying the passing of the baton of leadership to the younger generation; and the proclamation of commitment to "Purna Swaraj", or complete independence.
- On 26 January 1930, "Independence Day" was observed, with the national flag being hoisted in different venues, and patriotic songs being sung.

Dandi

- Soon after the observance of this "Independence Day", Mahatma Gandhi announced that he would lead a march to break one of the most widely disliked laws in British India, which gave the state a monopoly in the manufacture and sale of salt.
- On 12th March 1930, Gandhiji began walking from his ashram at Sabarmati towards the ocean. He reached his destination three weeks later, making a fistful of salt as he did and thereby making himself a criminal in the eyes of the law. Meanwhile, parallel salt marches were being conducted in other parts of the country.
- As with Non-cooperation, apart from the officially sanctioned nationalist campaign, there were numerous other streams of protest.
- In some towns, factory workers went on strike while lawyers boycotted British courts and students refused to attend government-run educational institutions.

Dialogues

- The Salt March was notable for at least three reasons.
  1. First, it was this event that first brought Mahatma Gandhi to world attention. The march was widely covered by the European and American press.
  2. Second, it was the first nationalist activity in which women participated in large numbers. The socialist activist Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay had persuaded Gandhiji not to restrict the protests to men alone. Kamaladevi was herself one of numerous women who courted arrest by breaking the salt or liquor laws.
  3. Third, and perhaps most significant, it was the Salt March which forced upon the British the realisation that their Raj would not last forever, and that they would have to devolve some power to the Indians.

"Round Table Conferences"

- The first meeting was held in November 1930, but without the pre-eminent political leader in India, thus rendering it an exercise in futility.
- Gandhiji was released from jail in January 1931 and the following month had several long meetings with the Viceroy.
- These culminated in what was called the "Gandhi-Irwin Pact', by the terms of which civil disobedience would be called off, all prisoners released, and salt manufacture allowed along the coast.
- A second Round Table Conference was held in London in the latter part of 1931. Here, Gandhiji represented the Congress.

- The Conference in London was inconclusive, so Gandhiji returned to India and resumed civil disobedience. The new Viceroy, Lord Willingdon, was deeply unsympathetic to the Indian leader.
- In 1935, however, a new Government of India Act promised some form of representative government.
- Two years later, in an election held on the basis of a restricted franchise, the Congress won a comprehensive victory.
- Now eight out of 11 provinces had a Congress "Prime Minister", working under the supervision of a British Governor.
- In September 1939, two years after the Congress ministries assumed office, the Second World War broke out.
- Mahatma Gandhi and Jawaharlal Nehru had both been strongly critical of Hitler and the Nazis.
- Accordingly, they promised Congress support to the war effort if the British, in return, promised to grant India independence once hostilities ended.
- In March 1940, the Muslim League passed a resolution committing itself to the creation of a separate nation called "Pakistan".
- The political landscape was now complicated: it was no longer Indians versus the British; rather, it had become a three-way struggle between the Congress, the Muslim League, and the British.
- In the spring of 1942, Churchill was persuaded to send one of his ministers, Sir Stafford Cripps, to India to try and forge a compromise with Gandhiji and the Congress.

Quit India

- After the failure of the Cripps Mission, Mahatma Gandhi decided to launch his third major movement against British rule. This was the "Quit India" campaign, which began in August 1942.
- "Quit India" was genuinely a mass movement, bringing into its ambit hundreds of thousands of ordinary Indians.
- The Congress leaders languished in jail, Jinnah and his colleagues in the Muslim League worked patiently at expanding their influence.
- In June 1944, with the end of the war in sight, Gandhiji was released from prison. Later that year he held a series of meetings with Jinnah, seeking to bridge the gap between the Congress and the League.
- In 1945, a Labour government came to power in Britain and committed itself to granting independence to India. Meanwhile, back in India, the Viceroy, Lord Wavell, brought the Congress and the League together for a series of talks. Early in 1946 fresh elections were held to the provincial legislatures.
- The Congress swept the "General" category, but in the seats specifically reserved for Muslims the League won an overwhelming majority.

Direct Action Day

- A Cabinet Mission sent in the summer of 1946 failed to get the Congress and the League to agree on a federal system that would keep India together while allowing the provinces a degree of autonomy.
- After the talks broke down, Jinnah called for a "Direct Action Day" to press the League's demand for Pakistan. On the designated day, 16th August 1946, bloody riots broke out in Calcutta.
- The violence spread to rural Bengal, then to Bihar, and then across the country to the United Provinces and the Punjab.
- In some places, Muslims were the main sufferers, in other places, Hindus. In February 1947, Wavell was replaced as Viceroy by Lord Mountbatten.
- Mountbatten called one last round of talks, but when these too proved inconclusive he announced that British India would be freed, but also divided. The formal transfer of power was fixed for 15th August.

The Last Heroic Days

- At the initiative of Gandhiji and Nehru, the Congress now passed a resolution on "the rights of minorities".
- The party had never accepted the "two-nation theory": forced against its will to accept Partition, it still believed that "India is a land of many religions and many races, and must remain so".
- Whatever be the situation in Pakistan, India would be "a democratic secular State where all citizens enjoy full rights and are equally entitled to the protection of the State, irrespective of the religion to which they belong".
- Gandhiji had fought a lifelong battle for a free and united India; and yet, when the country was divided, he urged that the two parts respect and befriend one another.
- At his daily prayer meeting on the evening of 30 January 1948, Gandhiji was shot dead by a young man.

Knowing Gandhi

- There are many different kinds of sources from which we can reconstruct the political career of Gandhiji and the history of the nationalist movement.
  1. Public voice and private scripts One important source is the writings and speeches of Mahatma Gandhi and his contemporaries, including both his associates and his political adversaries.
  2. Mahatma Gandhi regularly published in his journal, Harijan, letters that others wrote to him.
  3. Framing a picture: Autobiographies similarly give us an account of the past that is often rich in human detail.
  4. Through police eyes: Another vital source is government records, for the colonial rulers kept close tabs on those they regarded as critical of the government. The letters and reports written by policemen and other officials were secret at the time; but now can be accessed in archives.
  5. From newspapers: One more important source is contemporary newspapers, published in English as well as in the different Indian languages, which tracked Mahatma Gandhi's movements and reported on his activities, and also represented what ordinary Indians thought of him.

TIMELINE
1905 - Bengal got partitioned
1915 - Mahatma Gandhi came to India from South Africa.
1919 - The Rowlatt Satyagraha started. The Jallianwala Bagh Massacre took place.
1921 - The Non-Cooperation and Khilafat Movements.
1922 - Gandhiji called off the Non-Cooperation Movement.
1928 - Peasant movement in Bardoli
1929 - "Purna Swaraj" accepted as Congress goal at the Lahore Congress (December)
1930 - Civil Disobedience Movement begins; Dandi March (March-April)
1931 - Gandhi-Irwin Pact (March); Second Round Table Conference (December)
1935 - Government of India Act promises some form of representative government
1939 - Congress ministries resign
1942 - Quit India Movement begins (August)
1946 - Mahatma Gandhi visits Noakhali and other riot-torn areas to stop communal violence

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Where did Gandhi started satyagraha for the first time?
(a) India **(b)** South Africa
(c) America **(d)** France

2. Which among the following was the moderate leader of Congress?
(a) G. K. Gokhale
(b) Lala Lajpat Rai
(c) Vipin Chandra Pal
(d) Subhash Chandra Bose

3. When did Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi returned to his homeland?
(a) Jan 1914 **(b)** Jan 1913
(c) Jan 1915 **(d)** Jan 1918

4. When did the Gandhiji decided to took back Non-Cooperation movement?
(a) January 1921 **(b)** February 1922
(c) February 1921 **(d)** January 1922

5. When did the annual congress session held in Lucknow?
(a) Dec 1916 **(b)** Dec 1915
(c) Jan 1914 **(d)** Mar 1916

6. Which of the following committee gave power to the British for detention without trial?
(a) Sir Sidney Rowlatt
(b) Mansfield Commission
(c) Raleigh Commission
(d) Sadler Commission

7. When did the Peasant Satyagraha organised at Bardoli?
(a) 1928 **(b)** 1929
(c) 1930 **(d)** 1931

8. When did the Jallianwala Bagh massacre happened during the British rule?
(a) April 1919 **(b)** May 1918
(c) Feb 1919 **(d)** March 1918

9. Who was elected the congress President at its Lahore Session?
(a) M. K. Gandhi
(b) J. L. Nehru
(c) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
(d) S. C. Bose

10. Which of the following event happened right after Dandi March?
(a) Non-Cooperation Movement
(b) Civil Disobedience Movement
(c) Quit India Movement
(d) Rowlatt Satyagraha

11. Who among the following led the Khilafat Movement in India?
(a) Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali
(b) Mohammad Ali Jinnah and Shamsuddin Hussain
(c) Maulana Azad and Mahatma Gandhi
(d) Liaqat Ali Khan and Maulana Azad

12. In which year did the Muslim League pass a resolution for a separate nation Pakistan?
(a) 1940 **(b)** 1942
(c) 1944 **(d)** 1945

13. Who among the following attended all the three Round Table conferences held in Britain?
(a) Jawaharlal Nehru
(b) M.K. Gandhi
(c) B.R. Ambedkar
(d) Muhammad Ali Jinnah

14. Which of the following association led the Civil Disobedience Movement in the North-West Frontier region?
(a) Naujawan Bharat Sabha
(b) Khudai Khidmatgars
(c) Ghadr Party
(d) Anushilan Samiti

15. In which of the following prison Mahatma Gandhi was placed during the Civil disobedience movement?
(a) Tihar Jail **(b)** Yerawada Jail
(c) Cellular Jail **(d)** Sangareddy Jail

16. Which among the following movements received International Attention?
(a) Swadeshi Movement
(b) Non-Cooperation movement
(c) Civil Disobedience movement
(d) Quit India movement.

17. Who among the following assisted M.K. Gandhi to participate in the Second Round Table Conference in London?
    (a) J. L. Nehru **(b)** S. C. Bose
    (c) C. Rajagopalachari **(d)** Sarojini Naidu
18. The Karachi session, 1931, of the Congress was important because
    (a) Congress decided to participate in the Second Round Table Conference.
    (b) Congress launched the second phase of Civil Disobedience movement in the session.
    (c) The goal of complete independence, Swaraj, was declared here.
    (d) Congress spelt the true meaning of Swaraj in this session.
19. The plan of Sir Stafford Cripps envisaged that after the Second World War
    (a) India should be granted complete independence
    (b) India should be partitioned into two before granting independence
    (c) India should be given Dominion status
    (d) India should be made a republic with the condition that she will join the Commonwealth

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Arrange the following in the chronological order:
    1. Organised satyagraha in Africa.
    2. Swadeshi movement.
    3. Mahatma Gandhi returned to India.
    4. Champaran satyagraha
    Select the correct option using the code given below:
    (a) 1-2-3-4 **(b)** 2-1-4-3
    (c) 2-1-3-4 **(d)** 3-4-1-2
2. Consider the following statements:
    1. In 1932, Ramsay MacDonald announced the Communal Award.
    2. Only Muslims, Sikhs, and Christians were given separate electorates as a result of the award.
    3. Gandhi and the Congress agreed with the idea to give the oppressed classes separate electorates.
    Which of the following is/are correct?
    (a) 1 only **(b)** 1 and 2 only
    (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 3 only
3. With reference to Gandhi-Irwin pact 1931, consider the following statements:
    1. Lord Irwin pledged the release of all political prisoners, with the exception of those charged with violent crimes.
    2. There was no retreat from the Civil Disobedience movement.
    3. The Salt Law was repealed by Lord Irwin.
    Select the correct option using the code given below:
    (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
    (c) 3 only **(d)** 1 and 3 only
4. With reference to Vasudev Balwant Phadke, consider the following statements:
    1. He is regarded as father of armed struggle against the British in India.
    2. He led the Ramoshi movement against the British.
    3. According to some historians, he is the inspiration behind Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay's famous novel Anandmath.
    Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
    (a) 3 only **(b)** 1 and 3 only
    (c) 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
5. Gandhiji decided to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the Rowlatt act because the Act provided for
    1. Unreasonable detention of political prisoners without trial.
    2. Ban on political activities.
    3. Ban on all the local language newspapers and radio.
    Which of the above statements is/are correct?
    (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
    (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
6. In the context of Champaran Satyagraha, consider the following statements:
    1. Rajendra Prasad asked Gandhi to look at the issues of the Champaran indigo planters.
    2. The first Satyagraha movement spurred on by Gandhi was the Champaran Satyagraha in 1917.
    3. Gandhi's Champaran investigation strategy was based on the news articles.
    Which of the above statements is/are incorrect?
    (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 1 only
    (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
7. Following Gandhiji's incarceration during the Salt Disobedience, the Congress Working Committee authorised:
    1. Campaign against chowkidari taxes in zamindari districts
    2. Revenue in ryotwari areas not being paid.
    3. Forest law violations in the Central Provinces
    Which of the above statements is/are correct?
    (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
    (c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. The Champaran Satyagraha took place in the year _____. **[RRB NTPC CBT]**
    (a) 1915 **(b)** 1910
    (c) 1912 **(d)** 1917
2. The year 1916 is important in Indian history for: **[CDS]**
    1. Lucknow Session of the Congress
    2. Congress - League Pact
    3. Formation of Home Rule League
    Select the correct answer using the code given below:
    (a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
    (c) 1 and 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
3. Where did Gandhiji first experiment with Satyagrah in India? **[OTET]**
    (a) Ahmedabad **(b)** Chauri Chaura
    (c) Champaran **(d)** Bardoli
4. Which of the following movements was launched in 1942 under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi? **[ICAR]**
    (a) Civil Disobedience Movement
    (b) Khilafat Movement
    (c) Quit India Movement
    (d) Non-Cooperation Movement

5. Who among the following socialist activists persuaded Gandhiji not to restrict the salt march protest to men alone? **[CDS]**
   (a) Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay
   (b) Sarojini Naidu
   (c) Matangini Hazra
   (d) Mithuben Petit
6. When did Anti-Rowlatt Satyagraha begin under Mahatma Gandhi's leadership? **[DSSSB TGT]**
   (a) 1921 **(b)** 1919
   (c) 1920 **(d)** 1918
7. During the Indian freedom struggle, the concept of satyagraha was used as a method of _____ **[AIIMS]**
   (a) Using physical force to fight the oppressor
   (b) Seeking destruction of the adversary
   (c) Less - violent resistance
   (d) Persuading the oppressor to see the truth
8. The Champaran Satyagraha took place in which of the following states of India? **[DSSSB Junior Secretariat Assistant]**
   (a) Odisha **(b)** Gujarat
   (c) Bihar **(d)** West Bengal
9. Consider these statements in the context of Rowlatt Satyagraha and choose the correct option. **[CTET]**
   A. Rowlatt Act curbed the fundamental rights and strengthened police powers.
   B. Mohammad Ali Jinnah, Mahatma Gandhi and others argued that government has no right to restrict people's basic freedoms.
   C. Even though Hindus and Muslims were against Rowlatt Act, the Rowlatt Satyagraha could not turn out to be the all India struggle against the British.

   Codes:
   (a) Both (A) and (B) are true.
   (b) Both (B) and (C) are true.
   (c) Both (A) and (C) are true.
   (d) Only (C) is true.
10. In 1930, Mahatma Gandhi started the Civil Disobedience Movement from **[BPSC]**
    (a) Sevagram **(b)** Dandi
    (c) Sabarmati **(d)** Wardha
11. The meeting of Indian and British political leaders during 1930–32 in London has often been referred to as the First, Second & Third Round Table Conferences. It would be incorrect to refer to them as such because: **[UPSC]**
    (a) The Indian National Congress did not take part in two of them.
    (b) Indian parties other than the Indian National Congress, participating in the conference represented sectional interests and not the whole of India.
    (c) The British Labour Party had withdrawn from the conference thereby making the proceeding of the conference partisan.
    (d) It was an instance of a conference held in three sessions and not that of three separate conferences.
12. At which Congress session was the working committee authorized to launch a program of Civil Disobedience? **[UPSC]**
    (a) Bombay **(b)** Lahore
    (c) Lucknow **(d)** Tripura
13. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
    1. In the First Round Table Conference, Dr. Ambedkar demanded separate electorates for the depressed classes.
    2. In the Poona Act, special provisions for the representation of the depressed people in the local bodies and civil services were made.
    3. The Indian National Congress did not take part in the Third Round Table Conference.

    Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
    (a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 and 3
    (c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
14. Mahatma Gandhi undertook fast unto death in 1932, mainly because: **[UPSC]**
    (a) Round Table Conference failed to satisfy Indian political aspirations.
    (b) Congress and the Muslim League had differences of opinion.
    (c) Ramsay Macdonald announced the Communal Award.
    (d) None of the statements (a), (b) and (c) given above is correct in this context.

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: It was in South Africa that Mahatma Gandhi first forged the distinctive techniques of non-violent protest known as satyagraha, first promoted harmony between religions, and first alerted upper-caste Indians to their discriminatory treatment of low castes and women.

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: Moderate Leaders: Surendranath Banerjee, Dadabai Naoroji, Pheroze Shah Mehta, Gopalakrishna Gokhale and M. G. Ranade were some of the important moderate leaders.

3. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation: In January 1915, Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi returned to his homeland after two decades of residence abroad.

4. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: In February 1922, Gandhiji made the decision to end the "Non-Cooperation Movement" for the following reasons: A peaceful mob turned violent and battled with the police in Gorakhpur's Chauri-Chaura in 1922, killing many police officers.

5. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: At the annual Congress, held in Lucknow in December 1916, Mahatma Gandhi was approached by a peasant from Champaran in Bihar, who told him about the harsh treatment of peasants by British indigo planters.

6. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: During the Great War of 1914-18, the British had instituted censorship of the press and permitted detention without trial. On the recommendation of a committee chaired by Sir Sidney Rowlatt, these tough measures were continued.

7. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Bardoli Satyagraha, 1928 was a movement in the independence struggle led by Sardar Vallabhai Patel for the farmers of Bardoli against the unjust raising of taxes.

8. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation:
- In Amritsar in April 1919, when a British Brigadier ordered his troops to open fire on a nationalist meeting.
- More than four hundred people were killed in what is known as the Jallianwala Bagh massacre.

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: In the end of December 1929, the Congress held its annual session in the city of Lahore. The meeting was significant for two things: the election of Jawaharlal Nehru as President, signifying the passing of the baton of leadership to the younger generation; and the proclamation of commitment to "Purna Swaraj", or complete independence.

10. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Civil Disobedience Movement began in 1930 with the infamous Dandi March, in which Gandhi set off on foot from the Sabarmati Ashram in Ahmedabad. Gandhi defied the salt ban after arriving in Dandi. This sparked the nationwide Salt Satyagraha Movement.

11. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Khilafat Movement, (1919-1920) was a movement of Indian Muslims, led by Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali, that demanded the following:
- The Turkish Sultan or Khalifa must retain control over the Muslim sacred places in the erstwhile Ottoman empire;
- The jazirat-ul-Arab (Arabia, Syria, Iraq, Palestine) must remain under Muslim sovereignty; and
- The Khalifa must be left with sufficient territory to enable him to defend the Islamic faith.

12. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The All-India Muslim League's annual session, held in Lahore from March 22–24, 1940, resulted in the passage of a resolution calling for the creation of a separate nation for the Muslims of British India, which is seen as a pivotal moment in Pakistan's history.

13. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Gandhiji participated in the second-round table congress. Tej Bahadur Sapru and Dr. B.R. Ambedkar both attended all three round table discussions.

14. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The civil disobedience movement was led in the north-west frontier province by Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan. Khudai Khidmatgar was a predominantly Pashtun nonviolent resistance movement known for its activism against the British Raj in colonial India; it was based in the country's North-West Frontier Province.

15. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
- Gandhiji was released from jail in January 1931 and the following month had several long meetings with the Viceroy.
- These culminated in what was called the "Gandhi-Irwin Pact', by the terms of which civil disobedience would be called off, all prisoners released, and salt manufacture allowed along the coast.
- At Yerawada Jail Mahatma Gandhi was placed during the Civil disobedience movement.

16. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:
- All previous movements had been restricted to cities, making Civil Disobedience movement the first nationwide movement.
- Participants could register even if they lived in rural areas.
- Women made up a sizable portion of the attendees. Popular female leaders of the satyagraha movement were Kasturba Gandhi, Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay, Avantikabai Gokhale, Lilavati Munshi, and Hansaben Mehta.
- Nonviolence served as the movement's motto. This movement persisted despite ongoing British repression. The Indians were thought to be brave due to their lack of fear.

17. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Second Round Conference opened on September 7, 1931. Gandhi represented Indian National Congress and Sarojini Naidu represented Indian women.

18. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: A special session was held in Karachi to endorse the Gandhi-Irwin Pact. Karachi session became famous because of the two resolutions that were adopted-one on Fundamental rights and other on National Economic program, both drafted by Dr. Rajendra Prasad. The goal of Purna Swaraj was reiterated. This was the first time the congress spelt out what swaraj would mean for the masses.

19. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The main proposals of the mission were as follows:
- An Indian Union with a dominion status would be set up; it would be free to decide its relations

with the Commonwealth and free to participate in the United Nations and other international bodies.

- After the end of the war, a constituent assembly would be convened to frame a new constitution. Members of this assembly would be partly elected by the provincial assemblies through proportional representation and partly nominated by the princes.
- The British government would accept the new constitution subject to two conditions: (i) any province not willing to join the Union could have a separate constitution and form a separate Union, and (ii) the new constitution making body and the British government would negotiate a treaty to effect the transfer of power and to safeguard racial and religious minorities.
- In the meantime, defence of India would remain in British hands and the governor-general's powers would remain intact.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

- In January 1915, Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi returned to his homeland after two decades of residence abroad.
- These years had been spent for the most part in South Africa, where he went as a lawyer, and in time became a leader of the Indian community in that territory.
- As the historian Chandran Devanesan has remarked, South Africa was "the making of the Mahatma".
- It was in South Africa that Mahatma Gandhi first forged the distinctive techniques of non-violent protest known as satyagraha, first promoted harmony between religions, and first alerted upper-caste Indians to their discriminatory treatment of low castes and women.
- Gandhiji organised first satyagraha in 1907 against Asiatic Ordinance in Transvaal, South Africa.
- Through the Swadeshi movement of 1905-07 it had greatly broadened its appeal among the middle classes.
- Mahatma Gandhi was to spend much of 1917 in Champaran, seeking to obtain for the peasants security of tenure as well as the freedom to cultivate the crops of their choice.

2. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- The Communal Award, which established separate electorates for the "Depressed Classes," Muslims, Europeans, Sikhs, Anglo-Indians, and Christians based in India, was announced by British Prime Minister Ramsay MacDonald on August 16, 1932.
- The concept of separate electorates, which the British government had already implemented through the Morley-Minto Reforms (1909) and the Montagu-Chelmsford Reforms, served as the foundation for the Award of 1932.
- Each community was given a certain number of seats in the legislatures under the separate electorates system, and only residents of these communities were allowed to vote to choose a representative to represent them in legislative assemblies.
- Mahatma Gandhi vehemently opposed the communal award because he saw it as part of the British imperialists' ongoing campaign to split Indians into many specialised factions and weaken the national struggle.

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- On March 5, 1931, Mahatma Gandhi and Lord Irwin, India's viceroy at the time, signed the Gandhi-Irwin Pact.
- Gandhi agreed that the INC would put an end to the civil disobedience action on behalf of Congress.
- Irwin and the government reached an agreement on the removal of the salt tax and the immediate release of all political prisoners who have not been found guilty of violent crimes.

4. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- Vasudev Balwant Phadke, one of India's first revolutionaries in the independence movement, passed away on February 17, 1883. His rebellion arguably had indirectly affected the plot of Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay's novel Anandamath (1882). He is regarded as father of armed struggle.
- The arms movement against the British Raj gained momentum in the late 1870s with the Ramoshi movement, spearheaded by Vasudev Balwant Phadke in and around Pune district.
- Maharashtra was the first state in India to start militant revolutionary activities in order to overthrow the British rule. Long before the foundation of Anushilan Samiti in Calcutta a secret society was formed in Maharashtra under the leadership of Vasudev Balwant Phadke.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation:

- Gandhiji in 1919 decided to launch a nationwide satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act (1919). This Act had been hurriedly passed through the Imperial Legislative Council despite the united opposition of the Indian members.

- It gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities, and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years. Mahatma Gandhi wanted non-violent civil disobedience against such unjust laws, which would start with a hartal on 6th April.

6. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

- Gandhi was so thoroughly persuaded by Rajkumar Shukla, an indigo cultivator from Champaran that he decided to investigate into the matter.
- Gandhi's method of inquiry at Champaran was based on surveys by the volunteers. The respondents who willingly gave statements should sign the papers or give thumb impressions.
- For those unwilling to participate, the reasons must be recorded by the volunteers. The principal volunteers in this survey were mostly lawyers like Babu Rajendra Prasad, Dharnidhar Prasad, Gorakh Prasad, Ramnawami Prasad, Sambhusaran and Anugraha Narain Sinha.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Gandhiji's arrest came on May 4, 1930 when he had announced that he would lead a raid on Dharasana Salt Works on the west coast. Gandhiji's arrest was followed by massive protests in Bombay, Delhi, Calcutta and in Sholapur, where the response was the most fierce. After Gandhiji's arrest, the CWC sanctioned:

- Non-payment of revenue in ryotwari areas;
- No-chowkidari-tax campaign in zamindari areas; and
- Violation of forest laws in the Central Provinces.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Champaran satyagraha took place on 19th April 1917.

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- Tilak introduced the Home Rule League in April 1916, and Annie Besant did the same in September 1916. The Champaran Satyagraha took place in Bihar.
- At a joint meeting of both parties convened in Lucknow in December 1916, the Indian National Congress and the Muslim League came to an agreement known as the Lucknow Pact.
- Ambika Charan Majumdar served as the chair of the Lucknow session in 1916. It was viewed as a sign of potential harmony between Muslims and Hindus. The Lal Bal Pal Trio, which consisted of Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak, and Bipin Chandra Pal, and the "liberal" faction, which was led by Gopal Krishna Gokhale until his death in 1915, were two powerful parties within the Indian National Congress, and the Lucknow Pact helped to forge friendly relations between them.

3. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Champaran Satyagraha was India's first Civil Disobedience movement launched by Mahatma Gandhi in 1917.

4. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The slogan 'Quit India' was coined by socialist congress leader Yusuf Meher Ali. This movement was launched because of the failure of the Cripps Offer and public discontent against wartime hardships. It was started on 8th August 1942 by Mahatma Gandhi. It is also known as August Movement.

5. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay was a freedom fighter, social reformer, and was the driving force behind the renaissance of Indian handicrafts, handlooms, and theatre in post-independence India. Kamaladevi was part of Gandhi's salt satyagraha and was arrested for trying to sell contraband salt in the Bombay Stock Exchange. She was imprisoned for almost one year. She was a feminist of her age and even spoke against Gandhi's stance of not including women in the Dandi March.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: M. K Gandhi started a campaign against the Rowlatt bill and set up Satyagraha Sabha on 24th February AD 1919 at Bombay.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The term "satyagraha" was coined by Mahatma Gandhi. The phrase was created during the fight against racism and for human rights in South Africa, and later in the Indian National Movement. Truth (Satya), in his view, is love, and agrapha is firmness (another word for force). Because of a force drawn from truth and nonviolence, he referred to the Indian National Movement as Satyagraha (love). He explained the need for patience when seeking the truth. Another word for self-suffering is patience. The doctrine of truth therefore refers to repressing evils by enduring hardship oneself rather than inflicting it upon the adversary.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The term "satyagraha" was coined by Mahatma Gandhi. The phrase was created during the fight against racism and for human rights in South Africa, and later in the Indian National Movement. Truth (Satya), in his view, is love, and agrapha is firmness (another word for force). Because of a force drawn from truth and nonviolence, he referred to the Indian National Movement as Satyagraha (love). He

explained the need for patience when seeking the truth. Another word for self-suffering is patience. The doctrine of truth therefore refers to repressing evils by enduring hardship oneself rather than inflicting it upon the adversary.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Rowlatt satyagraha was curbed the fundamental rights and strengthens the police powers. Mahatma Gandhi and Mohammad Ali Jinnah were prominent opponents of this act.

10. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Gandhi started the Civil Disobedience Movement by leading the famous Dandi Salt March from Sabarmati Ashram to Dandi, where he broke the British government's salt law.

11. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: First round table conference was initially between the British and the Indian as equals. The INC did not participate in the first and third conference.

12. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: At Lahore session, 1929 the working committee was authorised to launch a programme of Civil Disobedience.

13. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation:

- From November 1930 to January 1931, there was the First Round Table Conference.
- The Second Round Table Conference took place in London in December 1931.
- The Third Round Table Conference took place in November and December of 1932. The first and third RTCs were not attended by the Indian National Congress.
- B.R. Ambedkar ratified the Poona Pact in September 1932. Separate electorates for the downtrodden classes were abandoned under the treaty.
- However, in both the provincial and the federal legislatures, the number of seats set aside for the poor classes was raised.

14. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: On 16th September 1932, Mahatma Gandhi began 'fast up to death' to protest British support of a new Indian constitution which favoured separate the Indian electorate by caste. This separate electorate was given through the Macdonald award when the second round table conference ended inconclusively.

HISTORY CLASS-XII

14 UNDERSTANDING PARTITION

Introduction

- The joy of our country's independence from colonial rule in 1947 was tarnished by the violence and brutality of Partition.
- The Partition of British India into the sovereign states of India and Pakistan led to many sudden developments.
- Thousands of lives were snuffed out, many others changed dramatically, cities changed, India changed, a new country was born, and there was unprecedented genocidal violence and migration.
- This chapter will examine the history of Partition.
- It will also discuss how the history of these experiences can be reconstructed by talking to people and interviewing them, that is, through the use of oral history.
- At the same time, it will point out the strengths and limitations of oral history.

A Momentous Marker

Partition or holocaust?

- Almost 15 million people had to cross borders
- They were rendered homeless, having suddenly lost all their immovable property and most of their movable assets, separated from many of their relatives and friends as well.
- Thus, stripped of their local or regional cultures, they were forced to begin picking up their life from scratch.
- The Holocaust in Germany is remembered and referred to in our contemporary concerns so much. Yet, differences between the two events should not be overlooked.
- In 1947-48, the subcontinent did not witness any state-driven extermination as was the case with Nazi Germany.
- The "ethnic cleansing" that characterized the partition of India was carried out by self-styled representatives of religious communities rather than by state agencies.

The Power of Stereotypes

- The stereotypes of the extraterritorial and Pan Islamic loyalty comes fused with other objectionable ideas about both the communities, the Hindus as well as the Muslims.
- Some of these stereotypes pre-date Partition, but they were immensely strengthened because of 1947.
- The relationship between Pakistan and India has been profoundly shaped by this legacy of Partition.

Why and How Did Partition Happen?

Culminating point of a long history?

- Partition as a culmination of a communal politics that started developing in the opening decades of the twentieth century.
- They suggest that separate electorates for Muslims, created by the colonial government in 1909 and expanded in 1919, crucially shaped the nature of communal politics.
- Separate electorates meant that Muslims could now elect their own representatives in designated constituencies.
- This created a temptation for politicians working within this system to use sectarian slogans and gather a following by distributing favours to their own religious groups.
- Religious identities thus acquired a functional use within a modern political system; and the logic of electoral politics deepened and hardened these identities.
- Communal identities were consolidated by a host of other developments in the early twentieth century.
- During the 1920s and early 1930s tension grew around a number of issues.
- Muslims were angered by "music-before-mosque", by the cow protection movement, and by the efforts of the Arya Samaj to bring back to the Hindu fold (shuddhi) those who had recently converted to Islam.
- Hindus were angered by the rapid spread of tabligh (propaganda) and tanzim (organisation) after 1923. Every communal riot deepened difference between communities, creating disturbing memories of violence.

The Provincial Elections of 1937 and the Congress Ministries

- In 1937, elections to the provincial legislatures were held for the first time. Only about 10 to 12 % of the population enjoyed the right to vote.
- The Congress did well in the elections, winning an absolute majority in five out of eleven provinces and forming governments in seven of them. It did badly in the constituencies reserved for Muslims.
- In the United Provinces, the Muslim League wanted to form a joint government with the Congress.
- The Congress had won an absolute majority in the province, so it rejected the offer. Some scholars argue that this rejection convinced the League that if India remained united, then Muslims would find it difficult to gain political power because they would remain a minority.
- Maulana Azad, an important Congress leader, pointed out in 1937 that members of the Congress were not allowed to join the League, yet Congressmen were active in the Hindu Mahasabha– at least in the Central Provinces.

The "Pakistan" Resolution

- The Pakistan demand was formalised gradually. On 23rd March 1940, the League moved a resolution demanding a measure of autonomy for the Muslim majority areas of the subcontinent. This ambiguous resolution never mentioned partition or Pakistan.
- The origins of the Pakistan demand have also been traced back to the Urdu poet Mohammad Iqbal, the writer of "Sare Jahan Se Achha Hindustan Hamara".

The Suddenness of Partition

- The pressure of the Second World War on the British delayed negotiations for independence for some time.
- It was the massive Quit India Movement which started in 1942, and persisted despite intense repression, that brought the British Raj to its knees and compelled its officials to open a dialogue with Indian parties regarding a possible transfer of power.

Post-War Developments

- When negotiations were begun again in l945, the British agreed to create an entirely Indian central Executive Council, except for the Viceroy and the Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces, as a preliminary step towards full independence.
- Discussions about the transfer of power broke down due to Jinnah's unrelenting demand that the League had an absolute right to choose all the Muslim members of the Executive Council and that there should be a kind of communal veto in the Council, with decisions opposed by Muslims needing a two-thirds majority.
- Provincial elections were again held in 1946. The Congress swept the general constituencies, capturing 91.3 % of the non-Muslim vote.

A Possible Alternative to Partition

- In March 1946 the British Cabinet sent a three member mission to Delhi to examine the League's demand and to suggest a suitable political framework for a free India.
- The Cabinet Mission toured the country for three months and recommended a loose three-tier confederation.
- India was to remain united. It was to have a weak central government controlling only foreign affairs, defence and communications with the existing provincial assemblies being grouped into three sections while electing the constituent assembly:
  1. Section A for the Hindu-majority provinces, and
  2. Sections B and C for the Muslim-majority provinces of the north-west and the north-east (including Assam) respectively.
- Initially all the major parties accepted this plan. But the agreement was short-lived because it was based on mutually opposed interpretations of the plan.
- The League wanted the grouping to be compulsory, with Sections B and C developing into strong entities with the right to secede from the Union in the future.
- The Congress wanted that provinces be given the right to join a group.
- Ultimately, therefore, neither the League nor the Congress agreed to the Cabinet Mission's proposal. Only Mahatma Gandhi and Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan of the NWFP continued to firmly oppose the idea of partition.

Towards Partition

- After withdrawing its support to the Cabinet Mission plan, the Muslim League decided on "Direct Action" for winning its Pakistan demand.
- It announced 16th August 1946 as "Direct Action Day". On this day, riots broke out in Calcutta, lasting several days and leaving several thousand people dead.
- By March 1947 violence spread to many parts of northern India.
- It was in March 1947 that the Congress high command voted for dividing the Punjab into two halves, one with Muslim majority and the other with Hindu/Sikh majority, similar principle to Bengal.

The Withdrawal of Law and Order

- The bloodbath continued for about a year from March 1947 onwards. One main reason for this was the collapse of the institutions of governance.
- Amritsar district became the scene of bloodshed later in the year when there was a complete breakdown of authority in the city.
- British officials asked them to contact Mahatma Gandhi, Jawaharlal Nehru, Vallabh Bhai Patel or M.A. Jinnah. Nobody knew who could exercise authority and power.
- The top leadership of the Indian parties, barring Mahatma Gandhi, were involved in negotiations regarding independence while many Indian civil servants in the affected provinces feared for their own lives and property.

The One-man Army

- The 77-year-old Gandhiji decided to stake his all in a bid to vindicate his lifelong principle of non-violence, and his conviction that people's hearts could be changed.
- He moved from the villages of Noakhali in East Bengal (present-day Bangladesh) to the villages of Bihar and then to the riot-torn slums of Calcutta and Delhi, in a heroic effort to stop Hindus and Muslims kill each other, careful everywhere to reassure the minority community.

Gendering Partition- "Recovering" Women

- Women were raped, abducted, sold, often many times over, forced to settle down to a new life with strangers in unknown circumstances.
- Believing the women to be on the wrong side of the border, they now tore them away from their new relatives, and sent them back to their earlier families or locations.
- They did not consult the concerned women, undermining their right to take decisions regarding their own lives.

Preserving "Honour"

- On 13th March every year, when their "martyrdom" is celebrated, the incident is recounted to an audience of men, women and children.
- Women are exhorted to remember the sacrifice and bravery of their sisters and to cast themselves in the same mould.

Regional Variations

- While carnages occurred in Calcutta and Noakhali in 1946, the Partition was most bloody and destructive in the Punjab.
- The near-total displacement of Hindus and Sikhs eastwards into India from West Punjab and of almost all Punjabi-speaking Muslims to Pakistan happened in a relatively short period of two years between 1946 and 1948.
- Many Bengali Hindus remained in East Pakistan while many Bengali Muslims continued to live in West Bengal. Finally, Bengali Muslims (East Pakistanis) rejected Jinnah's two-nation theory through political action, breaking away from Pakistan and creating Bangladesh in 1971-72.
- Religious unity could not hold East and West Pakistan together.

Help, Humanity, Harmony

- Buried under the debris of the violence and pain of Partition is an enormous history of help, humanity and harmony.
- However, with regard to events such as the Partition in India and the Holocaust in Germany, there is no dearth of testimony about the different forms of distress that numerous people faced. So, there is ample evidence to figure out trends, to point out exceptions.
- Different types of sources have to be tapped for answering different types of questions. Government reports, for instance, will tell us of the number of "recovered" women exchanged by the Indian and Pakistani states but it is the women who will tell us about their suffering.

Timeline

1905 - Partitioned on Bengal

1906 - Muslim League was formed

1916 - Lucknow Pact was signed

22nd Dec, 1939 - Deliverance day, observed by Muslim League

16th Aug, 1946 - Direct Action Day plan celebrated by Muslim League

3rd June, 1947 - Declaration and acceptance Mountbatten Plan

15th August, 1947 - India became free and emerged as an independent nation.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Separate electorates for Muslim was introduced by which of the following reforms or Act?
(a) Indian Council Act, 1892
(b) Government of India Act, 1935
(c) Morley Minto Reforms
(d) Montague Chelmsford Reforms

2. When was the elections to the provincial legislatures were held for the first time?
(a) 1937 **(b)** 1932
(c) 1995 **(d)** 1942

3. In how many provinces congress formed the government?
(a) 12 **(b)** 7
(c) 8 **(d)** 10

4. In which of the following provinces Muslim League wanted to form a joint government with the Congress?
(a) Bengal **(b)** Punjab
(c) Mysore **(d)** United Provinces

5. When did the League moved a resolution demanding a measure of autonomy for the Muslim majority areas of the subcontinent?
(a) 23rd March 1940 **(b)** 23rd May 1940
(c) 23rd March 1942 **(d)** 23rd May 1942

6. Who among the following was the writer of "Sare Jahan Se Achha Hindustan Hamara"?
(a) Arbindo Ghosh **(b)** Bankimchandra
(c) Mohammad Iqbal **(d)** R. Tagore

7. Mohammad Iqbal was a poet who wrote in which of the following language?
(a) English **(b)** Arabic
(c) Urdu **(d)** Hindi

8. When was the Cabinet Mission came to India?
(a) April 1967 **(b)** March 1946
(c) March 1945 **(d)** April 1945

9. Which of the following recommended a loose three-tier confederation in India?
(a) Cripps Mission **(b)** Cabinet Mission
(c) Raja Formulas **(d)** None of the above

10. Direct Action Day was announced on which of the following year?
(a) 16 Aug 1946 **(b)** 15 Aug 1946
(c) 14 Aug 1946 **(d)** 18 Aug 1946

11. Which of the following statements is NOT correct?
(a) The Muslim League decided on "Direct Action" for winning its Pakistan demand.
(b) The Muslim League agreed to the Cabinet Mission's proposal whereas the Congress reject the proposal.
(c) In March 1946 the British Cabinet sent a three-member mission to Delhi to examine the League's demand and to suggest a suitable political framework for a free India.
(d) The Congress swept the general constituencies, capturing 91.3 % of the non-Muslim vote.

12. Where is Noakhali located?
(a) Punjab **(b)** United Province
(c) East Bengal **(d)** West Bengal

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Which of the following Act of the British Parliament shaped the nature of communal politics in India?
1. Government of India Act, 1935
2. Indian Council Act, 1909
3. Indian Council Act, 1891
4. Montague Chelmsford Reform, 1919

Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 2 and 4 only **(b)** 3 and 4 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1 and 4 only

2. Consider the following events:
1. Wavell plan
2. Cabinet mission
3. Direct Action Day
4. Formation of interim government.
Arrange these in the chronological order:
(a) 1, 2, 3, 4 **(b)** 1, 2, 4, 3
(c) 2, 1, 3, 4 **(d)** 3, 4, 2, 1

3. Consider the following statements related to the Partisan:
1. In 1947-48, the subcontinent witnessed state-driven extermination as was the case with Nazi Germany.
2. The relationship between Pakistan and India has been profoundly shaped by this legacy of Partition.
Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

4. With reference to Provincial Elections of 1937, consider the following statements:
1. Congress did badly in the constituencies reserved for Muslims.
2. In the Punjab, the Muslim League wanted to form a joint government with the Congress.
3. The Congress had won an absolute majority in the United Province.
Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below?
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

5. Which of the following statement(s) is/are correct?
1. In 1945, the British agreed to create an entirely Indian central Executive Council, including for the Viceroy.
2. The Cripps Mission recommended a loose three-tier confederation.
Select the answer from the given code:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

6. Consider the following statements:
1. Bengali Muslims rejected Jinnah's two-nation theory.
2. Religious unity could not hold East and West Pakistan together.
Select the answer from the given code:
(a) 1 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 **(d)** Neither 1 nor 2

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. Which of the following day is the "Direct Action Day" called by Muslim League? **[AP Police Constable]**
(a) 1940, August 16 **(b)** 1942, September 26
(c) 1946, August 16 **(d)** 1936, October 26

2. The 1909 Act was related to **[MPPSC]**
(a) The introduction of separate electorate
(b) Decentralization
(c) Diarchy
(d) Legislative Council

3. The provision for separate electorate for Muslims was given in **[CDS]**
(a) Morley-Minto Reforms, 1909
(b) Montagu-Chelmsford Reforms, 1919
(c) Communal Award, 1932
(d) Government of India Act, 1935

4. Consider the following statements regarding the Provincial elections of 1937? **[MPSC (ASO)]**
1. For the first time, the election was based on a universal adult franchise.
2. The performance of the Congress was better than Muslim League.
3. Congress made Governments in Bengal and Sind.
Select the correct answer using the code given below:
(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 and 3 only
(c) 2 only **(d)** 1, 2 and 3

5. After the formation of ministries in the provinces in 1937, Congress rule lasted for **[UPPSC]**
(a) 28 months **(b)** 29 months
(c) 30 months **(d)** 31 months

6. The Indian National Congress did not form a government in _____ after the 1937 provincial election. **[DSSSB PRT]**
(a) Odisha **(b)** Madras
(c) Bengal **(d)** Central Provinces

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (c) is correct.
Explanation:
- Partition as a culmination of a communal politics that started developing in the opening decades of the twentieth century.
- They suggest that separate electorates for Muslims, created by the colonial government in 1909 and expanded in 1919, crucially shaped the nature of communal politics.

2. Option (a) is correct.
Explanation: In 1937, elections to the provincial legislatures were held for the first time. Only about 10 to 12% of the population enjoyed the right to vote.

3. Option (b) is correct.
Explanation: The Congress did well in the elections, winning an absolute majority in five out of eleven provinces and forming governments in seven of them. It did badly in the constituencies reserved for Muslims.

4. Option (d) is correct.
Explanation: In the United Provinces, the Muslim League wanted to form a joint government with the

Congress.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: The Pakistan demand was formalised gradually. On 23rd March 1940, the League moved a resolution demanding a measure of autonomy for the Muslim majority areas of the subcontinent. This ambiguous resolution never mentioned partition or Pakistan.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The origins of the Pakistan demand have also been traced back to the Urdu poet Mohammad Iqbal, the writer of "Sare Jahan Se Achha Hindustan Hamara".

7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Urdu poet Mohammad Iqbal is the writer of "Sare Jahan Se Achha Hindustan Hamara".

8. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: On the advice of the Cabinet Mission, which visited India in March 1946 with the goal of drafting a new constitution for the nation, the Constituent Assembly of India was established as an independent body. However, after its establishment, the Constituent Assembly also received some criticism.

9. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
- In March 1946 the British Cabinet sent a three member mission to Delhi to examine the League's demand and to suggest a suitable political framework for a free India.
- The Cabinet Mission toured the country for three months and recommended a loose three-tier confederation.

10. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation:
- After withdrawing its support to the Cabinet Mission plan, the Muslim League decided on "Direct Action" for winning its Pakistan demand.
- It announced 16 August 1946 as "Direct Action Day". On this day, riots broke out in Calcutta, lasting several days and leaving several thousand people dead.

11. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
- The League wanted the grouping to be compulsory, with Sections B and C developing into strong entities with the right to secede from the Union in the future.
- The Congress wanted that provinces be given the right to join a group. Ultimately, therefore, neither the League nor the Congress agreed to the Cabinet Mission's proposal.

12. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The 77-year-old Gandhiji decided to stake his all in a bid to vindicate his lifelong principle of non-violence, and his conviction that people's hearts could be changed. He moved from the villages of Noakhali in East Bengal (present-day Bangladesh).

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation:
- Partition as a culmination of a communal politics that started developing in the opening decades of the twentieth century.
- They suggest that separate electorates for Muslims, created by the colonial government in 1909 and expanded in 1919, crucially shaped the nature of communal politics.
- Separate electorates meant that Muslims could now elect their own representatives in designated constituencies.

2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation:
- In March 1946 the British Cabinet sent a three member mission to Delhi to examine the League's demand and to suggest a suitable political framework for a free India.
- The Wavell Plan was initially introduced in 1945 at the Shimla Conference. Lord Wavell, the viceroy of India, inspired its naming.
- After withdrawing its support to the Cabinet Mission plan, the Muslim League decided on "Direct Action" for winning its Pakistan demand.
- It announced 16 August 1946 as "Direct Action Day". On this day, riots broke out in Calcutta, lasting several days and leaving several thousand people dead.
- The newly elected Constituent Assembly of India, which became the Interim Government of India, also known as the Provisional Government of India, on September 2, 1946, was charged with supporting British India in its transition to independence.

3. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation:
- The Holocaust in Germany is remembered and referred to in our contemporary concerns so much. Yet, differences between the two events should not be overlooked.
- In 1947-48, the subcontinent did not witness any state-driven extermination as was the case with Nazi Germany.
- The relationship between Pakistan and India has been profoundly shaped by this legacy of Partition.

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In the United Provinces, the Muslim League wanted to form a joint government with the Congress. The Congress had won an absolute majority in the province, so it rejected the offer.

5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation:
- When negotiations were begun again in l945, the British agreed to create an entirely Indian central Executive Council, except for the Viceroy and the Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces, as a preliminary step towards full independence.
- In March 1946 the British Cabinet sent a three member mission to Delhi to examine the League's demand and to suggest a suitable political framework for a free India.
- The Cabinet Mission toured the country for three months and recommended a loose three-tier confederation.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: Many Bengali Hindus remained in East Pakistan while many Bengali Muslims continued to live in West Bengal. Finally, Bengali Muslims (East Pakistanis) rejected Jinnah's two-nation theory through political action, breaking away from Pakistan and creating Bangladesh in 1971-72.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The "Direct Action Day" called by Muslim League was on 16th August 1946 was the day of mass killing and communal riots between the Muslims and Hindus in the city of Calcutta.

2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Popularly known as Morley-Minto Reforms. The size of legislative councils at the Centre and the provinces increased. This introduced a separate electorate for Muslims and elections for the provincial legislative council. Introduced the practice of discussing Budget. Satyendra Sinha in 1909 became the first member of the Executive council.

3. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation:
- The Communal Electorate system in India was first introduced by the Minto- Morley reforms in 1909.

4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation:
- 1937 saw the holding of elections for the British provinces. Only 11.5 percent of the 256 million people living in the country in 1931 had voting rights. It was a restricted adult franchise based on real estate requirements like home ownership and rent.
- The Congress won handily in the elections. It either became the largest party or won with an absolute majority (in five provinces). In Bengal and Sind, it was unable to form a majority administration and could not do so in Punjab, Bengal, or Sind.
- The Congress outperformed the Muslim League in terms of performance.

5. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation:
- The elections under the Government of India Act, 1935 were held in 1936-37 which led to the formation of Congress ministries in eight out of the 11 provinces.
- But on the 'war issue', Congress decided to quit the government and hence the 28 months of Congress rule in provinces came to an end.

6. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: In the 1937 elections, the Indian National Congress emerged in power in eight of the provinces - the three exceptions being Bengal, Punjab, and Sindh. It formed Ministries in 8 out of the 11 provinces.

15 FRAMING THE CONSTITUTION

Introduction

- The Indian Constitution, which came into effect on 26th January 1950, being the longest in the world.
- A Constitution designed to keep the country together, and to take it forward, had necessarily to be an elaborate, carefully-worked-out, and painstakingly drafted document.
- The Constitution of India was framed between December 1946 and December 1949.
- During this time its drafts were discussed clause by clause in the Constituent Assembly of India.
- In all, the Assembly held eleven sessions, with sittings spread over 165 days.
- This chapter will introduce you to the history that lies behind the Constitution, and the intense debates that were part of its making.

A Tumultuous Time

Popular Upsurges:

- Quit India struggle of 1942, perhaps the most widespread popular movement against the British.
- The bid by Subhas Chandra Bose to win freedom through armed struggle with foreign aid.
- Royal Indian Navy in Bombay and other cities in the spring of 1946.
- Late 1940s, there were periodic mass protests of workers and peasants in different parts of the country.
- The Great Calcutta Killings of August 1946.

Reason for Upsurges:

- One striking feature of these popular upsurges was the degree of Hindu-Muslim unity they manifested.
- In contrast, the two leading Indian political parties, the Congress and the Muslim League, had repeatedly failed to arrive at a settlement that would bring about religious reconciliation and social harmony.

Background

- Problem faced by the new nation was that of the princely states. During the period of the Raj, approximately one-third of the area of the subcontinent was under the control of nawabs and maharajas who owed allegiance to the British Crown, but were otherwise left mostly free to rule – or misrule – their territory as they wished. When the British left India, the constitutional status of these princes remained ambiguous.

The making of the Constituent Assembly

- The members of the Constituent Assembly were chosen on the basis of the provincial elections of 1946.
- The Assembly also had representatives of the princely states.
- The Muslim League chose to boycott the early sittings, making it effectively a one-party show as 82% of the members of the Assembly were members of the Congress Party.
- The Congress also nominated independent members of different castes and religious groups, and tried to ensure representation of women.
- The discussions within the Constituent Assembly were also influenced by the opinions expressed by the public.

Demand by the Various Groups

- All India Varnashrama Swarajya Sangh asked that the Constitution "be based on the principles laid down in ancient Hindu works". The prohibition of cow-slaughter and the closing down of abattoirs was particularly recommended.
- Low-caste groups demanded an end to "ill treatment by upper-caste people" and "reservation of separate seats on the basis of their population, in legislatures, government departments, and local bodies, etc."
- Linguistic minorities asked for "freedom of speech in (the) mother tongue" and the "redistribution of provinces on linguistic basis".
- Religious minorities asked for special safeguards.
- The District Teachers' Guild of Vizianagaram and the Central Jewish Board of Bombay requested "adequate representation on all public bodies including legislatures etc."

The Dominant Voice

- The Constituent Assembly had 300 members in all. Of these, six members played particularly important roles.
- These six members were given vital assistance by two civil servants:

1. One was B. N. Rau, Constitutional Advisor to the Government of India, who prepared a series of background papers based on a close study of the political systems obtaining in other countries.
2. The other was the Chief Draughtsman, S. N. Mukherjee.

- Three were representatives of the Congress, namely, Jawaharlal Nehru, Vallabh Bhai Patel and Rajendra Prasad.
- It was Nehru who moved the crucial "Objectives Resolution" on 13th August 1946, as well as the resolution proposing that the National Flag of India be a "horizontal tricolour of saffron, white and dark green in equal proportion", with a wheel in navy blue at the centre.
- Patel, on the other hand, worked mostly behind the scenes, playing a key role in the drafting of several reports, and working to reconcile opposing points of view.
- Rajendra Prasad's role was as President of the Assembly, where he had to steer the discussion along constructive lines while making sure all members had a chance to speak.

B. R. Ambedkar

- Besides this Congress trio, a very important member of the Assembly was the lawyer and economist B.R. Ambedkar.
- During the period of British rule, he had been a political opponent of the Congress; but, on the advice of Mahatma Gandhi, he was asked to join the Union Cabinet as law minister.
- He served as Chairman of the Drafting Committee of the Constitution. Serving with him were two other lawyers, K.M. Munshi from Gujarat and Alladi Krishnaswamy Aiyar from Madras, both of whom gave crucial inputs in the drafting of the Constitution.
- He had the responsibility of guiding the Draft Constitution through the Assembly. This took three years in all, with the printed record of the discussions taking up eleven bulky volumes.

The Vision of the Constitution

Objective Resolution:

- On 13 December 1946, Jawaharlal Nehru introduced the 'Objective Resolution'. It was a momentous resolution that outlined the defining ideals of the Constitution of Independent India, and provided the framework within which the work of constitution-making was to proceed.
- It proclaimed India to be an "Independent Sovereign Republic", guaranteed its citizens justice, equality and freedom, and assured that "adequate safeguards shall be provided for minorities, backward and tribal areas, and Depressed and Other Backward Classes".
- The objective of the Indian Constitution would be to fuse the liberal ideas of democracy with the socialist idea of economic justice, and re-adapt and re-work all these ideas within the Indian context.

The Will of the People

- A Communist member, Somnath Lahiri saw the dark hand of British imperialism hanging over the deliberations of the Constituent Assembly.
- He thus urged the members, and Indians in general, to fully free themselves from the influences of imperial rule.
- An interim administration headed by Jawaharlal Nehru was in place, but it could only operate under the directions of the Viceroy and the British Government in London.

Demand put forward with the Constituent Assembly

- The Constituent Assembly was expected to express the aspirations of those who had participated in the movement for independence.
- Democracy, equality and justice were ideals that had become intimately associated with social struggles in India since the nineteenth century.
- The social reformers in the 19th century opposed child marriage and demanded that widows be allowed to remarry, they were pleading for social justice.
- Swami Vivekananda campaigned for a reform of Hinduism, he wanted religions to become more just.
- Jyotiba Phule in Maharashtra pointed to the suffering of the depressed castes, or Communists and Socialists organised workers and peasants, they were demanding economic and social justice.

Various Acts Passed by the British Government & its Features

- As the demand for representation grew, the British had been forced to introduce a series of constitutional reforms.
- A number of Acts were passed (1909, 1919 and 1935), gradually enlarging the space for Indian participation in provincial governments.
- The executive was made partly responsible to the provincial legislature in 1919, and almost entirely so under the Government of India Act of 1935.
- When elections were held in 1937, under the 1935 Act, the Congress came to power in eight out of the 11 provinces.
- The earlier constitutional experiments were in response to the growing demand for a representative government, the Acts (1909, 1919 and 1935) were not directly debated and formulated by Indians.
- They were enacted by the colonial government. The electorate that elected the provincial bodies had expanded over the years, but even in 1935 it remained

limited to no more than 10 to 15% of the adult population: there was no universal adult franchise.

- The legislatures elected under the 1935 Act operated within the framework of colonial rule, and were responsible to the Governor appointed by the British.

The problem with separate electorates

- On 27th August 1947, B. Pocker Bahadur from Madras made a powerful plea for continuing separate electorates.
- The need was to create a political framework in which minorities could live in harmony with others, and the differences between communities could be minimised.
- Only separate electorates would ensure that Muslims had a meaningful voice in the governance of the country.
- This demand for separate electorates provoked anger and dismay amongst most nationalists.
- Most nationalists saw separate electorates as a measure deliberately introduced by the British to divide the people.
- Separate electorates was a "poison that has entered the body politic of our country", declared Sardar Patel.
- It was a demand that had turned one community against another, divided the nation, caused bloodshed, and led to the tragic partition of the country.
- Countering the demand for separate electorates, Govind Ballabh Pant declared that it was not only harmful for the nation but also for the minorities.
- Not all Muslims supported the demand for separate electorates. Begum Aizaas Rasul, for instance, felt that separate electorates were self-destructive since they isolated the minorities from the majority.
- By 1949, most Muslim members of the Constituent Assembly were agreed that separate electorates were against the interests of the minorities.
- Instead, Muslims needed to take an active part in the democratic process to ensure that they had a decisive voice in the political system.

Rights to the Citizen granted by the Constitution

- The Constitution would grant to citizens' rights, but citizens had to offer their loyalty to the State. Communities could be recognised as cultural entities and assured cultural rights.
- Politically, however, members of all communities had to act as equal members of one State, or else there would be divided loyalties.
- While welcoming the Objectives Resolution, N.G. Ranga, a socialist who had been a leader of the peasant movement, urged that the term minorities be interpreted in economic terms.
  1. The real minorities for Ranga were the poor and the downtrodden.
  2. He welcomed the legal rights the Constitution was granting to each individual but pointed to its limits.

How could the Constituent Assembly resolve this opposition?

- During the national movement Ambedkar had demanded separate electorates for the Depressed Castes, and Mahatma Gandhi had opposed it, arguing that this would permanently segregate them from the rest of society.
- Some members of the Depressed Castes emphasised that the problem of the "Untouchables" could not be resolved through protection and safeguards alone.
- Their disabilities were caused by the social norms and the moral values of caste society.
- Society had used their services and labour but kept them at a social distance, refusing to mix with them or dine with them or allow them entry into temples.
- Nagappa pointed out that numerically the Depressed Castes were not a minority: they formed between 20 and 25 per cent of the total population.
- Their suffering was due to their systematic marginalisation, not their numerical insignificance.
- They had no access to education, no share in the administration.
- After the Partition violence, Ambedkar too no longer argued for separate electorates.
- The Constituent Assembly finally recommended that untouchability be abolished, Hindu temples be thrown open to all castes, and seats in legislatures and jobs in government offices be reserved for the lowest castes.
- Many recognised that this could not solve all problems: social discrimination could not be erased only through constitutional legislation, there had to be a change in the attitudes within society. But the measures were welcomed by the democratic public.

The Powers of the State

- One of the topics most vigorously debated in the Constituent Assembly was the respective rights of the Central Government and the states.
- The rights of the states were defended by K. Santhanam from Madras. A reallocation of powers was necessary, he felt, to strengthen not only the states but also the Centre.
- The Draft Constitution provided for three lists of subjects: Union, State, and Concurrent.
- The subjects in the first list were to be the preserve of the Central Government, while those in the second list were vested with the states. As for the third list, here Centre and state shared responsibility.

- However, many more items were placed under exclusive Union control than in other federations, and more placed on the Concurrent list too than desired by the provinces.
- The Union also had control of minerals and key industries. Besides, Article 356 gave the Centre the powers to take over a state administration on the recommendation of the Governor.
- The Constitution also mandated for a complex system of fiscal federalism. In the case of some taxes the Centre retained all the proceeds; in other cases, it shared them with the states; in still other cases it assigned them wholly to the states.
- The states, meanwhile, could levy and collect certain taxes on their own: these included land and property taxes, sales tax, and the hugely profitable tax on bottled liquor.
- The argument for greater power to the provinces provoked a strong reaction in the Assembly.
- The need for a strong centre had been underlined on numerous occasions since the Constituent Assembly had begun its sessions.
- Ambedkar had declared that he wanted "a strong and united Centre much stronger than the Centre we had created under the Government of India Act of 1935".
- Reacting to the demands for giving power to the provinces, Gopalaswami Ayyangar declared that "the Centre should be made as strong as possible".
- One member from the United Provinces, Balakrishna Sharma, reasoned at length that only a strong centre could plan for the well-being of the country, mobilise the available economic resources, establish a proper administration, and defend the country against foreign aggression.

The Language of the Nation

- By the 1930s, the Congress had accepted that Hindustani ought to be the national language.
- Mahatma Gandhi felt that everyone should speak in a language that common people could easily understand.
- Hindustani – a blend of Hindi and Urdu was a popular language of a large section of the people of India, and it was a composite language enriched by the interaction of diverse cultures.
- Over the years it had incorporated words and terms from very many different sources, and was therefore understood by people from various regions.
- This multi-cultural language, Mahatma Gandhi thought, would be the ideal language of communication between diverse communities: it could unify Hindus and Muslims, and people of the north and the south.
- From the end of the nineteenth century, however, Hindustani as a language had been gradually changing.
- As communal conflicts deepened, Hindi and Urdu also started growing apart.
- On the one hand, there was a move to Sanskritise Hindi, purging it of all words of Persian and Arabic origin.
- On the other hand, Urdu was being increasingly Persianised.
- As a consequence, language became associated with the politics of religious identities. Mahatma Gandhi, however, retained his faith in the composite character of Hindustani.

A plea for Hindi

- In one of the earliest sessions of the Constituent Assembly, R. V. Dhulekar, a Congressman from the United Provinces, made an aggressive plea that Hindi be used as the language of constitution-making.
- Almost three years later, on 12th September 1947, Dhulekar's speech on the language of the nation once again sparked off a huge storm.
- By now the Language Committee of the Constituent Assembly had produced its report and had thought of a compromise formula to resolve the deadlock between those who advocated Hindi as the national language and those who opposed it.
- It had decided, but not yet formally declared, that Hindi in the Devanagari script would be the official language, but the transition to Hindi would be gradual.
- For the first fifteen years, English would continue to be used for all official purposes. Each province was to be allowed to choose one of the regional languages for official work within the province.
- T. A. Ramalingam Chettiar from Madras emphasised that whatever was done had to be done with caution; the cause of Hindi would not be helped if it was pushed too aggressively.

Conclusion

- The Constitution of India thus emerged through a process of intense debate and discussion.
- Many of its provisions were arrived at through a process of give-and-take, by forging a middle ground between two opposed positions.
- However, on one central feature of the Constitution there was substantial agreement.
- This was on the granting of the vote to every adult Indian.
- This was an unprecedented act of faith, for in other democracies the vote had been granted slowly, and in stages.

- In countries such as the United States and the United Kingdom, only men of property were first granted the vote; then, men with education were also allowed into the charmed circle.
- After a long and bitter struggle, men of working-class or peasant background were also given the right to vote.
- An even longer struggle was required to grant this right to women.
- A second important feature of the Constitution was its emphasis on secularism.
- This was done through the carefully drafted series of Fundamental Rights to "freedom of religion" (Articles 25-28), "cultural and educational rights" (Articles 29, 30), and "rights to equality" (Articles 14, 16, 17).
- All religions were guaranteed equal treatment by the State and given the right to maintain charitable institutions.
- The Constituent Assembly debates help us understand the many conflicting voices that had to be negotiated in framing the Constitution, and the many demands that were articulated.

TIMELINE

26th July 1945 - Labour Government comes to power in India
16th May 1946 - Cabinet Mission announces its constitutional scheme.
16th June 1946 - Cabinet Mission presented the scheme for the formation of an interim government at centre.
2nd Sept 1946 - Congress forms the interim govt.
13th October 1946 - Muslim League decides to join the interim government.
11th August 1947 - Jinnah was elected as the president of Constituent Assembly of Pakistan.
14th August 1947 - Pakistan Independence
15th August 1947 - India became an independent nation.

QUESTIONS

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. The Constitution of India was adopted on _____, and it came into force on _____
(a) 26th November, 1949, 26th January, 1950
(b) 26th January, 1949, 26th January, 1950
(c) 26th January, 1950, 26th January, 1949
(d) 27th November, 1949, 28th January, 1950

2. The composition of the Constituent Assembly was based on the proposals of which of the following?
(a) Wavell Plan **(b)** Cabinet Mission Plan
(c) Cripps Mission **(d)** August Offer

3. How many sessions of the constituent Assembly were held during formation of Constitution?
(a) 11 **(b)** 7
(c) 15 **(d)** 10

4. Which among the following was the President of Constituent Assembly?
(a) Jawahar Lal Nehru **(b)** Dr. Rajendra Prasad
(c) B.R. Ambedkar **(d)** M.N. Roy

5. Which among the following language was suggested by M.K. Gandhi to be a national language?
(a) Hindi **(b)** Sanskritise Hindi
(c) Urdu **(d)** None of the above

6. Who was the chairman of the Drafting Committee?
(a) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar **(b)** Sardar Patel
(c) Nehru **(d)** Dr. Rajendra Prasad

7. Who introduced the 'Objective Resolution'?
(a) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar
(b) Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel
(c) K.M. Munshi
(d) Jawaharlal Nehru

8. Quit India Movement was organised in which of the following year?
(a) 1946 **(b)** 1944
(c) 1942 **(d)** 1940

9. Which among the following was/were the Constitutional Advisor to the Government of India?
(a) S.N. Mukherjee **(b)** H.L. Kania
(c) B.N. Rau **(d)** Both (a) and (c)

10. Who among the following lawyers gave crucial inputs in the drafting of the Constitution?
(a) Alladi Krishnaswamy Aiyar
(b) C. Raja Gopalachari
(c) H. L. Kania
(d) None of the above

11. Who among the following was the Chief Draughtsman of the Constituent Assembly?
(a) B. N. Rau **(b)** Dr B. R. Ambedkar
(c) Jawaharlal Nehru **(d)** S.N. Mukherjee

12. Which of the following statements is incorrect regarding the making of the Constituent Assembly?
(a) The members of the Constituent Assembly were elected on the basis of the provincial elections of 1946.
(b) The Assembly had representatives of the princely states.
(c) The Muslim League and the Congress had equal representatives in the Constituent Assembly.
(d) The total membership of the Constituent Assembly was 300 after reorganisation.

13. Under which reform/act, non-official majority was introduced in the provincial legislative councils?
    (a) Montague-Chelmsford reforms
    (b) Government of India Act, 1935
    (c) Indian Councils Act, 1861
    (d) Morley-Minto reforms
14. Under which of the following Act the executive was made partly responsible to the provincial legislature?
    (a) Montague-Chelmsford reforms
    (b) Government of India Act, 1935
    (c) Indian Councils Act, 1861
    (d) Morley-Minto reforms
15. Who declared that separate electorates were a "poison that has entered the body politic of our country"?
    (a) Sardar Patel (b) M.K. Gandhi
    (c) B.R. Ambedkar (d) Govind Ballabh Pant
16. Which of the following Article of the Indian Constitution gave the Centre the powers to take over a state administration on the recommendation of the Governor?
    (a) Article 350 (b) Article 356
    (c) Article 352 (d) Article 360
17. Which of the following statements is incorrect about the Constitution?
    (a) The Constitution is a written document about the formation of government and its powers.
    (b) Constitution is required only in democratic countries.
    (c) The Constitution determines how the government is built.
    (d) All of the above
18. Who declared that "a strong and united Centre much stronger than the Centre we had created under the Government of India Act of 1935"?
    (a) Balakrishna Sharma
    (b) R. V. Dhulekar
    (c) T. A. Ramalingam Chettiar
    (d) B. R. Ambedkar
19. Who defended the rights of the states?
    (a) K. Santhanam (b) Sardar Patel
    (c) B.R. Ambedkar (d) Govind Ballabh Pant
20. Which of the following lists contains the subject of Public order?
    (a) Residuary List (b) Union List
    (c) State List (d) Concurrent List

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Consider the following statements about Constituent Assembly:
    1. The first meeting was held on 9th December, 1946.
    2. Its composition was based on Cabinet Mission Plan.
    3. Its members were directly elected by the people of India.

    Which of the following statement(s) is/are correct?
    (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
    (c) 1 and 2 only (d) 1, 2 and 3
2. Arrange the following in the sequence:
    1. Right to freedom
    2. Right to freedom of religion
    3. Right to Constitutional Remedies
    4. Right to Equality
    5. Right against Exploitation
    6. Cultural and Educational Rights

    Select the correct code:
    (a) 1, 2, 4, 6, 5, 3 (b) 2, 1, 3, 4, 6, 5
    (c) 4, 5, 1, 5, 3, 2 (d) 4, 1, 5, 2, 6, 3
3. Consider the following statements:
    1. The members of the Constituent Assembly were indirectly elected.
    2. Govind Ballabh Pant opposed a separate electorate.
    3. Shri Shankar Rao accepted Hindustani as the national language.

    Which of the given statements is/are correct?
    (a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3 only
    (c) 1 and 2 only (d) 1, 2 and 3
4. Consider the following statements:
    1. Objective Resolution was given by Sardar Patel in Lahore Session of Congress.
    2. Rajendra Prasad led the interim government which was made in 1946.
    3. K Sanathanam from Madras strongly favoured the rights of states.
    4. Mahatma Gandhi wanted to keep Hindustani as the national language.

    Which of the given statements is/are NOT correct?
    (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 and 3 only
    (c) 1, 3 and 4 only (d) 2 only
5. Consider the following statements:
    1. The Muslim League did not boycott the early sittings.
    2. The Congress nominated independent members of different castes and religious groups.
    3. Congress opposed the representation of women.

    Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below?
    (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 only
    (c) 3 only (d) 1 and 3 only
6. Which of the following statements is/are NOT correct?
    1. The Constituent Assembly had 300 members in all.
    2. B.N. Rau was the Chief Draughtsman.

3. Objective resolution proposing that the National Flag of India be a "horizontal tricolour of saffron, white and dark green in equal proportion", with a wheel in navy blue at the centre.

Codes:

(a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 2 only
(c) 1 and 3 only **(d)** 2 and 3 only

7. Consider the following statements:
   1. He had been a political opponent of the Congress.
   2. He was asked to join the Union Cabinet as law minister.
   3. He had the responsibility of guiding the Draft Constitution through the Assembly.

   The above mentioned statements are related to which of the following personality?
   (a) Sardar Patel
   (b) K. M. Munshi
   (c) B. R. Ambedkar
   (d) Alladi Krishnaswamy Aiyar
8. With reference to Separate Electorate, consider the following statements:
   1. Only separate electorates would ensure that Muslims had a meaningful voice in the governance of the country.
   2. B. Pocker Bahadur from Madras made a powerful plea for continuing separate electorates.
   3. By 1949, most Muslim members of the Constituent Assembly were agreed that separate electorates were against the interests of the minorities.

   Select the correct statement(s) using the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 2 only **(b)** 3 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3 **(d)** 2 and 3 only
9. Consider the following statements:
   1. The Draft Constitution provided for three lists of subjects: Union, State, and Concurrent.
   2. The rights of the states were defended by C. Rajagopalachari from Madras.
   3. The Constitution also mandated for a complex system of fiscal federalism.
   4. The control of minerals was under the concurrent list.

   Select the correct statements using the code given below:
   (a) 1 and 3 only **(b)** 2, 3 and 4 only
   (c) 1, 2 and 3 only **(d)** 1, 2, 3 and 4

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. The Indian Councils Act 1909 is known as _____. **[MP Patwari]**
   (a) Montague Chelmsford Reforms
   (b) Minto Morley Reforms
   (c) Cabinet Mission Plan
   (d) Cripps Mission Plan
2. The 1909 Act was related to? **[MPPSC]**
   (a) The introduction of separate electorate
   (b) Decentralization
   (c) Diarchy
   (d) Legislative Council
3. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**
   1. The Montagu-Chelmsford Reforms of 1919 recommended granting voting rights to all the women above the age of 21.
   2. The Government of India Act of 1935 gave women reserved seats in the legislature.

   Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
   (a) 1 only
   (b) 2 only
   (c) Both 1 and 2
   (d) Neither 1 nor 2
4. The distribution of powers between the Centre and the States in the Indian Constitution is based on the scheme provided in the **[UPSC]**
   (a) Morley-Minto Reforms, 1909
   (b) Montagu-Chelmsford Act, 1919
   (c) Government of India Act, 1935
   (d) Indian Independence Act, 1947
5. Which one of the following observations is not true about the Quit India Movement of 1942?
   (a) It was a non-violent movement
   (b) It was led by Mahatma Gandhi
   (c) It was a spontaneous movement
   (d) It did not attract the labour class in general
6. Consider the following statements: **[UPSC]**

   The Government of India Act, 1935 provided for
   1. The provincial autonomy.
   2. The establishment of Federal Court.
   3. All India Federation at the centre.

   Which of the statements are correct?
   (a) 1 and 2 **(b)** 2 and 3
   (c) 1 and 3 **(d)** 1, 2 and 3
7. Who among the following drafted the resolution of fundament rights for the Karachi Session of Congress in 1931? **[UPSC]**
   (a) Dr. B. R. Ambedkar
   (b) Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru
   (c) Dr. Rajendra Prasad
   (d) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
8. The members of the Constituent Assembly which drafted the Constitution of India were **[Punjab Civil Service]**
   (a) nominated by the British Parliament
   (b) nominated by the Governor-General
   (c) elected by the Legislative Assemblies of various provinces
   (d) elected by the Indian National Congress and Muslim League

9. Which one of the following statements is correct? **[UPSC]**

(a) The Constituent Assembly of India was elected by the Provincial Assemblies in the year 1946.

(b) Jawaharlal Nehru, M.A. Jinnah and Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel were members of the Constituent Assembly of India.

(c) The First Session of the Constituent Assembly of India was held in January, 1947.

(d) The Constitution of India was adopted on 26th January, 1950.

10. Which one of the following first mooted the idea of a constituent assembly to frame a constitution for India? **[WBCS]**

(a) Swaraj Party in 1934

(b) Congress Party in 1936

(c) Muslim League in 1942

(d) All Parties Conference in 1946

ANSWERS WITH EXPLANATION

LEVEL-1 : MODERATE

1. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Indian Constitution was adopted on 26th November, 1949, which came into effect on 26th January 1950, being the longest in the world.

2. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: On the advice of the Cabinet Mission, which visited India in March 1946 with the goal of drafting a new constitution for the nation, the Constituent Assembly of India was established as an independent body. However, after its establishment, the Constituent Assembly also received some criticism.

3. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Constitution of India was framed between December 1946 and December 1949. During this time its drafts were discussed clause by clause in the Constituent Assembly of India. In all, the Assembly held eleven sessions, with sittings spread over 165 days.

4. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Rajendra Prasad's role was as President of the Assembly, where he had to steer the discussion along constructive lines while making sure all members had a chance to speak.

5. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Mahatma Gandhi felt that everyone should speak in a language that common people could easily understand. Hindustani – a blend of Hindi and Urdu was a popular language of a large section of the people of India, and it was a composite language enriched by the interaction of diverse cultures.

6. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: B.R. Ambedkar served as Chairman of the Drafting Committee of the Constitution. He had the responsibility of guiding the Draft Constitution through the Assembly.

7. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: It was Nehru who moved the crucial "Objectives Resolution" on 13th August 1946, as well as the resolution proposing that the National Flag of India be a "horizontal tricolour of saffron, white and dark green in equal proportion", with a wheel in navy blue at the centre.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: Quit India struggle of 1942 was the most widespread popular movement against the British.

9. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: One was B. N. Rau, Constitutional Advisor to the Government of India, who prepared a series of background papers based on a close study of the political systems obtaining in other countries. The other was the Chief Draughtsman, S. N. Mukherjee.

10. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: K. M. Munshi from Gujarat and Alladi Krishnaswamy Aiyar from Madras, both of whom gave crucial inputs in the drafting of the Constitution.

11. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: The Chief Draughtsman of the constituent assembly was S. N. Mukherjee.

12. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The Muslim League and the Congress did not have equal representatives in the Constituent Assembly. In the first meeting on 9 December 1946, the Muslim League members had boycotted, demanding partition.

Out of the initial 389 members, there was a dominance of Congress party members with them having bagged 208 seats. The Muslim League had won 73.

13. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Under Morley-Minto reforms, the number of elected members in the Imperial Legislative Council and Provincial Legislative Council was increased. In the Provincial Councils, the non-official majority was introduced but since some of these non-officials were nominated and not selected, the overall non-elected majority remained.

14. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Partially responsible governments in the provinces were formed by the Indian Council Act-1919.

15. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Most nationalists saw separate electorates as a measure deliberately introduced by the British to divide the people. Separate electorates was a "poison that has entered the body politic of our country", declared Sardar Patel.

16. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: The Union also had control of minerals and key industries. Besides, Article 356 gave the Centre the powers to take over a state administration on the recommendation of the Governor.

17. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation: Constitutions also exists in pseudo democracies or military rule.

18. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: Ambedkar had declared that he wanted "a strong and united Centre much stronger than the Centre we had created under the Government of India Act of 1935".

19. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The rights of the states were defended by K. Santhanam from Madras. A reallocation of powers was necessary, he felt, to strengthen not only the states but also the Centre.

20. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: As per Seventh Schedule, 'Police' and 'Public Order' are State subjects under the Constitution, and as such the principal responsibility of prevention, detection, registration, investigation and prosecution of crimes lies with the State Governments.

LEVEL-2 : ADVANCED

1. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The members of the Constituent Assembly were chosen on the basis of the provincial elections of 1946. On the advice of the Cabinet Mission, which visited India in 1946 with the goal of drafting a new constitution for the nation, the Constituent Assembly of India was established as an independent body. However, after its establishment, the Constituent Assembly also received some criticism.

2. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation:

- Right to Equality (Article 14-18)
- Right to Freedom (Article 19-22)
- Right against Exploitation (Article 23-24)
- Right to Freedom of Religion (Article 25-28)
- Cultural and Educational Rights (Article 29-30)
- Right to Constitutional Remedies (Article 32)

3. Option (d) is correct.

Explanation: By the 1930s, the Congress had accepted that Hindustani ought to be the national language. Countering the demand for separate electorates, Govind Ballabh Pant declared that it was not only harmful for the nation but also for the minorities. The members of the Constituent Assembly were chosen on the basis of the provincial elections of 1946. They were indirectly elected. Shri Shakar Rao accepted Hindustani as a national language.

4. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: An interim administration headed by Jawaharlal Nehru was in place, but it could only operate under the directions of the Viceroy and the British Government in London. It was Nehru who moved the crucial "Objectives Resolution" on 13th August 1946.

5. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- The Assembly also had representatives of the princely states.
- The Muslim League chose to boycott the early sittings, making it effectively a one-party show as 82% of the members of the Assembly were members of the Congress Party.
- The Congress also nominated independent members of different castes and religious groups, and tried to ensure representation of women.

6. Option (b) is correct.

Explanation:

- The Constituent Assembly had 300 members in all. Of these, six members played particularly important roles.
- These six members were given vital assistance by two civil servants.
- One was B. N. Rau, Constitutional Advisor to the Government of India, who prepared a series of background papers based on a close study of the political systems obtaining in other countries.
- The other was the Chief Draughtsman, S. N. Mukherjee.
- It was Nehru who moved the crucial "Objectives Resolution" on 13th August 1946, as well as the resolution proposing that the National Flag of India be a "horizontal tricolour of saffron, white and dark green in equal proportion", with a wheel in navy blue at the centre.

7. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The above mentioned statements are related to B R Ambedkar.
8. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: All the statements given are correct.
9. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation:
- The Draft Constitution provided for three lists of subjects: Union, State, and Concurrent.
- The rights of the states were defended by K. Santhanam from Madras.
- The Constitution also mandated for a complex system of fiscal federalism.
- The Union had control of minerals and key industries.

LEVEL-3 : PREVIOUS YEARS

1. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Indian Councils Act, 1909 commonly known as the Morley-Minto or Minto-Morley Reforms, was an Act of the Parliament of the United Kingdom that brought about a limited increase in the involvement of Indians in the governance of British India.
2. **Option (a) is correct.**
Explanation: Popularly known as Morley-Minto Reforms. This introduced a separate electorate for Muslims and elections for the provincial legislative council. Introduced the practice of discussing Budget. Satyendra Sinha in 1909 became the first member of the Executive council.
3. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation:
- In 1918, Edwin Montagu, the Secretary of State and Lord Chelmsford, the Viceroy, introduced constitutional reforms, known as the Montagu Chelmsford (or Mont-Ford) Reforms, or the Government of India Act of 1919. The Act introduced reforms at the Central as well as Provincial levels.
- It did not recommends right to votes to all the women above 21 yrs but criteria is based on property,tax or education.
- It called for separate electorate for women along with depressed classes and labours.
4. **Option (c) is correct.**
Explanation: The Government of India Act, 1935:
- It provided for the establishment of an All India federation consisting of provinces and princely states as units.
- It abolished dyarchy in the provinces and introduced 'provincial autonomy' in its place.
- It divided the powers between the centre and units in terms of three lists- The federal list, the provincial list and the concurrent list. Residuary powers were given to the Viceroy.
- The governor was required to act with the advice of ministers responsible to the provincial legislature.
- Bicameralism was introduced in Bengal, Bombay Madras, Bihar, Assam and the United Provinces.
- Separate electorates were further extended to depressed classes, women and labour.
- The act provided for setting up the Federal public service commission, provincial public service commission, joint public service commission, federal court, and Reserve Bank of India.
5. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation:
- The Quit India Movement was a movement launched at the Bombay session of the All India Congress Committee by Mahatma Gandhi on 8 August 1942, demanding an end to British rule in India. Gandhi was named the movement's leader.
- The movement gave the slogans 'Quit India' or 'Bharat Chodo'. Gandhi gave the slogan to the people – 'Do or die'.
- The British government responded to the call of Gandhi by arresting all major Congress leaders the very next day. Gandhi, Nehru, Patel, etc. were all arrested. Thus, leaders like Jayaprakash Narayan, Ram Manohar Lohia, and Aruna Asaf Ali were the front leaders in the Quit India Movement.
- The majority of the Quit India Movement was carried by the labour class as they agitated through bandhs and hartals.
6. **Option (d) is correct.**
Explanation: The Act of 1935 provided for the establishment of an All India federation consisting of provinces and princely states as units.
It abolished dyarchy in the provinces and introduced 'provincial autonomy' in its place.
The act provided for setting up the Federal public service commission, provincial public service commission, joint public service commission, federal court, and Reserve Bank of India.
7. **Option (b) is correct.**
Explanation: The Karachi Congress Session which was held on March 26 to 31, 1931 was chaired by Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel. This session became

memorable for its resolution on the Fundamental Rights and the National Economic Programs. It was drafted by the Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru.

8. Option (c) is correct.

Explanation: The demand for a constituent assembly was accepted for the first time by the British through their 'August offer' of 1940. Eventually, a constituent assembly was established under the provisions of the Cabinet Mission plan.

Composition of the council:

- It was constituted in 1946.
- Initially, the number of members was 389. After the partition, some of the members went to Pakistan and the number came down to 299. Out of this, 229 were from the British provinces and 70 were nominated from the princely states.
- Seats were allocated based on proportion to their respective population.
- Representatives of each community were to be elected by members of that community in the provincial legislative assembly and voting was to be by the method of proportional representation by means of a single transferrable vote.
- Representatives of princely states were to be nominated by the head of these princely states.

9. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: Under the Cabinet Mission Plan of 1946, elections were held for the Constituent Assembly. The members were elected by the members of the provincial assemblies by the method of a single transferable vote of proportional representation.

Constitution was adopted on 26 Nov 1949 and enacted on 26 Jan 1950.

First session of Constituent Assembly was held on 09 Dec 1946.

Jinnah was not the member of Constituent assembly. He was President of Constituent Assembly of Pakistan.

10. Option (a) is correct.

Explanation: The Swaraj Party was a political party formed in India on 1 January 1923, that sought greater self-government and political freedom for the Indian people from the British Raj. The two most important leaders were Chittaranjan Das, its president, and Motilal Nehru, its secretary. It first mooted the idea of a constituent assembly to frame a constitution for India.

Saarthi

THE COACH

1 : 1 MENTORSHIP BEYOND THE CLASSES

- **Diagnosis** of candidates based on background, level of preparation and task completed.
- **Customized solution** based on Diagnosis.
- One to One **Mentorship.**
- Personalized schedule **planning.**
- Regular **Progress tracking.**
- **One to One classes** for Needed subjects along with online access of all the subjects.
- Topic wise **Notes Making sessions**.
- One Pager **(1 Topic 1 page)** Notes session.
- **PYQ** (Previous year questions) Drafting session.
- **Thematic charts** Making session.
- **Answer-writing** Guidance Program.
- **MOCK Test** with comprehensive & swift assessment & feedback.



Ashutosh Srivastava
(B.E. , MBA, Gold Medalist)
Mentored 250+ Successful Aspirants over a period of 12+ years for Civil Services & Judicial Services Exams at both the Centre and state levels.



Manish Shukla
Mentored 100+ Successful Aspirants over a period of 9+ years for Civil Services Exams at both the Centre and state levels.

WALL OF FAME



UTKARSHA NISHAD
UPSC RANK - 18



SURABHI DWIVEDI
UPSC RANK - 55



SATEESH PATEL
UPSC RANK - 163



SATWIK SRIVASTAVA
SDM RANK-3



DEEPAK SINGH
SDM RANK-20



ALOK MISHRA
DEPUTY JAILOR RANK-11



SHIPRA SAXENA
GIC PRINCIPAL (PCS-2021)



SALTANAT PARWEEN
SDM (PCS-2022)



KM. NEHA
SUB REGISTRAR (PCS-2021)



SUNIL KUMAR
MAGISTRATE (PCS-2021)



ROSHANI SINGH
DIET (PCS-2020)



AVISHANK S. CHAUHAN
ASST. COMMISSIONER
SUGARCANE (PCS-2018)



SANDEEP K. SATYARTHI
CTD (PCS-2018)



MANISH KUMAR
DIET (PCS-2018)



AFTAB ALAM
PCS OFFICER



ASHUTOSH TIWARI
SDM (PCS-2022)



CHANDAN SHARMA
Magistrate
Roll no. 301349



YOU CAN BE THE NEXT....

8009803231 / 8354021661

D 22&23, PURNIYA CHAURAHA, NEAR MAHALAXMI SWEET HOUSE, SECTOR H, SECTOR E, ALIGANJ, LUCKNOW, UTTAR PRADESH 226024

MRP- 651 RS.